Patroua
Methods
B
39

685(1) A.xxix.Bar

Kiveton

B. 39.

S.T.C. 1513

62913

THE METHOD OF PHYSICK, CONTANING THE CAVSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES OF INWARD DISEASES IN MANS BODY, FROM THE HEAD TO THE FOOTE.

Whereunto is added, the forme and rule of making re-*medies and medicines, which our Physitions commonly* vse at this day, with the proportion, quantity, and names of each medicine.

By Philip Barrough.

The fifth Edition, corrected and amended.

LONDON.
Imprinted by *Richard Field*, dwelling in great Woodstreete. 1617.

TO THERIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD AND MAISTER, THE Lord Burghley, high Treasurer of England, Knight of the most noble order of the Garter, and one of the Queenes Maiesties most honorable priuie Councell:

P.B. wisheth all health, with long life, and increase of honour.

THE chiefest thing (right Honorable and my singular good Lord) that emboldeneth men to dedicate their labours vnto any personage, is the affinity betweene the matter of the worke which they offer, and the mind of him to whom it is presented. And as the ancient comicall Poëts were wont to pen such Enterludes, as they thought wold be plausibly heard of all the auditory: so our common writers do fashion and shape the subiect of which they intreate, according to the affection of him, whose patronage they require in countenancing their writings. This (I say) though it be practised of all writers now adaies, and might haue serued as a fit president for me to haue followed: yet I haue swerued and digressed from so generall a custome, in preferring this labour of mine to the view of your Honor (the matter so farre dissenting from your Honors disposition) so that as it may perhaps not without some colour be obiected, that I might haue prouided farre better (had I bene any way sufficient) both for the acceptation of my labour, and also for the fit answering of your Honors affection, if I had treated of the politicke gouernment of our countrey, and of the weilding of a commonwealth: to the necessity of which calling, not Fortune the Queene of the old Philosophers, but

God himselfe hath called, or rather enforced you, if that opinion of Plato be true, that euery good Magistrate taketh vpon him his office vnwillingly. But that obiection will soone be taken away, if we consider how foolish a thing it were to instruct him with his imaginarie precepts, whom (besides a great light of nature) most happy experience hath made a perfect and absolute gouernour. Plato that most graue and wise deemer of the state tyrannicall, was so many times conuicted of folly, how often he aduentured in the presence of Kings to discourse of the regiment of a Commonwealth. Dionysius (of whom it was doubted, whether he did more harme by his extreme cruelty, or good by his prouident wisedome, which both he left alike to his successours to imitate) called that notable Philosopher (whom I euen now named) into Sicilia, of purpose to heare him, and with great patience listened to him, as he disputed of mans felicity, and admired him as he handled those morall vertues, which Socrates his maister was feigned to haue brought from heauen, and as he treated of the frame and machine of the world: but on a time (taking aduantage by the Kings attention) when he had stolen into the discourse of Policie, Dionysius felt himselfe so moued, that he had exercised his tyrannie against him also, if Dion and Aristomanes had not recouered him out of his tawes, and so rid him out of the land, by selling him to Polis the Lacedæmonian Merchant. And this was the verdict, that the wise King (when his fury was somewhat calmed) gaue of that most learned Philosopher for his wholesome counsell (as he thought) namely, that his discourses seemed vnto him to be the prattles of idle old men: so much Experience disdaineth to be controlled by Art, and so impatient is he of institution, whose knowledge is acquired Vsu & Memoria *(the two ancient parents of wisedome.) What a great argument of folly therefore shall he giue, that shall go about to lay a plot for your Honour, from whence you may deriue an example of gouernment, who haue so many yeares, in so troublesome a commonwealth, and to the most wise and vertuous Princesse in the world, bene retained as a most Honourable and graue Counsellour? I will not say, as Zopyrus vnto his Darius, or as Cineas vnto his Pyrrhus, or as Cresus vnto his Cyrus; the one of which by policy aduised his King to circumuent his enemies, the other allured them to his subiection by his eloquence, and the third by his owne vnfortunate*

ex-

experience, directed him how to conuey any dangerous enterprise; all which serued their Princes to none other vse, but to helpe them to purchase the worst part of glory by bloudy oppression: but rather as a Nestor vnto his Agamemnon, as a Xenophon vnto his Cyrus, and as a Plutarch vnto his Traian, who thought it not so glorious to tie their enemies to them with forced feare, as their friends and neighbours by peaceable amity, the strōgest guard that Princes can trust vnto. I must needs confesse that these comparisons do faile in representing so much as I do conceiue. For, that I may not feare the suspition of flattery in so manifest a truth, can the whole Scene of mans life, so gorgeously and stately set forth by the Historiās of seuerall ages, shew vs at one time, on one stage, two such notable actors; namely, so redoubted, so peerelesse, and so vertuous a Princesse holding the Scepter? so graue, so wise, and so prouident a Counseller sustaining the person of Eubolus? I would I might (my credit saued with your Honor) pursue your praises yet farther; but I know very well, that you (who with an vnwearied affection do not ceasse continually to commit such vertuous deeds as deserue to be eternized for euer) are soone tyred, when you heare them remembred by another. And truly I would not haue spoken so much for feare of offence, but that I know for a certauntie, that you ascribe the being of your vertues to God the giuer of all good things; before whom to extenuate our graces, I know not whether it be more blameworthy then shamlesly to assume vnto our selues whatsoeuer is wrongfully attributed vnto vs by flattering friends. But to what end (will you say) are all these words? Namely to this: to excuse my selfe, in that I haue not laboured to fit your affection in the presentment of this my labour, which is so impossible in respect of your singular knowledge in all kind of good learning, that there is no man so selfewise or loftie which feareth not to come vnder your learned censure. Which excellency of yours when I had looked into, and had found my selfe altogether vnable to answer, I purposed (as I thought) more politickly to assay your humanity; which indeed, graceth all the rest of your vertues: which (I thought) I might soone abuse, in offering such a subiect, in which some studie and industrie (besides many yeares) had made me in part able to iudge; and such a one, as the earnest affaires of the commonwealth, in which your are alwayes busied, together with the inconuenient vse of the studie, hath kept your Honor from being acquainted

with. Which bold attempt of mine, your Wisedome shall so much the easier be brought to pardon, by how much the more earnestly your rare clemency encouraged me to enterprise it. For I do plainely confesse, that I haue not thought this booke of mine worthy to be perused of your Honor, as well because of mine owne vnability, who am altogether insufficient to performe any thing that your Honor may like of, as also in respect of those manifold graces, wherewith the Lord hath filled you: by the vertue of which you could in a tongue farre more eloquent then this of ours, discerne & know the secrets of Physicke, which I haue now in part reuealed; if the common weale of vs all did not rather carrie you away, then that delight which is otherwise reaped by priuate study. And yet neuertheless, when I consider with my selfe, that it was not the affectatiõ of any popular praise, but an honest zeale to benefite my countrymen, which begot in me this desire to publish this worke: and also (if I may without the suspect of vaineglorie seeme to diuine of the issue of my labours) perceiuing that they might bring some commodity vnto the more ignorant sort of our common Practitioners and Emperiques (if they were with diligence perused:) and thirdly, when I perceiued in my selfe a certaine earnest willingnesse which I haue alwayes had (though of late it hath bene more vehemently inflamed) to commend some peece of seruice vnto your Honor: I say, these causes meeting thus together, did especially induce me (though many doubts stept afore me in mine enterprise, offering to reinforce my ouer presumptuous determination) with such a bold confidencie as it were to rush into your presence, and to demand without any shew of merite your Honors most fauourable Protection, that this book of mine (vnable of it selfe) may run vnder your patronage, which as it were Gorgon his buckler, I will obuert and turne against all the venimous bytings of slanderous tongues. The Lord God (who hath made you a notable instrument to worke the aduancement of his glory, the furtherance and propagation of good learning) lengthen and protract your life beyond your fatall period, and giue you a will to liue, a desire still to beare vp that burthen which her Maiestie hath layd vpon your shoulders; and with these, all good successe in this world, and eternall happinesse in his kingdome.

Your Honors most humble seruant,

PHILIP BARROVGH.

The

The Preface to the Reader.

Hen God had perfected that wonderfull worke of his (I meane the frame of the world) and had assigned to euery part thereof his speciall duty: namely to the water to harbour fishes, to the aire to vphold all fethered foules, to the earth to foster beasts, and to produce & bring forth good and wholesome herbes and trees: and ouer all these, as regent and gouernour, had appointed man, his last and noblest creature: he demanded of his Angels who were present with him at this worke, what might be desired in this so rare and strange a workmanship: who answered, Nothing but a tongue to vnfold the secrets of his labours, to talke and commune of them; with the which also, he, as workman of all, might be extolled and magnified: who partly moued by this suggestion, perceiuing it to be a notable meanes to aduance his glory; as before he had infused into man a conceiueable minde, apt to vnderstand his mysteries: so now he gaue him a tongue, able to vtter the sundry conceptions of the heart, whatsoeuer is imagined. This fable (proceeding I know not from what brain) is remembred of *Philo* the Iew in his Treatise of the world: which seemeth to imply thus much, that as there is nothing within this mortall circuite, that God hath as it were kept to himselfe, and not made subiect to the industrious capacity of man: so there is no meanes by which a man can approch nearer vnto the perfection of that nature which he first enioyed, and then lost by his fall, then by the painefull indagation of the secrets of nature, or any way whereby he may more truly glorifie his maker, then in his life time with his tongue to communicate that knowledge which he hath by his industry atchieued, and to haue a care also, that it may be faithfully commended to his posterity. And doubtlesse this was the consideration that moued the wise king *Salomon* to wade so farre in the searching of the causes of things, who abandoning all those glistering shewes which his riches & kingdome proffered him, applied his minde to the study of nature, and compiled a great volume, wherein he largely discourſed not onely of birds & beasts, but of all herbes and trees, euen from the Cedar of Lebanon, to Hysope that goweth out of the wall. And the selfe same opinion of the excellencie of that kinde of life, hath from time to time inuaded the mindes of many Kings and noble personages, vowing to themselues without any light of their forefathers, to go through the cloudy darknesse of nature. And although they sometimes stumbled, yet are they to be pardoned, if we consider both the obscurity, and the length of the way they went in *Zoroastes* the reputed sonne of *Noah* was the first, that of many confused experiments, began to fashion out and as it were to delineate the beginnings of an Art, by setting downe certaine

precepts of the same; and after him *Osiris* the King of Ægypt, and *Zesostris* also King of the same countrey (though rudely) layed the foundation of Astronomy by demonstration of the course of the heauens, and of Physicke, by opening the nature of many herbes, and also the secrets of their water of *Nilus*. To the worthinesse of which secret, *Plato* that great Philosopher did willingly subscribe, when falling into a grieuous malady in Ægypt, and being not able by his owne experiments (though he had assayed many) to cure himselfe, he was preserued by the Priests of that countrey, who taught him the vertue of their water, whereas after in remembrance of this benefite he wrote this verse, rehearsed by *Laertius*: *Mare vniuersa proluit hominum mala:* The sea doth wash away all the infirmities of man. So that by this we may see, that this noble and learned Philosopher had neuer brought vs newes out of Ægypt, either of their policie and gouernment of their countrey, or of their rare and exquisite knowledge in Astronomie, if he had not tasted of the benefite which the physicke of that time afoorded him. But we will remember some of those Kings, who had an especiall fantasie to this Art, whose names are deuolued and brought vnto vs by the succession of ages, though their workes haue not escaped the wracke, but haue perished in the sea gulfe of antiquity, which hath swallowed the doings of many men. And *Mithridates* the King of Pontus shall be the first, who at one time vndertooke two mighty battels, the one with the Romanes, the other with nature. In the last of which, the more dangerous, he preuailed like a conqueror: and in the first he dealt so valiantly, that the glory of his forepassed victories suppressed and killed the remembrance of his last ouerthrow. The which (as *Pliny* remembreth) was a like profitable to the common wealth, and to mans life: for in his Manour where he lay, there were found many bookes written by his owne hands, both of the vertues of herbes, and of the constitution of mans body, with remedies for many infirmities of the same. *Euax* also the King of Arabia wrote a booke of the effects of simples, which he dedicated to *Nero* the Emperour. But what should I reckon particularly the names of euery one, when in former ages there was no King, either of Aethiopia, Aegypt, or Arabia, who did not himselfe either write somewhat concerning this Art of Physicke, or else by his liberality encouraged others to employ their time in the same? Which may make much (no doubt) to the credite of the Art, when as Kings haue appropriated it to themselues, and haue thought themselues honored by the profession of the same. And, as many arguments do induce me to beleeue, besides the witnesse of Historians, that Physicke is the Art wherein many Kings haue trauelled and delighted: so nothing more strongly then this, that whereas other gods were tied to their seuerall places, as *Iupiter* to Elis, *Diana* to Ephesus, *Apollo* to Delos, and so forth; *Aesculapius* the sonne of *Apollo* by the daugter of *Phlegias*, made a god for his cunning in Physicke, hath his temple and altars euery where, in Corinth, in Lacedæmon, in Athens, in Thebes, in Epidaure, in Arcadia, Messenia, and in many other countries (as *Pausanias* remembreth:) all which honors so done to him, were instituted (no doubt) by the Kings and rulers of those countries, who especially fauoured that Art, thinking it great reason, that he who inuented an Art so generally auailable for mankind, should be generally honoured of all men. And (I pray you) how much

inferiour

inferiour was the renowne of *Hippocrates*, who descended of his line, sauing that the one was placed amongst the gods in heauen, and the other reuerenced as a mortall god vpon earth? Did not he make Coos, the place where he was borne, of an inglorious Iland, a famous countrey, onely by the accesse of other nations, who were brought thither by the report of his wonderfull skill in Physicke? What familiarity had he with Kings? what estimation among the Philosophers of that time, as *Democrates* and others? And to conclude, how was his fame spread vniuersally throughout all Greece? I will not tarrie vpon the recitall of the famous Physitions who haue liued before vs in seuerall ages; as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Paulus Aetius*, *Aegineta*, and others. For it will easily appeare of what credite this noble science of Physicke was in times past, if you consider the insolency and pride of ancient Physitions, whereof many of them disdained the fellowship of Kings, and some of them emboldened onely by the credite of their science purchased amongst men, grew to such impudency, that they would haue ceremonies and rites performed vnto them as vnto gods. One such was *Themison Cyprius* the daintie of *Antiochus*, another was *Thessalus* whom *Galen* maketh mention of, who went about to innouate and change the method of Physicke set downe by *Hippocrates* and others. But the most famous of all was *Menecrates* the Syracusan, who foolishly vsurped the name of *Iupiter*, ostentimes boasting, that by his Art he could breathe life into mortall men, after the manner of *Iupiter*: which arrogant title the people neuer went about to derogate from him, but rather supposed that it was deserued on his part, because he cured many of the falling euill, which disease especially reigned in his time. This *Menecrates* in a certaine epistle which he wrote to *Philip* the King of Macedon, vseth these words: Thou art King of Macedon, and I of Physicke: it lyeth in thy power at thy pleasure to destroy men which enioy their health, and in mine to preserue sicke men, and restore dead men to life, and to keepe the health of men vnspotted, euen vnto their old age, if they will obey me. Vnreasonable surely and monstrous was the pride of this man; and it was so fed with the applause and approbation of his citizens who wondred at his rare cunning, that he marched in the City with a traine of gods after him: one in the habite of *Hercules*, another in the shape of *Mercurie*: another tooke vpon him the forme of *Apollo*, and he himselfe supereminent in the midst resembling *Iupiter*, wore a purple robe, and a crowne of gold vpon his head, and held in his hand a mighty scepter. The opinion of this Science did so possesse the minds of the people in those dayes, that they imagined the professor of the same to be sent immediatly from heauen, for the commodity of the whole countrey, and for the preseruation of mankinde: which made them not to doubt to do vnto them all superstitious reuerence that might be; whereof grew this excessiue pride, which hath arrested as it were the minds of many Physitions. I would not wish that the Physitions of our time should draw this vnto an example, but rather with all lowlinesse to visite euen the poorest, when their helpe is required. For seeing the life of the most miserable vassal is as deare in the sight of God, as the life of the most renowmed Monarch, shall not the Physition looke to haue a shrewd checke at Gods hand, if he either hath proudly denied his helpe to the poore, or negligently visited them? I will not descend into this common place,

though

though (to ſpeake the truth) the arrogancy of many of our Phyſitions might giue vs ſufficient occaſion, wiſhing them to leaue off to imitate the ſwelling inſolency of *Menecrates* and the reſt, and to tract rather in the ſteps of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, of whom it is thus written: that they neuer diſdained to ſhrowd themſelues vnder the ſimpleſt roofe in their countrey, to do the pooreſt man good: and as they themſelues ſaid (beſides the glory that they purchaſed by their courteous benignity) they added alwayes to their cunning, and by experience confirmed their Art and knowledge, which might well ſtagger, if you reſpect the infinite variety of diſeaſes, and the ſtrange diuerſities of mens diſpoſitions. And truly if nothing elſe, yet the enriching of their knowledge, which is gathered eſpecially by long experience, might be cauſe good enough to attract and draw them to lay hold of any occaſion to go to the diſeaſed perſon. And in mine opinion, the neglecting of this, which proceedeth either from couetouſneſſe or pride, hath bene the onely cauſe, that euen from the beginning there haue bene reckoned ſo few good Phyſitions. For (exempt onely *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Auicen*, *Ægineta*, *Aetius* and *Soranus*, though the number of common Phyſitions hath bene great) you ſhall not find any that haue climed vp to the perfection of their ſcience: nay farre from that which might chalenge the fift or ſixt place. Which although ſome men will aſcribe to the laborious difficulty & confuſed vaſtnes of this Art eſpecially; yet I dare boldly affirme, that there hath not bene, nor is, any ſuch blocke or ſtay, which hath impeached ſo much their endeuours, as the defect of experience. And truly I cannot more fitly compare our Emperiques and practitioners, then to him that purpoſeth to be a ſea-man and traueller, who though he ſtudiouſly ſtriueth to attaine to the perfectiõ of his Art, though he carefully buſieth himſelfe about the coſmographicall maps, though he induſtriouſly peruſeth the bookes of Nauigation, nay (which is more) though he conferre diligently with very expert ſaylers: yet when he hath forſaken the quiet hauen, and launched out intó the rough ſeas, and hath taken vpon him the gouernment of the ſhip, when he ſhall behold ſo many horrible mountaines of water, the roaring of ſo many huge waues, and the outraging ſurges of the diſquieted monſter; he will then confeſſe, that he onely dreamed before, when he imagined of thé courſe of the ſeas; that his bookes were lame ſchoolemaiſters, that the tales of his cõpanions were a great deale leſſe then the things themſelues: when he ſhall caſt vp his eyes, and thinke that euery ſtarre which he had hoped to haue vſed as guides and directions, had threatned his ruine and deſtruction: when he ſhall looke downe, and tremble at the riſing of euery waue: when he ſhall turne him about, and with great feare ſeeke to eſchew thoſe rocks, which he had read were couched in that part of the ſea: and to conclude, when he ſhall conſider the hugeneſſe of the Ocean ſea, and the ſmalneſſe of his barke, he will thinke ſure the leaſt perrie or gale were of force to ouerwhelme him, notwithſtanding his great cunning he had thought he had gained on the land. Euen ſo fareth it with our common Phyſitions, who while they containe themſelues within the compaſſe of their little ſtudie, where they do as it were *è tabula pictos ediſcere morbos*, where they perceiue their ſcience redacted into a method, where they ſee *Galen* reaching his hand vnto them, to leade them through the whole body of Phyſicke, by whom

they

they are taught the constitution of the body, the diuersitie of temperatures, the variety of diseases, the causes, signes, and symptomates of the same; they straight way imagine, that they haue runne the race, and that they haue acquired as much knowledge as becometh an Emperique. But after that, when they shall go into the commonwealth to practise, when they shal meet with diseases which *Galen* neuer dreamed of, when they shall view the maruellous and secret affections and properties of mens bodies, the sudden and momentanie changes of the same (which a man can scarcely follow with his minde,) when they shall perceiue that in respect of the strange temperature of the body, and the violent alteration of the same, they scarcely can aime at the disease, when they shall strike vpon so many rockes, besides their great paines and watchfull industrie: will it not (thinke ye) amaze them? will they not confesse then that their Art is vnperfect? will they not acknowledge (thinke you) that as experience was the ancient beginner of Physicke, so that now it is the true and sincere accomplisher of the perfection of the same? Since therefore the case so standeth, that Art is weake without practise, and that (as *Galen* saith) experience is gotten *longo rerum vsu:* let the Physition (if he preferre not lying fame and vile lucre before true and absolute knowledge) let him, I say, that his minde may be enriched, not leaue the poorest house vnfrequented. But to say the truth, nothing derogateth so much from the excelling in their science, as doth the opinion of perfection, which is especially gotten by the iudgement of the multitude, the peruerse determiner of things. For, when a man knoweth his name to flie amongst them, he sitteth still and admireth himselfe, thinking then, that he hath studied enough both for himselfe and his countrey, when he hath gotten his name enrolled amongst the number of excellent Physitions, by that ignorant and vnaduised register. I haue spoken this by the way, and the interiecting of these few lines hath not made me to forget (good reader) that before I discourses of the glory of this science, and how it hath bene accounted of in times past: the dignity whereof, though it be something lessened and empaired, (which whether it hath happened by the ignorance of our Physitions, or by the sinister opinion of the world, I will not now discusse:) yet if we will vprightly weigh with our selues, we may perceiue that the iudgement of men hath not any whit detracted from the true dignity of the thing it selfe. For truly, what can be more noble, then to preserue the body of man in a good estate, which of the Philosopher is termed, a little world, in respect of the variety of his seuerall functions? What can be more excellent, then to be able to maintaine and keepe in order that best workmanship of God, and (which is more) to correct, reforme, and amend it, and as it were a cunning pilote to gouerne and rule it as a litle vessell cast out into the great Ocean, subiect to I know not how many rockes and dangers, if it be not vprightly weilded? And seeing there is nothing giuen vnto vs of God more acceptable then the health of the body, how honorably must we thinke of the meanes by which it is continued, and restored if it be lost? *Pyrrhus* the King of Epire did sacrifice vnto no other god or goddesse, but only vnto Health, to whō he erected a famous temple in his owne country, calling it *Templum Sanitatis*. He contemned, or at the least neglected all oracles, which other Princes busily sought after, as predictions of the euents & successes

of

of the battels which they attempted, or any other the like enterprise. He craued nothing at the hand of the gods, but onely the fruition of his health; thinking that industry and diligence meeting with the health of the body, were able to atchieue any thing, were it beset with neuer so many dangers. And in mine opinion, (as the Historian very grauely discourseth) men do foolishly erre, when they complaine of nature, for limiting the age of man within the compasse of so few yeares, as three or foureſcore: when as truly, if the matter were well expended, we would confesse, *Industriam potius quàm tempus deesse* (as he saith,) and that there is no Art or science, be it neuer so difficult, but might be perfectly knowne within that short precinct, if the greater part of our life did not passe and vanish away in darknesse, (slouth and ignorance drowning and ouerwhelming in vs all light of nature,) or if the course thereof were not interrupted and cut off by vntimely death, which is hastned on our parts by our inordinate and heedlesse liuing. The yong man flourishing as it were in the Aprill of his age, cockereth in himselfe, a foolish imagination of his owne lustinesse, aud reputeth it as a discredite vnto him to seeme to feare the approach of any disease, leauing the prouident gouernment of the body to decrepite and withered old age. In the meane time he layeth the reines vpon his affections, and exposeth himselfe to any inconuenience: either he weltereth in idlenesse, or is tyred with immoderate exercise, or (which is incident specially to that part of our age) he admitteth vnseasonable watchings, surfetting banquets, and the vnsatiate executing of the follies of *Venus*; thinking indeed that there is nothing lesse agreeing vnto youth and adolescency, then to be pliant and obedient to any commendable and wholesome method of life: yea many of them are of this mind, that the time of their your is infamoussly ouerslipped, when they do not rush in their voluptuous and inordinate demeanour, at what time the lustie prime of to their age doth somewhat enable & support them. And if at any time they be ouertaken with any infirmity (which often happeneth) as vnwilling to be beholding to the science of Physicke, they leaue it to be worne away by the strength of their body; which indeede I confesse hideth many diseases, and for the time taketh away the sense of thē, but it neuer vtterly extinguisheth any. For although in the infancy of the infirmity, in respect of the weaknesse of it, it is easily depressed and ouermaistered by the valour of the body (which in youth is something puissant and forcible:) yet when age coming on with his stealing steps, or else rectlesse life doth detract from the force of the one, and maketh way for the other to spread and gather power, the disease being as it were the surueyour, possesseth the whole bodie, and at the last procureth his vtter subuersion. And many times it hapneth that a disease breaketh out in old age, the cause whereof perhaps was giuen in our youth. And it fareth with vs as it doth with them that are bitten with the little serpent of Arabia, which striketh a man, but so secretly that he neuer feeleth it, neither doth he know it but by the wound which sheweth it selfe a long time after the foundation thereof was layed. The opinion that the ancient Physitions had of the effect of Snow-water is of force to perswade this, who haue written, that if snow resolued into water be drunke of a young child, it will as it were maintaine warre against naturall heate, and that with such continuance, as it will not shew his effect, vntill he hath attained vnto

extreme

extreame old age. I do not altogether beleeue this, although the great cold which is naturally in that water, may leade me to thinke, that it is of a mighty operation. But there is nothing more certaine then this, that many men reposing too much trust in the strength of their bodies, and so being carelesse in gainstanding and resisting the beginnings of maladies (which their dissolute order of life hath begotten and ingendred) haue bene yoked by old age before the course of their yeares did require it, and haue brought it so to passe, that their bodies haue bene nothing else but storehouses and mãsions of diseases. Which kind of men I may well compare to an euill and negligent tenant, who being setled in a faire dwelling house by his land-lord, suffereth it to ruinate, and in the end to fall vpon his owne head for want of repairing: so they, when God hath bestowed their bodies vpon them as gorgeous palaces or mãsion houses, wherein the mind may dwell with pleasure and delight, do first by this euill demeanour shake and discrase them, and then being altogether carelesse of repairing them, do suffer them to run to destruction, or else while they go about too late to vnderprop them declining to ruine, (as he that is lodged in an old cabbin, feareth lest with euery puff of wind it should be ouerturned) so they quake at the least alteration of the body, and at euery litle paine do expect a finall dissolution: then they will confesse vnto you, that while they rioted vnaduisedly in their youth, they did but build matter for repentance in age. And what do they else but by their examples giue vs to learne, that as the interception and preuenting of diseases is very auailable, which carieth a man throughout his race with pleasure and delight, euen so nothing cometh more neare vnto the goodnesse thereof, then (if by chance when we be plunged into any disease) carefully to prouide that the beginning therof may be impeached: the which that thou mayest the better do, I haue (good reader) for thy benefit collected out of sundry Authors, as it were a breuiary or abridgement of Physick; & together with those deductions, I haue enterlaced experiments of mine owne, which by long vse and practise I haue obserued to be true. Throughout the whole booke I haue bin more curious in prescribing the sundrie curations and waies to helpe the diseases, then in explaning the nature of them: my reason was, because if my books should come to the hands of the vnlearned, a litle would suffice (the former being more necessary.) Againe, I knew that the learned would not be contented or satisfied with it, though it had bene neuer so great: and yet I haue not omitted any necessary signe, that the disease may appeare easily to any capable braine. I shall seeme boldly to haue aduentured the Edition of this labour, seeing that I shal runne into the babble of our countrey Physitions, who thinke their Art to be discredited, when it is published in a base tongue; and againe, are loath to haue the secrets of their science reuealed to euery man. Indeed I know that vnder some colour they may obiect somewhat, but yet they may vnderstand, that I haue followed the example of many learned Physitions, both of our Englishmen and other countrimen also, who published their practises in their mother tongue, and in other countries, especially it is so rife and common, that in Italy and France you shall not find any learned Physition that hath not written as much, (nay rather more) in his owne countrey language, then in Latin: yea we haue many booke in Physicke, that

haue first bene set out in French and Italian, and afterward for the commodity of other Nations, haue bene translated into Latine, and so made generall, which before the writer had as it were bequeathed to his countreimen. And no doubt they were all touched with an especiall care to profite their owne countrey, being willing that all men (as indeed it concerneth all) should reape the commodities of their labours. For I cannot see how that saying of *Quintilian* can be verified in this one Art (which is this) That then all Artes should be truly happy, when the professours of the same should onely iudge of them: but I haue alwaies bene of this minde, that it behoueth euery man to be cunning in his owne constitution, and to know so much as may serue to forestall the coming of many ordinary diseases, which commonly light vpon the ignorant: yea and sometime to be able to chase away a malady when it hath already caught hold of the body: my reason is, both because euery man may iudge best of his owne bodie, and perceiue the declinings and alterations of the same. And againe we know, how many haue died, and do die continually for want of helpe, (the Physition being not alwaies at their elbow) whereas in the beginning of their sicknesse, a little knowledge might haue stopped the passage of the infirmity. In the old time when Physicke was brought vnder no forme, but consisted only of a few experiments which passed from hand to hand, yong children, together with other Artes, did receiue certaine precepts and rules, how to order and gouerne the body, and learned also preseruatiues against poyson, and the receipt of salues to cure any greene wound, and the meanes to helpe certaine ordinary diseases, which (indeed) were but few, the age of man being then farre more strong. We reade how *Linus*, who was schoolemaister to *Hercules*, when he had instructed him in the Art of wrastling, (which then was honoured especially) and in Musicke, that he gaue him the receipt of a certaine balme, which he often vsed in many of his aduentures. And what was it that gaue matter to the fable of *Achilles*, how his mother *Thetis* had made his bodie impenetrable, but that knowledge of his which he had learned of his maister *Chyron* the Centaure, who taught him the vertue of an herbe, which to this day beareth his name, by which he healed all the wounds he receiued in battell? What an honorable mention doth *Homer* make of *Machaon* and *Podalirius* the sonnes of *Æsculapius*, in that they could cure themselues when they were at any time hurt of the enemy? This cunning also had *Mithridates*, and *Fabricius* the Romane, he that vanquished *Pyrrhus*, and also *Marcus Curius*, and many other who are recorded by histories, whose names I would remember, if I did not see the enlarging of this common place by examples to be altogether vnnecessary, when there is no man which so farre swarueth from common sense, that will not confesse it to be very expedient and needful for all to know the estate of their owne bodies. I will therefore forsake the prouing of so manifest a thing, and returne vnto thee (good Reader) whom I haue already offended in exceeding the iust length of a Preface, like vnto that wayfaring man, who when he had purposed to vndertake a long iourney, stumbled euen in the very threshold of his doore. But if it be an offence, I did voluntarily runne into it, chusing rather to be carped at of the Rhetorician for vsing too many words, then to be worthily reprehen-

ded

ded of the readers for being too ſparing in vttering the reaſons whereby I was firſt induced to publiſh this my labour. For I know not how it cometh to paſſe, yet we ſee it daily, that ridiculous toyes, and abſurd pamphlets, being put forth without any colour, be neuertheleſſe plauſibly and pleaſingly accepted: wheras a man moued with an honeſt care to profite his countrey, being willing to leaue a teſtimony of the ſame behinde him, when he offereth any worke, if it hath not a delectable ſubiect, it behoueth him to ſhew many graue & ſubſtantiall reaſons of his doings, or elſe they will not yeeld their hoped for benefite, which is to be benignely conſtrued, and peruſed with humanity. So that if a man couet to haue his bookes fauourably accepted and read, he muſt behaue himſelfe ſo in writing, as *Solon* did in framing his lawes, who (as *Plutarch* ſaith) did not faſhion them according to the true line of equity, but ſet downe ſuch as he thought the people would willingly obſerue: euen ſo the iniquity of the time hath brought to paſſe, that thoſe bookes which are generally peruſed and read throughout, muſt not ſerue the time, but muſt ſatisfie the opinion of men. A man may eaſily diſcourſe of this, but the fantaſies of men are too variant to preuaile a whit in diſſwading thé. For mine owne part (that I may now end) I haue not ſought nor hunted after any vaineglory by the edition of this my labour, but onely I haue endeuoured by this meanes (being vnable any way elſe) to do ſome good to my countrey-men: which deſire of mine ſhall ſufficiently comfort me, though I want the outward probation of the world. And yet this one thing I would craue at the hands of the learned, that if by chance my bookes come vnder their cenſure, they will either giue them their good word, or elſe ſuffer themſelues to be iudged of by performing the like labour. And as *Martial* pretily ſung;

Cum tua non edas, carpis mea carmina Leli:
Carpere vel noli noſtra, vel ede tua.

Though indeed this ſupplication of mine may rather more fitly be preferred vnto the vnlearned, who thinke they haue gotten a goodly meanes to purchaſe their owne credite, when they can, vnder ſome colour, maligne the doings of any man, as though others well doings were as impeachments to their eſtimations, or the errours of other men the ſubiect of their praiſes. Thoſe kindes of ſerpents (I ſay) which do nothing elſe but picke quarrels with Authors, I would aduiſe them either to ſpeake themſelues, or (if their ignorance will not let them) to lay their fingers on their mouth till other men tell their tale, and not to make their harueſt of other mens offences vnwillingly committed, whileſt they themſelues reſt vnable to do any whit of good. And thus (good Reader) I will abruptly end, expecting the fauourable acceptation of theſe my labours; which expectation of mine if it be not deluded, I ſhall be further encouraged to conſecrate the reſidue of my ſtudies to thy commodity.

Philip Barrough.

OF WEIGHTS.

A briefe declaration of the notes of all those kindes of weights, which are generally vsed, and contained throughout this whole booke, and of the quantity of them.

FOrasmuch as the true and perfect knowledge in compounding of medicines cannot be attained vnto without the knowledge of the quantity of weights, which are at this present day most commonly vsed in making of medicines: I will therefore here briefly declare the vse of them. For seeing the weights of some medicines be iustly and certainly ordained and made, that if any man do chance rashly to erre in the true quantity thereof, he doth much hurt to the body, and many times putteth the life in ieopardie: you must therefore diligently endeuour, and apply your minde to study and consider of the medicines, that so you may haue the more full & perfect knowledge thereof. The notes which I (following the order of other Physitions) haue vsed in this my booke in writing of weights, be those, as followeth.

1. Grana.	*have this note,*	*G.*
2. Scrupuli.		℈.
3. Drachmæ.		ʒ.
4. Vnciæ.		℥.
5. Quar.		*qr.*
6. Libræ.		℔.
7. Semis.		ß.
8. Manipuli.		*M.*
9. Pugilli.		p.
10. Ana.		ana.

A Graine is a barley corne taken out of the middest of the eare.
A Scruple is twenty barley cornes.
Three Scruples containe a Drachme.
Eight Drachmes containe one Ounce.
Quart, signifieth a quart of any thing.
Libra is a pound.
Semis, is the halfe of euery weight.
Manipulus, is a great handfull.
Pugillus, is a small handfull.
And, signifieth of euery one a like much.

THE

THE METHOD OF PHISICKE, CONTAINING THE CAVSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES of inward diſeaſes in mans body, from the head to the foote.

The firſt Booke.

The firſt Chapter; of Headach.

GALEN the prince of Phiſitions affirmeth, that there are onely three ſundry paines in the head: whereof the one is called of the Greeks κεφαλαλγία, *Cephalalgia*, & of the Latins *Capitis dolor*; the barbarous ſort of Phiſitions call it *Soda*: in Engliſh it is called commõly the headach. The ſecond kind is called of the Greekes κεφαλαία, and in Latine likewiſe it is called *Cephalæa*: in Engliſh it may be called a long continuing or inueterate headach. The third is called of the Greeks ἡμικρανία, *Hemicrania* alſo is the Latin name for it: in Engliſh it is called the Migrime. Of the two laſt kinds ſhall mention be made hereafter, for now we will intreate of the firſt kind, declaring only in this chapter, what it is, and what be the generall cauſes thereof, and then in the chapters next following, ſhal the ſignes and cures of each cauſe be declared. Vnderſtand therefore firſt, that *Cephalaigia* is nothing elſe but a laborious and painfull ſenſe and feeling, newly begun in the whole head, through ſome great mutation thereof: this word newly, is added to make it differ from *Cephalæa*, which is an old paine that hath long continued: and the whole head is added to make it differ frõ *Hemicrania*, which occupieth but the one halfe of the head. Note alſo that by the head we meane ſo much as is couered with haire, wherein paine is ingendred, ſometime without the ſcull, and ſometime within: ſometime in all the outward parts, and ſometime in all the inward parts; ſometime not in all, but in one part, as in the arteries onely, or the veines, or ſinewes, or the filmes, or the skin, or in the braine it ſelfe: but theſe differences, as Galen teſtifieth, be very hard to know. But this may eaſily be knowne, whether the paine be within the ſcull or without it, if you conſider well the headach: for if the paine be extended to the rootes and bottome of the eyes, the paine is within the ſcull, for vnto the eyes are certaine branches deriued from the braine, and from the filmes, and other veſſels that are about it: ſo that the paine will quickly

Differences of paine in the head three.

1

2

3

What Cephalalgia or Soda is.

The diuerſitie of places that paine is in.

Whether the headach be within the ſcul or without it.

come from them to the roots of the eyes: but if the paine that is felt, do not extend to the eye rootes, then is the ach without the scull. This paine of the head generally (as also all other paines) is caused of an vnequall distemper coming with humours or without, especially when it is hote or cold; or it is caused by solution of parts coherent, or of both. But as for particular and especiall causes of headach there be very many. For sometime it cometh onely of a simple distemper without any humours, and sometime it cometh through the euill quality of humours, sometime it cometh through great abundance of humours, sometime through humours that stop the passage of the vapours and moisture in the head sometime through windinesse engendred in some part of the head, being weake. Also sometime headach is caused of some disease in the stomacke: sometime of an outward cause, as of heate of the Sunne, of great cold, of drunkennesse, or of some stripe or wound Hereby it appeareth that the headach is engendred of seuen sundry causes, which are to be knowne by their proper signes, whereof we will speake more at large in the chapters following, for in this chapter they shall be but briefly touched. Note therefore that the headach which is caused of a simple distemper without humour, is not easie to be knowne, except a man be well exercised in Phisick, and by much and diligent looking on the griefe: but that paine of the head is most vehement, which is caused of a simple distemper being hote or cold. The headach that is caused of drinesse, is moderate. As for a moist distemper, alone it doth cause no headach, except it be ioyned with heate or cold, or with abundance of humours, or sharpenesse of them. If paine of the head doth come through abundance of humours, contained in one part of the head, or in two, or in all parts, the paine is more vehement that cometh of hote humours or of cold; that which commeth of dry things is more moderate, if there be no manifest heate or cold ioyned with them: as for moist things touching their qualitie, they do cause no paine at all, but with their quantity they may fil the passages, and so cause paine. If abundance of all foure humours equally, or of bloud alone, do cause headach without obstruction and stopping of the passages, it maketh the head heauy and full, as it were stretched out and swolne: but if the multitude of humours be with obstruction, it causeth moderate paine if the obstruction be but little, but if the obstruction be great, there shall be very great paine. Also if the multitude of humours haue a sharpe and biting quality, according to that quality the paine will be pricking and shooting. If with the heauinesse or stretching of the head, there be beating, and as it were a pulse, it betokeneth inflammation in the head: but if the stretching be present without heauinesse or pulse, it declareth abundance of windie spirits, and in this kind of headach there will be noise in the eares. Those that haue headach coming of an externall cause, as of heate of the Sunne, cold of the aire, drunkennesse, stripes, or of any hote sauours, can easily tell themselues the cause thereof. Seeke for signes more particular in the Chapters next following.

Causes of headach generall.

Causes of headach speciall.

Signes of each cause of headach generally.

CHAP. II.

Of headach caused of heate.

VNderstand, that by heate in this chapter is meant a hote distemper without any kind of humour. It is engendred for the most part of the burning heate

heate of the Sunne in Sommer, when any body hath taried long in it. Also it is sometime caused of immoderate moving, or by hote bathes, or by being long nigh the flame of the fire, or through anger, or furiousnes, or last of all through hote diseases, or hote sauours of outward things. The signes which declare headach by burning heate of the Sunne, are, that besides vehement paine, you shall feele their head hote as soone as you touch it, and their skinne drier then it was wont to be; their eyes do looke redde, and they are delighted with the sprinckling or annointing of cold things, and do feele great ease by them. As for the other causes, they may be knowne by relation of the sicke. For the cure of this kinde of headach, you must first prouide that the aire and the chamber where the sicke abideth, be very cold of nature, or else it must be made so by your diligence, as by strewing in the house flowers and branches of cold things (as Roses, Violets, Water-lilly-flowers, and Vine leaues, Bryer boughes, Willow, and such like) Also it will coole the ayre well to sprinckle cold water in the house, or to poure it out of one vessell into another. Great respect must be had to his sleeping, for he must sleepe longer then he was wont to do, he must altogether eschue long watching, and keepe himselfe quiet: he must not retaine his excrements, but auoide them by and by after sleepe if he can, or let nature be helped to expell them by a lenitiue clister, for their retention increase paine in the head. Let him eschue carnall copulation, exercises, and bathes. Let him eschue all perturbations of the mind, especially anger and fury. Let him haue but a little meate, of good digestion, and let it be cold in operation, as is bread dipped in cold water, iuyce of Ptisan, Lettuce, Endiue, Purslaine, flesh of Chickens, Hens or Pigeons, with veriuyce made of Grapes. Fishes are good that come out of stonie riuers, and that are tender. Also Almond milke, Pomgranates, Raisins, and ripe Peares may be giuen to him. He must abstaine from milke, and meates that fume into the head, or that be hard of digestion. For his drinke, let him vse water altogether, if his stomacke will beare it; if not, seeth a little Cinamon in it, or Coriander seede preparate, or mixe with the water, iuyce of soure Pomegranates, or syrupe of Endiue, or *Syrupus Acetosus simplex*, or *Oxysaccharum*: or if they cannot abide that, you may giue them small wine well allayed with water. The paine of the head caused of heate, is cured with such things as do coole without manifest restriction, especially if they be of thinne and piercing substance. Therefore in the beginning nothing is better then to powre on the head good oyle of Roses, made of vnripe oyle, and if a little vineger be added to it, it wil pierce the faster and the deeper. The places that you must poure or annoint it on, is the forepart of the head, where the seame goeth ouerthwart, for it is the thinnest place of the scull, and the seames haue pores in them: also you must vse it on the top of the forehead, where the haire leaueth growing, and on the sides of the temples where the haire groweth towards the eares. The best thing next oyle of Roses, is oyle of Cammomill to be vsed in like wise, especially in those bodies that we would not coole to much, as womens, eunuches, children, and other that haue soft flesh, and are white in colour. If there be need of greater cooling you may adde to the oyle of Roses iuyce of Housleek, or Purslaine, or Knotgrasse, or of vnripe grapes, or Nightshade, or Sorrell, or Psillium, or such like. Vse not iuyce of Pop-

Signes.

Ayre.

Sleepe.

Meate.

Drinke.

Cura.

Oyle of Roses.

Oyle of Cammomill.

pie, or of Mandrake in this cause, for they do hurt: you may make medicines of the former things, or such like, in this sort: ℞. oyle of Roses, ℥.ij. Rose water, ℥.j. strong vineger, ℥.ß. or iuyce of Housleeke, or Purslaine, or Lettuce, ℥.j. and so commixe them. Or thus, ℞. distilled water of Housleeke, Lettuce, and Nightshade, ana. ℥.ij. water of Cammomill, ℥ j.ß. vineger, ℥ j. commixe them and dip a cloth in it, and lay it all ouer the forehead, and the temples where the haire groweth not. But let not this medicine touch the hinder part of the head, for that part cannot suffer cooling without hurt, because the marrow of the backe bone beginneth there. Those medicines which you will vse for cooling, especially in Sommer, must stand a while in very cold water. This also is good for abundance of humours and vapours, that be lifted vp into the head. In like manner also you may vse other oyles that haue vertue to coole, as oyles of Quinces, Violets, Waterlillies, and Gourds. Neither will it be vnprofitable to vse a Liniment made in this sort: ℞. of the mucilage of the seeds of Quinces, and great Mallowes, or of Psillium, ana ℥ iij. iuyce of Purslaine ℥ j ß. iuyce of Nightshade, ℥.ß. oyle of Roses, ℥.j. commixe them, and make a Liniment: or by putting too Waxe and other medicines, make an ointment in this sort: ℞. *vnguenti Populeon*, ℥.j. oyles of Violets and Roses, of each ℥.iij. dry flowers of white Waterlillies, and of red Roses, ana ℈.j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oinment, and annoint it vpon the forehead and the temples. It profiteth also to vse Embrocations (that is, decoctions made of certaine things to poure vpon any member by little and little, or to let it drop downe:) they may be made of Roses, Violets, flowers of Waterlillies, willow leaues, Vine leaues, Purslaine, Barley, and such like. You must not apply stupefactiue things to the griefe, because they coole, not without hurt, and therefore Opium, iuyce of Poppy, and Mandragora are to be eschued. Iuyce of Nightshade also because of his stupefaction is not to be vsed at all, or very little of it at once, as we do vse in the Liniment aforesaid. Also those things that haue manifest astriction and binding, with their cooling, are to be refused, except necessitie require it, and therefore the iuyces of sweet Pomgranates, Quinces and Medlars, are to be auoyded, but iuyce of sowre Pomegranates is good, because it cooleth more. Hitherto we haue declared what medicines are to be vsed in the beginning of this griefe. Afterwards you may vse to mixe with the medicines that do coole and driue backe, such things as do mittigate and digest. Make therefore an Embrocation after this sort: ℞. flowers of Roses & Violets, ana M.ß. leaues of Willow, Cammomill, and Melilot, ana M.j. seeds of Mallowes, ℥.iij. Barley husked ℥.j seeth these in two pound of water till the third part be consumed, and make an Embrocatiõ. Or thus: ℞. Mallow leaues, Violets, Roses, ana pug.ß. the flowers of Waterlillies, ℥. iij. Vine leaues, or the wreathes that they wind about things withall, Purslaine, or Housleeke, of each, M.j. Cammomill, Melilot, Fenugreeke, ana ℥.ij. seeth them as is aboue said, and make an Embroca, adding too a little vineger, especially if the paine be within the scull. Last of all, you may vse most of the discussiue medicins, withdrawing the aforesaid repelling things: such be, Althæa, Dill, Sothernwood, Butter, Cammomill, Barley meale, Fenugreeke, Linseed, Lupines, &c. Of these and such like things you may make quilts, or embrocations, or oyntments, as you list. For inward medicines (espe

A Liniment.

Vnguentum.

Embrocha.

Supefacientia

Note.

Embrocha.

Alia.

cially if the headach be caused of exercise, anger, or such like) minister Iulep of Violets or Roses, or their conserues, or *Manus Christi*; or giue the sicke two or three houres before meate in the morning, ℥.j.ß. of syrupe of infusion of Roses, or of syrupe of Waterlillies, with ℥.ij. or iij. of water of Borage or Cychorie. It is good for the sicke to smell Rose water, mixed with a little vineger: also it is good to snuffe it vp in the nose. *Inward medicines.* *Odours.*

CHAP. III.

Of headach caused of cold.

BY cold, is meant in this Chapter, a cold distemper simply, without the fluxe of any cold humour. This paine in the head is caused of outward cold, as when the aire is very cold, especially when one tarieth in it long time bare headed; as also it may be caused by the sodaine applying of any cold thing to the head. The signes of headach caused of cold, are contrary to those signes that are caused of hote distemper. For in this, though the paine be vehement, yet the head when it is felt, is not hote, and the face and eyes do not looke red, nor their face is not drie and shrunke, but contrariwise full and pale, and their eyes are swolne and swart. Also they neither desire cold things, nor do feele ease by them. Concerning the diet of those that haue this kinde of headach, they must eschue cold ayre, and abide altogether in hote ayre. They must sleepe moderately, but no longer then they were wont. They must vse mouing of the whole body, especially walking and riding Let their bodies be soluble rather then costiue, so that they may each day haue a siege either by nature or by art, as by a suppositarie or a clister. Let them eschue sadnesse, and deepe cogitations, and other immoderate affections of the minde. Let them eschue all meates and drinks that be cold in operation, as milke, fish, and such such like. Let them eate reare egges, and flesh of Hennes, Chicken, Partrich, Phesants, and such like. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne of substance, for that doth moderately extenuate and heate. For the same cause also hote baths are to be vsed; and generally for the cure hereof, you must vse things that be hote in operation. But yet in applying medicines to the head, you must diligently consider the naturall temperature of the braine, for it is such a thing as cannot suffer medicines vehement hote nor yet vehement cold. Therefore (as Galen affirmeth) if oyle of Rew be powred hote vpon the forepart of the head, it healeth the patient perfectly. But if there be neede of greater heating, you may put Pepper or *Euphorbium* into the oyle; or you may mixe some oyle of Pepper or oyle of *Euphorbium* with the oyle of Rew, or in the steed of oile of Rew, you may vse oyles of Laurel, Ireos, Dill, or Cammomil, of Spikenard, *Serpillum*, Marioram, and such like Herewith you may annoint the forehead also, and the nosthrils, and the holes of the eares. Of the aforesaid medicines you may make an oinment after this sort: ℞. oyles of Ireos and Rew, ana ℥.ß. Marioram, Betony, Pepper, ana ℈.j. of *Euphorbium*, gra.v. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint therewith the forehead and the nosthrils: or make an ointment thus: ℞. of the oyle of Rew, Cammomill, and *Nardinum* ana ℥.j. Hysope, Lauender, and flowers of Stæchas, ana ʒ.ß. Masticke and Frankensense, of each ʒ.j. Waxe a little, and make an oyntment. You may sometime ad to it, if you wil, *Castoreum*, ℈.j. Also Embrocations profit much, if they be made

Causa. *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Cura.* *Vnguentum.* *Aliud.* *Embrochæ.*

of flowers of Melilot & Cammomil, Marioram, Origan, Betonie, Sage, Laurel leaues, Stæchas, and suchlike sodden in water, It is good for the sicke to draw vp the vapours of such decoctions by his nostrils. Also a quilt made in this sort profiteth much. ℞. leaues of Laurell, *Serpillum*, and Marioram, ana. M. ß. flowers of Rosemarie, M. j. Rew, M. ß. Cloues and Stæchas, ana ʒ. j. Peniroyall and Calamint, ana. ʒ j. ß beate these to powder, and sew them in silke, or fine linnen cloth, & make a quilt, which must be layd to the head warme, and first sprinkled with vineger. It is good also to vse a pomander made in this sort: ℞. of *Storax calamita*, ʒ ij Cloues, Maces, wood of Aloes, ana. ʒ. ß Lauender, ʒ. ij. *Gallia moschata*, ʒ j ß. of Musk and Amber, ana. gra. iij. powder them and searce them, and with water of Marioram, and *Storax liquida* as much as shall suffice, make pomanders.

Sacculus.

Pomum odoriferum.

CHAP. IIII.

Of headach caused by drinesse or moisture.

By drinesse is meant in this place a drie distemper of the quality alone, and by moisture, a moist distemper of the bare quality. Neither of these qualities alone, except heate or cold be ioyned with them, do cause any headach at all (as *Galen* teacheth in the 5. Chapter of his first booke *de Symptomatum causis*) Therefore we do not make mention here of these distempers, as though headach might be caused of them alone, but that the studious in Physick might haue store of medicines, when headach cometh of heate and drinesse, or moisture with heat, or when cold mixed with drinesse or moisture causeth headach. Headach through drinesse is caused through drinesse of the aire, or by drie medicines, by hunger, exercise, lecherie, and perturbations of the minde. And headach of moisture, is caused by moistnesse of the aire, or by moistning medicines, by baths, hote waters, and other things that moisten ouermuch. Drinesse is knowne by these signes, if there come few excrements, or none at all out of the nose: if the eyes be hollow, and the patient haue watched much before: these be signes of headach of drinesse. Also in it the skinne of the head is drier when it is felt, then it is wonted to be, and some drie diet hath bene vsed. But in this kind, drie medicines do not ease the paine, but rather increase it. Moistnesse is knowne by these signes; much filth cometh out of the nose, the eies be puffed vp and swolne, and the patient sleepeth much: but of this distemper alone, there doth no headach ensue. Those that haue headach caused of drinesse, let them remaine in a moist aire, and let them eate meates that do moisten, and that be of good iuyce, as the yolkes of egges, Cocks stone, and the broth of them, Phesants, Partrich, and such like things, that do nourish much and moisten. Let them drinke thinne wine allayed with water: let them sleepe largely: let them eschue motion of the body and exercise, and vse quietnesse and rest: let them eschue carnall copulation, hunger, thirst, and all things that do drie: let them vse baths of sweete waters that are warme: let them be merry, and eschue all other perturbations of the minde. If headach be caused of moisture, you must vse the contrarie diet to this that is before prescribed (that is, all such things as do drie, which you may easily know by that which hath bene said before.) For pain of the head caused of drinesse, you must annoint the former seame

Causa.

Signa.

Victus.

Curatio.

ſeame of the head with oyle of ſweet Almonds, or with oyle of Gourds, or with oyle of Violets and Cammomill mixed together. It is alſo good to drop ſome of theſe oyles into the noſtrils. You may alſo mixe with the ſayd oyles Gooſe greaſe, Hens greaſe, Calues greaſe, or freſh butter, after this ſort: ℞. oiles of Violets and Waterlillies, ana ℥ iiij Calues ſuit, Hens greaſe and freſh butter, ana ℥. ij. commixe them, and make a Liniment, and therewith annoint the head. Furthermore, Embrocations profit not a little, if they be made of Violets, Mallowes, and other herbes that haue vertue to moiſten. Againſt headach cauſed of moiſture, you muſt vſe medicines cleane contrary to the aforenamed, which muſt differ according to the heat or cold which is ioyned to the moiſture. You may finde ſufficient ſtore of ſuch remedies out of the former Chapters. *Linimentum.*

CHAP. V.

Of the headach cauſed of bloud.

Hitherto we haue ſpoken of the cure of headach which cometh through alteration and diſtemper of the bare qualitie; but now we will ſpeake of that which is cauſed of fulneſſe, and abundance of bloud. We call plenitude in this place that which the Greekes call in their tongue *plethora*; it chanceth when all the foure humours be increaſed in their proportion, or when bloud alone doth abound. This kind of headach is cauſed of all ſuch things as do ingender great abundance of humors in the body, as meates and drinks of great nouriſhment being plentifully taken: as alſo the neglecting and omitting of exerciſes, baths, ſweatings, and other natural and artificiall vacuations, be cauſes of the ſaid plenitude. The ſignes be theſe: the face and the eyes be ruddie, the veines are ſwolne, ſo that the leaſt and ſmalleſt may eaſily be ſeene: the pulſe is great & vehement, the vrine reddiſh and thick, the veines of the temples beate, the paine in the head is a heauineſſe. Concerning diet, let the ſicke be in a cold and dry aire, let him eſchue fleſh, reare egges, and ſuch things as nouriſh plentifully: let him vſe Ptiſan made of barley, or Aliaca made of barley: let him vſe cold herbs, as Endiue, Scarioll, Purſlaine, Lettuce, and ſuch like: let him eſchue wine, and let him drinke water wherein a little Cinamon or Barley hath bene ſodden: let him vſe meane exerciſe: let him be rubbed: let him alſo vſe bathing often, but ſo that his body be firſt emptied, and the patient free from a feuer. Let his ſleepe be meane: let him be merry and ioyfull: and let him abſtaine from all perturbations of the minde. The cure muſt be begun with bloud letting as ſoone as can be. You muſt open the vttermoſt veine, which in the arme is called *Humeralis* or *Cephalica*: it muſt be on the arme which is of that ſide that the griefe is moſt vehement. For this veine is ſo annexed to the head, that not onely by it you ſhall pull backe bloud into a contrary part, but alſo you ſhall emptie out that bloud by it, as *Hippocrates*, and after him *Galen*, and *Rhaſes* do teach. But if age or weakneſſe do prohibite bloudletting, you muſt vſe boxing: not to the head it ſelfe, but to the parts adioyning, as the ſhoulders and breaſt, to the intent to pull backe the bloud. Theſe being done, you muſt apply to the head medicines that be cold and aſtringent, whereof we haue made mention before ſufficiently in the ſecond Chapter, ſo that they neede not here to be repeated.

What is meant by plenitude. πλήθος. *Cauſe.* *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Curatio.* *Venæ ſectio.* *Cucurbitæ.* *Ventoſe.* *Localia.*

Furthermore, the Physition must haue special regard in this case, that the patient be kept soluble Therefore if the patient be any thing costiue, you may minister this decoction, or some such like: ℞. flowers of Buglosse. Borage, roses & violets, ana M ß the foure great cold seeds husked, ana ʒ.ij. Sebesten, damask proines, of each in number xij. great Raisins, Tamarinds, ana ℥.j. barks of Myrobalanes, *Citrinorum, Indorum, Chebulorum, Emblicorum, Belliricorum,* ana ʒ iij Liquorice, ℥ j. Fumitory, Maidenhaire, ana M.j. *Tamariscus*, Harts toung, ana ʒ.iij. Sene and Polipody, of each ℥.ß. Agarick chosen, ʒ j. ß. Ginger, ʒ ß. Seeth all these in a sufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it and prese it hard. Ad to that decoction Sugar sufficient to make it sweete, purifie it with the whites of egges, and make a potion, whereof the patient shall drink each morning, ℥ iiij fasting. And if so be that the patients costiuenesse require a stronger medicine, then you may adde to foure ounces of the said decoction, ʒ j.j ß. of fine Reubarbe beaten to powder, and Spikenard, ʒ. ß. or you may dissolue it in *Casia fistula*, ℥.j. ß. newly drawne, or ℥ j. of Manna, or of Diaphænicon, ʒ iij. For the same purpose it is good also to minister vnto the patient syrupe of Violets, and *Acetosus simplex*. After this you must apply such medicines to the head, as be able to disperse the remnant of the paine and disease, as be seeds of Mallowes, Fenugreeke, Cammomill, and Melilot flowers. Also oyles of Cammomill, Dill, and such like, whereof the Physition may at his choise make Liniments, Ointments, or Emplaisters in maner aforesaid. Note here further that if much bloud abound after you haue let bloud of the *Cephalica*, you may also strike the veine in the forehead: as also for that purpose it is good to vse clisters sometime very strong, and you may vse frictions and bindings of the neather parts to pull back the humours. Moreouer gargarising and sneesing may be vsed in time conuenient, and boxing in the hinder part of the head, with scarification, at the discretion of the Physition, as occasion and time shall serue.

Decoctum purgans.

Discutientia.

CHAP. VI.

Of headach caused of choler.

HEadach coming of cholericke humours, is caused of all such things as do heate and dry the whole body, and especially the head vnnaturally, that is, such things as do ingender choler, (to wit, care, anger, paine, labour, exercise, watching, abstinence, famine, and eating of meates that be cholericke, as Garlicke, Onions, and such like. The signes be these: the paine is like theirs that haue headach caused of burning heate of the Sunne, but they haue a more sharp and pricking paine, their head is moderatly hote, their face is pale and wanne. Sometime there followeth bitternesse of the mouth, drinesse of the eyes, nose, and tongue. Moreouer this euill chanceth most of all to florishing yeares, a hote complexion, and to them that take ouermuch businesse in hand, and such like. Let the patient abide in a cold and moist aire, which may be procured by art, as is taught before in the second chapter, by sprinkling the floore of the chamber continually with water, or by strewing of flowers and branches that are cold and moist in operation. Let his whole diet be moist, let him eate moist meates that be of good iuyce; giue him Lettuce and Purslaine, and small fishes of fresh waters: Let his drinke be water alone, or water wherein a little Cinamon

Causa.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

hath

hath bene sodden: Let him altogether abstaine from wine: Let him be quiet and vse long sleepes, bathes that be temperate, vnctions are good for him; let him be merrie, and refraine from all perturbations of the minde. The cure must be begun with purging of the cholericke humour straightway, because choler is thin and moueable, and therefore will easily purge out. But if it chance that the cholericke humour doth rest quietly in some part of the body, and so doth waxe hote, and burne that part, and by that meanes doth prohibite hote medicines (as purging things be) then before the purgation you must minister such things as do quench and concoct the heate and burning of choler, that is, such things as do alter it. For digestion that we speake of now, is nothing else but an alteration of the humour that causeth the disease: therefore such medicines must be ministred each morning fasting before you do purge, vntil good concoction appeare in the vrine: for by this meanes choler being concoct, and as it were tamed and made milde, is made so obedient vnto nature, that it will soone without any grief be drawne of the purging medicine to conuenient places that it should auoid by. You shall therefore for a preparatiue vse this or such like medicines: ℞. syrupe of Violets, ℥.j syrupe of Waterlillies, ℥. ß. distilled waters of Endiue, Succorie and Roses, ana ℥.j. commixe them, and let them be drunke in the morning fasting. For this purpose also you may minister Iulep of Roses & Violets, or *Syrupus Acetosus*, or the decoction of seeds of Cucumbers, Gourds, Purslaine, Endiue: rootes also of Endiue and Succorie, Roses, Violets, Waterlillies, Lettuce, Damaske proines, Sebesten, Iuiubes, and such like. You may purge the cholericke humour either by infusion of Wormwood, or of Aloes, or with *Hierapicra* ministred alone, or a little Scammonie mixed with it, or with pilles made of Aloes. Or you shall not do amisse to take of the purging decoction prescribed in the former chapter, ℥.iiij. and to dissolue therein, ʒ.iii. of *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, or as much of *Electuarium de Psillio*, & so minister it. It is good also to minister infusion of Reubarbe, made after this sort: ℞. fine Reubarbe, ʒ.ij. Spikenard ℈ j. cut them small, and infuse them in distilled waters of Endiue, Doddir, and Bugloſſe, ana ℥.j. pure Ale, ℥.ß. the space of twelue houres: then straine it hard, and put thereto of Electuaries *de succo Rosarum* and *Psillio*, ana ʒ.j ß. commixe them and make a purging potion. Also you may vse *Pilulæ aureæ* and *Alephanginæ*, or pils of Reubarb, or of *Hiera simplex*, and such like, or else *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaprunes solutiue*. For them that are delicate you may vse this Bole: ℞. of *Diagridium*, ℈. ß. of Maces, Cinamon and Masticke, ana gr. ij conserue of Violets and Waterlillies, ana ʒ. j. Sugar ar much as sufficeth, and make a Bole. Further, it profiteth now and then to vse clisters made in this or like sort: ℞. Mallowes, Althæa, Endiue, Succorie, Violets, ana M.ß. whole Barley, ℥.j. the foure common small cold seeds, that is, Lettuce, Purcelaine, Endiue, and Scarioll, ana ʒ.iij. Seeth all these in running water to the third part, straine them, take of that decoction ℔ j of the pulpe of *Casia fistula*, ℥.j. of *Hierapicra* ℥.ß. of oile of Violets, ℥ ij oile of Roses, ℥ j of *Mel rosarum*, ℥ j of Salt, ʒ j.ß. commixe all together, and make a clister. After purging of the cholerick humour, you must apply medicines outwardly, which can coole and strengthen the head, whereof you shall find store in the second Chapter. If the sicke cannot sleepe, annoint the forepart of the head with oyles of Water-

Curatio.

Zulapium.

Purgatio.

Dilutum Rhabarbari.

Bolus purgans.

Clister.

Localia.

Sleepe.

lillies, and oyle of Poppie: to them you may for a need adde a little *Opium*, that sleepe thereby may be prouoked. Note, that boxing without scarification and frictions of the armes and legs may be well vsed in time conuenient.

CHAP. VII.

Of headach caused of fleame.

Causa. HEadach coming of fleame, is caused of all such thinges as ingender fleame in the head, as a cold and moist aire, meates that be cold and moist, as fishes, milke, raw herbes, fruite, idlenesse, and sleeping vpon a full stomacke, and

Signa. such other like. The signes hereof be fulnesse and heauinesse of the head, whitenesse and moistnesse of the face. Moreouer the sicke will easily fall asleepe, he is slow, his senses are dull, and his head aboundeth with excrements, as also the signes declared in the third chapter agree with this kind of headach. Let the sick remaine in the aire that is hote and dry by nature, or if that cannot be had, let the aire be made such by certaine odoriferous things, as with Cinamon,

Victus ratio. Frankensence, Cloues, wood of Aloes, and such like. Let his meate that he eateth for the most part be rosted, and let him eate spices with it. For his drinke, let him vse thinne and small wine, let his exercise be meane: to be short, let him

Curatio. vse such diet as is prescribed in the third chapter of this booke. The cure must be begun with extenuation and digestion of the flegmatick humour. Therefore you must minister such medicines as are able to extenuate, make thinne, cut and deuide humours: such be *Mel Rosarum*, *Oximel simplex* and *compositum*, and *Scilliticum*, syrupe of Stæchades, distilled waters of Hysope, Betonie, Marioram, Sage, and such like; minister therefore vnto him a medicine made in this sort:

Zulapium. ℞. of *Oximel Scilliticum*, ℥.j. of syrupe of Stæchades, ℥.ß. of distilled waters of Hysope, Parcely and Marioram, ana ℥.j commixe them and make a potion. Or if the vsing of syrupes & distilled waters do not like you, you may minister this

Decoctum extenuans pituitam. or such like decoction. ℞. of the roots of Fenell, Parcely and *Asparagus*, ana ℥.j, rootes of Piony, ʒ.ij. seeds of Annise, Fenel, *Siler montanum*, ana ʒ.iij. *Stichados*, Origan, *Serpillum*, Marioram, Calamint, Betonie, Sage, ana M.ß. fine Cinamon, Mace, ana. ʒ.j.ß. Seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it, and adde Sugar sufficient to make it sweete, clarifie it with the whites of egges, then put thereto syrupe of Hysope, and *Oximel simplex*, ana ℥.iij. commixe them all together, and make a potion. When the humours

Purgatio. are extenuate, and made thinne and prepared to be purged, then must such medicines be ministred, as are able to purge fleame, for the which cause let the sick

Pilulæ. haue these pilles ministred vnto him: ℞ *Pilularum cochiarum*, ʒ.j ß. *Pilularum è hiera composita*, ʒ.j. *Pil. Alephanginarum*, ʒ ß. Agarick made into trochisks, ℈.ij. *Myrobalanorum*, *Chebulorum*, ℈.j. fine Turbith, ℈.ß. Stichados, & Ginger, ana. gr.v. Mastick, gr. vij. seeds of Piony in number iij. *Castorei* g.iiij. with Lauender water make pilles. It is good for them that are thus affected, to be purged, not once onely, but twice or thrice, because the grosse and clammy humours will not straight follow a suddaine purgation, but they must be drawne out by little and litle with often purging. Also clisters are good, not onely because they emp-

Clyster. tie out such things as are contained in the intestines, but also for that they pull backe such humours and vapours as do ascend to the head. For clisters there-

fore

fore the decoction before prescribed is good if you take therof ℥.xij.& dissolue therein *Benedictæ laxatiuæ*,℥.ß.*Electuarij Indi maioris*, ʒ.iij.Diaphænicon,ʒ ij. *Mel Rosarum*,℥.j.oiles of Laurell and Rew,ana.℥.j ß.*Sal gemmæ*,ʒ j.commixe them together,and make a clister. After the whole bodie is purged, you must minister such medicines as can purge the head,as be gargarises made in this sort: ℞.long Pepper and Nutmegs,ana. ʒ.ß. seed of Stauisacre and Pellitorie, ana. ℈.ij Mustard seed, Origan,ana. ℈ j beate them to powder, and put thereof in a linnen cloth, and chew it, or with Masticke or Hony make Trochiskes like Lupines, and let the sicke chew one of them almost halfe an houre. Also the head may be purged by the iuyce of Marioram,*Blitum*,coleworts,and such like. You may also for this purpose minister gargarismes made of the distilled waters of Hysope,Betony,Origan,with *Hierapicra* and *Oximel compositũ*,or in this sort: ℞.Pellitorie,long Pepper,ana.ʒ.j.ß.seed of Stauisacre,ʒ.ß.Marioram, Peniroyall, Hysope, Origan, Betonie, ana.M.ß. Seeth all these in sufficient quantity of water vnto the third part, straine it, and adde to the licour *Mel Rosarum*, ℥.j ß.*Oximel scilliticum*,℥.ß.commixe all,and make a gargarise.Also medicines to prouoke sneesing, are good in this case. You may make them after this sort: ℞.Mariorã,ʒ.j Nigella,ʒ.ß.Cloues,white Pepper,Cubebs,ana ℈ j.Nurmegs, Graines, *Castoreum*, *Heleborus albus*,ana.℈.ß.beate them into very fine powder, and prouoke sneesing therewith.For them which are rich,you may adde Muske and Amber,ana.gr.ij. It profiteth also to hold hot and sweet odours to the nose of the patient,or a Pomander artificially made, such a one as we prescribed in the end of the third Chapter. Further,you may take *Nasalia*(as they call them) things to be put in the nose,sharp at one end and great at the other,like a steeple, after this sort: ℞.Stauisacre, Pellitory and white Pepper,ana.℈.ß. Nigella,Nutmegs,ana.℈.ji. *Heleborus albus*, ℈.ß.powder them, and with Rosin and Waxe make nasales.After the purging of the head,you may vse ointments, embrecations,dry quilts, and such like other medicines to disperse the remnant of the humor remaining in the head, whereof there be examples sufficient in the third Chapter before.You may commodiously minister inwardly,Cubebs condite,or *Diambra*,*Diamoscha*, *Aromaticum rosaceum*, *Diacuminum*, *Dianthos*, *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*,*Diacorum*,conserue of Marioram, Rosemary,Betony, with syrupe of Stichados. Or minister these Lozenges which are specially good. ℞.powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, *Dianthos*,ana.℈.j Cubebs,Maces,of each ʒ.ß. wood of Aloes,Cloues, and Fenell seed,ana.℈.ß. fine Cinamon,℈.ij. Stichados,℈.ß. with Sugar molten in the distilled waters of Piony flowers and Lauender make lozenges.And thus much for the cure of headach caused of flegmatick humors. But if so be that headach be caused of a melancholy humour,then you must prescribe such diet, and vse such cure as shall be declared in the Chapter of melancholy, or madnesse: and therefore it should be superfluous to intreate hereof in this place:repaire therefore for the cure of headach coming of melancholy,vnto the 28. chapter of this booke following.

Gargarise.

Gargarisme.

Sternutamentum.

Nasalia.

Localia.

Lozenges.

Of headach coming of melancholy.

CHAP. VIII.

Of headach caused of windinesse.

Causa.

IF headach be caused of windinesse,the diet vsed before was such as distingender wind;besides,the nature of the body, & other circumstances were such as

Signa. were apt to ingender winde. The signes be these, if there be felt distention and stretching in the head without heauinesse & beating, and if there be a sound and noyse in the eares, then doth it betoken windinesse in the head. The diet of the patient, must altogether be such as doth not ingender windinesse. For the cure, if the windinesse be not onely bred in the head, but doth ascend from some part beneath, first of all you must vse such medicines as do repell and driue backe: such be vineger, Pomegranate rinds and flowers, Wormewood, Melilot, Mints, Plantaine, Walwort, *Bursa pastoris*, Nutmegs, Purslaine, Housleeke, Lawrell leaues, and such like: which being moderately vsed a while, you must then adde to those repulsiue things, some such medicines as do mitigate, concoct, and digest, as be Fenugreeke, Linseed, Cammomil, yolkes of egs, Saffron, Hens grease Goose grease, &c. Last of all adde discussiue medicines, as oiles of Dill and Rew, Barley meale, Lupines, Lilly rootes, Nigella &c. It is good therefore first of all to empty the bellie with a strong clister, but that must be made of a decoction that doth dissolue windines, by seething in water Annise seeds & caraway seeds, Fenel seed, Comin, dry Figs, bran, and such like: herein you must dissolue *Benedicta laxatiua* ℥ iiij. or *Electuariũ Nidum* in like quantity, or *Diaphænicon*, ℥ iiij or *Diacatholicon*, or *Hierapicra*, ℥ vij. Such kind of clisters do not onely purge the intestines, and the parts about the liuer, but do also pull backe such things as ascend to the head. Afterward you must strengthen the affected member, that it do ingender winde no more, whether it be the stomack, the liuer, the splene, the intestines, or any other member: which being done, if heate abound in the head together with the windines, then apply oile of Roses, which is both repulsiue, digestiue & discussiue, & adde to it vineger, which is both repulsiue & discussiue also, & doth extenuate besides. Also Rose water or iuyce of Purslaine, Knotgrasse or Nightshade may be vsed & applied with a litle vineger. If there be cold in ỹ head with the windines then vse oile of Cammomil or Dil, mixed with a litle vineger or if the griefe increase, apply the iuyce of Rew with vnegar and oile mixed together, or apply the iuyce of the root of flower-de-luce with vineger: or iuyce of Laurel berries & Rew mixed with vineger, is good to be applied. Likewse bitter Almonds beaten with vineger and oile, and applied to the forehead in a linnen cloth, are very good when the griefe doth first begin to increase. And if you had rather vse dry quilts, you may make them at the first of *Milium*, Roses, Willow leaues, Knotgrasse, Nightshade & Purslaine, & so apply them to the forehead, & forepart of the head. Afterward you may ad to the aforesaid Marioram, *Serpillũ*, Hisope, Rew tender leaues of Laurell, *Cyperus*, and such like. It is good also to vse odors & smels, as *Castoreũ*, Musk, Amber, & such like. To prouoke sneesing & to minister inwardly to the sick is good, either *Diacuminum* or *Dianisum*, ℥ j. or as much Triacle or *Mithridatum* profiteth. But if the windines be caused through imbecillity of some parts of the head it selfe, then you shall not need to vse repulsiue medicines, but rather concoctiue and discussiue medicines, such as are before declared. As for inward medicines, they auaile or profit little in this case.

Victus ratio.

Cura.

Clyster.

Localia.

CHAP. IX.

Of the headach caused of the stomacke.

Hitherto we haue declared the causes, signes and cures of headach caused principally in it selfe: now it remaineth that we intreate of paine in the head which

which cometh by consent. And first of that headach which cometh through euill affection of the stomacke. And that is caused most commonly when some sharpe humour aboundeth in the stomacke, especially in the mouth of it, from whence the corrupt vapours arising do ascend to the head. It may be known by the gnawing and biting paine that they feele which haue that headach, and by the desire to vomit that the patient hath: especially if the mouth of the stomacke be affected. Moreouer in this kind of headach if the sicke fast, and suffer hunger long, the paine is more vehement, for through long abstinence the malice of the humour increaseth. You must cure those that are thus grieued, not by applying remedies to the head, but to the humours in the stomacke, which raise vp vapours to trouble the head. Therefore you must with speed purge the noysome homours that are in the mouth of the stomacke. They may be purged out by drinking of warme water, if so be the patient can easily vomit: if not, he must thrust his finger or a feather into his throate, and so prouoke the stomacke to vomit. Note that yellow or pale choler, because of his naturall lightnesse, doth readily ascend to the mouth of the stomacke: but the humours that be flegmatique, or soure, or salt, do rather remaine in the middest of the stomacke then in the mouth of it. It is best when such humors are in the bottome of the stomacke, for then they will easily auoid the stomacke, and passe into the guts. It is worst of all when noysome humours de cleaue so fast to the filmes and tunicles of the stomacke, and do so furre them, that they can scarcely be scoured out. Therefore if any humour doth furre the tunicles of the stomacke, minister *Hierapicra*, which is a soueraigne medicine therefore. And after purging, let the patient haue good meates, easie of digestion, and wholsome for the stomack. And for as much as lacke of good digestion, and weaknesse of the mouth of the stomacke, be the greatest causes of increase of noysome humours in the stomacke, it must be prouided that good digestion be procured, and that the mouth of the stomacke may be strengthened by such medicines as be astrictiue, and haue vertue to strengthen, whereof you shall finde plentie hereafter in the third booke, and therefore it were superfluous to recite them here. As we haue in this Chapter spoken of headach caused of the stomacke, and referred the cure to the third booke, so vnderstand likewise if headach be caused of the disease of the liuer or splene, or any other members: for the affects of those members being cured, the headach ceasseth.

Causa.
Signa.
Curatio.
Hierapicra.
Note.

CHAP. X.

Of headach caused by drunkennesse.

THe causes and signes of drunkennesse are euident enough, chiefly hote wines and strong drinkes are causes thereof, for that they fill the braine with vapours, and that so much the more (as Galen said) if the braine be hote by nature: sometime also hote humours ascending to the head, do cause drunkennesse. The cure of drunkennesse generally consisteth in two points: that is, in euacuation and refrigeration. Therefore if the wine be yet vndigest, & do flow in the stomacke, cause him that hath the headach to vomit, by drinking of hote water. But and if the headach do remaine after digestion, you must vse medicines that doe refrigerate, and driue backe vapours which ascend to the

Causa.
Curatio.
Warme water and a litle syr. Acetose commixed, causeth vomit.

head: as is oyle of Roses alone, or mixed with vineger, or with iuyce of Iuie, or Coleworts. Also the leaues of Coleworts steeped in warme water, and bound about the head, do naturally resist drunkennesse. Moreouer the broth of Coleworts being eaten, is good for that purpose. To preserue one from drunkennesse (as *Aetius* saith) let him eate v. or vij. bitter Almonds fasting, or let him drinke Wormwood wine first of all. But to take away drunkennesse that is present, giue the decoction of Centory the lesse to drinke, or Harts horne, or the seed of Veruaine boyled in water. You must haue a speciall regard, and procure that the patient do sleepe and rest; which being done all day, at night bathe him in a bath of sweet water, & when thou hast washed him, let him eate meates of good iuyce, but not ouer-hote. Let therefore his food be Prisan broth, soppings made of *Alica*, bread dipped in water, reare egges, and such like. For pot herbs Lettuce is of good iuyce and cooleth, and Coleworts drieth vp vapours. For drinke, let him vse water onely, if he hath bene accustomed thereto, and can well beare it, otherwise giue him small drinke, or a little small white wine. After his meate giue him of a Pomgranate, or a Peare, or a Quince, or Raisins. To conclude, let all his diet be meates of good iuyce, pleasant to the stomacke, and that driue away vapours. Let him abstaine from Dates, for their propertie is to cause headach. And if it chance that of the vapours and humours ascending to the head, there remaine part of them impact and stuffed in the thinne pores, and so do cause headach after two or three dayes, then leaue oyle of Roses, and vse first in steed of it, oyle of Cammomill moderately warme. Afterward apply oyle of Ireos. After that, if need require, you may apply things that heate more, commixing with the oyle of Ireos, oyle of Nard, or *oleum costinum*: or other oyles and ointments of that sort.

Præseruatio.

Victus ratio.

Dates.

Irium.

Nardinum.

CHAP. XI.

Of headach caused by feauers.

IF headach do molest those that haue a Feauer, you must diligently examine and consider, whether the same began at the first beginning of the feauer, or whether it sprong the feauer increasing: for if the headach began not with the first fit of the feauer, but afterward while the feauer increased, and came nigh to the Crisis, then seeke not to remedy it, for it portendeth and foretelleth that vomit or a decretorie fluxe of blood at the nose will follow shortly, as *Hippocrates* declareth in his booke of Predictions, and Galen in his third booke *de Crisibus*, and in his first booke *ad Glauconem, cap. vltimo.* If the headach began at the first with the feauer, it cometh of vapours or humours dispersed abroad through the greatnesse of the feauer, and as it were boiling hot eleuate vp to the head, and partly also through weaknesse of the braine. Therefore if the paine do come of abundance of humours, you must let him bloud after the first or second fit (if nothing prohibit it) especially in lustie bodies, and in such as abound with bloud. Also you must draw the humours a contrary way, & pull them back by sharpe clisters, such as shall be prescribed in the Chapter of *Apoplexia*, and by often binding and much frication in the neather parts. Moreouer you may set cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head, or to the necke. You must apply to the head irrigations and ointments, that haue vertue to repell and driue backe

Causa.

Cura.

backe from it, and afterward you must vse discussiue medicines: last of all, such things as do strengthen the braine. To repell and driue backe, vse oyle of Roses, and other such like as are rehearsed before in the 2. Chapter. Vse them in Sommer time, and in hote complexions, cold and mixed with a little vineger; but in winter season, and in cold complexions, apply them bloud warme. If the feuer be vehement, and ouermuch watching do trouble the sicke, vse irrigations made of Poppie heads, Housleeke, and such like medicines as haue vertue to coole and prouoke sleep, in this sort: ℞. flowers of Violets Waterlillies, and Roses, ana M. j. hulled barley, ℥. j. heads of Poppie, ℥. ß. Housleeke, M. ß. seeth all these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, and make an embrocation. Or if the paine continue vehement, take greene leaues of Henbane or Poppie, with oyle of Roses, a little vineger and crummes of bread; commixe thē, & apply them to the forepart of of the head, and to the forehead. When the braine is sufficiently cooled, then apply those things which can heate the head againe, and to auoyd and disperse the humours that remaine. And therefore you may vse oyles of Cammomill, Dill, or Ireos, or decoctions of Cammomill, or Althæa, or such like. And if the humours be grosse and tough, you may boyle with the aforesaid things *Serpillum*, Peniroyall, Calamint, Mints, or such like. Last of all the head must be strengthened by oyle of Roses, and such like, that is, Betony, Cammomill, Melilot, &c. The rest of the cure of headach caused through the vehemencie of the feuer, is to be sought out in the treatise of Feuers.

Embrocha.

Note.

CHAP. XII.

Of inueterate headach.

Cephalæa both in Greeke and Latine is the name of headach which is exceeding painfull, continuing long and hard to cease, which vpon light occasions hath very sharpe and great fits, so that the patient can neither abide noise, nor loud speech, nor cleare light, nor drinking of wine, nor sauours that fill the braine, nor mouing, but desireth for the greatnesse of the paine to sit or lie quiet in the darke, supposing that his head were stroken with a hammer. Also some of them do feele those things that are about their head, as though they were bruised or racked. In many the paine proceedeth vnto the rootes of the eyes. This disease sometime doth continue painfull alwaies, sometime it hath fits and intermissions, either ordinate or inordinate. For in some there is intermission in the fits, as in the falling sicknesse, so that for a time they seeme to be perfectly whole. This disease doth vexe women more then men, because of their long haire. In some of them the filmes that couer the braine are pained: but in some, onely the filme that couereth the scull is grieued. It is caused of abundance of bloud and other humours, or by the sharpnesse of humours or vapours contained within or without the scull, and inflaming the head, or it is caused through weaknesse of the head. The paine that inuadeth the sicke with grauity and heauinesse, declareth plenitude and abundance of humours: if it come with pricking, gnawing and shooting, it betokeneth sharpnes of humors or vapours: if it beate like the pulses, it betokeneth inflammation: if there be felt distension and bolning in the head without heauinesse or beating, it declareth

Signa.

Causa.

Signa.

windines. But if there be beating with it, there is inflãmation in the filmes of the head: and if there be heauinesse with the distension, then it declareth abundance of humours within the filmes. And if the paine be felt superficially, as it were outward, then it betokeneth that the filme which couereth the scull is grieued. But if it be felt deepe within, the filmes of the braine are vexed. Note that

Note. those that haue paine within the scull, they feele griefe at the rootes of their eyes, because that the tunicles of the eyes haue their beginning, of the filmes of the braine. And if so be that a putrified humour in the head do waxe hotter and hotter, then there is a feuer ioyned with the headach. They also are vexed

Victus ratio. with a feuer, which haue headach caused by inflammation As for diet to be vsed in this griefe, you may easily prescribe it out of the former Chapters, according to the diuersitie of the causes thereof: and therefore I omit it here willing-

Curatio. ly, lest I should vse a fond repetition of one thing often. The cure doth differ according to the diuersity of the cause. For if you finde abundance of humours or vapours to be the cause, if it be ingendred of plenitude of the whole body, you must begin with euacuation of the whole body, And therefore you must

Venæ sectio. let him bloud on the *Cephalica* on the same side, if his strength will suffer it, and no other thing let it. But if the head doth receiue the humours and vapours

Reuulsio. that do ascend, for that it is weake, then you must pull backe the matter vnto the whole body, and so remedie the part affected. Therefore you must vse very sharpe clisters, and bindings of the armes and legges, and many frictions of the neather parts: and sometime also in this case you may let bloud in the arme. And if after that, bloud do seeme still to abound, you may open a veine in the nosthrils, and draw bloud from thence, as much as shall be requisite. Shortly after you must purge the body with *Hierapicra*, or other thinges that are prescribed in the former Chapters. After purging of the whole body, you may safely come to purging of the head, and in the end vse medicines to strengthen it. The head is to be purged with Gargarismes, and with medicines put into the nose, as iuyce of Leekes or of *Cyclaminus*, or such like, which be rehearsed

Localia. before in the seuenth Chapter. To the head it selfe you must first apply things that do repell and driue backe: such be, oyle made of vnripe Oliues, and oyle of Roses alone, or applyed with vineger, also oyle made of Poppy heads and of Iuie berries, and of greene Mints, and such like, whereof we haue spoken be-

Note. fore. But note, if the humours that abound in the head be cold and crude, then apply the former medicines warme; but if the humours abounding be hote and cholericke, then apply those medicines cold. Afterward you must apply those medicines that do discusse and disperse humours, as be oyles of Cammomill and Dill, and such like before rehearsed; but if the humors abounding be thicke and tough, boyle Serpillum, or Peniroyall, or Calamint, or Mints in oyle, and thou shalt extenuate them by applying thereof. Besides, these things do strengthen the part affected, and therefore they are to be vsed vntill the cure be fi-

Verbenaca recta. nished. Aboue all other things Veruaine doth disperse humours, and mightily corroborate the head, especially being greene. Also being drie, and boyled in Ale, rootes and all together, with Serpillum, it doth the like, if the head be annointed therewith. Moreouer if you boile Veruaine alone in oyle, & do sprinkle the head therewith, it helpeth all paine of the head of long continuance, if it

were

were caused of cold, and grosse and viscous humours, as *Galen* witnesseth, *Lib. 2. de Compos. medicam secundum locos.* Also for the same it profiteth much to vse oile, wherein Sowes, called in Latine *Millipidæ*, be boyled. And thus much of the cure of *Cephalæa* coming of plenitude. As for the cure thereof coming of other causes, you may gather it out of the former Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Migrime.

Hemicrania is a painefull euill remaining in one halfe of the head, either on the right half or on the left, and is distinguished by the seame that runneth along in the skull, from the middle forehead to the hinder part of the head: this griefe in English is called the Migrime. This paine cometh often by fits, and in some the griefe is felt without the skull, in some within deepe in the braine, and in some other nigh to the temples in the muscles there. This paine is caused by ascending and flowing of many vapours or humours either hote or cold, either by the veines, or by the arteries, or by both. Sometime they onely proceed from the part contained in the skull, that is, from the braine and his filmes, which thrust out their excrements and superfluities from them; and sometime from the parts of the bodie beneath the head, which send vp corrupt vapours and humours from themselues to the braine. The signes whereby you should know whether vapours or humours do abound, and whether they be hote, or cold, are to be gatherd out of the former chapters: as also to know in what part of the head the griefe is, whether within the scull or without, reade the former Chap. of *Cephalæa.* Onely this I adde here, that if in this disease, the filme that couereth the skul be affected, then is their pain so vehement, that they cannot suffer to be touched with ones hand: so that it seemeth the skin it selfe is affected in this euill. As for their diet what they should vse, & what they should eschue, may readily be gathered and prescribed out of the former Chapters, according to the diuersity of causes: but specially let the patient refraine from such things as do send abundance of sharpe vapours vp to the head, as be Garlicke, Onions, Mustard, Radish roots and such like. The cure is diuerse according to the diuersity of causes. And therefore when you will cure the Migrime, consider diligently first whether the patient needeth bloudletting or purging. For if the griefe come through plenitude and abundance of bloud & humors, then cut the *Cephalica* in the arme on the same side that the griefe is, but if the Migrime be caused of abundance of one humour, then purge that humour by conuenient medicines, which are prescribed in the former Chapters. The whole body being purged, you may come to locall and outward medicines, and first cause the patient, either with his owne fingers, or with a linnen cloth, to rubbe and chafe the halfe of his forehead which is grieued, and specially about the muscles of his temples, vntill it be red and hote; and this must be done before the fit of paine cometh. After the fit (as *Galen* teacheth in the end of his second booke *De Compos. medic. secundum locos*) you must apply medicines which of the old Physitians were called *Hemicrania*, for that they were vsed for the Migrime: noting this alwaies, that if with the paine there were much heate felt, then you ought to apply such things as would somewhat coole. But

Causæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Localia.

if there were no euident heate felt, then vse those things that are very hote. But you must commixe with either of these somewhat that is restrictiue, and hath vertue to corroborate and strengthen. This ointment following is a very good remedy in a cold affect. ℞. of oiles of Dill and Ireos, ana ℥ ß. of white Pepper, and *Serpillum*, ana ℈.j.ß. of *Castoreum*, ℈.j. of *Euphorbium*, ℈.ß. of Waxe q ß & make an ointment to be applied vpon the halfe of the forehead, and the muscle of the temples. Also in this case it profiteth much to poure this oile following into the eare. ℞. sweete oile Oliue, ℥.j. *Euphorbium*, ℈. j. commixe them and drop one drop into the eare warme. You may put in more *Euphorbium* or lesse according as the body is quicke or dull in sense: but beware you vse not this medicine in those that haue the Migrime engendred of hote vapours or humours, *AEtius* saith that *Euphorbiũ* dissolued in vineger, & applied to the left side of the head, if the right side be grieued, or contrariwise on the right side when the paine is on the left side, doth of a certaine hid property helpe the Migrime. The same Author also saith, that earth wormes beaten to powder, and applied to the griefe, as also the flesh of Snailes bruised and applied, doth profite much. The kernels of Peaches bruised and applied vpon the griefe (as report hath bene) doth profit much. *Marcellus* saith, that the dung of a Goate stamped and commixed with vineger squilliticke, if the forehead and temples be annointed therewith, it ceasleth the paine of the Migrime for euer. Also his counsel is, if there be sodaine paine of the Migrime, take Frankinsence, Mirrhe, & an egge; beate them together, and apply that to the forehead and temples. If the Migrime be caused of hote humours or vapours, then vse those remedies which were prescribed before in the cure of headach coming of heate or cholericke humours. Here I thinke it requisite to prescribe certaine Pils, good to be vsed against inueterate headach and the Migrime. First if choler abound, ℞ powder of *Hiera simplex Galeniũ*, ℥.ij. *pilularum Arabicarũ*, ℥ iij. trochiskes of *Myrabolanes citrin.* ℥. j. ß. Reubarbe, ℥ j. Spikenard, ℈. j. commixe them with sirupe of Violets, and reserue the composition. When need requireth minister ℥.j. or ℈ iiij. fiue or sixe houres after supper, and let the patient sleepe vpon it. This you may do once in ten dayes, or once in fifteene daies at all times (Sommer excepted.) But if fleame abound make your Pils thus. ℞. of Agaricke trochiscate, ℥.iiij *pilulæ Arabicæ*, and *Hiera simplex Gal.* ana ℥ j.ß. floures of Stæchados, and trochiskes of *Myrabolanes Chebulorum*, ana ℥. j. with sirupe of Stæchados, and *Oximel*; commixe them, and when occasion serueth, minister ℥. j. or ℈. iiij. at each time in forme aboue said. But if melancholy be cause of the Migrime, ℞. of the aforesaid *Pilulæ Arabicæ*, ℥. ij. of powder of Sene and *Epithimum*, ana ℥. ij. ß. of *Hiera simplex Gal.* ℥. j. ß. of trochiskes of *Myrabolanes Indorum*, ℈. iiij. with sirupe of Fumitory and Balme water make Pils, and when neede requireth, minister them in forme aforesaid.

Vnguentum.

Oleum.

Note.

Pilulæ.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Vertigo and swimming in the head.

THat which the Latins call *Vertigo*, is a disease wherein the patient doth imagine that his head is turned round about. There is another disease somewhat like vnto this, which in Latine is called, *Tenebricosa Vertigo*, & that is when the

the patient doth thinke that all that he seeth turneth about, and sodainely with it, his sight faileth him, he supposing that he is compassed about with mist and darknes. It is commonly of the Physitians called *Scotoma*. *Fuchsius* doth thinke that they erre greatly that make a difference betweene the former kinds, but it may be confirmed out of good authors *Hippocrates*, *Galen* and others. Both the aforesaid kinds be engendred after one sort, and that is through the inordinate mouing of windy vapours and spirits, contained in certaine parts of the braine. This disease is caused either of the braine it selfe being distempered & euill affected, or of the mouth of the stomacke offending the braine. The brain it selfe is euill affected, when a grosse and tough humour is contained in it, from whence a vaporous and windy spirit being resolued by weake heate, is moued inordinately about in the braine. The mouth of the stomack doth affect the braine, when through corrupt humours being gathered abundantly in it, vapours and windy exhalations are carried vp to the braine, and so turne about the animall spirits contained in it. Those that are troubled with this disease, a darknes and mist appeareth before their eyes vpon euery light occasion, specially if they turne about. For it chanceth to them by turning once about, as it doth to other when they turne often, and therefore the patient many time fals downe. Also it doth astonie him, if he see another man, or a wheele or any such thing turne about; also if he see whirlepooles in the water turne about: for the visuall spirits beholding a wheele that turneth about, or any such like things, do also turne about in like sort, and so the mouing of the humour and the spirits are troubled vnequall, and inordinate. When this disease doth proceede of the braine being euill affected, then there proceedeth sound of the eares, vehement paine and heauinesse in the head. Also the smelling and the other senses proceeding from the head are hurt. Their fit is then chiefly, when the Sunne doth heate them, or when their head is hote by some other means, and so the humours being dissolued, do turne about in the braine. When the disease proceedeth from the mouth of the stomacke, then they feele before it, a gnawing in the stomacke, as it were the hartburne, and a disposition to vomit. This disease may be discerned from the falling sicknesse, for that this doth neither take away the sentes from the patient, nor causeth the crampe and writhing of the members in the fit. This disease is not to be lightly esteemed, for the *Vertigo* (as *Galen* saith) is nigh to the falling sicknesse and the Apoplexie, and therefore it would be well looked to. For the *Vertigo* and *Scotoma* will quickly be changed into pernitious diseases, for that they are very nigh to them, specially to the falling sicknes and the Apoplexie. And if those things that the patient doth imagine to see before his eyes, appeare bloudy and reddish, he is apt to fall into madnesse, but those that seeme to see purple colours, are disposed to the falling sicknesse. The *Scotoma* or darke *Vertigo* becometh most vehement in Winter, or in the beginning of the Spring. Besides in many it is a signe that the falling sicknesse will follow: and many do vse to call it a little Epilepsie. As concerning diet: let the patient remaine in an aire that is temperate, pure, bright, and cleare; and let him eschue grosse and cloudy ayre. Let him eschue windes, especially South windes: let him also auoid the beames of the Sunne and the Moone: as also let him not behold things that moue swiftly,

Causa.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Victus ratio.

as running waters or things that turne about as wheels, & such like; or to looke into deepe pits is euill for him. Let him eate meates of good iuyce, and of easie digestion, and such as engender no windines, as Partrich, Capon, Phesant, Chicken, veale, scaly fishes, and such like, that be easie of digestion. And let him vse to eate but moderately of them: for satiety, as also long fasting, is not good for him. He must eschue all things that cause vapours to ascend into the head, as Onions, Garlike, Leekes, and such like. And therefore if he drinke wine, let it not be very old: small white wine, may be permitted him. After meate it is good for him to vse some restrictiue thing to stop the vapours that they ascend not to the head, and that specially if the stomacke be cause of this disease. Let his exercise be moderate, let him eschue sleepe of the day, neither let him sleepe within two houres after meate. Let not the place be too hote where he sleepeth, nor let him not keepe his head too hote, In his exercises, let him not stirre his head much: and therefore it is good for him to vse frictions often, specially in the morning before he riseth: begin at the vpper parts, and end with the nether. He must refraine from perturbations and affections of the minde, specially from anger, feare, and sadnes, as also from loud crying, and singing. Carnall copulation is not good for him. If he hath not a stoole once in a day, you must helpe nature either by clister or suppositary. For the cure if the fit be present, you must reuiue the patient againe with sweete and odoriferous smels, & with frictions and such like. At which time also if need be, you may vse a suppositary or a clister. Afterward if the patient be strong, and no other impediment present, let him bloud on the *Cephalica* veine, whether it be the beginning of the disease or otherwise. But take heed that you draw not much bloud at once, for the patient will quickly fall through euery light occasion. Therefore you must draw away the bloud at sundry times, vntill you haue sufficient. But if any thing do hinder you from bloudletting, first you must purge him with a sharpe clister, whereof you shall haue example afterward in the chap. of Apoplexy. Afterward minister a purgation according as the humour abounding doth require But forget not first to vse a preparatiue. When the whole body is sufficiently purged, you must vse locall things to the head, and first apply cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. Afterward vse to minister gargarismes, & sternutations to draw reume from the head. Poure into the nose iuyce of Chickweed, Beets or *Cyclaminus*. Also *Nitrum* beaten with *Nigella* and mixed with old oile, purgeth well by the nosthrils. Also odors made of the decoction of Marioram, Hysope, and flowers of Stæchados, a litle *Castoreü*, Muske, and vineger being added, is good. After that let the patient enter into a bath, specially a naturall bath that is of Alume, and if his head be ouer hote in the bath, you must coole it often with oile of Roses and vineger applied in clothes to it, specially on the forepart of the head, and about the forehead and the temples. And if the disease do ceasse by these remedies, then vse no other. But if it continue still, you must cut the arteries that be nigh the temples aboue the eares, specially if the disease come of hote vapours ascending to the braine by the arteries. And this is not onely the precept of *Galen*, but also of *Ætius* and *Paulus Ægineta*. How the arteries should be cut you shall learne of the laid *Ægineta* in his 6. booke and 4. Chapter. Albeit *Galen* affirmeth that

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Localia.

some

ome haue not bene helped by cutting of the arteries, partly for that the hote and vaporous spirits do sometime ascend by deeper arteries into the braine, and partly for that a windy spirit may be engendred by an inequall distemper of the braine. And therefore if the disease be caused by any of these meanes before rehearsed, the patient shall feele small ease or none by cutting of the arteries: and therefore be diligent to enquire of the aforesaid causes, before you cut the arteries. It profiteth much to apply this cautery behind the eares ℞. of Cantharides, their heads, wings and legs, being cast away ℥.j. sharp leauen, ℥.ß. with vineger and *Aqua vitæ*, commixe them and apply them. If the *Vertigo* be caused by the consent of the stomacke, that is, if humours contained in the mouth of the stomacke do send vp vapors to the braine, & so cause the *Vertigo*, it must be cured by vomit, which you shall prouoke in this sort. ℞. of Dill a handfull, seed of Radish and Rapes ana ℥ ij of radish roots, ℥.ß. boile them in sufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and put thereto *Oximel scilliticum*, ℥.j.ß. commixe them and make a potion, and minister it bloud warme after meate immediatly: and if this suffice not, it is good to purge him with *Hierapicra Galeni*, or with pils that be good for the stomacke, called *stomachicæ* for that cause, or with the decoction of Myrobalanes citrine, or *Chebuli*, or with Manna, or sirupe of Roses solutiue, according to the diuersity of the humour abounding. Let the patient vse commonly after meate to eate some restrictiue thing, that wil close the mouth of the stomacke, & hinder the ascending of vapors vp to the head, as is *Diacotoneon sine speciebus*, and Quinces, or restrictiue Peares, or such like. *Marcellus* saith, the iuyce of blacke Beets annointed vpon the temples helpeth the *Vertigo*. And if Sothernwood be boyled in wine, or in *Oximel*, and drunke warme, it is a most effectual remedy to cure it perfectly.

Cauterium.

Cure of the Vertigo that cometh of the stomacke.

Vomitus.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Frensie.

PHrenitis in Greeke and in Latine, is a disease, wherein the mind is hurt, and doth onely differ from madnesse, which is called in Greeke and Latine *Melancholia*, or *Mania*, for that a feuer is ioyned with the Frensie, and therefore the Frensie may be called a continuall madnesse and fury ioyned with a sharpe feuer. *Galen* saith that the Frensie is an inflammation of the braine, or of the filmes thereof. *Ætius* saith that it is an inflammation of the filmes of the braine with an acute feuer, causing raging and vexation of the minde. There be three kinds of Frensies (as *Galen* doth witnesse in his fourth booke *de locis affectis, cap.*40.) according to the internall senses, which be three in number, that is, imagination, cogitation, and memory, which may seuerally be hurt. Two of those kinds be simple, and the third is compounded of those two. For some be frenticke, which can iudge rightly of those things that they see, as touching common sense and imagination, and yet in cogitation and fantasie they erre from naturall iudgement. Some other being frenticke, are not deceiued in cogitation and reason, but onely in imagination they erre. There be other some frenticke, which do erre both in sense & cogitation, that is, both in imagination and reason, and do therewith also lose their memory. The Frensie is caused either of abundance of bloud, or of choler, occupying the braine or the

Three kinds of frensies.

Causa.

filmes thereof. And if the choler whereof the diſeaſe engendreth be burnt, then the Frenſie is moſt vehement, and more pernitious then any other. Thoſe that be frenticke haue a continuall feuer, & be madde, for the moſt part they cannot ſleepe. Sometime they haue troubleſome ſleepes, ſo that they riſe vp, and leap, & cry out furiouſly: they babble words without order or ſenſe; being asked a queſtion, they anſwer not directly, or at the leaſt raſhly, and that with loud voice, eſpecially if you ſpeake gently to them. Their eyes be bloudſhotten and bleared, they rub them often, ſometime they are dry, and ſometime full of ſharp teares. Their tongue is rough, & bloud wil often drop out of their noſe. Moreouer they pul motes and flockes from the bedding and clothes about thē. Their pulſes be ſmal & weake, and ſomewhat hard and ſinewy: they fetch their breath but ſeldome. Note that they which haue the Frenſy cauſed of bloud, do laugh in their madneſſe. But thoſe that be frenticke through choler, do rage furiouſly, ſo that they cannot be ruled without bands, and ſuch do vſe to forget all things that they do or ſay, ſo that ſome of them, when they require the chamber pot, do forthwith forget to make vrine, or when they haue done it, they remember not to reſtore the veſſell againe. As touching the prognoſtication of this diſeaſe, *Galen* and all other learned Phyſitions do confeſſe that it is moſt ſharpe and moſt perillous, and indeede vncurable and deadly, for the moſt part. *Hippocrates* ſaith in his 72. aphoriſme of his fourth booke, that vrine white and cleare in thoſe that do raue, is a very euill and deadly token. Concerning diet let the ſicke be vſed in this ſort. If it be Winter, let him lye in a warme place, if it be Sommer, let his lodging be in a coole place; let the aire & light be moderate, and let there not be diuerſe pictures in the place. And for that ſome be troubled with the light, and ſome with darknes, it is beſt to try them in both, and to lay him in the light which is afraid of darkneſſe, and contrary he that is offended at the light, let him be in a darke place. But if the ſicke perſon do finde no difference in the places, then, if he be ſtrong, let him haue light; if weake, keepe him in a darke place. Let his deareſt friends come to him, and let them ſometime ſpeake gently and ſoftly vnto him, and ſometime rebuke him ſharply. Let his meate at the firſt be Priſan broth, and husked Barley boiled, or the crumme of bread often dipped in *aqua mulſa*, that is, water & Hony ſodden together, or in hony of Roſes. Boile in his broths Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, Mallowes, and ſuch like, which haue vertue to coole and moiſten. When the diſeaſe decreaſeth, you may giue him ſcaly fiſhes, ſuch as liue in grauelly riuers. If he be very hote within, you may giue him Pomegranats, & Cherries. Let his drinke be water, wherein a little Cinamon or barly hath bene boiled, you may commixe with it ſirupe of Violets, or of Roſes, or of water Lillies. But beware you gine them not too much at once, nor oftentimes, but ſeldome, and little at once. When ſignes of concoction appeare in the vrine, and the vehemency of the feuer is ſlaked, if then the ſicke do lacke ſtrength, you may giue him ſmall ale. Moreouer let the ſicke be kept quiet without mouing as much as is poſſible; if he be rich let his ſeruants hold him, if poore binde him; for inordinate mouing diminiſheth ſtrength. Alſo a bath of ſweete water is good for him, if the body be drie and rimpled, but he muſt vſe it bloud warme: for ſo it cooleth and moiſteneth, and by that meanes it cureth the drineſſe and ouermuch

Signa.

Prognoſtica.

Victus ratio.

watching,

watching; but take heed you vse no bathing before the body be purged. Moreouer, perturbations of the minde do hurt frentike persons exceedingly; and therefore you must suffer them to vse nothing that will make them sad, or engender choler. For the cure, if strength of the patient will suffer, let him bleed forthwith; for there is none so present a helpe. You must cut the vttermost veine of the arme called *Cephalica*, and if that appeare not, take the middle veine, and draw out as much blond as strength will suffer. But take heede you let him not bleed vntill he swound, as many rashly do; for it is better to take lesse thē you should do, the body being much weakned by vehement motion. You must take good heed, lest the sicke do priuily take away the band off his arme, to loose it. Afterward also you may strike the veine in the midst of the forehead. But if age or strength do forbid bloudletting, then vse cupping with scarification, behind in the necke or on the backe bone, which be profitable, for that they draw backe the humours that flow to the braine. For that purpose also clisters are specially to be vsed make in this sort. ℞. Mallow leaues, Violet leaues, Endiue, and Lettuce, ana M.j. of Barly decorticate, ℥.j. Sebesten, num. 11. seeds of Gourds, Melons, and Cucūbers, ana ʒ.iij. seeth al these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it & take of the decoction, ℥.xij. of *Cassia fistula* newly drawne, ℥.j.ß. of *mel Rosarum*, ℥.j oile of Violets, ℥.iij of Salt, ʒ.j. ß. commixe them all & make a clister. If you will haue it purge more strongly, put to it of *Hierapicra*, or *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, ℥.ß. Binding of the extreme parts of the body profits much to diuert the humors from the head. Also *Mathiolus* doth greatly cōmend *Stubium* with the conserues of Roses, and I my selfe haue proued it in this order to be most excellent as followeth. ℞ g.12. made in very fine powder, and put into claret wine, ℥. iiij. & let it stand houres 30. & euery 6 or 7. houre shake it; and at the 30 houres end, powre it from the powder, & let him drink it with a little sugar. This doth mightily purge the superfluous humors from the head, as also to rub the feete with salt and vineger & such like. You must sprinkle the head with oile of Roses, or vineger of Roses being bloud warme. For the braine or his filmes being inflamed, cannot safely abide actuall cold, nor vehement heat. For the same purpose also you may vse iuyce of Nightshade, & of Plantaine, or the distilled waters of them, or such like herbs. If the euill be very vehement, moistē his face cōtinually with oile of water wherin the tops of Poppy haue bene sodden. You may also vse odours to his nose of Roses, Violets, water Lillies, and such like. Also annoint his nostrils within, and his forehead with the iuyce of the foresaid herbs: for you must endeuour to astony & dul the braine (which burneth extremely) by cooling it. If the sick watch ouermuch, then you must apply such things as prouoke sleepe, as this ointment following or such like. ℞. *Vnguenti populeon*, ʒ ij. oyle of Violets, ʒ.iij. seed of Henbane, & barke of Mandrake roots, ana ℈.ß of *Opium*, g.ij. of Saffron. g.iij. Vineger a little, white Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment & annoint the temples therewith. Also this embrocation may be vsed bloud warme to the head. ℞. floures of Violets, red Roses, and water Lillies, ana M.j. Barly decorticate, ℥.j. seeds of white Poppy, ʒ ij seeds of Lettuce, ʒ.iij. seeth thē in sufficiēt quantity of water vnto the third part, & make an embrocatiō. You shall make the decoctiō of more force

Curatio.
Venæ sectio.
Clister.
A purging potion.
Localia.
Vnguentum.
Embrochæ.

if you adde leaues of Henbane, Nightshade, Poppy heads, Mandrake apples, or roots, and a little Vineger. You may also lay vnder his pillow, Poppy heads, or Mandrake apples. You may also for the same purpose, giue him to drinke water wherin Poppy or Henbane seed hath bin sodden, or some somnoriferous cõpound, as is regines *Nicolai*, or *Philonũ*, or such like; in ministring whereof, you must obserue, that you giue them not in the vehemency of the fit, but in the declining thereof. Beside, note that you must eschue continuall vse of stupefactiue medicines, as well inwardly as outwardly also. For in this disease by ouermuch cooling you may turne the Frensie into a Lethargie, whereby you may cause him to sleepe so, that you can awake him no more. Also if the patient be weake, beware how you minister stupefactiue things to prouoke sleep, for in such as be weake (as *Trallianus* saith) sõnoriferous potiõs do no smal hurt, and sometime they kill. At the last when the disease is aswaged, and waxeth more gentle, which for the most part chanceth the third day, you must apply discussiue medicines which haue vertue to disperse the remnant of the disease. And for that purpose you may apply the aforesaid embrocation, adding to it before, flowers of Cammomill, Dill, Melilot, marsh Mallowes and such like. There be some that at that time (the disease declining) do apply to the head, Hennes or whelpes cut in the midst, or the lungs of a Weather hote. But take good heed that no such thing be applyed in the beginning of the disease, or in the vehemency thereof, for so you should increase the inflammation & the feuer, & make the sicke in more perill. Moreouer if the euill continue long, you may boile in the embrocation *Serpillum*, that is, wild Thime, or Sauory. Also in the declination of the inflammation (as *Galen* teacheth) you may vse *Castoreum*, for that it is of subtile substance, & will worke his force through the scull. When the frenticke person is recouered, let him eschue drunkennesse, idlenesse, variety and corruption of meates, & specially the burning heate of the sun. Hereby you may learne not onely the cure of the Frensie, but also a remedy against immoderate watching, & rauing in any sort ingendred by feuers, when the patiẽt is so vexed by them (although they come by cõsent, & be but accidents of the feuers) that it is necessary to remedy them, lest the braine in time be thereby affected.

Discutientia.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Lethargie.

Lethargus in Greeke & in Latin also, is a disease contrary to the Frensie; for it causeth sluggishnes and an inexpugnable desire of sleeping. some call this disease in Latin *veternus*. They that be takẽ with this disease, do forget all things whereupon it hath that name. For *Lethe* in greeke is forgetfulnesse, and *Arges* is slothfull or dul, so that *Lethargus* is nothing else but a dul obliuio, and therfore may be called in Latin *Obliuio iners*. It is caused of fleame, which cooleth the braine ouermuch, and moisteneth it, and thereby prouoketh sleepe. The fleame doth putrifie in the braine, and thereby causeth a feauer which is alwaies annexed with this disease (as *Galen* testifieth in his 13. booke *de Methodo medendi*. Also they haue alwaies a profound and dead sleep. Their pulse is great, & striketh seldome, and is watery, that is, it beateth as it were full of water. They fetch their breath seldome and weakly, they are continually sluggish and sleepy, and can scarsly by any meanes be compelled to answer. They will sometime

λήθη. *apyhe.*

Causa.

Signa.

open

open their eyes, if you cry loud to them, and shut them againe forthwith; they are forgetfull and do raue. They gape and gaspe often, and sometime keepe their mouth open still, as though they had forgotten to shut it. Oftentimes being required to make water, & taking the chamber vessel, they forget to make vrine. For the most part their egestions be liquid: but contrariwise many are costiue. Their vrine is like beasts vrine. Some of them do tremble and sweate all ouer. Let the chamber wherein the sicke doth lie be light and warme. Let his meats be such as do extenuate, cut and drie, and let them be seasoned with *Apium*, Annise, Comin, Pepper, Cinamon, Cloues, and such like. Let the sicke eate birds that liue vpon mountaines, and Chickens, Partrich, Thrush and such like. For pot-herbes let him vse *Asparagus*, Fenell, Parcely, and such like. Also giue him broth made with Barley or Oatmeale, or *Alica* with *Oxymel* or Peniroyall. Let his drinke be *Hydromel*, that is, water and hony sodden together, Meade, or watery, thin white wine being astringent. After he hath eaten, it is not amisse to bind the extreme parts for a certaine space, that the vapours do not ascend to the head. For the cure (if strength permit, and nothing else do let) it is good forthwith to let bloud. You must cut the middle veine or the inward veine of the arme, and draw out as much bloud as strength will permit. But if you may not safely let bloud, thē must the bowels be scoured with sharp clisters, whereof you shall finde examples in the chapter of *Apoplexia*. Afterward the humour abounding must be prepared with decoction of Hysope in hony and water, or with Thime, Peniroyall, *mel Rosarum*, or *Oximel* cōmixed with sirupe of Borage, or infusion of Roses, & waters of Hysope, Betony Marioram, & Borage. And afterward purge him with some medicine that will expell fleame, whereof you shall finde examples in the next chap. following. In the meane season apply to the head *Oxyrhodinum*, that is, vineger of Roses, & that in the beginning, for the humor is to be repelled & driuen back from the head, whatsoeuer it be. For the which purpose also, it is good to vse frictions with Pellitory, Pepper, salt, & vineger, & bindings of the extreme parts. Moreouer, apply to his nosthrils odours which wil awake him, as be these, *Castoreum*, the snuffe of a candle quenched, Tarre, *Galbanum*, Sulphur, Harts horne, Sotherwood, or Goats horne burnt a little & holden to the nosthrils. You may pricke their legges, and their extreme parts, and pull them by the haire violently to awake them. Also you may boyle Thime, Peniroyall, and Origan in vineger, & hold that decoction to the nose of the sicke, that the fume ascending to the braine, may cut and deuide the tough humours. Also annoint the palat of the mouth with strong and sharp medicines, as with Mustard & Hony, *Mithridatū*, *Theriaca*, powder of Pellitory. And you must endeuour to pluck out the fleame that sticketh there with your finger: sometime also you may prouoke sneesing with *Castoreum*, or Pepper, or *Elleborus*: & if they can vse it, let them gargarise. And if by this meanes the disease be not dissolued, then shaue the head, and apply to it bags of salt, or *Milium*, or such like. Or make this decoction following, & let it run on high vpon the forepart of the head. ℞. wild Thime, Hysope, & Sauory, with a little *Castoreum*, and boile them in oile and vineger, and vse it. Moreouer, it profiteth to apply a *Sinapismus*, made of Figges & Mustard seed beaten together with vineger. Afterward you must apply to the hinder part

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

of the head cupping glasses with great flame, about the first and second ioynt of the neck, partly easily,& partly with scarification. Also the head must be annointed with *Castoreum*. And(as *Trallianus* saith)*Castoreum* drunk with Oximel an houre before the fit,is exceeding good: for(as he saith)he hath knowne many by that one medicine restored to life & health. You may minister ʒ.j. therof with ℥.j. of Oximel,or with so much white wine astringent, or with *aqua Mulsa*. Besides, you must often prouoke nature to expell excrements with Clisters, and such things as prouoke vrine. You must annoint the share with oyle of Rew wherein a little *Castoreum* is mixed: you must giue him in drinke such things as do extenuate & cut grosse and clammy humours, as be decoctions of *Apium*, Fennell, Maidenhaire, and such like. You must admonish the sicke to swallow downe such potions often,& therefore you may drop it into his mouth with a suckling boxe. In the Lethargy it continueth long. If strength do permit, you may minister *Hiera ex Colocynthide*, & prouoke him to sneese with the medicines aforenamed. At the last when the disease beginneth to decline, gestation on horsebacke,or in a litter is profitable,and bathing is exceeding good at that time:but the head of the sicke may not be wet by any meanes. And if the sicke for lacke of strength cannot abide the heate of the bath, at the least let him be washed at home in a vessell of warme water. Let him be scoured in the bath with sharpe Sope, as with wine lies burnt, with Mustard seed, Pellitory, Pepper, Laurell berries, quicke Lime,adding double as much *Nitrum*.

Castoreum.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Memory lost.

Memoria deperdita, the losse of memory chanceth sometime alone, and sometime reason is hurt with it. It is caused of the Lethargie and other soporiferous diseases. It cometh to passe also that the soporiferous diseases being ended, there ensueth forgetfulnesse: which when it chanceth, then a cold distemper is the cause that the memory is perished or grieuously hurt. This coldnesse hath sometimes moistnesse ioyned with it, and sometime drinesse: somtime any one of the former distempers may cause this disease alone:therefore the Physition must diligently discerne the causes. The causes of this disease be either externall or internall:if they be internall, either abundance of fleame or melancholy is cause of it. If there be no signes of those humours abounding, then must it needs come of some externall cause, especially if it come not through extreme old age. The externall causes you may learne by relation of the sicke,and those that are about him, as if any disease be newly passed,and so turned into obliuion, or if medicines were ministred inwardly, or applyed outwardly to the head,which haue vertue to coole extremely. Or if it came of immoderate labour,with study,& watching,or such like. If the memory be but a little hurt, it betokeneth that the braine is but a little cooled. If reason be lost together with the memory,then the affect is called *Fatuitas* or *stultitia*,that is, foolishnes or doltishnes,and both these do come of one disposition: but that is more vehement where both are hurt. As touching signes,if onely a dry distemper occupying the hinder part of the head do cause this euill, then ouermuch watching troubleth the sicke. If onely a moist distemper be cause of it,then they are heauy & inclined to sleepe, & their sleepes be long & troublesome. If cold be

Causa.

Signa.

be ioyned with moiſture, it engendreth the Lethargy and *Carus*, whereof we wil intreate in the next Chapter. Therefore in them that haue loſt their memory you muſt obſerue their ſleeps, whether they be ouer ſleepy, or in a meane, or ſleepe not at all: for ſo ſhall you finde what diſtemper doth moſt abound. Beſides you muſt marke whether they auoide any thing at the noſe, or whether any thing diſtill from the head by their mouth, or whether thoſe parts be altogether dry. For by them you may likewiſe coniecture the diſtemper abounding. And if fleame be cauſe of the euill, you ſhall perceiue it not only by immoderate ſleepe, and abundance of excrements deſcending from the braine (as is aforeſaid) but alſo by the diſpoſition of the ſicke, by his age, & his cõplexion, by the time of the yeare, the region, the ſtate of the aire, and the diet that he vſed before. For all thoſe or the moſt part of them encline to cold and moiſture. Likewiſe if melancholy abounding be cauſe of the diſeaſe, you ſhall know it, for that the ſicke is not ſleepy at all, neither doth he auoid any excrements at all frõ the braine: beſides, the ſtate of his body and all other circumſtances aboue rehearſed incline to cold & drineſſe. His diet muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of the cauſes. But whatſoeuer the cauſe be, let the aire that the ſicke remaineth in, be inclining to heate, and let his lodging be light: let not his windowes be North nor South, for the one cooleth, and the other filleth the head. Let him eſchue much ſleepe, ſpecially in the day time, & vpon a full ſtomacke. But note, if the diſeaſe be cauſed of a cold & moiſt diſtemper, then the whole order of his diet muſt be hote and dry. But if the cauſe be cold and dry, then muſt the diet be altogether ſuch as wil heate & moiſten. As touching the cure, if loſſe of memory be cauſed by vehement purgations, or other immoderate euacuations or by ſwounding often, and ſo ouermuch drineſſe do hurt the memory, then miniſter no medicins, but onely reſtore the body by good diet. For the body being corroborate, & ſtrength renued, the memory will come againe. If you require to know what things are requiſite for ſuch a diet, you ſhall find it in the Chapter of the feauer hectike. If the memory be loſt by extreme age, then phyſick will nothing auaile. But onely they muſt content themſelues with diet conuenient: but if the memorie faile ſuddenly, the other members of the body being ſafe, then the falling ſicknes is to be feared, or the palſey, or the Apoplexy. And therefore in ſuch a caſe you muſt prouide diligently by all meanes, that no ſuch thing chãce as is to be feared. You may preuent thoſe diſeaſes by the ſame remedies that you wold vſe in the cure of thẽ being preſent. And if the memory faile by meanes of other diſeaſes, as through the Lethargy or Peſtilence, then medicins for cure thereof are to be vſed. The whole ſcope of curing the diſeaſe, if it come onely of a cold diſtemper of the brain, cõſiſteth in heating. You muſt therefore miniſter medicines that haue vertue to heat as well inwardly as outwardly. Outwardly you muſt annoint the head with warme oile, & that in ſommer. In winter annoint it with oile of *Ireos* cõmixed with ſharp vineger, & ſomtime boile wild Thime, & calamint, & ſuch like in the oile, & ſo vſe it. Some do adde to it Pepper, and Laurell berries. Alſo *Caſtoreum* is profitable being commixed with oile and annointed vpon the hinder part of the head. Alſo this ointment is very good. ℞. of *Oleum de lateribus*, and oile of *Caſtoreum*, ana ℥. ß. rootes of *Acorus* and Valerian, ana ℈. j. Pellitory and Rew, of each ℈. j ß. with

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Wax sufficient make an ointment, & annoint the hinder part of the head therwith being shauen, & apply this quilt vpon it ℞ flowers of Rosemarie, Balme, & Lauender, ana M.ß. flowers of Elder, M.j. Stæchas. ℥ iij. Nutmegs, wood of Aloes, and Maces, ana ℈.j. powder them, and stitch them in silke, and make a quilt. You may make many such like medicines by examples in other chapters. You may minister inwardly conserues of the flowers of Betony, Rosemary, Lauender, Spikenard & Balme, adding to thē Pepper, Cloues, Cinamon, & such like odoraments. If memory be lost by cold and moistnes ioyned together, minister *Hierapicra*, which wil purge out nothing that is good, but only that which is noysome. Afterwards let him vse gargarises, sternutations, and whatsoeuer doth purge by the mouth and the nose. Also a *Sinapismus* may profitably be applied to the head. If obliuion be caused of fleame abounding, then you must first prepare and concoct that humour with *mel Rosarum*, *Oximel*, Sirupe of infusion of Roses, with decoction of Betony, Mariorā, Hysope, Thime & such like: after the administration whereof, the matter being concoct and prepared, you may purge it with decoction of Myrobalanes *Chebulorum*, and Agaricke trochiscate, to the which you may adde the sirupe of infusion of Roses, or *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaphenicon*. And if the matter through his grossenes, wil not sufficiently purge at once, then you must prepare it againe, & after purge it with pils, *Arabicæ*, *Aureæ*, or *Aggregatiuæ*, commixing some of them with Agaricke trochiscate, & so make pils with hony of Roses, or Sirupe of Stæchados. After you may particularly purge the head with gargarises & sternutations. After purging it is good to minister vnto thē *Castoreū* or shauing of iuory, ℥.j. with *aqua mulsa*, or as much *Confectio anacardina*, or *aurea Alexandrina*, or *Diābra*, *Diamoscha dulce*, or *Mithridatū*, or *Theriaca*, with *aqua mulsa* or white wine. Afterward you may vse outwardly embrocations, & powre them downe frō on high vpon the head being shauen, specially nigh to the seame, where the bone is loosest or thinnest. You may make your embrocatiō thus: ℞ of Hysope, *Serpillū*, & Time, ana M ß. Betony, Marioram, & flowers of Cammomill, ana pug ß. flowers of *Stæchados*, ℥ iij. make a decoction, & adde thereto of *Castoreū*, ℥ j. of vineger, ℥.j. & make an embrocatiō. It is good also to annoint the first & second spondil in the necke, and hinder part of the head, with *Oleum nardinum*, oyles of Nutmegs, of *Castoreum*, of Pepper, or *Oleum costiuum*. And you may apply thereupon a quilt, made in this sort. ℞. Hysope, Mariorā, & flowers of *Stæchados*, ana ℥.j. *Castoreum*, Nutmegs, Spikenard, Maces, ana ℈.j the barke of Frankinsence, Masticke, and wood of *Aloes*, ana ℥.j. ß. red Roses dried the weight of all: beate them to powder, and make a quilt. And if the euill ceasse not by this meanes, then last of all, vse a *Sinapismus*. If memory be lost by abundance of melancholy, you must first prepare it to expulsion, by sirupe of Borage and Fumitory mixed together, adding Sirupe of infusion of Roses, and waters of Betony, Hops, and Balme, and such like. Afterward minister this potion following. ℞. *Myrobalanorum Indorum*, ℥.iij. Sene, & Epithimum, ana ℥. ij. flowers of Hops, Fumitory, & Borage, ana ℥.ij ß. make a decoction in running water, & hauing strained it, dissolue therein of fine Manna, ℥.ij. of *Diacatholicon*, ℥.vij. or *Diasene*, ℥ ß. & make a potion. As touching outward medicines, let them rather encline to moisture then drinesse. As by adding to the ointmēts before prescribed

Sacculus.

Embrochæ.

Sacculus.

Decoctio.

oiles

oyels of Cammomill, Dil, & sweet Almonds. Likewise in making embrocations & quilts, you may withdraw such medicines as dry, & adde moist things in their stead. Hereby a circumspect Physition may not onely haue a reasonable method to cure each kinde of obliuion, but also to remedie any dulnes or weaknes of the memory. For that it commeth of the same causes that memory lost doth come, although they be not so vehement where the memorie is weakened.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Carus or Subeth.

CAros in Greeke, and *Carus* in Latin, is a disease, in which both sense & mouing is altogether takē away, and yet their breathing remaineth safe. The *Arabians* call this disease *Subeth*. This disease differeth from the Lethargie, for that they that haue the Lethargy, will answere to a question demanded, and do not lie altogether downe. But they that haue *Carus*, are occupied with deepe sleepe, and if they be stirred or pricked, although they feele, yet they will say nothing, nor once open their eyes. Besides as *Paulus AEgineta* noteth, a vehement feuer doth vse to go before *Carus*, & in the Lethargy it followeth rather. Also *Carus* vseth to succeede other symptomates & accidents. For it cometh often in the fits of feuers, and in the falling sicknesse, and in pressing of the braine, as well when the braine pan is crushed together, as also if the filmes that couer the foremost ventricle of the braine, be thrust downe. But the Lethargy hath a certaine peculiar consistence of himself. Also *Carus* doth differ from the Apoplexy, for that in it the breathing is very straight so that the sicke can with much ado scarce breathe at all. But he that hath *Carus* (as *Galen* witnesseth in his fourth booke *de locis affectis*) hath his breath at liberty. *Carus* is caused of a cold, grosse, & viscous, flegmaticke humour filling the braine. You may easily know the signes by that which hath bene rehearsed before. For in this disease they are altogether in a dead sleep, and their eyes alwaies shut. As for the diet, & the cure of those that haue *Carus*, it agreeth altogether with theirs that haue the Lethargy: whereof we spake before (in the 16. Chapt.) sauing that in this disease you must vse things that be of great force to extenuate, cut and deuide the grosse humours. Also you must apply Emplaisters, and other medicines to the stomacke which haue vertue to heate, and corroborate it, for because it is stuffed with fleame which doth coole it and moisten it. Whereof you shall finde examples in the beginning of the third Booke.

Carus.
Subeth.
Causæ.
Signa.
Victus.
Cura.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Congelation or Taking.

CAtoche or *Catalepsis* in Greeke, in Latin may be called *Occupatio, Detentio, & deprehensio*. The new writers in Phisicke do call it *Congelatio*: in English it may be called Congelatio or Taking. It is a sodaine detention and taking both of minde and body, both sense & mouing being lost, the sicke remaining in the same figure of body wherein he was taken, whether he sit or lie, or stand, or whether his eyes be open or shut. This disease is a meane betweene the Lethargy and the Frensy, for it cometh of a melancholy humour for the most part, as shall be declared afterward. Therefore in respect of coldnesse it agreeth with the Lethargie, and in respect of drinesse with the Frensy. Here-

Congelatio.

vpon it cometh that they which haue this diſeaſe, are neither like the frenticke altogether, nor like them that haue the Lethargy. This diſeaſe is cauſed ſometime of abundance of bloud flowing to the head and repleniſhing it. But for the moſt part (as *AEtius* witneſſeth) it is cauſed of a cold and dry melancholicke humour, troubling the hinder part of the head and braine. This diſeaſe inuadeth a man ſodainely, and taketh away ſpeech and ſenſe from him; he heareth nothing, he anſwereth nothing, his breath is ſcarcely to be perceiued, but he lieth as he were dead. His pulſe is ſmall and weake, and very thick. His egeſtion and vrine are detained, or elſe they come forth in ſmall quantity: and that is not in reſpect of drineſſe, for the ſicke ſometime doth abound with much moiſture, but for lacke of ſenſe. Their face is ſometime red, and that is when the euill is engendred of bloud; and ſometime it is ſwart, and that is when melancholy cauſeth the diſeaſe. Moreouer the eyes in this diſeaſe remaine immoueable, as though they were froſen. This euill differeth from *Carus* (as *Galen* ſaith) for that in it the eye liddes are euer ſhut, but in this diſeaſe they ſometime remaine open. The diet in this euill muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of cauſes. Let his food be Ptiſan broth, and ſuch like. Let his drinke be *aqua Muſa* well boyled, or Barley water, or ſmall ale; for ſeeing they fume not into the head, they do much good. It is hurtfull for them to drinke water, for it cauſeth windineſſe, ſwelleth the ſplene, and quencheth not thirſt. As concerning the cure, if the face of the ſicke be ruddy, and bloud ſeeme to abound, if ſtrength permit and yeares, let him forthwith bleede on the outwardmoſt veine of the arme, and let him bleede according to his ſtrength. Afterward if the head be hote, apply thoſe things that coole. For that purpoſe you may boile the ſhelles of Poppy heads in oyle, and annoint the head therewith. But in other that haue their face ſwart, and ſo haue tokens of melancholy abounding, you muſt firſt cleanſe the guts with cliſters, made of flowers of Borage, Bugloſſe Fumitory, time, Epithimum, rootes of Polypody, leaues of Sene, adding to it oiles of Cammomill, & Dill, and *Caſia*, *Diacatholicon*, *Diaſena*, or *confectio Hamech* in conuenient quantity. Whereof you ſhall finde examples afterward in the chapter of *Melancholia*. And if the belly become not ſoluble by this means, then it is not amiſſe to boile in the former decoction rootes of *Elleborus niger*. The head muſt be annointed with oile wherein wilde Time is ſodden, or with oiles of Lillies or Dill, or ſuch like, and that you muſt do chiefly when the head ſeemeth cold. Moreouer if his vrine appeare groſſe and thicke, you muſt giue him to drinke the decoction of Dill, *Apium*, Calamint, and ſuch like, as haue vertue to extenuate. It profiteth alſo to annoint all their whole body with oyle of Dill, ſpecially in winter. Alſo they that haue trembling with this diſeaſe may haue, ℥. j. of *Caſtoreum* cõmixed with *aqua mulſa*, & poured into their mouth. The reſt that concerne the cure of this diſeaſe may be gathered partly out of the Chapters of the Frenſie and Lethargy before, and partly out of the Chapter of melancholy following.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Victus.

Curatio.

CHAP. XX.

Of dead ſleepe.

COma in Greeke, *ſopor*, or *grauis & profundus ſomnus* in Latin. It may be called in Engliſh dead ſleepe. It is a diſeaſe wherein the ſicke cannot awake.

nor keepe open his eyes, but doth keepe his eyes continually close shut, & is in a sound sleepe. But there be two kindes hereof, the one whereof we haue already spoken and that is called simply *Coma* or *sopor*, or else *Coma somnolentum*. The other is called *Vigilans sopor*, and it is an euill wherein the sicke cannot hold open his eyes, though he be awake, but he winketh in hope to get sleepe, and yet is altogether awake. Therefore you must make a difference between these two kindes. The sleeping *Coma* (as *Galen* witnesseth) is sometime caused by ouer- *Cause.* much moistening of the braine, as it chanceth to many drunken persons. Also in feuers, onely hote and moist vapours ascending from the inferiour parts, and moistening the braine, do cause this euill. Moreouer sometime onely cold occupying the forepart of the braine is cause of this euill. Sometime profound sleepe is caused of coldnes and moistnes ioyned together. The other euill called *Vigilans sopor*, or *Coma*, that is, the watching drousines, is caused of fleame mixed with choler, & for the most part it cometh for lacke of strength, that they are not able to keepe open their eye liddes. The party that is vexed with *Signa.* the soporiferous and sleepy *Coma*, doth sleepe with his neather iaw open, and as often as he is awaked, he falleth into a new sleepe forthwith. They that haue the watching *Coma*, speake they wote not what, and they lye with their whole body out of order, and they haue partly such signes as appeare in the Frensie, and partly such as in the Lethargy. The cure is of two sorts, according *Curatio.* to the diuersity of the euils. For in the soporiferous and sleepy *Coma*, you must vse those remedies that are prescribed in the Chapters of *Carus* and the Lethargy: and to speake briefly, after the whole body is purged, if the euil be caused of moistnes, then you must apply such things as will dry the braine, made with sharpe vineger and Roses, and Cammomill commixed, and you may also let the fume thereof go vp into the nosthrils. If it be caused of cold, then apply oile of Dill, and Cammomill warmed; and if the cold be great, you may sometime boile in oile, Peniroyall & Dill, and vse it. But if the euill be caused of cold and moisture ioyned together, then must it be cured, as the Lethargy. If it come of weakenesse and lacke of strength, then you may vse restoratiues to recouer it againe. Suppositaries are very good to be vsed in these kindes of diseases, for that they stirre and prouoke nature. For the watching *Coma*, since it consisteth of mixed and contrary causes, it must be cured by contrary medicines, partly as the Frensie and partly as the Lethargy. And to know which of them you must vse most, you may learne that by the humour most abounding. For if fleame abound more then choler, then you must vse most the remedies against the Lethargy: but if contrariwise choler do abound, then must your remedies be for the most part such as are good against the Frensie. And therefore you may seeke conuenient remedies out of those Chapters, as occasion seruetb.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Apoplexy.

APoplexia in Greeke and Latin, is a disease wherein the fountaine and originall of all the sinewes being affected, euery part of the body doth sodainely lose both mouing and sense. Or it is a depriuing both of sense and mouing throughout the whole body, coming sodainely with let and hurt of all

voluntary functions. If this stopping of the braine come in one halfe of the body onely, then it is called *Paralysis* in Greeke, in English the Palsey, whereof we will speake in the next Chapter. The Apoplexie is caused of a flegmaticke humour that is cold, grosse, and tough, which doth at one time abundantly fill the principall ventricles of the braine, which humour ouermuch crudities, and chiefly drunkennesse doth engender Also it is caused by a fall or a blow which shaketh and bruiseth the braine, and causeth humours to flow thither. Also very cold aire which doth thicken and congeale the humidities and excrements of the braine, doth sometime cause this disease: it may also be caused of a grosse melancholy humour. Concerning signes, there goeth before this disease a full and sharpe paine of the head, and a swelling of the veines in the necke, the *Vertigo*, and brightnes before the eies, also cold of the extreeme parts without cause, panting of the whole body, slownesse to moue, and gnawing of the teeth while they sleepe. Their vrine is litle in quantity, blacke, like rust and canker in mettall, and hath a residence like meale. They that fall into this disease, do lacke sense altogether, they lie as they were asleepe with their eyes shut, and do snort. The vehemency and greatnesse of this disease may be discerned by the impediments that they haue in breathing. For when it is very much differing from naturall order, it betokeneth the vehemency of the disease, and that it is a great and strong Apoplexy. But when there is a little impediment in the breathing, then you may iudge that there is but little hurt in the braine, and so you may accompt it a small and weake Apoplexy. The worst and strongest Apoplexy is, wherein the breathing is so diminished that it can very hardly be perceiued: and that is almost as euill, wherein the breath stoppeth for a while, and then is fetched with great violence. This disease for the most part doth chance to old men, which be of a flegmatike complexion, and which do vse such a diet as increaseth fleame. But if so be it inuade any yong person, & that in Sommer season, it is most perillous. This disease is vncurable, or at the least is seldome cured. And therefore *Hippocrates* writeth in the 24. Aphor. of his second booke: It is impossible (saith he) to cure a vehement Apoplexy, and not easie to cure a weake one. For it threatneth speedy death. Beside, if it chance by medicines to be taken away, for the most part it departeth leauing the Palsey behind it, either in the whole body, or in some part thereof. Often also it corrupteth the memory, whereupon we may conclude that remedies are not to be vsed against a strong Apoplexy, for that is of nature deadly. But if it be weake, which you may know by the signes aforesaid, although there be small hope to remedy it, yet (as *Galen* testifieth) conuenient remedies being ministred, it may perhaps be cured, as experience hath proued in some. Those therefore whose cure is not altogether desperate, if there be signes of plenitude & fulnes, & strength permit also, must be let bloud on both the *Cephalica* veins. But you must foretell the peril, for bloudletting doth either kill them, or deliuer thē: so that if after bloudletting (*AEtius* saith) both mouing & sense come not vnto him againe, there is no more hope. You must not draw away much bloud at once, but rather at sundry times, and you must haue regard to his pulse, the colour of his face, & his breathing. Beside, you must prouoke him to the stoole with sharpe clisters in this sort. ℞. Sage, Origan, Betony, and Rew, ana. M.j.

Cause.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Curatio.

Calamint,

Calamint, Hysope and Peniroyall, ana M.ß. seeds of Fennel, *Seselis*, and Ammi, ana, ℥.iij. Centory the lesse, M.j. rootes of Polypody, ℥.vj fine Agaricke, ℥.iij. Pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ℥.ij. boile these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be consumed: then take of that decoction, ℥.xv. of *Hierapicra*, and *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℥.ß. of *Electuarium Nidum*, ℥.iij. of *Diaphœnicon*, ℥.ij. of *mel Rosarum* clarified, ℥.j. ß. of oiles of Laurell, Rew, and *Castoreum*, ana. ℥.j. of salt gemme, ℥.j.ß. commixe them all, & make a clister. Also the vse of suppositaries in this disease is very commendable, made of *Coloquintida*, Agaricke, blacke Hellebore, and such like, after this sort, ℞. of Hony boiled to a height, ℥.ij. of *Coloquintida*, Agarick, and Hellebore, ana. ℈.ij. sal gemme, ℈.j. beate them into powder, commixe them with the Hony, and make suppositaries, vj. fingers long, and hang a threed in them, that you may draw them out when you list. You may also put into the suppositaries *Hierapicra* or Pils *Cochiæ*. Afterward annoint the whole body with a good quantity of warme oile, wherein wild Thime, Calamint, Dil, & such like haue first bene boiled. Also the extreme parts must be bound strongly, and vehemently chafed with the decoction of the roote of Floure-de luce: many cupping glasses must be fastened to the shoulders: the head must be shaued, and annointed with oiles of Commomill, Dill and Rew, or with oile wherein the aforenamed herbs haue bene boiled. You must apply to the nosthrils such things as by their odour can stirre and raise vp the sicke, as be, *Opoponax*, *Castoreum*, *Sagapenum*, *Galbanum*. Also you may vse medicines to prouoke neesing, made of white Hellebore, *Castoreum*, and such other, rehearsed in the former Chapters. Or it profiteth much to vse embrocations, made of Cammomill, Melilot, Sage, Peniroyall, Marioram, Origan, Calamint, Sauory, and Hysop, boiled in equall portions of wine and water. But yet it is better to vse dry medicins to the head, as be *Sinapismi*, made after this sort, ℞. *Olei costiui*, ℥ j. oiles of *Castoreũ & Euphorbiũ*, ana. ℥.iij. Mustard seed, ℥.ij. *Castoreum*, ℥.j. *Sagapenum*, ℥.j.ß. *Euphorbium*, ℈ j. Vineger, ℥.ij. with sufficient quantity of Waxe, make an Emplaister. Also you must open their mouth by force, and put into it your finger, or a fether dipped in oile of Ireos, to prouoke vomit, and to cause the grosse humours that be in the mouth to be cast out. Also their fundament must be annointed with such medicines as dissolue windines, as be Rew, Comin, *Nitrum*, and Hony. When the euill is asswaged, you must giue him meate of easie digestion, for the most part mixed with hony. If his speech come not yet againe, so that his strength permit, you must fasten cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. And in like sort vnder the short ribs, if you may. Afterward let the sicke be caried in a wagon or horslitter. Let his drinke be *Mulsa*, or *Oximel*. Let him drinke no wine. After 21. daies be past the sicke may enter a bath, but as touching medicines requisit for the rest of the cure, you shal find thē abundantly in the Chap. following. And this may suffice for the cure of the Apoplexy, if so be it be curable.

Clister acris.

Sinapismus.

Vomitus.

Victus.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Palsey.

P*Aralysis* in Greeke, *Resolutio* in Latine: in English the Palsey. It is a disease wherein the one halfe of the body, either the right side or the left, doth lose

both ſenſe and mouing. Alſo ſometime the Palſey chanceth in one member onely, as for example, in the hand, the legge, or the tongue. But note here that the Palſey which followeth the Apoplexy is particularly called in Greeke Παραλυσία: and therfore the word *Paralyſis* is a more general name then *Paraplegia*. But whereas in the Palſey, ſometime ſenſe onely is loſt, and ſometime mouing alone, and ſometime both ſenſe and mouing: it is ſpecially called reſolution of the ſinews or Palſey, when mouing is loſt. Why ſometime feeling is loſt onely, and ſometime mouing alone, & ſometime both together, *Galen* declareth at large in his firſt book *de ſymptomatũ cauſis*, cap. 4. & therfore it need not be here rehearſed: notwithſtanding it ſhall not be amiſſe to anſwer briefly to that queſtion. Firſt note, that aſwell the faculty of mouing as of ſenſe floweth from the braine as from a fountaine, and is deriued from thence by and in the ſinewes to the inſtruments of motion and ſenſe; & therefore it muſt needs be, if that faculty of the braine be hindred or ſtopped by any cauſe, that it cannot deſcend to the inſtruments of mouing or ſenſe, that they ſhould loſe mouing or ſenſe according as the ſinewes be affected. And therefore in thoſe members that participate two kinds of ſinewes, as the eyes and the tong do, the former queſtiõ is eaſie to be ſoluted, for that they haue one kinde of ſinewes for motiõ, and another kind for ſenſe, & ſo the one may be hurt, & the other ſafe; or they may be both hurt, and ſo both ſenſe and motion periſh. But in members that haue but one kinde of ſinew, the queſtion is more obſcure to anſwer. In ſuch mẽbers therfore, if (the skin being taken away) the muſcle lying naked cannot moue at all, and yet feeling remaineth in it, you may know that the hurt is not great. But if the ſinewes be much ſtopped, then hath it loſt both ſenſe and mouing: for it is vnpoſſible that the ſenſe of a muſcle ſhould be loſt, and the motiõ remaine ſtill. The reaſon is, for that leſſe of the animall faculty is requiſite for feeling then for mouing, ſo that there may come ſufficient quantity of that faculty to a muſcle to cauſe feeling in it, & yet not enough to cauſe it to moue alſo: and therefore a naked muſcle, which hath his faculty both of feeling and mouing of one kinde of ſinew, cannot moue and lacke ſenſe; but either it hath ſenſe and lacketh mouing, and then his hurt is but little: or it hath loſt both, and that is when the hurt is great, and the ſinew is altogether ſtopped. But where there is a member that hath ſinewes placed in the muſcles to cauſe mouing, and other ſinewes ſpread in the skin to cauſe feeling, (for the ſinewes that are diſperſed in the muſcles do not ſend out branches to the skin as ſome ſuppoſe) I ſay it may come to paſſe in that member, that ſometime it may loſe feeling alone, and ſometime mouing alone, and ſometime both together. For it may be that the skin which couereth the muſcle may loſe his ſenſe of feeling, the ſinew being affected which is diſperſed in it; and yet the ſinew that runneth in the muſcle may be ſafe, and therefore the muſcle may moue. But if the ſinew which is ſpread in the muſcle be affected, and the ſinew that cometh to the skin remaine ſafe, that member cannot moue, and yet it hath ſenſe and feeling left: and that cometh to paſſe becauſe the ſinew of the one is hurt, and the other hath his ſinew ſafe: although they ſpring both from one place, yet they are deuided in the way as they come to the member. And if both the ſinewes be affected, as well that that cometh to the muſcle, as that which cometh to the skin

Why in the Palſey ſometime ſenſe alone, ſometime mouing alone, and ſometime both together periſh.

skin, then both sense of feeling and mouing also perish and are lost; and that is when the common fountaine from whence they do both spring, is affected & hurt. You may discerne that, when you know exactly the common originall and spring of euery sinew, in considering diligently whether the braine it selfe be affected, or the backe bone, at the head of it, or in any of his spondils besides. This is to be knowne by the Anatomy of sinewes, and therefore, it behoueth to be well exercised therein, for in the Palsey there is not one certaine place affected, but diuerse places. If the braine it selfe be affected: I meane not the whole braine, for then is the Apoplexy engendred: but if the right halfe or the left be affected, you shal know it, for that the Palsey or resolution will be aswell on the right or left side of the face, as on the right or left side of the body. But if the face be safe, and one halfe of the body be depriued of sense and mouing, then you may know that the place affected is the vpper end and first spondils of the backe bone; but the one halfe onely of the marrow is affected, and that is it that is next to the side taken with the Palsey. But if all the inferior members, (the face onely excepted) be resolued and paralitike, then is the backe bone affected in the same place, euen in the beginning and vpper end of it: and then is the hurt vehement, for the whole marrow is affected. But if it chance one onely part to be resolued and taken with the Palsey, you must search from whence the sinewes come that be contained in it, which you may easily find, if you be well exercised in Anatomy. For if the marrow of the backe be not affected aboue where his first beginning is, but lower among the spondils, then if the affect & hurt be great, all the inferiour parts beneath those spondils affected, be resolued and taken with the Palsey: but if the hurt be but little, and the marrow but-halfe affected, then only the inferiour parts of the one side, be resolued. Therefore you must first learne by Anatomy to finde the place affected, hauing foreknowledge frō what part of the backe bone the members resolued haue their sinewes. The Palsey and resolution of members is engendred of abundance of grosse and clammy humours, which stop the sinewes and hinder the animal faculty that it cannot come frō the fountaine to the mēbers. It may also be caused of immoderate cold in snow or vehement frost. Also it may be caused by an inflammatiō, or a *Scirrus* (which is a hard swelling without sense) chancing in the backe bone, or in parts nigh adioyning, or in other sinewy parts, whereby the sinews are crushed and pressed, & so stopped, that the animall faculte cannot passe. As also the sinewes may be crushed together by some externall cause, as by binding with a cord, or such like meanes, & so cause resolutiō: also whē there is luxatiō or fracture in any of the spondils of the back, or in other ioynts or bones, there may follow resolutiō by means of cōpression and crushing together of sinews. Also resolution or Palsey may be caused by means of a wound, or an vlcer, either in the braine, or in the marrow of the backe, or in any particular sinew. There need not many signs to know this disease by: for any may iudge easily, that part or mēber to haue the Palsey which is destitute of mouing: to know of what cause it proceedeth, you may partly learne by the relatiō of the sick, & partly by the signes rehearsed before in the 7 Chapter, fol. 10 where headach caused of fleame is intreated of. The Palsey is no acute & sharp disease, but of long continuance, & for the most part curable.

To know if the braine be affected.

To know if the marrow of the back cause the Palsey.

Of mēbers particularly takē with the Palsey.

Causa.

Prognostica.

It chanceth for the most part in old folke, and in the Winter time. The Palsey that cometh by a sinew separate and cut asunder, is (as *Ægineta* saith) vncurable, and so is that which cometh by ouerthwart incisions of the backe, or by great luxation of it. Moreouer if the member paralyticke do waxe lesse, or change his colour, it is hard to be cured, or rather not cureable. For it declareth those parts not onely to be destitute of the animall faculty, but also of the naturall, and after a sort of the vitall also. Their diet must be altogether extenuating and drying. Let the sicke therefore remaine in an aire that is hote and dry, and in the first three dayes he may vse altogether abstinence, or let him content himselfe with *aqua mulsa*, or a little Ptisan broth. Afterward giue him meates of good iuyce, light of digestion, and let them be rosted: let him eate chiefly birds of the mountaines, and Partrich, reare egges, Almonds, and Pine nuts. For potherbs let him vse Fennel, Parcely, Hysop, Marioram, Sage, and Sauory. Let him eschue fish, fruite, and all things that be cold and moist. Let him drinke but litle, for it is good to sustaine as much thirst as he can possibly. Let him drinke *Mulsa*, wherein Sage or Cinamon hath bene boyled, or let him vse to drinke that which the barbarous Physitions at this day call Hippocras, made after this sort, ℞. of chosen Cinamon, ℥ ij. of Ginger, ℥. ß. of long Pepper, Graines, and Galingale, ana. ʒ. j. of Cardamomes, ʒ. j. ß. of Nutmegs, and Cloues, and Mace, ana. ʒ. j. boile them all in three quarts of running water, vntill a pint and a halfe be consumed: then straine it hard, and with halfe a pound of Sugar make it pleasant to drinke. He may drinke no wine at all, vntill he be perfectly cured, but if the patient can hardly be kept so long time from wine, giue him but a litle in the declining of the disease, and let it be thinne and allayed. Mouing & exercise, if he can vse them, are very good for him. Let him eschue sleep in the day. Let his night sleepe be in a meane. Let him be mery and flie perturbations of the mind For the cure, if age, state of body, time of the yeare, and such like permit, it is good to begin with bloud letting, specially if there be signes of plenitude. But you must draw away bloud moderately, lest the body be cooled ouermuch, and you must let bloud on the whole and sound side. Then a few daies after bloudletting you may cleanse the intestines with clisters made thus, ℞. of Mallowes, Holyhockes, Mercury, Cammomill, Sage and Betony, ana. M. j. of Stæchas, ℥. ß of Rew, and Calamint, ana. M. ß of seeds of Fennell, and Ammeos, ana. ʒ. ij. boile these in sufficient water vntill the third part be consumed, then take of that decoction ℔. j of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥ ß. of *Electuariũ Nidum*, ʒ. iij. of hony Roses, ℥. ß of oiles of Laurell, Ireos, and Rew, ana. ℥. j of Salt gemme, ʒ. j. commixe them together and make a clister. Afterward minister vnto him decoctions and sirupes, which haue vertue to extenuate flegmaticke humors, and make them apt to be purged, whereof you shall find examples before in the 7. Chapter. The humours being thus prepared, minister medicines which do purge fleame, beginning with gentle ones, and proceeding by little & litle to stronger. Besides those purgations which are rehearsed in the seuenth Chap aforesaid, you may vse *Pilulæ Assaieret, Arabicæ, fætidæ*, with the which you must alwaies commixe Agarick. Neither doth it suffice to purge the patient once, but you must do it so often, letting 4. or 5. daies passe betweene each purging. The next day after he is purged, it profiteth much to

Victus ratio.

Hippocras.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Clyster.

giue

giue vnto him *Theriaca*, or *Mithridatum*. The body being well purged, you must vse sternutations, gargarismes, odoraments, and such other like, as are rehearted in the 7. Chap. and that specially when the braine is principally affected: for if the braine be not affected, you must rather minister such medicines as may corroborate and strengthen it, in this sort, ℞. of *Diambra, Plirisarcoticon, & Diamoschu dulce*, ana. ℈ j. of powder of Swallowes prepared, ʒ. ß. of Coriander seeds prepared, ʒ j. of Sugar Roset, ʒ. iij. with Sugar dissolued in Rose water make lozenges, and let the patient hold a little of one of them in his mouth often. It profiteth also in this disease to take ʒ. j. of *Castoreum*, or of *Opoponax*, or *Sagapenum*, in *aqua mulsa*. Also *Diatrion pipereon* is good for them. If the braine be chiefly affected, you must annoint the head with hote medicines, as with *Castoreũ*, Mints, Laurel berries, oile of Ireos boiled with a little vineger, and such like. Therefore if coldnes of the weather do not let it, you may shaue the head, and annoint it all ouer the forehead. If the marrow of the backe be affected at the vpper end, then after the former purgation you must in the nape of the neck, where the marrow of the back springeth forth of the brain, vse oiles, & ointments which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse, but you must begin with the weakest, as with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, Spike, Lillies, Ireos, Nard, Nutmegs, S. Iohns wort, & earth-wormes, wherewith you must annoint the nape of the neck, & the resolued side, specially the halfe of the ridge bone: & you must wrap the paralyticke members in warme linnẽ clothes, or in a fox skin, to keep them warme: or you may bath them with the decoction of Sage, Mariòram, Cammomill, S. Iohns wort, Stæchas, & Rosemary, Afterward you may proceed to stronger medicines, as be oiles *Costiuum, Vulpinum*, oiles of Rew, and Bayes, oiles of *Castoreum, Euphorbium*, & oile of tile stones, called *Oleum è lateribus*, or *Oleum Philosophorum*. To these you may adde these ointments, *Vnguentum Aregon, Vnguentum Agrippa, & Vnguentum Martiaton*: and hote simples may be added also if you will, as be Betony, Sage, Rosemary, Galingale, Cowslips, Rew, Calamint, Pellitory, Pepper, *Castoreum & Euphorbium*. Of these you may make an ointment after this sort ℞. of *Vng. Aregon, & Martiaton*, ana. ʒ. j. of *Vnguentum Agrippa*, ʒ. ß. of oiles of *Costiuum* and *Vulpinum*, ana. ʒ. ß. of oile of earthwormes, ʒ. ß. of oile of *Castor*. ʒ. j. ß. of powders of Betony, Pepper, Sage, ana. ℈ j of *Castoreum, & Euphorbium*, ana. ℈ ß. of Galingale, or roots of *Acorus*. ℈. ij. with Waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment. Or thus, ℞. of *Oleum Costiuum*, ʒ ij. of oile of Pepper, ʒ j. ß oile of *Euphorbium*, ʒ. ij. of *aqua vitæ*, ʒ. ij ß. of iuyce of Sage, and Cowslips, ana. ʒ. j ß. of Galingale, ʒ. iij. of Stæchas & Rosemary, ana. ʒ ij. of Pellitory and Pepper, ana. ʒ. j of *Euphorbium*, ʒ ß. bruse them and boile them vntill the *aqua vitæ* and iuyces be consumed, then straine out the oiles, and put to the Waxe, and make a liniment. By example of them you may make a Cerote also after this maner, ℞. of Bay berries, Pellitory, and Pepper, ana. ʒ ij. of Galingale, ʒ. j. of Stæchas, Betony, and Elder, ana. ʒ j. ß. of Mustard seed & *Nigella*, ana. ʒ j. of *Euphorbium & Castoreum*, ana. ℈. of *Oleum Costiuum*, ʒ. j ß of oile of Pepper, ʒ. j. of oile of *Euphorbium*. ʒ. iij. with Waxe & Rosin sufficient make a Cerote. Also you may make a quilt thus, ℞. Hysope, Mariorata, S. Iohns wort, Sage, Rew, and Bay leaues, ana. ʒ ij. Spike, Mastick, *Castoreum* and *Stæchas*, ana. ℈. ij. Cloues, Maces, Nutmegs, ana. ℈. ß. red

Capitis purgatio.

Lozenges.

Vnguentum.

Aliud.

Cerotum.

Sacculus.

Rose leaues dried, M.ß. beate them all to powder, and make a quilt with them.

Fomentum. Also a fomentation may conueniently be made thus: ℞. Sage, Rosemary, S. Iohns wort, Cowslip Hysop, Mariorã, Betony, Peniroyall and Calamint, of each M.ß. boile them in white wine, & adde to the decoction of *Castoreum*, ʒ.ij. of floures of Stæchas, and Lauender, ana. ʒ.j. ß. wherewith you may often bath the members affected, before you vse the aforesaid ointments or quilt. Moreouer you may set cupping glasses lightly without scarification to the members affected, that they may draw thither bloud, & heate, & spirits; and if the members themselues cannot aptly haue cupping glasses applied to thẽ, apply thẽ at the least to the parts next adioyning. After cupping you may vse the aforesaid ointments & cerotes; so that the members affected be first rubbed and chafed: & if the disease relent not by all these meanes, (as *Ætius* doth counsell) you may vse sinapismes or caterization by fire where the originall of the affect is. Last of all, a hote house or dry bath will profite much, or, if they may conueniently come to them, natural baths which sping from brimstone, Alume and Salt, such as be the baths in Germany called *Badeniæ*, *Feriuæ*, *Cellences*, & others in England at Bath. But it is good for them before bathing, to be caried vp & downe in a wagon or horslitter. And this may suffice for the cure of the Palsey, occupying one whole side. But if neither the braine, nor the beginning of the ridge bone be affected, but onely some other parts of the marrow of the backe, then you must search that part of the backe that is affected, and apply such remedies to it, as are before rehearsed. And in like sort if any particular sinew be affected, you must find out his originall where he springeth, & there apply the former medicines or their like. Yet remember you must neuer altogether neglect the braine, although it be not principally affected. If the Palsey be caused of extreme cold without humours abounding in the body, then the place affected being found out, and the medicines before rehearsed being applied vpon it, you shall cure it. But you may not altogether neglect the braine, nor the member that is parilyticke, but vse to them such remedies as are afore taught. Blood-letting, purging and all other euacuations may be omitted, onely vse remedies to alter and strengthen the members. If the Palsey be caused by an inflammation or *Scirrus* of any part, the inflammation or hard swelling being cured, the resolution will be cured also. If any pinching or binding of the sinewes cause resolution will be cured also. If any pinching or binding of the sinewes cause resolution, the bloud being remoued, the cure will soone ensue. If the spondils of the rigde or other bones being out of ioynt or broken, do cause resolution, if the resolution be curable, it will be remedied by their cure. Likewise if Palsey ensue a wound or vlcer in the head, or backe, or in any particular sinew, it will be cured by their Cure, except it be altogether vncurable.

Balneum.

Gestatio.

Palsey coming of cold.

Cure of Palsey coming of other causes.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Palsey in one member.

ALthough any expert man may easily gather out of the former chapter the cure of resolution chancing in any particular member, yet lest those that haue lesse skill, should stand in doubt in some causes, it shall not be superfluous to make discourse of certaine particular resolutions. There is an affect of the face called in Greek *Spasmus Cynicus*, and in Latin *Conuulsio canina*, or of some

Tortura

Tortura oris. The cure of this is like the cure of the Palsey that is rehearsed in the former Chapter. For both bloudletting if nothing be against it, and purging, and clisters, and liniments rehearsed in the former Chapter be good for this. Furthermore for the particular cure of this disease, you must let the patient bloud in the veine vnder the tongue, & fasten cupping glasses to the shutting of the ioynts, & giue him *Masticatoria* made after this forme: ℞. seeds of Stauisacre Masticke, the roote of Pellitory, ana. ʒ.j. Hysope, Origan, ana. ʒ.j ß. of Mustard seed, ʒ.ij. powder thē & commixe them with Turpentine & waxe, and make Trochiskes to chew. Also it is good for the patient to looke often in a glasse, that he seeing the writhing of his face, may with all his power intend to amend it. Also to the griefe of the patient, that is, to the sinewes that be sprong, you must apply the medicins that are in the former Chapter. Also this following is very good. ℞. *Olibanum*, Masticke, ana ℥.ij *ligni* Aloes, ℥ j. Cloues, Galingale, Cinamon, Zedoary, Nutmegs, Cububes, ana. ʒ.vj. Mirrhe, Aloes, *Labdanum*, *Sarcocolla*, *Castoreum*, ℥.ß. Bay berries, Pine nuttes, ana. ʒ. vj. Ireos, *Aristolochia rotunda*, *Dictammus*, *Consolidæ maioris*, ana ℥.j. Gum *Elemni*, *Opoponacis*, Beniomē, ana ℥ ij. the iuyce of *Camepitius*, & the iuyce of Cowslips, ana. ℥.iij. Turpentine, ℥.j powder all that is to be powdered, and put all in a limbecke of glasse, and distill it with a soft fire: and that which cometh first will be like water, which you shall keepe. The next will be thicke like oile, which keep also, & with this oile annoint the place, and let him drinke of the water three or foure ounces at once with a litle wine: this is very excellent good. But you must note in this place, that the necke is not troubled with the palsey which shewe-eth peruerse and ouerthwart, but the other. When the tongue hath the Palsey, the body being first purged, you must cut the veines vnder it, and apply a cupping glasse to the chinne. Also let him vse *Masticatoria*, and collutions of Mustard seeds and such like. Also let him not neglect exercises of the tongue. And the necke, and the hinder part of the head, let them be annointed with sharpe ointments and liniments Also the Physition may apply cerotes and sinapismes, and such like as before. When the bladder hath the Palsey, sometime the vrine is withholden, and sometime it goeth away against the patient his will. In this case you must apply remedies to the belly and to the priuities, oyle of Rew, Nard, Spike, or oile in the which is sodden the roote of *Eringiū*, Rew, Commin, or Dill, or such like. All are very good: & you may well commixe with thē Butter, *Castoreum*, *Galbanum*, *Opoponax*. And there can be no better remedie, then to put these things in the bladder by the yard with a ciring. First therefore if the patient cannot make water, you must get out the vrine by a fine pipe made of siluer for this purpose, called *Cathetera*. Afterward take those medicins that are rehearsed a litle before, and powre them into the bladder with a ciring; this will do maruellous much good. Also medicins prouoking vrine giuen to drinke be good for it, and so is *Castoreum* likewise. Also plaisters made of laxatiue things are profitable therefore. The palsey of the yard doth let & hinder the flowing of the vrine, & sperme, & carnall copulation, therfore you must vse the same remedies which are rehearsed for the Palsy in the bladder: but priuatly you must apply to the loynes & the ioynts of the huckle bones things that will heat, & ye must vse those medicines that haue power to erect the yard.

Curatio.

Note.

Palsey of the tongue.

Palsey of the bladder.

Palsey of the yard.

And *Castoreũ* may effectually be ministred, as well for this as for all other Palseyes: the sicke must chiefly eschue meates and drinkes that be coole. By these examples you may easily finde how to cure other members that be paralytick.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the Falling sicknesse.

EPilepsia in Greeke (as *Galen* saith) is a conuulsion, drawing and stretching of all the parts of the whole body, not continually, but that which chanceth at sundry times, with hurt of the minde and sense. It is so called because it attacheth both the sense and feeling of the head, and also of the minde. The Latines call this disease, *Morbus Comitialis*. There be three differences in this sicknesse or disease. The first is caused when this sicknesse cometh onely of disease in the braine, as it chanceth when grosse and clammie fleame, or sharpe choler doth stop the passage of the spirit in the ventricles of the braine. If this euill cometh of a grosse humour, then the disease cometh sodainely, and it is soone gone againe. Secondly it is caused through an euill affect in the mouth of the stomacke, that is, when the braine laboureth to driue away the vapours and humours that ascend vp to it from the stomacke. Thirdly the falling sicknesse is caused, when as the patient feeleth a thing like vnto a cold aire, coming from some member, and creeping vp to the braine, but this chanceth very seldome. There goeth before this euill an vnwise state of the body and minde, sadnesse, forgetfulnesse, troublesome dreames, ach of the head, and continuall fulnesse in it, specially in anger, palenes of the face, inordinate mouing of the tongue, and many do bite it. As soone as this euill taketh them, the sicke fall downe, & they are plucked vp together, they snort, and sometime they cry out, many do tremble and turne round about. But the peculiar signe of this disease is foming at the mouth. This disease chanceth most to children. *Galen* saith, that if it taketh any person after 25. yeares of age, he shall haue it till he die The perfume or smoke of *Bitumen* or *lapis Gagatis*, or of Goats horne, will declare and shew thē that haue the Epilepsie. Also the liuer of an he Goat eaten, or the sauour of the liuer sodden will do the same. It is profitable for them that haue this disease to vse in their diet, things that will attenuate, cut and deuide. Therefore let the aire wherein the sicke remaineth be hote and dry, specially if the euill be caused of fleame. He must eschue all flesh except birds that flie on mountaines: also he must auoid all kind of pulses, fish, and wine, especially if it be old and thicke. Let his drinke be *Mulsa*, or thin ale: the eating of Capers doth maruellously profite. Exercise and frictions are good: but rub the head after all the other members be rubbed. Let him not vse too much lecherie: let him sleepe measurably on nights, and let him eschue exceeding sleeping on the day. He must abstaine from Garlike, Onions, Mustard and such like fumous things. He must eschue drinking straight after a bath. If a child haue this disease, you need not much to study for remedies, for with a moderate diet ostentimes the disease endeth by it owne accord: you must appoint a diet for the infant & the nurse. Therefore if the child be not yet weaned, let the nurse vse meats of good iuyce, and let her vse exercise before meat: let her eschue carnall copulation, and let her vse for her diet things that be hote and dry, that thereby the milke may be hotter

Morbus comitialis.

1 *Causa.*

2

3

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Cure of infants.

hotter and thinner. Annoint the head of the infant continually with oile of Dil and Ireos, putting to them the powder of Cypresse, Ireos, Maidenhaire, Marioram, and such like, but neuer wash the head with water whether it be hote or cold. Also giue the child clarified hony to licke. Also this *Ecligma* is praised of many, ℞. fine white Sugar, ℥ ij. oile of sweet Almonds, as much as is sufficient to make it of the substance of a lohoch, & giue it to the childe to lick. Also it is good to commixe with it miscle of the oke, and Vnicorns horne. Also hang about the childs necke roote of Piony being greene, for it helpeth marueilously. Moreouer they that fal into this disease after they be past childs age, you must annoint & make straight those members which are writhed and plucked out of order in them. Afterward you must open the mouth, putting a wedge betweene the teeth, and with a fether dipped in oile of Ireos, prouoke vomit to bring out fleame. Also it is good to quicken the senses with odoraments: also *Peucedanum*, or dog Fennell, Rew, *Bitumen*, and iuyce of *Silplinum*. The matter continuing very sharply, put into their mouth *Castoreum*, or *Laserpitium* with *Oximel*. Also when they are raised, you must cast in sharpe clisters. They that begin to recouer (their strength being refreshed) purge them with *Hiera Galeni*, or some other conuenient medicine: and this is the cure of a new and sharpe Epilepsie, therfore now we will treat how to helpe that which is old. The patient must drinke water long time, or very small ale, and that in the beginning of the cure, vnlesse any thing do forbid it. Let bloud in the veine of the hamme, or the ring finger, and then three or foure dayes after you must comfort the body: and it is good to minister preparatiues to extenuate, as sirupes of Wormewood, of Hysope, of Stœcados, *Oximel scilliticum*, decoction of Hysope, rootes of Piony, and others rehearsed before. Afterward purge with purgations, that is, with *Pilulæ Cochiæ*, *Pilulæ de Agarico*, and such as purge fleame. Also I iudge *Stubium* to be of great force in this kind, being vsed as is declared before in the xv. Chapter, fol. 21. which doth mightily purge the superfluous humours of the head. And also I haue knowne this to helpe many, oile of exitore, and *Oleum de lateribus*: with it annoint the hinder part of the head morning and euening warme. Furthermore make a quilt with three sheets of gray paper, and bast vpon it cotton wooll, and let the patient were it day and night, vj. daies. Then take two frying pans, make them red hot, and hold one of them ouer his head, till it waxeth cold; then take the other and do likewise; do this till the patients head be very hot. And if his griefe take him in thy presence, set the patient on his knees, and let his armes be holden crosse ouer his body as may be, and let his head be thus warmed many dayes together, and euery morning and euening let him take these things: the first day, of the powder of the scull of a man burned, one dramme at once, and the next day of the miscle of the oke, made in powder, ʒ. j. and the third day the powder of Piony roots, ʒ j and after those three dayes, take these powders each day, till the patient be healed, which will be in fortie dayes. But if this euill be engendred of melancholie, then seeke medicines to purge it in the Chapter of *Melancholia*, howbeit it is lawfull to take the barke of dry blacke Hellebore, and beate it into fine powder, and to minister one dram at once with *Mulsa*, and a little Pepper to it: also you may make Pils thereof, and giue them. And when the sicke is purged

Ecligma.

Cure of yong folkes.

Cure of Epilepsie in old folkes.

A purging potion of stubiũ.

enough, bring him to a bath; the third day fasten cupping glasses with scarification to the sides and shoulders, and then many daies after comfort the body, and againe purge him with *Hiera Galeni*. After that, fasten cupping glasses to the noddle of the necke. The next day apply to the head like a plaister, bread sodden in *Mulsa*, adding to it bitter Almonds brayed, or *Serpillum*, or Calamints, or Mints, or Rew, and do that three daies. Then shaue the head, and annoint it with iuyce of *Peucedanum*, infused in vineger, in which *Serpillum*, or Ireos hath bene sodden. Then againe the body being refreshed, purge the sicke onely with three drammes of *Hiera*: after those things be done, minister sternutaments, *Masticatoria*, and such things as do purge by the nose; then afterwards if you thinke good minister a clister. At the last apply ointments, liniments, and Emplaisters, which haue vertue to dissolue and driue away, whereof you may find examples plentie in diuerse places.

Hiera Galeni.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Crampe.

Spasmos,

Spasmos in Greeke, in Latine *Conuulsio*, in English the Crampe, is a disease in the which the sinewes are drawn and pluckt vp against ones will. There be of it three kinds of differences. The first is called in Greeke τέτανος, in Latine *Distentio*. It is when the necke remaineth altogether immoueable, and cannot be turned any way, but must be holden right forth. The second is called in Latine *Tensio ad anteriora*. In this disease the head and the necke be drawn down to the breast. The third is called in Latin *Tensio ad posteriora*. In this disease the head is drawne down backward to the back & the shoulders. For the causes of this disease you must note that *Hippocrates* appointeth but onely two, that is, fulnes & emptines of the sinewes in the body, and sometime it cometh with biting or stinging of some venimous beast. If the Crampe doth take one that is haile, or by and by asloone as the disease cometh, or not long after, then is the disease caused of fulnes; but when the conuulsion cometh after many sweats, vomits, watchings or drinesse, then it is caused of emptinesse. The diet of them that haue conuulsion which cometh of fulnes, must be hot and dry; but in them which haue the conuulsion caused of emptines, the diet must be moist. Therefore the patient must be nourished with suppings and fat broths, and flesh that is easie to digest, and that which nourisheth well. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne and watery, which may quickly be dispersed into all parts of the body, vnlesse a feuer be present: for then iuyce of Ptisan is profitable, or in stead of wine minister decoction of Cinamon. Also prouoke sleepe. Let them eschue exercises and all things that may empty the body: to be short let his diet be like vnto theirs which haue the feuer Hecticke. The cure of Cramp caused of fulnes, must straight begin with letting of bloud, if nothing do prohibite it. It is meet to take away much bloud, but it may not be done all at once on heaps, but by little and little you must let bloud on the middle veine of the arme. If after bloudletting it seemeth that the sicke may suffer it, wash the wombe with a sharpe clister. That part which is drawne must be strongly kept together, and they must altogether eschue inordinate mouings, & the place must be chafed with oiles of Rew, or Ireos, or some other such like, or they must be couered with wooll dipped in the said oiles, or you must lay vpon it a broad

1

2

3

Causa.

Victus ratio.

Cure of fulnes

Bloodletting.

Clyster.

broad bladder filled with oile. And if the conuulsion cometh of fleame, then the fleame must first be extenuate and made thinne, and be prepared, that it may be apt to be purged: then by and by minister a purgation to purge fleame. Also apply cupping glasses with scarification, for light ones do hurt. If the legges haue the Crampe, apply it to the Hanches, and to the latter knittings of the ioynts. If the hands be drawne, apply it to the backe and to the ioynts of the shoulders. Moreouer the head must be purged with Masticatories, Gargarismes, and such like medicines. Time proceeding it is good to bath him, and therefore euery day twice or thrice let him descend into water of Brimstone or Alume, or salt water; but let him not tarry in them, lest strength faile him: or if there cannot be vsing of naturall bathes, it is lawfull to vse a hot house, or dry bath, or water in which are sodden Laurell leaues, Sothernwood, Peniroyall, Wormewood, Rew, Sage, S. Iohns wort, Mariorã, & Betony, and the places that are drawne ought to be couered with skins of Wolues or Foxes: also apply the ointments which are rehearsed in the cure of the Palsey of the vsing of cold things, but minister often hot medicines, such as be *Theriaca* and *Mithridatum*, and such as be hote. But the surest and best of all other is the infusion of *Castoreum* ministred the quantity of one dram: truly not onely the drinking of it, but also the annointing of it outwardly is good. Moreouer the conuulsion which cometh of emptinesse and drines, is such an euill disease, as it is almost vncurable. Those which are so drawne, you must nourish with hot oile of *Hydrelæum*. Also it is good to bring him to a bath, and soft frictions with oile are good, and all their whole cure must alwaies be like the cure of Hecticks. If the conuulsion chanceth by the stroke of some venimous beast, in the beginning of the cure you must labour to draw out the poyson; which you may do by making the wound wider, and by scarifying the place round about, setting vpon it cupping glasses: also you may annoint it with Leeke seed, braied with Salt, or Garlike, or Oynions; & after the fall of the scurfe, you shall keepe the wound xl. or lx. dayes from a scarre: to the which if it make much haste, you shall open the sore againe with ashes of vine or of figge tree: and it is good to annoint it with Horehound or leaues of *Anagallis*. Also nourish the place with the decoction of the roote of Sorrell. Also *Theriaca* infused in oile of Roses, and layed to the wound is good, because it doth draw out and purge the poyson from the bottome. Therefore they erre much which say, that *Theriaca*, being outwardly applied, doth driue the poyson inwards.

The crampe coming of fleame.

Capitis purgatio.

Balneum.

The crampe coming of emptinesse and drinesse.

Cura veneni.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Mare.

Ephialtes in Greeke, in Latine *Incubus* and *Incubo*. It is a disease, whereas one thinketh himselfe in the night to be oppressed with a great weight, & beleeueth that something cometh vpon him, and the patient thinketh himselfe strangled in this disease. It is called in English the Mare. This vice is caused of excesse of drinking, & continuall rawnes of the stomacke, from whence do ascend vapors grosse and cold, filling the ventricles of the braine, letting the faculties of the braine to be dispersed by the sinewes. They that haue this disease can scarce moue, being astonied. and feeling in sleepe imagination of strangling, and as it were the holding of some thing that doth violently inuade them. In

Causa.

this the voice is suppressed: some haue such vaine imagination, that they beleeue they heare the thing that doth oppresse them. At the last with much trouble the vapours being attenuate and driuen away, and the passage of the spirits being opened, the sicke is by and by raised. It is good to remedie this euill at the first: for if it continue, it induceth and sheweth before some grieuous disease, as the *Apoplexia*, the falling sicknes, or madnes. Let their diet be thin, & such as will not engender windinesse. Let him vse no wine, but that which is mixed with water, or none at all but ale. Let him eschue sleeping in the day, & let him not go to bed by and by after meate: and to be short, let his whole diet be such as is described and set downe for the falling sicknes. For the cure, if the whole body be full, you must begin with bloudletting, and you must cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if ill iuyce be gathered in the body, for lacke of perfect digestion, then purge the body by purgations: and if fleame abound, you may first minister preparatiues to extenuate the fleame, and then purge it. The whole body being purged, you must apply outward medicines, whereof you may find examples before. Blacke seeds of Piony doth chiefly helpe them, you may giue thē fifteene seeds braied with water. And nourish the head with oile of Dill made hot: and couer the head with a cap, when they go to bed. Minister within the body those things which strengthen the head, as *Aromaticum rosatum, Diamoschu dulcis, Diamber, Dianthon, Plirisarcoticon*, and such other like.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.
Venæ sectio.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Madnesse.

MAnia in Greeke a disease which the Latines call *Insania* and *furor*: that is, madnes and furiousnes. They that haue this disease be wood and vnruly like wilde beasts. It differeth from the Frensie, because in that there is a feuer, but *Mania* cometh without a feuer. It is caused of much bloud flowing vp to the braine: sometime the bloud is temperate, & sometime only the abundance of it doth hurt: sometime of sharpe & cholericke humours, or of a hot distemper of the braine. There goeth before madnesse debilitie of the head, tickling of the eares, & shinings come before their eyes, great watchings, thoughts and strange things approch the minde, and heauines with trembling of the head. If time proceede, there is raised in them a rauenous appetite, & a readines to bodily lust, the eyes waxe hollow, and they neither winke nor becken. But madnes caused of bloud onely, there followeth continuall laughing: there cometh before the sight (as the sicke thinketh) things to laugh at. But when choler is mixed with bloud, then the pricking & feruent mouing of the braine maketh them irefull, mouing, angry and bold. But if the choler wax grosse, & doth pricke and pull the braine and his other members, it maketh them wood, wilde and furious, & therefore they are the worst to cure. Let their diet be thin soupings liquide, making a good stomacke without fulnes, & such things as do engender no bloud, & you must forbid thē altogether drinking of wine. Where this disease is caused of abundance of bloud, you must begin the cure with letting of bloud: it is good to cut the vttermost veine of the arme, or if that do not appeare, then cut the middle veine. In women cut the veine on the anckles, for that prouoketh menstruis: you must draw out so much bloud as strength will

Causæ.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Cure if it come of bloud onely.
Bloudletting.

will suffer. Therefore in letting of bloud you must continually feele the pulses. Moreouer, after the letting of bloud, nourish the head with oiles of Roses and vineger, or iuyce of *Polygonii*, or *oleum Melinum*, *vnguentum infrigidans Galeni*. Then apply moist wool wet in oile to the hinder part of the head. After bloud letting, at night proucke sleepe: for if after bloudletting, watching do still continue, the sicke will appeare to be more outragious. Therefore minister boldly with iuyce of Ptisan *Diacodion*, or mingle it with water: for so sleepe is plenteously enticed. And two dayes after minister *Trochiskes de hestear* with *Diacodion*. Also oile of Violets with womans milke is good. Likewise an Embrocatiõ made of dry Violets, water Lillies, Willow leaues, and Roses, leaues, of Lettuce, seed of Poppy, and such like, & other medicines rehearsed in the next chapter. Furthermore the bellie must be made soluble with conuenient food, with clisters. These things being done, if there be need, you must draw bloud out of the midst of the forehead: set horse Leeches round abound the head, and specially the forepart of the head. For the cure of them which haue madnes caused of choler mixed with bloud, you must minister purgations of *Hierapicra*, & other medicines that will purge choler. The iuyce of *Elleborus niger* doth maruellous much profite in this griefe, so that you minister but ten or twelue graines at once. But if they dote, & refuse to drinke a purging medicine, then, that you may the easilier deceiue them, commixe the purgation with their meates, or with fat Figs or Dates. Also the onely roote of wild Fennell helpeth them, and the seed drunke with water. The sicknesse declining, bring the sicke into a bath, and apply discussiue medicines to driue away that which remaineth. He that will haue more, let him seeke in the Chapter following *de Melancholia*.

Externæ medicinæ.

Embrochæ.

Cure of it comming of choler mixed with bloud.

Balneum.

CHAP. XXVIII.
Of Melancholy.

MElancholie is an alienation of the mind, troubling reason, and waxing foolish, so that one is almost beside himselfe. It cometh without a feuer, and is chiefly engendred of melancholy occupying the minde, and changing the temperature of it. It is caused three kind of wayes: for sometime it is caused of the common vice of melancholy bloud being in al the veines of the whole body, which also hurteth the braine. But oftentimes onely the bloud which is in the braine is altered, and the bloud in all the rest of the body is vnhurt, and that chanceth two wayes: for either it is deriued from other places, & ascendeth vp thither, or else it is engendred in the braine it selfe. Also sometime it is engendred though inflammation, & euill affect about the stomacke & sides: and therfore there be three diuersities of melancholiousnesse, according to the three kinds of causes. The most common signes be fearfulnesse, sadnesse, hatred, and also they that be melancholious haue strange imaginations: for some thinke themselues brute beasts, & do counterfeit their voice & noise: some thinke thẽselues vessels of earth, or earthen pots, & therefore they withdraw thẽselues frõ them that they meete, lest they should knocke together. Moreouer they desire death, and do very often behight and determine to kill themselues: and some feare that they should be killed. Many of them do alwaies laugh, and ma-

Causa.

1

2

3

Signa.

nie do weep; some thinke themselues inspired with the holy Ghost, and do prophecy vpon things to come. But these be the peculiar signes of them that haue melancholiousnesse caused through consent of the whole body: for in them the state of the body is slender, blacke, rough and altogether melancholious, caused naturally, or through certaine thoughts, or watchings, or eating of wicked meates, or through Emeroids, or suppression of menstruis. But they which haue *Melancholia* caused of vice in the sides, they haue rawnesse & much windinesse, sharpe belkings, burnings, and grieuousnesse of the sides. Also the sides are plucked vpward, and many times are troubled with inflammation, specially about the beginning of the disease. Also there is costiuenesse of the wombe, little sleepe, troublous and naughtie dreams, swimming of the head, and sound in the eares. Let his diet be such as doth not ingender melancholy. Therefore let them tarrie in an aire hote and moist, and let them vse meates of good iuyce, that be moist and temperate, & let their bread be well baked and wrought, let their flesh be Capons, Hennes, Partriches, or Fesants, stonie fishes, and such like. Let the sicke vse wine that is white, thinne, and not very old, and let them eschue wine that is thicke and blacke: let their exercises be meane, let them ride or walke by places pleasant and greene, or vse sailing on water. Also a bath of sweete water, with a moist diet, let the sicke vse often, as one of his remedies: sleepe is wonderfull good for them, as also moderate carnall copulation. Let them be mery as much as may be, and heare musicall instruments and singing. But when the whole body aboundeth with melancholicke bloud, it is best to begin the cure with letting of bloud, & you must cut the liuer vein on the arme. But when the melancholicke bloud occupieth only the braine, the sicke needeth no bloudletting, vnlesse there be very much bloud; and therefore let the sicke vse often bathings, and moist diet of good iuyce, which is without windines, & let them vse delectations of the minde, and let them be cured by these without any strong remedies; but if the disease hath endured long, it requireth sundry medicines that be strong. Therefore whether the melancholiousnes be caused through vice of the whole body (as is said, the bloud being first drawne out) or through the onely euill affect of the braine, you must minister medicines that will purge downward. And a few daies after purging and bloudletting, let the sicke drinke daylie in the morning this decoctiō, ℞. flowers of Borage, Buglosse, Violets, ana. M. j. great Raisins the stones picked out, ℥. j. Harts tong, M. j. Fumitory, M. ß. Barke of the roote of Capers, *Tamariscus*, ana. ℥. iij. roots of Fennell, Parcely, Liquorice, ana. ℥. j. Thime, *Epithimum*, ana. ℥ ß. seeth all these in three pounds of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the iuyce of that decoction sweete with Sugar, and clarifie it with the white of egges, and adde thereto Sirupe of Fumitory, and *Epithimum*, ana. ℥. ij. and make a potion. After that sort at these dayes they minister Sirupe of Violets, and Buglosse, putting to them the water of Harts tongue, Hops, Endiue and Borage. But seeing it appeareth that the stomacke cannot beare very much vsing of distilled waters, it is better to vse decoctions of the aforesaid herbes, commixed with Sirupes after this sort: ℞. Sirupe of Borage, ℥ j. Sirupe of *Epithimum*, ℥. ß. decoction of Harts tong, Fumitory, & Endiue, ℥. iij. commixe them and make a potion. After this purge the body with *confectio Hamech* & *Diasenæ*,

Victus ratio.

Balneum.

Venæ sectio.

Cure if it come of melancholy bloud.

Purgatio.

Decoctum præparans.

Potio.

Diasenæ, Pilulæ Indæ, Pilulæ è lapide Armenio, and such like. Also it is good to vse this purging decoction, ℞. flowers of Borage, Violets, Roses, ana. M.j. Raisins the stones picked out, *Tamarindus*, ana ℥.j. *Myrobalanes citrinæ, Indos, emblicos, bellericos*, ana. ℥.ß. leaues of Sene, Polipody, ana. ʒ. vij. Prunes damascene x. seeth them in a iust quantity of water vnto the third part: then straine it, and make the iuyce of that decoction sweet with Sugar, thē minister, ℥ iiij. therof in the morning. If this do not sufficiently purge, you may dissolue therein, ʒ.ij. of *Diasenæ*. Also the infusion of *Epithimū* is maruellously good, being made thus: ℞ *Epithimum*, ℥.ß. infuse it 24. houres in ℥.iiij. of whay made of Goates milke, then straine it, and wring it hard, & minister it in the morning. Also the infusion of the leaues of Sene is good, which may be thus made, ℞. leaues of Sene, ℥.ij. Prunes Damascene *in numero*, xij. bray them, and infuse them in whay of Goats milke 24. houres, then straine it & presse it, & let it be drunke in the morning. Also it is lawfull to vse this power, ℞. *Epithimū*, ℥ ß. *lapis Armenius*, Agaricke, ana. ℥.ij. Scammony preparate, ʒ.j. Cloues 20. beate them all into powder, and minister euery weeke, ʒ. or ʒ.j. ß. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with whay, but let it not be that which is strained out of cheese: for that is better which is separated from the milke by some decoction, & let them vse it vntill the belly begin to be soluble; you may commixe it with hony. Also it is good a few dayes after the purgation to vse clisters, & let them be such as this is, ℞. Fumitory, Hops, Thime, ana. M.j. *Epithimū*, M ß. Sene, Polipody, ana. ʒ.vj. *Cartami*, ℥.ß. seeds of Annise, Fennel, *Ammeos*, Comin, ana. ʒ.ij. seeth all in water vntill the third part. Take of the iuyce of that decoction, ℔.j. *Cassia fistularis* newly drawn ℥ j. *Diasenæ*, ℥.ß. oiles of Violets & Cammomil, ana. ℥. ß. cōmon Salt, ʒ.j. ß commixe them all and make a clister. Moreouer if the disease be caused through the stopping of *Emeroids* or menstruis, then we must minister medicines which will driue away the heauinesse of the minde, restore strength, & ingender gladnesse, as is, conserues of Borage, Endiue, Violets, Roses, *Anthos, lætificans Galeni, Dianthon*, & such like. Also by no meanes you may forget the vsing of Bathes of sweet water. Also you must apply strong *Embrochæ* to moistē the head, as this, ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Violets, ana. M.j. ß. Cammomil, *Stœchados*, ana. M.j. flowers of water Lillies, M. ß. seeds of Lettuce, ʒ. j. seeds of Scarioll, ʒ j ß. boile them all in iust quantity of water, and sprinkle the head being shauen with the iuyce of that decoction. After that sort it is good to vse vnctions of oiles of Violets, water Lillies, and such like. Last of all, the sicke must labour that the false and wicked imaginations, and great sadnesse may be driuen away by all meanes that can be inuented. But if the griefe be caused through diseases in the sides, they must continually vse to drinke decoction of Peniroyall, not onely before purgations, but also after them, and likewise decoction of Centory. Afterwards also, minister continually decoction of Wormwood: for it is profitable to the stomach, and it letteth ingendring of wind in the bellie, and it doth not asswage the belly extremely, but prouoke vrine, causing good digestion, so that many be healed by this onely remedy. Also you must minister those things that prouoke vrine, as Annise, *Daucus, Asarum, Smirinum*, the seed, and roote of wild Fennell, and Germander: let the water of the decoction of these be ministred, and minister the powder of them strewed in drinke. Also it

Decoctum purgans Melancholiam.

Dilutum Epithimi.

Puluis purgatorius.

Clyster.

Embrochæ.

Cure if it come of diseases in the sides.

Absinthij decoctum.

Diuretica.

is good that the Physition looke to the cure of the sides. Therfore nourish them with decoction of Rew, Dil, Wormwood, Peniroyall, seed of *Agnus castus*, Laurell berries, Sauory, Mugwort, and such like. These do ease paine & driue away inflammation, especially if they be sodden in oile & applied to the griefe like a plaister. Against windines in the stomacke with pricking, nourish the stomacke with Comin, Peniroyall, & vineger sodden together, and make Emplaisters of Annise seeds, *Apium*, Comin, *Smirinum*, and such like sodden in oile, & suffer the plaister to ly still a good while, as well before meate as after it. And when the plaister is taken away, couer the sides largely with wooll, or with a light lambs skin, the place being first annointed with *oleum Nardinum*. Also you must apply cupping glasses lightly without scarification. To those with whom this disease hath taried long, purging by vomits is a present remedy. But you may not vse strong vomits, for they be malicious to the stomacke, and cause griefe in the belly. Therefore prouoke vomit with hote water commixed with *Oximel*. But if the sicke cannot vomit by this meanes, then prouoke it by putting a fether or their finger into the mouth. Also the onely vomit made with *Elleborus albus* is good for them, being made after this sort, ℞. *Elleborus albus*, ʒ. j. cut it in small peeces, and put them in a great Radish roote, and after three dayes take out the *Elleborus*, and then stampe and wring out the iuyce of the Radish; take of that iuyce ʒ. vj. hot water, ℥. iiij. *Oximel*, ℥. j. commixe them & minister it all at once to the sicke warme. This hath bene proued to be very good. ℞. *Stibium*, x. or xij. graines made in fine powder, and put the powder into foure spoonfuls of Muscadell, or Malmesey, and let it stand two dayes, and let it be shaken three times on the day, and when you will minister it powre it out softly, leauing the powder stil in the bottome of the glasse, and giue but the very wine, which is an excellent thing for this griefe. There be diuerse other which I will omit till time more conuenient.

Fomenta.

Cataplasmata

Concurbitulæ.

Vomitus.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of trembling and shaking.

Tremor in Latin, in English trembling or shaking, it is a disease which is accomplished with two sundry mouings. One is, while the member is constrained through heauinesse & griefe to creepe downward. The other is, while the member is caried vpward from his naturall course and faculty. This euil is caused altogether through weaknesse of the sinewes, which doth plainly declare old age: but priuately it cometh of other causes, that is, of very cold temperature of nature, cold drinke taken out of time or season, especially in feuers. Moreouer the abundance of a cold, grosse & clammy humor, and much vsing of wine that is vnmixt and cleare, old age and feare are causes thereof. There need no signes to know neither the euill, nor the causes of it, because it may be knowne partly by sight, and partly by the patients words and the state of the body. Let the diet be so ordained that it may be cleane contrary to the causes of the disease, and let his meate be such as will easily be distributed, first broths, then birds that flie, and tender fishes. Against abundance of grosse and clammy humours, it is good to vse those things which haue power to deuide, extenuate, and cut: but he must wholly eschue alll things which do hurt the sinewes, and chiefly the drinking of wine that is vnmixt. He must drinke wine allayed

Causæ.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

allayed with water, or *Hydromel*, or Ale. For the cure, they which do tremble or shake through some manifest error, they must altogether abstaine from things that be hurtfull. They therefore that tremble through drinking of wine, vntill they be cleane deliuered of the disease, let them drinke *Hydromel* with the decoction of Sage and Betonie. If the shaking come of cold and grosse humors, then minister the cure which is assigned for the Palsie, and the Crampe, coming of fulnesse, (letting of bloud onely excepted.) You must annoint the outward parts of the body with oiles that will heate, and couer it with soft wooll: then fasten cupping glasses without scarification from the first shutting of the ioynts, which may be drawne to the outward part of the skin, and so thereby humors may the easier be discussed & driuen away. Also it is good for the sick to drink daily fiue graine of Pepper with ℥.j.ß. of *Mulsa*. There be moreouer certaine other simple medicins, which being taken do helpe trembling, that is, *Castoreum*, root of *Althæa*, decoction of Egrimony, and the braine of an Hare. But what need many words? for the medicins and specially the ointments which are prescribed in the cure of the Palsey, are to be vsed as remedies against this disease.

Curatio.

Cucurbitulæ.

Simplices medicinæ.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Eyes.

I Thought good in respect of the worthinesse of the member, and the manifold diseases to the which it is subiect, to subnect the discourses of the eye, with the remedies of the infirmities, which by experiēce I haue found incident vnto it: and the multiplicitie of it is so great, that the treatise thereof stretcheth beyond the bounds of other ordinarie Chapters. But (as I hope) the Reader will not account it tedious, because of the pleasantnesse and necessity of the discourse, though it be somewhat long: for God hath (as it were) packed and bestowed an infinite variety of maruels in one litle round subiect, which if it be consumed and distributed into his parts, and according to the dignity of euery one sufficiently treated of, (I suppose) it would fill a greate volume, and require both an exquisite Philosopher to conceiue aright of it. & an excellent Oratour might seeme also necessary to lay abroad at length such secret and wonderfull notions. But the eye which is wont with curious inspection to pry into all other things, and to find out the nature and order of them, hath bin vnable to vnfold his owne wonderfull constitution, and hath bene alway blind in iudging of it selfe, and in foreseeing the discommodities which attend vpon it, or in curing them when they haue laid hold of it. For mine owne part, I will not promise any absolute worke, but as learned Physitions haue thought of it, (and as I my selfe haue by experience learned) so will I frame and fashion my treatise. An eye therefore is a member, round, whole, and hard, as the ball of a foote, or as the scowred new bason full of cleare water, set in the well of the head, to minister light to the body, by the influence of the visible spirits, sent from the fantasticall cel by a sinew that is called *Nerusus opticus*, with the helpe of a greater light ministred from without. And very fitly is the place where the eye is set, called the *Well of the head*, for the abundance of watery humours and teares, which often dissolue out therof, sometime of sorrow & heauinesse of the heart, sometime of ioy and gladnesse, and sometime of the abundance of waterie hu-

mours caused of frigidity and coldnesse: and thus haue the Phisitions described the eye. It shall not be vnnecessarie also to distribute it into his parts, and therefore (as *Iohannicus* saith) the eye hath seuen coates, which they call *tunicæ*, foure colours, and three humours. But his opinion concerning the tunicles, by sundry Anatomists hath bene euicted, making but onely sixe: yea and some there be, that (swaruing from the most receiued opinion) haue made roome for a coniecture of their own, as they thinke by reason: excluding all those ouer curious diuisions, (namely *Iris*, *Cornea*, *Aranea*, *Vuea*, and the residue,) and imagine but onely two coates, the one whereof they name *Saluatrix*, because it saueth and keepeth the humours: and the other they terme *Discolorata*, that is hauing no colour: and they maintaine, that in the eye it selfe there is no colour, but that which is caused of the Christalline humor, which if it be planted very neare to the tunicles, then the eye seemeth of no colour: if it lie deepe within, it deferreth three visible colours vnto the beholder, and (as they say) the diuerse placing of this chrystalline humor begetteth the variety of colours in sundry eyes; which gaue our Anatomists matter to deuise their distributions, while they referred the colour to the nature of the tunicle, which (indeed) is to be imputed to the humours. For mine owne iudgement, if it be lawfull to iudge so intricate a cause, (I thinke) I could very well maintaine, that the humours be the causers of the diuersity of the colours, though our blinde Anatomists do impugne it in their common bookes. But I haue taken vpon me, rather to cure the malady of the eye, then to define the nature of it, although this litle *Præludium* will not seeme altogether vnnecessary.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of a Cataract.

Foure kinds of Cataracts curable.

A Cataract is a corrupt water, congealed like a curde, ingendred of the humours of the eye, distempered betwixt the tunicles and set before the sight of the eye and Christalline humours. Of these manner of Cataracts there be seuen diuerse spices or kinds, whereof foure be curable, and three be vncurable.

1. The first kind of the curable Cataract is light, very bright, like white chalke, or as alabaster well polished: and it is caused by a stroke in the eye, either with a

2. sticke or a stone, or any other outward violence. The second kind is somewhat white, and much like vnto a celestiall colour: and this proceedeth from the stomach, and is commonly caused of vnwholesome meates, and vnkind nourishment, whereof a grosse fumositie resolueth, and ascendeth vp into the braine,

3. and from thence falleth downe into the eyes. The third kind is also whitish, but it turneth into the colour of ashes, and is commonly engendred of paine in the head, as of the Migrime, or such like diseases: and it is caused sometime of great sorow and heauinesse, whereof cometh immoderate weeping: and sometime of

4. much cold, and much watching, and such other like. The fourth spice is of a Cytrine colour, and is commonly engendred of excessiue meate and drinke indigested, and also of great labour, and sometime of the humour melancholie. These are the foure curable kinds, but they be neuer healed till they be grown and confirmed: and the signe or token of their full perfection is, when the patient seeth nothing, vnlesse it be the brightnes of the Sunne by day light, or the

light

light of the Moone by night. Many ignorant persons, neither knowing the cause nor the properties of these maner of Cataracts, haue assayed to cure them with purgations, powders and plaisters, but they haue bene deceiued. For neither inward medicins nor outward remedies can any whit preuaile, vnlesse you ioyne to them *artẽ acuariam*, the art of the needle; which because it is vnknown to many of our practitioners, I will insert a discourse of it in this Treatise. Neuertheless, before you vse the needle, it is requisite that the braine should be purged with *pilulæ Hierosolymitanæ*, which you shall make thus: ℞. Turbith, ℥.j. Aloes hepaticke, ℥ ß. Maces Quibibes, Masticke, and Saffron, ana. ʒ.j. beate them to powder all together and confect them with the iuyce of Roses, and make pils therof: and this purgation must be ministred the day before you trie with the needle. And on the next day, while the diseased party is fasting, about nine of the clocke, cause him to sit ouerthwart a stoole in riding fashion, and plant your selfe likewise on the same stoole face to face against him, and bid him hold his sound eye close shut. Encourage him also, and exhort him to be patient: for the tractability of him maketh much to the conuenient dispatch of your labour. Then with your left hand lift vp the ouer eye-lid, and with your other hãd put in the needle made therfore, on the side farthest off from the nose: & subtilly thirle the tunicle saluatrice, writhing alwayes you fingers to and fro, vntil you touch the corrupt water (which is the Cataract) with the point of the needle: and then begin by litle and litle to remoue that water from before the sight to the corner of the eye, and there keepe it with the point of your needle, the space of three minutes of an houre, & then remoue your needle easily from it. And if it happen that it rise vp againe, bring it backe the second time. But this caution you must be sure to haue, that when the needle hath touched the Cataract, you do not writhe it about with your fingers to and fro, till it be set in his place afore named, but that you gently draw it thither: and when you haue brought it thither, thirle the needle about, till it haue gathered the water about it, and then pull it out. This done, cause him to shut his eye, and apply therto a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, and cause him to ly in his bed nine dayes together, remouing the plaister three times on the day, and three times on the night without any other stirring of it. Prouided that he lie in a very dark place: and let his diet be thinne, as rere egges, and white bread. And if he be yong and lustie, let his drinke be water, but if his body be weake, let him drink wine wel lymphate or small Ale: for truly much nourishment would preiudice the cure by engendring much bloud in the eye, which is very hurtfull now in the beginning of the healing of it. The ninth day being passed, let him rise and wash his eye well with faire cold water, & he shall enioy his sight by the helpe of God, euen as he did before, although some of the Cataracts be fairer healed then the other, as namely the second and the fouth kinds: but that which is caused by a stripe, (though the water be with more ease extracted) yet the eye neuer recouereth his clearenesse of sight againe, because it is greatly brused & troubled by the force of the stroke. And the third kind also, though it be soone restored to his old perfection, yet it abideth not long therein, vnlesse it be continued as well by good diet, as also by this Electuarie, which is called *Diaolibanum solarimitanum*, which is thus confected: ℞. Cloues, ʒ.ij. Nutmegs of India,

and Saffron, ana. ℥.j.ß. and of good *Castoreum*, ℥.j. Let all these be beaten into powder and searced, and confect that powder with clarified hony, and let the patient receiue of this electuarie in the morning fasting, the quantitie of a Chestnut, or Walnut, and at euening to bedwards as much. And let him vse digestiue nourishing meates, which ingender good bloud; but let him beware biefe and Goates flesh, and Eeles, and raw Onions, for they are oftentimes vsed to ripen the Cataract, which must be done before you striue with it. In winter, let the patient drinke hote wines, in the which let him infuse Sage, and Rew. Let him also abstaine from the company of women, neither let him frequent common bathes; for euery strong fume hurteth him greatly. The aforelaid Electuarie of *Diaolibanum* is good to drie teares: it auaileth also against all manner of paine of the Migrime which proceedeth of fleame. After this sort are all the curable Cataracts healed, (I meane) by the needle, which must be made of gold, siluer, or of cleane Spanish latten: for iron or steele are very brittle and frangible. And if the Cataract should proue hard in drawing downe, the point may easily breake, which if it should abide in the eye, it would in time consume the eye through abundance of teares and greatnesse of paine.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable.

THe first kind of Cataracts vncurable the Physitions call *Gutta serena*, and the signe of the knowing thereof is this: when the pupil of the eye is black and cleare, as though it had no spot, and the eyes are alwayes mouing, and the eye-lids do tremble as if they were full of quicksiluer. This kind of Cataract is caused of a corruption in the mothers wombe, and therfore they that haue thē, are for the most part borne blind, and therfore they bestow their labor in vaine to assay to cure them: for the nerues optike be oppilate and mortified, so that no medicins can preuaile, although many that hauethis kind, do see the light of the Sunne, & the stature of a man euē to their liues end. We cal it *Gutta serena*, because it is engendred of water and falleth frō the braine, of the which truly one litle drop corrupteth & dissolueth all the humours of the eyes, & stoppeth the hollow nerues and sinewes, so that the visible spirits may no more passe thorough them. The second Cataract incurable, is that which appeareth in the eye of a green colour, like water standing in moist places, not much moued nor remoued: this is the most dangerous kind of all, if there be any degrees in them, and it is procured by the ouermuch coldnesse of the braine, & by great buffetting and beating about the head, by great fasting, and such other like. The third vncurable Cataract is, when the pupill of the eye is dilated and spread so farre, that no circle may be seen within the tunicles of the eyes, & the eye seemeth all blacke, or else all white. And thus are the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable distinguished and knowne: which wil forbid the practitioners to deale with them.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of diseases which chance to the eyes, by bloud, choler, fleame, or melancholy, and of their cures.

NOw after the description of Cataracts, and the number of them which be curable, and which be not, and the curing and knowledge of the curable, and

and the causes of the vncurable, I will speake of other maladies of the eyes caused and occasioned of the foure humors, as bloud, fleame, choler, and melancholy. But first I will treate of bloud, through the abundance whereof oftentimes there groweth a rednesse in the eyes, with great burning, and afterward it turneth to great itch: and this disease maketh the haire of the eye-lids to fall away, and of many it leaueth not one haire: & if this malady be not cured within one yeare, it will make the eye-lids to turne vp, and make the patient blear-eyd. But before it cometh to that extremitie, it may be cured by this Colliry, which they call *Collirium Ierosolymitanũ*, which is made in this wise: ℞. Tutty of Alexander, ℥.j. and beate it into smal powder, and temper it wel with two pounds of white wine (that is) a quart, and put thereto ℥.j. of dry Roses, and boile it with a soking fire, till the wine be halfe wasted, & then clense it through a linnen cloth, to keepe it in a violl glasse, and morning and euening put some of it into the eye: and if it be taken betimes, the patient shall be cured within a weeke or two at the most. Neuertheleſse before you apply this Colliry, it shall be good (if the patient be yong) to let him bloud on the veine that is in the midst of the forehead: or, if he be aged, to purge the braine with these pils: ℞. of the best Aloes, red Sanders, *Esula*, and Rewbarbe, ana. ℥ ß. Turbith, *Catapulia minor* and Agarick, ana. ℥ ij. confect them with the iuyce of Mugwort, and minister to the patient according to his strength. And truly these pils are not onely good for the itch of the eyes, but also for all manner of itch or scab, of what humour soeuer it be caused. There be other diseases also of the eye engendred of bloud, as the Ophthalmy and Pannicles: and these kinds of infirmities are tied to the season of the yeare, for they commonly happen about the end of August, and so forth to the end of September, and the rather then, because they proceede of the eating of variety of fruites. The Ophthalmy is thus described. An Ophthalmy is a corrupt bloud ingendred of hote humors, and commonly it standeth and appeareth in the white of the eyes, and round about the tunicles and blacknesse of the eye, and it proceedeth of immoderate sorrow and burning, and of abundance of teares, which causeth the eyes to swell, and make them to bolne, that from that time foorth the patient may take no rest nor sleepe: for it euer seemeth to him that his eyes are full of grauell, or of thornes, or of smoake. In this kind of infirmity it is good to vse this powder, which many (in respect of the notable vertue thereof) do call *Puluis benedictus*, which is thus made: ℞. white Sarcocoll, and beate it to very fine powder, and fill the patients eye with it, and let him lie with it wide open till the powder be consumed: and in the meane time make a plaister of flaxen herds, and wash it well in cold water, (which when you haue drained out with you hand, lay it on the patient his eye. which he shall still keepe open, and it will procure him to take his rest very well. Many ignorant practitioners, while they haue endeuoured to cure this infirmitie with many impertinent medicines, haue added sorrow to sorrow, and haue brought the eye without his lids, and so made it vncurable, which by the foresaid powder might easily haue bene healed. And note, that there be some, which by the occasion of the Ophthalmy, are greatly troubled in their eyes, and haue them fumous and musty: which proceedeth of euill keeping or because they eate contrary meates. Now if such happen, the braine must be purged with these

pilles: ℞.Polipody, *Esulæ*, *Myrobalani Citrini*, and Rewbarbe, ana.℥.j.Mastick, Quibibes, Saffron, Spiknard, *Nux Indica*, Cynamon, ana.℥.j. confect them with Milke or iuyce of Quinces, and minister to the sicke according to his strength, and after this purgation minister morning and euening of the Electuary of *Diaolibanum solarimitanum* as before. And moreouer put into his eye a powder called *Puluis Nabetus*, the making wherof we will shew in the cure of the third pannicle. But this must be done onely in the morning and euening; put in his eye the powder called *Pulus Alexandrinus* as before, and this do til the patient hath recouered his health, keeping him in the meane time from hurtful meats.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Pannicles.

Cause.

THe Pannicles haue the same cause that the Ophthalmy hath, that is to say, superfluity of bloud, Sometime they are ingendred of euill keeping, and sometimes by great paines in the head, as the Migrim, where the extremity of paine ascending into the temples, and so into the browes, maketh the veines to beate, by which paineful beating the eyes are troubled. There be foure kinds of Pannicles: the first is, when vpon the tunicle saluatrice there groweth a little pearle, like the seed or graine of a corne called in Latine *Millium*. The second is when it appeareth in the aforesaid tunicle in the likenesse of a spot or freckle of the face, or like the scale of a fish. The third appeareth on the one side of the eye, like as it were a flake of snow when it snoweth. The fourth is when all the eye appeareth white, and no blacknes, neither of the tunicle, neither of the light appeareth. The first pannicle is neither cured with laxatiues nor powders, nor Colliries, nor Electuaries, nor yet with cauteries; for any of these (if they be ministred) do annoy rather then helpe. But you shall make this precious ointment for the cure of it, which of many practitioners is proued to be of great credit: ℞.forty tender crops of the Bramble, and stampe them small, & a good handfull of Rew, powder of Alabaster, ℔ j ß.powder of Fenel seed, ℥.ß.oile of Roses ℔.j.all these incorporate well together, put into a new earthen pot with a quart of new white Wine, & to all these put ℥.iiij. of dry flowers of Cammomil, and of Waxe ℥.j. and then set the pot on the fire, & let it boile with an easie fire till the Wine be consumed, so farre forth that it seemeth to fry in, and then put thereto the whites of sixe Egs, and alwaies stirre it well, till it be incorporated together, and then straine it through a faire linnen cloth; with this ointment thus made, annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead, downe to the browes, and it will cure this kind of Pannicle. This ointment is not onely tied to this cure, but it hath many vertues: some of the which I will expresse, though it be impertinent to this discourse. It is very good against a greene wound, for it both purgeth and cleanseth it. It is good against the tooth-ach or paine in the gums, if the cheeke be annointed therewith. It is good against the paine in the matrice, if it be beaten like an Electuary. It is good for them also who are molested in excesse, if their stomack be annointed, & their feet, together with their hands. It auaileth against the Migrime, & generally for euery paine of the eyes, if the patient be annointed therewith vpon the temples, as before. The second pannicle must be cured at the very beginning, for if it be incarnate and hardned

There be foure kinds of Pannicles.

1.
2.
3.
4.

vpon

vpon the tunicle, it may not by any ſutteltie be remoued (the tunicle ſaued,) and therefore it is not ſafe to aduenture to cure it, when by continuance of time it hath vnited it ſelfe with the ſaluatrice. But at the firſt you ſhall cure it thus: firſt make a cautery in the temples with a round cautery (as ſhall be ſhewed afterward when I ſpeake of Cauteries:) for fire diſſolueth & conſumeth the pannicle, & ſo keepeth it from vniting & incarnating with the tunicle, & maketh the eye fit to be clarified with this medicine following. When the eye is cauterized, put into the eye ſome of the powder called *Pulus Nabetus*, which I wil teach afterward; & while he lieth with this powder in this eye, take foure crabs & roſt them vnder the embers very well, and then take them, and being pilled and cored, incorporate them with the white of an egge in manner of an ointment, and lay it vpon a cleane flaxen herd, and bind it to the eye with a linnen band, and ſo renew this plaiſter morning and euening till you haue abſolued your cure. Like as bloud begetteth many infirmities of the eye, as namely Ophthalmies and Pannicles: ſo likewiſe many maladies are ingendred of fleame, but the moſt notable are foure: the firſt is procured by ouer abundance of teares, whereby the ouer eyelids ere ſo ſoftened and mollified, that within there grow haires, which pricke the ball of the eye continually, as though there were hogs briſtles: which haires, though many bold Chirurgions haue plucked out, and ſo for a time eaſed them, yet afterward (the haires being hardned with plucking out) do gall them farre worſe then before, and ſo in the end the patient being deſtitute of any other aide, leeſeth his ſight, (the haires fretting and conſuming the ſubſtance of his eye.) But indeed the beſt way, which as yet experience hath found out to cure that maladie, is this: Take two needles of the length of the litle finger, and put a thred through the eyes of both of them, and bind them well together at both the ends, then with your fingers lift vp the ouer eyelid, and with theſe needles take off the leather where theſe haires grow, that the patient may ſhut and open his eye, and let the needles hang till they fall away, together with the leather which was betweene them: which done, you ſhall put no medicine in the wound, for it will heale of it ſelfe: but if any Pannicle be ingendred in the eye by reaſon of the vehemencie of the paine, it ſhall be cured by *Pulus Nabetus* put into the eye twiſe a day, til ſuch time as they be clarified and healed. And this powder is made of Sugar Candy of *Alexandria*, which powder is very auaileable againſt many ſicknesſes of the eye. The ſecond infirmity which happeneth to the eye by fleame is when the eyes appeare troubled & full of veines, ſo cloſed with a Pannicle, that the patient cannot well ſee, nor diſcerne any thing, and this ſicknes is called *Pannicum vitreum*, which is thus cured: firſt cauſe his head to be ſhauen, & then cauterize him with a round cautery in the ſoft of the head, and with a long cautery in his temples, which ſo done, put into his eyes the powder of Candie once in the day, till that he hath receiued againe his full ſight, and twiſe in the moneth purge him with the pils called *Pillulæ Ieroſolymitanæ*, & at his going to bed let him receiue of the Electuary called *Diaolibanum ſolarimitanum* til he be whole. The third infirmity cauſed by fleame, is when the eye appeareth carnous or fleſhy, the which carnoſitie (if it be waxen hard by the ſpace of a yeare or two) giueth place to no medicine. But in the beginning, cauteries (in that maner that I preſcribed them

Maladies coming of fleam.

1.

2.

3.

before) will heale it, so that after cauterizing you very warily cut away all the carnosity with a sharpe razor, without offending the tunicle Saluatrice; which when you haue done fil the eye ful of powder of Candy, and then cause the patient to shut his eye, and then lay to it a plaister of flaxe of the white of an Eg, and change the plaister twise on the day xv. daies: and after xv. daies make this plaster: ℞. a handful of *Carduus Benedict.* & stampe it well; & mingle it with half the white of an Eg, and so make a plaister with flaxen herds, & lay it vpon the eye, remouing it twise on the day, and after three dayes leaue all plaisters, and let the patient lie with his eye open, and euery day in the morning put into his eye the powder called *Pulus Benedictus*, and at euening the powder of Candy, till he be perfectly whole: in the meane time let him abstaine frō Eeles, Onions, Beef, and all such meates. The fourth malady caused of fleame, is when the eye appeareth all bolne, and alwaies sheadeth teares, so that the patient may not open his eyes by reason of the heauinesse of the ey-lids, for there is a fatnes on the vpper eyelid, which troubleth the eye very much; and this disease is called the scab of the eye, and it proceedeth from superabundance of salt fleame: the cure of it is this: you shall first purge the stomack and braine of the patient with this receipt: ℞. Turbith, of the best Aloes and Rewbarbe ana. ℥.j. then take of the iuyce of the roote of Walwort. ℔.j. and the aforesaid things being beaten and dissolued in the said iuyce, let it stand all night, and in the morning cleanse it, and let the patient take thereof a good quantity, and the next day subtilly with your Razor pare away the aforesaid fatnesse, euen from the one lachrimall to the other: which done lay on a plaister of herds and the white of an egge nine daye after (euery day changing the plaister twise,) and then let the patient lie with his eye open, and put into it of the Colliry called *Collirium Alexandrinum*, which is taught before in the cure of the third Pannicle, and that will heale it very well. I haue heard that women did rub away that fatnesse with Sugar, but it returned againe afterward, though for a time they were eased. There is an Electuarie, very auailable against these teares, which is thus made: ℞. *Olibanum, Castoreum*, Nutmegs, *Nux Indiæ*, Cloues, Quibibes, ana. ℥.j. leaues of Laurell, Spiknard, Saffron, and *Cardomomum*, an. ʒ.ij. seeds of Dill, Smallage, Basilicon, Alisander, Annise, Fennell, foure seeds of Henbane, white Poppy, Musk, and Campher, ana. ʒ.j. all these must be beaten together to powder, sauing the *Olibanum*, which must be boiled with clarified Hony till it be molten, and then poure it into a faire large woodden platter together with the powder before made, and incorporate them together by often stirring, and let it abide in the platter still: and when you will minister it, giue as much as a Chestnut at the patients going to bed. It destroyeth the teares together with the fleame, it warmeth the brain, it driueth away the paine of the Migrime, it openeth the eyes, relieueth the eyelids, and clarifieth the sight. It is good for them that haue the gout and the palsey, and for them that haue an impediment in their speech.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the maladies in the Eye proceeding of choler.

TWo kinds of griefes are incident to the eyes by choler, the first whereof is that which is caused by abundance of choler in the stomack, from whence

ariseth

ariſeth a corrupt fumoſitie into the braine, which annoyeth the braine, & troubleth the viſible ſpirits, ſo that the party thus affected, ſhall imagine an obiect planted betweene him and the light in manner of a darke ſhadow. We cannot outwardly iudge of this malady, for it hath no euident marke either in the eye, or without the eye, but the cauſe of it abideth in the ſtomack, which muſt be taken away by an Electuarie mitigatiue, & preparatiue, which will aſſwage the paine and open the oppilate nerues and ſinewes, whereby the viſible ſpirits may haue free paſſage: you ſhall make it thus: ℞. Rewbarbe, *Eſulæ minoris*, red Sanders, *Mirobalani citrini*, ana. ℥.iiij the rootes of Fennel, Spinage, Banſci, Parſly, *Apij*, *Sicacellæ*, Simory, and Maiden haire, ana. M.j. Polipody of the Oake, ℥.ij, boile all theſe roots in faire water till half the water be waſted, and then cleanſe it, and take the aforeſaid ſpices well beaten and put them into the aforeſaid licour with two pounds of good Sugar, and make thereof a ſirupe laxatiue. But you ſhall boile it but little the ſecond time, for the ſpices will ſoone loſe their vertue, and then cleanſe it againe the ſecond time, and let the patient take of this twiſe in the weeke. The ſecond infirmity ariſing of choler, is, when there appeareth before the tunicle, as it were a thin cloud in a cleare aire, and this is brought by an euill diet, but it happeneth only to thoſe that be cholericke. For the cure you ſhall take a Saphire, and breake it in a mortar, and keepe the powder in a veſſell of gold, and once in the day put this powder into the patients eye, and he ſhall be whole in ſhort time. The ſame effect hath the gall of a Hare dried, and beaten into powder, and ſo put into the eye.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the infirmities of the Eye cauſed of melancholy.

OF the humour of melancholy be engendred in ſundry folks many & diuers ſicknesſes, by reaſon of the oppilation of the ſpirits viſible, which cometh by the diſtemperature of the braine which is diſquieted by the abundance of melancholy. In theſe diſeaſes therefore it ſeemeth to the patient, that there are flies flying in the aire, and that there are three or foure moones, and three or foure faces, when he beholdeth but one: but theſe infirmities happen moſt commonly to aged perſons which are melancholick, ſuperfluity of melancholy dimming their eye ſight. There muſt not therefore any medicines be put into the eye of the patient, but make this Electuary mitigatiue & apparatiue, which will opē the oppilations of the nerues which did before foreclose the way to the viſible ſpirits. The Electuarie is thus confected ℞. the iuyce of Liquorice, Eyebright, *Sileris montani*, ana. ℔ ß the ſeeds of Rew, Baſilicon, Nettles that come from beyond the ſeas, or Cecilian, or Fenel, of Aliſander, of *Apium*, of Caraway ſeed, ana. ℥ ij Maſtick Cloues, Nutmegs, Cinamon, Quibibes, *Gummi*, Almonds, *Cerache pomi gummorū*, *Aragunton*, & ſaffron, ana. ℥ ß. kernels of quince apples, ℥.j all theſe muſt be beaten together into ſmall powder well ſearced, and then you muſt confect them with good Sugar, & make an Electuary of it, and of this let him receiue morning and euening till it be healed. It auaileth alſo againſt that dimneſſe of the eyes which cometh by thought, and of much heauineſſe, & maketh them to ſee more clearly, and of that effect it hath his name (that is) *Clarificatiuū oculorum*. There is alſo another infirmity which cometh of melan-

choly, and that is when the paine sodainly ascendeth into the eyes, and grieueth so extremely, that it seemeth to the patient that his eyes would start out: they appeare also most commonly very bolne. Many which are troubled with this kind of malady, do lose their sight altogether, and many (though there be some) which do see notwithstanding but very feebly. But the seasonable applying of remedies, preuenteth either discommodity. After this sort then you shall encounter with this euil. You shal first purge the stomack & the braine with these pils: ℞. Aloes, *Mirobalani Citrini*, Turbith, Sanders, Citrine and Rewbarbe, ana. ℥.ß. Scammony, Mirrhe, Saffron, Balsamum, Mastick, *Lignum Aloes*, *Olibanum*, white Agarick, *Nux Indiæ*, iuyce of Liquorice, seed of Apium, Lettuce, Succory, Basilicon, ana. ʒ.j. Beate all these to powder, and confect them with the iuyce of Roses, and make pils of them, and giue the patient after his powder. The stomack and the braine thus purged, lay vpon the eye this plaister: ℞. foure Apples or Crabs, and rost them vnder the embers till they be soft, then core them and pare them, and bruse them well in a mortar; and to foure of them put halfe the white of an Egge, and so bray them together till they be well incorporate, and so lay them vpon flaxen herds, and morning and euening apply it to the eye, and you shal finde that it wil do much good; for it both asswageth the swelling; lesseneth the paine, refresheth the sight, and with all these fixeth also the eye in his place. There is another infirmity also which proceedeth by the abundance of melancholy, and that they call *Vngula*: for it is much like the naile of a finger, sometime it breedeth in the corner of the eie to the eare-ward, and so spreadeth ouer the eye if it be not hindred & resisted betime: sometime it also happeneth that another vngle ariseth in the other corner, & if they meet, it maketh the cure more vncertaine; yet by heedfull skill and discretion, it may be healed by the hand. Take therefore a twich of siluer, and therewith lift vp subtilly the vngle from the tunicle, proceeding to the lachrimall where it grew, and there cut it away, and then lay the white of an egge and flaxe vpon it ten dayes together, remouing it twise on the day, and at the end of ten dayes wash his eye with hot water, and put into it *Puluis Nabetus* before named, till the eye be sufficiently cleared. Let him abstaine from such meats as do feed melancholy. It happeneth also somtime that the superfluous abundance of melãcholy seated in the brain, begetteth a drinesse in the eye-lids, which afterward turneth to itching and burning. But this disease is cured by letting the patient bloud on the middle veine in the forehead, and after with vsing this Colliry: ℞. forty tender crops of the Bramble, and stampe them small, then put them in a new earthen vessell together with a quart of good white Wine, and so boile them till halfe be consumed, and then cleanse it and preserue it in a glasse to your vse, and twise in the day put some of it into your patients eye, till it be whole. Of the like superfluity of melancholy groweth sometime a corrupt humor without the eye vpon the lid, the which bolneth all the one side of the face with extreme paine, but with no offence to the sight of the eye. The signes of this disease are these: it maketh the eye-lids hard and red, and keepeth the eye so shut, that the patient may not open it. For the cure of it, you shall take fine floure of old wheate, and yolkes of egs, ana. ℥.j of Saffron, ʒ.j. and stampe them well together with womans milke till it be as an ointment: then make a plaister of it, and apply it so, that none en-

Signa.
Curatio.

ter

ter into the eye. You may also vse this: ℞. a Lilly root and Crabs, and rost them in the embers til they be soft, then taking away the core and the pils of the crabs stampe them both of like quantity with the whites of egs, and so vse it. On the step of the wound where the sore was, lay this ointment, that it may draw the flesh together, so that no scarre do appeare: ℞. *Aloes*, Hens grease, oile of bitter Almonds, and white Waxe, and incorporate them together into an ointment, & apply it. It is very good in all the diseases of the eyes to annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead with *vnguentum Alabastrum* before named, for it asswageth the paine, and helpeth the other medicines in their operation. It happeneth many times in this infirmity, that the patient his eye-lids, for want of prouident skil do reuerse, which is a great blemish. In this case you must subtilly with the Razour deuide the eye-lid from the wound, and part them with a little roule made of fine linnen cloth, dipped in the white of an egge, which you shall lay betwixt the lid and the sore xv. dayes together, changing it daily, and then make the ointment of Hens grease and white Waxe, and lay of it vpon the roule, & it wil consume the wound, so that there shall appeare no cicatrice. The like cure you shall vse when the reuersement of the eye-lids is caused of superfluity of bloud. Of the melancholicke humour there is also ingendred in many men a sicknes, which groweth betweene the nose and the eye, and it appeareth like a peece of a lung or light. It is grauelly, and auoideth out alwaies filth. This sore is called *Vulgalpus*. For the cure of it, you shal only take a twich, and lift the sore vp subtilly, and with the point of a Razour cut vp the sore by the roote, and cauterize it with a hot iron, and vse the ointment before rehearsed, which they call *Vnguentum subtile*, that is, Hens grease and white Waxe, and annoint the place with it till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of diseases happening to the Eye by outward causes, as by blowes with stickes, staues, or stones.

THe onely thing generally that you shall vse when the eye is smitten, is the white of an eg and flaxen herds, to the which God hath giuen three especial properties: The first is to asswage the paine: The second to purifie & cleare the sight: The third is to let and keepe away all superfluous humours, which otherwise would fall into the eye. You shall remoue it foure times in the day, and twise in the night, by the space of xv. dayes together, annointing in the meane time the temples of the patient with ointment of Alabaster, which as I told you before, was an adiuuant and aide to all medicins Now after the fifteen daies be expired, if you shall perceiue the tunicle saluatrice to be hurt and broken, you shall then take xij. streines of the new laid egges of white hens, and put them in a mortar, labouring them with a pestil till they be vnited in maner of an ointment, and so reserue it in a glasse, and twise in the day and once in the night put a little of it into the eye, and it will knit together, and make so nude againe the tunicle if it be broken or hurt: after this maner I haue cured many wounds in the eye, which haue seemed dangerous, and vncurable to the ignorant beholder. But sometime it will happen, that through the force of the blow, there

will grow a Cataract, and then in the beginning the tunicle must be saued by this forenamed prescript, and the Cataract must grow without let to his full perfection, and so be healed by the needle. Some vnskilfull practitioners vse to lay a plaister made of Waxe and Comin to the eye, if it be smitten, and other some vse *Olibanum* and Wormewood: but both those and all such like hote ointments are passing euil, because they consume & waste the substance of the eye. It followeth now that I speake of watery eies and of corrupt humors like teares, which the Phisitians call *fistules*, to discerne betweene the *fistula* and the watery profluence of teares. You shall therefore vse this skill: lay your forefinger betweene the nose and the corner of the eye, and straining the place a litle, if it be a *fistula*, you shall see the matter of it runne out at the points of the eye liddes: but if none appeare, then iudge it to be a watery humour. Many boisterous fellowes, (seeing the place of the issue of the *fistula*) haue vsed to cauterize it with a hot irõ, thinking by that meanes to haue dried vp the matter: which indeed they haue done, but they haue destroyed the sight, and deformed also the place. This therefore is the surest way or course that you can take, to cure the *fistulá*. First purge the patient his stomacke with pilles of Ierusalem, and then with the point of a razour you shall make a litle incision betwixt the neather eyelid and the nose, so directly that the lid be not touched: and this incision shall be throughout the skinne in a long wise, and into the same put in the graine of a Fitch, binding it on with a little pillow of linnen, and so let it lie till the next day: then remouing the Fitch, you shall in the hole where it lay, put in a little of some powder corrasiue. After the powder is put in, lay a plaister of flaxen herds, and the white of an egge (the patient alwayes shutting his eye for feare of the powder.) In the morning after, you shall apply nothing but cleane Swines grease, till the mortified flesh be raised: and when it is raised and remoued, put in a peece of a sponge, as much as a Fitch, in the hole which the powder made, and it will purge the drinesse of the wound: and when you shall perceiue it throughly dried, leaue the sponge, and bind nothing to it else but faire dry lint of linnen til the patient be whole. Now concerning the teares, they issue out of the eye-lids both the vpper and the neather: but there is difference between the causes of their issuing from both places: for they which proceed from the neather eye-lid, come from the heart, by reason of sorow, dread, or smart, or they be caused by some manner of violence: but the teares which flow out of the hole of the vpper eye-lid, proceed from the braine, by reason of corruption & abundance of humours, and their course ceasseth not, vnlesse the matter be purged with Electuaries and Cauteries, as I haue shewed before.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the diseases which come by skipping in of stones. or chips by chance into the Eyes.

THese diseases happen specially to Masons, Millers, Carpenters, Wrights, and Smithes: for if any chiue, chip or dust skip into the eye, and through negligence be left behind, it will incarnate vpon the tunicle Saluatrice, and then can you not cure the eye, but by remouing and drawing the said chiue, which

you

you ſhall do with your needle,deuiding it cunningly from the tunicle. And if it happen that there be any pit in the place where it lay, by reaſon that it abode long therein, then put into the eye the ſtreins of egs ordered as I declared before, twiſe in the day,and once in the night: and vpon the eye lay a plaiſter of flaxe and the white of an eg, & within three dayes it will heale the partie diſeaſed. And after this ſort you ſhall alſo remoue the haw in the eye. But you ſhall in drawing out the haw, bind two needles faſt together at the top, and ſo take the haw betweene the two points,& ſo eaſily rolling the needles,bring it away. Sometime it hapneth that the eye is ſtong with a bee or waſpe, or ſome other venimous thing,or blaſted with an infected aire:and if any of theſe happen,the eye is much diſquieted and grieued,ſo that the patient may take no reſt,and it bolneth vp that he may not ſee. The onely cure for ſuch and the like accidents is this,as I haue by experience often tried. Take a handful of *Carduus Benedictus* ſtampe it ſmall, and temper it well with halfe the white of an egge, and therewith make a plaiſter laying it on flaxen herds,binding it hard to the eye,where it ſhall lie till it be dried, and then apply another: and ſo conſequently vſe it till your patient be throughly whole. Theſe qualities this herbe hath:it aſſwageth ſwelling, and eaſeth the paine,deſtroyeth the venime, and putteth away bloud from the eyes. This is alſo a preſent remedie for the eyes that are bloudſhed, when they burne as though there were grauell in them. And thus much for the eſpeciall diſcourſes of ſundry diſeaſes,which do moſt commonly bend to that little member, the eye,together with their particular cures.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of paine in the eares.

PAine in the eares is cauſed in ſome through cold taken by iourneying in cold winds. Alſo ſometime it is cauſed of cold bathes and medicinable waters. Alſo it chanceth to many through diſtemper: Sometime of inflammation. And like as inflammation by ſtretching out of the parts that be inflamed, ingendreth paine, euen ſo a windie vapour, or a humour groſſe and clammie, for lacke of paſſage cauſeth paine. Alſo humours that be byting,and like whay and matter, do cauſe paine in the eares. Paine in the eares cauſed of cold, is ſoone knowne by the patients words, & becauſe there is continuall great paine without heauineſſe,or diſtenſion,or burning,the paine which is cauſed of hote diſtemper is knowne, in that there is felt paine and heate without heauineſſe or bolning. But if heauineſſe,diſtenſion,and beating heate and paine be felt in the head, then the paine in the eare is cauſed of inflammation. Onely diſtention without heauineſſe declareth a windy vapour which cannot find paſſage out. If there be heauineſſe in the head and the hearing,the paine is cauſed of groſſe & clammie humors. If the paine be cauſed onely of cold,it wil ſoone be cured by hote remedies, that is,with oile of Rew, Laurell,Nard,Dill,Lillies, of *Euphorbium*, and Spike. Alſo if you ſeeth Rew,or common oile of Pepper, or *Caſtoreum*, it is a good remedy. Alſo oile wherein Garlicke is ſodden,or an Onion, dropped into the eares,is maruellous good. There are ſome that do cut out the core of a great Onion, then they fill it with oile, & they heate it meanly in hot embers,and powre it into the eares,when it is ſtrongly ſtrained. Alſo a very litle

Cauſe.

Signa.

Cure of cold.

Euphorbium commixed with much old oyle, is much commended of Galen. Whatsoeuer you do minister, let it be ministred hote. But when some medicinable water is continued in the passage of hearing, you must continually powre in oile that is very thinne, that it may be washed: then wipe it with soft wooll, & againe powre in more. The white of an eg mitigateth the paine very much: also womans milke. Also goose grease profiteth much: likewise foxes grease. But to draw out plentie of water, nothing is better then to sucke and to draw it out with a quill or hollow pipe holden in the mouth. When paine is caused of an hot distemper, then oile of Roses is marueilous good for the head, if it be dropped into the eare, and vineger and oile of Roses is good, or the white of an egge, or womans milke, or iuyce of Nightshade, or this: ℞. oile of Roses, ℥.j. iuyce of Nightshade, ʒ.ij vineger of Roses, ʒ.j. ß. commixe them. If the paine be caused of inflammation, or grosse and viscous humours, you must vse medicins which do deuide and take away obstructions and stoppings: as be all bitter things which purge and cleanse without erosion, as is, *Irisillirica*, all kindes of *Aristolochia*, bitter Almonds, the roote of *Nitisalba*, Centorie the lesse, *Polium* and Cinamon. Also oile of Almonds, and other which do purge, cleanse, wipe, and vnstop the passes without griefe. Therefore of those you may make medicines and drop thereof into the eares. Among other also the iuyce of Leeks dropped into the eare warme is good, or iuyce of Leekes mixed with hony. If that the paine be caused of inflammation, you must by and by let bloud on the *Cephalica* veine that is on the same side: and with clisters you must pull backe the humours that do flow. Afterward you must drop in *Oxyrhodinum* warme, or goose grease, or hennes grease, with oile of Roses. But if the inflammation be vehement, then to ceasse paine drop warme into the eare the white of an egge with womans milke. Also this medicine is good, ℞. iuyce of Senegreene, ʒ.ij. oyle of Roses, ℥.ß. vineger, ʒ.j. ß. commixe them all, and drop it into the sore eare. Apply those things outwardly which ceasse paine, and do digest the matter heaped together. If the inflammation be very vehement, it is necessary to vse those things which do astonie the sense easily: and it is no small danger, lest that the sinew by which the vertue of hearing is dispersed in the braine, be hurt thereby. But commixe a little *Opium* with womans milke and the white of an egge. Also temper *Opium* with *Castoreum*: there must be of each a like quantity, or double as much *Castoreum*. The liquor in which the aforesaid medicines ought to be tempered (being first finely beaten) must be *Sapa*: for it doth ceasse paine much more then sweete wine. *Sapa* is new wine sodden till it come to the third part. There be some that commixe *Opium* with oyle of Roses, or Violets, after this sort: ℞. of *Opium*, ϑ j. oile of Roses and Violets, ana, ʒ.j. ß. Also the Antidote *Philonium* dissolued in womans milke, and dropped in, is good. Without you must nourish the eare continually with common oyle, or with a hote foment, and you must dip wooll in it, and put it into the eare: but in such wise that it may not touch the places that be troubled with inflammation. But when the paine waxeth old, and turneth to suppuration and impostumation, you shall droppe into the eare a medicine of the iuyce of Lineseed onely, with oyle of Roses or Cammomill mixed with it.

Of water.

Of heate.

Venæ sectio.

Sapa.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

Of sound and noise in the eares.

NOise and tinckling in the eare, for the most part, is ingendred of a windie vapour, or of grosse and clammy humours. Also many times it is caused through an exquisite tardinesse of the sense of hearing. It is also caused by weaknesse of the members: when it chanceth in the recouering of a disease, some humor is taken into the sinewes of the eares. Also it is caused of outward things, as of cold, heate, or a blow on the head. If the euill chance through outward causes, it is soone knowne by the patients words. Now because the noise cometh by little and little, or at one time, or suddenly on a heape, that is also conuenient to know the disease by. For if the sounding do come, and then rest for a certaine space, it is euident that a windy vapour is shut in and cannot get out and so causeth sounding, and specially when the sicke hath eaten windy meates. But if such sound in the eares do not come suddenly, but by little and little, and there is felt withall a heauinesse and weight: then it declareth the euil to be caused of grosse and viscous humours. For the cure, if the sound in the eares be caused of grosse and viscous humours, or of vapours, in the beginning purge the head with *Pilulæ Cochiæ* and such like. But first minister before them potions and medicines which haue vertue to extenuate and deuide. Then you must vse masticatories and sternutaments. Moreouer you must drop into the eares oile of bitter Almonds, or oile in which *Castoreum* is brayed. Also let the eare be inclined to the vapour of water wherein *Stæchas*, Wormwood, Marioram, Mints and Origan haue bene sodden. Iuyce of Rew sodden in the rind of a Pomgranate is maruellous good. Also *Sacculi* made of Betony *Stæchados*, Cammomil, Marioram, and other things a litle before rehearsed, are very good if they be applied to the eare warme. If the sound in the eare be caused through sharpnesse of the sense of hearing, which is knowne, if when the patient is hungrie it increaseth, and when he is full the noise is lesse; then you must vse those things which do astonie the senses: but you must take good heed thereof, and therefore begin with the easiest, and if need be, proceed afterward to stronger. Oile of Roses is onely commended with a graine or two of *Opium* put to it. Galen in this case praiseth the iuyce of *Mandragora* and Poppie. But if noise in the eares chance in feuers, there need no remedie for it; for commonly it goeth away straight. But if it remaine after a disease or a paine in the head, then you must nourish the eares with decoction of Wormewood, powring in vineger & oile of Roses, or iuyce of Radish with oile of Roses; or the best Aloes tempered with *Mulsa*: and if this helpe not, vse blacke Hellebore brayed with vineger.

Causæ.

Signa.

Of windy vapours.

Of grosse humours.

Cure of it come of grosse humors or vapors

Sacculi.

If it come of sharpenesse of hearing.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Deafnesse and slow hearing.

THe eare is so afflicted, that it causeth not onely dulnesse of hearing, but also deafnes that one can heare nothing at all. Sometime deafnesse beginneth at ones birth, and sometime it chanceth after we be borne; which doth chance, either through cholericke humors flying vpward, or through crude and grosse humors stoppping the hearing. If deafnesse come of cholericke humours specially after feuers, then it is wont with sudden incursions to runne to the braine.

Causæ.

Signa.

Also the face and all the state of the body will shew a cholericke temperature. But if it come of grosse humors, there is heauinesse of the head, and other tokens be present which shew flegmaticke humors. They which remaine deafe from their birth, or also soone after they be borne, being perfectly deafe of a long time, are vncurable, neither doth any of them euer speake. They that be not altogether deafe, yet if it haue long continued, it is very hard to cure. Deafnesse which is caused through cholerick humors flying vpward, is soone driuen away by medicines purging choler. If the deafnesse be engendred of crude & grosse humors, this dull hearing is cured by bloudletting, or only by purgation of *Hiera* or *Pilulæ Cochiæ*, and other such like. But minister before Oximel, and other medicines that haue power to deuide grosse and clammy humors. The whole body being purged, you must draw fleame out of the head by Masticatories, Sternutaments, and *Errhinis*. Furthermore, they must be dried, and by all meanes strengthened. Also he must vse a bath that floweth of it selfe, or salt water. You must put into the eare medicines that deuide and cut grosse and viscous humors, wherof there be many declared in the Chapter against sound in the eares. But priuatly iuyce of Rew with Hony, or *Castoreum* with oile of Dill is good. Also you must vse foments, and leane your eare vpon a quill or reed, hauing one end made fit for the eare, and the other for the hole in the couer of the pot being euery where fast stopped. Let there be in the pot Wormwood, Mints, Marioram, Origan, Stæchas, or such like sodden in water, that the vapour that cometh from thence may passe into the course of hearing. Also this medicine dropped into the eare is good: ℞. oile of *Castoreum*, ℥.ß. Comin seed, ʒ.ij. powder of *Castoreum*, ʒ.j. and put in the oile, & wind it vp in wet papers, & put it vnder the hot embers, and when it is rosted, straine it hard, and let it be dropped into the eare. Moreouer the vapor of Vineger taken with a reed, as is taught before, is maruellously good. Let their diet be altogether thin, and meats of light digestion.

If of cholerick humors.

If of grosse humors.

Victus ratio.

CHAP. XLII.

Of Impostumes breeding in the Eares.

Parotides in Greek, be inflammations which are wont to issue out in the kernels which be by the eares. It is caused of abundant hot blood, which is either mixed with choler, or fleame, or melancholy. And sometime it is caused of humors compact in the head, and sometime of the rest of the body by sicknesse, and specially by feuers. *Parotides* which are caused through fulnesse and plentie of hote bloud, they do ingender most vehement paine. They which are caused of cholericke bloud, they seeme much like *Erisipelas*, and they vexe the place that is diseased with no griefe. That which is caused of melancholy bloud, they be not red, nor they vexe not with vehement paine, but they be hard. They which be engendred of flegmatick bloud, in the swelling they be raised sharpe vpward. Let their diet be such in a maner, as is appointed in other inflammations. The cure (if age and other things will suffer) must be begun by letting of bloud: you must cut the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. Furthermore, we vse not in *Parotides* (as we do in other inflammations) to apply in the beginning things that represse, but contrariwise things that do draw. And if they be

Causa.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

be not in effect, fasten cupping glasses, or apply continually foments. To mitigate the paine, you must chuse those things which haue heate with moderate moistnesse, mitigating and ceasing paine, meet to ripe and digest, as is, decoctions made of Wheate or Barly, or the meale of Linseed, with *Mulsa* or Fenugreeke, or *Althæa*, or Cammomil: for the same purpose annoint the place continually with Butter, putting to it the whites of egges. Also Swines grease with butter melted with a litle Wax put to it, that it may be a soft cerote, may be wel applied. But in them that be meeke, that is, in gentle *Parotides*, in which there flow not such plenty of humours that they cause vehement paine, nor there is no heate of the humour, such are easily cured with foments of brine, and plaisters and medicines altogether discussiue as is *Diactrilon*. If the *Parotides* cannot be dissolued, you must vse medicines to ripe and bring the impostume to matter, as is, wheate meale with the decoction of figs and oile. Also the medicine that is made of meale and floure and leuen. When the *Parotides* be riped, either cut the skinne with a knife, that the matter may be let out, or the botch may be broken with a sharpe medicine, as that which is broken with Garlicke and such like; or to proue how to dissolue it by medicines which haue vertue to draw and extenuate, remouing it twise dayly, and nourishing it vntill the paine be somewhat released, and the more parts of the matter dissolued. And if there be hardnesse, that also must be mollified. Therefore you must make medicines that be of mixt qualities, so that you must commixe drawing things with mollifiers, as is Calues suet, Goates suet, the marrow of a Hart, *Bdellium*, *Styrax*, *Ammoniacum*, and such other like.

Cure of them that be meeke.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of vlcers in the nose.

Ozenæ in Greeke, be vlcers in the nose that be deepe and rotten, out of the which is breathed an vnkind and stinking sauor. Through sharp and rotten humours which flow to the nostrils, filthinesse is ingendred, which if they be onely sharpe, they ingender vlcers hard to be cured, but yet they stinke not much. Therefore the cure of these vlcers consisteth chiefly in this, that in the beginning the head be dried and strengthened. Because vlcers come through the flowing of corrupt humours, which flow out of the head to the nostrils, the whole head must be strengthened and dried, that no superfluities do flow from the nostrils You shall adde strength to the head, after this sort, first you must clip the head, then straight you must lay on it things that do restraine and bind, as is oile of Roses, Alume, vnripe gals, willow leaues, vineger, and such like: this must be continually laid & annointed on the head nine daies. Whē with those things the head is made strong, then go about to cure the nostrils, that you may dry vp the matter with medicines that be repulsiue and discussiue. Therefore those things that repell and driue back, be things sharp and sowre, which also are reckoned with restrictiue things. Discussiue things must be hot and dry of vertue. Therefore to our *Ozenæ* you must drop in the iuice of Calamint, or blow in the powder thereof being dried with a quill, or drop in hony into the nosthrils. A while after minister Sternutaments to bring them to scurfs, which will fall off in three or 4. daies. When they are fallen off, cure it with goose grease & butter, &

Causæ.

Curatio.

Sternutamentum.

oile of Roses. The vlcers in the nosthrils may be annointed with iuice of a Pomgranate boyled in a brazen vessel vnto the half, or a whole Pomgranate sodden in sweete Wine brayed, and dropped in. Also this is good: ℞. dry Alume, ʒ. j ß. Mirrhe, ʒ j. the rind of a Pomgranate, Sumach, salt Gemme, Saffron, Frankensence, ana. ʒ. ß. beate them, and blow into the nose of the powder. If that after the vlcers, there remaine paine, vse this ointment: ℞. oile of Roses, Mirtels, ana. ℥ j. burnt Lead, Litarge, ana. ℈ ij. Ceruse, Bolearmeny, *Balaustium*, ana. ℈. j. white Wax as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, & annoint the place.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of bleeding at the nose.

Causæ. *Externæ.* *Internæ.* *Signa.* *Victus ratio.*

FLuxe of bloud at the nose, is caused partly outwardly, and partly inwardly, Outward causes be falling from a high place, a stripe, vehement exercise, and tarying in the Sunne. Inward causes is plenty of bloud, or thinnesse of the same. You may know if it come through plenty of bloud, by heauy pain in the head, much bloud in the face, and rednesse of the eyes. Let the diet be thinne, and such that it may coole and make thicke the bloud. Therfore let the aire be cold, and the meate of good iuyce, and easie to digest. If the bloud be very hot, let the sick eate Lettuce, Endiue, Peares, Quinces, Chickens rosted, or boiled with Veriuyce. Let him drinke thicke red wine mixt with water, or cold water, or decoction of Cinamon, by which throughout my booke I meane water in which a little Cinamon is sodden, lest water through his coldnes might hurt a weak stomack. Let the patient speake little, and let him eschue mouing, trouble of mind, and chiefly anger. Also it is good to haue the lower parts of the head highest.

Potus.

Curatio.

For the cure, you must take heed that in bleeding at the nose, the lower parts lie highest, and the head downward. The cure must be begun with those remedies which turne the bloud to other parts of the body. First therfore if the body be full, and age will suffer it, and if the sicke be not resolued, you must cut the veine in the arme, right against the flowing of bloud at the nose. When you haue drawne out a little, then let it alone an houre, then draw out some againe, and afterward againe and againe, as the patients strength will suffer it. Moreouer, friction and rubbing of the inferiour parts, as the armes, hands, thighs, share and feet, is very profitable: and it is maruellously good to put the feet into warme water, euer rubbing them vp and downe. Also strong binding of the extremities is to be accounted among the remedies that pull back. Also great cupping glasses fastned to the sides, do retaine bloud breaking out at the nose. If the bloud flow from the right nostrill, fasten the cupping glasse vpon the liuer: if at the left nosthrill, vpon the splene. If the bloud come from both the nosthrils, fasten cupping glasses to both places. Also fasten them to the shoulders with scarification. Those being done, minister both within the body and without, things which coole and restraine. Outwardly apply to the forehead an *Epithema* of iuyce of Plantaine, Lettuce, Sorrell, Shepheards purse, Knotgrasse, or make it with the waters of them distilled. A linnen cloth wet in cold vineger is maruellous good, being applied to the forehead and necke againe and againe. Also nourish the forehead with sponges of cold water. Also it is good to vse this *Epithema*, applied to the forehead and the liuer: ℞. water of Roses

Venæ sectio.

Cucurbitulæ.

Epithema.

Roses, Nightshade, Sorrell, ana ℥. iij. powders of *Diatrion santalon. Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana ʒ j Bolearmenie, Iuory burnt, *Lapis hæmatites*, ana. ʒ ß. commixe them all, and make an *Epithema*. Also you must put into the nose, medicines to stop bloud, for the which this is very good: ℞. Frankensence, ʒ ij. Aloes, ʒ. j. powder them, and mixe therewith the white of an eg, vntill it be as thick as Hony, then commixe the soft haires of a Hare with it, and apply it to the nose. Also you may writhe a linnen cloth (dipped therein) in the nosthrils. Also Mints brayed, and put into the nosthrils, is thought to be exceeding good. Also a sponge wet in strong and sharpe vineger, may be put into the nose that bleedeth. Also this medicine is good: ℞ Eg-shels, ʒ. ij. vnripe Gals, ʒ. j. being brayed, put them in a writhed linnen cloth wet in water or vineger, & put it into the nosthrils. Also it is good to stop the eares strongly with linnen and waxe, and to hold in the mouth cold raine water. Also iuyce of the leaues of Nettle, hauing linnen dipt into it, and put into the nose, stoppeth bleeding at the nose. Also iuyce of Horsetaile, or the leaues brayed & applyed are good. The flesh of Snailes brayed with vineger, or with their shels burnt and brayed are good, being applied to the forehead & nose with vineger. But aboue al, the bloud which cometh out of the patients nose is good, if it be burned in an earthen pot, and then beaten; take of it ʒ. iij. Bole armoniack, ℥. j. Champhore, ℈. j. with the white of an egge and a little vineger, make it thicke like hony, and lay it to the forehead, and put it into the nose. Necessity requiring, it is lawfull to put to two graines or three of *Opium*. Asses dung dried and made into powder is wonderfully good; and also hogs dung hath the like propertie. Within the body minister those things which do coole and restraine, as be sirupes of Roses, Sorrell and *Nymphæa*, Trochisks of *Terra lemnia*, or their iuyces, and such like medicines. Moreouer, if in the meane season any bloud flow into the belly or other places of the body, if it be much and plenteous, you must auoid it by medicines which will dissolue and bring forth the cloddy matter.

Aliud Epithema.

An excellent medicine to stop bloud.

Optima medicina.

CHAP. XLV.

Of distillation, rheume, and hoarcenesse.

Catarros in Greeke, is called *Distillatio* in Latin, and in English Rheume. It is whereas an humour falleth downe to the mouth and the iawes. *Grauedo* is when the humour falleth into the nose, and causeth the pose. *Raucedo* is when the humour chanceth to distill to the sharpe arterie. The cause of flowing of the humour, is the braine, the which through cold is brought to a cold temper, which chanceth specially to them which go suddenly about in the cold bare headed. But through heate the braine is warmed and stuffed, the coldnesse of humours which be in the braine wringing hard, like as a sponge dipped in water is wroong with ones hand: it causeth the flowing of humours to the lower parts. So oftentimes heate going about in the head, dissoluing the humours in the braine, ingendreth distillation. Moreouer, all things that repleate the head without measure, do cause flowing of humours into the inferiour parts: also wine immoderately drunke, and hot baths, raw meate remaining in the stomacke, and vaporous things in the head. The signes if the fluxe of humours come of heate, are these, the head is hote, and a sharpe and

Distillatio.
Grauedo.
Raucedo.
Causæ.
Cold.
Heate.
Repletion of the head.
Signa.

Calor. thinne humour distilleth as well by the nose as by the mouth: also the face and the nose is red, and for the most part there followeth a Feuer. Contrariwise, they that haue the fluxe caused of cold, their head and their forehead is stretched forth euery where, the passages which be in the bones called *Ethmoidea*, are shut vp, so that the voice cannot passe downeward by the nostrils. Also a flegmaticke and thicke humor distilleth out of the nose. Let them eschue aire that is very hote or very cold, especially from a bath, and from South and North winds, and all things that can binde or dissolue humors in the braine. Let him vse meats of good iuyce, easie to be digested. Let him eschue those things that send plenty of vapours to the braine, as be Onions, Garlick, Mustard seed, Radish, and very hot odoraments. Moreouer they which haue the distillation, must eate lesse at supper then at dinner: let their drinke be *Aqua mulsa*, or decoction of Cinamon, or Barley: let them eschue sleeping in the day, and lying vpright in the night. For the cure, when the head is vexed with a hot distemper, you must vse those remedies which are good for paine in the head ingendred of such a cause. The most present remedie of the head is to sprinkle and poure vpon the head plenty of hote water, that is able to driue out the hote vapors ingendred in the head. Moreouer such must take comfort of warme baths of sweet water. They which haue their head vehemently hote and burning, and for that are troubled with continuall distillation, it is best for them in sommer to be annointed with oyle of Roses. If a cold distemper vexe the head, it must be annointed with hot and thinne oyles, as oiles of *Ireos*, Rew, and such like. Oyle of *Ireos* is not onely vsed as an ointment, but dropped into the nose. Also other things may be applied, which are spoken of in the chapter against paine of the head caused of cold. If a hote humor distill from the head, together with a Feuer, and if there be fulnesse of the body, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine: but if any iust cause be against it, wash the belly with a clister, that it may draw the humors that do abound in the head downeward: or minister a medicine purging choler, as is *Pilulæ aureæ*, *Alephanginæ*, *Azarum*, and such like. Also you must turne the humors from the head, by frictions, ligatures, and fastening of cupping glasses to the shoulders. Minister within the body things that haue vertue to alter and quench the burning heate of choler, as is sirupe of Violets, *Nympheæ*, of Poppy, & their conserues. Also *Embroche* and odoraments rehearsed before in the chapter of headach, may be applied. Also a plaister of *Terra lemnia*, or Bole armoniak, and iuyce of Plantain, made and laid vpon the head being shauen, is good. If it be a cold humour which distilleth, you shall emptie with those things which purge fleame: for which purpose a strong clister is good: which being done, you must draw and turne away the humour from the head. Then when the humors be digested, purge the head with Masticatories, Gargarismes, and such like. Moreouer, apply to the head *Sacculi* made thus: ℞. flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, Betony, Origan, ana. M ß. Cinamon, Cloues, ana. ʒ. j. Maces, ʒ. j. ß. Nutmegs, ʒ. ij. *Gallæ Moschatæ*, ʒ j. powder them all, and put them in silke, and make a Sacculus, and lay it to the crowne of the head. It is very good also to annoint the head with hot oiles, as are the oiles of *Ireos*, Dill and Rew. All things do stop distillation, which haue vertue to dry, especially *Nigella* parched, and Cumin burnt or parched put into a linnen cloth, and

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Humor frigidus.

Sacculi.

To stop distillation.

and knit,is a present remedy,if the patient do smell to it. For the same purpose it is good to minister suffiments, as is this: ℞. Frankensence,Mastick,ana.ʒ j. wood of Aloes,℈.j.ß.Cinamon, Cloues, ana.℈.ij. *Gallæ moschatæ*,ʒ.j.ß.Laurel leaues,yellow Sanders,ana.ʒ.j.Musk, Amber,ana.gr.j. being brayed,commix them with *Storax liquida*,as much as sufficeth,and make trochisks:wherof put one vpon coales: ℞. Sage,Marioram,Rosemary,ana.ʒ. j. Maces,Cloues, Cinamon,ana.℈.ij. wood of Aloes, ℈.j.Frankensence, ʒ j. ß. beate them all, and commixe them,and make a grosse powder to strew vpon the coales.As for hoarsenesse,it is cured almost with the same medicines that the cough is. *Trochisks of perfume.*

CHAP. XLVI.

Of paine in the teeth.

TOothach(as Galen saith) amongst other paines that are not mortall,is the most cruel & grieuous of them all.It is caused sometime of hote or cold distemper.Also many times through flowing of humors out of the head vnto the roots of the teeth, which with their sharpnesse either do gnaw about them, or else with their abundance they ingender like griefe in the teeth,as if inflammation were about the fleshy parts. Paine in the teeth is somtime without inflammation of the gums,sometime in the sinew wherin the roots be planted.If the paine come through distemper of the bare quality,it will not be grieuous.Hot distemper is knowne by the temper of the whole body,because that likewise is hot Also the face is red,and the diet vsed before was hot.Cold is knowne by the contrary iudgements.If the paine be caused of flowing of some humor abundantly, then grieuous paine is not onely felt in the teeth,but also in other parts which it passeth by.A hot humour ingendreth vehement paine: a cold humour more meeker. Let the diet be such as may defend that the paine come not,and let it be such as is not very hot nor cold.Also eschue all sharp,sowre,and viscous things.Also often vsing of milke doth maruellously hurt the teeth: labour diligently to purify the teeth. The meats must be of good iuyce,& easie to digest. For the cure, if it come of cold,it is good to wash the teeth with warme wine. Let the cheeks be annointed outward with warme oiles, of Cammomill, Rew, *Ireos*,& such like.Also to wash the mouth,seeth in vineger,Origã,Calamint,Hysope,Penitoyal,Sauory,the root of Veruain,& such like.If the teeth do ake thorough heate,you must seeth in vineger Purslaine,Pellitory, Singreene the lesse, & licorice.But if the heat be intollerable,you must vse the seeds of Lettuce,Endiue,and Poppy sodden in vineger.Without you must annoint against the grief with cold oiles, as of Roses,Water-lillies,& such like.Moreouer if the paine be caused through flowing of humors,if age,time of the yeare,& other things will suffer it,& if the body also be ful of bloud,it is good to cut the *Cephalica* vein or *media* on the same side that the grief is. That done cut the veine vnder the tong, or fasten cuping glasses to the shoulders. If one only corrupt humour doth abound,thē vse conuenient medicins to purge that humor.For the same purpose clisters are very good.The whole body being emptied,you must minister those medicins that do represse & stop,as iuice of Plãtaine,Roses,Purslaine,both the endiues:either take the decoctiõ of the aforesaid things,or their waters distilled & mixed with a little vineger.It is only good to wash the aking with hot sharp

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

If it come of heat.

If of flowing of humours.

vineger, with vnripe Gals: or this, R. the roote of Henbane, ℥.j. Pellitory. ℥.ß. Staue sacre, ʒ.j. Gallingale. ʒ.ß. Camphere, ℈.ij. Allume. ℥ j. Hony. ℥ ij. let all be bruised, and boile all in vinger, ℔.j. Rose water, ℥.vj. wash the teeth with this each morning: it will preserue the teeth, & keepe thē from paine. But if it come of extreme cold, thē vse specially this medicine: ℞. Pepper, Pellitory, Melilot, ana. ʒ.j. Stauesacre ʒ.ß. bruise thē, & put the powder into a linnen cloth, & lay it on the aking teeth, & keepe it there a quarter of an houre, & it will ceasse the paine Also (as is said before) to wash the teeth with warme wine, is very good.

If it come of cold.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of teeth that be blacke and loose.

Causa.

SOMETIME the teeth be swart and blacke throughout their substance, not vnlike a certaine inflammation of the patients. Through flowing of vicious humors the teeth be loose, sometime through a stripe or fall, sometime through flowing of moistnesse, which looseth the sinewes and ligaments, and maketh the teeth loose; or else gnawing and weaknesse of the gummes in the which the teeth are set, causeth them to be loose. The cure of vicious humors must be begun with purging. Afterward, if the teeth be swart or rusty, you must deuide the corrupt humours which flow to the teeth, with drying medicines, as is, *Licium*, Frankensence, Mints, Gals, Masticke, Mirrhe, *Nigella*, & such like. Among many other this is very good: ℞. *Nigella*, Mirrhe, Frākensence, ana. ʒ.j. Masticke, white Pepper. ana. ℈.ij. *Pistolochiæ*. ℈ j. roch Allume. ʒ j beat them into powder, and rub the teeth therewith: or commixe them with Venice Turpentine, and annoint them therwith. The corrupt humours being consumed, vse Dentifrices which haue vertue to scoure and drie, as is this, ℞. *Nitrum*, roch Allume, Harts horne burnt, ana. ʒ.j. Mirrhe. ℈ j. the roote of *Ireos Illiricæ*, Frākensence, drie Mints, ana. ʒ j. ß. common Salt burnt, *Pistolochiæ*. ana. ʒ.j. Pumish, *Testarum sepiæ*, ana. ʒ j. ß. Pepper, Pellitory, drie Peniroyal. ana ʒ.ß beate them, and searce them all, and with this powder rub the teeth daily. For teeth that be loose you may apply such medicines, as restraine and strengthen loose gummes, and fasten thē. Therefore for collutions of the mouth the decoctions of restrictiue things do profite, as is this, ℞. red Roses, Mints, Plantaine, ana. M. ß the barks of Cipresse nuts. ʒ. j. seeds of Mirtels, Sumach. ana. ʒ.ß. Pomgranate rinds, Gals. ana. ʒ ij. *Acatia*. ℈.ij seeth them all in red restrictiue wine & with that often wash the mouth. The mouth being washed, it is lawful to vse this *Dentifricium*. ℞. Gals, the rinde of sweet Pomegranates, ana. ʒ.j *Balaustium*, Sumach, Mirrhe ana. ℈ j. red Roses, *Sanguis draconis*, *Caliculorum glandium*. ana. ʒ.j. Frankensence, Harts horne burnt. ana. ʒ. j ß. powder all, & searce them, and rub the teeth therewith: or this is maruellous good: ℞. *Balaustium*, Nutmegs, ana. ʒ iij. roch Alume. ℥.j.ß. powder them, and mixe thē with Hony ℥ ij ß. and incorporate thē well together: and with this annoint the teeth twise or thrise in the day.

Curatio.

Dentifricium optimum.

Loose teeth.

Collutio oris.

Dentifricium.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of vlcers in the mouth.

ἀφθαι.

THE vlcers which are bred in the vpper part of the mouth, and haue a certaine burning heate, in Greeke are called *Aphthe*, and of the barbarous sort

sort *Acola*: some be whitish, and some reddish, and some blackish, and these be most perillous of all other. They ingender for the most part in infants and sucking children, when either the nurses milke is naught, or the child cannot well digest it. Also they chance sometime to them that be of perfect age, aswell through great fluxe of vicious and corrupt humours to the mouth, as also through sharpnesse of those things that are eaten and drunke. The tokens are easie, because they be knowne by sight and feeling. If you touch it, the places will seeme hotter then they ought to be, and there is swelling. They which be red, do shew bloud to haue the maistery. Yellownesse signifieth bitter choler: whitenesse, fleame: blacknesse, melancholy. They which chance to children may easily be cured by those things that do meanly restraine. And you must giue them chiefly in their meats some Quinces, and other sharpe things, as Peares and Mespilers. viz. Medlars, or open arses. Sometime also you must commixe with their meate some Lettuce, Endiue and Purslaine. If there be inflammation of the vlcers, then take the iuyce of Purslaine, Lettuce, and Nightshade, the powder of Allume, & wash the mouth with a fine cloth, or with a Sering; and if the child can take no meate, then the nurse must vse the same kinde of diet. Also the decoction of Galles, *Balaustium*, Sanders, Sumach, *Acatia* and such like, commixed with *Rob de ribes*, or *Diamoron* applied as before is taught. In them that be of perfect age, only the nature of the body is to be considered, whether it be soft, or moist, or hard, or drie. For in hard and strong bodies you must minister strong medicines: in weake and soft bodies, gentle medicins. For the diet therefore in such ages, they must eschue all things that be sharpe & salt, and that ingender corrupt iuyce. For the cure in fulnesse of the body, if nothing do let it, first cut the *Cephalica* veine, & thê those veins vnder the tongue. If the body be full of ill iuyce, you must minister a purgation against the corrupt humours. The body being purged, apply medicins which haue vertue to restraine and stop. Moderate remedies against vlcers be these; *Sumach*, Roses, *Balaustium* dissolued in wine or *Mulsa* But if the exulcerations begin to putrifie, this decoction is very profitable, ℞. Fellerd leaues of Sage, Hylope, Rew, Peniroyall, Cammomill, Woodbind, Knotgrosse, *Bursa pastoris*, Brier leaues, ana. M. ß. wash them cleane, and boile them all in ℔. ij. ß. of good Ale or Beere, and put therin three or foure spoonfuls of Hony, Allume ℥. ij. let it seeth to the consumption of halfe, then straine it, & wash the mouth therewith foure or fiue times in a day. But if the vlcers be more running and gnawing, annoint the place with *Vnguentum Egyptiacum*, mixt with *Mel Rosarum*, or such like.

Signa.

Curatio infantium.

Cure of them that be of perfect age.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of a stinking mouth.

THERE is a grieuous and stinking sauor of the mouth caused for the most part through putrifaction of the gummes or teeth, or through meate sticking still in the teeth. Many times it cometh through hote distemper of the skinne of the mouth: sometime also through corrupt and rotten humours sticking in the mouth of the stomacke. It chanceth also many times that exulceration of the mouth or lungs doth hurt the breath of the mouth or lungs. If stinking of the mouth chance through putrifaction either of the gummes, or

Causa.

Signa. teeth, or of meate sticking in the teeth: it is soone knowne either by sight, or by the patients tale. If it be caused of a hote distemper of the mouth, then heate is felt in the mouth, and thirst troubleth him. If through vice of the stomacke, then the breath of the mouth is more grieuous and stinking before meate then after meate. Vlcerations of the lungs are knowne by extenuation of the body, and by coughing. In the diet the patient must auoid all things that do readily ingender corruption in the mouth or stomacke, as is, milk, fish, almost all fruits, marrow, fat, naughty water, and such like. Let the meats therefore which they vse be of good iuyce, and easie to digest: but they must vse meats rather roft then sodden. In the end of dinner & supper they may eate Peares, Quinces, & such like, especially, if the stinking sauor come frō the mouth of the stomacke. Let them eschue sleeping by and by after meate. If stinch of the mouth come through corruption of the gummes or teeth, if there be fulnesse of the bodie, first draw bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine, & then fasten cupping glasses to the neck; but if the body be full of euill iuyce, purge the humour that doth abound with a conuenient medicine. The body being purged, vse outward medicines, specially collutions and washings, which in this case seeme to be maruellous good, as this is, ℞. Red roses, Plantain, Knotgrasse, ana. M. j. ß. Gals. Pomegranat floures, Cipres nuts, ana ℥ .ij rinds of Pomegranates, ℥ ß. Roch allume. ℥ j. seeth these in iust quantity of water to the third part, & in the iuyce of the decoction being strained, cōmixe *Mel rosarum, Diacarion*, an. ℥. ß. *Diamoron*, ℥. iij. commixe them all & make a collution, with the which wash the gums and the teeth euery morning & euening. Also oftē washing with water mixed with vinegerin the morning, and by and by after meate, is good. If the stinke in the mouth be without exulceration, minister the roote of *Ireos* steeped in old odoriferous wine, and wash the teeth often withall. Also it is good to hold it in the mouth. Also Mirrhe steeped in pure wine minister to wash the teeth. Also it is very good to chew Pellitorie, *Tamariscus* & Rew. Likewise collution of vineger squilliticke, or decoction of Sage, or onely wine. Also decoction of Mints in vineger and water helpeth, if the mouth be often washed with it. This causeth sweet breath, and maketh the teeth white, ℞. white salt. Pumises, Origan, ana. ℥ ij roote of *Ireos*. ℥ j. flowres of Squinance. ℥. ß. beate them al, & commixe thē, and rub the teeth therewith. If stinke of the mouth come of a hot distemper, cure it with contrary medicines. But if it come of a corrupt humour in the mouth of the stomack, it is healed by those things which do purge that humor. Those things which be contained in the mouth of the stomacke may well be brought out by a vomit. How ye shall prouoke vomite, it is declared in many places before. After this, minister medicins which do strengthen the stomacke, as is, *Aromaticum rosaceum, Diamber, Hydromalum*, & such like medicins, which be good in all causes, as be Cloues, Masticke, Mace, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, Roses, all the Saunders, Nutmegs, *Quibibes, Ireos*, and other of the like sort.

Victus ratio.

Collutio oris.

For sweete breath.

Vomitus.

These suffice. And how many euils soeuer there be of the head, whose cure is not expresly named by me in this booke, yet you may find out medicines to cure them by that which is declared in this booke.

The

The ſecond Booke.

CHAP. I.

Againſt the inflammation of the Columella.

THERE chanceth in the throate many dangerous inflammations (as *Hippocrates* writeth in his *Prognoſticis*) and firſt of this *Columella* appeareth a certain fleſhy peece, hanging in the vpper part of the mouth. If one do gape wide, and hold downe his tongue, it may be ſeene. In old time it was called *Gurgulio*, now it is called *Columella*. It is often vexed with inflammations, which is cauſed through bloud and other humours which deſcend out of the head. The diſeaſe may be known by ſight: and there chanceth in it difficulty in ſwallowing, paine, ſwelling, redneſſe of the *Columella*, & feuer. The diet in a maner, muſt be ſuch as is ordained in other inflammations, & ſpecially, quietnes, reſt, ſilence, & hunger, are good, and to eate litle or nothing at ſupper. For the cure, if there be fulneſſe of the body, you muſt begin with bloudletting, and firſt you muſt cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, & afterward the veine vnder the tongue. Alſo the belly muſt be purged by cliſters, ſo that by that meanes, not onely the belly may be ſoluble, but alſo that the flowing of humours to the griefe, may be taken away. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe you may faſten cupping glaſſes to the ſhoulders: neither muſt we let paſſe the remedies which are good to repreſſe and ſtop fluxe of humours For as they do in all other diſeaſes cauſed of the fluxe of humours, ſo in this behalfe, for their firſt remedies they ſtop the fluxe of humours. Therefore ſuch remedies muſt be of a reſtrictiue nature & faculty. If that the fluxe of humours be moderate, miniſter things which reſtraine moderately, as theſe be which be called ſoure. But if it be more vehement, adde to it ſharpe things, for both be reſtrictiue: but ſoure be weake, and ſharp things ſtrong, as *Galen* doth ſay in his fourth booke of the vertues of ſimple medicines, cap. 6. and 7. Therefore vſe collutions made of thoſe things, as if they ſhould be moderate: ſeeth Dates ſometime in water alone; and ſometime with a little hony put to them. Likewiſe made decoctions of Roſes, Vine buds, Brambles, Cipreſſe, the firſt buds of Pomegranate flowres, *Siligna*, roote of Mulberie, ſoure Apple, and *Sorbus*. Thoſe be ſtronger then theſe, which be made of the decoction of Mirtles, and their berries. Alſo of ſharpe Quinces, & yong buds of Oake, or the maſt of Oak: alſo of Medlars, & a fruit called *Cornus*: the beſt collutiõs are made of Gals, *Sumach*, *Acatia*, & the floures of both Pomegranats, and their ſhels. Among

Gurgulio.
Signa.
Victus ratio.
Curatio.
Venæ ſectio.
Cucurbitulæ.

Gargarismus. compound medicines this doth helpe wonderfully, ℞. the distilled waters of Roses, Plantaine, Sorrell, *Prunella, Solani* ana. ℥.ij. *Diamoron, succi medicati Cribes.* ana. ℥.ß *Succi medicati Oxyacantha.* ʒ.ij.ß. vineger, wherein *Sumach* is steeped ℥.j. iuyce of Pomegranates, ℥.ß. commixe them together, and with it wash the mouth. Another of the same vertue. ℞. red Roses, Brambles, ana. M.j. Pomgranate floures & the shels, Gals, mast of Oake, ana. ʒ iij. *Sumach, Hypocistidis, Acatia*, ana. ʒ.ij. seeds of Sorrel and Quinces, ana. ʒ. j. seeth them in ℔.j. of well water, vntill halfe remaine; the decoction being strained, put to it of *Diamoron* ℥.j. *succi medicati Cribes, Diacation*, ana ʒ.j.ß vineger, ʒ. vj. commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. You must vse these medicines in the beginning of the disease, and specially when the griefe hath not the greatest cause: nor when the body of the sicke is much stopped with humours, nor when the aggrieued place is weake through the nature of the impostume. But if it chance so (as it doth often in the beginning, and often somewhat after) that is, the third day, you must commixe some of the discussiue medicines, as is Linseed, Fenugreek, Mallowes, roote of *Ireos*, and Hony. Moreouer, of what sort soeuer the medicines be, minister them warme, for those that labour of inflammation, may suffer no cold. After the vigour of it you may safely minister discussiues, vnlesse the *Columella* begin to waxe hard: for then you must minister mollifying medicines: that is, Lineseed, Fenugreeke, Mallowes, *Altheæ, Tragacanthum*, & such like: of the which you may make gargarismes. After that vse discussiues, as is, Hysope, Figs, Licorice decoct together. If if it draw toward rotting, which may be perceiued by his colour, and doth not breake alone by collutions of *Mulsa* and *Oximel Scilliticum*, then open it with some instrument. After the breaking and bursting out of the matter, let him vse medicines cleansing absterſiue, and glutinatiue, especially the iuyce of Eupatorie, and such like.

Alia.

CHAP. II.

Of a loose Columella.

OFtentimes it chanceth that a loose *Columella* doth hang vpon the rootes of the tongue and iawes. Of some it is called the *Vuula*. Wherefore in the beginning you must vse such kind of cure as the inflammation therof requireth. In the beginning the body and the head must be purged by medicines spoken of in the former Chapter. Which being done, you must make collutions, and gargarismes of such things as do restraine and drie after this sort, ℞. red Roses, Sorrell, Eupatory, ana. M.j. *Gallacum.* ʒ.ij. Allume. ʒ.j. Mirrhe, Frankensence, ana. ʒ.ß. Flax seed, ʒ.ß. seeth them in water to the third part, and adde to the iuyce of that decoction strained, of good Hony. ℥. ß. and make a gargarisme. Also powders do profit, being blowne in with an instrument for the purpose: as this is, ℞. drie Roses, Galls, roch Allume, ana. ʒ.j.ß. Pepper, Ginger, ana. ʒ ß. Mirrhe, ʒ.j. powder it and searce it, and put it vp as before. Also take greene Nuts, and drie them, and Date stones burned sufficiently: take of each of them equall portions, powder them, and vse them as the other. Also vnripe Galles, Bolearmoniacke, ana. ʒ j. do likewise. If the *Columella* must needs be cut, it is good to empty the bellie first, lest the sicke be strangled. When the *Columella* is cut out, bow his head downward, lest the bloud run inward. And afterward wash

Gargarismus.

his

his mouth with the decoction of Sumach, *Acatia*, Galles, putting to it Rose-water and Vineger. Afterward minister things to heale it vp.

CHAP. III.

Of inflammation of the tonsils.

TONSILLAE be inflammations of those thing which lie betweene the mouth and the throate; some do call them *Amygdalæ* (that is) Almonds. Those tonsils oftentimes be inflamed: for their places be hote and moist. *Cause.* They are most vexed with this euill, which haue abundance of bloud: and children and infants which do sucke, through drawing of the mike. Also it chanceth often to men and women through drinking of strong wines, & through much greedy deuouring of meats, especially if they be eager and sharpe. They that be so afflicted haue difficulty in swallowing, and paine, and also sometime a fe- *Signa.* uer. Therefore the inflammation beginning, you must take away meate, and minister to him water to drinke, or water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden, specially if there be a feauer. Let the whole diet be so ordered, as *Victus ratio.* it is in other inflammations. Let his meat be soupings, for otherwise he cannot swallow it. For the cure, if the inflammation be light, you must vse gargarismes, restrictiues, such as be taken in the beginning of an inflamed *Columella*. But you *Curatio.* must beware in the beginning, that you put no Hony to the gargarismes, for it hath a sharpnesse in it. If that the inflammation be vehement, so that he be in peril of choking, you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme on the same side. *Venæ sectio.* And if the belly be not soluble enough, cast in a clister. You must prouoke childrens bellies by putting in a suppositarie, and by annointing the tuell. After purging you must vse restrictiue medicines, vntill the vigour of the disease be somewhat ceassed. All these things (as we admonished before) must be ministred warme. Outwardly it is best to nourish it wit Sponges, laid gently to it. Also lay to it plaisters made of Barley meale, seeds of flaxe, Fenugreeke, & such like. The inflammation declining, and waxing lesse, it is good to put Hony into your gargarismes, which in the beginning and increasing you may not do, lest the sharpnesse which is in it do increase fluxe. Also at this time hoter gargarismes do profite. Outwardly you must put about the neck, soft wool dipped in oyle: and if that by vsing of sharpe collutions, or gargarismes, the inflammation be increased, & biting & gnawing come thereby, you must vse gentler, as is iuyce of Prisan: also gargarise with warme Milke. When the inflamation and paine ceasseth, annoint with the aforesaid remedies of the mouth, putting it in with your finger: so that by gentle annointing, the parts of the tonsils which are swelled, may be thrust, whereby they may put out the matter contained in them. But yet you may not thrust hard, as many vse to do, whereby they cause the inflammation to be augmented. And therefore if by that means any hurt do chance, we must be content with ministring gentle gargarismes without any annointing. If that by ministring the remedies aforesaid, the griefe *Signes of suppuration.* be not eased, then looke for rotting of it, which you may know by increasing of the inflammation, and by sharpe exulcerations, exacerbations, and gnawings in the euening. When you looke for suppuration and rotting, you must helpe that it may quickly come to passe: therefore then you must minister

hoter gargarismes, as is, *Aqua mulsa*, and decoction of Figs, Hysope and seed of *Althæa*. Outwardly lay plaisters of Barley meale and Fenugreeke, with decoction of Figs, *Althæa* and hony. When it is perfectly rotten, the paine will diminish, and the swelling and inflammation will be made softer, so that it will giue place to the finger: then you must minister sharpe collutions, that, they may breake the botch. In meates he must take great gobbets of bread steeped in water, and likewise his meate must be eaten by lumps: for vehement rolling of it vp and downe about the tonsils will breake the botches, as well as if they were cut. But if the patient will not do it, then open it with some fine instrument for the purpose. And after it is broken, let the sicke bow his head downeward, that the matter may the better run out. And let him gargarise *Aqua mulsa* alone, and afterward commixe with it decoction of Lentils & Roses. And with these you must tarrie, vntill it be healed.

CHAP. IIII.

Of malignant Vlcers of the tonsils.

Signa. THERE beginne malignant Vlcers of the tonsils, sometime with a fluxe of them going before: sometime they are caused of an accustomed inflammation, being augmented. They chance often to children, and also to them of perfect age, especially to those which do abound with vicious humours. They *Causæ.* chance to children after the *Apthis* in the mouth. In colour they be like vnto scurfs which are burnt with iron. Also there chanceth to the sicke drinesse in swallowing, and often choking, especially when rednesse is vnder the chin. If gnawing and sharpnesse of humors hath gone before, there followeth pu- *Curatio.* trefaction. You must proceede in the cure speedily: and if he be of perfect age and no other thing forbidding it, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, or if that appeare not, the middle veine. If they be maids, whom at perfect age, for lacke of purgation of menstruis, the disease doth often infest, then in them you must cut the *Saphena* veine, letting bloud but once onely, and yet at that time, not till the heart faile, lest after it, vertue be destroyed by ouermuch fluxe of menstruis. Furthermore the belly must be emptied by clisters, suppositaries, and by annointing of the tuell. And you must labour by all meanes to turne the humour from the agrieued place: for the which purpose fasten cupping glasses nigh to the loynes, and vse to bind the extremities, and the hands and feet. Afterward it is good to vse gargarismes, declared before in the chapter of *Columella*, and in the chapter following. After the beginning of the sicknesse, minister *Diamoron*, or a collution mixed with *Mulsa*, then also decoction of *Ireos*, and other things rehearsed in the abouesaid places. We must take heed that we touch not the vlcerate tonsils with our finger, nor so much as to touch it softly. For the vnskilfull, to whom with great errour men do seeke in doubtfull matters, they do annoy it vehemently, also they do thrust the agrieued place, and pull away the scab or roue, which they ought not to do, before they see the roue lifted, and scarce cleauing to the sore. For if we intend to pull away the scabbe, whiles it stitcketh fast, the vlceration will pierce more deepe, and inflammations will follow, and the paine will increase, and they will come to venimous vlcers. Therefore it is good to blow in drie remedies, and to annoint

noint liquid things with a feather. Dogs dung mixed with hony and annointed, taketh away the roues maruellously, which will be the better, if the dog be fed onely with bones two dayes before: it helpeth greatly, neither hath it any vnsauorinesse being ministred in meates. Also the ashes of Swallowes burnt, and the ashes of Centory *minor* burnt, with hony mixed, is good. After the irritations and chafings made by medicines, you must appease it with decoction of liquorice, and with a Gargarisme, which is made of Masticke, Mirrhe, *Tragacanthum*, *Amylum*, and Saffron, ministring also while the vlcer feedeth, milk mixed with *Terra lemnia* to gargarise. What need many words? You must be diligent and carefull, specially in clensing and purging the vlcers. Many infants do suffer the cramp in purging of the vlcers. Some be strangled, because the way of swallowing is dried vp. It is good to apply outward foments, and emplaisters, with taking heed lest he do coole it. For the cure will prosper, if the matter that is holden within, can be drawne outward. Therefore alwaies after the taking of the plaisters away, couer the parts that be about the chinne, by laying vpon it soft wooll, sprinkled with *Oleum Nardinum*. To conclude, when the scurfs are loosened, and the vlcers purged, vse this remedy following: ℞. flowers of red Roses, ʒ.iij. Saffron, ʒ.j. ß. *Baulaustiæ*, ʒ.ß. Mirrhe, ℈.j. Pine nuts made cleane, ʒ.ij. *Amyli*, ʒ j. Sumach, Roch allume, ana. ʒ.j. ß. beate them, commixe them with hony, and vse to annoint it three times on the day. *Gargarisme.*

CHAP. V.

Of the Squinancy.

ANgina in Latin, Squinancie in English, but in Greek *Synanche*. It is properly an inflammation which is in the throate, or in the iawes. There be foure kinds of Squinancies: one is, when the iawes be inflamed, (by the iawes I meane the place where the ends of the wesand and the *trachæa arteria* do agree.) Another is, when neither the iawes nor other parts of the mouth, nor yet the outward parts do seeme to be inflamed, yet the sicke feeleth perill of choking in the throate. The third is, when the parts about the throate be inflamed both outwardly and inwardly. The fourth is, when the ioynts betweene the bones of the head and the necke be loosened to the former part of the necke: whereby the place appeareth hollow, and the sicke feeleth paine when it is touched without. The Squinancy is caused through abundance of hote bloud, flowing vnnaturally to the places before rehearsed. It is knowne by these signes: the breath is drawne very hardly, and not without the necke be holden right, and there is difficultie in swallowing. Also in some, a feuer, rednesse of the face and necke. There chanceth also in many, swelling: the sicke yauneth with open mouth and draweth breath. Therfore in the beginning euery Squinancy requireth a hasty and speedy remedy. Wherefore you must by and by cut the outward veine on the same side of the shoulders, except some greater perill do let it: but you must take away the bloud by little and little, at many times, and not all at once, for the bloud being taken away altogether on heapes, the heart soone faileth, and so the perill of choking cometh vpon him. And moreouer also by the refrigeration and fainting of the heart, the matter is quickly caried from the iawes vnto the lungs, and so bringeth ineuitable peril. Take heed also

Gen.4.
1
2
3
4
Causa.
Signa.
Curatio.
Venæ humerorum sectio.

that there be little deduction of the veine, for thereof cōmeth much failing of the mind, and yet it is not good to make a narrow incision of the veine, lest the bloud be as it were strained, and the grosser part remaineth within still, which is the cause of this disease. It is profitable to them to haue the bloud drawne out againe the next day, vnlesse the swelling of the disease let it or faintnes of the heart. If the sick be a woman, cut the veine on the ankles, specially if the menstruis be stopped; and the bloud must be drawne out moderately. If by these she be but little eased, then it is good to cut those veines which be vnder the tongue, and that by and by, at the first or the second day. And if there be any thing that forbiddeth bloudletting, the belly must be emptied with a sharp clister, such as is described in the chapter of *Apoplexia*. After vniuersal euacuations, you must fasten on cupping glasses: and if there be swelling about the cheekes, or vnder the chin, it is good to fasten cupping glasses to the swelling, and with scarification to draw out much bloud also to strew salt vpon the scarifying, and to rub it. And if there appeare no swelling outward, you must fasten a cupping glasse behind in the necke, neare to the shutting of the first ioynt; and you must vse it with constant attraction, pulling away the glasse often. Also the humors must be turned away, lest they flow to the place which is aggrieued and inflamed. For the which purpose you must bath the feet with hote water. Also bind and rub the hands and feet strongly. The necke must be couered with wooll that is moist, or that is dipped in warme oile: also by and by (at the beginning) you must vse gargarises, which do neither vehemently driue backe, nor yet only discusse. For those which do altogether repell and driue back, they bring perill of choking, by thrusting humours to the lungs. Those which be only discussiue, they draw more then is meet, by reason of their heate. Therefore when the beginning is with much inflammation, you must minister those things which do restraine gently, as is decoction of Roses, Lintels, & Dates, or else restrictiue gargarismes, declared before in the chap. *de Columellæ inflammatione*, commixing some discussiue medicins with it. Of that sort are Roses, or Sumach sodden with *Aqua mulsa*, and decoction of Sebesten. When the disease is at his strength, and standeth, you must vse those things which haue discussiue vertue onely in them, as is decoction of Fenugreeke, Figs, Raisins, Licorice; or stronger things, as the root of *Ireos*, Hysope, *Nigella*, Sothernwood with *Oximel*. Therefore it shall be lawfull at this time to vse a gargarisme made thus: ℞. of Licorice scraped, ℥.j. Raisons, ℥.ß. dry figs in number six, Fenugreek, ℥.ij Hysope, Sothernwood, ana. M.ß. seeth them in one pound of Wel water, til half be consumed: then put into the licour of that decoction being strained, of *Mel rosarum* ℥ j.ß. *Oximel simplex*, ℥.j. commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. Also dogs dung such as is found amongst herbs, and is very white in colour, being beaten and finely searced, and mixed with Hony, is a most excellent medicine, being ministred like a *Lohoch*, that they may swallow it very softly. Likewise the ashes of Swallowes burnt is very effectuall, being so mixed with Hony. Moreouer, to the necke without you must apply those plaisters, in them which be vexed with inflammation, which can concoct & discusse, as is this: ℞. the meale of Linseed, Fenugreeke, and Barley, ana. ℥.j. seeds of *Althæa*, ℥ iij. Mallowes, flowers of Cammomill and Melilot, ana. M.j. seeth them in water vntill they waxe soft, then stampe them

Venarum linguæ sectio.

Clyster.

Cucurbitulæ.

Auersio humorum.

Gargarismus.

Cataplasmata

them in a mortar, and make a soft plaster, or put to it oiles of Cammomill and Lillies, ana. ℥.j ß and being boiled againe, make an emplaister. Neither shall it be vnprofitable if the necke be annointed with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, and Lillies, or fomented with decoction of Fenugreeke, Melilot and Cammomill. They which are vexed with the Squinãcy, let them vse three daies *Aqua mulsa* for their drinke: afterward iuyce of Prisan by it selfe or with some sweete potion, for that iuyce hath vertue to extenuate, discusse nourish and to coole. When the inflammation is somewhat slacked, and the sicke beginneth to swallow better, giue to him the yolks of rere eggs, and suppings made of *Alica*. To conclude, the eating of the sicke and his meats must be according to his strength, therfore he must eschue ouermuch feeding. Sleepe must especially be eschued, as well in the Squinancy as in all other inflammations. For in sleepe (as Hippocrates saith) the bloud creepeth within, and the flowing of humours to the grieued place, doth increase more. *Potus.* *Cibus.*

CHAP. VI.

Of the Cough

THere be diuers causes of the cough. For as *Galen* saith, *lib.1.cap.2. de simpto. causis*, cold distemper of the instruments of breathing causeth the cough. Also a humour distilling from the head to the *Trachæa* arteria, and sharpnesse onely of the vpper skinne of *trachæa arteria* going about within, doth prouoke the cough. Aso wormes troubling the stomack, and raising vp some quality, sending it to the iawes, doth cause the cough. Moreouer, a humour contained in the lungs and the breast, is the cause of inflammation in the lungs, disease in the sides, consumption, and the cough. Those which be outward signes, and may cause the cough, be smoke, dust, and whatsoeuer doth exasperate the *trachæa arteria*. The signes of coughing caused onely through cold distemper of the instruments of respiration and breathing, are, that those that be so afflicted, they spit out nothing while they cough, nor the cough is not violent nor constraining: but it is so smal, that not only it may be suppressed by holding the breath, but also vnlesse it be very great, it may be healed: because through stopping of the breath, the parts vexed with cold, do waxe hote. Moreouer they which are vexed with this kind of cough, are more prouoked to it by often fetching of their breath, because the cold thereby is increased, and made more strong: therefore if they breathe and fetch their winde easily, and be also in a warme house, they cough little or nothing at all. They be pale of face, and not thirsty: they are grieued with cold things, and are best with hote things: the coughs which chance with tickling of the parts on either side of the palate, they do openly shew a flowing humour, coming from the head to *trachæa arteria*, and to the lungs, which you may wel know by difficultie of breathing that followeth. And if that they which be thus afflicted do spit out nothing, it declareth it to be a thinne reume, which being cut off by expulsion of breath, it is caried no further by reason of his thinnesse, but the flowing of it returneth again. The diet is diuers, according to the diuersity of causes: for if the cough be caused of cold distemper, occupying the instruments of breathing, you must eschew aire, wind, and also cold meate and drinke: but if the cough be caused through hu-

Causæ. 1 2 3 4 5 6 *Signa.* *Victus ratio.*

Cure of the cough caused of coid distemper.

mors distilling from the head, let the diet be such as is described before in the chapter of Distillation. But vniuersally they which haue the cough, must eschue salt things, sharpe things, and whatsoeuer would exasperate the *trachæa arteria*. The cough that is caused through cold of the instruments of breathing, shall be cured by the remedies that can make them hote. Therfore let the neck be wrapped about with warme wooll, and let him breath seldome, because that stopping of the breath (as is said before) doth not onely let the cough, but also oftentimes healeth it. Therefore it is good to haue the sicke conuersant in a hot house, and let them breath very softly. Also let the breast be fomented with hote ointments, as is oiles of *Ireos*, Lillies and Dill. If a humour that is thin and sharp flowing out of the head to the *trachæa arteria* and the breast, do cause a cough, then it shall be healed specially by meats of good iuyce, and by medicines which do coole, thicken, temper and stop sharpnesse and mordacity. For which purpose it is good to minister sirupes of Violets, of *Nymphæa*, of Poppie, the antidote *Diatragacantha*, *Diapenidion sine speciebus*, *Pilulæ Bechicæ*, and such like. Among all other this loch is excellent good ℞. *Diatragacantha*, *Diapenidion sine speciebus*, ana. ʒ. vj. iuice of Licorice. ʒ. ij *Pilulæ Bechicæ*, ʒ. j *storax calamitæ*, ʒ. ß. Mirrhe, dry Roses, ana. ʒ. j. *Tragacanchæ*, Pine nuts, ʒ. ß. sirupe of Violets, as much as shall suffise to commixe them and make an *Ecligma*. Also for that purpose it is good to minister those medicines which are spoken of before in the chap. of Distillations. But if a grieuous & viscous humor be cause of the cough, we shal cure it by those things which do deuide & extenuate. Therfore then we must minister to the sicke sirupe of Licorice, Hisope, Horehound, Calamint, & such like, or else this decoction: ℞. roots of *Ireos*, Parsly, Licorice, ana. ℥. j. rootes of *Ella Campana*, ℥ ß. dry figs in number seuen, of Raisins, the stones picked out, ℥. j seeds of Nettle, Anise, and Fennell, ana. ʒ. ij. Hysope, Maidenhaire, Scabios, of iust quantity, till the third part be consumed: then straine it, and to the iuyce of that decoction put sirupe of Hisope and Horehound, ana. ℥. ij. ß. and make a potion. Afterward if it seeme conuenient by the state of the patient, you must emptie the body with those medicines which do purge grosse and clammy humors. And among other spoken of in the first booke, the infusion of Agaricke is very good which is made after this sort: ℞. of elect Agarick, ʒ. ij. Ginger, ϑ. j. salt Gemme, ʒ. iij. beate them and infuse them one night in ℥. ij. of odoriferous white wine, water of Wormewood, & Fennel, ana. ℥. j. in the morning straine it, and wring it, & put to it *Electuarium Indi maioris*, ʒ. ij. ß. *Oximel scillictium*, ℥. ß. & make a potion. The body being purged, let him haue a loch somtime commixed with other antidotes, after this sort: ℞. *Loch è pino*, *loch sani & experti*, *loch è scilla*, ana. ʒ. iij. *Diaireos Salomonis*, ℥. j. powder of *Diapenidion cũ speciebus*, ʒ j. powder of the roots of *Enula* & *Ireos*, ana. ʒ. ij. ß. iuyce of Licorice, ʒ. j. ß. sirupe of Horehound, as much as shall suffice to commixe them. Moreouer, the breast must be annointed outwardly with hot oiles, of Lillies, *Ireos*, & sweet Almonds, putting to them grease and other things, after this sort: ℞ oiles of Lillies and sweet Almonds, ana. ʒ iij. of Hens grease, ʒ. j. ß. fresh butter, ʒ. ij. the muscelage of Fenugreeke, and roote of *Althæa*, ana. ʒ. ß *Storax*, ʒ. ß. powder of the roote of *Enula* and *Ireos*, ana. ʒ. j. Saffron, ϑ j. white Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The residue that is requisite for the cure of the cough,

Cure of the cough caused of cold distemper.

Cure of the cough caused of thinne and sharpe humors

Ecligma.

Cure of the cough caused of grosse and viscous humors.

Decoctio.

Purgatio.

Infusio Agarici.

Ecligma.

Vnguentum.

are

are to be sought in the Chapter of Distillation.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Asthma.

THE *Asthma* is caused when as grosse & clammy humors be gotten in abundantly into the gristles or lappets of the lungs, or that there be some swelling in it, like vnto a botch. Also they do breath difficultly, whereby the *Trachea arteria* is repleate and filled with distillations. These euils are easie to be knowne asunder. For distillation doth also chance in haile folke by and by through as manifest a cause, in a manner, altogether without a feauer, hauing the tokens of distillation following it. If there be swelling of the lungs like a botch, there must needs follow a feauer, and so within few daies, after, the inflammation being rotted, the matter of it is cast out with the cough. If there be a crude & raw tubercle & botch ingendred, such do not feele any great griefe, neither are they much troubled with difficultie of breathing: but they are much troubled when they eate or drink, because they cannot swallow but with great griefe. Those which be properly Asthmatick, or Orthopnicks, they haue no feauer at all, and there chanceth to them heauinesse of sense, and they do not spit out matter with their spittle. Let their diet be altogether hote and drie: therefore he must eschue aire cold and moist. He must eate the flesh of Partriches, Birds of the mountaines, Hens, Capons, and such like. He must eschue, fishes, fruite, pulse, and all other things that can engender grosse and clammy humours. Let him vse often Hysope, Parcely, and Fennell. Vniuersally, let him drinke a small quantity at once which hath a botch risen: but much drinke must be vsed of those whose gristles and flappes of the lungs are stopped with grosse and clammy humours, which are not easie to be cast out with the spittle because of their thicknesse, and therefore they neede much moistning, that it may come out the easier. He must vse exercise before meate, but not sodainly by and by, because many by this meanes are dead. Frictions and rubbings of the breast do profite. Perturbations of the minde, especially wrath and lamentation, are to be eschued. But for the cure of the aforesaid euils generally, you must labour that the abundance of that humour, which engendreth these euils, may be abolished and consumed. But for the cure of these euils particularly, if the euill be engendred of grosse and clammie humours, you must cure it by extenuating and cleansing medicines. If it come of swelling like a botch, you must cure it by extenuating and drying medicines. Against grosse and vicious humours, those medicines be good, which do extenuate and scoure without vehement heate; for grosse and vicious humours do waxe more tough and clammy as well with vehement heate as they do with cold, so that afterward they can scarce be deuided and pluckt away. Therefore *Oximel squilliticum*, or *Squilla* rosted and brayed with Hony, is especially to be ministred vnto them. Also sirupes of Liquorice, Horehound, and Hisope. Also the decoction rehearsed in the last chapter before is good for purging. If necessity require, before al things cut the middle veine in the arme, or the inner veine, and draw out so much bloud as strength will suffer. But if the body be not full, (the humor being preparate to purging by the premisses) you must minister

Causa.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Note.

often stronger medicines, which may driue out the grosse and clãmy humors. Therfore pilles of Agaricke, and *Pilulæ Cochiæ*, also *Diaturbith* with Rewbarbe *Antidotum Indi*, and *Diaphenicon* are good for this purpose. Also minister the infusion of Agaricke described before in the last chapter. Also the belly must be washed with strong clisters. Also he must vomit now and then, by taking of Radish and other things which prouoke vomite, of the which we haue spoken in the first booke of Melancholiousnesse. But in the meane season, while purgations be ministred, you must minister medicines which can dissolue and extenuate humors contained in the breast by little and little: and he must take *Aristolochia rotunda*, the roots of *Enula* & *Ireos*, Nettle seed, Hysope, *Nigella*, Calamint, and such like, wherewith you may make decoctions or Loches. For which purpose also those *Ecligmata*, which are rehearsed in the chapter of the Cough, are good. Also *Trochisci Bechici albi* be most excellent. Outwardly you must lay to the breast, plaisters made of Figs, Barly meale, or rather meale of Fitches, hauing Rosin, Honey, and Waxe commixed with it. Also apply to the breast, of *Ireos*, Dill, Rew, and such like, as is this: ℞. oiles of Dil and Rew. ana ℥. ß. the grease of Hens & Ducks, ana. ʒ. ij. the roots of *Ireos*, *Enula*, & *Draconty maioris*, ana. ʒ. j. seed of flaxe, ℈ ij. Storax, ʒ. iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. But the breast must first of all be rubbed with a rough linnen cloth, that (the pores being opened and vnlocked) the strength of the medicine may more readily pierce to the bottome. Also you must vse those medicines which can exulcerate the skinne, and draw out matter and watery humours, as those be which are named *Rubefacientia*. For this purpose the breast must be rubbed with Nettles, brayed or beaten. The places that are blistered are to be cured with warme oile. But in an inueterate euill, and where all medicines are ministred in vaine, we must flie to burnings, as *Ætius* teacheth in *lib.8.cap.57.* how it should be done. For the cure of that which is like a botch, which hath need of medicines to attenuate and dry, (as is said before) you must note that it is cured with Aromatick things, because they do extenuate, drie, and heate. Therefore then you must giue vnto the Asthmaticks specially Antidotes compounded of these things, as is *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, *Antidotum è moscha dulce*, *Diamber*, *Aromaticum rosarum*, *Diamargariton callidum*, and many such other like.

Clyster.

Vnguentum.

Rubefacientia

Cure of Abscessus.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Pleurisie.

PLEVRISIE, to speake exquisitely and properly, is an inward inflammation of the vpper skinne girding the ribbes and the sides. In Latine it is called *Lateralis dolor*. Neither is it rashly added, to speake exquisitely and properly: for through many torments, and through meats grosse and flegmaticke, there do engender humours that be cold, crude, grosse, and viscous in the bodie, which ostentimes do place themselues by and by in the void place of the breast, or in the lungs it selfe, and by reason of their multitude, they stretch out the vpper skin, girding the sides within, and cause paine: but of this we will speake nothing, because the cure of it doth differ little from the cure of *Asthma*, rehearsed in the last chap. The Pleurisie which is an inflãmation of the vpper skin which

Cause.

which girdeth the sides within, is caused of abundance of hote bloud, flowing naturally to the aforesaid vpper skinne within. The signes hereof are difficultie of breathing, the cough, a continuall feuer, vehement pricking paine, a hard pulse, and sharpe like a saw. And if his spittle be redde and bloudy, it signifieth bloud to haue dominion: if it be yellow and subpale, choler hath the masterie: if it be white and froathie, fleame ruleth: if it be blackish, it betokeneth blacke choler to haue the masterie, or melancholie. The first two daies the sicke must be content with the iuyce of Ptisan for his meate. Afterward make him Almond milke with the decoction of Ptisan, or the crummes of fine bread mixed with the broth of a Chicken or Cocke, specially if the patient be weake. He must vniuersally eschue all things that be sharpe & restrictiue. Let his drinke be water wherein Cinamon is sodden, and let the patient eschue cold water as a pernitious thing, because it maketh the spittle grosse & thicke. Also let him eschue wine altogether. Let him lie vpon the side that is grieued. Let him auoide wrath, sorrow, and other perturbations of the mind. In the beginning of the cure, the Phisition must diligently consider, whether the body of the sicke be grieued with abundance of humours or not: so that he must know at the first, whether the paine doth mitigate and dissolue with heating medicines, and when it doth not. For if the body be not full of humours, then in the beginning of the Pleurisie and inflammation, the paine must be mitigated and discussed with foments and medicines that do heate. But if the body do abound with euill humours, or be full of bloud, you may not beginne the cure with those things that do heate, for they moue fluxe of humours to the aggrieued place: for the place to the which things that do heate are laid, draweth more to it then it sendeth out by vapours againe. Therefore then you must not vse hote foments which cannot dissolue the paine, but all the body must be emptied by bloud letting, and you must cut the inner veine of the arme, which they call the liuer veine, or the splene veine, on the arme which is right against the griefe on the same side. For bloudletting on the same side, doth not onely draw bloud away from the aggrieued part, but also it purgeth it quickly, which is greatly requisite in the Pleurisie, and in other inward inflammations. After bloudletting, if the wombe do not cast out the excrements of it selfe, as it ought to do, then cast into the belly this easie clister. ℞. Mallowes, leaues of purple Violets, Mercurie, Spinage, of both the garden Endiues, ana. M. j. whole Barley, ℥ j. Seeth these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed: then take of the iuyce of that decoction, ℔ j. *Casia fistula* newly drawne, ℥ j. ß. of the oyles of Cammomill and Violers, ana. ʒ j. ß. fresh Butter, ℥ ß. common Salt, ʒ j. and commixe them all, to make a clister. After the body is emptied, you must apply outwardly foments that do heat and mitigate paine, such as *Sacculi* be, which are made of the floures of Cammomill, Dill, Melilot, *Tapsus barbatus*, seed of Flaxe, Fenugreek, *Milium*, & Bran mixed together, the decoctions of the herbs aforesaid being put into bladders, or some other deuices. Also you may wel apply a great soft Sponge being dipt in the aforesaid decoctions, & applied to the griefe warme. You must couer the foments with clothes, lest their strength do vanish away quickly. Also take an Apple, take out the core of it, &

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Clyster.

Sacculi.

fill the hole with *Olibanum*, and rost it till it be soft: then take off the skinne of the Apple, and mixe the soft of the Apple and the *Olibanum* together, and let the patient make boles of it, and swallow it all at once, which doth remoue the paine very much. This plaister also is good for this purpose: ℞. floures of Cammomil, *Tapsus barbatus*, & Dil, ana. M. ß. Lineseed, Fenugreeke, ana. ℥. iij. Annise seed, ℥. j. Barley meale, M. ß. bray them, & put thē in water, till they be as thicke as Hony: after put to oyles of Dill and Cammomill, ana. ℥. j. ß. boile thē againe, and adde to it the yolkes of two Egs, of Saffron, ℈. j. and make an emplaister.

Emplastrum.

Cucurbitulæ. After the seuenth day, if the paine do continue still after one sort, fasten a cupping glasse to the side, and scarifie the skinne: for a manifest commodity doth ensue to them that haue the pleurisie, by applying of cupping glasses. The cuts of the scarified places must be strewed with Salt, if the patient can abide it; if not, lay vpon it a linnen cloth dipped in oyle and sprinkled with Salt. The next day after the scarifying is done, it is good to fasten on a cupping glasse againe, that the mattery bloud may be drawne out of the little wounds. This second extraction is better then the first: for at the second time the bloud is not drawne away, but the matter. Also the Phisition may not neglect to minister to the sicke such medicines as are good to make the fleame come vp easily, as is, *Diapenidion*, *Diatragacanthes*, conserues of Violets, *Trochisci pectorales*, putting to them other Loches rehearsed before in the chap. of the Cough. Outwardly you must apply medicines that haue vertue to discusse, as is, Fenugreek, Dil, Melilot, Hysope, and such like. And if there do appeare tokēs that it wil rot, & turne into matter, you must further it with this or the like ointment: ℞. oyles of Cammomill, of sweet Almonds, and of Lillies, ana. ℥. iij. Butter without Salt, Hens grease, ana. ℥ ij. the muscilage of Fenugreeke, Lineseed, and the rootes of *Althæa* ana. ℥. j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The botch being broke, you must minister those things that do cleanse and purifie matter and filth, as is, *Aqua mellis* or decoction of Barley, or Sugar roset. The filth being cleansed, you may minister glutinatiue medicines, which shall be sufficiently declared in the chapter of the Ptisicke afterward.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. IX.

Of the inflammation of the lungs.

Causa. PEeripneumonia is an inflammation of the lungs with a sharp feuer. This disease for the most part is caused of strong distillations falling to the lungs, or else of the Squinancie, or the *Asthma*, or the Pleurisie, or of other diseases. Also sometime onely inflammation is the cause of this disease. They which haue this euill, haue difficult breathing, the lungs lying vpon the heart doth bring choking, they haue a sharpe and burning feuer, and also fulnesse and stretching out of the breast without paine. But if the skinnes which be ioyned all the length of the breast within be inflammate, then they feele paine at the creast. All the face, and the aggrieued place lookered, the nose is crooked in the top, the veines of the temples do beate, the eyes do swell, the tongue is drie, the appetite is lost, the breath is hote, they couet cold water, and rather cold aire, they haue a drie cough, it is frothy and cholericke, or bloudy and red, which be the worst tokens. If the sicke shall die, he shall watch much and haue

Signa.

haue fearfull short sleepes, the hands and feete shall be cold, the nailes shall be crooked and swart, and he shal die the fourth or the seuenth day at the furthest. But if the sicke shall recouer, there will follow bleeding abundantly, or perturbation of the wombe, by passing forth of many cholerick and froathy humors: and sometime the inflammation is changed into matter, and the matter being filthy, is diuen out either with egestion or with the vrine, and the sicke is deliuered from al the griefe by and by. And if it do flow into the lungs, and that abundantly, or do choke him, then it is changed into a Ptisicke. For their diet you must minister to them soupings made of the iuyce of Prisan, mixed with Honey, Origan, or Hysope. They haue more need of extenuatiue meates then those that haue the pleurisie. Also *Alica*, or *Aqua mulsa* is good for them. Let them drinke little, for moistnes hurteth the lungs. You may minister for preseruing of strength (specially if choking constraineth you) *mulsa* alone, and with Pine nuts, or *mulsa* wherein Hysope is sodden, the powder of dry *Ireos* to *aqua mulsa* is good. Generally the diet of those that haue *Peripneumonia*, must in a manner be the same which the Pleurisie should haue, specially if they begin to recouer For the cure, you must eschue letting of bloud in such as haue fallen to this euill out of other diseases, especially if they haue bene long in this case, or if they were let bloud before. You must mollifie the bellie with clisters, if he be costiue, or apply cupping glasses to the breast and sides, if nothing do let it, and that great boxings and many, the skin being cut and scarified. But if the *Peripneumonia* began first without any other disease going before, then let him bloud, if strength and other things will suffer it; you must cut the inner veine of the arme; and if strength will suffer it, draw bloud on both the armes, and first but a little, in no case vntill his heart faile, so that some strength may be kept for the bloudletting of the next arme. But if any thing doth forbid bloudletting, you must fasten cupping glasses to the whole brest, and the sides, and you must get out as much bloud as strength in them will suffer. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with sharpe clisters, made of the decoctions of Hysope *Ireos* and Rew, putting to i the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, *Sal gemme*, & other things necessary for such clisters. After this you must labour and see, that the breast and the lungs be purged by much spitting, which must be made swift and easie. For the which purpose you must vse those Ecligmaes, ointments, and emplaisters, which are declared before in the chapter against the Pleurisie, excepting that in this case you must minister the most strong things, and those that haue much strength and vertue in extenuating. Therefore you must minister *loch è scylla*, *loch è pulmone vulpis*, the decoction of the roote of *Ireos* and *Enula*. And you must make a cerote of oile of Rew & *Nardinũ*, putting to it the marrow of a Hart, of *Ireos*, Hysope, and Horehound beaten very fine and commixed with Venice turpentine, and lay it all ouer the breast, and the sides.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

CHAP. X.

Of spitting of bloud.

SPitting of bloud is caused many times of an outward minifest cause, as of falling from a high place, or a stroke giuen to one outwardly, or with vehement striking, or leaping, or if any heauie things haue fallen vpon the breast,

Causæ externæ.

or else with great crying, or immoderate cold: for cold (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth) breaketh veines. Also spitting of bloud may be caused through heate.

Interna. Also sometime spitting of bloud is caused of inward and secret causes, as fulnesse and abundance of naughtie bloud, gnawing asunder the veines and bursting open the heads of them. The gnawing asunder of those veines, is caused of sharpe humors, either falling from the head to the lungs, or else engendred in the lungs it selfe. Moreouer the bloud that is spit out, sometime cometh from the breast and the lungs, or from the *Trachæa arteria*, and sometime from other places of the mouth, or gummes, or the iawes, or from the stomack, vnto the which doth fall bloud out of the veines and members adioyning, that is to say, from the liuer and the spleene. The outward causes are knowne thus:

Signa. if the spitting of bloud be caused of abundance of bloud, then the bloud commeth out gushing all at once, and after it is out, the sicke is better & lighter. But if it be caused through bursting of the mouths of the veines, then hote perturbations haue gone before it, as though the patient had vsed many hote baths, & had dwelt in a hote region, vsing hote diet in hotee season. If spitting of bloud be caused through gnawing and eating asunder the veines, then the bloud is not spitted forth all on a heape, but by little and little with the cough; and they are alwaies worse. Also if the bloud which is spitted, be frothy and palish, and cometh forth now and then with the cough without any paine, it is a sure token, that the bloud cometh out of the lungs. If flegmaticke bloud be spitted out with easie coughings and reaching, then the bloud cometh from the *Trachæa arteria*. If bloud be spitted forth being black & clodded together, hauing also the cough and paine in the agrieued place, then it is a token that it commeth from the breast. For the diet, let him vse meates which haue a moderate

Victus ratio. adstriction, as be rice, hulled wheate called *Alica*, & such other like, mixing with them the iuyces of Pomgranates or Peares. For flesh, let him eate wild doues, turtles, and partriches, if they be boiled with veriuice, or iuice of soure grapes, or with Sumach. Also he must vse Quinces, Peares, restrictiue Apples, Medlars and Mulberies, and such like rehearsed before in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. He must drinke thicke red wine, or in stead of it, water wherein

Curatio. steele is quenched. He must eschue great noises, often speaking, all mouing of the body, and anger. As for the cure, it differeth according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the bloud come out of the head, it needeth but a simple and easie cure: for restrictiue things applied cold to the palate of the mouth by collutions and gargarises, do performe the cure. What things they be, you may seek in the beginning of this second booke, the first chap. But if there do flow much

Venæ sectio. bloud from the head, then you must let him bloud on some veine. Those which spit bloud through distillation, you must by and by in the beginning let them bloud on some veine, vnlesse a sharpe humour doth distill vehemently. Also afterward minister a sharpe clyster, and emptie the wombe. Also rub the hands, the armes, and the legs, very much with a medicine that will heate and extenuate and bind the outward parts. After that, if the disease endure longer, shaue the head, and apply thereto a medicine which hath vertue to dry and discusse, as is that which is made of the dung of wilde doues, and after three houres space, bring them into a bath, so that the head be annointed with no fat thing.

After-

Afterward couer them meanly, and nourish them with soure suppings. When they go to sleepe, minister to them *Theriaca*. The next day all the whole body (the head being excepted onely) being rubbed, keepe him in quiet, and againe at night minister to him *Theriaca*. And if through these the distillation be not stopped, then the third day in the morning minister a little honey sodden, and rub all the body, and suffer him to rest. The fourth day, after the taking of the *Theriaca*, minister againe much heny, and lay to the head a medicine of doues dung. And if the euill do endure longer, fasten a cupping glasse to the hinder part of the head. Last of all, minister those things which are able to purge the humours that are flowne into the lungs. But if it be a very sharpe humour which distilleth out of the head, you must beware of bloudletting, & you must rather vse purgations, and you must vse the nourishments and remedies hereafter declared, and also before in the chapter against distillations. They which do spit bloud coming from the lungs, by reason of breaking of some veines in it, or by bursting open of their heads, those you must first of all charge, that they do not breath much and make a noise, and that they speake but little, and in a manner not at all. Let them sit in open aire, hauing a stedfast bed, and of a good height. For such you must by and by cut the inner veine of the arme: and you must draw bloud twise or thrise a little at once, for such haue no need of much bloudletting. Also for the same purpose, that is to say, that the bloud may be drawne another way, you must rub the extremities, and vse to binde them hard with broad linnen clothes. These so done you must minister to him a drinke made of vineger and water infused and warmed, and let him drinke it, so that if any clod of bloud do cleaue on the flesh, it may (being thereby dissolued) be cast out; neither doth any thing let, but that you may minister this potion twise or thrise in three houres. After those you may minister both within the body and without, medicines which be restrictiue, and haue power to stop the pores. For things taken outwardly, it profiteth to eate Purslaine, albeit that his iuyce drunken is of more effect; the iuyce of Knotgrasse, sharpe Grapes, decoction of Sumach, Gals, the shels of Acornes, the root of Bramble, *Balaustia*, seed of Sorrell, the rootes of Horsetaile and such like, which are declared in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. But these are better and of more effect, then the aforesaid things, that is to say, *terra lemnia* beaten into very fine powder and ministred with the iuyce of Pomgranates, or of Knotgrasse, or *Lapis hæmatitis*, at once, ℈.j. in the like iuyce. Among compounds you must vse this *lohoch*: ℞. of old cõserues of Roses, of *Robderibes*, ana. ʒ j. of *Diatragacãthum frigidum*, & *Diacotoneon simplex* ana. ʒ.ß of the powders of Corall, *Lapis hæmatitis* and *terra lemnia*, ana. ℈.ij. Bole armoniack, ʒ.j. Dragons bloud, ʒ.ß. Pomgranat floures, ʒ j Frankensence, the root of *Consolida maior*, ana. ʒ.j ß. sirupe of Mirtles, as much as is sufficiẽt to commixe them, & make an *Ecligma*. Afterward you must sprinkle the breast outwardly with restrictiue wine, and the oyles of Roses, Quinces & Mirtles. But if there be much eruption of bloud (especially being sommer) and the spitting thereof coming without a cough, and the sicke not being weake, but strong and fleshy; then you may take vineger for wine, & apply it to with sponges. It is good to put to the aforesaid oiles, Bole armoniacke, *Terra lemnia*, Corall, and such like, and to make an ointment

Cucurbitulæ.

Cure of spitting of bloud from the lungs

Potio.

Emplastica.

Ecligma.

thereof with Waxe. Also apply thereunto a soft plaister made of Dates, *Acatia*, the roote of *Consolida maior*, the barks of Pomgranats, and the meale of Lentils. Also a cerote made of the meate of Pomgranats, Frankensence, red Corall, *Balaustia*. Bole armoniack, *Terra lemnia*, and such like, is of good effect. But you must specially take heed, that by and by after the rupture of the vessels it may grow together again, before it take inflammation: for if there come inflammation before it be growne together, there is but litle hope of the conglutination of the wombe: for it keepeth it stretched out many daies, and you must wash away as well the matter, as the watery bloud out of the vlcer, after that the inflammation is gone. But here the Reader must be admonished, that he take heed that he do not apply outwardly against that place where the bloud runneth out, neither restrictiue things, nor cold things without restriction: vnlesse the matter be first turned another way, and drawne from that place: for else it would driue the bloud inward, and stop the veines full that be within. Therfore first alwaies you must draw the bloud to the contrary part, and after that apply restrictiue things outwardly. Those which spit bloud through erosion & gnawing of sharpe humours, you must first of all minister those things vnto them which haue vertue to purge sharpe humous distilling into the lungs, such as be spoken of before in the chapter of distillation. After that, minister those things which can alter and make thicke the thinne and sharpe humours, and so haue vertue to stop the distillatiõ, as is sirupe of Violets, Roses, Mirtles, Hyromel, *Diacydoniorum*, and such like. For the same purpose sometime minister sirupes of Poppy and other somnoriferous medicines. The distillation being ceasled, you must restore the gnawne parts with meates of good iuyce, & with medicines that do ingender flesh. Moreouer they which vomit bloud must vse the same diet and cure which is before rehearsed, that is, if the bloud flow from the liuer, cut the veine on the arme: but if the bloud be caried from the splene into the belly, cut the veine on the left hand, which is betweene the litle finger and the ring finger, and minister to them restrictiue meates & drinkes, adding this to the cure, that they do not take meate and drinke often: for they may easily be cured, if the remedies which be receiued in, be applied to those parts that shed bloud. And for bloud congealed in the stomacke like a billocke, let him drink creame, and especially of a Hart, or let it be auoided with Sauory mixed with vineger or with *Aloes*. Those which spit bloud from the palate of their mouth, they must gargarise with restrictiue things, and apply to the forehead, and to the head those things which are applied vnto the nose when it bleedeth. Furthermore to conclude, after that all things be done, and that the fluxe of bloud is stopped, then the strength must be cherished and restored againe: and specially he must beware of the often vsing of bathes, of drinking of wine, of wrath, and of Venus.

Note.

Cure of spitting of bloud caused of sharp humors.

Cure of vomiting bloud.

CHAP. XI.

Of spitting of matter.

EMpyema in Greeke, signifieth a mattery spitting: In Latin it is called *Suppuratio*. It is caused when an impostume or botch (being in the vpper skinne which girdeth the ribs inwardly, or else in some other vpper skinne of the

Cause.

the breſt) is broken all at once, & ſhed & powred into the empty place of the breaſt, which is betweene the lungs and the vpper skin that girdeth in the ribs. It is cauſed ſomtime throgh burſting out of bloud (an vlcer not being brought to his ſcar, and perfect ſhutting vp.) Alſo ſometime through fluxe of the head, and other vpper parts, falling thither, which is wont often to change into the Squinancy. The ſignes be theſe, heauineſſe is felt in the bottome of the breaſt, *Signa.* a ſtrong cough and a drie without paine, and alſo ſometime with moiſtneſſe, whereby they ſeeme to be eaſed. In the beginning there chanceth to them feauers faint, inordinate and hard to be iudged When the impoſtume draweth neare to a rupture, then they haue a feauer more vehement with quaking: and they are troubled in their ſpeech. Being broken, there appeareth ſomewhat to flow into the breaſts bottome, according to the often changing of their lying, and ſpecially when they change lying from one ſide to another, then ſurely the multitude of matter is euident, and oftentimes a certaine noiſe of the flowing may perfectly be heard when they turne them. Alſo the matter that cometh out is ſometimes cleare, ſometimes thicke and dreggy. Some impoſtumes do burſt out vpward, that is, vnto the voide place of the breaſt, and theſe be moſt perillous. Some impoſtumes do flow out downeward vnto the panch, and the bowels, and alſo the bladder. They alwaies labour of the feauer hecticke, vntill all things be brought out vpward. Thoſe that be vexed *Victus ratio.* with this diſeaſe of ſpitting of matter, let them remaine in a drie aire, let them vſe meates of good iuice, eaſie to digeſt, broths of cockes, the fleſh of hens, chickens, birds of mountaines. Alſo vſe decoctions and broths of cicers, with herbes (as is) Hyſope, and Parcely. Let his drinke be *aqua mulſa*, and thin white wine. For the cure in this diſeaſe, except diligent ſpeed be made by and by, the *Curatio.* gathering together of matter cauſeth the Ptiſicke, the lungs drawing vlceration. Therefore firſt you muſt helpe the concoction of the impoſtume with foments, by ſponges or bladders, with cataplaſmes or emplaſters, made of the meales of Barly, Fenugreeke & Lineſeed, of Figs, Doues dung, Mallowes, *Althæa*, and a little Roſin Alſo you muſt apply to it Cerots, made of butter, *Ireos*, Laurel berries, Rew & other things which can ripe and diſſolue the impoſtume, whereof thou ſhalt finde many in the chapter of *Aſthma* before: and if the euill be not diſſolued, you muſt apply to it, things that will breake the botch. The breaking of the botch is procured by lying on the whole ſide, eating of ſalt meats, & theſe pils giuen vnto him when he intendeth to ſleep: ℞. of the powder of *Hierapicra Galeni*, ℥ j. of the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ℈ j. with the iuyce of Wormwood as much as is ſufficient to commixe them, and make pils, wherof let him hold one at once in his mouth. By this meanes it ſhall come to paſſe, that the ſicke ſhall couet to ſpit often, and ſo by ouermuch ſpitting the impoſtume may breake. The rupture being made you muſt take diligent heed, whither the matter runneth, and you muſt helpe his auoiding: for if it creepe into the belly, you muſt miniſter moſt of all mollifications. If it fall to the bladder, you muſt miniſter moſt thoſe things which prouoke vrine. If the matter come out by a cough, then nothing is more meet to be miniſtred then ptiſan, mixed with good hony. Alſo abſterſiue & ſcouring things do profite, which are partly declared in the chapter againſt the Pleuriſie, and part of them ſhall be ſpoken

of in the next chapter. But you maycommodiouſly commixe with their meat, thoſe things which prouoke vrine, howſoeuer the matter intendeth to flow. As for the purging & driuing out of the matter, *Aqua mulſa* decoct with *Ireos* and much licorice is maruellous profitable. Moreouer the decoctiõ of Hyſope, *Ireos*, Horehound and ſuch like is good, whereof you may ſeeke more in the chapter of *Aſthma*. The reſt that ſeemeth to be neceſſary for the cure of this diſeaſe, ſhall be ſpoken of in the next chapter.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Ptiſicke.

Cauſe.

PTHISIS, in Greek, *Tabes* in Latine, it is properly an exulceration of the lungs till there followeth ſpitting of bloud withall. It is cauſed for the moſt part through a ſharpe and gnawing humour, flowing from the head into the lungs. Alſo it is cauſed through the bloud and matter that remaineth after the burſting out of it in them that haue the pleuriſie, the *Perepneumonia*, or *Empiema*. They which labor of this diſeaſe, are known by waſting of the whole body and the fleſh. Alſo the noſthrils be ſharpe, their temples be ſhidden downe, their eies be hollow, and their ſhoulders ſticke out like birds wings. Moreouer they cough, and be vexed with the feuer hecticke, they breath difficultly, their cheeke bals waxe ſwart, their nailes do crooke and ſeeme pale. Alſo the euill ouercomming, the bellie is troubled, and thirſt doth vexe them more, their haire doth ſhedde, and that which they do ſpitte out, is of a vehement ſtinking ſauour. As for vlcers of the lungs, they are very hard to be cured, becauſe they cannot be purged and cleanſed without the cough. and in them that cough, the vlcer is broken, & ſo the euill returneth, as it were by a certaine circuit. Alſo the lungs among the other inward members, becauſe of reſpiration and breathing, are alway in mouing, and alſo are rent with coughing. But the vlcers which are to be healed, would require quiet and reſt. Moreouer the ſtrength of medicins cannot come to the vlcers, before it be altered in the ſtomacke, in the body, and in the liuer, Neuertheleſſe although the cauſes before rehearſed, make the cure to ſeeme hard, yet we may go about to cure that vlceration. Therefore in the beginning you muſt preſcribe to thoſe that be ptiſicke, a conuenient diet, after this ſort. Let them dwell in a dry aire, temperate between heat and coldnes; let their meate be Ptiſan, Almond milk, rere egs, fleſh of the birds of mountaines, of Partrich, of Pheſants, of Owſils, of blacke birds, of Hens, of Capons, of Calues, of ſucking Kiddes. Alſo ſcaly fiſhes in ſtony waters, Crabs of the freſh riuer. But among all meates, milke is beſt for them that be ptiſick, ſpecially womans milke, after that Aſſes milk, & Goats milk, which would be ſucked out of the dugges, if it might be, or let it be drunke by and by after the milking of it while it is hote. But you muſt beware, that they take no meate by and by after their milke, and ſpecially no wine, for then it would be corrupted with it in the ſtomacke. But if they be very much feuerous, ſpecially of a rotten feuer, then it is not good to take milke. Among fruites, it is good to eate Raiſins, ſweet Almonds, Pine nuttes, Figs, Dates, Piſtax. Let them eſchue exerciſes and mouings that be vehement. It is not vnprofitable to walke eaſily before meate, and after meate they muſt altogether reſt; let them vſe to ſleepe

Signa.

Looke Hippocrates in his Aphoriſme 5. the 14. and the 13. & the 11.

The cauſes why the cure is hard.

Victus ratio.

On

on nights meanly: let them eschue wrath and sadnesse, vnmeasurable watching, hunger, thirst, lecherie, hot houses, and whatsoeuer may emptie the body. Let his drinke be but small and thin, or if his feuer be vehement, let him drinke water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden, or the drinke that is called *Hippocras*, whose making is declared in the first booke, in the chapter against the Palsey. If the euill be caused through the flowing of a sharpe humor out of the head, you must begin the cure by remouing of the distillation, which we haue taught before in his proper chapter. Therefore now we will shew the exulceration of the lungs, how it is to be cured. And first for the cure thereof we must minister those things which haue an absterstue and scouring vertue, and that which will cause that the matter may easily be brought vpward: for the which purpose *Hydromel* is specially good, & also decoction of Barley with Sugar and hony, also decoction of *Ireos*, Figs, Maidenhaire, Hysope, Horehound and Licorice If there come a feuer, you may cõmixe with the aforesaid things, the foure great cold seedes. Outwardly you must apply emplaisters, and cataplasmes, made of Lineseed, Fenugreeke, and such like declared in the last chapter *de Empiemate*. Also for the same purpose you may seeke many remedies in the chap. against the *Asthma* The lungs being cleansed and purged from matter, you must minister those medicines which will glutinate and heale vp the vlcer. For this purpose conserue of Roses is commended almost of all Phisitions, for this hath not only the vertue to glutinate, but also to cleanse and scoure: but the ñewer it is, the more it scoureth: & the older it is, the more it glutinateth. Also these are maruellous good, Bole armoniack, Dragõs bloud, Amber, Corall, Purslaine seed, and such like which haue vertue to scoure and ioyne together. Also these things are good, *Loch de pulmone vulpis, loch è pino*, cõserues of *Consolida maior*, & Maidenhaire. Therefore of these you must make this compound medicine: ℞. conserues of *Consolida maior*, & of Maidenhaire, ana. ℥ ß. conserues of Roses, ℥ j *Loch è pulmone vulpis*, ʒ. j. ß. *Loch è pino*, ʒ. ij. powder of *Diatragacanthũ frigidũ* ʒ iij Bole armoniack, ʒ. j. ß. sirupe of Poppy as much as will suffice to commixe it, and make a loch. Also this powder daily ministred causeth much ease: ℞. of the seeds of white Poppy, ʒ. ß. gumme Arabicke, *Amylum*, and gum Tragacant, ana. ʒ j ß. seeds of Cucumbers, Citrons, Gourds, Melons, Quinces, ana. ʒ iij, burnt Iuory, iuice of Licorice, ana. ʒ. j. ß. *Penidies*, as much in weight as all the rest, & make a powder, of the which minister daily euery morning, ʒ. ij with sirupe of Poppy or Roses. At that time also that the vlcer is closed, you must annoint the breast without, with oyle of Quinces, Mirtels or Roses, adding therto sometime Sumach, *Hipocistidis*, Pomgranat rinds, *Acatia*, Galles, and such like. In the end the bodie being extenuate and wasted, it is good to restore it with a conuenient diet, vsing all those meats which be of good iuyce, easie to digest, and nourish much, at which time also you may minister this medicine ℞. of the pulpe of a Capon, ℥ j cockes stones, Pine nuts, Pistax, sweete Almonds, ana. ℥ ß of the powder of the *Antidoti de gemmis*, ʒ ß. powder of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diamphon*, & *Aromaticum rosarum*, ana. ℈. j. white Sanders and Cinnamon, ana. ʒ. ß. Maces, ℈ j. white Sugar of the fineest, ℔. j. dissolue the Sugar in water of Buglosse, and Roses, and make lozenges, or an electuary, of the which minister euery day.

Curatio.

Ecligma.

Puluis.

Morsuli refectorij.

CHAP. XIII.

Of panting of the heart.

P*Alpitatio & tremor cordis* in Latine, is in English panting and trembling of the heart; it is a corrupt motion of the heart, or a stretching out of it against nature. The new sort of Phisitions do wrongfully call it *Cardiaca*. It is caused of all such things as do trouble and affect the heart aboue nature, as is, euery distemper, or the multitude of an humour, contained in the outward skin that goeth about the heart, or else of swelling contrary to nature, and such like. The disease is easily knowne, by the words of the patient, who doth easily feele the beating and panting: and also you may know it by the pulse. For in a hote distemper there cometh a feuer, & the pulse is swift and great; in a cold distemper the contrary. If plenty of an humor contained in the vpper skin of the heart do cause beating thereof, then the pulse is soft and feeble. The diet must be ordained diuersly according to the diuersity of causes: for in a hot distemper of the heart, the aire ought to be meanely cold, but in a cold distemper it ought to be meanly warme. But vniuersally whatsoeuer the cause be, you must eschue any thing that doth trouble or resolue the vitals spirits, as be ouermuch heat, anger, hunger, watching, lecherie, vnmeasurable cold, meate of euill iuyce. If abundance of any humour contained in the vpper skin that goeth about the heart do ingender panting of the heart let their whole diet be extenuatiue: let their drinke in a hot distemper be thinne and small, or a iulep of Violets or Roses, or decoction of Buglosse. In a cold distemper they may drinke pure wine, or other strong drinke. Those that be vexed with beating of the heart caused of cold distemper, they must haue remedy by cold medicins, which can correct the hot distemper, and adde strength to the heart: as these be among simples, Roses, Violets, floures of water Lillies, Sanders, Corall, Camphire, and such like. Among compounds be these, *Diamargariton frigidũ*, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, conserues of Roses, of Violets, of Buglosse, & their plants, iuices & sirupes. Therefore of the aforesaid things there may be made potions, electuaries, and lozenges as you thinke good. Outwardly appoint ointments and emplaisters, specially Epithemes, *Sacculi*, and other like, whatsoeuer is able to alter the hote distemper of the liuer. And first among ointments, this is good: ℞. the oyles of Roses, Violets, and *Nimphea*, ana. ℥. ij. of red Corall, red Sanders, and red Roses, ana. ℈ j. Camphire, gr ij white Waxe as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the hart & the backe bone. Among Epithemes let this especially be laid to the hart: ℞. the waters of Roses, Sorrell, and Buglosse, ana. ℥. iij. water of Balme, ℥ j powder of the cordial medicine, ℥. j. red Sanders, red Corall, ana. ℥ ß. Puslain. gr. iij. Saffron gr. iiij. commixe all together and make an Epitheme Also among the sorts of dry bags this is best. ℞. floures of Buglosse, Violets, red Roses, ana. M ß. all the Sanders, of ech. ℥. j. red Corall and white, of each, ℥ j. ß of Pearls, ℈. j. being first powdred, put them in silke and make a *Sacculus*. But those that be agrieued with a cold distemper of the heart, to such among simple medicines, these be profitable (that is) Amber, Musk, Saffron, wood of Aloes, *Storax*, Cloues, Maces, Zedoary, Balmes, and such like: among compounds these are good: the electuary *Plirisarcoticon*,

Diamber,

Diamber, Dianthos, Aromaticum rosarum, and such like, of the which may be made kinds of medicines, like as we did against hote distemper of the heart. For ointments may be made after this sort: ℞. the oiles of Lillies, of Spike, and of Saffron, ana. ℥.ij.ß. *Gallia moschata,* Cloues, ana. ℈.j. wood of Aloes, ℈. ß. Maces, ℈ j. Saffron, gr.iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you may make this Epitheme thus: ℞. waters of Balme, Mariorã, Bugloſſe, ana. ℥.iiij. powders of the electuaries, *Diamber & Diamoschæ,* ana. ℥.ß. Maces, wood of Aloes, ana. ℈.j. Amber, gr.j. of the best wine, ℥.j. commixe them together, and make an Epitheme. An example of *Sacculus* is thus, ℞. floures of Balme, and Bugloſſe, ana. M.j.ß. chosen Cinamon, Cloues, Maces, ana. ℥.j. wood of Aloes, ℈.j. barke of the Citrine Apple, ℥.j.ß. Saffron, ℈ j. Amber, gr.j. Bray all together, and make a *Sacculus* of silke to lay to the heart, And if there be panting of the hart ingendred through some humor contained in the vpper skin that compasseth the heart, it must be cured (as Galen witnesseth) with that which will extenuate, and by cutting of a veine in the arme. Therefore you must cut the inner veine of the arme, or the middle veine. And afterward one must minister and apply as well inwardly as outwardly, medicines that haue vertue to extenuate and strengthen the heart, by applying of ointments, and Epithemes, and *Sacculi,* and such like. Of the which things to make priuate examples, we thinke it in vaine, seeing it is easie to any man, by examples now declared here and in other places, to make medicines for this purpose of whatsoeuer sort he will.

Vnguentum.

Epithema.

Sacculus.

Cure of panting of the heart caused of an humor.

CHAP. XIIII.
Of Sounding.

S*Incope* is a swift failing of the strength (as Galen saith:) it is caused through much excretion and auoiding of bloud, or through vnmeasurable emptying of the belly or vehement mouing, or through great paine, or much and often washings. Also through abundant sweats, and all other immoderate vacuations: also of feare, dread, and such like perturbations of the minde. Moreouer through abounding of crude and raw humors, through great inflammation or through vicious and thinne humors, or else by taking breath in a stinking aire. The *Sincope* is knowne by these tokens, the pulse is rare and obscure, the extreme parts, as the hands and feete be cold, sweate about the face, the taking away of the brightnes of the skin that is in it, & as it were a palsey of the whole body. Moreouer of these there cometh desperation, vexation of the mind, and shaking of the body. And moreouer there chanceth sometime with the sounding of the heart, a vice (that is) when the heart is vehemently distempered. Also sometime it chanceth to the stomacke, (that is) when humours abounding, or heaped together, or crude, either else sharpe and gnawing, be in it: that kind of *Sincope* is called *Stomachica.* They which fall in a sound through plentie of raw humors contained in the mouth of the stomacke, in such the sides are inflate and puffed vp, and the whole body seemeth to be of greater bignesse then it should naturally be: also their colour changeth whiter, then it was wont to be: and to conclude, their body is like to them that haue the Dropsie. Also to many their colour waxeth swarter and blacker, like lead, but the pul-

Causæ.

Signa.

Sincope cordis.

Sincope stomachica.

ſes of the ſinewes be leaſt of all other, moreouer they be obſcure and vnequall. Thoſe which are vexed with ſounding through abundance of ſharpe humours, they feele continually pulling, twitching and gnawing in the mouth of the ſtomacke. They which through thin vices (which do ſwiftly exhalate & flie vp) do ſuffer ſounding, in them their face appeareth by and by as though it were dead: their noſe is ſharpe, their eyes be hollow, and ſuch like. The other cauſes of *Syncope* are knowne by the talke of them that ſtand by without any great buſineſſe. It is eaſie to know that the cure muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of the cauſes. If ſounding do inuade one through excretion and auoiding of bloud, or through any other vnmeaſurable or ſudden emptying, you muſt ſprinkle their face with cold things, or with Roſe water, which hath a maruellous good effect in this caſe. The extreme parts of the body muſt be bound vehemently with bands, and muſt be rubbed a little with ſharpe linnen clothes. If the emptying be vpward, you muſt rubbe the legges: if it be downeward, rubbe and bind the hands. Alſo cupping glaſſes are to be faſtned lightly, diuerſely, according to the places where the euacuations, or where the bloud, burſteth out. Moreouer the mouth muſt be opened, by putting in your finger, or a wedge, or ſome other thing: but the paſſage of hearing, and of the noſethrils would be thruſt together, that the aire that is breathed in, might ſtirre and comfort the ſpirits. Alſo it is good by and by for to comfort the ſpirits with ſundrie odoraments: for as Hippocrates ſaith in his booke *de Alimentis*, there is nothing that calleth the ſtrength againe ſooner then odours. Therefore it is good to apply to the noſe of the ſicke, chickens roſted & parted aſunder in the middeſt. Alſo Roſes, Violets, Quinces, Citrons, and ſuch like be good. You muſt miniſter wine to him that is thinne, and alaied. Let the aire of the chamber be cold, but let not the chāber be very full of light: let their counter points be taken away that lie vpon them, and let the couerings wherewith they be couered be ſoft; & ſtrew the floores with leaues of Mirtles, Vines, Okes, Briers, & Roſes themſelues, and ſprinkle it with water. In vnmeaſurable ſweats annoint the ſweating parts with oyle of Mirtles, Roſes and Quinces: but ſpecially the necke, the breaſt, the places vnder the arme holes, and the ſhare. For this purpoſe alſo it is good to annoint with *Amylum*, and powders of Frankenſence, mixed with the white of an egge, & other reſtrictiue medicines. Alſo you muſt hold to his noſe diuerſe odoraments, as Roſes, Sanders, Quinces, floures of water Lillies, & Camphir: but you may not then bind the extreme parts of the body. If ſounding be cauſed through paine, you muſt diligently enquire the cauſe: for if it come of an outward cauſe, the ceaſſing of the paine cureth the ſoūding. But if the paine be cauſed of no outward cauſe, you muſt find out ſome inward cauſe which cauſeth paine. If fulneſſe with retching & ſtretching out do cauſe the paine, by & by, if ſtrength will ſuffer it, let him bloud on the veine that is nigheſt to the aggrieued part; but if ſtrength be feeble, then you muſt only pull it backe, or you muſt driue it vpward, or downeward, or both waies, or vſe frictions. But whereas the paine is cauſed of vicious humours, you muſt rather purge it. If both the aforeſaid cauſes come together, then you muſt vſe euacuations both waies: but bloudleting muſt firſt be vſed before any of them. Afterward if the corrupt humours be faſtened, & do ſticke faſt in ſome onely place, you

Cure of ſounding through vnmeaſurable emptying.

Stoppers of great ſweats.

Cure of ſounding cauſed of paine.

you must begin your cure with dissoluing and discussiue medicines. As for curing of other paines, they may be sought in their owne proper chapters, and especially in the chapter against the Cholicke. Those which do sound through great sorrow, feare, & other perturbations of the minde, they are fully cured by vsing of their contraries. Neither let passe to minister vnto them that do sound for great sorow, odoriferous things, and other things which being taken inwardly may cõfort the spirits. They which be troubled with sounding through plenty of crude humors, they may neither suffer letting of bloud nor purging. Therefore you must cure such by frictions. And you must by and by in the beginning of the euill begin, and you must rub the legs first from the vpper part, and so downeward with linner clothes, not very soft, but somewhat sharpe: afterward likewise the armes from the shoulders to the fingers. And when all the arteries & veines be sufficiently heat, & that ye doubt that some wearinesse will come to the senses through ouermuch rubbing, you must vse oyle solutiue and loosing, as is oyle of Dill, and Cammomill: and you must beware especially of restrictiue things. And when you haue annointed the parts of the bodie, and rubbed them well, then you must come to the backe, & that you must likewise first rub with a linnen cloth, and then with oyle: from that you must go againe to the legs, and then to the armes, & so againe to the backe, and so you must do all, and that in a bright chamber without moisture, whose aire must be temperate. Moreouer *Mulsa*, wherein Hisope is sodden is most meet for them: and you must beware that you minister not to them, neither meate nor broths, nor water, nor to suffer him to drinke liberally, but onely *Mulsa* the three first daies, and to rub him by course continually, granting him onely but time to sleepe, which must be in a meane. But if their pulse be very small and feeble, or also besides that, wonderfully vnequal, you may know that there is extreme perill: but yet you must do as is taught before, and go about none other thing. But if the pulse be indifferently strong and great, and be not cut off, nor thrust together, then you must consider the state of the belly, & if it auoid not ordure sufficiently of it selfe, you may boldly poure in somewhat beneath. For it chanceth after the taking of *Aqua mulsa*, that the superfluities which are wont to be gathered in the principall veines (that is) they which be about the liuer, & the bowell which ioyneth with the midrife vnto the backe, by that thing they are well cast out. And if a heape of superfluities do violently prouoke the bellly aboue reason, first you must seeth your *Mulsa* more higher, for so it doth make the bellie lesse soluble, and it nourisheth more. After this, if the superfluities do descend more largely, the belly may not be stopped so, but you must minister for *Aqua mulsa* the iuice of Ptisan. And if they continue stil to flow, nourish him with soupings of *Alica*, taking heed to the working of the pulses in the meane season: for sometime they are changed to imbecility, or vnequalnesse, or smalnesse. At which time it is good to minister bread infused in wine, & that, if neither the bellie nor the liuer be troubled with an impostume, for if they be vexed with it (the body being stuffed with crude & raw iuices) the sicke is desperate of all health. Therefore in such a case of the sick, thou shewest thy self without blame, if thou say before that he will die, and vse no better medicines. But if there be at any time found abundance of clammie humors, by & by minister

Cure of sounding by affection of the mind.

Cure of sounding through abundance of crude humors.

Phelgmon.

Oximel in steed of *Mulsa.* Therefore if it be sommer, and the sicke vsed to cold potions, giue him the *Oximel* cold; but if it be winter, minister it hote. Also these things are very euill for them, aswell bathings, as also the open aire, as often as it is ouer hote, or ouer cold. But if thou art called to them which be presently vexed with sounding, where the belly and the liuer be without impostumation, thou shalt minister a little bread, and that with some wine, because it causeth swift distribution into the other parts of the body: and thou shalt come straight to frictiõs and rubbings, & thou shalt do according to the order before prescribed. But if it be sommer, or the region naturally hote and burning, or the state of the heauen vehemently hote, thou shalt allay the wine with cold water: but if there be no such thing, with hote. But the drinke that shall be giuen the second and third time, thou shalt minister it altogether hote. For in the whole cure, where we vse frictions, heate is best, as a helper of the concoction of crude humours. But to those which haue sounding caused of choler, which troubleth the mouth of the stomacke, to them you must minister cold potions. But yet it is good to minister to all that haue *Sincope*, wine that is hote by nature, yellowish in colour, thinne in substance, cold, and that which prouoketh distribution in the body: for we would haue the food that is receiued, to be distributed about the body, and not to tarry in the stomacke. They that are vexed with sounding through vice of thinne humours, those you must emptie by little & little, and continually, because they cannot suffer much emptying at once: these also must we nourish by little and little, and often: the outward part of the skinne must be thickned: and you must make the aire of the chamber cold and restrictiue. Also you must annoint them with restrictiue medicines and ointments, and you must giue them meates that do not readily disperse and flow. Therefore giue neither *Aqua mulsa*, nor *Ptisan*, but bread and soupings of *Alica*, and soure fruits, which will not easily be corrupted. You shall also giue sometime to them Egges, specially their yolkes, for their whites be hard to digest. Moreouer the stones of Cockes which be nourished with Milke. Also Swines braine, but let it either be diligently rosted, or well sodden in water with Leeks, or Dill. To conclude, you must labour by all meanes, that you may make the substance of the iuices more thicke, to thicken the skin, and to stop the exhalations. Watery wine is necessary to them after meate in the beginnning of sicknesse. And if all follow your minde, you may also after other things giue him nourishment by flesh, especially after the fourth day (the myces coming now to concoction.) If sounding come through vehement inflammation, the members and parts of the body are to be rubbed and nourished, and the hands and feete must be bound. You must command him to watch, because the bloud in sleepe creepeth to the inward members. You must driue them cleane from meate and drinke. Whosoeuer hath the *Sincope* through vicious humours gnawing the mouth of the stomacke, they must be cured by prouoking of vomite: or if that take no place to moue the belly, do other things which be expounded in the chapter of paine in the stomacke. They that beginne to sound in a bath, you must bring them quickly out, and you must not moisten them with much powring in of water. They that be already in a sound, they must be caried out very quickly, and the rest of the body must be coue-

Cure of sounding now present.

Cure of sincope caused of thin humours.

Cure of sounding through inflammation

Cure of sounding through humors in the stomach.

red

red with a light couering. Let the face be wet with a sponge dipped in cold water, or sprinkle it with Rose water. Also the face, the stomacke, and feet must be rubbed. Also the mouth must be opened by putting in of quilles or ones finger. And you must go about by all meanes, that the humours that cause the swouning, may be vomited out, by powring in of warme water at the mouth. They that be of perfect age, pull off their haires; and the loud calling of one is profitable, but many at once is hurtfull.

CHAP. XV.

Of lacke of milke.

THe want of milke, doth chance through drie distemper of the paps, or of the whole body. Also through small quantitie of good bloud, or because the child is so weake, that he cannot sucke well of the paps for looke, the more that he draweth out by sucking of them, the more draweth to them againe. The tokens whereby the diuersitie of causes are knowne, are euident enough by things before spoken, but yet I will rehearse them againe. A drie distemper is knowne by the disposition of the whole body, and by leannesse and drinesse of the body, and paps, and such like. Small quantity of good bloud, is knowne by the ill state of the body and by the euill colour of it: also by vnmeasurable euacuations out of the body before, that is to say, by menstruis, by fluxes, by extreme exercises, by hunger, and such like. For the cure of lacking of milke, which is caused of a dry distemper; we will teach nothing in this place, because it may easily be cured by that which is declared before in other chapters, and shall also be declared afterward in the chap against the feuer Hectick. Therefore here we will only treat of the cure of lacke of milke, caused of the litle quantity of good bloud. In this cure, first you must behold the bloud, for either there is lesse then there ought to be, or it is worse then it should be. Therefore when there is lesse then there should be, a diet must be assigned with moist and heate meanly: for whatsoeuer doth heate more then is conuenient, or else doth drie or coole, those partly by corrupting the bloud that remaineth, and partly by diminishing of it, do forbid the milke to come. Therefore it is good to giue them pure bread, Milke, Veale, Chickens, Partridges, Birds, rere egs, fishes scaly and stony, Raisins, sweet Almonds, Lettuce, Buglosse, Balme, Gourds & such like. They must drinke wine that is thinne and waterie: they must eschue immoderate exercises, anger, sorrow, and all things that may diminish the bloud. But if the bloud be worse. (as if it be cholericke) first purging of the cholerick humours is requisite, and then vse the diet before prescribed: but if it be flegmaticke bloud, it requireth medicines that do heate in the first or second degree, but they may not drie vp, for such by heating of the flegmaticke humors do turne them into bloud: but among such (which are not onely medicines, but also nourishments) the strongest be, Rockat, Fennell, Dill, Parsly, and those things greene, before they be dried; for being dried, they do heate and drie more then they ought to do. And those things which do drie, they make the humor which feedeth the bloud, the more grosse, and more small in quantitie. The bloud ought to be meanly hote, and not grosse, that the milke may be engendred thereof. Moreouer, those things that do meanly heate, and haue

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of lacke of milke in a dry distemper.

Litle bloud.

Victus ratio.

Euill bloud.

no great drinesse ioyned with it, they haue vertue to engender milke: among which, besides those which are spoken of before, is *Sesamum* boiled in wine. Also fresh butter, the weight of one ounce drunke with wine. Also sweet Almonds, *Pistax*, Pine nuts beaten, and eaten with butter. Also this thing is specially praised, ℞. Rice, ten times washed and dried again, and beat it to powder, then seeth it in good milke vpon burning coales; while it doth seeth, put too as much white Sugar as is sufficient, and make a pottage. It is made the better, if you ad to it sweet Almonds, *Pistax*, Pine nuts, Barley meale, Cicers, and such like: but you must labor also, that by gentle rubbing of the breast, and by hot medicines which haue an attractiue vertue, the milk may be drawne & enticed to the paps.

CHAP. XVI.

Of abundance of milke.

Causa.
Signa.
Curatio.

IT chanceth sometime that through abundance of milke, the paps are so filled and swollen, and so stretched out with it, that they are scarce able to hold the abundance of it. It is caused through abundance of good bloud. The euill is knowne by sight and feeling. You must helpe this by and by, for else it is to be feared, lest the paps be taken with inflammation. Therfore at the beginning cut the veine of the arme, or the middle veine which is in the arme. After that vse those things which do lightly represse and driue backe, lest that the bloud be thrust into the lungs by a certaine violence. For this purpose it is good to apply a soft sponge dipped in warme *Posca*, and to bind it with bands to the paps, or apply Dates brayed with bread and *Posca*. Also it is good to apply an Emplaister made of oile of Roses, of Sanders, Corianders, *Psillium*, Purslaine, Beane meale, Lintels, iuyce of Plantaine, and of Vineger, after this sort: ℞. of Beane meale and of Lintels, ana. ℥. j. seed of Purslaine, ʒ. j. seed of Flaxe and *Althæa*, ana. ʒ. ij ß. of Plantaine, M j. seed of Coriander, ʒ ij. boile them all together in water, vntill it come to the thicknesse of Hony, after that, put to it oile of Roses, ℥. j. ß. boile them againe, and adde thereto the yolkes of two egges, and make an Emplaister: or make a Cerate after this sort: ℞. of the oile of Roses and Mirtels, ana. ℥. j. ß. the meales of Beanes and Lintels, ana ʒ. j. ß. of Mints and Rew, ana. ʒ. ß. with Waxe and Venice Turpentine, as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerate to apply to the paps. Also wilde Rapes do profit maruellously, being annointed with water and hony. Moreouer, the leaues of *Cherua* annointed with the iuyce of greene Parsly, is very profitable. Moreouer, the stone *Pyrites* powdred, and applied with oile of Roses and Vineger, doth shew a maruellous effect against abundance of milk. And let their whole diet be such, that thereby but little bloud may be engendred. Therfore hunger in this euill aboue all other things is maruellous good.

Posca is vineger and water mixed together and wine and water.
Emplastrum.
Ceratum.

CHAP. XVII.

Of milke that is curded.

Causa.

MAny times the milke curdeth in the paps, and turneth into the forme of cheese curds. It is caused through abundance of milke (that is) when it is kept long time together on heapes in the paps, and is not sucked out. It is caused also of a hote distemper, when that through ouermuch heate the thinne

part of the milke is digested and dissolued, and the rest groweth togther, and turneth into curds. Also the like may chance of cold, which may cause milke to curde and congeale as wel as other licours. Also somtime milke of his owne nature is grosse and clammy enough, and for that cause doth easily turne to curds. There need no tokens to know this euill: for it is knowne by and by, both by touching and by the patients words. The diet in this euill is diuerse, according to the diuersitie of causes. For in a hote distemper of the paps, let the diet decline to cold things: but in a cold distemper, contrariwise to hote things. If this euill come through grosnesse of the milke, she must vse altogether an extenuating diet. For the cure, if there be abundance of milke, not being as yet curded in the paps, in them that be of lawfull age, and being skilfull women, let it be easily sucked out by little and little. Let the paps be outwardly annointed with iuyce of greene Parsley, Mints, Fenugreeke, and other things rehearsed before in the chapter of abundance of milke. Also the creame of a Hare beaten with water, if it be annointed, is good against all swellings of the paps, especially caused of the corrupt abundance of milke. Also Lintels sodden in Brine, is maruellous good, if the paps be washed with the decoction, and annointed with the Lintels being stamped. Also the decoction of Fenugreeke and *Althæa* doth great pleasure. But if ouermuch heate doth cause the milke to curde in the paps, then annoint them with iuyce of Purslaine and garden Nightshade. Also apply oile of Roses with Vineger. Also Mouse-eare annointed is of good effect. Also the earth called *Cimolia*, annointed with vineger, or with water and oile of Roses, doth good. Moreouer Lintels sodden in vineger, and applied as is aforesaid, is good against cold distemper of the paps. Vse decoction of Cammomill, Fencll, Dill, Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, and therewith foment the paps Also annoint them with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, Lillies, and such like, but beware they touch not the nipple. Oxes gall annointed is good. Crummes of bread are good with vineger annointed, but you may put to it Mints or Parsly, and make the medicine the stronger. This plaister is excellent good: ℞ of Hony, ℥. ß. of *Storax calamitæ*, ʒ. iij. of Oxes gall, ʒ ij. of oile of Cammomill, ℥ ij Mirrhe and Frankensence, ana. ℥ ij. ß. commixe them together, and make an Emplaster to lay on the paps.

Signa.
Victus ratio.
Curatio.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the inflammation of the Paps.

ITt is caused sometime (as other inflammations be) of plentie of hote bloud flowing to the paps. Also sometime through milke (that is) when it turneth to suppuration and matter. The aforesaid causes are easie to discerne asunder. For the first cause of inflammation chanceth to them that be not with child, nor brought in bed: the other cause chanceth onely to such. For the cure in the first cause, you must see bloud drawne from the inward veine of the arme, or the middle veine on the same side, vnlesse the menstruis be stopped: for then it were better to cut the veine of the hamme or ankle. After this you must come to restrictiue medicines, which may not be strong, lest that the humours do violently thrust inwardly to the noble parts of the body: or else you may mixe with them some discussiue things. Therefore for that pur-

Causa.
Curatio.
Venæ sectio.

pose it is very good to take oile of Roses, with the iuice or water of Nightshade, Vineger, and the decoction of Cammomill: in this dip and wet linnen clothes, and apply it to the paps. Also an emplaister made of Barley meale, Line-seed, Sanders, Bole armoniack, Grease, and oile of Roses are good. And if the Phisition doth see that repercussiue medicines do not much good, he must straight proceede to my booke of the cure of impostumes in the breasts. But if inflammation be caused of curded milke, in the beginning you must apply a soft sponge dipped in warme *Posca*, and bind it to it. Also apply Dates brayed with bread and *Posca*. Also apply crums of bread with Mirrhe, Saffron, and Mints, and such like. But if the inflammation endure still, proceed to the Chapter of Impostumes in the breasts, heareafter.

Emplastrum.

THE III. BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of weaknesse of the stomach.

Causa.

WEAKNES of the stomacke, is sometime caused through distemper of the effectrix and working qualitie, without any flowing of humors. For, as *Galen* saith *in lib. 3. de simp. causis, cap.* 10 All vehement distemper doth ouerthrow and cast downe the strength. Also sometime it is caused of an humor being contained in the bosome and large space of the stomacke, which hath power and vertue either to heate or coole, to moisten or drie. or two of those qualities mixed together: sometime it is caused of an humor stuffed and drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomacke. Vehement thirst, abhorring of meate, and vnsauory belkings, do betoken distemper onely of a hote quality. Contrariwise, little thirst, vnmeasurable appetite, and soure belkings, betoken distemper of a cold quality. And to be short, if the stomacke be grieued with hot or cold distemper, it changeth the meates that be eaten into the nature of the distemper: so that the meates may be perceiued to be changed into the sauor of rosting or sowerfulnesse, without the commixing of any humour. Moreouer, if the distemper be hote, you shall see the patient by and by eased with taking of medicines, or meates or drinkes that be cold. But if the distemper be cold, the patient feeleth ease in hote meates or medicines, but he feeleth hurt with cold things. In a moist distemper, the patient feeleth no thirst, or very little; he hath abundance of spittle, and doth desire moist meats. In a drie distemper there is drinesse of the tongue, extenuation of the body, litle spittle and vehement thirst. Moreouer, vomiting and desire thereto, heauinesse of the stomacke, and belking, specially after meate, betokeneth abundance of naughty and corrupt humors. And if yellow choler do abound, there followeth bitternesse of the mouth, vomiting vp of choler, thirst, belkings, with sauour rosted, and gnawing of the stomacke: but

Signa.

if

if fleame do abound, it doth cause no gnawing in the stomacke, vnlesse it be salt fleame: there are present sowre belkings, no thirst, and stretching out of the stomacke. If melancholy abound, it causeth sadnesse and feare, stinking belkings, and spittings, and sauour of fish, sleepe with fits of strange imaginations, contraction and paine of the hammes and calues of the legs. Euery distemper is corrected and amended by his contrary. Therefore you must coole a hot distemper, and heate a cold distemper; also moisten a dry, and dry a moist distemper: likewise must you do in compound distempers, either heate and dry, or heate and moisten; or else coole and moisten, or coole and drie. *Curatio.*

Those that be vexed with hot distemper of the stomack, are cured with a cooling diet, but specially if they take cold things with vineger. Therefore let their bread be mixed or dipped in *Posca*. For flesh, let him vse Chickens, Partrich, veale sodden with vineger or veriuyce. For pot-herbs, Lettuce or Purslaine are very good. Also apples and sharpe peares. The sicke must drinke small Ale or Beere, if he hath been vsed to it, but if not, let him drinke the decoction of Cinamon, or wine that is thin and waterie. You must apply and lay vpon the stomacke outwardly such medicines as do meanely restraine and coole. They which be vexed with a cold distemper of the stomacke, must be healed with the contraries to the aforesaid things, as with the decoction of Annise seede, Rew, and Parsley seede. Let the meates which they eate be condite and dressed with Cinamon, *Calamus aromaticus*, Cloues, Pepper, and such like odoraments. Also giue vnto them *Diatrion piperion*, *Diacalaminthes*, and *Theriaca*. Annoint the stomacke outwardly with those ointments which haue power to heate, and let them vse to drinke wine that is old and somewhat astringent. A moist distemper is helped with meates that do dry, without any strong heate or coldnesse. Moreouer, vsing of lesse drinke then he is accustomed to do. A drie distemper must be cured as the feuer Hecticke is cured, of which we will treat in the fourth book. But if some humor hauing power to heate or coole, do cause weakenesse of the stomacke, you must marke and consider diligently whether that humor do swim in the bosome and largenesse of the stomacke, or whether it be stuffed in the filmes and cotes of the stomack. If the humor be contained, in the bosome of the stomacke, and be a cholericke humour, it must be purged straight by vomite: warme water or thinne *mulsa* drunke, doth cause an easie vomit It wil be better if you do minister before it things that do moiste, as is the broth of Prisan, or else the yolke of an egge. But if the cholericke humour be stuffed in the filmes of the stomack, purge him with *hierapicra*; for as *Galē* saith there can no better medicine be found against vicious humours, being stuffed in the filmes of the stomacke. The humor being purged, let them vse the same diet, that they do which are vexed with a hot distemper, as is taught before. Minister within the body conserues which haue vertue to coole and moisten. Also minister electuaries hauing like vertues. Apply outwardly to the stomack things that do coole and meanly restraine, as is oile of Roses, oile of Quinces, putting to Sanders, Balaustie, Corall and Purslaine; but yet vse things that do coole in a meane, according to the contrarietie of the distemper. For ouermuch vse of cold things doth not onely not profit, but also ofentimes causeth an incurable disease, because of the great heate that is requisite for concoction

Cure of hote distemper.

Posca is a sauce made with vineger and water.

Cold distemper.

Moist distemper.

A drie distemper.

Cure of weaknes of the stomacke caused of an humour.

Choler.

Victus ratio.

and digestion. If humors being flegmaticke, grosse and tough, do swim in the breadth of the stomach, he must vse *Oximel*, wherein hath bin sodden medicins which haue vertue to extenuate and cut, as is Hysope, the root of *Ireos*, Origan, Sauory & Horehound. But if the flegmatick humors be drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomach, then first you must minister those things which do cut and diuide clammy humors and grosse fleame, but afterward you must purge him. If you will know what medicines do purge tough fleame, looke before in the first Booke, chap. 12. Also *Hierapicra* is good to purge grosse humors. Let him also vse a diet which doth extenuate; & let him vse Electuaries that do heat, as *Diatrion piperiõ*, *Diagalanges*, *Diacinamomũ*, *Diamber*, Ginger condite, *Diacorus*, & such like. Apply outwardly to the stomach such things as do heate, as is oile of *Nardinum*, oile of Mints, oile of wormwood, & oile of Mastick, & other things hauing the like vertue. For this purpose also Cerotes are commended, which the Physitions cõmonly call *Scutum Stomachale*, such as is this: ℞ chosen Cinamon, Cloues, long Pepper, ana. ℥.j *Galliæ Moschatæ*, Maces, ana. ℥ ß. *Calamus aromaticus*, Frankinsence, ana ℥ j. ß. wood of Aloes, ℈.j. sowne Mints, ℥.ij. Masticke, *Laudanum*, ana. ℥.ij. oiles of Masticke and Nard, ana. ℥ ß. with Waxe and Turpentine as much as will suffice: make a Cerote to lay vpon the stomach, & couer it with purple silke: or vse this medicine: ℞ Mastick beaten to powder, ℥.j.ß. then strew it vpon leather being cut like a buckler, & poure vpon it *Oleum Nardinum*, then hold it to the fire till it be molten together, and strew vpon it chosen Cinamon, Nutmegs, & Cloues ana ℥.j beaten into powder, and apply it to the stomach. To be short, these and other things which do strengthen & heat the stomach, are to be applied, as is, mints, wormwood, frankinsence, Mastick, Cinamon, Galingale, Ginger, Maces, wood of Aloes, *Calamus odoratus*, and such like rehearsed in our seuenth booke of making medicines, of which, one may make diuers kinds of remedies as he seeth cause.

Fleame.

Diet.

Scutum stomachi.

Aliud.

Medicines which strengthen and heat the stomacke.

CHAP II.

Of yelking and vomiting.

Causæ Nauseæ

Dispositon to vomit (called *Nausea*) which is a naughty & wicked motion of the expulsiue vertue of the stomach, is caused of a vicious humour contained in the stomach, being either hot or cold: which humor either swimmeth in the concauitie and hollownesse of the stomach, or it is stuffed in the filmes of the stomach, cleauing like birdlime, and can scarce be drawne away: or the humor being more watry, it is drowned in the cotes of the stomach, like water in a sponge. And such humors are oftentimes ingendred through distemper of the stomach, as wel hot as cold; somtimes such humors do flow from the whole body, as from other parts (being first euill affected) into the stomach, as it were the excrements; so from the liuer or the spleene, or the head, or from the whole body. If those humours be engendred through the distemper, you may easily perceiue it by the signes declared in the last chapter before this. But whether that humor swim in the hollownesse of the stomach, or be stuffed in his cotes, thus shalt thou know it. If the vicious humor do swim in the stomach, & cause *Nausea*, that is, disposition to vomit, then for the most part vomiting followeth, and the stomach corrupting the meates, it doth manifestly infect it with that humor, & changeth it into his nature; but if a tough humor be drowned in the

Signa.

cotes

cotes of the ſtomach, it cauſeth diſpoſition to vomit, but yet ſuch a diſpoſition as bringeth forth nothing, although the patient do prouoke and ſtraine himſelfe as though he could vomit: but if that humor be watery and wheyiſh, then it cauſeth vomiting, not onely before meate, but alſo after meate, and eſpecially if that humor ſwimme in the breadth of the ſtomach: for if it be ſtuffed, and cleaue to the top of the ſtomach, it doth moue vomiting without bringing any thing vp before meate: but when other parts (from which do flow excrements into the ſtomach) be euill affected, the ſicke himſelfe doth firſt feele the griefe of the member that is diſeaſed: for either he feeleth heate, or cold, or heauineſſe nigh about the place that is diſeaſed, or elſe he cannot ſuffer to let the place be touched hard. But if the whole bodie be full of vicious humours, you may know that by the colour, and by breaking out of wheales and puſhes in the skin, and alſo by the vrine you may diſcerne it. For the cure, you muſt diligently conſider which griefe it is, whether it be a diſeaſe cauſed onely of the ſtomach, or of the whole body, or of ſome other member. For if humours do flow into the ſtomach from ſome other member, or from the whole body, yon muſt firſt take care for the whole body, or for that member that is diſeaſed, but yet you may not neglect the ſtomach altogether: for vnleſſe the whole body be firſt purged of vicious humours, he laboureth in vaine that goeth about to reſiſt the flowing of humours into ſome one place. So alſo he that doth cure the member that is firſt diſeaſed, he cutteth off (as it were) the fountaine of all flowings into the ſtomach. If you will know how thoſe members are to be cured, that do ſend excrements into the ſtomach, you muſt learne that in their proper chapters before or after. But if humours be engendred in the ſtomach cauſing diſpoſition to vomite, you muſt marke whether thoſe humours be thinne, cholericke and wheyiſh, and be contained in the hollowneſſe of the ſtomach: for then you muſt giue him very thinne iuyce of Ptiſan or hote water, and the ſicke muſt prouoke vomite with his finger, or with a feather being put downe into his throat. But if the humours be ſtuffed within vpon the top of the ſtomach, you muſt miniſter one dramme of Aloes to drinke being diſſolued in water. For againſt hote humours that be in the ſtomach, Aloes is the beſt medicine, ſo that often it hath healed euill ſtomachs in one day. After the humours be purged, and other medicines miniſtred, which do ſtop or make temperate the ſharpneſſe of choler, then you muſt cure the hote diſtemper of the ſtomach, as is taught in the laſt Chapter before this. If they be flegmaticke, groſſe and tough humours, which do ſwimme in the breadth of the ſtomach, you muſt cure them after that ſort that is taught of vs in the former chapter, and then you muſt get away the cold diſtemper of the ſtomach, as is before taught. Now for vomiting, you muſt note, that in the beginning it ought not to be ſtopped, if the ſicke be the better for it, according to *Hippocrates* ſaying: In vomiting which cometh by it ſelfe, if ſuch things be purged as ought to be, it is good, and may be ſuffered: but if not, then contrariwiſe it is euill. Therefore you may not ſtop that vomite which is decretorie, or where humours do flow from the whole body into the ſtomach, or when humours be engendred in the ſtomach through diſtemper. But then you muſt rather helpe the motion of the expulſiue vertue in a

Curatio Nauſea.

Of vomiting.

1. Aph. 2.

hote cause, by ministring hote water with oile of Violets to drink: but in a cold cause, minister Oximel & other things before rehearsed. But if the vomiting be immoderate, & do begin to weaken the strength of the sick, then you must goe about to stop and restraine it. Therefore first let the sicke lie vpward in a conuenient house, and contrary to the disease: that is, let the house be cold if the disease be hote: and contrariwise let it be hote if the disease be cold, let the extreme parts of the body be rubbed, & let thē be felt with warme hands, and also bind them strongly with bands: also put the feete and hands in luke warme water. Also hold odoraments of good sauour to the nose for to smel, as Roses, Quinces, Peniroiall, Mints, Fennell, Spikenard. Annoint the stomacke outwardly with oyles of Wormwood and Roses. Emplasters made of Dates, Quinces, and Wormwood be good. Also Cerotes made of them and such like, as Mints, Darnell meale, Frankensence, Masticke, be good being laid vpon the stomacke. Also you must stampe well Dates that haue been steeped in old wine, afterward you must put to it Mastick & Frankēsence, each of them finely poudred by it selfe afore, & then bray them together To this place also you must call the remedies that are spoken of heereafter, partly in the chapter of *Cholera*, and partly in the chapter of the fluxe *Dysenteria*. Furthermore that euill continuing long, if the meate cannot tary in the stomack, you must fasten a cupping glasse to the mouth of the stomack with great flame, vntill the place waxe red, and you must giue the patient meate while the glasse hangeth on still.

Cure of immoderate vomiting.

CHAP. III.

Of immoderate thirst.

Cause.

THirst, as *Galen* witnesseth *in libr. 1. de simpl. med. facultate, cap.* 30 is caused two maner of waies: partly through want of moisture, and partly through abundance of heate. The stomack is heat many & sundry waies, that is, either through hote distemper of the bare quality simple or compound, or through hote and cholericke humours engendred in the stomach, or else flowing to it. Also through abundant drinking of old wine. The stomacke is dried either through the dry distemper that is in it, or through salt humours, or drinking of salt water. Also oftentimes it is dried through consent of the whole body, as it chanceth in burning feuers, and feuers Hectick. The diuersity of causes may easily be knowne by the patients words; and by those signes which wee haue spoken of in the second Chapter next before. The cause being knowne, you must remedy each of them according to their causes diuersly. Therefore you must remedy thirst coming of heate, by ministring things that do coole. Also both the drawing in of cold aire, and water, or watery wine being drunken, are good. Also Cucumber seed chewed, or if it be hulled and beaten, and drunke with water, it helpeth greatly against thirst engendred through heate of the stomacke. Likewise Lettuce seed chewed & drunk profiteth. Also Purslaine seed likewise. The best thing to quench thirst is this, ℞. of the seedes of sowne Cucumbers husked, ℥.j *Diatragacanthæ* ℥.ß. Gumme tragacanth beaten to powder, and searced, ℥.ij beate the seedes, and put those powders to the whites of egs being raw, and beating them all together, make pills, & dry them in the shadow. Of these pils, minister one at once to be holden vnder the tong, that it may dissolue by litle and litle, and so be swallowed. They that haue had burning

Signa.

Curatio.

Pilles to hold vnder the tong

burning and heate in the ſtomacke long time, the iuyce of the ſweet root being drunke, doth helpe them, and alſo the roote it ſelfe with water and the iuice of Purſlaine. But thoſe which are vexed with thirſt cauſed of heat & drineſſe, as it chanceth in all burning and very drie feuers, and to thoſe which labor in ſommer, or in great heate, ſuch are beſt healed with *Oxicratum*, that is, a drinke made with vineger and water ſodden together. For vineger doth coole mightily, and doth pierce euery place quickly, and the water (beſides the cooleneſſe that it hath) is moiſteſt of any thing: for nothing (as *Galen* ſaith in the place before rehearſed) is moiſter then water. Alſo the thirſt which is engendred in feuers, may be mitigated in ſprinkling the head with the coldeſt oiles, as oile of Roſes being ſprinkled aloft on the forepart of the head. Alſo the beſt remedy for drineſſe is ſleepe, where heate and moiſture are commixt together, as it chanceth in that kind of Dropſie, in which plenty of ſalt humors be heaped in the ſtomacke and belly, or in thoſe which haue their ſtomacke ſtuffed with ſalt fleame, then vineger is the beſt remedy. It is alſo good for them to ſoupe the iuice of Quinces or Peares, or veriuyce with water. If humors cholericke or ſalt ſwimming in the ſtomack, or drowned and ſtuffed in it, do prouoke thirſt, then you muſt miniſter medicines which can purge out thoſe humors. Afterward you muſt vſe medicines which do reſtraine and comfort the ſtomacke and ſtrengthen it. Examples whereof you muſt ſeeke before. They which thirſt through drinking of much old wine, are holpen with drinking of cold water, and other things rehearſed in *lib.1.cap.14.*

Oxicratum ſeu Poſca.

CHAP. III.

Of paine in the ſtomacke.

PAine of the ſtomacke is cauſed when naughty, venimous, and gnawing humors be kept in the ſtomack, whereby it chanceth that through intollerable gnawing, they cauſe ſwowning, which they call *Stomachica.* This diſeaſe is knowne by continuall pricking and gnawing of the mouth of the ſtomacke. In this euill you muſt giue him meates that do coole, and which may bring ſtrength to the ſtomacke, as is Lettuce and Purſlaine taken with vineger. Alſo Pomegranates, and Orenges, Peares, ſharpe Grapes, and ſuch like. Alſo bread being ſteeped in very cold water is good. Alſo let his other meates be ſuch as will eaſily digeſt, and yet not eaſie to corrupt, as be, Chickens, Partrich, birds of mountaines, & ſuch like ſodden with veriuice. Alſo fiſhes bred among ſtones, ſodden with vineger, Limons, and the ſharpe iuyce of Cytrons. Likewiſe let the ſicke drinke water wherein hath been ſodden a little Cinamon, or giue him thin watery wine. For the cure, in the beginning you muſt prouoke vomit by the remedies aforeſaid. Then after that alſo he muſt purge downward, by taking *Hierapicra.* Which things being done, you muſt vſe remedies to ſtrengthen the ſtomacke both inwardly and outwardly, as is taught in the ſecond chapter, and in other places alſo.

Doloris ſtomachi cauſæ.
Signa.
Diet.
Curatio.

CHAP. V.

Of Inflammation of the ſtomacke.

INflammation of the ſtomacke is cauſed no otherwiſe then the inflammation of other parts of the bodie: that is to ſay, through the flowing together of

Cauſa.

Signa. abundance of hote bloud. Signes hereof is exceeding great paine continually, which cannot be mitigated with any medicines that be applied to it. Moreouer, there is swelling and burning, which you may feele. Also a feuer, heauinesse, and appetite to meate. The diet (like as it is in other inflammations) must be thinne, small and exquisite. Therefore he must vse iuyce of Prisan, and he must abstaine from flesh and wine, and from other hote meats. Let the sicke drinke water, wherein hath been sodden a little Cinamon, or iuyce of foure Pomegranates, or of some other fruit that is cold and restringent. Let him sleep little, and let him not talke much. Let him eschue sadnesse as much as hee can, and let him remaine in an aire meanly cold. You must begin the cure with letting of bloud, if there be fulnesse of the whole body, and strength of the sicke. You must cut the inward veine of the arme, and you must draw bloud according to the strength of the patient. After this you must apply outwardly those things that do represse and restraine, specially vpon the place where the paine and swelling do most appeare. For the stomack (specially the mouth of it) hath euer need of the commixing of those things that do restraine, but most of all when it hath an inflammation. Therefore those which do attempt the cure with loosening remedies onely, without the commixing of those things that do strengthen the stomacke, they cause perill of death; therefore alwayes whether it be an oile that the inflamed mēber be nourished withall, or a soft plaister laid vpon that member, you must commixe some restringent thing with them. Therefore for this purpose it is good to apply to it oile, wherein wormwood or quinces hath been sodden, commixed together with mastick. Also the iuyce of Quinces or Pears, putting to it red Roses, Barley meale, Sanders, Bole armoniak, & such like. Also you may vse this Cerot: ℞. Barly meale, ℥.ß. white Sanders & red Roses, ana. ʒ.ij. Bole armoniak, ʒ j.ß. Aloes, Mastick, ana. ʒ.j. Wormwood, Nutmegs, *Balaustiæ*, ana. ʒ.ß. oiles of Masticke and Roses, ana. ℥.j.ß. with waxe and Turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a Cerote to lay vpon the stomack. But if there be need of great restriction (as it chanceth then when the stomacke is so weake that it cannot hold, and retaine meate) you may commix with the said things veriuice or iuice of wormwood, or *Hypocistchidos*, and *Sumach*, and such like. All these things (if the inflammation be vehement) must be applied to the griefe cold. And if the belly do send forth nothing, you must prouoke it with easie clisters. Nor he worketh not vnwisely, that doth minister ℥. ß. of *Cassia fistula* dissolued in Endiue water, after that the burning heate is somewhat abated. Also at that time you may commixe with the restrictiue medicines, which you apply outwardly, many things that do discusse and dissolue, as is Fenugreek meale, flowers of Cammomil, and *Althæa*, and Lineseede: you must neuer (as we warned you before, no not at that time when there floweth no more to the griefe, and that cannot be driuen backe which is contained in the diseased member) you must not I say at that time, neither vse onely loosening medicines, or only dissoluing medicines: but alwaies you must commixe with them restrictiue things, which haue power to preserue & keep the strength of the stomacke: therefore at that time you must vse this emplaister: ℞ the meale of Lineseed and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥.ß. seed of Dill, ʒ.ij. flowers of Camomill and Melilot, ana. ℥ ß. wormwood, Balaustie, red Roses, ana.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Cerotum.

Emplastrum.

ana.℥.ij. *Hypocistidis*, ℈ ij. oiles of Cammomill, Lillies, Roses, Masticke, ana. ℥.ß. Hens grease, and Goose grease, ana.℥.ij. commix them all together, and make an emplaister: but before it be applyed, it is not in vaine to annoynt the stomacke with this ointment: ℞. oiles of Cammomill, Dill, and Quinces, ana, ℥.iij. powder of the roote of *Althæa*, wormewood, Linesed, ana.℈.j. wax sufficient, and make an ointment. *Vnguentum.*

CHAP. VI.

Of abhorring of meate.

ABhorring of meate, or losing of appetite, doth chance either through losing of the sence of sucking of the veines, which is naturall hunger, as *Galen* witnesseth, *lib.1.de Sympt. causis cap.7.* or because there is no sucking out, or because the body is not emptied. Also sometime it chanceth through some hote distemper, specially of the stomacke, which distemper doth dissolue the hard and sound members by loosing of them, and maketh them weaker in drawing: but the moist members, it stretcheth out vnmeasurably by shedding. Sometime it is caused through abundance of vicious humours contained in the stomacke, and through immoderate fluxe of the belly and bowells: also through ouermuch bloud letting. Also the sicke doth abhorre meate in continuall and vehement feuers, also in inflammations of the stomack, the liuer and the matrice, and for many other causes which need not to be rehearsed heere. *Causa.*

The signes which betoken a hote distemper, are rehearsed before in the first Chapter. Those which abhorre meate, through the vice of cholericke humors, are troubled with gnawing of the stomack, and with appetite to vomite, & with thirst. Those that haue humours that be rotten, they haue sometime a feauer. But those which haue loathing of meate through grosse and clammy humors, they neither feele gnawing of the stomacke nor thirst. But commonly to all, there cometh disposition to vomit. If loathing of meate doth come about the beginning of the disease, or about the rigour and strength of it, which the patients strength may yet suffer, it causeth no perill, for the sicke neede but little nourishment. But if losse of appetite do come in the declination of the whole disease, or in long weakenesse, or in lacke of strength or of vnmeasurable purging, it is not without perill and danger. This euill is increased of age. For children are vnluckily troubled with this disease, that is to say, such as are deuourers by nature, and haue neede of continuall nourishment. Therefore if children haue this disease, great excesse aboue nature is signified by it. *Signa.*

For cure of this disease, if the losse of appetite be caused through weakenesse of the stomach, you must marke what distemper doth weaken the strength, and you must cure it by contraries to that distemper, as is before taught. If the presence of vicious humors do cause loathing of meate, if those humors be thinne and gnawing, you must first beginne before any other thing be ministred, to purge the humours contained in the stomacke by vomite. And if the patient doth vomite vneasily, minister vnto him scupings, and other nourishments which do moisten, that they may driue those humours downe into the belly, and driue them out beneath, or purge the wombe with *Hierapicra*. Then we *Curatio.*

must bring the body to a good temper, with such things as be meete for that purpose. Those that do abhorre meate through grosse and clammie humours, you shall cure them by extenuating and cutting the humours, as well with *Oximel*, as also with those medicine that are made of this and other sawces, as with Capers, Olives, Mustard seed, and such like declared in the first Chapter. If loathing of meate happen through imflammation, or stopping any other part of the body, then you must go about the curing of that member or part. And you must go about to prouoke appetite againe, only by odoraments, either by odour and swelling of wine infused, or decoction of Quinces or Peares. Also you shall go about the same thing with soft annointings with oiles, as oiles of Roses, Masticke, and such like, and moderate frictions and rubbings of the body. Also insessions to be applied to the loines and share. Also let meates be prepared of diuerse and sundry kinds, and after the daintiest fashion, that besides their sweetnesse they may entice and prouoke their appetite: first of the best kind of corne, and such as doth nourish much, as is *Alica* washed with the decoction of Dates and Damascene prunes, rere egges, birds of the mountaines that be leane and of no strong sauour: swines feete much consumed in seething. For if he onely taste such meates, they nourish the body sufficiently. Whatsoeuer you minister, ought to be of such sort, that it may easily be deuoured and swallowed. For those things that require much chewing, do cause vnpleasantnesse, and put away appetite. Nor you may not neglect to apply outwardly vpon the stomacke besides the ointments, emplaisters made of Dates, Quinces, Wormewood, and such like. Also Cerates made of the same things; examples whereof you must seeke before.

Alica is made of wheate steeped in water, beaten and dried in the Sunne, and then broken grossely.

CHAP. VII.

Of a doglike appetite.

A Doglike appetite is contrary to losse of appetite. For they that are thus diseased, they desire much meate, and when they cannot refraine their appetite, they deuoure in meate without measure: then they being heauy with the multitude of meate, and their stomack not being able to beare the meates that are in it without hurt, they turne to vomiting. Then afterward they fill themselues with meate, and againe they returne to vomiting like dogs. It is caused through cold distemper of the stomacke, or through vicious and sharpe humours which do gnaw and pricke the mouth of the stomacke. For cold vicious humors do cause a gnawing much like the proportion of sucking, and do raise appetite of meate. Also sometime it chanceth through vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad of the whole body, which doth follow either the violence of heate, or the weaknesse of the vertue retentiue. Cold distemper of the stomacke is knowne by euill digestion, windinesse, rumbling, and many egestions or seiges, and by other tokens declared before in the first Chapter. Sharpe humours are knowne by soure belkings, and much egestion, and very thinne. If it be caused of vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad, and that through heate which consumeth the meate like fire, and rarefieth the skin: then the egestions sent out by the belly, be lesse in quantity then the meate that is eaten, and also the egestions the drier: But if that dissipation come through

Causa.

Signa.

through weakneſſe of the retentiue vertue, which cannot maſter the meates: then there is much deiection and caſting out of thoſe things that are eaten. For the cure, cold diſtemper muſt be healed as is taught in the firſt chapter of this booke. If doglike and vnmeaſurable appetite be cauſed of ſharpe humors ſtuffed in the mouth of the ſtomacke, and as it were water ſoked into a ſponge, you muſt miniſter in the beginning, *Hierapicra Galeni.* For this doth not onely heate, but alſo it doth cut off and make cleane, and draw out from the depth of the mouth of the ſtomacke, humors that be ſtuffed in it, and it cauſeth them to auoid downward: and yet it addeth ſtrength to the ſtomacke, that afterward it will not eaſily receiue any hurtfull humour. Therefore that is the beſt remedie for vicious humours ſtuffed in the ſtomacke, to bring them forth. It is miniſtred the weight of ℥. iiij with wine infuſed with warm water. If a child doth labour of this diſeaſe, which cannot drinke the medicine for bitterneſſe, make ℥.j or ij. of it in pilles, and annoint it outwardly with honey, and let them ſwallow them downe. Seeing that for the moſt part, this euill chanceth of ſharpe and ſoure fleame, you muſt vſe ſuch meates and medicines, as haue power to cut, deuide, ſcoure, and heate, as be, Garlicke, Leekes, Time, Sauory, Origan, Penitroyall, and ſuch like. Therefore the humours that be vicious being purged in the beginning, you muſt let them vſe this diet. Let not their bread be new, nor well leauened, with the which alſo you muſt mixe things that prouoke vrine, as is, Anniſe ſeed, Caraway ſeed, Commin, Parſley, and ſuch like. Let his meates be fat and oylie. Alſo ſoupings are good, that do deſtroy appetite, as be pottage made with much hony, and much oyle, or Gooſegreaſe, Hens greaſe, or Swines greaſe. Let his pot-herbes be Mallowes. Alſo giue him the braines and fatteſt partes of birdes, and of fiſhes likewiſe, and thoſe things that do altogether deſtroy appetite, and cauſe fulneſſe, and that do nouriſh but little, although they be eaten in great quantity. You may well giue them great plentie of wine, euen as much as they can drinke, and ſuch wine that doth heate greatly, as thoſe do that be yellow in colour, thin in ſubſtance, ſweete in ſmelling, and without reſtriction. For this doth heate the ſtomach, and deſtroy ſharpneſſe of humours, ſo that often ſuch wine with oylie and fat meates, ſuffiſeth for the perfect cure. As Hippocrates ſaith, Drinking of wine eaſeth hunger. And you muſt giue wine, as well to them that be faſting, as to them alſo which haue eaten meate, although they be not as yet athirſt. But you muſt giue it to them that be faſting, hote, or warme at the leaſt. He muſt abſtaine from all ſoure and reſtrictiue meates and drinkes, but ſpecially from fruite. Let their banketting meates be *Piſtacium*, Almonds, Pine nuttes, and Oliues with honey. Miniſter alſo vnto them milke, as well alone, as alſo with wine called *Paſſum*, or with honey: ſo that neuertheleſſe you muſt take heed that you giue it not to thoſe, that are wont to haue it waxe ſowre in their ſtomach, for to thoſe it doth more hurt then good. But if it be well digeſted, it doth not only ſtop the appetite, but it ſoftneth the belly being ſtopped, and ſtops his fluxes. Alſo you muſt make potions and fine cakes with milke, and giue them to him, as be, Marchpanes and Rice ſodden with milke. Alſo he muſt waſh now and then, and make fat their skinne largely. This kinde of cure you muſt vſe as long as the ſicke is diſeaſed, and till he be cleane whole. If the doglike appetite come

Curatio.

Cure if it be of ſharp humors.

Victus ratio.

2. Aph. 21.

Cure if it come of immoderate dissipation.

through vnmeasurable scattering abroad, opening and dissipation; then in such a disease it is good to thicken the skinne, and make it grosser with oyle made with vnripe Oliues, or oiles of Roses, or of Mirtles, or any other wherein any restrictiue thing hath bene sodden with a soft fire. Let the sicke remaine in an aire that is cold and perspirable. Let him eschue hote aire and hote bathes. Also let him eschue wine and all things as well outwardly as inwardly that do heate. Let his drinke be cold water or decoction of Cinamon. Put the sicke in a cold bath if nothing do let it, as slendernesse and leannesse of the body, or the coldnesse of some member of the body, as the breast or some other. You must giue vnto them meates that be stable, durable, and hard to corrupt, as be Periwincles, and all kinde of shel fish, if they be sodden with water twice changed. Also Swines flesh being in full strength, and specially the belly. Also fat Beefe, and all things that be all fat, and that do swimme in the stomach, and be hard to be digested and distributed. For there be some that haue this disease, which by reason of a sharpe and biting heate, and as it were a feuerous heate in them, do digest and consume Beefe and other things hard of digestion, with lesse lesse labour then fishes of stony places, & such like things which be easie of digestion. Of egges those are good for them which be sodden till they be hard, or fried in a frying pan. Giue them manchet made of fat broths without hony. Also Rice sodden with butter, and vnleauened bread. Looke how much the euill is abated, and so much you must abate of the grosse meates that you are wont to giue, and you must minish the restrictiue things also that you lay without. For sometime the vehemency of the appetite being abated, when the body is filled with crude and grosse humours, it turneth into some other worse disease. Amōg restrictiue medicins besides those things which are aforesaid, you must vse this ointment: ℞. oiles of Mirtles, and Quinces, ana. ℥ ß. oile of Roses, ℥. j. iuyce of Plantaine, ʒ. ij. red Sanders, Masticke, Bistorta, red Roses, ana. ʒ. j. Bole armoniacke, ℈. ij. *Hipocischidos*, *Acatia*, *sanguis Draconis*, ana. ℈. j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment.

Vnguentum adstringens.

CHAP. VIII.

Of great famine.

βελιμος.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

B*Vlimos* in Greeke, is nothing else but great and vehement famine or hunger. It is caused through coldnes of the stomacke, and for want and weakenesse of strength, and in a man it taketh his beginning altogether of outward cold: for long iourneyes, specially when there is snow, causeth this disease. It is knowne thus. In the beginning there is felt much hunger, which for all that, doth not long endure. For afterward the heart of the patient beginneth to faile him, with coldnes of the extreme parts, & want of spirit and breath. You must apply remedies for this disease by and by, because there be that in desert places, or in bathes, being suddenly taken with this disease, do perish for lacke of helpe. Therefore they that are troubled with great hunger, in a iourney without a feuer, or any other wayes, you must recomfort them with Vineger, or Peniroiall, giuen them to smell vnto, or earth whatsoeuer it be, sprinkled with Vineger, or Apples, or Peares, or such other like fruite which is next hand. Also new bread holden to the nose, doth helpe, and cheese of good sauour. Also Porke rosted or sodden, and vniuersally all that doth nourish much; but especially

cially that which hath ſauor of roſted meate, and is well ſeaſoned, and hath a ſufficient ſauour. For by ſuch odours & ſauours, they that haue this diſeaſe, are for the moſt part refreſhed, ſeeing there is nothing (as we ſaid before in the ſecond booke, the fourteenth chapter) that doth refreſh and renew the ſtrength ſooner then odours. Moreouer you muſt bind the extreme parts of them with bands, and you muſt put the tippes of their hands and feete in verie hote water, and you muſt raiſe them and ſtirre them, as well by pricking of the cheekes, as alſo by pulling of the haire and eares. And when he is ſomewhat come againe to himſelfe, you ſhall miniſter vnto him bread infuſed in wine, or ſome ſuch thing, which doth reſtore ſtrength very quickly, as be, reare egges, Alica with wine. The next remedy they muſt looke for by meate, which if they cannot take when it is offered them, you muſt put it into the mouth violently, and compell them to ſwallow it, for by and by after that, they are deliuered from their great hunger, and from their fainting, and are raiſed quickly. For this purpoſe are good alſo the Antidotes which are compounded of diuers ſweet odours, as is, *Aromaticum Roſarum, Diamber, Dianthon, Diamoſchi, Alipta moſchata*, and ſuch other like. And if this diſeaſe chance to come in feauers (which is ſeldome ſeene) or if it doth ruſh in ſuddenly about the declination of fits belonging to feuers, you may miniſter meate without feare. But if it chance in the beginning of the augmentation, or in the vigour and ſtrength of the feauer, the ſicke muſt be refreſhed by the odoraments aforeſaid, and ſpecially by thoſe things which haue corne in them, as is *Polenta*, wet with water, or hote bread that ſendeth forth a burning ſauour. Alſo you muſt vſe frictions and rubbings of the extreme parts, and apply plaiſters made of Dates, or Quinces ſodden in wine: and this muſt you do vntill the declining of the fit that you may ſafely giue him meate. And if the ſicke be neuer the better through theſe things, you muſt venture to helpe him by giuing of meate. Therefore miniſter iuice of Ptiſan, or one morſell or other wet in wine that is white and thin: for they being refreſhed, and as it were ſuddenly called backe, do afterward come to the declining of the fit. We muſt eſchue altogether in them that haue this diſeaſe, long delay from meate and hunger: for you ſhall giue him euery houre very little meate, for it taketh away great famine and the fainting, whereby the ſicke is eaſed. And that it is lawfull to nouriſh and giue meate to the ſicke in a fit, *Galen* teacheth, *lib.* 10 *method. cap.* 3.

Polenta is barly ſteeped in water one night, then fryed, and then ground.

CHAP IX.

Of euill digeſtion.

RAwneſſe of the ſtomacke or ill digeſtion is, when as the meate is not altogether changed. The cauſes of it are, diſtemper in the ſtomacke, inflammations, hardneſſe, impoſtumes, and ſuch other like. Sometime the meates remaine raw and vndigeſted, although the ſtomacke be not diſeaſed: either through immoderate deuouring of meates and drinkes at one time, or through the euill and vicious qualities of the meates themſelues, or through eating of them out of due time, or through inordinate taking of them: or through ſome vicious ſuperfluitie growing: or through ſhort ſleeping, as *Galen* ſaith, *Libro tertio de ſymptomatum cauſis, capite primo.* The diuerſity of cauſes he

Cauſa.

Signa. knowne partly by the tale of the patient, and them that be about him: and partly by certaine tokens. By the tale of the sicke, and of them that be about him, you may know whether meates and drinkes haue bene taken immoderately, or out of due season, or inordinately. Also you may know of them the shortnes of sleeping: you may know if the meates themselues were of euill qualities by his belkings and sauours like things roasted and burned. For in them that be hote and cholericke, the belking or corruptions sauor like meate rosted or burned: but in them that be of a cold nature and more flegmaticke, the corruptions are sowre or sharpe. Likewise you must iudge of excrements that be flegmaticke and cold, they cause sowre corruptions: but those that be hote and mixed with bitter choler, do cause sauour like burned meate. Likewise iudge of the stomacke being any otherwise euill at ease: for if the disease be cold, it causeth sharpe and sowre permutations: but if it be hote, it causeth a burning sauor. When perfect crudity and rawnesse is engendred without corruption, in such sort, that the meates do remaine altogether euen as they were eaten: by this you may know that the stomacke is ouercome, either through great quantity of meates, or through vehement cold taken in a hote thirst. Therefore if you would not haue this crudity, and euill digestion, you must beware of all the aforesaid things, that is, that you neither offend in the quantity, nor quality, nor order, nor due season of the taking of your meate: and that you eate those things onely, which you are able to digest, and not that which appetite requireth. Therefore you must especially take diligent heed to the measure and quantity of your meate, and you must refraine your appetite, and eate no more then your strength is able to suffer. Also you must beware of euill order, that is, that you do not first eate Quinces or Pomgranates, or some such like things, and afterward to eate pot-herbs out of oile or sauce made with salted fish, or other things which do soften the belly. Also you must eschue eating out of due season, that is, that you do not eate before some moderate exercise, or before yesterdaies meate be well descended, and also not before your accustomed houre. Also you must eschue all things be hard by nature to digest, as is flesh that is hard by nature, as is Beefe and Harts flesh: also eschue all old flesh. Also you must beware of meates that be fat, or that be powdred in salt, and stale kept. Amongst pot-hearbes, those that be very hote or very cold, or also those that ingender wind, be hurtfull. Eschue fishes which are hard, and dried by long keeping. Also abstaine from meates that be corrupt, or that do stinke, or smell ill fauouredly. Refraine from sweete fruite, or that which doth engender windinesse, or that which is corrupt. Also eschue iunkates which be hard of digestion. Also you must eschue meates that be strange and vnaccustomed, and that haue the power of a medicine, as people vse to commixe in their tarts and fine cakes; but you must eate your meate in due time, not greedily, nor in gobbets: nor swallow it not without chewing. Neither let your drinke interrupt and disturbe your meate, for that doth hinder the vniting and knitting together of the meate, and causeth each peece to swim from other. After meate eaten, you must eschue vnequall and troublous motions. Also eschue heate and cold, for those things do stop the digestion of meate. But calefaction and chafing of the sides, and

Victus ratio.

rubbing

rubbing of the feete, do helpe digeſtion. And if there be heauineſſe about the ſtomach, ſo that through it a certaine painefulneſſe be ſpread throughout the whole body, then lay your hand being ſtretched forth vpon the mouth of the ſtomach, or apply to it a fleſhie infant; for as *Galen* ſaith, it is much better, and more natural, thē the heat which is procured by fométs. For which cauſe ſome do lay little whelpes while they reſt vpon their ſtomach, which doth increaſe the abundance of heate that digeſteth the meate. Alſo you muſt procure ſleep in the night equall and without diſturbance. For this, you muſt prepare to lie ſtraight, and let your head be bolſtered vp high, and in your lying you muſt incline towards the left ſide. And if you cannot ſleepe, you muſt lie without turning or ſtirring of your bodie, and keepe it ſtill in one forme of lying; for often ſtirrings and toſſings do diſturbe the meates, and make the bodie windie, and the bowells likewiſe. The cure muſt be diuerſe, according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes: for hote diſtemper of the ſtomach requireth one kind of curing, and cold diſtemper requireth another. Alſo inflammation of the ſtomach requireth another kind of cure, and hardneſſe or impoſtumations another kinde; and all thoſe cures you ſhall ſeeke out in the proper Chapters: for here it ſufficeth to ſay thus much. When there cometh an vnpleaſant belking, declaring manifeſtly that there is corruption of meates, without prolonging, you muſt prouoke vomite, and by drinking of warme water, you muſt conſtraine all that is corrupt to come forth. For if they remaine in the ſtomach, they cauſe tormenting, and wreſtling, and heauineſſe of the head: and ſometimes they ſend forth choler vpward and downeward, or they cauſe fluxe of the wombe, or feauers. Therefore ſuch as cannot digeſt but hardly, we muſt accuſtome them long time before, that they may vomite eaſily, for that is beſt in many perills. And if any be hard to vomite by nature, & be ill diſpoſed to drinke cold things, in any caſe it is not inconuenient to giue him a cup of pure cold water to drinke: for the ſtomach being ſtrengthened, it ſoone thruſteth out thoſe things that ſticke in it, and ſendeth them downe to the lower parts. Then the next day let the ſicke be kept in quiet and reſt, and vſe rubbings of his feete, and chafing of his ſides, vntill the rumbling and windineſſe breake out beneath, and vntill the belkings do come forth with a gentler quality. And then it is good to riſe vp, that firſt the belly may ſend out the corrupt things by ſiege, and afterward let the ſicke walke moderately, and let him be idle, becauſe of the troubled vapours which be aſcended into the head through corruption. After this he muſt apply his mind to daily buſineſſe without perturbation and indignation. Then againe the belly muſt be prouoked to auoid thoſe things that remaine yet. Afterward you muſt bidde him reſt, and you muſt powre vpon and nouriſh the feete with warme water: and the face being waſhed with pure cold water, let him reſt in his bedde, and procure him to ſleepe by all meanes. After which let him vſe a little walking, and then a bath. After bathing let him take meate moderately, and that which the body is able to digeſt. But yet you may not ouerpaſſe medicines that do helpe digeſtion, as is, Pepper, eſpecially long Pepper, which doth onely helpe digeſtion. But if you haue it not at that preſent, you may vſe white Pepper, and if you haue not that neither, take blacke Pepper. Alſo for the ſame, *Diacotoneon*

Curatio.

Vomitus.

Long Pepper helpeth digeſtion.

is good, and *Diospoliticum*. Also there be other things to be applied as well inwardly as outwardly, both simples and compounds, to strengthen the stomach, which are rehearsed in the former chapters. But all these medicines (especially such as do pierce quickely, as is, Caraway seeds, Fennell seeds, *Apium*, Louage seed, Pasley seed, *Ammeos*, Pepper, Ginger, and such like) must be giuen two houres before meate: but after meate you must neuer take them: for then there is dispersed together with them some of the crude meates, and causeth obstructions. Therfore let them be vsed most before meate after the rubbings in the morning, and two houres before exercise.

CHAP. X.

Of windinesse in the stomach.

Cause. THe stomach is windie, through the windines that is engendred in it. Windinesse is engendred through flegmaticke humours in the stomach, or else through meates dissolued into vapors through want and debilitie of heate. For cold onely doth cause no windinesse, because it can neither extenuate nor dissolue meate. Vehement heate for the most part (ouercoming those things that it comprehendeth) extenuateth and maketh thinne the meate, so that no vapours can engender thereof, vnlesse it be easie to turne into windines of the owne nature: but the windinesse that is so engendred is troublous and cloudy: and also it is but little, and endureth but a little while, so that at one belking or other it vanisheth away straight. The heate that worketh in the meates, if it be but of little force and strength (that is, doth somewhat dissolue them, but not altogether consume them) thereof must needs engender windines, as *Galen* teacheth, *li.3.de sympt.caus. cap.7.* They that are thus diseased, haue stretching out and heauinesse of the stomach: also sometime swelling, and a certaine bowing out of the mouth of the stomach, and of the stomach it selfe: also emptie belkings do come, sometimes lightning a little, and a stopping of the windinesse which is wout to breake downward. Also this euill sometimes is all ouer the breast, and sometime behinde, about the backebone and backe, and rusheth among the ioynts, and often it occupieth both places. Besides these things there is vehement paine in drawing of breath, because of the pressing downe together of the midriffe, so that some do feele like as though they were choked. They are eased by the meate going downeward, and by windinesse breking out either by belking, or by the belly. Also rumbling & noise is heard within. Therefore if the windinesse of the stomach be caused of flegmaticke meates, you must minister an extenuating diet, and such medicines as do diuide and purge fleame, which we taught in the first chapter of this booke. But if the windinesse be engendred through want and weakenesse of heate, he must vse meates easie of digestion, and of good iuice. Also he must eate but litle: for fasting is very good for this disease. After all the meate, you must minister wine that is pure and vnmixed; but yet he must eschue much drinke as a deadly enemie. Also let him eschue fruit, and eating of moist oiles. Also let him vse hote baths in great vessels, for those do mitigate, soften, and dissolue windinesse whatsoeuer it be, and prouoke sleep: and when sleep cometh, it easeth the patient much, because it helpeth digestion maruellously. And as for medicins, let them

Signa.

Curatio.

them vse this decoction: ℞. Calamint, Mints, wilde Mints, Cammomill, Origan, Peniroiall, ana.M.j. Wormwood.M.ß. seeds of Annise, Apium, Comin, Daucus, Parsley, Fennell, ana.℥.iij. seeds of Nettles, Carawayes, ana.℥.ij. of the roote of Enula Campana, ℥.ij seethe these in a iust quantity of water, till the third part be consumed: then straine them, and put to sufficient Sugar to make the iuyce of that decoction sweet, and put to that liquor, of sirupe of Calamint, ℥.iij. and make a potion, whereof let the sicke drinke euery day in the morning, ℥.iiij. Or let him vse this powder. ℞. the powders of *Dianysum*, *Diacuminum*, *Diacalaminthes*, ana.℈.ij. seeds of Annise, Daucus, and Fennell, ana. ℈.j. Quibibes, Cloues, ana.℈.ij. Ginger, ℈.Pepper, ℥.j. Sugar, ℔.ß. commix them together and make a powder. They which haue taken meate but a little before, must first vomite. Also you must minister suppositaries made of things that entice windinesse after this sort. ℞. Hony sodden, ℥.ij. seedes of Rew, Comin, and Fennell, ana.℈.i. seeds of Carawayes and Annise, ana.℥.ß. Salt, ℈.ij. commixe them together and make suppositaries. If the wombe be very costiue, you must cast in a clister made thus. ℞. of the decoction aboue taught, ℔.i. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥.vij. oiles of Wormwood, Rew and Dill, ana.℥.i. Goose grease and Hennes grease without Salt, ana.℥.ii.ß. common Salt, ℥ i. commixe all together, and make a clister. In this disease you must annoint the stomach outwardly with the oiles aforesaid, or make a little bunch of Wooll, and wet it in the aforesaid oiles being warmed, and apply it to the stomach. And vpon the bunch of Wooll being wound vp together, strew Comin beaten, or seed of Apium or Dill. If the disease endure long, apply to it plaisters made of Lineseed, Barley meale, Darnell meale, Comin, Dill seed, or Apium, or Fennell beaten, the toppes of Centorie, and such other like: or apply this Cerate. ℞. oiles of Rew, Dill, Nard, and Laurell, ana. ℥.j. meale of Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥.i. ß. seedes of Apium, Carawaies, and *Nigella Romana*, ana. ℥.i. Laurell berries, and Centorie, ana.℥.j.ß. Gumme ammoniacke, and *Opoponax*, ana ℥.ij. Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Also a great cupping glasse comprehending the nauell euery where, being applyed with great flame, is a remedy in this disease. Also *Castoreum* drunke with *Posca*, and applied outwardly with oile of Dill, is good.

Decoctum.
Tritura.
Glandes.
Clyster.
Ceratum.

CHAP. XI.

Of yelking or hicket.

YElking is a motion of the stomach, and it is as it were a crampe of the stomach raised of the expulsiue vertue, which goeth about to thrust forth euil and hurtfull things. This disease is caused for the most part, either of fulnesse or of emptinesse, as *Hippocrates* witnesseth. Also sometime it is caused through the biting and gnawing of sharpe humors. Also the meate being turned into a gnawing qualitie, and so corrupted, causeth some to yelke. Also coldnes of the mouth of the stomach, and corruption of the food causeth yelking, which causeth children specially to haue the hicket often. Also yelking engendreth in feuers, specially when the stomach or some other bowell is enflamed. The outward causes are easily knowne by the telling of the sicke, and them that be about him. Fulnesse is knowne by heauinesse, & emptinesse of those things that

Causa.
6. Aphor. 13.
Signa.

Cure of yelking of cold.

went before. You must know if the meate be corrupt, by the burnt sauor of it: but you shall know sharpnesse by gnawing, pricking, and pulling. Therefore when yelking is engendred of coldnesse, you must lay vpon the stomach, wooll dipped in the oile wherin hath been sodden, Rew, Comin, & wormwood. Also oile of Masticke, and of *Castoreum* being annointed doth profite. To children warme linnen clothes being applied to, do help often. They that be of ful age, minister to them wine to drinke, or Apium sodden in *Aqua Mulsa*, or Comin beaten, or Asarum, or Peniroiall, each of these by himselfe or else mixed with other. Also squilliticke vineger is good to soupe. Also giue them, ℥ j. of *Castoreum* with Posca, as well against yelking caused of cold, as also if it be caused through multitude of humours. Also if it be applied outwardly to the stomach with old oile, it is good for both the said griefes. Moreouer, holding of the breath which doth increase heate, is a present remedy for them that do yelke through cold. When yelking is caused of fulnesse, vomiting is the best remedie. If there be grosse humours, they must be extenuate and cut with *Oximel scilliticum*, and Calamint, and Horehound their decoction, and such like before rehearsed. Afterward you must apply those things which may draw the abundance of humours a contrary way, and turne them cleane aside. For which purpose those things are good which do purge downeward, and specially clisters, biudings, and rubbings of the extreme parts, and cupping glasses with much flame, fastned to the breast, to the stomach, and to the backe. Also these things are good for them, long and quicke walking, bearings about, & chiefly riding. Also it is good for them to sneese, as *Hippocrates* saith. For when the yelking is caused of fulnes, there is need of violent mouing. Also handsome calling loud, with much clamor, & with holding of the breath, is good for them. Moreouer, the stomach must be strengthned by medicines ministred as well inwardly as outwardly: Inwardly by comforting Electuaries, and outwardly by applying of ointments, Emplasters, and Cerates before taught. Yelking that is caused of emptinesse, is cured by giuing to the patient conuenient food, and by those things that do fill his wanting: which partly be afore taught, and abundantly spoken of hereafter in the cure of the feauer Hecticke. It doth much good in this kind of yelking, to annoint the ioints of the necke & the backe with moistening oile, as is, oiles of Violets, and of sweet Almonds. But if yelking be caused of gnawing things, first we finde that vomiting is a sufficient remedie for it: then also stupefaction of feeling, and such things as do alter the gnawing. The senses be astonied and stupefact by cooling things, for which purpose you must minister *Philonium*, or pilles of Hounds tong, which do profite maruellously in this disease; you must vse them thus. You must make of one dram, sixe pilles, whereof let the sicke take one before he go to bed. The mordacitie and gnawing is altered and driuen away by medicines which do stop, attenuate, and drie. Stoppers of gnawing be these, iuyce of Endiue drunke, Cucumber seed husked and beaten, being drunke, Lettuce seede likewise taken. Also iuyce of Purslaine drunke, and Purslaine it selfe taken in meate. Also Sebesten decoction taken in drinke, but specially aboue all, Asses milke is good. Or if you haue not that, Cowes milke newly milked is good being drunke. For the same purpose minister conserues of Roses, or of Violets, or of water Lillies,

Cure of yelking of fulnes.

Auersion.

6. Aphor. 13.

Cure of hicket caused of emptinesse.

Cure of yelking through mordacitie.

Pilule de cynoglossa.

Diar-

Diarrhodon, Diatrion santalon, Iulep of Violets, of *Nimphea*, that is, water Lillies, and such like. These Trochiskes do stop, extenuate, and drie vp: ℞. *Pastillus. Costus*, Saffron, Spikenard, greene Roses, Masticke, ana. ℥ ß. *Asarum, Aloes*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Opium*, ʒ j. with iuice of *Psillium*, make Trochiskes, of the which giue, ʒ.ß or ʒ j. Note that *Opium*, and the Roses, and the iuyce of *Psillium* be of a cold operation: the Spikenard doth discusse, dissolue, and corroborate: the *Asarum* doth bring out the vicious humours by vrine: the *Aloes* do purge out the vicious humours, and driue them out beneath at the siege: the Saffron digesteth and strengthneth the parts, for by his temperament of heate he causeth digestion, and by his restrictiue vertue which he hath, he addeth strength: the *Costus* doth sufficiently heate, and moderately restraine, which you may perceiue by his taste. *Galen* commendeth this medicine very much. *Li.8.de Comp. Med secundum locos.cap.3.*

CHAP. XII.
Of Choler.

Cholera in Latin, is an immoderate perturbation of the stomach, caused by vomite both vpward and downeward. The barbarous sort call this disease *Cholerica passio*: they that haue this disease be called of the Latines *Cholerici*. It *Cholerici.* is caused through much crudity and rawnesse of the stomach, and ill digestion, *Causæ.* which many times engendreth of great wickednes of the meates, and sometime through abundance of vicious humours also. The signes whereby this *Signa.* euill is knowne, be very manifest: for they auoyd both vpward and downeward: also there followeth thirst and swet, and short pulse, and drawing vp and stretching out of the muscles of the hands and feete, and specially of the calfe of the legges. Therefore seeing this euill is most sharpe and doth cause verie grieuous swownings, if it endure long, you must do your diligence that you helpe it by and by without any tarying. No Phistian if he see this disease to be engendred through abundance of vicious humours, will in the beginning all at once go about to stop that which is sent forth: for seeing they be vnprofitable and hurtfull, they haue need of purging. Therfore if the patient haue di- *Curatio.* sposition to vomite, and be troubled with vndigested meates remaining in the stomach you must giue him warme water, and then he must vomite by his finger or a feather put into his mouth. But you may not prouoke vomite by ministring of *Aqua mulsa*, nor with water mixed with oile: because these things do increase the fluxes, and cause mordacitie and writhings: also you must helpe the matter that purgeth downeward: for a strange poyson (as it were) being within, doth gnaw the stomach and guts, and draweth the humours from the whole body: you must minister vnto him the easiest purging medicines, as is, *Aloes, Cassia fistularis*, decoction of *Mirobalanes*, and such like. After that the superfluous things be brought forth, then he must rest, and it is good to nourish the sides with oiles of Masticke, or Nard, or Wormewood, and to cause sleepe. You must commixe sometime with the aforesaid other things which can strengthen the stomach, which be aforetaught, and with them you must make ointments. When there appeareth exact and perfect concoction and digestion, vse baths of sweet water, and meates of good iuyce, among which is

broth of chickens with Veriuice, the flesh of small birds of the mountains, rere egges and such like. In drinke let him vse iuice of Pomegranates, or sirupe of Roses, or water wherein burning steele hath beene quenched three or foure times. But when the euill hath endured long, and hath caused slendernesse, and leannesse throughout the body, and specially if the belly or stomach do rest after the remouing from his place, and that the pulse be lesse, and thicker, then you must bind the extreme and vttermost parts with bands, & you must make them fast by much oile. Also apply to the stomach Cataplasmes and Emplasters made of restrictiue and strengthening things, as those be which are made of Dates, *Hipocischidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, Bolearmoniacke, Frankinsence, *Balaustiæ*, Roses, and fruit of Mirtels. Also it is an effectuous remedie, if a linnen cloth wet in the iuice of Crabbes be laid vpon the stomach, or this Cerate, ℞. of the oiles of Roses, Mirtles, & Quinces, an. ℥.j. Mastick, Frankincense, Acatia, ana. ℥.ij. *Hipocischidos*, ℥ j ß. Sanders white and red, an ℥.j. *Balaustiæ*, Dragons bloud, ana. ℥.ß. Bolearmoniacke, ℥ j. Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate to lay vpon the stomach couered with silke. In drinking giue him the measure of one *Cyathe* of cold water to soupe off, that is, ℥.j.ß but you must beware that it be not ouercold, for that being giuen suddenly is vomited vp againe; and sometime with his stupor and coldnesse, it hurteth very extremely the naturall heate, or it causeth inflammation of the stomach; or of some of the bowels. And you may sometime drop into the water a little of the iuice of sharpe Pomegranats, or of Roses, or of the decoction of vine branches. And if those things that be voided forth be very sharpe, and that thirst and burning do trouble the patient, then minister Cucumber seed, with three *Cyathes* of water. Also you may make it commodiously with *Amylum*. Then also minister Endiue or Lettuce, or both sodden in *Posca*. Afterward procure sleepe and rest by all meanes: but if the fluxe wil not be stopped, and the pulse decay betweene this and that, and that cold and swet do take him, and also sometime yelking, you must come to wine that is meanely restrictiue, which is not very strong, but yet sweet and not odoriferous; and put into it, warme if it may be, or elle cold, crummes of bread, or *Alica*, and so by little and little at sundry times let them soupe it vp. But yet they must eschue much quantitie of wine, and by all meanes you must go about to bring them to sleep, by strewing the pauement of the house with Roses, Vine leaues, Brier, and such like afore taught. Also apply odoraments to the nose, as Roses, Quinces, and such like: also annoint soporiferous and sleepy ointments about the temples and forehead. If he go to the stoole still, cast in by a clister *Amylum* with decoction of Poppy heads, for it doth both restraine and coole, and cause sleepe. To stop vomits, it is good to eate and deuoure the iuice of Medlars, Quinces, Pomegranates and Peares. If with these remedies and others that be taught before in the second chapter of this Booke, the sick cannot keep and brooke his meate, you must apply without vpon the stomach a very great cupping glasse lightly. Against the contraction and drawing vp of the muscles you must wind about the muscles, linnen clothes soked in warme oile and apply moist Cerates and ointments wherein is put some *Castoreum*, and oile of *Ireos*. You shall find examples enough of those in the chapter of the Palsey before

Scutum stomachi.

A cyathe is ℥.j ß.

Constriction of vomites.

Against contraction in the muscles.

fore in the first Booke. When the disease decreaseth, you must refresh and restore the patient againe with good meates, as Chickens, Doues, Hennes, Partrich, wood Culuer, and Owsils, or Blacke-birds, and such like.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe Diarrhæa.

Diarrhæa in Latin, is a copious and great fluxe of the wombe without exulceration and inflammation. It is caused through weaknesse of the instruments that belong and do serue to digestion, also through abundance of nourishment & meat that is moist and viscous, and through corruption of the same meate. Moreouer, gnawing and biting of those things that are contained in the belly: also flowing of some things from aboue to the belly, & also weakenesse of the retentiue vertue. The signes whereby the causes are knowne are very manifest. For if this fluxe *Diarrhæa* be caused through the weakenesse of the instruments that serue for digestion, as is the stomach, the bowels, the liuer, and the spleene: you must seeke the signes of these out of their owne chapters. But if it be caused through much deuouring of euill meats & drinks, you may know it partly by the patients tale, & partly also by those things that come forth by siege. For if they be cholericke, they be yellow of colour, and they be not cast out without feeling of gnawing & heate: also the patient feeleth bitternesse of the mouth, thirst, thinne state of the bodie, and other tokens which signifie choler. If it be flegmaticke, those things which come out with the siege shall be contrary to that which is said before of choler. And if humors do flow from the head to the belly, the egestions will appeare frothy, and the temper of the braine will be very moist. If the fluxe be engendred through fulnesse of the whole body, or if it be indicatorie, the signes are rehearsed in another place, and of *Galen li. de plenitudine & crisibus.* And if this fluxe of the wombe be caused through weakenesse of the instruments, the distemper which is cause of this, must be cured and corrected by his contraries, as is taught in the first chapter of this Booke. If this fluxe of the wombe be caused through other causes, and that nature doth labour to driue out of the bodie superfluous and hurtfull matter by this meanes, and that they can easily suffer it which be troubled with it, then you must suffer and watch, til nature hath bestowed all her care and charge: or else also it is good to helpe natures motion; but for to go about to striue with it, and to stop the fluxe, it causeth a worse & greater disease: for those humors which are stopped, being caried vpward, do cause paine in the head, or frensie, or lethargie, or impostumation behind the eares not without danger. Therefore in the beginning you may not stop the fluxe which floweth profitably for the health of the body, but after that the fluxe hath endured long, not onely carrying foorth superfluities, but also melting as it were the state of the body, & consuming the strength, then you must labour to stop it, as well by things giuen in at the mouth, as also cast in at the fundament, and also by things applied outwardly vpon the belly. Therefore if there come foorth excrements of cleane choler, you must change it into a better and a more healthfull state, but yet you may not cure them by stopping of it straightways. For the cholericke matter that is gathered toge-

Causæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Note.

ther, and heaped in the ſtomach, and in the bowell called *Ieiunum*, if it be withholden and kept there ſtill, it hurteth greatly: for it both ouerturneth the ſtomach, and cauſeth inflammations of the bowells; it kindleth thirſt, and reſtoreth feauers, and cauſeth the euills aforeſaid, and generally cauſeth a worſe diſeaſe. Therefore if there be abundance of cholericke humours in the bodie, nature muſt be expelled with eaſie purging medicines, as is, infuſion of Rewbarbe, *Caſſia fiſtularis*, the barkes of Mirobalanes citrine, or Manna. After that giue Cowes milke, or Goats milke warme, being new milked, or ſeeth it at the fire and ſtirre it continually till it be conſumed vnto the third part: which you may do by quenching of red hote iron, or ſteele gads in the milke often, but while it doth ſeeth you muſt take the ſcum or foame off it: for ſurely you can finde no quicker remedy againſt fluxes of choler. And becauſe the milke that is eaten of one that hath a feauer, is wont to turne into a burning ſauour, or alſo ſharpe or ſoure, and ſo cauſeth more hurt then good: therefore if the patient hath a feauer together with this fluxe, you ſhall eſchue miniſtring of milke to him dreſſed after that ſort. But you muſt powre the fourth part of water to the milk, and ſeeth it vntill it be halfe conſumed, and then miniſter it vnto him. If the choler be heaped vp together in the bowels, you muſt caſt in cliſters made of the decoction of Barley, with Sugar Roſet, oile of Roſes, Yolkes of Egges, and ſuch like. At the length, when the cholericke humors be voided out, you muſt miniſter inwardly ſuch medicins as do reſtraine and ſtrengthen, as be, conſerues of Roſes, *Diacotoneon* without ſpices, *Diatrion ſantalon*, Trochiskes of *Spodium*, *Hydromalon*, and ſuch like. And what kind of medicins they muſt be that ought to be applied outwardly, we will ſhew you a litle hereafter. Alſo the fundament muſt be fomented and nouriſhed with a decoction made of ſome reſtrictiue things. If the flux *Diarrhæa* be engendred through flegmaticke humours that be groſſe and tough, or through corruption of them, then you muſt beginne your cure, as you did before, with eaſie purging. Therfore then you muſt miniſter the infuſion of Agaricke with *Mirobalanes emblici*, or ſome ſuch like medicine, which is able to bring foorth the aforeſaid humours. Alſo cliſters are good, ſpecially if there be abundance of clammie humours heaped vp in the bowels: let them be made of the decoction of Centorie, and oile of Rew, and ſuch like. Miniſter within the belly *Diacotoneon* with ſpices, greene Ginger, and other medicines which haue power to heate and drie. Alſo apply outwardly thoſe things which do adde ſtrength. If the fluxe *Diarrhæa* be cauſed through the weakeneſſe of the vertue retentiue, you muſt miniſter and apply thoſe medicines, which are applied againſt other vnmeaſurable fluxes of the wombe. Therefore apply irrigations and ſprinklings of oile *Omphacine*, or oile of Roſes, or oile of the bloſſoms of Apples, with ſome ſoure or ſharpe wine: but oile of Mirtles is of more effect, if there be need of vehement reſtriction, hauing the third or fourth part of wine added to it. And if their bodies be ſtrong, you may ſeeth in that irrigation, Galles, Pomegranate rinds, and *Balauſtia*. If the fluxe endure ſtill, apply Cataplaſmes, Emplaiſters, and Cerates, made of reſtrictiue & drying things, wherof we wil make mention in the next chapter. Alſo this Cerate is effectuous to be made. Take ſeuen Mulberies, or Blacke berries which be ſoure & whitiſh for lacke of ripeneſſe, bray them well and

Cure of Diarrhæa of choler.

Cure of Diarrhæa of flegmaticke humours.

Cure of Diarrhæa of the weakneſſe of the vertue retentiue.

and adde to it oile of Roſes, ℥.ij. Waxe, ℥.j. and make a Cerate. After the voiding of ſuperfluous and hurtfull humours, theſe things heale the fluxe of the wombe, being miniſtred in drinke, that is, Comin, decoction of Maidenhaire, the roote of white Thorne, likewiſe one ʒ. weight of the ſeed of *Apium* miniſtred: for it prouoketh vrine, & turneth the fluxes that be in the bowels thither. Alſo vnripe Mulberies being yet ſoure, if they be dried many dayes in the Sun and ſo kept, if they be beaten and drunke when need requireth, they reſtraine and ſtop the wombe maruellouſly. Alſo they may be brayed & mixed with his meates, as they are wont to vſe *Sumach*, which ſometime is ſodden, the quantitie of an ounce weight with a chicken: but yet blackberies of the brier being vnripe and ſharpe, do bind the belly more, if they be dried as is aforeſaid, and miniſtred in drinke. Among compound medicines theſe are maruellous good, that is, Trochiskes of *Spodium*, of *Terra lemnia*, *Diacotoneon*, *Diatrion ſantalon*, Triacle: and this compound made in Lozenges, is good: ℞. the powder of *Diatrion ſantalon*, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, ana ℈ ij. red Coral, choſen Frankinſence, red Roſes, ana. ʒ.ß. *Spodium*, ʒ.j. ſeeds of Sorel, *Sumach*, ana ℈.j. *Balauſtiæ*, *Acatiæ*, ana. ʒ.ß. Maſticke, ℈ ß. Bolearmoniacke, ℥ j. fine white Sugar, ℔.ß. diſſolue it in the diſtilled waters of Plantaine and Roſes, and make Lozenges. Alſo this Loch is good: ℞ of old conſerues of Roſes, of *Diacotoneon* with ſpices, *Rob de ribes*, *Rob de Barberies*, ana. ℥.ß. *Hydromel*, ʒ.iij. *Diamoron*, ʒ.v. with powder of *Diatrion ſantalon*, ℈ ij. red Coral, ℈ j. *Spodium*, *Balauſtiæ*, ana. ʒ.ß. Bolearmoniack, ʒ.i. ſirupe of Mirtles as much as ſhall ſuffice, & make a Loch. Moreouer you ſhall euer haue this water ready made: ℞. *Sumach*, one quarter, raine water, ℔.iii. in which ſteepe the *Sumach* a day and a night, then boile them, and ſtraine the *Sumach* well and ſtrongly: and in that water ſeeth Rice, or milke, or other meates, or at leaſt way, powre ſome portion of this water to them. If the fluxe *Diarrhœa* be cauſed through flowing of humors from ſome other member of the body, you muſt ſeeke the cure out of their proper chapters. As for example, if the humours flow from the head into the ſtomach, you muſt returne to thoſe things which are ſpoken of before in the chapters againſt diſtillation or rheume, and ſo do likewiſe with other parts of the bodie.

Morſuli.

Ecligma.

A precious water.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the fluxe Lienteria.

LIENTERIA in Greek, is a certaine lightnes, or ſmoothnes of the bowels, euen like as there chanceth of a ſcarre without on the skin of the body. In this diſeaſe the bowels do not hold the meate, but they let it ſlide away before it be changed and perfectly digeſted, euen in the ſame forme and likenes that it was eaten. Therefore in Latin it may well be called *leuitas*, or *leuor inteſtinorum*, and in Engliſh, lightnes or ſmoothnes of the bowels. It is cauſed oftétimes through a grieuous flux *Dyſenteria* by name going before, which cauſeth deepe exulceration of the bowels: then ſcarres that be hard cloſing together and ſmooth do follow: which ſcarres by reaſon of the hard cloſing, will not ſuffer the meates to be diſtributed about the bodie, becauſe the mouths of the veins which are wont to draw nouriſhment from the bowels to théſelues, are now ſtopped. And becauſe of the ſmoothneſſe (as is aforeſaid) the bowels

Cauſa.

suffer the meats to slide out before they be perfectly digested. Also this disease is caused many times through weaknesse and debility of the vertue that should keepe and hold the meates in the stomach. For this vertue being weake and sickly, the food or meates be neither digested nor distributed: but they are cast forth crude, moist, and nothing changed, (the belly being alwayes soluble.) Also sometime it engendreth after long fluxe of the wombe. Also sometime when dropsie water auoideth by the belly, this fluxe *Lienteria* followeth. Therfore of what cause soeuer this fluxe is engendred, the sicke doth taste or feele no meate, and it causeth euill state or plight of the body. Therfore there chanceth to the patient continuall seiges, crude and raw, in colour pale or whitish, vnequall and very watery, without any commixing of bloud and choler. Also he feeleth a burning which spreadeth all ouer the sides, loathing of meate followeth it. It is a good and friendly signe in them that haue had this fluxe long, if there chance vnto them sharpe and sowre belkings: for it betokeneth that the meate doth abide some while in the stomach vntill it beginne to be changed. When this disease chanceth, it is easie to perceiue, that you must refresh and recreate the vertues retentiue and digestiue, as well of the stomach as of the bowels by all meanes, and that may chiefly be done by ministring of conuenient meats, and ordaining of a diet meet to restore and refresh strength. Therefore the flesh of birds of mountaines are good: also Chickens rosted, in whose bellies also must be put *Sumach* or Masticke, and other things which shall be rehearsed in the next chapter. Let the meate which you giue him be little in quantity, and easie of digestion. And if his seiges be sharpe & cholerick, make him meate with Rice and *Alica*, and such like, with the which seeth some restrictiue things, as Peares, Quinces, Medlars, and such other like. Also milke sodden is good for them; but if their seige be flegmaticke, you must minister vnto them contrarie meats. Also commixe somewhat that is pleasant and acceptable to the stomach, as is Annise seed, Comin or *Daucus*. In cholericke seiges let their drinke be Ale: but in flegmaticke let it be wine that is old & hote. And generally let him drinke but little, for much drinke is not onely in this fluxe *Lienteria*, but also in all other fluxes of the wombe, most hurtfull. For curing of this disease, if the fluxe *Lienteria* be engendred through weaknesse of the vertue of the stomach, you must turne to the chapter of weaknes of the stomach, and there seeke the cure. But to be short, you must minister both within and without to the body those things that do restraine, and that can strengthen as well the stomach as also the bowels. Therfore minister sirups of Wormwood, and Mints, and other electuaries which do strengthen the stomach. And you must apply those things outwardly, which be rehearsed before in the chapter of *Diarrhœa*, & shalbe taught in the next chapter following. But this medicin is specially good: ℞. oiles of Masticke, Wormwood, Mints, and Mirtles, ana ℥.ij. powders of Cinamon chosen, Cloues and Galingale, ana ℈.j. *Balaustiæ* and red Roses, ana. ℈.ß. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment: or vse this Cerate: ℞. oiles of Masticke, Wormwood, & of Quinces, ana. ℥.j. oile of Mints ℥.ß. *Calamus aromaticus*, Cloues, Frankinsence, an. ℥.j. wood of Aloes, ℈.ß. red Roses, white Sanders and red, ana. ℥.ß Mastick, Comin, ana. ℥.j. *Hypocischidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, ana. ℥ j.ß. *Gallia Moschata*, ℈.j. with Waxe and Turpentine

Signa.

6. Aphor. 1.

Victus ratio.

Cure of Lienteria of weaknes of the vertue of the stomacke.

Vnguentum.

Cerotum.

as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Moreouer, to those that you coniecture haue a scarre, the eating of sharpe things is profitable; for it causeth a certaine refrication and rubbing open againe of the scarre: also it reuiueth againe the naturall heate, and doth somewhat refresh the digestiue vertue. Therfore in this case (as *Galen* witnesseth *in cap. 95. Artis Medicæ*) they be good which do scoure and wipe away sufficiently, and restraine a little: therefore alwayes commixe scouring things with restrictiue medicines. In all other causes of this fluxe *Lienteria*, you must vse the same kind of cure which you do vse to them that be afflicted with the fluxes *Diarrhæa* or *Dysenteria*.

If Lienteria be caused of a scarre.

CHAP. XV.

Of the fluxe Dysenteria.

DYSENTERIA in Greek properly is nothing else but an exulceratiō of the bowels. The Latins call this disease *Tormina*, because through it the bowels are tormented & fretted very much with paine. We said before, properly, because the Greeks reckon foure kinds of bloudy *Dysenteria*, as witnesseth *Galen, lib 3. de Symptomatum causis*. The first is, when bloud is sent forth by circuite through some part of the body being cut off, or through some exercise of the former life, being let passe for a time. The second is, when watery bloud, like vnto the water wherein bloudy flesh being new killed, hath beene washed and soaked, is sent out: which chanceth through weakenesse of the liuer. The third is, when there is sent foorth an humour more shining and blacker then that which is naturall, being commixt of bloud and melancholy. And of these, we do not speak here, but we speak only of the fourth kind, in the which many times by little and little, and betweene whiles somtimes is cast out pure bloud; also sometime clodded bloud, or shauing of the bowels, cometh out with pure bloud. Also many times is cast out thicke dung sprinckled with drops of bloud. This fourth kind, as it is said, is caused through exulceration of the bowels, which sometime chanceth through outward causes, as of cold, heate, and moistnesse. Also through drinking of pernicious and naughtie medicins, as is, Scammony, and such like. Also through eating of fruit, through cruditie and rawnesse, or through eating of sharpe and soure meates, or through sharpe & gnawing humours flowing from the whole body to the belly, or engendred in the belly it selfe. And this beginneth after *Tenasmus* sometime, and sometime by it selfe. The excrements first are cholericke, diuerse, and fatty, by reason of the fat that cleaueth within in the bowels being melted. But when the superficies of the bowels is altogether bare, and exulceration doth abide about it, then the excrements that come forth, be full of dregs and bloudie. And when the exulceration hath pierced deeper, then also is sent forth filthinesse, hauing as it were little peeces of parchment commixed with it. And if it be not stopped, it eateth and feedeth in short time the places nigh vnto it, and it sendeth forth mattery excrements, such as are wont to runne from dead bodies. When the small guts are exulcerate, there abideth paine about the nauell, the excrements are cholericke, hauing the colour of a leeke, and altogether garnished with sundry colours, commixed with much ordure or dung. The patient feeleth griefe and frettings, and gnawing, and loosing, so that the sicke is not

Foure kinds of Dysenteria.

1

2

3

4

Causa.

Signes of exulceration of the small bowells.

farre from fainting and failing of heart. Also they are troubled with thirst, and be feauerous, and the ordure cometh forth crude and raw, and the bowell called *Ieiunum* is exulcerate, but that is very seldome: but if it do chance, the egestions do appeare more crude and raw, hauing blacke bloud wrapped with it vehemently, and yellow choler, and much thirst, and also dispositions to vomite, do trouble the sicke. And sometime they vomite and abhorre meats. Also there remaineth vehement paine about the nauill, and sometime also malignant feuers do engender. And they that are so diseased, be waxen ill coloured, and do sweate out euen till fainting and failing of heart. Their strength doth quickly faile them, and they be not farre from death. But if the vlceration be engendred in the great bowells, then the ordure that cometh forth is pure, and much, and heaped together, and cometh out with windinesse, and frothinesse sometime. Also fatnesse is commixed with it, and bloud swimmeth aloft: as *Galen* sheweth largely *in lib.6. De male affectis locis.* For it helpeth greatly to the cure to know this thing. For if the exulceration be in the vpper and small bowels, you must go about the cure by medicins giuen in at the mouth: but if it be in the great and lower bowels, it is more conuenient to throw in clisters. The beginning of the cure of them that haue the fluxe *Dysenteria*, from whencesoeuer the fluxe proceedeth, must be with quiet and rest, and little meate. Therefore if a feauer do not let it, let him eate milke new milked, while it is yet warme: or in stead of it, minister milke sodden, as we taught before in the chapter of *Diarrhæa*. For this first cleanseth and purgeth downeward, and tempereth together those things which be in the body, and last of all it stoppeth & bindeth the womb. But you must giue him moreouer wet bread after the taking of the milk. Also pottage prepared of milk, hath both the nature of medicine, and also causeth good nourishment, as is, Rice with milke, *Amylum* and egs mixed with milke. Also soupings or pottage made of *Alica*, and *Milium*, *Sumach* being added to it, is good. Also you must prepare meats of dry bread, powring to it *Posca*, or iuice of Dates, or Quinces, or of Peares, or of *Sumach*. Also minister Chits wel rosted with Plantaine, or sodden with Quinces brayed: the vsing of oiles is not necessary nor needfull, but you shall minister, to taste vpon, Endiue both wild and tame sodden, and Plantaine, and Coleworts twise sodden. Giue him also the yolks of egs rosted. Flesh is not good to be giuen to them that haue the fluxe *Dysenteria*, because they be of a stronger nourishment, and do striue against digestion: but yet you must giue it to them that be troubled with this disease long. Among all kind of flesh, you must specially chuse birds, as is, Partrich, & wood Culuers, & birds of mountains. Among foure footed beasts, Goats flesh and Hares flesh are good: but you must forbid him the flesh of cattell that draw, and of all other foure footed beasts. From the beginning let him vse for his drinke raine water which is not fallen from houses couered with lead: for such water being drunke, euen of them that be whole, engendreth the *Dysenteria*: and if good raine water be not present, you must vse running water, wherein burning steele hath beene quenched. But if the stomach be diseased, or if his strength be cast downe, giue him wine, also let it be restringent, and not very old. Sleepe is the best remedy for them that haue the *Dysenteria*. For this cure you must vse such remedies as do restraine, stop,

Signes of exulceration of the great bowels.

Diet.

Lenticulæ.

Potus.

Curatio.

ſtop, drie vp, and prouoke vrine, and that do cary the fluxe ſome other way. Reſtrictiue things be theſe; Sorell ſeed, *Sumach*, Gauls, Pomegranat rindes dried, Brier root, *Laudanum*, *Acatia*, *Hypociſchis*, *Balauſtium*, Willow leaues, Comfery roots, leaues and ſeed, *Rheum Ponticum* if it may be gotten, roote of *Althæa*, Horſetaile, Corall, Maſticke, Hares creame, Dragons bloud, the Barke of Frankinſence, *Terra lemnia*, roote of *Verbaſcus*, Plantaine ſeed, white Daiſies, a kind of Mallows called *Alcea*, *Oxis*, *Sanicula*, *Ophrys*, *Ophioglossum*, Knotgraſſe, Shepheards purſe, Walwort, *Pedelion*, *Numularia*, Dragons the male, ſharpe Mulberies, kernels of Grapes, the barke of Maces, & ſuch like. Theſe things do ſtop and make temperate the biting, gnawing, and ſharpneſſe of humors, as is *Amylum*, Gum tragacanth, tallow of Goates, Kids, Swine, Geeſe and Hens. Theſe do drie vp, Hares creame, Harts horne burnt, the ſhels of Crabs of running water, and Sage. Things to prouoke vrine, you ſhall find in his owne place. Therefore if the exulceration be in the great bowels, you muſt miniſter cliſters firſt, ſuch as haue power to ſcoure and cleanſe, as is this: ℞. of the decoction of whole Barly, ℔.j. *Mel roſarum* ſtrained, ℥.j. Sugar roſet, ℥.ß. yolks of egs in number two, oile of Roſes, ℥.iij. commixe all together, and make a cliſter. Abſterſion and cleanſing being firſt done, caſt in thoſe things that do glutinate and ioyne together, as is this: ℞. red Roſes, Plantaine, leaues of Comfery, Knotgraſſe, Primroſes, ana. M.ß. *Balauſtiæ*, ʒ.j. Rice burned, ℥.j. roote of Comfery, ℥ ß. ſeethe all together in water wherein Steele hath been quenched, vntill the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine it, and take of the iuice of that decoction, ℥ xij. iuice of Plantaine, ʒ.ij. *Acatia*, *Hypociſchidis*, ana ℈.ij. Bole armoniacke *Sanguis draconis*, ana. ℈.j. Goates tallow, ℥.j. oiles of Roſes, Mirtels, Quinces, ana. ʒ.j. commixe all together, and make a cliſter. Sometime it doth not onely require things to ſtop the vehemencie of the paine, but alſo medicines that be ſtupefactiue. Therefore then it is good to vſe this cliſter. ℞. of Goats milke, or of Cowes milke, ℔.i. freſh Butter, ℥.j. Goates greaſe, ℥.ß. Gum tragacanth, ana. ʒ.j. yolks of egs in number iij. pils of Hounds tong, ʒ.j. oile of Roſes, ℥.iij. commixe all together, and make a cliſter. If there be need of more vehement ſtupefaction, you muſt augmẽt the weight of the pils, or elſe you muſt adde to the aforeſaid weight of pils, three or foure graines of *Opium*, or more or leſſe, according to the vehemencie of the paine, and the ſtate of the body If the exulceration be in the ſmall and thin bowels, then it rather requireth medicines that are giuen in at the mouth. Therefore the decoction of reſtrictiue things which is afore taught, is good, if you commixe with it ſirupe of Roſes, and Mirtels, and ſo miniſter it: and alſo other medicines which are taught in the chapter of *Diarrhæa*, are good. Alſo you may conueniently miniſter this potion. ℞. of the decoction of the root of Comfery, or of ſome other reſtrictiue thing, ℥.iij. ſirupe of Roſes, ℥.j. ſirupe of Mirtels, ℥.ß. powder of the Trochiſks of *Spodium*, Plantaine ſeed, Bole armoniacke, ana ℈ ij commixe all together, and make a potion. Beſides thoſe things that are rehearſed in the chapters of *Diarrhæa* and *Lienteria*, you muſt apply outwardly vpon the belly this Cerate. ℞. of the oiles of Maſticke, Roſes, Mirtels and Quinces, ana. ℥.j. meale of Barley and Fenugreeke, ana. ʒ.j. of red Roſes, Plantaine, ana. ʒ.j. *Balauſtiæ*, *Sanguis draconis*, ana. ʒ.ß. Bole armoniack, ʒ.j. *Hypociſchidis*, *Acatia*, Maſtick,

Obtundentia.

Reſiccantia.

Cure if it be in the great bowels.

Cliſter adſtringens.

Cliſter glutinans.

Cliſter dolorem leniens.

Potio.

Optimum Ceratum.

ana.ʒ.ij. with Waxe and Rosin, as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. By the examples aforesaid, you may make many other remedies, which we ouerpasse heere.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Tenasmus.

Cause.

TENASMVS, is a continuall desire to go to the stoole or siege, which the patient cannot deferre nor eschue, and yet he auoydeth nothing, except it be a little bloud, or filthy matter like sneuill. It is caused oftentimes through outward cold, or through humors sharpe and cholericke, or of salt fleame, or impostumation, or of inflammation ingendred in the straight gut. Also many times the stopping of hard dung in the blind gut may cause *Tenasmus*. The Phisition may easily know if it be caused of outward cold, by the tale of the sicke, because either he hath sitten vpon cold things, or he hath taken much cold in winter, or he hath taried long in cold water: you may know the humours by that which he auoydeth, which either be cholericke or flegmaticke. In a botch or bile, his egestion is matter & corruption, and he feeleth pricking in the fundament. Inflammation causeth swelling of the right bowel, & grieuous paine together with a feuer: abundance of dung causeth feeling of grieuous distention, and stretching out about the bottome of the belly. The cure is diuers, according to the diuersitie of causes. Therfore if the *Tenasmus* be caused of cold, you must minister pure and vnmixed wine hote, and you must sprinkle, foment and nourish the share, and the parts about the priuie members with hote oiles and foments, as are, oiles of Rew and Lillies: also branne sodden in wine, and put in a bagge, may well be applied to the fundament. Also it is good to throw in clisters made of the decoction of wild Mints, Origan, Calamint, Cammomill, Sothernwood, seed of Annise, Fennell, and such like, putting to it oiles of Dill, Cammomill, and Lillies. Also it is maruellous good if you take a very old Tile which is blacke with smoake, and bray it with the geare that is contained in it, then commixe it together with seething vineger, and bind it vp in a cloth, & apply it to the fundament by & by after he hath auoided any thing. But if the *Tenasmus* be caused through cholericke humours withholden, and remaining in the bowels and fundament, you must cast in clisters which haue vertue and power to scoure, wash and cleanse, as is this: ℞. of the licour of the decoction of Barley, ℔.j. Sugar roset, ℥.j.ſſ. *Mel Rosarum*, ℥.j. yolks of egges two, oile of Roses, ℥.iij. commixe them, and make a clister: he must eschue all sharpe things, and he must vse things meanly cold and moist, and all those things which do stop and temperate the sharpnesse of choler. If *Tenasmus* be caused of flegmaticke humors, it shall be healed like that which is caused of cold, onely adding to, and commixing with the clisters, such medicines as haue vertue to purge fleame, as is *Electuarium nidum*, or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Benedicta laxatiua*. And if *Tenasmus* be engendred of inflammation, cast in broth of Ptisan, wherein hath been sodden a few red Roses: or if vehement inflammation do trouble him, minister this clister: ℞. of the licour of the decoction of Plantaine, ℥.v. oile of Roses, ℥ ij. the white of one egge, commixe them together and make a clister. Outwardly you must sprinckle and annoint the place be-

Signa.

Curatio.

Tenasmus of cold.

Tenasmus of cholericke humours.

Clister abstergens.

Tenasmus of flegmaticke humours.

Tenasmus of inflammation.

Clister.

tweene

tweene the priuy members and the fundament with oile of Rew, and Mirtels: or apply this foment: ℞. red Roses, Plantaine, ana. M.j. *Balaustiæ*, ℥. iij. *Sidiorum*, ℥.j. Mirtell berries, ℥.ij. leaues of Brier, ℥.j. seeth all together in sufficient water, vntill the third part be consumed, then wet a sponge in the licour of that decoction, and apply it to the fundament. Moreouer, when there is need of suppuration, rotting or dissoluing, apply foments made of the decoction of the roote of *Althæa*, of Fenugreeke, Cammomill, Melilot, and Bran. If the *Tenasmus* be caused of an vlcer or botch, first cast in the things which haue an abstersiue and cleansing vertue, and then afterward things that do glutinate and ioyne together must be vsed, euen as you did in the fluxe *Dysenteria*. Also this ointment put into the fundament, is good: ℞. oile of Roses, ℥.j. ß. the musci-lage of gumme *Tragacantha*, ana. ℥.iij. Ceruse, burnt Lead, ana. ℥.ß *Aloes*, Frankinsence, ana. ℈.j. Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherein dip linnen clothes, and put them into the tuell. If the paine be wonderfull great, you may adde to the aforesaid things, *Opium*, ℈.j. If the *Tenasmus* be caused through multitude and abundance of dung, then in the beginning the dung must be brought out by little and little with soluble and gentle clisters, as this is: ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Mercurie, Beets, leaues of blacke Violets, ana. M.j. seeds of Fenugreeke and Lineseed, ana, ℥.ß. boile them all in sufficient quantitie of water to the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction. ℔.j. *medullæ Cassiæ fistularu*, ℥.j. ß. common oile, ℥.iij. Salt beaten, ℥.j. and make a clister. But of this one thing you must specially beware, that in this case you do minister no purgation at the mouth, for that would bring great perill and destruction to the patient, by reason of drawing of moe excrements from the whole bodie thither.

Fomentum.

Discussiues.

Cure of Tenasmus caused of an vlcer.

Vnguentum.

Tenasmus of multitude of dung.

Clister lenitiue.

Note.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Cholicke.

THe Cholicke, or paine which is bred in the gut called *Colon* of the Greeks, is caused many waies: but it hath foure speciall causes. For sometime it is engendred through grosse and flegmaricke humours fallen downe within the thinne skinne of the gut *Colon*. Also sometime through windinesse, which hath no roome to get out. Also it is caused through inflammation of the grosse & thicke gut stretching out and troubling or vexing. Also it is wont to engender through sharpe and gnawing humours, which do afflict and vexe the aforesaid bowell vehemently. Those that haue the cholicke engendred of a grosse and flegmaticke humour, they be grieued and vexed aloft, all ouer the *Abdomen*, that is, the place which is vnder the mouth of the stomach: specially they are grieued where the gut *Colon* lieth: for there they feele paine as though the gut were braied or bored through. Also they be fretted, & haue disposition to vomite, belkings, sundry and strange vomitings, and specially of fleame. Also the wombe is letted and stopped, and sendeth forth nothing, not so much as wind. Also the dung which sometime cometh forth, doth looke like Oxes dung, and it is light and full of wind. And there goeth before these things continuall vsing of meates that be very cold and of a grosse iuyce, also filling with meates, ill digestion, and crudities, idlenesse, and such as be adioyning to these.

Causæ.

Signes of a grosse humor.

Signes of windinesse.

Signes of inflammation.

Those that haue the cholicke caused of windinesse, they feele extension, stretching forth and bolning. They that haue the cholicke caused through inflammation, they feele inward burning and heate, & no small feuer: also retention both of the vrine and ordure. Also they are troubled with thirst, burning heate, disposition to vomite, and vomiting specially of choler without any ceasing of the euill at all. And this is the most grieuous and worst kind of cholick, which doth threaten to turne into the paine of the *Iliaca passio*. Those that haue the cholicke engendred of sharpe and gnawing humours, they be troubled and vexed with burning thirst and watching, yea and small feuers; the vrine is made sharpe, and cholericke humours are throwne out oftentimes, going to the stoole doth raise greater paine or torment. Also meates and drinkes that be hot, being receiued do prouoke it grieuously. The diet and cure of this disease is diuers, according to the diuersitie of the causes. Therefore when grosse and clammie humors do cause the cholicke, the whole diet must be extenuate and made thinne. Therfore let the bread which the sicke shall eate, be new and wel baked in an ouen or fornace. Flesh is good, specially of birds, as Hens, Partrich, wood Culuers, Turtles, Blackebirds, and Doues: he must eschue all kinde of fowles which do swim or liue in waters, all those things which do abound with many superfluities. Among foure footed beasts, the flesh of Calues & Kids are good. He must eschue al kind of pulse, which do maruelous hurt in this disease. For pot-herbs you must vse Fennell, *Apium*, *Asperage*, and such like. Also it will not hurt to take Garlicke and Onions raw. To be short, let his food be easie of digestion, and engendring good iuyce. Let him eschue fulnesse and cruditie: he must drinke wine that is somewhat restrictiue, white, thin, shining, of meane age, temperately allayed, and let him drinke but little. For the cure of the cholicke caused of grosse humors, you must cure it so, that you do not heate vehemently with no medicines, for such remedies do spread abroad, puffe vp, and make windy all cold and grosse humors, which puffing vp and spreading in the bowels, doth cause more vehement paine. Therefore it is good to diuide, cut, and digest those humors without vehement paine or heat, & by vsing of those things which do not puffe vp and make windie. Therefore in his sharpe & extreme paine make irrigations of the oiles of Rew, Cammomill, and Dill. Also make foments and *Sacculi* of *Althæa*, of Mil, and Bran. Also clisters made with the oiles aforesaid, and with the decoction of the aforesaid herbs are maruellous good, or with the decoction of the root of wilde Cucumbers, putting to it Comin or Rew, with Goose grease or Hens grease, after this fort: ℞. Mallows, *Althæa*, Cammomill, Mercurie, Dill, ana. M.j. Origan, Calamint, Peniroyall, ana. M.ß. seeds of Flaxe, Fenugreeke, Comin, Louage, ana. ℥. iij. seeth all together with well water of iust quantitie, vntill the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction being strained, ℔. i. *Hiera picra*, ℥ ß. *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥ v. of *Electuarium nidum*, ℥. j. ß of *Mel rosarum* strained, ℥. ß. oiles of Cammomill, Dill, & Rew, ana. ℥.j. the yolkes of egs in number two, common salt, ℥.j. commixe all together, and make a clister. Also the putting in of suppositaries, & annointing of the fundament made by iuice of *Cyclaminum*, with Hony and Saltpeter, or Centorie with Hony and Saltpeter do profit. Example of a suppositarie is this: ℞ of Hony sodden, ℥.j.ß. powder of *Hiera picra*, ℥.j.

Signes of sharpe and gnawing humours.

Diet for the cholicke caused of flegmaticke & tough humours.

Cure of cholicke caused of grosse humors.

Clyster.

Colocin-

Colocinthidos, ℈.j. Salt Gemme, ℈.ß. commixe them, & make long suppositaries. Also vomiting before supper, if the patient can vomit easily, doth helpe aboue all other things. Moreouer after the purging, if the paine hath been prolonged for many dayes, let him go into a great vessell of hote oile, if it may be had. Also it is good to sit in the decoction of *Althæa*, Peniroiall, Laurell leaues, Fenugreeke, Cammomill, Motherwort, Dill, & such like. The most conuenient medicine against the cholicke, is wine wherein wormwood hath bin infused or sodden, if they need drinking after a bath: it is also very profitable for them that they thirst not. Also the decoction of the herbe it selfe, when it hath once boiled being cõmixed with wine, may commodiously be ministred after a bath. Also *Castoreum* continually druuke, doth destroy the disease vtterly: and it is better then al medicins. It is ministred to the sicke, ʒ.j. in three *Cyathes* of *aqua mulsa*. And if the paine do not cease and rest, you must minister *Diatrion piperion*, or *Theriaca*. It that the paine be vehement, it is good to vse medicines that do meanly ease, make soluble, and mitigate, a(wel put in beneath, as also giuen to drink. For you must eschue those things that do stupefact & astony strongly, because they do somwhat ease & mitigate, but they make the disease lõger by making the humors more grosse, & thickning of the passages of the bowels. If the cholicke be caused of windines, you must cast in clisters that do dissolue wind, as this is, ℞. Sothernwood, Origan, Peniroial, Calamint, Cammomil, ana. M.j. Rew, Mints, wild Mints, ana. M.ß. seeds of Anise, Fenel, Carawaies, Comin, Dill, Louage, & Daucus, ana. ʒ.ij. seeth all together vnto the third part: thẽ take of the licour of that decoction strained, ℔.j. *Hierapicra*, *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℥.ß. *Castoreum*, ʒ.j. powder of *Diacuminum* ʒ.ij oiles of Rew and Dil, ana. ℥.i.ß. commõ Salt, ʒ.j.ß. commix them together, & make a clister. Also there may be added to the aforesaid things the confection of Bayberries: for there is nothing of more effect to dissolue & driue away windinesse. Also it is good to minister daily the quantitie of one hazel Nut of the said decoction or electuary of Laurell berries in the decoction of some cutting and extenuating medicine. Apply outwardly vpon the belly aloft, fomẽts & irrigations, of such things as do disperse & scatter windinesse, as these be, besides the aforenamed things, *Nigella*, *Amylum*, Parsley, bitter Almonds, blacke Pepper, wild Mints, Bay berries, Wormewood, Nettle seed, Gladon, Marioram, Cinamon and others: of these therefore you may make cataplasmes, foments, and bagges. But that which farre excelleth all the rest (as *Galen* witnesseth) is a great cupping glasse fastened lightly with abundant flame to the whole belly aloft, which doth maruellously as it were by enchantment. Let the sicke beware of and eschue wine that is alayed, and drinking of cold water, also from vsing of milke and other things that do coole, and from meates and drinkes which engender windinesse. And let him rather vse to drinke wine that is vnmingled and pure, and let him vse a diet which doth heate, and cut, or diuide. If the cholicke be caused of inflammation of the bowells, you must open the veine in the arme. But if difficultie and hardnesse of making water, do rule and beare sway, you must draw bloud from the veines of the anckle. Also you must vse the aforesaid remedies, excepting sharpe things, and vehement purgers. And you must rather vse clisters mitigatiue and easing paine, also Cata-

Glans.
Vomitus.
Insession.
Vinum absynthytes.
Castoreum.
Cure of the cholicke caused of windinesse.
Clister.
Compositio ex baccis lauri.
Note.
Diet.
Cure of cholicke caused of inflammation.

plasmes and irrigations, and going downe into oile. Also fasten to them cupping glasses. Let the diet be thinne, almost the diet of feuers, vntill the inflammation be slaked. And if the cholicke be caused through sharpe and gnawing or fretting humours, it is good to put in at the fundament those things that can wash out and purge those humors without any mordacity and gnawing: as is broth of *Ptisan*, or the decoction of Fenugreeke, Lineseed, Cammomill, and *Althæa*, with fresh Goose grease, or Hennes grease, and oile of Roses. This clister is specially good: ℞. leaues of Violets, both the tame Endiues, leaues of *Althæa*, Cammomill, ana. M.j ß. seeds of Fenugreeke, Flaxe, ana. ʒ. ß. boile these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed. Then take of the licour of that decoctiõ being strained, ℥.xiij *Cassia fistula*, ℥.j. *Hierapicra*, ʒ. vj. oile of Roses, ℥ ij. oile of Dill, ℥.j, Goose grease, and Hens grease, ana. ʒ.iii. yolks of egs, in number two, commixe them all, and make a clister. Moreouer you must not only purge the hurtfull & corrupt humors, but also you must temper and moderate them. Therefore ye must vse baths of sweete water, for they do mitigate, and also prouoke sleep: for which purpose minister sirupe of Violets, and Roses, and such like, which are able to temperate and stoppe the violence of the gnawing humours. And also he must vse souping meates, as *Ptisan*, and broths of fishes of stonie places. He must abstaine from all hote and sharpe things, whether they be meates, or medicines, or cataplasmes, or foments, or irrigations that be hote: as also he must abstaine from drinking of wine, especially from old wine. And to be short, let his whole diet be cold and moist. If the paine be not a whit released, but do rage more vehemently, then you must come to the vsing of stupefactiue things. For in this disease they do not only pleasure and profit by astonying of the sense and feeling, but also because they make the thin humors more thicke and grosse, and do quench the intollerable heat. Among stupefactiue things *Philonium* is special good, of the which you may minister for the most part one whole dram. Also pils of houds tongue are maruellous good, if, as is afore taught, you do make sixe pils of ʒ i. and minister one of them to be swallowed before they go to bed. But there be very many things which do helpe the cholicke with their whole vertue and substance: among the which, white dung of a Wolfe taken with water or thin white wine, is not the worst. That dung is better which hangeth on hearbs or bushes, then that which toucheth the ground. Also the said dung of the wolfe easeth the cholicke being bound to the Ilions. Greene Mints, as *Aetius* affirmeth, sodden a while, and drunke three daies, healeth cholickes.

Diet.
Cure of cholicke caused of sharpe and gnawing humours.
Clister.
Victus ratio.
Stupefacientia.
Philonium.
Pilulæ de Cynoglossa.
Lib.9.cap.31.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Iliaca passio.

THe *Iliaca passio*, is a disease causing most grieuous and deadly paine in the small guts. The Latines do call this disease *Voluulus* and *Conuoluulus*. The barbarous do call it *Iliaca passio*. This disease is caused through continual corruption & crudity of meats, but specially of fat meats, which, if they be without corruption, & being withholden, they engender obstructions in the small guts. Also it is engendred of certaine stripes & blows in certaine places in which the small guts do lie: also through vehement cold, restraining and withholding of the

Causa.

the excrements. Moreouer, through abundant drinking of cold things, specially, if much be taken when they sweate. Also it chanceth to them whose bowels be fallen into the coddes together with the dung: and being violently thrust backe from thence againe, and through that it is inflamed. Also it is caused through drinking of deadly medicins, & through hard dung being impact about the thin bowel. For the most part this disease is engendred either through inflammation, or through obstruction of the drie dung. This disease is common to children, but yet they escape it through helpe of naturall humiditie. It is not wont to chance very often to old men: but if they chance to haue it, they almost be neuer rid of it. They that haue this disease haue most vehement paine, & some swelling of the thin & small guts stretcheth out, that it seemeth wounden together like a string called *Chorda*, whereupon many do call this disease *Chordapson*: also there is ouermuch moistnesse of the stomach, loosenesse, vaine and empty belkings, and doing no ease, rumbling and noise of the bowells, perfect stopping and letting of the dung and of windinesse. If the euill do increase and waxe greater, he auoideth all vpward, and therefore hee vomiteth vp flegme and choler; he hath coldnesse of the whole bodie, and paine. Also to many there chanceth difficulty & hardnesse of breathing. Moreuer to them that shall die there chanceth cold sweat, difficultie and hardnesse of making water, yea the fundament is so bound and close, that no small instrument will enter in: and sometime dung is cast vp by vomiting. For the cure of this disease, you must cure children with irrigations, cataplasmes, clysters, suppositaries and foments, as is declared in the chapter of the Cholicke. But the cure of them that be of age must differ according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if *Iliaca passio* be caused of cruditie and ill digestion, and through deuouring and eating of many and diuerse meates which yet remaine in the stomach, you must prouoke vomite with things aforesaid. But if there do remaine no raw and vndigest meates in the stomach, you must go about by all means to draw out beneath aswell windinesse, as also the dung: and that must be done by clisters, suppositaries & annointings with great diligence in each of them. Therefore you must cast in this clister. ℞. Mercury, Rew, leaues of *Althea*, Centory, ana M.j. Hysop, Calamint, Wormwood, ana. M.j. ß. root of *Althea* ℥ j. root of wild Cucumber, ʒ.j. ß. seeds of Flaxe and Fenugreeke, ana. ʒ iij. seedes of Commin, ʒ ii. boile them in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained ℥ xiiij. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥.j. fresh Butter, *mel Rosarum* strained, ana. ℥.ß. oiles of Rew, and Dill, ana. ℥ j ß. common Salt, ʒ j. commixe them together and make a clister, and cast it in before meate: but if the euill be vehement, cast it in also after meate. And you must warne the patient that hee do hold it as long as he can. Also you must make suppositaries, as you do for the cholicke, putting to them seeds of Rew, Commin, and stalkes of Coleworts. And you must make them the longer that they may pierce the deeper. Also you must annoint the fundament with iuice of *Cyclaminum*, or Hony with *Nitrum* or Saltpeter. The foments and cataplasmes wherewith this euill is cured, be almost such as are spoken of in the chapter of the Cholicke. Also foments made of Wooll wet in oile, wherein Comin, Dill, Rew, & Cresses haue bin sod-

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it come of cruditie.

Clyster.

Glandes.

Illutions.

Fomenta.

Cataplasma.

den, be very good. Also emplaisters made of Linseed, Fenugreek, Barly meale, Darnell meale, Rew, Comin, seeds of Dill, and *Apium* are good. Also it is good to descend into a vessell filled with water and oile: but seethe in the water *Althæa*, Rew and Dill. After these, fasten on cupping glasses, first lightly to places somewhat far off, and then also to the places that are grieued, making deep scarification. Also it is good to minister purgations, specially if the dung be drawne out first by such things as are before rehearsed. It is maruellous good if they vomit by drinking Dill sodden. After drinking, cast bread into scalding water, and minister peeces of it to eate by and by hote. They that haue the *Illiaca passio* engendred through taking of some venimous medicin, you must giue them much warme water, and let them drinke it, and constraine them to vomit. After that you must giue them hote oile in drinke, or fat broth, that they may vomit againe. After within a few dayes giue him *Theriaca* dissolued in wine, and let him eate meates of good iuyce. And if the obstruction do continue still, emptie the belly with milke, with a little Scammonie, or *Aloes*, or some other purging medicine. If the *Iliaca passio* be engendred through inflammation, you must beginne with bloudletting: then you must fasten cupping glasses about the inflamed parts, scarifying thē. Also cast in clisters made of the decoction of Mallowes, Fēnugreeke, Lineseed, with Oile and Butter. Also apply outwardly those things that are good against inflammations, & do ease paine, you must prescribe vnto them a most thinne diet. If the *Iliaca passio* be caused through falling of the bowels into the cods, you must by and by labour (the patient lying vpright) to thrust backe againe the bowels that are fallen downe to the share, and keep it vp easily without violence or pressing of it together, and with bands and trusses applied, conuenient for it.

Cucurbitula. Purgatio.

Cure of Iliaca passio caused of poison.

Cure if it be of inflammation

Cure if it be of the falling of the bowels into the coddes.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Wormes.

THere be three kinds of wormes. The first be round and long, named *Teretes*. The second be broad, called therefore *Lati*. The third are called *Ascarides*. The first kind of wormes called *Teretes*, according to their thicknesse they be round and a hand breadth in length, and sometime longer, and they be commoner then other. They be often in the slender and small guts, & they go into the stomach, and therefore they are voided often by the mouth, and to some also they come out at the nosethrills. And this kind of wormes is peculiar to infants, & children, & boies & girles. The second kind of wormes called *Lati*, be broad & long like a gard or band. They be of incredible length (as *Plinie* witnesseth) *lib.2.ca.33*. Sometime they are seene three hundred foot long, and sometime more. This kind of worme (as *Paulus* & *Aetius* witnesse) is nothing else but a permutation and changing of the thinne filmes going about the small guts within, into a certaine liuing body, that will moue and stirre. The third kind of wormes called *Ascarides*, be thin and short like small wormes. They be found most commonly in the right gut, and in the end of the fundament. All the aforesaid kinds be engendred and caused of crude, raw, grosse, and flegmaticke matter, and through inconuenient rottennesse, such as is gathered specially in children, and in other great eaters. They that haue round

Teretes.

Lati.

Ascarides.

Causa.

round wormes do feele incredible gnawing of the bowels, and of the ſtomach, thinne and ſmall coughs, and oftentimes prouoking and drie. In many there followeth yelking and ſleepe with mouing of the ſtomach: and alſo they do arife vp vnreaſonably. Many do awake and leape vp with noyſe and crying out, and fall aſleep againe: but ſome do both put forth their tongue, and ſhut their eies, and be quiet, and keep ſilence, and do fret and fume with them which raiſe them, becauſe they cannot watch, they be ſo weake. Some haue their eyes ſprinkled with bloud, and a pulſe that is vnequall, obſcure, failing and running backe. Alſo to many there chanceth loſſe of appetite. Children, while they do ſleepe, chew their tongue, and alſo faſhioning of their mouth as though they ſucked or receiued meate. Alſo to ſome there chanceth gnaſhing of the teeth. But theſe things are done by litle and litle, and betweene whiles. To ſome they runne forth into the ſtomach, and do cauſe gnawing and diſpoſition to vomit, and the patients refuſe meate: & if they be compelled to eate, they ſcarce can ſwallow that which they take, or they vomit it vp againe. In many the bellie doth throw out corrupt meats, and is puffed vp like as it were a timpany. The reſt of the body it doth conſume and make leane without reaſon, neyther faſting going before, nor vnmeaſurable purging being made. Alſo it chanceth ſometime the face to be made verie red, ſpecially about the balles of the cheekes: but this colour turneth againe into ſwartneſſe. Some do ſpeake fooliſh things in their ſleep, like franticke perſons. Some change the place that they lie downe in, and tumble and caſt themſelues from place to place: they increaſe feuers in them without order, with vehement coldneſſe of the extreme parts, hauing fits the third or fourth day without order. But all theſe ſignes & tokens all together which we haue now rehearſed, muſt not euery one of them be looked for in euery body: but the chiefeſt of them, & ſomtime many. Broad wormes do bring continuall gnawing of the ſtomach, and an impotent & incorrigible appetite to meate. For the worme that is in the guts, deuoureth the meate that is eaten, ſo that he hath need of more ſtraightway, & except he eate ſtraightway, the bowels are gnawne. They that are thus diſeaſed, there follows ſlendernes & weaknes of the body with inequality. The moſt ſure & infallible ſigne is, if certain things like Cucumber ſeeds be auoided out with the egeſtiõ of excrements. *Aſcarides* do raiſe a vehement itch in the fundament, & do prouoke the patient to go to the ſtoole continually. They that be troubled with this diſeaſe, for the moſt part, be the better after egeſtion & eaſing themſelues. Let their diet be hot & dry, ſpecially if the patient lacke a feuer, & let them vſe meates of good iuice, and which will be ſoone diſperſed throughout the whole body: & ſuch as do not increaſe the cauſe that engendreth worms. Therfore all meates are to be eſchued which can ingender flegmaticke humors. Moreouer, they that are troubled with wormes, muſt be nouriſhed and fed liberally, and may not ſuffer hunger; becauſe the wormes except they haue meate to feede on, they then by and by gnaw the hard parts of the body: but giue them meat at that time, ſpecially when they are not altogether empty. Let them drink no ſtrong drinke. For the cure, it is not to be ſpared: & ſomtime if there be a feuer with it, you muſt haue reſpect to that, & to the wormes alſo: and ſomtime you need to be carefull but a little for the feuer, and you muſt be diligent notwith-

Signs of round wormes, Teretes.

Signes of broad worms, Lati.

Signes of Aſcarides.

Curatio.

ſtanding to get the wormes out of the body. Therefore when many haue not ſpied and knowne this, it cometh to paſſe for lacke of heed taken to auoid the worms, that they be gnawne & eaten of them, and ſo being pulled & gnawne, they die. The cure as well of the round wormes as of the flat wormes conſiſteth in this point, that you may driue them out of the bodie being firſt killed. They are killed ſpecially with bitter medicines, among which (if a feuer be not preſent) theſe ſimples are good: Wormewood, *Seryphium*, which is a kinde of wormewood growing in the Sea, Sothernwood, Calamint, Horehound, Dittain, Hyſope, Rew, leaues of Perſica, Coriander ſeeds, Hartſ-horne, Lupines, Mints, Peniroial, Origan, Centorie, Ferne, Gentian, *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, Garlicke, ſeed of Coleworts, and roote of *Enula campana*. To theſe if a feuer be preſent, you muſt adioyne the ſeeds of both the Endiues, and alſo the iuyce of their herbes. Among all other, the moſt commendable remedy is *Aloes*. Therefore if infants will hardly take *Aloes*, becauſe it is ſo bitter, you muſt keep them vpright with bands, and their mouth being opened and ſeparated, you muſt caſt it in againſt their willes, with a certaine pipe ſtrengthened with a long ſplent. Of theſe aforeſaid ſimples now rehearſed, there may be made diuers compounds, as decoctions, powders, cataplaſmes, emplaiſters, & ointments. Among other things, this powder is only good: ℞. of wormeſeed, ℥.ij of Centory, Wormewood, Hartſ-horne burnt, ana. ℥ j. Calamint, Peniroial, Origan, ana. ℥ ß. Sothernwood, Mints, Lupines, leaues of *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, ana ℈.j. *Aloes*, ℈.ij. commix thē all together, & make a powder, of the which miniſter the weight of one drachme, or halfe a drachme, according to the age and ſtate of the body of the ſicke, in Milk or Hony, or ſirupe of Liquorice: for thoſe things which do kill the worms, muſt be miniſtred with ſweet liquors, that thereby the wormes may taſte of the medicine the ſooner, being allured by the ſweetneſſe of it that is miniſtred with it. You muſt annoint the nauell outwardly with Bulls gall, or with this ointment: ℞. oile of bitter Almonds, and of Wormewood, ana. ℥.j. Bulls gall, ℥.ß. Centory, wormwood, Lupines, ana. ℈.ij. leaues of Perſica, Hartſ-horne burnt, *Aloes*, Sothern wood, ana. ℈.j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment. Or apply all ouer the ſtomach this cerate: ℞. *Aloes*, wormwood, meale of Lupines, ana ℥ ij *Nigella*, Mints, Origan, Peniroiall, Horehoūd an ℥.j. Centory, Calamint, ana. ℥.ß. oiles of wormewood, and bitter Almonds, ana. ℥.ij. *oleum Coſtinum*, ℥.j. Buls gall, ℥.ß. with waxe and Roſin, as much as ſhall ſuffice, make a cerate: By examples of theſe you may eaſily make emplaiſters and cataplaſmes, ſo that I need not to rehearſe here any example of each of them. Moreouer, it is good to caſt in beneath abundance of *Mulſa*, that thereby the wormes being allured by the ſweetnes of the Hony, may creepe downeward. But when the worms are killed with the aforeſaid medicins, you muſt driue them out without delay: for there proceedeth a vicious exhalation from them, which both deſtroyeth appetite, and hurteth digeſtion, and being lifted vpward, it cauſeth ſwimmings, and other euills. The wormes being killed, are driuen out for the moſt part by ſuppoſitaries and purgations, but ſpecially by *Hierapicra*, and *pillulæ peſtilentiales*, or *rufi*, which haue a marueilous efficacie in killing and bringing out of wormes. But thoſe that are troubled with wormes and with fluxe of the wombe alſo, you muſt cure by thickning of

Simples to kill wormes.

Aloes.

Compoſita.

Puluis.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

Pillulæ.

Rufi.

Cure if fluxe of the wombe be ioyned with wormes.

of the fluxe, and by changing the digestion into a better state, as well with meates, as also with cataplasmes: for the more that the flux preuaileth, so much the more the engendring of wormes is increased: and againe, the fluxe ceasing, the wormes do rest and pause. Therefore you must diligently labour to stop & restraine the wombe, & to adde stedfastnes and strength to it. Therefore minister iuice of Plantaine, or else let him take dried Plantaine: for both haue like efficacie, as wel against the fluxe, as also against wormes: Also make cataplasmes, cerates and ointments of raw Barley meale, Pomegranate rindes, *Hypocischidos*, & such like restrictiue things: but adde vnto thē those things which be good to kill wormes. Restrictiue medicines are good to be applied outwardly for this cause, because they do corroborate and strengthen againe the stomach, being hurt through often vsing of bitter medicines. Also it is lawful in this case to minister earth wormes being dried, and beaten to powder with *Hydromel*. The worms called *Ascarides*, being in children that be infants, they must be brought out with suppositaries made of hony and salt. In them that be elder, they must be brought out with clisters, made either with sharp brine, or with decoction of wormewood, Centory, Calamint, Lupines, Peniroiall, and other aboue rehearsed, putting to oiles. After ministration of clysters, annoint the straight gut, or fundament with these simples (that is) *Acatia*. *Hypocischidos*, iuice of *Sumach*, or some other restrictiue medicine. For the flesh being constrained by restrictiue things, it loseth the abilitie that ingendreth wormes, and it excludeth & shutteth out the *Ascarides*. But this that followeth is good both for children, and for those that be of greater age, and is most effectuous. Take old flesh that is powdred, cut off the fat, and fashion it long and round, like a suppositarie fit for the fundament, and thrust it into the tuell, applying a ligament or band, and let it alone within as long as they can suffer it; then loosen it, and draw it out together with the wormes that sticke on it. After that you shall powre in the things aforesaid, and also annoint it as is aforesaid.

Cure of worms called Ascarides.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hemorhoides.

THe Hemorhoides is an vnfolding and spreading abroad of the veines in the tuel. Of these some be blind, which do swell, and do send out none, or very little blood: some be open, which be set wide open abroad certaine times, and do send forth blood. The Hemorhoides are caused through dreggie and melancholy blood, when there is abundance thereof, which the liuer sendeth to those veines. The signes whereby this euill is knowne, need not to be required. For the blind Hemorhoids may be seene with eies, and they cause vehement paine, specially in auoiding the dung. But the open Hemorhoides do bleed, therefore the patient cannot be ignorant what they be. Therefore when blind Hemorhoides appeare, and do raise great tormenting in the fundament, if the body be full of humours, cut the veine of the hamme or of the anckle bones. Also you must make the belly soluble abundantly, lest the drie dung, while it is sent footth, do engender paine. Also you must apply where vehement paine is, those things that can and will mitigate. Among which are crummes of bread steeped in milke, and sodden with yolkes of egges, and

Cæcæ.
Apertæ.
Causæ.
Signa.
Curatio cæcarum.

applied like a plaister. Also it profiteth to sit in a bath, made of the decoction of Mallowes, Violet leaues, Melilot, Fenugreek, Cammomil, leaues of *Althæa*, Linseed, flowers of Rose campion, and such like. And if the patient cannot vse that, wet wooll or a sponge in the said decoction, and apply it to the griefe. And if these aforesaid things do no good, you must get bloud out of them. Therefore put into the tuell, wooll annointed with iuyce of *Cyclaminum*, or with onions, or with Oxe gall. The same effect also hath the iuyce of Centory, Doues dung, Stauesacre, Figge leaues, if they be rubbed with it: and also the pulpe of *Colocynthidis* stieped in oile of bitter Almonds. Among many other, this emplaister is very good: ℞ of Doues dung, ℥ß. seed of Stauesacre, Lupines, ana. ℥.i. ß. bitter Almonds, ʒ.i. pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ʒ.ß iuices of *Cyclaminum* & onions, ana. ℥.i. commixe thē all together, & make it like a plaister, putting to it, if need be, oile of bitter Almonds. But to take away the pain presently, vse this following. ℞. Elderne leaues, M.i. boile them in water, vntill they be very tender, then take a peece of Scarlet, as much as a mans hand, or greater, & wet it in the decoction, and lay it to the place as warme as may be suffered, and when it is cold, lay it to againe, being wet in the same decoction as before. Do thus fiue or sixe times together, then lay the herbes vpon the same Scarlet, lay the herbes very hote also: this doth mollifie the hemorhoides, and ceasseth the paines very quickly, which my selfe haue often proued. Also you may put long Suppositaries in the fundament, made of the roote of *Cyclaminum*. Also Blood suckers, or Horse leaches, being included in a reed, so that they can put forth but onely their head, are wont to be put to the Hemorhoides to open them; and if you cannot pull them away easily, strew ashes or salt vpon their heads, and you shall make them to fall off alone. But if the Hemorhoides be open, and do auoid out bloud meanely at certaine times, they may not be stopped: for the bursting out of such bloud, doth cause men that haue this disease, to be free from many other diseases. Which thing *Hippocrates* witnesseth, where hee saith in *Epidemijs* these words: They which haue the Hemorhoides, neither be vexed with paine of the sides, nor inflammation of the lungs, nor a feeding vlcer, nor with felons, or cats haire, nor with *Terminthis*, nor with leprie, nor with morphew. But if the Hemorhoides do throw out bloud immoderately, or longer then they should do, so that the patients do consume and waste away with this euill, and their strength is decayed and throwne downe, they must be stopped by and by: but otherwise there is peril in stopping them: but in this case, it is to doubt, lest the dropsie should follow, the liuer being cooled throgh immoderate vacuation and purging. Therefore let those that be so emptied and purged out of measure, vse meates that haue but little bloud, and that do ingender but little superfluities or excrements, and which also do drie and restraine, as, is *Alica* and Rice. Of pot-herbes, Endiue, Succorie, Purslaine, and such like. Commixe his meate with *Sumach*, and iuyce of vnripe Grapes. If his strength be much weakened, you must nourish and feed the sicke with meate, thus: you must straine out the iuyce that is in the meate, and commixe with it iuyce of Quinces, and let him soupe that vp: he must drinke wine that is restrictiue. For the cure, if there be abundance of humors in the body, it profiteth to cut the inner veine of the right hand in the arme: but if there be not, you must

To open the Hemorhoides.

Emplastrum.

Glandes.

Curatio apertarum.

6. Epid. par. 3. Aph. 19.

Diet.

Curatio.

ſtudy to auert and turne away the bloud, by faſtning of cupping glaſſes to the ſides, & to the liuer. For the which purpoſe it is good to bind the hands & the feet with bands, and to vſe hard and ſharpe frictions and rubbings. Moreouer, you muſt miniſter within the body thoſe things which do reſtraine, as are ſirupes of Roſes, of Mirtles, of Quinces, red Corall, Bolearmoniacke, Trochiskes of Amber, of *Spodium*, of *Terra lemnia*, & other which be rehearſed in the chap. of ſpitting of blood. Alſo apply thoſe things outwardly, which can ſtop blood that floweth. Among which, as *Aetius* witneſſeth, *lib.* 14. *cap.* 5. is Aloes laid on with *Poſca*. The ſame effect alſo hath ſcales of iron, or burnt lead. This medicine is notable good, which is deſcribed of *Galen*, *lib.* 5. *Therap. method.* ℞. of Frankinſence one part, of Aloes one part and a halfe, commixe them with the white of an egge, vntil it come to the thickneſſe of hony, & lay it vpon the ſoft haires of an Hare, and apply it to the place that bleedeth, being bound outwardly with bands of fine linnen. Alſo ointments, baths, inſeſſions, foments and other ſuch like medicines, made of things hauing a reſtrictiue vertue, do profit, whereof you ſhall find many examples before in the chapters of *Diarrhæa*, *Lienteria*, *Dyſenteria* and *Tenaſmus*. And if you ſhall vſe little bagges, it is beſt before you apply them, to boile them in wine that is red and reſtrictiue, or at the leaſt to ſprinckle them with it Examples of other medicines ſeeke before.

Medicamentum Galeni.

Sacculi.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the falling out of the Tuell.

IT chanceth ſometime, that reſolution or weakeneſſe of the ouerthwart muſcles which do plucke the fundament vpward, doth cauſe the tuell to fall out. Wherefore ſeeing it cannot be drawne backward againe, nor pulled vpward of the aforeſaid muſcles, it hath need of hands or medicines to put it vp againe. When the tuell is fallen out, you muſt diligently conſider whether it be free from inflammation or no: for if it be not inflamed at all, it muſt by and by be thruſt and put to his former place by compulſion: and becauſe it muſt not fall out againe, after that it is thruſt in, and put vp into his owne place, you muſt apply reſtrictiue medicines outward to it. Therefore firſt you muſt annoint it about with oile of roſes being warmed, or ſcoure the tuel with reſtrictiue wine and then being put vp againe into his place, you muſt bind him vp. And that you muſt do by and by, as ſoone as the ſicke hath beene at the ſtoole, leſt that when neceſſity conſtraineth them to go to the ſtoole again, the tuel ſhould fall out againe. You muſt apply a Liniment of *Acatia* and *Hypociſchidos* with wine. Alſo you muſt ſeethe in water til it be red, Gals, *Balauſtia*, ſhels of Maſte, Pomegranate rindes, Daiſies, Sumach, ſhales of Quinces, and ſuch like, and afterward of that decoction make inſeſſions and waſhings But after that the tuel is waſhed with wine, or with ſome reſtrictiue decoction, then it is lawful to ſtrew vpon it, and to apply to it dry medicines. For which purpoſe you muſt apply Bolearmoniacke, Frankinſence, *Sanguis draconis*, Gals, *Acatia*, Mirrhe, *Hypociſchidos*, Hartſ-horne, & ſuch other reſtrictiue medicines, as we haue rehearſed oftē before. But if the tuel through inflammation be ſo ſwollen, that it cannot be thruſt vp againe, if the body be full of humors, you muſt firſt cut a veine, & prouoke vomite. And alſo you muſt apply to the tuel by and by in the beginning, thoſe

Cauſæ.

Curatio.

things that do restraine and stop or appease: but if there be no abundance of humors in the body, let the sicke vse insessions of the decoction of Cammomil, Mallowes, *Althæa*, Linseed, Fenugreeke, and such like; or let him descend into hot water, and tary in it for a time. Also it is lawful to apply a spunge or wooll wet in the decoction. Moreouer, you must annoint the tuel with oiles of Cammomil and Dil, vntil it may be put vp: for they because of their dissoluing vertue, do readily take away the swelling, and do also cause that it may be put vp againe, without any difficultie or paine. But after it is put vp againe, then you must vse the aforesaid restrictiue medicines, that it fall not out againe.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the clefts of the Fundament.

Causæ. *Signa.* *Curatio.*

CLefts of the fundament, be chaps which are made in the muscle that shutteth the fundament, or in the circle round about the fundament: they be like the chaps which are made throgh a North wind on the lips. They are caused through flowing of sharpe humors, or through inflammation, or through extension of the swelling of the tuell. This euil is apparent to the eyes, and therefore we need to shew no signes to declare it by. For the cure, if the clefts of the fundament be ingendred of sharpe humors, then they first of all must be purged and tempered. But if it be caused through swelling of the fundament caused of inflammation, you must likewise vse at the beginning purging medicines. Also the belly all the time of the cure must be kept soluble with meates that do moisten, and fat meates, lest dry dung should hinder and tary the conglutination. Of such qualities be Mallowes, Spinach, milke of sweet Almonds, soft Egs, fat Broth, and such other like. But to the chaps themselues you must vse this ointment: ℞. of the oiles of Roses and Mirtles, ana. ℥.j. Frankinsence, Mastick, Litarge, *Sanguis draconis*, an ℈.j. *Aloes*, burnt Lead, Ceruse, *Balaustiæ*, Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℈.ß. white Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Or thus: ℞. oile of Roses, ℥.j.ß. Gals, Mirrhe, *Terra Lemnia*, ana ℈.j. root of Comfery, Roch alume, burnt Lead, ana. ℈.ß. the yolk of an Egge being rosted, Waxe as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment. With these ointments you must annoint the clefts thrise on a day, but wash them first with decoction of Roses, Gals, and *Sidiorum*. And if burning & inflammation do vexe the diseased place, you must annoint it with *Vnguentum album Camphoratum*.

Vnguentum. *Aliud.*

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the weakenesse of the Liuer.

Causæ.

WEakenesse of the Liuer is caused of distemper, either hote, cold, moist, or dry. Hote distemper doth rost, and as it were, burne vp as well the humors which were before in the Liuer, as also those humors which are caried to the Liuer by the veines *Mesenterij*. But cold distemper doth make the flegmaticke and raw humor, which is already contained in the Liuer, grosse and tough, and hard to be moued; and the humours that be caried to the Liuer, it leaueth them halfe digested. Drie distemper doth make the humors drier and thicker. Moist distemper doth make the humors thin and more watery. Therefore they which haue weake faculte and strength of the Liuer, are called

Hepatici,

Hepatici, as *Galen* ſaith. Hot diſtemper vexing the Liuer, there are *colliquations*, *Signa.*
firſt of the humors, & after that of the Liuer it ſelfe: alſo choler that is ſtinking and groſſe, is auoyded by the belly, and is abundantly coloured: alſo a feuer vexeth him, he abhorreth meate, and caſteth vp choler. Moreouer, thirſt doth trouble them, their vrine is rough, and the pulſe is ſwift. When there is cold diſtemper, they make not many excretions, nor much in quantitie; the euill endureth long, and the belly floweth certaine daies abundantly. But the egeſtions be leſſe ſtinking then thoſe which be melted through heate, neither haue they colour alſo nor thickneſſe, but are like putrifact blood which is curded. And if you do diligently marke it, it is neither curded blood, nor blacke blood, but as it were certaine ſlime and dregs of groſſe bloud coming nigh to melancholy. And alſo diuerſe and many colours of the excrements do ſignifie cold diſtemper. Alſo in it there appeareth a faint feauer: the face doth not fall, and he hath greater appetite of meates. To either of theſe diſtempers, if there come drineſſe, the excrements will be drier and leſſe, and the ſicke will be more thirſtie. But if moiſtneſſe come to either of them, the egeſtions will be more liquide and more abundant, and they ſhall be leſſe troubled with thirſt. For the cure, the chiefe point is to amend the griefe by contraries. Therefore *Curatio.*
you muſt coole a hote diſtemper, and heate a cold diſtemper. Likewiſe you muſt moiſten a drie diſtemper, and drie a moiſture. But in the cure, this muſt alſo be conſidered, that in all medicines for the Liuer, as well thoſe which be *Note.*
taken by the mouth inward, as alſo thoſe that be applyed to it outwardly, you commixe ſome reſtrictiue things with them, whereby the ſtrength and ſtabilitie of the Liuer may be conſerued and kept. Therefore in a hote diſtemper, *Diet in a hote diſtemper.*
for his diet, let him vſe broth of Ptiſan, and other meats that do meanly coole, *Orbiculi.*
as Lettuce, Endiue, Succorie, Sowthiſtle, and Water and Bread mixed together, or bread dipped in water. Alſo Chickens, Partrich, birds of mountaines, and Veale, theſe being ſodden in Veruein or Limons. Of fruites, let the ſicke eate Raiſins, Limons, and ſweete Almonds. He muſt eſchue wine altogether, except ſome other cauſe let it, as weakneſſe of the ſtomach, for then you muſt miniſter thin and watry wine. Let them drinke for wine, iuyce of Pomegranates, and *Syrupus acetoſus ſimplex.* Alſo *Oxiſaccarum*, with decoction of Barly or Endiue. Alſo they muſt eſchue all meates and drinkes dreſſed with Hony, and that be very hote, and haue vertue to cut and diuide. For the cure, miniſter vnto him by the mouth, conſerue of Roſes, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatrion ſantalon*, & other ſuch like Antidotes. Alſo theſe lozenges profit. ℞. the powders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, and of *Diatrion ſantalon*, ana. ℥ j ß. ſeeds of both the tame Endiues, red Roſes, ana ℈ ij. Raiſins, ℥ j. white Sanders, Withwind, flowers of Squinant, ana ℈. j. Sugar, ℥ vi. diſſolue it in the ſtilled waters of Withwind and Endiue that hath the broad leaues, and make lozenges. And alſo the Antidote *Philonium* only once miniſtred, ſometime hath maruellouſly healed all hot diſtemper of the liuer. Apply outwardly foments made of Roſes, Cammomil & Quinces: or ſeeth wormewood or Dates in the aforeſaid oiles of Roſes, Cammomill and Quinces, and then wet wooll or a ſpunge in them, & lay that right
againſt the liuer. Alſo you may vſe this ointment: ℞ oiles of Roſes, of Quinces, *Vnguentum.*
and of water Lillies, ana. ℥ i. white Sanders and red, red Roſes, ana. ℈ j. ſcraping

of Iuory, ℈.j.ß. seeds of both the tame Endiues, ana. ℈.i. Vineger ℥.j.ß. Purslaine seed, gra. ij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also Epithemes in this disease are wont to profit not a little: which may be made thus, or after this sort: ℞. the distilled waters of sowen Endiue, with the broad leaues of Lettuce, of Sorrell, of Roses, of water Lillies, ana. ℥ iij. iuyce of Sengreen, ℥ j. Vineger, ℥ j. red Roses, red Sanders, shauing of Iuorie, ana. ʒ j powders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatrion santalon*, ana ʒ ß seed of Purslaine. ℈ ß. commixe them all, & make an Epitheme You must apply Epithemes, in sommer cold, and in winter warme. When there is cold distemper of the liuer, you must vse medicines that do heate, and adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer. In his diet he must vse meates easie of digestion, and heating. For pot herbs let him take Sauory, Hysope, Fennell, Parsley, Sothernwood, Sage, and such like. And let his meates be dressed with aromaticke things, as Cinamon, Cloues, and such others. He must drinke wine that is thin, yellow and odoriferous. He must eschue eating of fish, and cold fruits, and idlenesse, and in conclusion whatsoeuer doth make cold. Within the body he must take this decoction. ℞. rootes of *Apium*, of Fennell, & of Parsley, ana. ℥ j. Agrimony, Hysope, Mints, Wormwood, Succory, Withwind, Origan, Calamint, *Asarum*, an. M. j seeds of Annise, Fennell, *Daucus*, Comin, Carawayes, ana. ʒ ij. Squinant, ʒ j ß. Masticke, ʒ j. floures of Cãmomil, red Roses, ana. M. j. Cinamon chosen, ʒ. j ß. seeth all these in a pound and halfe of wine, and one pound of running water vnto the third part, then straine it, and put to the liquor of sirupe of Agrimony, ℥. iij. sirupe of Wormwood, ℥ j commixe all together, and make a potion: of the which let him drinke in the morning and after dinner, ℥ iij ß. at a time. For the same purpose you may minister hote antidotes, as *Diacinamomum*, *Dianisum*, conserue of Sage, Galingale condite, roots of Pimpernell couered with Sugar and such like. You must annoint him outwardly with hote oiles, as be, oiles of Narde, Cammomill, Wormewood, and such like. Also it is very good to vse this ointment ℞. of the oiles of Wormwood & Narde, ana. ℥ i. ß. iuyce of Agrimony, ʒ. ii. Cinamon, Cloues, wood of Aloes, an. ℈. ii. Spicknard, Squinant, and Masticke, ana. ℈. i Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. You may also apply this Cerate: ℞. of the meale of Fenugreeke, and of Lupines, ana. ʒ. ii. roote of *Ireos*, and *Asarum*, ana. ʒ. i. of Agrimonie, Wormwood, Melilot, & Squinant, ana. ʒ. ß. *Gallia Moschata*, ℈. i. seed of Annise and Fennel, ana ℈. ß. Masticke, ℈. ii. Mirrhe and Frankinsence, ana. ℈. i. oiles of Masticke, Narde, Roses, and Dill, ana. ℥ i. Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerate to apply to the liuer. Also the vsing of this Epitheme is good. ℞. seedes of Annise, Fennell, Ammeos, ana ʒ i ß. Cinamon, Cloues, Squinant, ana. ʒ. i. seethe all in a pound and halfe of Malmesey, till halfe be consumed, then straine it, and commixe with the liquor of that decoction, waters of Wormwood and Agrimonie, ana. ℥. ii. powders of *Diacinamomum* & *Diagalanges*, ana ʒ. ij. Withwind, ℈. ii. Vineger, ʒ iii commixe all together, and make an Epitheme. In a moist distemper of the liuer, let him vse a diet that doth drie, as flesh of birds rosted, thinne wine, those things that do prouoke sweat, as drie baths, or hote houses, and also baths coming of their owne accord: generally he must eate aud drinke but little. He must eschue all kinde of

Epithema.

Cure of cold distemper.

Decoctum.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

Epithema.

Cure of a moist distemper.

of fishes, and fruits that haue power to moisten. You must minister within the body, sirupe of Wormewood, *Dialaccha*, and *Diacurcuma*. You must apply outwardly those things which do dry without any great heat: of the which we will speake afterward in the chapter of the Dropsie *Anasarca*. Drie distemper of the liuer must be cured like the other, by his contraries. Therefore that we may comprehend the matter in few words, it is good for him to vse a diet that doth moisten, and baths of sweete water, and other things which do moisten, whereof we will speake abundantly in their places. But this must not be forgotten, which we also admonished you of before, to commixe alway with your moistning things, those things which adde strength to the liuer. But among those things which seeme to be good, by the property of their whole substance, the best is wolues liuer, if it be diligently dried and beaten, and ℥.j. thereof ministred with sweet wine alayed with water. For this by often proofe is knowne to be good against all distempers of the liuer. For as we said, by the properties of his whole substance, he hath his efficacie, and not by heating and cooling.

Cure of a drie distemper.

Lupinum iecur.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of obstructions of the Liuer.

OBstructions of the Liuer are caused of vapours, and grosse windinesse, hard to digest. But sometime it is caused of grosse and vicious humors in the ends of the veines, springing from the flat part of the liuer, by the which veines nourishment is sent to the liuer from the stomach and the bowels. If abundance of grosse and vaporous windinesse be heaped vp together, which cannot find free passage out, and so doth engender obstruction, there ariseth then not onely griefe and heauinesse about the right side, but also feeling and perceiuing of distensiõ & stretching out. If obstruction be ingendred through grosse and viscous humors, there followeth heauinesse with feeling of paine, sometime easie, and sometime vehement: also sometime without a feuer, and sometime with a feuer. For grosse and viscous humors, being many, do cause obstruction & stopping more then other, and specially when the patient doth vse vehement mouing after meate. And if they be sharpe and much in quantitie, which be taken in meates, the paine of the [illegible]ction is made more vehement: when the bo[illegible]y is stopped, they suffer both [illegible]retching out, and also pricking. You must giue vnto them which haue this disease hote meates, and that haue vertue to take away obstruction and stopping, as be Leeks with *Oximel*, *Sperage*, Fennell, Parsley, Capers and other like things, either sodden in pottage and meate, or taken with some heating sauce which taketh away obstructiõs. You must eschue all meats & nourishments engendring grosse iuice. Also refraine baths and exercises after meats. He must vse for drinke, wine that is thin and old. Besides his diet, it is requisite for to vse very quickly medicins, that do attenuate and take away obstructions: for obstructions waxing old do not only engender putrifaction in the liuer, but also in all the whole body, and kindleth a feuer. Among simple medicins, these that follow do take away obstructions notably and without griefe, that is, wolues liuer, Fumitory, Agrimony, Cammomill, Galingale, Dragons root, *Asarum*, Annise, *Apium*, Worm-

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Simples taking away obstructions of the liuer.

wood, *Cassia*, *Ireos*, Licorice, *Rhaponticum*, Lupines, Capars, *Auenæ*, with wind Pasley, *Pistacium*, bitter Almonds, Spikenard, Stæchados, Gentian, roote of Plantaine, also the seede and leaues dried, iuice of *Anagallis* the female, Succorie, *Alkakengi*, both the Endiues, Sperage, and *Bruscus*. Of these also you may make diuerse compound medicines, and specially decoctions, putting to it *Oximel simplex*, *Scilliticum*, *Syrupus acetosus*, *compositus*: syrupes of Wormwood, of Hysope, of Calamint, of Horehound, & such other like. For the same purpose it is lawfull to minister Trochiskes of Agrimonie, of Wormewood, of Rubarbe and such like. Also these Antidotes, *Dialaccha*, *Diacurcuma*, are good, and such other like. Among other simples before rehearsed, *Pistacium* is notable good to take away obstructions. Therefore it will not onely be profitable but also pleasant, if you steepe *Pistacia*, tenne or twelue houres by night in Malmesey, and minister them in the morning, the digestions being ended. You must apply outwardly, epithemes, ointments, emplaisters, and cerates, which be declared in the former chapter, of the cure of cold distemper of the liuer. And these aforesaid medicines do suffice, if the euill be not yet inueterate and growne old: for when the euill is inueterate, you must vse both bloud-letting & purgations, if nothing do forbid it. You must purge him with pilles of Rubarbe and of Agaricke, and with other Antidotes, which do purge grosse and thin humors by the belly. You must purge them specially by the belly, when the hollow part of the liuer is vexed, But you must purge by vrine, whē the round embossed part of the liuer is vexed. The body being purged by bloud-letting and purgations, then you must minister those medicins, which are before rehearsed. And specially this Electuarie: ℞. of the roote of Ireos, *Chamæpiteos*, of seeds of Annise & *Apium*, ana. ℥.ij. of *Asarum*, ℥.ij.ß. of Cinamon, Ginger, Carawayes, Cammomill, ana ℥.j. of *Stæchados*, Gentian, and Horehound, ana. ℥.ij. with *Oximel scilliticum* as much as is sufficient, make an Electuary. This doth maruellously take away obstructions, not so much those that be in the hollow part of the liuer, as those that sticke in the outside of the liuer. For it purgeth out vehemently by vrine.

Antidotum liquidum.

CHAP. XXV.

Of inflammation of the liuer.

Causæ.
Signa.

THere is inflammation ingendred in the liuer as well as in other members, and through the same causes that they be ingendred of. If the liuer be vexed with inflammation, there is felt paine and heauinesse all ouer the right side coming vp to the necke, and downe to the bastard ribbes. Also there is swelling of the right side, specially, if the outward part of the liuer be inflamed. He hath a sharpe feuer, a small and drie cough, an insatiable thirst, abhorring of meates, hardnes and difficultie of breathing, the colour of the tongue first red and afterward blacke: vomits as well of pure choler as also like yolkes of egs, and afterward also rustie; the bellie is costiue. Also the colour of the bodie is changed, like as in the yellow iaundise: also he hath the hicket. In the time of their fit they are taken with a certaine rauing, and do voide foorth sharpe vrine. The inflammation that chanceth through causes in the crooked and hollow parts of the liuer, doth cause abhorring of meate, disposition to vomite,

vomits

vomits of choler, and vnquenchable thirst. The inflammation that ingendreth in the outward and round parts of the liuer, causeth the patient to haue greater paine in drawing of breath then the other, and doth raise a greater cough, and it doth stretch out paine vnto the right part of the necke, so that it seemeth to plucke it off. Also it chanceth sometime, that the muscles leaning vpon the liuer be inflamed: therefore many being deceiued, do thinke it to be an inflammation of the liuer. Therefore it is necessary to tell the differences betweene these. For if the liuer be inflamed, there followeth a round swelling, fashioned like the liuer, which will also be fashioned according to the laying of the bodie. For it appeareth greater when the bodie is turned downe on the left side, and againe lesser, when it is turned to the right side. For the liuer going vnder the bastard ribbes, it neither appeareth to the sight, nor to the feeling. Againe, the thinne skinne, inclining to the inflammation of the liuer, it appeareth to haue a naturall fashion. If the muscles be inflamed, the skinne is stretched out round about, so that if one would pull it vp with his fingers, he cannot easily. Moreouer, there appeareth a swelling according to the placing of the muscles that lie vpon the liuer, long in fashion, and manifest to sight and feeling. For the cure, when the liuer beginneth to be inflamed, you must by and by let him bloud, if age and strength will permit it. Therfore (as *Galen* witnesseth) you must both pull backe and purge the bloud that floweth to the liuer, by cutting the inward veine of the arme: because the veine in the right arme is right against the liuer, and hath a large passage, hauing societie with the veine which is called *Vena cauua*. If this veine doth not appeare, you must cut the middle veine. And if that doth not appeare neither, you must cut the vpper veine, you must draw out abundant, and sufficient bloud, if his strength will suffer it. After bloud-letting within a little space, make the belly soluble, with a simple and easie clyster, specially if it do not void by it selfe. The next day after the bloud-letting, fasten on a cupping glasse, with scarification, and againe likewise fasten it on within a day after; for many haue felt more ease the second time of the applying, then at the first time. Also you must vse foments of Wooll wet in oile, cataplasmes, cerates, and epithemes. In the applying of the which, this only is to be obserued, that to the other medicines that be mollificatiue and discussiue, you alwayes commixe some restrictiue medicines. Therefore make a foment of oiles of Quinces, or of Mastick, or Roses, or Mirtles, putting to it odoriferous wine: or apply a spunge wet in the decoctiõ of Wormwood, Melilot, red Roses, Cammomill, Dill, Plantaine, tame Endiue, and other like. Also make Cataplasmes or Emplaisters of Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, Barley meale, Quinces, Melilot, flowers of Wormewood, and such like. Or this emplaster: ℞. Barly meale, ℥.ß meate of Quinces beaten, ʒ iij, Wormewood, flowers of Melilot, Squinant, ana ʒ ij. Lineseede ʒ j. oiles of Roses, Quinces, Cammomill, Wormewood, ana. ℥.ß. Vineger ℥ j. commixe all together, and make an emplaister. Also this Cerate is good ℞. of the meate of Dates, ʒ iij. of Mirrhe, steeped in old restrictiue wine, Storax, and Masticke, ana. ʒ.ij. flowers of Melilot, Wormewood, Cammomill, ana. ʒ.i.ß. Saffron, ʒ.ß. oiles of Quinces, of Masticke, and of Roses, ana. ℥.i. with Waxe and Rosen as much as is sufficient, and make a cerate to apply to the liuer.

Curatio.
Venæ sectio.
Clyster.
Fomenta.
Cataplasmata.
Emplastrum.
Ceratum.

and make a cerate to apply to the Liuer. For the same purpose you may make Epithemes of the decoction of Roses, Plantaine, Wormewood, Cammomill, or of their waters distilled. And in making of all these things, you must take heede, that when there is vehement inflammation, the restrictiue things may preuaile, and exceede the things that mollifie and loosen. And contrariwise, when the vehemencie of the heate is somewhat slaked, the mollifying things must exceed restrictiue things. Moreouer, you must beware, that you do not apply the aforesaid things when they are cold, but first warme them a little. Moreouer, in inflammation of the Liuer, when there is great and vehement paine, you must also minister drinke medicines, that do ease paine: but so, that you do eschue continuall vse of them: you must vse drinking of simples most. Therefore minister Groundswell sodden, as a thing very profitable, or iuice of Liquorice with hot water. Also iuice of Endiues doth profit no lesse then the other, putting to them a little honie: for besides that it cooleth, and addeth strength to the Liuer, it also purgeth the mouthes of the veines of the liuer. But the belly must also be prouoked by eating of Nettles or Mercury sodden. Also in the declination of the disease, the belly must be emptied by clisters, for which purpose Polipody & *Epithimum* with *Mulsa* are put in: and that especially, if the inflammation be in the hollow part of the liuer. For the hollow part of the liuer (as we said before) must be purged by the guts: but the round and outward part of the liuer, must be purged by vrine. Moreouer in inflammation of the liuer there is need of an exquisite diet (as *Galen* witnesseth) *lib.* 13. *Therap. method.* The liuer it selfe requireth meate chiefly that can withstand obstructions. Such be all those that be of thin substance, and which do scoure without gnawing, as is *Ptisan*, *Mulsa*, and such like: Therefore the best food for them that are thus diseased, is *Ptisan* broth, wherein *Apium* hath been sodden. Also you may minister broth of Chicken, wherein Parsley hath been sodden: but drinke *Mulsa* or Barly broth, or decoction of the tame Endiues. And if that inflammation do beginne to change to suppuration and rotting, then all the aforesaid signes will increase, as paines, feuers, rauings, carefulnesse, and abhorring of meate. Then you must helpe the permutation and rotting, that it may quickely be done, lest other members in continuance of time do rot with it also. Therefore you shall helpe it to rot with this cataplasme: ℞. of the roote of *Althea*, ℥.j.ß. Fenugreeke, and Lineseed, ana. ʒ.ij. leaues of *Althea* and Mallowes, ana. M. ij. drie Figs, in number vj. boile these in water till they waxe soft, then bruse them, and make a cataplasme. Neither shall you do amisse, if you apply an emplaister, that can helpe it to change into matter, as this is: ℞ of Barly meale, and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥.iiij. of the roote of *Althæa*, ℥.ß. of the roote of white Lillies, ℥.j.ß. Lineseed ʒ.j. floures of Cammomill, and Melilot, ana. M. ß. boile all in water vnto a iust thicknesse, then commixe of oile of Cammomil, ℥ j. of oile of Lillies, ℥.j.ß. boile them againe, and make an emplaister. Of these said things you may also make a cerate, by putting to them Butter, *Labdanum*, Rosin and Waxe. When the suppuration and rotting is fully come to perfection, then the paines do ceasse, and all the fits do appeare gentler and meeker. In the time of the rupture or breaking, the paine doth increase more againe, therefore then also you must helpe the rupture or breaking

Epithemata.
Note.
Victus ratio.
Cure of inflammation turning to suppuration.
Cataplasmata
Emplastrum.
Rupture.

breaking of it, by vsing of Goates dung and Doues dung, Nettle seed, Mustard seed, and other things that do draw to the superficies. And by heating potions, as is decoction of Poley, Fumitory, roote of *Chamædrios*, and such like. When it is broken, you must minister water of honey, or decoction of Cicers, and other like things which haue an absterſiue and scouring vertue. And if the matter doth auoyde by the veines, you must commixe things that do prouoke vrine, as be, *Sisarum, Asarum, Cassia*, and Cinamon. But if it auoyd by the belly, commixe those things which do purge gently, as be Goates whey, *Tamarinds* and *Cassia fistularis*. Also it is lawfull then to vse clisters made of the decoction of Barley. When cleansing and scouring of it is done, minister medicines which can glutinate and ioyne it vp.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of distemper of the Spleene.

Like as other parts of the bodie haue eight kinds of distempers, so many hath the Spleene, and most often it suffereth cold and moist distemper. Each particular cause is not to be declared heere: for there be some causes that be in other distempers of other members of the body, therefore you shal seek them in *Galen ex capitibus* 1.2. *&* 3. *lib. De Morborum causis.* The surest and shortest signes of distemper of the Spleene are knowne by those things that be eaten and drunken, and by those things which are applyed outwardly vpon the skinne, neare to the left side. For if cold distemper do vexe the Spleene, all meates and drinkes which do coole notably, do soone and manifestly hurt the Spleene. Also all cold things applyed outwardly do hurt it: and therefore they signifie cold distemper of it: but contrariwise all hote things do ease it. And if the distemper of the Spleene be hote, it is not vexed with cold meats or drinks, or with cold things being applied outwardly. And if the heat increase, there is not onely no swelling in it, but also it suffereth contraction, and shrinking vp, specially if a feuer be present. But meates and drinks that be hote, and those things that adde heate, being applyed outwardly, do increase hote distempers, and make them outragious. Also all cooling things be ioyfull vnto them. Likewise also you may gather the signes of drie distemper, specially when it is not euident, by the proper nature of it for lacke of greatnesse. Also those things that be applyed outwardly to the bodie, and that be receiued inwardly, if they haue vertue and power of drying, they do drie vp the Spleene. When the Spleene is vexed with moist distemper, and so continuing a while, it causeth it to increase so much, that it toucheth both the stomach and the liuer. Also the kind of paine together with these aforesaid signes do declare the distemper that vexeth. For in a hote and cold distemper, they haue small paine or none at all, neither haue they any also in a moist distemper; but least of all in a drie distemper. By these aforesaid signes you may make coniecture of compound distempers of the Spleene. For in a maner altogether, when a hote distemper is vehement, a drie distemper followeth. But in so much as humors flowing into the spleen do cause swelling, you must haue diligent consideration of them. For if choler do flow thither, the whole bodie appeareth hoter, although there be no feuer present. Also the eies & the vrine

Causes.

Signes of distemper of the spleen in bare qualities.

Cold distemper.

Hote distemper.

Dry distemper.

Moist distemper.

Signes of distemper of the spleen through humours.

Choler. be coloured by choler: the sicke will alwayes accuse drinesse, and complaine of thirst, and choler troubling his mouth. Hee abhorreth meate, and is troubled with watching, and desireth cold things, and with all these his tongue is yellowished. He hath Tertian fits, and the manners of the sicke be wrathfull, and they will chase out of measure. If melancholie doth flow, his colour doth appeare as well on the tongue, as in all the rest of the body, and he hath vnnaturall appetite to meate, the patient is sad and heauy, and other signes of choler be present with these. Also fits do vexe him the fourth day.

Melancholie.

Fleame. When a flegmaticke humour floweth into the Spleene, his choler shall be like fleame. The sicke doth not thirst, he desireth meate, vnlesse the humour be salt fleame: for then the sicke abhorre meate, and be more desirous of drinke, for they are thirstie. Also fits do vexe them euerie day. And their vrines are white, and they themselues be slow and sluggish. Some of them that haue cold distemper with it, haue a great and a hard Spleene. And if it be a sanguine humour that floweth into the Spleene, it is possible for it to change the colour both of the tongue, and of the skinne. As for the appetite or abhorring of meates, the sicke is in a meane betweene both, and they be more sicke then the rest, although they haue not like swelling of the Spleene. The veines of the whole body do appeare full of blood, and the vrine is yellow.

Blood.

Note. These signes we haue declared at large out of *Aetius*, because they are common, and may almost be applyed to all distempers of other medicines, caused through flowing of humours. Generally distemper of the bare qualitie of the Spleene is almost without swelling. You must cure and correct them both by meates and drinkes, as also by simple medicines and foments, oiles and ointments, and such other like, which be contrary to the distemper. Therefore you shall heale hote distemper of the Spleene (as you did of the liuer) by meates and drinkes that do coole, and by annointings, with oiles of Roses, and *Oleum melinum*, and other things which be rehearsed before in the 23. chapter of this booke: likewise cold distemper of the Spleene, by those things which do moderately heate. In a moist distemper of the Spleene, besides those things which are rehearsed before in the 23. chapter, these things do profit: roote of fiue-leaued grasse, drie Plantaine, the floure and some of Salt, *Ammoniacum*, iuyce of Willow, and such like, if you make of them an ointment or cerate by putting to sufficient Vineger, such as we wil a little after describe. Also frictions are most conuenient for this, which haue a discussiue vertue. Dry distemper of the Spleene is cured by sweete bathes and hote waters, also annointings with sweete oile, and meates moisting without coldnesse, as is Ptisan iuice. If distemper of the Spleene be caused through flowing of an humour, then if the humour be sanguine, you must let bloud of the inner veine of the left arme, called *Lienaris vena*; or if that cannot be found, let bloud of the veine which is betweene the ring finger, and the eare finger: then applie both inwardly and outwardly medicines which do adde strength to the Spleene, as is the barke of the roote of Capers, of Harts-tongue, *Ceterach*, Maiden-haire, *Ireos*, Calamint, and such like, which also are able to adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer: of which we will speake abundantly in the chapters following. If other humours flow to the Spleene, first you must auoide the super-

Cure of distemper of the bare qualitie of the Spleene.

Hote.

Cold.

Moist.

Drie.

Cure of distemper by flowing of a humor.

ſuperfluous humours by purging them with medicines: then all the reſt of the time you muſt correct the diſtemper that is left, and alſo apply things that ſtrengthen the Spleene.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of inflammation of the Spleene.

THe Spleene like as other members, is vexed with inflammation as oft as hote bloud doth flow thither vnnaturally. It is knowne by heauineſſe and ſwelling of the left ſide, which will not giue place to the feeling: alſo by paine and ſtretching out of the place, by feuers and by burning heate. But if abundance of humours do ruſh in thither, it is knowne by the greatneſſe and ſwiftneſſe of the ingendring of the inflammation. Let the diet of them that be vexed with inflammation of the Spleene be ſimple, and giue them thoſe things that wil eaſily digeſt for their meat, as is Ptiſan iuice, bread wet in other things which be often rehearſed of vs before in the inflammation of the members. And if the inflammation endure long, you may alſo giue them birds fleſh, and fiſhes taken in grauelly places. Let the drinke of the patient be decoction of Cinamon, or watery wine. Let the cure be begunne by cutting of the veine of the Spleene, or the veine which is betweene the little finger and the ring finger, if there be no cauſe to forbid it. Let the belly be often waſhed with cliſters, but ſpecially if you may not let him bloud. Then lay vpon the Spleene reſtrictiue medicines, which can appeaſe the fury of that that floweth, and keep the ſtrength of the liuer and Spleene; but yet you may not onely apply reſtrictiue things, but you muſt commixe with them thoſe things which do extenuate, cut, and looſen without euident heate, leſt groſſe matter be ſtopped in it, and do waxe more vehemently hard. Therefore if there be moderate inflammation, you muſt apply moiſt wooll wet in wine that is old, ſharpe and thinne, and mixed with ſweete oile. But if there be greater heate, take oile of Roſes, or *Oleum melinum*, or oile of Cammomill, with Vineger: you may commixe them together after this ſort: ℞. oile of Roſes and Quinces, ana. ℥.ij. oile of Cammomill, ℥.j. the beſt Vineger, ℥.ſ. commixe them all together for a foment and irrigation. And if the aforeſaid oiles be not at hand, ſeeth Brier leaues and Quinces in oile, and adde to alſo ſome extenuating things, as is Wormewood and Peniroiall. And you muſt beware alſo that you apply nothing vpon the Spleene cold, but whatſoeuer medicine you applie to it outwardly, let it be warmed. After foments and irrigations, you muſt paſſe to cataplaſmes: in the making of which you may adde the meale of Darnell and Barley, with drie Figges, Lineſeede, and oile wherein Wormewood and Peniroyall be ſodden. But you muſt beware that the place be not kept bare after irrigations and cataplaſmes, but as ſoone as thoſe be taken away, by and by apply ſuch cerates or emplaiſters as be deſcribed in the chapter of Inflammation of the Liuer. For both the Liuer and the Spleene require one kind of medicines, but the Spleene requireth ſo much the ſtronger medicins, as it is of groſſer nouriſhment. Therefore you ſhall ſeeke examples of medicines meete for this place out of the chapter of Inflammation of the Liuer: obſeruing onelie this thing, that you alway commixe Vineger and ſome-

Cauſæ. *Signa.* *Diet.* *Potus.* *Curatio.* *Venæ ſectio.* *Cliſter.* *Fomenta.* *Note.*

what that is acceptable to the Spleene, and that doth peculiarly defend his strength. And if the inflammation of the Spleene tendeth toward suppuration and rotting, which doth seldome chance, you must helpe to further the suppuration, lest other members putrifie, by cataplasmes that bring it to matter, whereof we haue spoken in the inflammation of the liuer.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of hardnesse of the Spleene.

Cause. *Signa.* *Victus ratio.*

INflammation of the Spleene, if it be not rightly cured, draweth together a hard swelling of the Spleene. The cause of this disease is a certaine humor, which cleaueth stubburnly to the Spleene: but it is when hardnes ingendreth without inflammation into ouermuch swelling. This euil is easily knowne by touching, of what cause soeuer it be. His diet must be extenuating: therefore he must eate meate which is easie of digestion, and doth ingender good iuyce and thin. He must eschue all hard flesh, which doth ingender grosse iuyce, and which doth striue against digestion. He must drinke wine that is thinne in substance, yellowish in colour, not very old, and being without all restriction. Also he must put much trust in exercises, which it is good to vse before meate, the body not abounding with superfluities. Also it is manifest that vociferation, and crying out, oportunately done and in time, doth greatly helpe in this euill.

Curatio.

For the cure, you must vse very strong things, as wel outwardly as also inwardly. Therefore within the bodie minister most strong potions, for those they may suffer without griefe. Among the which, the chiefe be the barkes of the rootes of Capers, Harts tongue, the roote and herbe of *Tamariscus*, sodden in Vineger or *Oximel*. Also iuyce of Centorie drunke, and decoction of bitter Lupines taken with Rew and Pepper. *Anagallis* the female, ℈.j. with *Posca* or *Oximel*, profiteth maruellously to drinke it. Also the most conuenient remedie for the hardnesse of the Spleene, is, iron quenched often in water, or wine, or *Posca*. For that water, or wine, or *Posca* ministred in the beginning is pleasant and most profitable, and is giuen many dayes orderly. Therefore to them that haue the feuer, minister water or *Posca*: but to them that haue tender flesh, and lacke a feuer, minister wine. Let the iron that is quenched in them be some instrument that is laid with steele. Also the scales of iron may profitably be ministred to strong and rude men. For this doth melt the Spleene notably, for it hath a consuming vertue. But yet lest it should hurt the stomach, it is good to commixe with it some strengthening medicines, as is, Harts tongue, tops of Wormewood, *Cassia*, Annise seed, *Serpillum montanum*, or such other like. Apply outwardly this foment: ℞. Centorie, Vineger, and when they be sodden, wet a sponge in the decoction, and apply it hote to the Spleene. Moreouer, this ointment sheweth a maruellous effect:

Fomentum.

Vnguentum.

℞. of the oiles of Capers, Lillies and *Ireos*, ana. ℥. j. marrow of oxes shankes, ℥.ij. muscilage of the roote of *Althea*, Fenugreeke and Lineseed, ana ℥.j. Badgers grease, Hennes grease, Goose grease, ana. ℥.ij. the barke of the roote of Capers, *Tamariscus*, *Costus*, Centorie, ana. ℥ j. Gumme Ammoniacke, *Bdellium*, *Galbanum*, ana. ℥.ß. the gums being first dissolued in Vineger, with

Waxe

Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also emplaisters, and cerates do profit much being made after this sort: ℞. of the oiles of Lillies, *Ireos*, and of Capers, ana. ℥. j. Barley meale, Fenugreek, Lineseed, ana. ʒ j. the barke of the roote of Capers, Harts-tongue, ana. ʒ. j. ß. roote of *Althæa*, ʒ j. *Bdellium*, Ammoniacke, *Galbanum*, an. ʒ j. ß. *Opoponax*, Mirrhe, Frankinsence, ana. ʒ. ß. with Rosin, Turpentine, and Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Moreoue, the Phisitian must look diligently to the disease, & as he seeth cause, sometime adde, and sometime take away those things which do either mollifie, or attenuate, or dissolue, or which adde strength. In conclusion, cupping glasses fastned with scarification, is not a little profitable. *Ceratum.*

CHAP. XXIX.

Of obstruction of the Spleene.

IT chanceth sometime not only through weaknesse of the attractiue vertue which is in the Spleene. but also through stopping of the passage, by which the dreggie humor of Melancholie is deriued from the Liuer vnto the Spleen, there followeth obstruction. Afterward that vnpure and naughtie bloud is distributed all ouer the whole bodie, which if it chance, then the colour of the body is corrupt, and inclineth to blacknesse. Also sometime they that are thus diseased, haue vncurable vlcers. The causes may easily be known by those causes which we spake of in the chapter of the obstruction of the Liuer. This euill is knowne by heauines which is about the left side. If the whole body be corrupted with it besides, it is easie to know, specially by the colour of the face, difficultie of breathing, troublesome dreames, and other such like aforesaid. This disease is cured with an extenuating diet, and by medicines which take away obstructions, whereof you may find great plentie rehearsed in the chapter of obstructions of the liuer: for both these members haue need of like medicines. But the Spleene hath need of stronger medicines, for as much as it is nourished with grosser food. Therefore against grosse humors, that they may obey readily to be purged, there behoueth preparatiues, which preparatiues shall be the same that are for obstructions of the liuer, this onely obserued, that here all things be stronger, and that they haue things commixed with them that do adde strength to the Spleene. The humours being prepared, then they must be purged by such medicines as do purge grosse and dreggie humours, whereof we haue spoken often before. After this apply such medicins both inwardly and outwardly, as are contained in the former chapter, and in the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. For those places will shew you medicines abundantly. *Causæ.* *Signa.* *Diet.* *Cure.* *Præparatio humorum.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Iaundeis.

THe Iaundeis is nothing else but a shedding either of yellow choler, or of melancholy all ouer the body. Somtimes there chanceth shedding of choler to the skinne, the liuer being safe, as in the *crisis* of diseases. Many times the Iaundeis is caused, and doth chance when the bloud is corrupted, without a feuer, or some outward occasion, and is made cholericke, as it chanceth by *Icterus, aurigo, arcuatum, regium.* *Causæ.*

biting of venimous beasts. So a certaine man, when he was stung of a Viper, had all his bodie spotted like the colour of Leekes. Also it may chance that through inflammation, or changing of the naturall temperament of the liuer, such corruption of humours may happen, that sometime all the bodie shall be manifestly like herbes that be whitish with paleneſſe. Also sometime it shall be like the colour of lead: and also such colours be blacker if they happen through disease of the Spleene. Also it is caused many times through weakeneſſe of the bladder that receiueth the choler, which doth not draw, as it was wont to do, the cholericke humor from the liuer vnto him, and therefore leaueth the bloud vnpure. Also sometime it is caused through obstruction and debilitie of the vessells, whose mouthes are deriued from the gall to the liuer, and do not therefore draw the cholericke humour. Also many times through obstruction of the passages, which go to the bowells. But that we may discerne well the causes of the Iaundeis, you must of ne-
Signa. ceſſitie consider the figure of the excrements, and the colour: seeing in some they appeare much coloured by yellow choler, as also in some the vrine doth appeare. Therefore in them that haue choler burst out vnto the skinne, by reason of a good *crisis* in feuers, their excrements and vrine shall seeme to be of naturall colour. But if with the feuer cholericke deiections do inuade, and there be heauineſſe in their right side, it signifieth burning inflammation in the liuer: by whose violence the bloud is changed into choler, and carried all ouer the bodie. But if there be burning without heauineſſe and griefe, the euill is engendred onely through hote distemper of the liuer. But if without a feuer, together with feeling of some heauineſſe about the right side, white excrements be auoyded: in them you may iudge that there is obstruction of the passages of the bladder that receiue the choler. If such egestions come foorth without that heauineſſe, you may iudge their strength to be weake, either the attractiue vertue which fetcheth out the cholericke humor from the liuer, or weakeneſſe of the expulsiue vertue, which driueth out to the bowels. Also by and by after, most cholericke humours be sent out with the vrine abundantly. Those that haue melancholy sent to the skinne together
Black humors. with the bloud, they be vexed also grieuously: for there followeth it sadneſſe without reason, and gnawing of those things which be about the belly, difficultie of breathing, abhorring of meate, and they auoide blacke vrine, but their dung is like the colour of coperous or shoomakers bleach, and their wombe is much costiue. But those that haue the Iaundeis caused of yellow choler, haue no gnawing about the belly, nor also they do not so mue abhorre meats, they auoide white egestions, their vrines be coloured like Saffron, and they remaine troubled: but commonly to all that haue the Iaundeis, there chanceth sluggishneſſe to moue, and a contrary mind to sweete meates. Also itch of the whole bodie followeth. The whites of the eyes and the parts of the face nigh the temples, and the balles of the cheekes, do betoken it by
Cure of Iaundeis comming through crisis of a feuer. their pale colour. Also the veines vnder the tongue are found full, and signifie an abundant humour. The Iaundeis that is caused by reason of a good *crisis* when the feuer is perfectly ended, they are soone cured, if they vse bathes of sweete water, and frictions or chafings with discussiue oiles, and all

things

things that rarifie the skinne, as be, oiles of Cammomill, of Dill, of *Ireos*, or such like. Also Rosemary sodden in oile doth discusse and dissolue much. Let their whole diet be moist, and extenuating grosse humours. They that haue the Iaundeis caused through biting of a venimous beast, are to be cured almost as those be which are bitten with a mad dog, of the which we will speake in another place. To those that haue the Iaundeis through hot distẽper of the liuer, or through inflammation of it, you must minister the cures which are rehearsed before in the diseases of the liuer: therefore that which wee haue rehearsed there, must be referred hither. But if the Iaundeis be caused through obstruction of the bladder that receiueth the choler, then two speciall remedies must be vsed; bloud-letting, & purging. In them therefore that blood doth much abound, together with choler all ouer the body, & that be troubled with heauines, or stretching out about the liuer or the spleene, nothing can be done more profitably, then to let him bloud, so there be no cause that letteth it. You must cut the innermost veine of the right arme, and that if the liuer be affected euill: but if the spleene be diseased, cut the veine in the left arme: you must draw out the blood now and then, lest if you should draw it out on heapes, the strength of the sick should faile him. And if we be prohibited from bloud-letting, we may conueniently minister a clister. For a clister may wel be cast in after bloud-letting; for the auoiding out of the dung, maketh easie breath: and by prouoking and gnawing of the bowells it draweth and pulleth backe to it the humours that are sent out to the skinne. Make it after this sort: ℞. both the Endiues, Horehound, Agrimonie, Maidenhaire, Origan, Wormewood, ana. M.j. seeds of Annise, Fennell, Parsley, Sperage, an. ℥.ij. ß. Licorice, *Apium*, Fennell, the rootes of them, ana. ℥.j. boile them in sufficient water vntill the third part: then straine them, and take of the licour of that decoction, ℥. xiij. *Cassia fistula*, ℥ j. *Hierapicra*, ℥.ß *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, ʒ.ij. oiles of Dill and *Ireos*, ana. ℥.j. ß. Salt, ʒ j. commixe them all and make a clister. But purgations be most proper and familiar for this disease: yet so, that the humors be first attenuated, and made thinne by broths, potions, and also medicines. Therefore hee must vse meates of easie digestion and extenuating, birdes of mountaines, fishes of grauelly places, and pot herbes prouoking vrine, specially Endiue, Sperage, Louage, Fennell, and such like. Flesh of wild beasts being tamed are best, specially of goats. For his sauce Vineger is good, wherein *Aristolochia* hath beene steeped. He must abstaine from fruits, but let his banket be Almonds, a few at once, and Cicer a little rosted. Also the decoction of it continually drunke profiteth not a little. Wine white and thinne, and not verie old, is good. For medicines let him haue those that be taught in the chapter of the obstruction of the Liuer, and also in the first Booke the eleuenth chapter. Aboue other specially *Apium*, Parsley, Maidenhaire, Calamint, Veruaine, roote of Chickeweed, or Mather, *Aristolochia*, *Serpillum*, S. Iohns wort, being decoct, are good. The humours being prepared and extenuate, at length you must minister a medicine that purgeth choler. You must giue strong purgations to them that haue the Iaundeis; for through the drinesse of their stomacke, the medicines seeme weaker and lesse in effect in them. The best purgation in this case, is infusion of Rubarbe deseri-

Of venimous biting.
Cure of Iaundeis of hote distemper of the liuer or inflammation.
Cure of the Iaundeis through obstruction.
Venæ sectio.
Clyster.
Victus ratio.
Purgatio.

bed in the first booke the 11. chapter. Also *Hierapicra, Electuarium de succo Rosarum, de Psyllio* and *Diaphœnicon*. And if you profit him nothing with the first purgation you must returne againe to those things which haue vertue to take away obstructions & stopping: & after three daies you must purge him more vehemently againe. If the Iaundeis be engēdred through disease of the spleen, you must turne to the chapter of melancholiousnesse, & the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. The bellie being purged, you must againe minister medicines which do purge the intrailes. For which purpose the roote of *Cyclaminum* beaten and drunke is onely good: for this doth not only purge againe the intrailes, but also it is most meete to shut out the choler by sweat in the whole skin all ouer. Therefore after it is drunke, you must helpe the exclusion of the sweat by couerings and warmings in bed. You may giue of it, ʒ.ii. or iii. with *Aqua mulsa*. Also iuice of the barke of Radish doth notably wel, if it be mixed with sweet wine vnalaied, or *Vinum mulsum*, so that ℥.ii. of the iuyce be tempered with ℥.i. of wine. Also earthwormes drie, giuen three dayes with *Vinum mulsum*, do send out the Iaundeis by the vrine. Also you may giue very profitably iuyce of Endiue and Succory to them that haue feuers, by it selfe, and to them that lacke feuers, with wine. Also iuyce of *Cuscuta* profiteth maruellously. Also Cammomill is most profitable, which is called *Leucanthemus*, and also *Buphthalmum*. But all the medicines ministred in drinke, let them be ministred in a bath, if it can be, when the patient sitteth in a great hot vessell. Also you must be much diligent at this time to giue him a diet that recomforteth and refresheth strength, by the which the vertue expulsiue may be repayred: and if any member be hurt, let it be strengthened, and let the corruption of his colour be purged away. Also it is good for him to vse exercises, gestations, annointings and sweating out. For this purpose drie hote houses are good: in the which annoint the body with oyle wherein *Serpillum* or Rosemarie hath beene sodden. And if any of the Iaundeis be left about the face and the eyes, if the vrine appeare pure, and the belly auoyding after his accustomed manner, you must vse infusions into the nose: for which purpose iuyce of *Cyclaminum* is powred in: also *Nigella* with Vineger, iuyce of the roote of Beetes and *Anagallis*. Also let the sicke, sitting in a bath, draw into his nostrils very sharpe Vineger, and let him keepe it a while, pressing his nostrils together, and it will purge maruellously.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of euill state of the body,

κακεξία. *Cachexia* in Grecke is nothing else but an euill and naughtie state and disposition of the body. For it is in such case that it is spread abroad in waterinesse, and all the whole body is loose and waxeth soft. This disease for the most part is engendred of a long sicknes. Also it followeth when some intraile is hardned, specially after the hardnesse of the Liuer and the Spleene. Also it chanceth often in a continuall *Dysenteria*, & the disease called *Cœliacus morbus*. Also through letting of some accustomed excretion. The whole body is made whitish and weake, so that his legges are scarce able to beare him: and in the beginning his digestions be letted, his appetite remaining still: but afterward

Causa.

Signa.

ward therefolloweth abhorring of meate, and their breathing is ſeldome and weake. Alſo their belly ſendeth out vnequall excrements. Old men and children are ſpecially taken with this diſeaſe, which do ſoone periſh through weakneſſe of the vitall faculte, and becauſe the iuice doth breathe out of them readily through thinneſſe of the skin. But they that be of full age, do ſeldome fall into this diſeaſe, and do ſoone get it away againe. If this diſeaſe do endure long it turneth into the Dropſie, therefore his cure may not be deferred. Let his diet altogether be thinne and drie: therefore let their meats be ſimple, and which will eaſily digeſt, and that can ingender the beſt bloud. Let them eſchue all fruits alſo that ingender groſſe and viſcous humours, and that be hard to digeſt. Wine is good for them which is white, thinne, and odoriferous. For the cure, if the diſeaſe happen by letting of accuſtomed excretion, you muſt ſtirre vp and prouoke the excretion. Therfore you muſt vſe bloud-letting, if nothing do let it, which you muſt draw out by little and little at ſundry times, vnto the third or fourth day, in them that fell into this diſeaſe through retention of the hemorhoides or menſtruis. But in them that haue it through abundance of vicious humours, bloud-letting is hurtſull. Therefore rather purge them with ſome conuenient purgation. The body being purged, let him vſe chiefly waters that ſpring by themſelues of Alume, and Salt-peter, and afterwards ſulphurous waters Alſo let them exerciſe diuers deambulations, geſtations, vociferations, frictions with linnen, and other moderate exerciſes. After let them vſe annointings with oile, wherein is put ſomewhat that drieth vp humours, as be, *Nitrum* and ſalts. To cure the weatineſſe, apply certaine bathes betweene whiles. Alſo a potion of Wormewood helpeth them maruellouſly, and *Dropaces* applied. Alſo if the liuer be affected, or ſome other of the inward members, it is good to cure them by their owne remedies before preſcribed. If the euill turne into the Dropſie, you ſhall find it next.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Dropſie.

THere be three kinds of Dropſie. The firſt is called in Greeke, *Aſcites*: the ſecond *Tympanites*: and the third *Anaſarca, Hypoſarca, Sarcites*, and *Leucophlegmatia*. *Aſcites*, is when much waterie humour is heaped vp betweene the skin or filme called *Peritoneum*, and the bowels. *Tympanites*, is when much windineſſe & ſuperfluous breath is gathered in the aforeſaid places of the belly. *Anaſarca*, is when the humor is diſperſed throughout the whole bodie that all the fleſh appeareth altogether moiſt and wet like a ſponge or paper. The Dropſie is cauſed through great coldneſſe of the liuer, or through other parts very notably cooled, which can bring the liuer into the ſame affect. The liuer is affected by the Spleene being cold, and by the ſtomacke and the bowells, alſo by the lungs, the reines and the midriffe. Alſo it chanceth through vnmeaſurable auoyding of the Hemorrhoides, or through womans fluxe, or through retention of menſtruis, or through ſome other great affection of the wombe. For in all theſe the liuer hath no vnnaturall ſwelling, and yet the body is taken with the Dropſie, onely through refrigeration of the Liuer, affected in the beginning. But afterward ſometime it alſo waxeth hard, which

Aſcites.

Tympanites.

Anaſarca.

Cauſa.

is euident to be seene in them, which through vntimely drinking of cold water haue their liuer cooled on heapes, so that the Dropsie followeth by and by, before the liuer be lifted vp into a knotty swelling. Many haue fallen into the dropsie after the gout & through the vexing paine of the huckle bones. Most commonly those which feele not their meate, and haue euill state of the bodie, and also that be troubled with the Iaundeis, the Dropsie followeth it. And it followeth *Cœliacus morbus*, and *Dysenteria*. Commonly euery Dropsie causeth difficultie of breathing, and swelling, and heauinesse, and naughtie colour. Also they abhorre meate, and desire drinke largely, specially they that haue *Ascites*. For the humour that is holden and kept in the aforesaid places, is salt and rotten: therefore also for the most part there is wont to follow a feuer. Women are lesse troubled with the Dropsie then men. Children for the most part are taken with the Dropsie *Anasarca*. Among the said three kinds of dropsies, *Tympanites* is the most perillous; *Ascites* lesse perillous then it, and then *Anasarca*. One diet is common to all these kinds of Dropsies: that their meate be easie of digestion, and sufficiently coact and drie. For that meate that is loose and moist, is apt to be turned into watrinesse, Therefore let his bread be very well baked, and let it haue Salt, *Ammi*, Fennel, Annise, or Commin commixed with it. Also it ought to be well leauened, for it restraineth and stoppeth the lesse. Of Birds the driest are good, as Partriches, Turtles, Blackebirds, Thrushes, and such like. Of foure footed beasts, Goates and Hares. Also Chickens, their extreme parts, when they are rosted. Of fishes, Crabs of flouds. Also Egges rosted are good. Let him vse pot-herbes but seldome. Let those things that be ministred vnto them be somewhat sharpe, and that haue vertue to attenuate and heat: as is *Apium*, Parsley, *Daucus*, Rocket, Peniroiall, Coleworts, Garlicke sodden, Onions and Leeks. He must altogether abstaine from pulses. For sauce, let him vse Vineger with Pepper, Cinamon and such like. Let their salt be compound with Fennel, Hysope, Rosemarie, and *Apium*. You must giue them so much drinke only as shall suffice somwhat to breake their thirst: for ouermuch drinke doth dammage them that be sicke of the Dropsie, without measure. They must drinke thin wine, and that doth prouoke vrine. But they must eschue sweet wines and *Mulsum*: Vineger doth maruellously quench their thirst. Moreouer, let them take the greatest portion of meate at supper. Let them eschue much fruits and second tables: yet Nuts, Almonds, Pomegranates, Peares sodden, and drie Figges, are to be giuen vnto them, but let them take all those moderately, and not euery day. Let not their bed be verie soft, specially those that haue *Anasarca*. Strew vnder them dry herbs, as be Peniroial, Calamint, Origan, and such like: for it is maruellous, how much those do drie vp while they sleep: so that it hath been proued, that some being wrapped and hidden in a heape of wheate, haue risen againe after sleep strong and safe. And let them vse exercises in the Sunne, if it be sommer & a faire day: but let their head be couered: but if it be cold, let them vse it in houses being warmed, & nigh a fire, or at a fire. Riding is expedient at the first, and to be caried hither & thither in a chaire. But if the strength of the patient may suffer it, it is better to walke much on his feet, and sometime to run, then to be borne. Also the patient must be wrapped in skinnes dried with the Sunne, or digged into

Signa.

Diet.

Panis.

Potus.

Exercitatio.

hote

hote sand. After exercises wipe off the sweate with sharpe linnen clothes. Also it is verie good if you vse daily thrice or foure times frictions: for this doth open the passages that are shut, and drieth vp, extenuateth and casteth asunder humours. Therefore it doth verie quickely prouoke forth much sweate, and constraineth the flesh. They must be rubbed with drie hands, or with Salt beaten in water, or hote oile. After this they must be washed with Alume water, or Sulphure water, or salt water. For many which haue beene taken with the Dropsie *Anasarca*, and haue vsed such kinds of baths, they haue sufficed to weare out the disease, and also to make a stronger state of the bodie. And hitherto we haue rehearsed a common diet for all kind of Dropsies. For the cure, the remedie that is common for all Dropsies, is, that by and by in the beginning, you must purge the humour that doth abound. That you may do, both by bloud-letting, and by purgations, and by those medicines that prouoke vrine. That which is good particularly for this or that kind, we will teach in the chapters following, in which we will follow the cures of them euerie one particularly. *Curatio.*

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Dropsie Anasarca.

IN the Dropsie *Anasarca*, all the whole body and the flesh appeareth loose and wet like a sponge, as it is said: so that all the whole bodie swelleth vp, and is like a dead body. In this disease you must beginne the cure with letting of bloud, specially if the euill be engendred of suppression of hemorrhoids or menstruis, and if age and strength will suffer it. For by this meanes the abundance of humours that do hurt, are drawne out, and the feeble nature being vnloaden is swifter, and the cause of the disease is minished, and also health commeth againe with lesse labour. The naughtie humours being drawne out and purged by bloud letting, you must come to the remedy or purging medicines. But if there be need of extenuation and preparation of the humours before their expulsion, you shall minister decoctions and other things which be rehearsed before in the chapters of weaknesse of the Liuer, and obstruction of the Liuer. For which purpose minister also syrupes of Wormewood, of tame Endiue with the broad leaues, of Agrimonie and *Bizantia*. Let the purging medicines be of Simples, Rubarbe and Agaricke; of Compounds, pilles of Rubarbe, *pilulæ de Hiera simplici*, and pilles of Agaricke, and such like. Also *Hierapicra* is good in the beginning, because it taketh away obstruction, and addeth strength to the intrailes. Therefore you must only beware that you minister not purging medicines that be strong, and which adde no strength to the liuer: but you must bring forth the hurtfull humour with easie medicines by litle and litle. For if you purge but once, and on heaps, you destroy the strength maruellously, and coole the liuer. Therefore euery weeke you must make the wombe soluble, and you must alwaies passe from gentle remedies by litle and litle to the stronger. Therefore in this kind of Dropsie the Antidotes *Diaphœnicon, Electuarium Nidum*, be good. Also the root of Elderne sodden in wine doth purge notably. Also the root of Walwort profiteth, for they be both of one vertue. Moreouer, the rest of the time of the cure, while he abstaineth from

Signa.

Curatio.

Purgatio.

purging medicins, you must minister those things that adde strength to the liuer, whereof many be recited before, where we taught the cure of obstruction & weakenes of the liuer. Also minister those things which prouoke vrine. For which purpose, you may well minister *Diarrhodon abbatis, aromaticum Rosarũ, Dialacca, diacurcuma* trochisks of Agrimony, of Rubarbe, Wormwood, *Theriaca*, & such like. And this medicine profiteth notably ℞. the powders of *Diacurcuma* & of *Dialacca*, ana ℈.j. powders of *Diatrion santalon*, and *Diarrhodon abbatis*, ana. ʒ ß. powder of *aromaticum Rosarum*, ℈.j. Rubarbe chosen, ʒ ß. seeds of Endiue, with the broad leaues of Melons, and of Fennell, ana. ℈ ij. of Wormwood, Cammomill, & Withwind, ana. ℈.j. of Nutmegs, Squinant, and Spikenard, ana. ℈.j. ß. of very white Sugar, ℥.j commixe them together, and make a powder. Also this profiteth maruellously: ℞ seeds of Caraway, Fenell, & Annise, ana. ℈.ij. seeds of Comin, and S. Iohns wort, ana ℈.j. seeds of *Ammeos*, Parsley, *Daucus* & Louage, ana. ʒ ß. the roots of *Ireos*, and of *Asarum*, ana. ʒ.j. Wormwood, ℈.j. of Licorice, ʒ j. Sugar the weight of all the rest, commixe them all, & make a powder. And you must do your diligence, that in *Anasarca* the medicines be more drie then moist, because the whole state of the body is so watery. Moreouer, you must apply those medicines outwardly, which can drie vp humors, as be cataplasmes, emplaisters, ointments, & other like things that haue drying vertue in them. Therefore a cataplasme is good made of Barley & Beane meale, of Fenugreeke, of the root of Walwort, of Laurell berries, of Wormwood, and of Origan sodden in wine, and laid ouer all the whole body. Also Oxes dung conueniently dried, may wel be applied with *Posca* or *Oximel*, hauing the fourth part of Brimstone put to it. Also fresh Cheese hauing much Creame being laid to, maketh well against all swelling parts. Moreouer Doues dung, and Goates dung, Mayweed, and Cammomill, by euen portions bruised, sodden in Vineger and Honey, may be applied. Moreouer you must vse emplaisters of Leauen, drie Figges, *Nitrum, Ireos*, Melilot, Sage, Peniroial, *Cardamomum, Sulphur viuum*, Laurell berries, Stauesacre, salt Armoniacke, Masticke, Frankinsence, Sothernwood, *Aristolochia rotunda*, Doues dung, make it vp with *Oximel*. But you must altogether eschue fatte and rozenny Cerates, for they engender windinesse, and cause swellings. But yet the legges and the hands, and other parts of the bodie being swollen, may often be annointed with this ointment in the Sunne, or by a fire. ℞. of *vnguentum Agrippa*, ℥.i. of the meales of Lineseed, Fenugreeke, Beanes, and Barley, ana. ℥.ij. seeds of *Althea, Nigella, Daucus*, ana. ʒ.j. ß. *Sulphur viuum*, ʒ.iij. Bolearmoniacke, ʒ.ij. root of *Ireos*, ʒ.ij. ß. roch Alume, Frankinsence, ana. ʒ j ß. *Euphorbium*, ʒ j. oiles of *Ireos*, white Lillies, and Cammomill, ana. ℥.j ß. with Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the swollen parts verie often, it being melted on the coales. For his diet, you must seeke it in the former chapter of the Dropsie.

Tritura.

Alia.

Cataplasmata

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of the Dropsie Ascites.

IN the Dropsie *Ascites*, all the whole belly is swollen vp; and if it be stricken, there is heard such a sound, as a bottell doth make that is not full of water

water but the other parts of the body, ſpecially the vpper parts, are not puffed vp nor ſwollen. Let his diet that hath this Dropſie, be of birds of Mountaines, and other meates eaſie of digeſtion, and which do ingender good iuyce, as is ſaid before in the thirtie two chapter. The cure muſt be begunne by vſing of purging medicines. Let them be ſuch as we rehearſed in the former chapter: Coleworts of the Sea, called *Soldana*, and *Soldanella* taken in drinke, excelleth all the reſt: for this ſheweth a maruellous effect in bringing forth the hydropike water, ſo that many by the onely vſing of it, haue beene reſtored to health. Giue of it in wine or whey, ʒ.ij. or more, or leſſe, according to the diuerſitie of the body. Alſo pilles of *Sagapenum* are very good: and two drachmes or three of the iuyce of the roote of *Ireos*, putting to it, ℥ j. of Sugar. Alſo you muſt miniſter ſharpe clyſters, vnleſſe the belly be ſoluble of it ſelfe: for then it is more conuenient to drie vp. Among other this clyſter is ſpecially commended: ℞. flowers of Lawrell, ʒ.ij. roote of Polypodie, Agaricke, ana. ʒ j ß. Dodder, or *Cuſcutha*, ʒ. iij. ſeethe them in wine or water vntill the third part be conſumed. Then take of the liquor of that decoction being ſtrained, lib. 1. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥.ß. of *Electuarium nidum*, ʒ.ij. ß *mel Roſarum*, ℥.j. oiles of Rew, Cammomill and *Ireos*, ana. ℥.j ſalt Gemme, ʒ.j ß. commixe them all, and make a clyſter. For the ſame purpoſe, if you thinke good, you may ſeethe *Colocynthis*, *Cartanus*, Laurell berries, Anniſe ſeed, Ammi, and Caraway ſeeds, Rew, roote of Cucumber, and other like things put to them. After the aforeſaid remedies you muſt lay vpon the whole belly, ſome of the preſcribed cataplaſmes and emplaiſters. Alſo apply ointments and remedies that prouoke vrine and ſweate: and let him vſe exerciſes of the which we haue ſpoken abundantly before.

Diet.

Cure.

Clyſter.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Dropſie Tympanites.

IN this kind of Dropſie the belly is puffed vp and ſtretched out: and being ſtricken, it maketh a noiſe like a tabour or timbrell, but the other parts of the bodie waxe leane. It requireth like diet, that the other kinds of Dropſies haue: but in this all windie things are ſpecially to be auoided. Alſo let their exerciſes be much; & great thirſt doth helpe & ſuccour the patient ſtrongly. Let the cure be begunne with purging medicines, whereof you ſhall find examples before. Alſo it is good to caſt in clyſters, which haue vertue to diſſolue and diſcuſſe wind, as this is: ℞. rootes of *Apium*, and Fennell, ana. ℥.j. ſeedes of Anniſe, Fennell, *Daucus*, Louage, Parſley, and Comin, ana. ʒ.ij. Caraway ſeed, ʒ. iij. Rew, *Aſarum*, leaues of Walwort, Melilot, ana M.j. boile them in water vnto the third part, and then take of the liquor of that decoction being ſtrained, ℥.xij. *Hierapicra*, *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℥. ß. *Electuarium de baccis lauri*, ʒ. iij. oiles of Rew and Dill, ana. ℥.j ß. Salt, ʒ.j ß. commixe them together, and make a clyſter. You muſt giue alſo vnto them things that do prouoke vrine, and you muſt vſe as well inwardly as outwardly, thoſe things that diſſolue and diſcuſſe windineſſe, whereof you find plentie in the chapter of the Cholicke. The belly muſt daily be nouriſhed with *Panicum*, *Milium*, Salt, Braane, leaues of Rew, Cammomill flowers, hote aſhes ſewed in

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Clyſter.

Sacculi. Ceratum. bags. Also you may apply to it this cerate: ℞. flowers of Cammomill and Melilot, ana. ℥.j. ß. Mints, Sauorie, *Asarum*, ana. ℈.j. seeds of Annise, Fennel, Rew, Comin, *Daucus*, ana. ℥.j. *Cardamomum*, ℈.ß. Mirrhe, *Castoreum*, ana. ℈.j oile of Rew, ℥.iij. oile of Dill, ℥.j ß. Rosin and Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a cerate. Moreouer, cupping glasses fastned often to the whole belly lightly and with much flame, do maruellously profite. Afterward the belly must be rubbed with a sharpe linnen cloth, so long vntill it be red. Inwardly he *Lozenges.* must vse Antidotes, *Dianisum*, *Diacuminum*, and *Electuarium è bacchis Lauri*, or these Lozenges. ℞. of the powder of *Dianisum* and *Diacuminum*, ana. ℈.j. the powders of the Antidote of Laurell berries, ℥.j. the powder of *Diagalanga*. ℥.ß. seeds of Annise, Carawaies, *Daucus*, and Fennell, ana. ℈.ß. leaues of Rew, seeds of *Apium* and Louage, ana. ℈ j. Sugar, ℥.vj. dissolue it in the distilled waters of Fennell and *Apium*, and make lozenges. The other remedies are to be sought in the chapter of the cholicke.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of reines that send forth bloudie vrine.

Cause. MAny times there happeneth a disease of the reines, through the which thin wheyish bloud is pissed. It is caused through weaknesse of the reines, which be not therefore able to diuide the vrine: or it is caused through amplitude of the reines, which straine out the vrine from *Vena caua* vnto the reins. For when the passages are wider and stronger, they also send out some of the bloud to the reines, and other grosse matter. Also oftentimes the reines do send out bloud likewise as they are wont in the Hemorhoids. Moreouer some do void out bloud from the reines through breaking of a veine in the reines: as it chanceth to those which haue lift vp a great weight, or haue leapt greatly, or haue fallen out of an high place, or haue suffered some such other violent thing. Somtime it chanceth through gnawing of the veines by sharpe humours flowing from aboue. If this disease be caused through weakenesse of the reines, the bloud is sent out very wheyish: but if it be through amplitude and largenesse of the veines, then they feele no paine. If the excretion of bloud *Signa.* be by certaine circuites, then either there is fulnesse of the whole bodie, or neglecting of accustomed exercises, or refection of some member that went before. And if it chance through breaking of a veine, then the bloud is pissed forth most abundantly: but if it be of gnawing, then bloud is sent forth by litle and litle, and paine doth vexe the reines. Therefore you shall cure that excretion of bloudie vrine which is caused through weakenesse of the reines, or amplitude of the vessells that straine out vrine to the reines, by quiet and restrictiue meates, drinking of blacke wine, and other things which are rehearsed in the chapter of spitting of bloud. You must abstaine from those things specially which prouoke vrine, and from carnall copulation. In drinke besides those things that are rehearsed in the chapter aforesaid, minister decoction of the roote of Comfery, and *Tragacantha* ministred, that is, steeped in blacke wine, is good. Also ℥ j. of Harts horne with wine: iuyce of Marigolds doth stop bruisings out of bloud from the reines. Likewise leaues of Willow brayed with Wine, *lapis Hematitis*, ℥.j. roote of white Thorne, and decoction

Cure of bloody vrine by weaknesse of the reines.

of

of Knotgrasse. Moreouer, ℥.j. of Bolearmoniacke ministred is good. Syrupes of Roses and Mirtles, Trochisks of Amber, of *Terra Lemnia*, and of *Spodium*. Moreouer, sheepes Milke is onely praised, being ministred fasting, ℥.iiii. with ʒ.i. of Bolearmoniacke commixed with it. Apply outwardly to the reines and the loynes those things which be described against spitting of bloud, and in the chapter of *Dysenteria*, and other eruptions of bloud; and whatsoeuer can together with his restraining and drying, adde strength also: as be leaues of Brier and Oke, Mast, Mirtle berries, Pomegranate rindes, *Balaustiæ*, and such like. After this the state of the body must be refreshed and restored with meats of good iuyce, with milke and flesh of birds, and with Swans flesh that is leane; that thereby the whole body may be brought to his former strength, and the reines being strengthened also, they may fulfill their owne proper office, and that they may diuide and straine out the wheyish humour from the bloud. But if the reines do send out bloud according to the circuits, or through breaking of a veine, or through gnawing of sharpe humours flowing from aboue, then by and by you must cut a veine of the same side in the arme. To those that send out by circuits bloud, let them bloud a little before the circuit, but let the other bloud by and by in the beginning: but it is better to part the drawing out of the bloud, that his pulling backe and auersion may be done by little and little. Let the places about the reines be couered with sponges wet in *Posca*, or moist wooll, with oile of Roses and Vineger. After this applie ointments, emplaisters, and cerates described in the places before rehearsed. Also a cupping glasse may commodiously be applied, specially if you suspect inflammation to be present in them which pisse bloud through breaking of a veine. Also potions are good rehearsed before in the chapter of spitting of bloud. In the meane season also, the sicke must be driuen from all salt and sharp things. But when excretion of bloud ceasseth, he must vse a diet that doth not ingender much bloud, specially in those that void out bloud by circuit. Also the vpper parts of the body must continually be exercised. In those which pisse bloud through breaking of a veine, if the exulceration be left in the places, you shall cure them after the bloud is stopped by those things that are spoken of in the chapter of Exulceration of the reines.

Cure of bloudy vrine coming through circuits, or breaking of a vein, or gnawing.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of inflammation of the Reines.

THE reines are vexed with inflammation for diuerse causes. For both corrupt humours, and stripes, and rubbings together, and drinking of medicines do ingender inflammation of the reines, and specially continuall and vehement ridings. There cometh to the sicke a beating paine behinde about the first ioynt of the backe, a little aboue the bastard ribs: but the paine stretcheth vpward, euen vnto the liuer, specially the right side rein being vexed, but downeward vnto the bladder and priuie members, and the loines & hips, and also to the share and thighs. Also there followeth astonishment of the leg that is neare, that it can neither be stretched out right, nor he cannot go on his feete. And whether sneesing or any other concussion do chance, they are vexed with most vehement paine, their extreme parts be cold, and most the

Causa.

Signa.

calfes of the legges, and the feete. There is present difficultie in making of water, and they pisse continually and painefully. In the beginning their vrine is thinne and waterie, hauing no residence in it: but the inflammation waxing worse, it is more rubicund. Also afterward it is grosse and filthie, and there be vehement feuers present. And if the inflammation increase still, all these signes waxe more vehement. To these commeth disposition to vomite, and gnawing of the stomach, and vomiting of choler. Many of them are vexed, and sweate vntill their hearts faile them: their belly is stopped, so that they are puffed vp with wind, and do send out belkings continually. There followeth vehement abhorring of meate, and to some thereare continuall exacerbations, but to some betweene whiles. And generally, egestion of the wombe, and much excretion of vrine do go before those paines. The sicke must lie in a very soft bed: and the first day he must abstaine from meate, but you may not extend his fasting to many dayes. For the vrines being made more pure and sharpe by fasting, do vexe with most vehement biting and gnawing. Therefore in the beginning you must nourish them with thin soupings that do ease and ceasse gnawing and biting, as is, Broth of *Ptisan*, or *Alica* of Barley. Also Mallowes for his potherbs doth much profit. Let his drinke be water, wherein a little Cinamon hath bin sodden. To be short, let his diet be thin, and such as is in other inflammations. For the cure, in the beginning you must by and by let him bloud, and you must cut the veine that is in the hamme, or in the anckles, and that must be done on the leg that is right against the reine that is vexed. Also sometime (as *Galen* saith) you must let bloud of the arme, (that is) when the inflammation is new, and abundance of bloud is present. After bloud-letting you must come to outward medicines, as cataplasmes, foments, liniments, emplaisters, and such like, which haue vertue to coole meanly, and to ease paine, made of oile of Roses, Quinces and Cammomill, of Barley meale, Beane meale, Fenugreeke, Lineseed, and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapters of inflammation of the liuer and the spleene. And if the paine be not eased by those things that be applied outwardly, apply a cupping glasse to the loines, and the guts; and scarification being made, you must draw out much bloud. Then you must vse nourishment of sponges, and other things which can ease paine. You must onely beware all this time, that you giue not such medicines to drinke as prouoke vrine, for they hurt vehemently by bringing in gnawing and biting humours to the inflamed parts. This medicine I haue proued to be singularly good: ℞. the iuice of Clary, and the iuice of Nightshade, ana. ℥. ij. drunke in ℥. vi. of stale Ale morning and euening six dayes together. Also you must beware in the beginning of the inflammation of purging medicines. But yet you may vse soft clysters (specially if the belly be costiue) made of the decoction of Mallowes, or Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, or *Ptisan* broth, putting to it oile of Violets, or Cammomill oile. But you must beware you put not in great abundance of it, for then the bowels being filled and stretched out with it, will presse together the reines. But when the inflammation is perfectly ceassed and concoct, which you may know by the ceassing of the paine, then also you may purge him by medicines that prouoke vrine. For after inflammations concoct and digest, the vrine commeth forth much

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

Note.

much in quantitie and grosse, and in those that haue residence, it is good, and so iudged the best altogether. What medicins prouoke vrine, we haue taught in the 7. Booke of making of medicines, in the 7. chap. specially among pot-herbs, Fennell, *Apium*, and Parsly wel sodden, are good. And if by the aforesaid medicines, the inflammation be not driuen away, and if neither the paine, nor the feuer, nor the heauinesse do rest by vsing of the aforesaid things, and also if difficultie of pissing, and often dropping downe of the vrine, do vexe the patient, these betoken matter to be gathered in that part. Therefore as swiftly as you can, you must helpe the suppuration & breaking out of the matter. For the which purpose, a Sponge continually wet in water and oile, applied in stead of a foment, profiteth. For the same purpose also we vse cataplasmes which are made of Barley meale, Bran, Figs, *Althæa*, & such like, rehearsed before in the chapter of inflammation of the liuer. Also it profiteth greatly to descend into a bath made of mollifying herbs, as Mallowes, *Althæa*, Lineseed, Fenugreeke. And if after perfect suppuration, the rupture & breaking be delayed and taried (which you may know if the feuers and pains waxe lesse, & sense of heauinesse remaine about the reine that is affected) minister those things in drinke which prouoke vrine, as is, decoction of Fennell, Peniroiall, Origan, and such like: for these sometime do break the suppuration, and purge out the matter with the vrine. And if the vsing of them do profit nothing, you must wash the belly with sharpe clisters: as with root of wild Cucumber sodden & allaied, or decoction of Garlike or Radish. You must steep those in Brine, and commixe a litle oile, whereby they may be made slippery to be powred in. These must be throwne in with a clister pipe, & the sicke must be bidden to hold it long time: for they are wont often to breake that suppuration, together with that, that they mollifie the belly. Also if the rupture and breaking tary, Commin with wine called *Passum*, helpeth, and Rew with *Vinum mulsum*. Moreouer, the rupture being made, little peeces of flesh being long, are sent out with the vrine. And if the vlcers be malignant, there be sent out humours stinking, swart, and slimie: but if they be benigne and gentle, the matter that is pissed forth, is white, equal, light and without grieuous sauor, and little in quantitie. After the eruption and breaking out of the matter, minister Milke with Hony, and other things which shall be rehearsed in the chapter of vlcers of the reins.

Signa suppurationis.

Signa perfectæ suppurationis.

Signa rupturæ factæ.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the stone in the Reines.

THE stone of the Reines happeneth oftener to men of perfect age then to children. The cause of ingendring of such stones is continuall crudity and rawnesse of the stomach, whereby abundance of grosse and earthly humours is heaped vp together, and burning of fierie heate about the reines parcheth the humours, and knits them together, and hardneth them into a stone. The stones be in the reines, nigh their ventricles, either little or great, and somtime smaller, sometime many, differing among themselues in greatnes, figure, colour, and sharpnes: for they are found blacke, whitish and pale. There chanceth to the sicke grieuous paine in the reines, and he feeleth like as it were a bodkin thrust in, and yet there appeareth no swelling without. He can turne his backebone hardly. The leg that is right against the reine that is diseased, is astonied,

Causæ.

Differences of stones.

Signa.

there is present abhorring of meate, & vomiting. About the beginning of obturation and stopping, the vrine is pissed forth little in quantitie, and watrie. Afterward there followeth perfect suppression of the vrine, and the wombe auoideth nothing, but it maketh many proffers to go the stoole. Sometime there is auoided forth bloud, through the violēce of the stones, specially if they be sharp stones. Also the vrine hath grauelly residence, specially when the stone is remoued from the reins; which signes aforesaid *Hippocrates* declareth in *libr. 6. Epid. par. 1. Aphor. 5.* Moreouer things that be light and round, are easily sent out: but not so, if they be of any other forme or fashion: but specially if they be long and sharpe, they are hard to be sent out. When the stone, stopped in the reines, doth cause most vehement paines, left abundance of bloud through the greatnesse of the paine should come downe together to the member diseased, in a body that is full of humors and strong, you must by and by cut the veine in the ham of that leg that is astonied, and is right against the reine that is diseased. But in those that labour of ill digestion or vicious humours, purging of the abundant humor is good for them. Neither may this caution be omitted except some other thing do forbid them: which also *Hippocrates* biddeth, while he teacheth that yong men should be purged with Hellebore. Also if it be not lawfull to let bloud, nor to minister purgation, you must wash the wombe by ministring of clisters, which you must do at that time specially, when there is great plenty of excrements in the bowels. But you must only beware that they be not strong clisters, and that they do not draw plenty of humors from other places to the bowels, left the passages of the vrine should be streightned and pressed together: but let them be such as are onely able to auoide the excrements contained in the bowels, as is this clister: ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Mercury, Maidenhaire, Parietarie, ana. M. j. water Cresses, M. j. ß. seeds of Parsley, *Apium*, Fennell, and Flaxe, ana. ℥. iij. root of Gladon, ℥. j. ß. Bran, ℥. j. boile them in iust quantitie of water vnto the third part, & then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained, ℥. xi. of *Cassia fistula*, ℥. j. of *Hierapicra*, ℥. ß. *mel Rosarum* strained, ℥. j. ß. oiles of Dill, Rew, and Cammomill, ana. ℥. j. Salt, ℥. ij. commixe them all & make a clister. But we may in no case vse continuall clisters, & neglect almost all other remedies, as many Phisitions do now adays, but vse them twise or thrise, & so, that they be not kept aboue their accustomed time. For if they be holden longer then they ought to be, they cause pressing together, and streightnes of the reins, & the conduits of the vrine. When the belly is purged and emptied of excrements, you must minister those medicins, which can loosen the conduits and passages; for which purpose the region of the reines, and the loines must be annointed with this medicine: ℞. oiles of Dill, and of sweet Almonds, ana. ℥. ij. oile of Cammomill, ℥. j. ß. Hens grease, & Goose grease, an. ℈. ij. Butter without salt, ℥. j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make a soft ointment. Also he must vse inessions of the decoctions of Calamint, Origan, water Cresses, Coleworts, leaues of *Althæa*, Mallows, & such like, or the sick must often be let downe into a great vessell of warme sweet water. Also foments of Bran, with leaues of *Althæa* sodden, being applied to the grieued place, be very good. Also cataplasmes made of Wheate meale, of Lineseede, and Fenugreecke, of Lupines, of the root of dog Fennell beaten very small, and of Cammomill

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Purgatio.

Clyster.

Note.

Vnguentum.

Insessions.

Cataplasmata

momill. Also it is good to lay bread sodden in wine, called *Passum*, about the loines and the belly. Neither shall he do rashly which applieth cataplasmes, and other things before rehearsed, to the bladder and the share. But you must bring on heapes one plaister after another, before the first do coole: for cold doth draw together and bind, and so doth hold still the stone in the reines, and in the conduits of the vrine. And if you list not to vse so many cataplasmes, you may couer it with some heating thing vpon it, that it coole not; for these sometimes, and that not seldome, are wont to suffice for to cast out the stone by the vrine. And if these driue not away the disease, you must minister in drinke those things which prouoke vrine. These that follow draw much vrine: Gladon, S. Iohns wort, Parsly, *Orcoselinum*, Grommell, *Ammi*, seed of *Daucus* and Fennell, *Asarum*, roote of Brionie and Mather, barke of the roote of Capers, Sperage, and such like. With these commixe those things that bring downe vrine vnto the reines: as is, root of Peucedane, or dog Fennell, Briony, *Apium*, and *Radicula*. Also commixe with them, those things that breake & teare the stone in the reins, as is, *Sium*, Maidenhaire, *Bdellium*, Tutsan seed, *Bruscus* root, Saxifrage, Betonie, roote of *Damosonium*, broth of Cicers, roote of Cipresse, Grommell, *lapis Iudaicus*, *Xanthium*, the seed and roote of *Althæa*, gumme of Plumbtree, earth Wormes sodden, and stones and sponges of the Sea. Euerie one of these part of them sodden, and part of them very finely powdred, minister them to drinke. But it is best to minister those things which prouoke vrine and breake the stone at that time, when the vehement paines be released, which chanceth when the stone is remoued, and stirred out of his place. But if the stones be established fast, and be vehemently compact in the reines, he must eschue much drinke, and also those things that prouoke vrine: for seeing they bring with them to the reines a great abundance of excrements, they cause the passages of the vrine to be stopped, and let the passing of the stones out of the reines. You must release and loosen the reines, and the conduits of the vrine, with foments, cataplasmes and insessions, as is aforesaid. Also the belly must be voided with light clisters, let the passages of the vrine be stopped. After that paine is a litle released, you may also apply profitably to them a cupping glasse, specially subtilly fastned to, if inflammation do not let it: for oftentimes cupping glasses do so remoue on heapes those stones, that they ceasse the paines by and by, that is, the stones being carried into the amplitude of the bladder. Wherefore in the beginning fasten the cupping glasse aboue from the reine, and then to the part about the priuy members, ouerthwartly according to the placing of the conduits of the vrine. Moreouer stones being brought from the reines to the bladder, and for their greatnesse being holden still about the necke of the bladder, they do often bring the sicke into extreme perill, as well through their pricking paine, as also because they will not suffer the vrine to come out. You must go about to let the sicke lie in such a fashion, that he may lie vpright, and haue the ioynts of his huckle bones lie verie high. Then you must stirre them many wayes, that by all the meanes that you can inuent, you may make the stone to fall out of the passage of the bladder. Afterward you must bid the sicke to put out the vrine quickely: but when the stone is not cast out, you must moue him againe,

and vse it againe and againe often. And if you do profite nothing by thus doing, you must put in an instrument called *Catheter*, which is apt to draw out vrine, and with that you must draw the stone from the necke of the bladder, and bring out the vrine. Afterward you must labour to breake the stone being in the breadth of the bladder, with conuenient medicines by potions: but if the stone fall out of the bladder, it staieth about the middle passage of the yard, and by wounding it bringeth perill of exulceration: then you must powre hot water by little and little, from the furthest parts of the yard, or you must put the yard in hote oile, that hath dissoluing vertue in it. Also you must minister much of some decoction made of those things that prouoke vrine, and you must bid the sicke gather much vrine, and afterward to put it out, and to expell it diligently: for so the stone withdrawne is wont to fall out. But when you cannot draw him out this way neither, you must cut the yard aboue with a litle wound, about the bignesse of an Akorne: for it is not good to cut it vnder the yard; for almost alwayes it turneth into a *Fistula*, and afterward the vrine cometh out by the cleft. The stone being at the last remoued away, you must preserue the man, that the reines be no more troubled with the stone. The greatest thing to auoid ingendring of the stone, is to vse meats of good iuyce, easie of digestion, and moderate. Therefore it is good for him to beware of all meates of hard substance, and which are hard to be broken in peeces with chewing. Also let their exercises be meane, and let them vse but little all kinde of Pulse, and of corne: also Cheese, Milke, and the meates that are made of them. Moreouer, blacke wine, and plenty of flesh, and generally all things of grosse iuice, & that be ouer hote and sharpe. You must admonish them, whom the stone hath afflicted, that they vomit often after supper, and that they drinke Wormewood continually. And at certaine times, if bloud seeme to abound, let them cut a veine: or if vicious humours be gathered on a heape, let them vse a purging medicine, agreeing to their temperament. Also their water throughout all their diet, must be most pure & strained. Also let their wine be thinne and white, and not very old, for that is meete to prouoke vrine. Also they must vse as well meates as medicines that prouoke vrine. Therefore they must eate daily Parsneps very well sodden, Fennell, *Sium*, Peniroyall, and such like. Among medicines this powder is of much effect: ℞. of the roots of Fennell, Sperage and *Filipendula*, ana ℥.j. rootes of Mather, ℈ j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Althæa*, ana ℥.j. Licorice scraped, ℥.ij. the stones of sea Sponges, and *lapis Iudaicus*, ana ℈.j. seeds of *Ammeos*, *Daucus*, Parsley, Saxifrage, Fennell, Annise, Grommell, ana ℥ ß. seeds of Melons, and Citrons pilled, an. ℥ j ß. seed of *Alkakengi*: ℥.ß. Pellitory of the wall, Mallowes, ana ℥.j. Pulioll mountaine, Maidenhaire, Peniroiall, *Asarum*, ana. ℥.ß. of the bloud of a male Goat dried, and prepared, ℥.j. *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacke*, ana ℥.ß. of Crabs eyes, Cinamon chosen, and Squinant, ana ℈ ij. beate all, and bring them into a most fine powder, whereof giue the weight of one drachme euery fourth day, or once a weeke in the morning with thinne wine. Moreouer the preparating of the Goats bloud aforesaid is taught of *Aetius*, *lib.* 11. *cap.* 12. Other remedies we will speake of in the chapter of the stone in the bladder.

Preseruation from the stone

Powder against the stone of the reines.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of vnmeasurable Pissing.

DIABETES is a continuall disease about the reines, causing much thirst: & also whatsoeuer is drunke, euen as it is taken, it is pissed out again. This disease is ingendred of weakenesse of the retentiue vertue of the reines: but there is such strength of the attractiue vertue, that it sucketh the whole bodie through immoderate heate. There followeth to the sicke a stubburne thirst, neither are they filled by ministring any kinde of liquor. Therefore they are constrained to drinke continually, because that which is drunke goeth out so swiftly by the vrine againe. Also the bowels of the sicke seeme to burne, the loynes swell vp, and the stones and hanches also. And if yet more gnawing heat be increased in the bowels, the stomach is wrinckled, and the veines in it are lifted vp: all the state of the body is leane, and there chanceth grieuous consuming of the bodie. The effect of the cure consisteth in this, to stop the sharpnesse of the humor & the bloud, and with that to make the wheyish humour which is commixt with it, of slow mouing, and to correct the distemper of the reins. Therfore by and by, when the euil beginneth, being not yet come to his perfection, it is best to cut the veine on the arme, and to draw out bloud moderately. Also you must giue him things that prouoke vrine meanly, which may purge out the vicious humors that be setled in the reins. But if the euil be immoderate & old, you must neither vse bloud-letting, nor minister any thing that prouoketh vrine: for these do further the colliquation and consuming of the body, which doth chance also by it selfe. For in them that this euill is inueterate, their strength faileth them, and through bloud-letting the whole bodie is made sharper: and things that prouoke vrine, do multiplie & increase the euill in them. The greatest and chiefest remedie of this disease, is to reuomite that vp againe that is drunke. Let his drinke be very cold, as also let the rest of his diet be cooling. Therefore giue him meats of good iuice, & which can difficultly be changed, & do lacke mordacitie and gnawing: or which are able to stop mordacitie and sharpnesse, as be, rere egs, *Alica* made like a souping, and leane swines flesh much sodden. Also you may well giue them new Cheese well compact, and without salt, and milke wherein flint stones, or red hote steele hath beene quenched, the whey taken away. Also for souping, cold Ptisan broth is good. For pot-herbs, take Endiue, Lettuce, and Purslaine. Of fruits, Peares, Apples, & Pomegranates. Also fishes of grauelly places be good. He must drinke wine that is red and thicke, well alayed with water, for to wash the salt humours which cause the thirst; for wine changeth the temperature of the body to sweetenesse. In drinke also you must minister vnto him iuyce of Pomegranates, *Rob de Ribes*, or *Rob de Barberies*. For medicines, minister vnto him the iuyce of Knotgrasse, or of Sanguinarie, with blacke wine. Also decoction of Comfery, & of Dates, & of Mirtle beries, or Peares. Likewise sirups of Roses, & Mirtles, and such like. Also Trochisks of *Spodium* may be ministred with iuice of knotgrasse, or black wine. Outwardly you must apply to the sides, the loynes & the share, ointments, cataplasmes, & cerates that do coole: as be those which are made of rose Vineger, *Polenta*, Lettuce, Ducks meat, Pellitory

Diabetes quid
Causa.
Signa.
Curatio.
Diet.
Medicamenta
Localia.

of the wall, Vine leaues, Purslaine, and such like. For which purpose also, ointments do profite, made of oiles of Roses and Mirtles, or annointings with the iuice of Nightshade, or of Vine buds. Also you must lay to the Hypochonders or sides, in forme of a cataplasme, Barley meale, wrought vp with vineger and oile of Roses. Also vse this emplaister: ℞. Barley meale, ℥.ß. Vine buds, tops of Willow, *Bursa pastoris*, ana. M.ß. the rind of Pomegranats, ℥.ij.ß. Purslaine, M.j. seedes of Quinces, ℥.j. red Roses, M.j. ß. boile them all in water vnto the thicknes of hony, then adde to it oile of Roses, ℥.ij oile of Mirtles, ℥.j. boile them againe, and make a plaister. Of these aforesaid things you may make a cerate, by putting to *Hypocistidos*, *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, Rosin & Waxe. Also you must prouoke them to sweate, that the vicious humours may be turned to sweating out. The best euaporation and sweating is in a tunne, made with hearbs and other hote things to prouoke sweate after such sort, that the head may be without the tunne. Or else apply a vessell full of hote water to the feete, lying in his bed, and prouoke sweate. Also wash the conduite with Plantaine water, and burnt Alume.

Emplastrum.

Sudorum euocatio.

CHAP. XL.

Against vlcers of the Reines.

Causa.

VLcers or biles of the reines be caused through rupture and breaking of the veines in the reines. Also it is caused through rotting of inflammation, and through sharpe and gnawing humours, carried into the reines. When the reines are exulcerate, there is paine felt in the loynes, with heauinesse, and the vrine is pissed forth without any impediment, which chanceth not so in the vlcers of the bladder. Also there is atter commixed in the vrine with little peeces of flesh, or haires swimming in them; according to *Hippocrates* saying, 4. *Aphor.* 75. who saith, If bloud or atter be pissed out, it signifieth exulceration, either of the reins, or of the bladder. And by and by after he saith, If in a grosse and thicke vrine there appeare little peeces of flesh, or as it were haires, they are sent from the reines. Therefore when these appeare, let the sicke eschue crudities, and saciette or fulnesse. Therefore let him eate no raw things in his meates, neither that which is hard of digestion, or that will easily corrupt, or ingender inflammations or windinesse. Let him chiefly abstaine from those things which do soone waxe soure or sharpe; also from all sharpe and burning things, and whatsoeuer doth breed and ingender choler: as is, much thirst, abstinence, hunger, labour, wrath, solitarinesse, exercise, watching, and immoderate sawces. He must eschue aboue all things immoderate riding, & all vehement mouing and stirring: also he must auoid perpetuall idlenesse, and continual bathing. He must vse new bread well wrought, & giue him flesh of birds of the mountaines, & kids flesh, and such like tender flesh. Also giue him scalie fishes of grauelly places, rosted on a gridiron. Moreouer, riuer Crabs, soupings of Ptisan, and *Amylum* sodden with milke, be marueilous good. Giue him also Milke mixed with Egs, and the fat broth of a Henne. Also rere Egs ministred alone, are good. Of Pot herbs, Mallowes, Endiue, Sorrell, Purslaine, and Lettuce, are good: but al these must be sodden, for the sicke must eate nothing that is raw, as is aforesaid. Of fruits, Raisins are not hurtfull, nor pine Nuts.

Renum vlcera Signa.

Diet.

Also

Also Almonds well blanched are good. Much drinke and strong must be eschued. And he must altogether refraine from cold drinke: for cold, as *Hippocrates* saith, 5. *Aphor.* 20. is an enemy to vlcers. For his drinke let him vse wine that is alayed, and somewhat restrictiue: or let him drinke Goates milke, or Sheeps milke, or Almond milke. Carnall copulation is maruellous euill, not only for vlcers, but also for all other diseases of the reines, specially in old men, and in them that be weake of nature. Such things must be eschued as prouoke vrine. Also let bathing be seldome vsed, as is aforesaid. It is not vnprofitable to vse naturall bathes, and waters sprong of themselues, and specially Alume waters, and Brimstone waters, for it is commodious to wash cold places: it destroyeth vlcers that be hard to cure, as well outwardly as also inwardly. Also naturall waters drunke after the morning walke are good. The cure of vlcers of the reines, when as they are caused through sharpe and gnawing humors, must be begun with purging of vicious and gnawing humours. They that are thus affected, you must also purge them by vomite: for vomite is not good onely to auoid vicious humors, but also if any man do vomite boldly euery moneth, he shall dissolue the vlcer of the reines, and what euill soeuer may chance there: for it turneth the mouing of the humors into a contrary part. Also in the mean season you must minister medicines which do stop the gnawing of the sharpe humours, as is, Mallowes, Endiue, Sorrell, Purslaine, seed of Melons, Cucumbers, and Gourds, sirupes of Violets, Roses, and water Lillies, and the Conserues of them. But when the vicious humors be purged, he must drinke *aqua Mulsa*, or the decoction of Fenugreeke with hony, or of Cucumbers, or of Mallowes, or of Melons seed with *Hydromel.* Also minister Milke with Hony newly milked, and hot: for it is good to purge the vlcers. Also Goats whey, decoction of Barley, Raisins, & Licorice, is maruellous good, and the iuice likewise. When that the vlcers be purged and cleansed (which you may know, if there appeare in the vrine neither peeces of the couer of the vlcer, nor yet dreggie and filthie atter, but matter that is whitish, light, equall, and litle in quantitie) then minister such medicines, as do drie vp and conglutinate. For which purpose giue him Bolearmoniacke, gumme Tragacanth, *Amylum*, *terra Lemnia*, and such like before rehearsed. But among other things this powder is maruellous good: ℞. *terra Lemniæ*, Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥ j. ß. *Tragacanthæ*, *Spodium* burnt, an. ℥. j. *Amylum*, pine Nuts toasted, ana ℥. ß. Lineseed, Cucumber seed blanched, Melons seed, ana. ℥. ij. seed of *Apium*, ℈. ij. Dragons bloud, ℥. j. beate them all together, and make a verie fine powder, of the which giue the sicke daily, ℥. ij. with Milke newly milked. Moreouer, outwardly you must apply such things as can drie and strengthen the reines. Therefore minister emplaisters and cerates, or ointments made of the oiles of Roses, and of Mirtles, of Barly meale, Frankinsence, Masticke, red Roses, and such like. Examples whereof you may seeke before. As for other remedies, we will rehearse hereafter in the Chapter of vlcers of the bladder.

Curatio.

Vomitus.

Medicines stopping gnawing of humours.

Purging of the vlcers.

Glutinatiues.

Puluis.

To drie and strengthen the reines.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the stone in the bladder.

STones in the bladder do ingender oftener in children, then in older folke. When that vrine grosse and very thicke is carried into the largenesse of the

Calculus vesicæ.

bladder, it setleth and stayeth there, like dregges of wine, or muddy water, and afterward through the heate that is in children, being dried and compact together, it breedeth a stone. Therefore there be two speciall causes of the ingendring of the stone in the bladder: that is, thickenesse of the vrine, and heat of children. They that haue the stone in the bladder, itch often, and do handle their priuy members, which also are swollen, and they are constrained to make water continually, and they are vexed with the Strangury, or dropping out of vrine. The cure of this disease is almost the same that the cure of the stone in the reines is. But they differ in this thing, because the stones of the bladder require stronger medicines, and you must apply the medicines in another place then you did in the cure of the reines. The stones that are ingendred in the bladder, are broken chiefly with these medicines (that is) the seede and roote of Fennell, of Louage, blacke Piony seeds, Motherwort, Cammomill, the roote and seede of *Althæa*, *Sium*, Maidenhaire, Sorrell rootes, the stones of Sponges, the stone of *Tecolithus*, Grommell, *Bruscus*, root and seeds, the stones which come out of men with their vrine, brayed and drunke, the seed of little Burres, the barke of Capers, Sothernwood seed, Iacinth, white Violets, Smallage, Parsley, and other such like, which do prouoke vrine, & which be rehearsed in the chapter of the stone in the reines. To these you must conioyne the most laudable remedie, that is, a hedge Sparrow being dressed in salt, and taken raw in meate, doth heale the disease perfectly. For it expelleth the stones that are already ingendred by the vrine, and it letteth them from ingendring any more. Also Goats blood is a present remedie, as well for the stone of the reines, as of the bladder: for it dissolueth those that be ingendred, and driueth them out with the vrine, and prohibiteth other to ingender any more, & ceasseth paine. Furthermore, if the stones of the bladder cannot come out by the passage of the vrine, but that they be there stopped, and compact together, & so do cause suppression of vrine, thē the sick must be laid vpward, so that his hips must lie vpward and higheſt, and then you must moue him hither and thither many wayes, that thereby the stone may fall out of the passage, and afterward bid him pisse euen as he lieth yet vpward. But if he cannot make water so neither, prouoke the vrine by a cyring, and after that you must minister those medicines which haue vertue to breake the stone in the bladder. And if the cure come not to passe by this meanes, you must come to cutting. The stone therefore being consumed by any of the meanes aforesaid, such an order of diet must be appointed to the patient, that the stone may not ingender againe, which we haue prescribed in the chapter of the stone in the Reines.

Signa.

Curatio.

To breake the stone in the bladder.

CHAP. XLII.

Of bloud broken out of the Bladder, or curded in it.

IT chanceth sometimes, that a veine breaketh in the bladder, and then some of the blood is sent out, & some waxeth thicke & curdeth within. When the bloud is thickened and curded within, the patients heart faileth him, and hee waxeth pale, his pulses be small, darke, and thicke, he is sorrowfull, he is cold, and his strength decayeth. And sometime when a clod of blood chanceth to fall into the passage of the vrine, then it stoppeth the going out of the vrine.

Causse.

Signa.

You

You must in this ease, as also in other burstings out of bloud, cause a verie quicke and speedy remedie. Therefore if nothing forbid, it is good to cut the veine in the arme, drawing out the bloud by times, that by this meanes the bloud may be drawne backe often, and by little and little. Let the patient in his lying be laid vpward, and let his hips be lifted vp, and apply sponges dipped in *Posca*, that is, water and vineger sodden together, to coole him. Also the extreme parts must be bound, and the share must be couered with sponges dipped in *Posca*. If the euill increase, cupping glasses fastened to the ilions, and to the loines profit much. After irrigations with the sponges dipped in *Posca*, you must vse cataplasmes of Knotgrasse, Brambles, Plantaine and Pomegranate floures. Also vse cerates made of *Hypocistis*, *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, and such like, rehearsed before in the chapters of spitting of blood, and, of the fluxe *Dysenteria*. You must poure into the bladder, iuice of Knotgrasse, Plantaine, or Millefolie, commixing with it *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, Trochiskes of *Spodium* and such like. Also insessions of such like things are good; for both *Posca* and decoction of *Lentiscus*, and also of Brambles, and such like, are good. Also you must minister in drinke, medicines apt to bring out blood, as be, *Rhaponticum* finely beaten, and xij. red seeds of Pionie, *Terra Lemnia*, Horsetaile, the roote of Centorie the great, the barke of Frankinsence, and such like. But in them that bloud is congealed and curded in the bladder, first you must go about to dissolue and disperse that bloud with conuenient medicins. Therefore you must minister in drinke, Motherwort, *Stæchados*, Citrine, Wormewood, Sothernwood, shauing of a Vine, Radish seede, Hares or Goats creame, each of them with *Oximel*. Also *Oximel* ministred by it selfe doth profite marueilously, for it dissolueth the curds, that afterward they may come forth by little and little with the vrine. Apply outwardly baths, ointments, irrigations, and other things that haue vertue to loosen and release, which you must seeke out of the chapter of the stone in the reines. Aboue other things this cerate is verie good: ℞. of the oiles of Roses and Cammomill, an. ℥.j ß. Calamint, Comin, leaues of Elderne, ana. ʒ.iij. *Bitumen Iudaicum*, Gumme Ammoniacke, ana. ʒ.ij. Hares creame, ʒ iij. Sothernwood, meale of Fenugreeke, ana. ℥.ß. *Sperma Ceti*, ʒ. j. with Rosin and Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a cerate to apply to the share. And if you profite nothing by doing thus, but the vrine is still stopped, you must of necessitie vse a cyring: by the which when you haue brought out the vrine, you must againe minister the things aforesaid in drinke, and apply those things outwardly which do dissolue congealed bloud. And if the clods of blood will not yet be dissolued, you must come to the curing of it likewise as you did in the stone of the bladder.

Curatio.

To bring out bloud.

To dissolue curded bloud.

Ceratum.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of inflammation of the Bladder.

OF diseases that be in the bladder, and ingendred there, the most grieuous and deadly is the inflammation thereof. The sicke haue these tokens following. They are vexed with a sharpe feuer, they watch, they raue, and speake they wot not what: they vomite pure choler, and they cannot make water, the share becometh hard, & hath vehement paine, they haue desire to the stoole,

Signa.

as is wont in the diſeaſe called *Tenaſmus* : the ordure that commeth foorth is thin, and hath no reſidence : alſo ſometime inflations follow, and the wombe is coſtiue, the right gut being preſſed together by the inflammation of the bladder To them that haue this diſeaſe, if nothing let it, cut the veine of the hamme without any tarrying, or draw bloud of the anckles. Alſo miniſter to him a thinne kinde of diet, as is preſcribed in other inflammations. He muſt alſo abſtaine from wine, and he muſt vſe water wherein a little Cinnamon hath beene ſodden. Outwardly you muſt apply thoſe things that haue power to ceaſſe and mitigate paine. Therefore the place of the bladder muſt be nouriſhed with oile wherein hath beene ſodden Dill, Lineſeed, and ſometime Rew and *Althæa*. Medicines that be cold and reſtrictiue muſt altogether be forborne : and that chiefly becauſe the bladder is full of ſinews : for cold (as *Hippocrates* witneſſeth, 5. *Aphoc.* 28.) is an enemy to ſinewes. Moreouer, becauſe cold things do ſhut vp and bind, and ſo do ſtop the vrine (which thing chancing in this euill by it ſelfe) it increaſeth it. And laſt of all, becauſe cold things do prohibite and let that the humors cauſing inflammation, may be diſſolued, conſumed and digeſted : therefore medicines meanely hote are rather to be applied, which haue vertue to ceaſſe paine, to looſen the pipe and paſſage of the vrine, and to diſſolue the inflammation. Alſo let the guttes be waſhed with ſoft and eaſie clifters, and after the dung is come forth, caſt in oile of Dil, or ſuch like thing, to eaſe and ceaſſe the paine. It is good to ſeeth Poppy ſhels, together with oile, and to powre in Gooſe greaſe, or freſh Hennes greaſe ſodden together in the ſame oile. In moſt vehement paine you muſt powre in ℥ j. of pilles of Hounds tongue diſſolued in oile of Dill : or take *Opium* with Mirrhe and Saffron, and annoint it vpon wooll, and put it vp into the fundament. Alſo let the ſicke ſit in the decoction of Lineſeed, Fenugreeke, roote of *Althæa*, *Daucus* ſeede, and ſuch like; and bid the ſicke piſſe as he ſitteth in the water of the decoction : for the bladder is not ſtrong enough to receiue and expel out the vrine : therefore the patient or ſome that be about him, muſt thruſt and preſſe the ſhare eaſily and ſoftly, and that muſt not be done out of meaſure, leſt that paine ſhould be augmented thereby. Alſo after clifters and inſeſſions vſe foments by hote water, and apply oile in oxe bladders, or other veſſels halfe full, or little bags, as is ſhewed in the chapter of the Pleuriſie. And if for all theſe things, the euill ceaſſe not, faſten a cupping glaſſe with ſcarification to the grieued places. Moreouer, he muſt abſtaine from thoſe things which prouoke vrine vehemently, and he muſt eſchue much drinke. When there appeareth euident declination of the diſeaſe, you muſt come to the vſe of thoſe things that haue vertue to diſſolue and molliſie, whereof we haue ſpoken often before. The putting in of a cyring into him that is diſeaſed with inflammation of the bladder, is not eaſie to vſe, and ſpecially in men : for ſeeing it cannot be put into them without paine, it ſharpeneth the paine, and increaſeth the inflammation : but in women it is no great hurt to vſe it. For the paſſage of the vrine in them is ſhort and ſtraight, ſo that they may ſuffer the doing of it without paine. But if the perill through the ſtopping of vrine do very much conſtraine you, then you muſt of neceſſitie vſe a cyring in men alſo; not becauſe it taketh away the anguiſh of the diſeaſe, but rather becauſe it ſhould

Curatio.

Diet.

Clyſter.

Fomenta.

Sacculi.

Catheter.

should amend the great suppression of vrine, and deliuer the patient from deadly perill. After that you haue enticed out the vrine, you must come againe to the remedies which do ease paine, vntil the inflammation be dissolued, and rotten. Oftentimes the inflammation is wont to be dissolued by & by through the meanes of an *Erysipelas*, arising outwardly vpon the skinne, and remaining there, and not returning againe inward. Yea and ofentimes much vrine being cast out, doth iudge the euill. Yet neuertheless although those things appeare, you must stil vse the remedies aforesaid: in as much as for the most part, perfect tension and stretching out being risen, continuall exacerbations and fittes are caused, and long constitution of the euill. But when the perillous fittes are ceassed, and the constitution of the disease is now waxen old, you must come to the vsing of ointments, which do call out and bring forth the humors from within: and likewise emplaisters, which do rubifie and blister the skinne, are to be applied, which you may find after.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of vlcers of the Bladder and his necke.

THe bladder is exulcerate either through some bile, or botch, or swelling which hath beene before, or through some rupture, or by eating & gnawing of a fluxe, or through some such like cause. There followeth this sicknesse sharpe paine of the bladder, at all times pissing and auoiding out matter. And when the vlcers be foule and filthy, there commeth forth dreggie and slimie matter, and such as hath a grosse residence like bran. And sometime thin skins like leaues, and wooll, are sent out with the vrine. If the vlcers do spred abroad and feed deepe, there is sent out vrine that is bloudy, attery, and stinking. To these signes may be added, difficulty of making water, & rising vp of the yard. There is paine not onely when the passage of the vrine is exulcerate, but also when the exulceration is in the bottome or depth. You may know whether the exulceration be in the bottome of the bladder, or nigh the pipe & passage of the vrine, by this: for if it be in the depth of the bladder, there followeth paine about the share: but if the vlcers be nigh the neck of the bladder, there is paine felt onely at such time as he maketh water, and specially at the beginning and ending of his pissing, & also his paine is the greater if the vrine be sharp. They that are vexed with this euill, do either sit continually, or they cannot stand vpright, nor rest lying along; and through great and continuall paine they are killed with feuers, watchings, and consumings, some sooner & some later. But the vlcers of the bladder be incurable, or at the leastwise very hard to cure: as well because the bladder is sinewy, as also because the vrine which is of nature sharpe, doth continually touch the vlcers, and so gnaweth them, and will not suffer them to conglutinate and ioyne together. For although much vrine be sent out, yet all the bladder cannot be cleane emptied, but alwayes some of the vrine is left in it, which doth continually touch the vlcers, yea when the abundance of vrine is sent out, then the bladder shrinketh vp and falleth together, so that the vrine that is left in it, although it be very litle, yet it toucheth euery part thereof. But seeing that oftentimes some things chance besides our expectation, you shal go about the cure, by the which if you bring nothing else

Vlcera.

Signa.

Why the vlcers of the bladder be incurable.

Curatio.

to passe, yet you shall diminish the paines of the fits. First therefore, you must perswade the patient to lie down and to rest in his bed: and that specially when that he hath a feuer. Then you must minister remedies for intermitting feuers. The chiefe thing in this case hath beene drinking of milke, and this is to be preferred aboue all other medicines; for it maketh smoothe roughnesse, and washeth vlcerations, and scoureth the euill. Let the rest of his diet be such, as that is which is ministred in the exulceration of the reines. Also you must comfort the sicke by medicines that will let the ingendring of sharpe vrine, which doth gnaw and fret the vlcers. And if there be inflammation with the exulceration, cataplasmes of Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, and other things, which are rehearsed before in the chapter of inflammation of the bladder, are apt and meete to be applied. Moreouer, if the exulceration do spread broader and eate deepe, you must apply outwardly medicines somewhat restrictiue, and such as be hote when they are applyed, that by their heate they may helpe the painefull places round about by mollifying them, and that through their vertue they may prohibite the places nigh adioining to feed and eat. Restrictiue medicines be these; Galls, Pomegranat rinds, Alume, *Acatia*, *Hypocistis*, and such like often rehearsed of vs before. Also you must vse to minister to them, medicines cast in with a cyring. You must cast into the exulcerate places, milke newly milked, or very good oile of Roses warme. And if none of these be at hand, you must cast in continually most sweete water warmed, specially at such time as the gnawing is present. Also you must driue in by the fundament the iuyce of Ptisan, or the decoction of Lineseed, Cucumber seed husked, Fenugreek, Mallows, or milke with the oile of Roses. Moreouer when thou wilt minister a clister to him which is diseased in the bladder, he may not lie vpward, for the bladder then will not suffer the infusion to enter in, because it lieth vpon the streight bowell: but the patient must lie groueling vpon his knees, and so you must cast in your infusion. Also let the sick sit often in hote water, and in dissoluing decoctions, for these do cease paine somwhat. And when the vlcers do spread abroad and feed, you must cast into the bladder by a cyring such things as can stop the feeding, as be, *Acatia*, *Hypocistis*, *Terra Lemnia*, Boleatmoniack, and other rehearsed a little before. But if the vlcers be foule & filthie, you must powre in medicines, which haue vertue to scoure and cleanse them, as is *Mulsa* much watered, or milke with a little honey, or with the seed of Cucumbers cleansed. But if there follow sharpnesse and gnawing, cast in milke newly milked, mixed with good *Amylum*, or Tutty washed and dried with many waters, and then mixed with the milke. When the vlcers be scoured and purged cleane, you must procure to bring them to a scarre, and to heale them. And that must be done by restrictiue insessions, and by emplaisters, foments, and irrigations, that be of like facultie and vertue. But if the exulceration do endure long time, as it chanceth for the most part, then the patient hath exacerbations and fits sometime, and intermission and space from them at other times. Therefore in the painefull fits applie emplaisters and irrigations, hauing power to cease and ease the paine: and in the time of the intermission betweene the fits, vse such things as haue vertue to destroy the euill. Therefore apply to the share, Synapismes, and such things as will rubifie and

Restrictiue medicines.

Note.

and blister. And let the sicke vse a diet that is good to restore strength. And if the euill doth not waxe gentler, you must make burnt scurfes about the share, either by medicines or with iron, and to suffer the vlcers to purge and cleanse themselues long time with matter flowing out. You may also minister medicins to ceasse paine in drinke, if vehement paines vexe him. For this purpose, aboue other things which we haue rehearsed in other places, the pils *Alkakengi* with *Opium* are good. Also these things following do much mitigate the paines of exulceration, that is, Cucumber seed, Mallows, white Poppy, Tragacanth, *Amylum*, Pine nuts, and Almonds. Therefore this medicine may be ministred: ℞. conserue of Violets, ℥ iij. seed of Mallows, ʒ.ij. of the foure great cold seeds, an ʒ.j. Liquorice scraped, ʒ j. ß. Gum, ℈.ij. Bolearmoniacke, ʒ.ß. trochiskes of *terra Lemnia*, ʒ.j. make them vp all together with sirupe of Liquorice. Minister of it daily in the morning the quantitie of an Hasell nut. Moreouer, you must throw into the bladder medicines that can ceasse paine, and heale the exulceration. *To ceasse paine.*

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Strangurie.

STranguria in Greeke, *Stillicidium vrinæ* in Latine, is a disease whereas the vrine distilleth downe by drops, or by little and little, and causeth a continuall prouoking and desire to pisse. This disease is caused through the sharpnesse of the vrine, or by exulceration of the bladder, or by an impostume of the Liuer, or the reines; which being broken, and sending the filth and atter to the bladder, through the sharpenesse thereof, it causeth continually desire to pisse. You shall iudge that sharpenesse is the cause, if his vrines be cholericke, and also all the state of the bodie; if the rest of the signes betoken choler, and that gnawing do chance about the bladder. You may know the exulceration of the bladder, as also an impostume or bile of the Liuer and the Reines, by the signes afore rehearsed in their owne proper chapters. If therefore the Strangurie be caused through sharpnesse of the vrine, then you must purge the vicious and naughtie humor that doth abound, with all speed. For the which purpose, besides those things which are often spoken of before, whey with *Cassia Fistula* is maruellous good, or some other medicine that bringeth out choler. The cholericke humor being auoided and purged, the patient must vse meats that be temperate, and that can stop the sharpenesse: as is iuice of Ptisan, Mallowes, Purslaine, Violets, Cucumber seed, and such like. He must abstaine from all things that be sharpe or salt. Also let him eschue wine, exercises, wrath, and slow eating: for all these things do heape vp choler in the body. Let him vse stony fishes, and baths of sweet water, which is wont to make temperate vicious humors maruellously. In drinke you must minister much sweete water hote, or the decoction of Barley with sirupe of Violets, and Roses. But you may not giue him wine, as is said, except it be sweete and alaied with water. Also milke drunke hote, is the best thing that can be. To conclude, for the order of his diet, hee must vse meates that do moisten, and broths that do make the wombe soluble. But the sicke must be compelled to pisse continually: for if the sharpe dregges do tary long in the

Stranguria. *Cause.* *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Victus.*

bladder, it gnaweth and exulcerateth it: Also to stop the sharpenesse of the humours, minister the medicine which we described in the end of the former chapter. For the same purpose minister decoction of Licorice or this powder following: ℞. of the seeds of Melons husked, Citrons, and Cucumbers, ana. ℥.iij. seeds of Gourds, Purslaine, and Lettuce, ana. ℥.ij. of red Roses, ℥.j. iuice of Licorice and of Maste, ana. ℥.j ß. beate them all and make a fine powder: whereof giue daily the weight of ℥.j.ß. in the morning with sirupe of Licorice, of iuleps of Violets or Roses. Also Venice Turpentine washed in Rose water or Endiue water, and ministred the quantitie of a Nut, or somtime two or three, is maruellous good: for this (as *Galen* witnesseth *li.5.de tuenda sanitate*) doth not onely loosen the belly without hurt, and so by that meanes turneth away the sharpe humors from the passages of the vrine: but also it scoureth and cleanseth the inward parts, and specially the reines. And there haue beene some that haue recouered health onely by the vse of this. Also clysters made of the decoction of Mallowes, Violets, *Althæa*, leaues of Willow, water Lillies, and other afore rehearsed, putting to them *Cassia fistula*, Sugar, and oile of Violets and Roses, do profite much. But if the sharpenesse do still increase, you must also cast in by the yard, into the bladder, milke with *Amylum*. Also for the same purpose, you may cast in decoction of white Poppie, and you must annoint outwardly vpon the share and thereabouts, oiles of Violets, and water Lillies, putting to them a very little of the iuyce of Purslaine. But if the Strangurie doth chance through exulceration of the bladder, or through some other part of the body being euill affected, and so purging it selfe out by the vrine, then it is manifest, that those members ought first to be cured, but yet so, that this present euill be not neglected. The cures of euerie part you may seeke out in their proper places and chapters.

Puluis.

Terebinthina resina.

Clyster.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of difficultie in Pissing.

Suspicæ. Causæ.

DYSVRIA in Greeke, *Vrinæ difficultas*, is a disease wherein the vrine is pissed hardly and difficultly. It is caused through weakenesse of the bladder, and through cold distemper of it, which hurteth his actions. Also sometime it is caused of grosse and flegmaticke humours, which stop the necke of the bladder. You may know cold distemper if it come of an outward cause, by the patients telling, & by the thinnesse and whitenesse of the vrine. But if besides the whitenesse there appeare grosnesse in the vrine, you may iudge it a flegmaticke humour, which hath stopped the necke of the bladder, as is aforesaid. Cold distemper is cured by those things that do heate. Therefore he must vse heating meats, and wine that is hot and condite. Also you must vse medicines which prouoke vrine, as are, Parseneps well sodden, Fennell, *Apium*, Sperage, Smallage, and such like. Also Crabs & Hedgehogs do prouoke vrine very well: you must drie their flesh, and minister the weight of one ℥. in drinke. Also minister in drinke the decoction of aromaticke things, or electuaries made of them, and so named of them. Aboue other things, the Antidotes of *Diacalaminthes*, *Dialacca*, and *Diacurcuma*, are very good. Also triacle giuen in drinke is maruellous good. You must nourish the share without,

Signa.

Cure of a cold distemper.

with

with hote oiles, as is, oiles of Rew, Dill, Lillies, Scorpions, and of *Castoreum*. Also you must applie foments, and little bagges made of Cammomill, Sothernwood, Betonie, Mugwort, Rew, Calamint, Saueine, and such like oiles, into the fundament. If a cold and flegmaticke humour do cause difficulty of pissing, then the patient must vse *Oximel*, and decoctions of Hysope, Peniroiall, Origan, Thime, and such like often before rehearsed. Also let him vse foments, irrigations, and little bagges made of hote things, whereof we spake a little before and in the former chapters. Moreouer, whether a grosse humor, or the stone, or a clod of bloud, or any other thing of that kinde through stopping do let the passage of the vrine, it is good to put in a cyring, vnlesse inflammation of the members do let it, whereof also we haue admonished before.

Fomenta.

Cure of flegmaticke humours that stop the vrine.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of stopping of the Vrine.

ISCVRIA in Greeke, *Suppressio vrinæ* in Latine, it is a disease, in the which the vrine of the patient is altogether letted and stopped. This disease is caused sometime through weakenesse of the bladder, not being able to thrust out that which is contained in it. Also sometime it chanceth through stopping of the neather passage of the bladder, or of grosse humours, or of a stone congealed. Also it is wont to come either of an inflammation, or of hardnesse, or some swelling against nature, which maketh the passage streighter, or stoppeth it altogether. Also sometime it commeth by a litle peece of flesh, or a hard knob ingendred in the passage of the vrine. Also bloud congealed into clods in the bladder, is cause of the suppression and stopping of the vrine. Also atter sent downe to the bladder from the reines, or the liuer, or from some other vpper part, causeth stopping of the vrine, euen like as a grosse and clammie humour doth. Also it chanceth sometime, through the dull sense of the bladder, that the vrine is not made, and yet it is without hurt of the vertue expulsiue, when as his proper sinews be euill affected: so in haile folke when the vrine is holden long time, the bladder is stretched out, and the vrine is stopped. If the stopping of the vrine be caused through weakenesse of the bladder, it is knowne by those signes which declare the cold distemper of the bladder. If it be caused of grosse humours, it is knowne by the diet that went before: as if one that liueth idlely, hath vsed much meates which do ingender grosse and clammie humours. If it be caused of the stone, you may know it by the signes which are rehearsed before in the Chapters of the Stone. If it be caused of inflammation or of any other swelling, it is knowne by paine, by feuer and by sight. When suppression of the vrine is caused through some peece of flesh, or some knob, it may be knowne by the signes of vlcers aforesaid: and also because that a cyring being put in, the vrine commeth out. Also a cyring being put into that part of the conduite or passage, where you coniectured the bile to be before, it moueth paine, and the flesh being broken with the cyring, there followeth out with the pissing of the vrine, both bloud and fragments of flesh. If clodded bloud cause stopping of the vrine, there went before it excretion and pissing of bloud, or fluxe thereof. When as atter hath

Ισχυρία.

Causæ.

Signa.

ſtopped the vrine, you may know it by things that chanced before: for either the bladder or the reines laboured of ſome euill before, whereby ſuch, and ſo much atter might gather: or there hath beene an impoſtume in ſome member aboue the reines, which being broken, the atter is ſent downe into the reines, and ſo into the bladder. The reſt of the cauſes may be knowne by the patients telling. The cure is diuers according to the diuerſity of cauſes. For if the ſtopping of vrine be cauſed through imbecillitie and weakeneſſe of the bladder, you muſt miniſter and apply thoſe things which do heate, as is ſaid in the former chapter. For you muſt altogether remoue cold diſtemper, which letteth the actions of the bladder. If the with-holding of vrine be ingendred of groſſe and clammie humours, he muſt be cured by foments, inſeſſions, and cataplaſmes made of hearbs that be hote, and that haue vertue to cut and diuide the humors, and with a diet of ſuch like things. Beſides thoſe things which we haue rehearſed in the former chapter of difficultie of piſſing, this ointment following is notable good to take away the diſeaſe: ℞. of the oile of Scorpions, oile of Nard, and of Lillies, ana. ℥.iij. Gumme ſerapin, *Bdellium* & *Opoponax*, ana. ℈. Gooſe greaſe, Duckes greaſe, ana. ℥.ß. roote of *Enula campana*. ℈.ij. Penitoiall, Calamint, ana. ℈.ß. diſſolue the Gummes in wine, and with Waxe as much as is ſufficient make an ointment. Alſo you muſt throw into the bladder with a cyring, oile of Scorpions, or Lillies, or ſome other thing that can diſſolue, cut, and diuide clammy humors. If the vrine be ſtopped through the ſtone or clodded blood, you muſt ſeeke the cure out of their proper chapter. For the ſtone which hath ſtopped the paſſage of the vrine muſt be remoued out of his place, as is taught before in the 41. chapter, but the clodded blood muſt be diſſolued, as is taught in the 42. chapter. If the vrine be ſtopped through inflammation, or ſome other ſwelling againſt nature, the cure muſt alſo be ſought out of their owne proper chapter. And if the vrine be ſtopped through ſome little peece of fleſh or hard knob, apply bathings and other diſſoluing and looſening medicines, and ſuch as do open and ſpread abroad the pipe and conduit of vrine: examples whereof you may ſeeke out of the chapter of the ſtone in the reines. And if the vrine do not come out ſo, you muſt come to the vſing of a cyring, and by putting in of the inſtrument, you muſt entice out the vrine. If the vrine be ſuppreſſed through the dull ſenſe of the bladder, you muſt raiſe vp his action, by prouoking vrine, and you muſt helpe it by inſeſſions, foments, and other hote medicines, which can take away his ſleeping and dulneſſe. But you muſt onely eſchue thoſe things which prouoke vrine, leſt that through plentie of it, the bladder be ſtretched out, and ſo the contractiue vertue of it ſhould be hurt. Moreouer, you muſt entice out vrine with *Nitrum*, or Saltpeter, or with a quicke Louſe, or with ſome other thing that can ſtirre vp the vertue expulſiue of the bladder. In healthfull folke, when through ſome great buſineſſe vrine is holden too long, and ſo hath made the bladder feeble, that it can not expell it out, then he muſt helpe himſelfe thus. He muſt ſtand ſo, that the necke of the bladder may leane downeward, and muſt lay both his hands about his ſhare, and he muſt preſſe it, and thruſt out the vrine by little and little, and thus he may do alſo in the dull ſenſe of the bladder aforeſaid.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of weakeneſſe of the bladder.

Cure if it be of groſſe humours.

Vnguentum.

Cure if it be of the ſtone or clodded bloud.

Cure if it be of a peece of fleſh or knobbe.

Cure if it be of the obtuſe ſenſe of the bladder.

Cure if it come in haile folke.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of exulceration of the priuie members.

VLcers ingendred in the priuie members without inflammation haue neede of medicines which do drie vp vehemently: such as these be, paper burnt, drie Dill burnt, and drie *Aloes* made into powder; for you can scarcely finde a more present remedie. Also the roote of *Aristolochia rotunda* doth bring present remedy to the exulceration or the priuy members. Also among compound medicines, this is the most effectuous and profitable: ℞. *Aloes Epaticum*, ʒ.ij. Galles, ʒ.j. Dragon-bloud, Bolearmoniacke, Tuttie, ana. ʒ.j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, ʒ.ß. Mirrhe, ℈.j. of Gumme Arabicke, ʒ ij. Alume burnt, ʒ ß. Let all these be beaten, and make a fine powder, and strew it vpon the exulcerate parts. But if the vlcers be very moist and foule, first scoure them and cleanse them with *Mulsa* well alayed, and then after with Goates milke: which thing being done, vse the aforesaid powder, or *lapis Hæmatites*, or Frankinsence, or Pomgranate rinds, or *terra Lemnia*, or such like beaten into powder. If there chance inflammation together with the exulceration, you must first remoue the inflãmation, with linnen clothes wet in Rose water, or Nightshade, or Purslaine water, or Housleeke water, putting to it the white of an Egge, and applying it to the diseased place. The rest of the remedies seeke out of the other chapters.

Aloes arida.

Puluis optimus.

Absterſion of the vlcers.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the continuall standing of the yard.

PRIAPISMVS (as *Galen* witnesseth *in libr.6 De malè affectis locis, cap.6.*) is when the yard is stretched out in length and in breadth, nothing prouoking the patient to lust and desire, nor no heate gotten. And if there chance to the yard panting or beating, then the euill is called *Satyriasis*. This euill is caused (as *Galen* doth witnesse in the place aforesaid) either through immoderate opening of the mouth of the arteries, or of some vaporous spirit ingendred in the hollow and fistulous sinew. But it followeth often after the gaping and opening of the mouthes of the arteries. For it is easier for them to stretch out wide, then for a fluuious and windie ayre to ingender in the hollow sinew. For the loynes being heat, it is reason that the arteries are made hotter, and that also their mouthes should be wider opened. Therefore at that time, they send out no small substance of spirite or ayre into the hollow sinew, which being a little filled, it stretcheth out the yard, so that all his power doth seeme to consist in the hollow sinew. Sometimes this euill chanceth to them which haue abstained long time from carnall copulation contrary to their custome. And this thing chanceth specially to them that do abound with much bloud, and do not studie to disperse the abundance of bloud with much exercise. They that labour of this disease be grieued as those be which be taken with distention and stretching out of the sinews: for the yard being puffed vp, and stretched out, suffereth as it were a crampe. They that haue this conuulsion or crampe, do quickely perish, vnlesse helpe be vsed to them by and by: and when they die, their belly is puffed vp, and their sweate is cold. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the disease do

Priapismus.

Satyriasis.

Causæ.

Curatio.

chance through gaping of the mouths of the arteries, & so through the heat of them, by and by it is good to let bloud by cutting of a veine: which thing also you shall do, when this euill taketh them which abound with blood, and haue abstained long time from carnall copulation, contrary to their custome. And you must cut the blacke veine which is called *Media* or *Mediana*, the middle veine of the armes. Also he must vse a thinne diet, and abstaine from wine. Giue him but little meate, made of corne, and that which doth ingender no wind at all, and that causeth thirst; and it is good for him to vse to drink water: exercises and frictions or rubbings, are well applied and vsed to dissolue and disperse the spirits of aire. Also it is good to go about emptying by vomiting; Also if the wombe be costiue & bound, you must make it soluble with a clister that is not very sharpe, as that is which is made of the decoction of Beetes, Mallowes, and Mercury. You must altogether abstaine from purging medicines, lest that the humours should be drawne downeward. For the same cause also, he must eschue those things which haue vertue to prouoke vrine. To conclude, you must altogether labour and study to minister those medicins which can void and empty the abundance, and draw vpward, and so turne the humors from the priuie members. And if the euill endure long, fasten cupping glasses with scarification. And if there be fulnesse, apply horsleeches. But you must lay vpon the loines those things which do euidently coole, as is, Nightshade, Purslaine, Henbane, and Singreene. Also you must of necessity annoint the yard, and the space betweene the fundament and the yard, with some iuyce or water of hearbs that do coole gently. If a cerate made of fine oile of Roses, washed often in cold water, be applied as well to the yard as also to the loines, it doth notably well. The making of this cerate, which is called *Ceratum liquidum*, is taught of *Galen libr. 1. De simplicium medicamentorum facultate. cap. 6.* Also this cerate is good: ℞. white Waxe washed ten times in cold water, quar. j. Purslaine, ℥. ij. commixe them together and bring them into the forme of a cerate. To be short, apply and also minister in drinke those medicines which can extinguish and quench seede: of the which we will speake abundantly in the next chapter. Moreouer, it is hurtfull for him to rest lying vpright, but he must lie on his side. He must altogether be kept from sights and stories, and rehearsing of those things which pertaine vnto lechery. If this disease chance of a vaparous and windy spirit, or aire ingendred in the hollow sinew, all your whole cure must be turned to the dispersing and dissoluing of it. Therefore you must turne backe to the chapters of curing of inflammation and windinesse of the stomach, and to the cure of the windie Cholike: for there you shall find plentie of remedies.

Clyster.

The summe of the cure.

CHAP. L.

Of shedding of sperme.

Synonyma. GONORRHAEA in Greecke, *seminis profluuium* in Latine, it is excretion and shedding of seede or sperme against the patients will, and without sickenesse of the yard. It is caused through imbecillitie and weaknes of the retentiue vertue in the vessels containing the sperme, or through some other disease that moueth the parts of the vessels of sperme, after that sort, as the expulsiue vertue doth, according to nature: as in the failing sickenesse it chanceth

Causa.

eeth ſometime, and in other violent conuulſions and crampes. Alſo ſometime it is cauſed through fluxe of the ſpermaticke veſſels. The ſeed that ſheddeth out is watery, thinne, without appetite of carnall copulation: and for the moſt part without feeling of it, but ſometime it cometh out with certaine pleaſure. They that haue this diſeaſe, their whole body corrupteth by litle and litle, and waxeth leane, ſpecially about the loynes, and there followeth much weaknes, not for the multitude of ſeed, but for the principalitie of the places. And if it come out (the yard not ſtanding) there followeth imbecillitie and weakneſſe of the retentiue vertue in the ſpermaticke veſſels. But if it cometh out (the yard ſtanding) the griefe is ſomewhat like a conuulſion, or crampe. This diſeaſe chanceth not onely to men, but alſo to women, and in women it is hard to cure. The cure of this diſeaſe is common with thoſe cures that are miniſtred in euery fluxe. Firſt therefore you muſt keep the ſicke in quietneſſe, with little meate, and with drinking of water. Then alſo you muſt couer the places about the ſhare and priuities, and the loynes, with wooll wet in oile of Roſes, and in wine, or in oile of bloſſomes of Apples, or of Quinces. Alſo ſponges wet in *Poſca* applied are not hurtfull. The daies following you muſt vſe cataplaſmes, emplaiſters, and oyntments made of Vine branches, Quinces, *Acatia*, *Hypociſtchis*, Sumach, and ſuch like afore rehearſed. Alſo he muſt vſe reſtrictiue inſeſſions made of decoctions of Briar, Plantaine, Mirtles, and ſuch other like. Theſe things muſt be ſodden in auſtere and ſharpe wine, or alſo in water. Let him vſe meates which are hard and corrupt, and that are difficultly changed, and that haue power to drie vp. Alſo you muſt giue him with his meates and drinke, the ſeed of *Agnus caſtus*, and of Hempe, ſpecially roſted. Alſo the ſeedes and leaues of Rew, the ſeede and ſtalke of Lettuce, and the roote of water Lillies. In drinke miniſter daily, in ſtead of common water, the water wherein yron hath often beene quenched. To be ſhort, he muſt eſchue the vſing of ſharpe things, and drinking of much wine, and eating of pottage; and all his whole diet muſt be appointed of ſuch things as do drie vp and reſtraine. And you muſt miniſter ſuch medicines as do extinguiſh and quench ſeede, as is Tutſan ſeede toſted and rubbed: alſo the leaues and flowers of it are ſaid to reſtraine lecherie, not onely when they are eaten, but alſo when they are taken in drinke, or ſtrewed vnder one. Purſlaine eaten, and Lettuce ſeede drunke, and the roote and ſeede of water Lillies taken in meate, do extinquiſh the ſeede by cooling of it. But Rew eaten corrupteth and deſtroyeth the ſeede with his heate. They which eate Calamint continually, do loſe the power of generation, and likewiſe the ſeede of white Violets doth the ſame. But Smiths water, in which yron is often quenched, being continually drunke, doth diminiſh the ſeed without any griefe. Moreouer, of theſe ſimples before rehearſed, you may compound and make diuers remedies. And ſpecially this powder is good: ℞ of the powders of *Diacuminum*, *Diacalaminthes*, an. ʒ.j ß. ſeed of Tutſan and Rew, ana. ʒ j Calamint, ʒ.ij. ſeede of Lettuce and Purſlaine, ana. ʒ j. Sugar, the weight of them all: commixe them together, and make a fine powder, whereof miniſter, ʒ.j. or ʒ.j. ß. infuſed in ſoure wine. Alſo it is counted notable, to lay a plate of lead vpon the loynes, for it is wont to coole much. To thoſe that can not ſuffer the hardnes of lead, you muſt

Signa.

Curatio.

To extinguiſh ſeede.

Tritura.

giue counsell, that they strew vnder them some of the aforesaid hearbs dried: for the which purpose aboue other things, Vine leaues, Rew, Calamint, and Roses are praised: for these profite, and besides that, they hurt not the reines. For vehement cold things being applyed to the loines, do hurt the reines. Also let not his bed be soft, and let him lie for the most part vpon his side, eschuing vpright lying, left thereby the arteries of the loynes should waxe hote. After that the disease hath dured a while, you must commit the sick to exercises, whereby the whole body, and specially the diseased parts, may be confirmed & strengthened. Also it shall be good, if nothing else do let it, to vse cold bathing and washing, which is wont to driue away all the griefe ingendred of fluxe: & that specially if the water be endued with any medicinable qualitie. Also it is good at certaine times to vse those things that do rubifie and blister, and that can fetch out from the depth and bottome, vnto the top of the skinne. Moreouer, the patient must exclude all thought belonging to carnall copulation.

CHAP. LI.

Of the losse of carnall copulation.

Causa. THey which be married, and cannot vse the act of generation, because of the sluggish impotencie and weakenesse of their members, comming of a cold distemper wherewith they be vexed, or of some other cause, such ought to exercise the neather parts, and to vse meates that do heate, and ingender good humours: as is, the flesh of Hennes, Capons, Partrich, Feasants, young Doues, Birds of mountaines, and specially Sparrowes, Cockes stones, and such like. Not onely good nourishing meates, but also windie meates are good for him, as be, Cich peason, Beanes, Scalions, Leekes, the roote and seede of Parseneps, Pine Nuts, sweete Almonds, Rape rootes, and such other like. Also the Egges of Partriches do stirre vp carnall lust. Let the patient sleepe in a soft bed, and let him reade things that do stirre vp lust, or let him heare them read. Let his priuie members be continually chafed and rubbed with oyles, ointments, and other heating medicines. For which purpose vse this ointment following: ℞. oile of Lillies, ℥.j ß. oile of *Castoreum*, ℥. ß. Pepper, Nigella, Pellitorie, ana. ℈. j. Mirrhe, ℥. ß. *Euphorbium*, gran. iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also he must vse medicines which do ingender plenty of sperme, and can heate. Among simple medicines, these that follow do chiefly stirre vp carnall lust, as be Rocket, Mustard seed, Garden Cresses, Nettle seed, roote of Aron, and Pepper, *Satyrion*, *Orminum*, Annise, Squill, *Orchis*, called also *Testiculus canis*, whose greatest round roote drunke with Milke, doth prouoke stiffenesse of the yard, but the lesse roote thereof drunke with water, doth slake the stiffenesse thereof: also Fennell and Dill are good. The stones of a Foxe dried, beaten to powder and drunke, do cause a stiffenesse of the member, not hurtfull nor vaine. Also the parts of Scinces which embrace the reines, are drunke to raise a stiffenesse of the yard. Moreouer, burne the drie pisle of an Hart, and minister ℥ j. of it with pure wine. Among compounds it is good to vse this medicine: ℞. *Dianthos*, *Pliri-sarcoticon*, *Diagalanga*, ana. ℥. iij. *Diasatyrion*, ℥. vj. Pine Nuts, sweete Almonds, *Pistax*, ana ℥ ij. *Satyrium*, ℥.j. roote of Aron, ℈.j. seedes of Rocket, Nettles,

Diet.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Simples to prouoke carnall lust.

Antidotum liquidum.

Nettles, & garden cresses, ana. ℥.j.ß. *Scincu*, ℥.ß. *Nux Indica*, ℥.j. of long Pepper and Ginger, ana. ℥.j.ß. powder of Harts pisse, ℈.j. sirupe of Mints, and Sugar as much as is sufficient, and make an Electuarie, whereof minister before supper or fasting the quantitie of one drachme or two, alone or in good wine.

CHAP. LII.

Of bursting or ruptures.

CELE in Greeke, *Ramex* and *Hernia* in Latin, the barbarous writers call it *Ruptura:* It is caused diuers waies, & thereupon it hath diuers names. For it the *Peritonæum* do breake, and the bowells fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin, *Ramex intestinorum:* that is, the rupture of the bowels. But when the bowells do cleaue or stay aboue the priuie members, it is called in Latin *Ramex inguinis*, that is, the rupture aboue the priuie members. And if any quiet and watery humour be gathered in any part of the filmes or skinne of the coddes, it is called in Latin *Ramex aquosus:* that is, a watery rupture. When there groweth hard flesh within the coates and tunicles of the stones, it is called in Latin *Ramex carnosus:* that is, a fleshie rupture. To be short, the kindes of ruptures euer take their names of the things that fill vp the coddes. As if the kall or filme that lappes in the bowells, do fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin *Ramex omenti:* that is, the rupture of the filme. And if the bowels do slippe downe also with it, it is called in Latin *Ramex omenti & intestini:* that is, the rupture of the filme, and the bowells. So when the veines which do nourish the stones be spread abroad and swollen out of measure on heapes, it is called *Ramex varicosus:* that is, the rupture of the swollen veines. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts aboue the priuie members, is caused either because the *Peritonæum* is stretched out more then it ought to be, or because it is broken. Both these do chance through some violent occasion going before, as a stroke, or leaping, or crying, or by taking vp a great weight. A watery rupture is caused sometime of a secret cause, and sometime of a manifest cause. Of a secret cause, as when the vessells that are ioyned together be increased in the coddes, and then a watery humour mixed with bloud is driuen downe to those parts, and resteth there. Of a manifest cause, as when through some blow or stroake, the vessells breake and slide downe: and then bloud flowing downe thither to nourish them, it is changed into a waterie and wheyish substance. A fleshie rupture is ingendred of a secret cause, as through the stone, being without fluxe and waxing hard, of a stripe, or by ill curing after the cutting of a rupture. The causes of the other ruptures are euident by their descriptions. The signes both of the rupture of the bowells, and the rupture aboue the priuie members, are common. For there is a manifest swelling in the cods, or aboue the priuie members, which appeareth greater then it did before in exercises, iourneis, holding of the breath and such like occasions: being thrusted together, it goeth backe againe slowly, and it rolleth downe againe quickely. The particular signes whereby ruptures that come when the *Peritonæum* is but stretched out, be these: that the bowells fall downe not for a long time together, but for a short space, and for very little cause; the swelling appeareth equall and deepe,

Κήλη. *Ruptura.* *Ramex intestinorum.* *Ramex inguinis.* *Ramex aquosus.* *Ramex carnosus.* *Ramex omenti.* *Ramex omenti intestinique.* *Ramex varicosus.* *Causæ.* *Signa.*

the bowells that fall downe being staied with the *Peritonæum*. The proper signes of a rupture that cometh when the *Peritonæum* is broken, are, that the bowels fall downe vniuersally from the beginning of the rupture, and that only through violent causes: the swelling is of a wonderfull greatnesse, vnequall, and it sheweth straightway sticking out in the skinne, because the bowells are fallen out of the *Peritonæum*. The common signes of a watery rupture be these: swelling that is without paine, and firme, and permanent in the coddes, not vanishing by any occasion: but in them that haue a little of the humour, it giueth place, and in them that haue not so much of it, not so. And when there is a waterie humour in the coddes, the swelling shineth of the same colour that the humour is, as like dregges, or bloud, or rubicund, or swart. And when these signes appeare in both sides of the coddes, it betokeneth that there is a double rupture. There followeth after a fleshie rupture, hardnesse, and a colour alwayes like vnto it. But if the swelling do increase into a hardnesse or kernell, then there is neither colour, nor sense, nor feeling. But if the humour be of a wicked nature, then pricking paine doth vexe him. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts about the priuie members, be cured in this wise. You must lay the patient vpright, and separate his legges, and then put vp the bowels by little and little: and when they are put vp, you must keep them vp with conuenient trusses, and ligaments. But if the places adioyning to the coddes, or to the place about the priuie members, be grieued with inflammation and most grieuous paines, and that there come with it frettings and windinesse, and so thereby the bowels be made disobedient to go vp againe, then you must vse and apply foments, liniments and bathes, which haue vertue to mollifie and to ceasse paine and inflammation, and to disperse windinesse, as those things be, which be made of Mallowes, Cammomill, Dill, Linseed, Fenugreeke, Caraway seed, Annise seed, Commin, and such like. Also nourish the places that be vexed with paine, with wooll that is moist, dipped in wine and oile. When the bowells are put vp againe into their places, you must go about that they may be kept vp still with conuenient trusses and bands: applying to it first, restrictiue or glutinatiue cerates, or emplaisters, as this is: ℞. ship pitch, Masticke, ana. ʒ.iij Frankinsence, ʒ ij. *Hypocistis, Sorcocolla, Acatia*, ana. ʒ.j. ß. *lapis Hæmatitis*, Dragons bloud, ana. ʒ.ij. Bolearmoniacke, rootes of Comfery, Galles, Pomegranate rindes, ana. ʒ.iij. Missle of the oake, ʒ.j ß. of either *Aristolochia*, ʒ.ij. Sumach, Pomegranate flowers, ana. ʒ.j. Goates tallow, ʒ.ij. Turpentine, and Waxe as much as is sufficient: dissolue the gummes first in Vineger, or Wine, and make a cerate, and put it in a Weathers skinne, and apply it, binding it fast, and do not loose it before the seuenth day. And in the meane season, let the sicke tarrie thirtie dayes in his bed, and let him abstaine from windie meates, and from much drinking of Wine, from vehement mouing, running, leaping, crying loud, and such other like. And in the meane season, let him drinke this decoction: ℞. both the kinds of *Sanicula*, of *Solidago saracenica*, or *Consolida saracenica*, *Vphioglossum*, Pedelion, Agrimonie, *Numularia*, an. M.j. Knotgrasse, *Clematis Daphnoides*, great Plantaine, Burnet, ana. M ß. root of Comfery, Hounds-tongue, ana. ʒ. ß. roote of the sixt kinde of *Geranium*, ʒ.vj. seede of Mirtles, ʒ.iij. Pomegranate

Cure of the ruptures of the bowels, and of the inguen.

Ceratum.

A glutinatiue decoction.

Prunella.

granate flowers, ℥.ij. leaues of Laurell, ℥.j.ß. boile these in red wine & water of iust quantity till the third part be consumed: then straine it, and by putting to it Sugar, make the liquor of the decoction sweete, and purifie it, and make a sweete potion, whereof minister daily in the morning, ℥.iiij. Also you must take very good heed, that the belly waxe not costiue: for if he be constrained to labour much, when he should go to the stoole, the bowels will slide downe againe. Also he must vse apt and conuenient deligatures and trusses, as we admonished before. And he must vse them specially at such time as occasion and necessity of mouing requireth it. A watery rupture must be cured by such medicins as do heate and drie vp, as be Beane meale, Laurell berries, Lineseede, *Daucus*, *Althæa*, *Nigella*, and such other like, which we haue rehearsed in the chapter of the Dropsie *Ascites*, and other Dropsies. To conclude, as for the cure of these ruptures, or any other by Surgery, let it be sought out of *Paulus Aegineta libro sexto*, chapter 26. where he treateth of it abundantly: for it is not our intent to treate thereof in these Bookes: therefore we will proceed to the diseases of the wombe.

To cure a waterie rupture.

CHAP. LIII.

Of stopping of Menstruis.

THe menstruis of women are suppressed and stopped in them, either naturally or against nature. If they be naturally stopped, you shall know it chiefly by this: because the woman thereby is vexed with no griefe of the whole body nor yet of the wombe. Also you shall haue a respect to the age, for in many the floures begin to flow the foureteenth yeare, and in very few before the thirteenth or twelfth yeare. And to most women they burst out after the fourteenth yeare. For the most part, the purging endureth either two or three dayes, to many fiue dayes, in some it endureth to the seuenth day. The menstruis also do stoppe in some the fiftieth yeare, or the fiftie fiue yeare, and they flow not vntill the sixtieth yeare but in few women. Also barraine women and dauncers, are not naturally purged: for whatsoeuer excrement is in them, it is consumed by the vehemencie of exercises. And to be short, women of a hote temperature, that be wilde, and do vse strong exercise, they purge out little or nothing. But many times the menstruis are wont to be suppressed and stopped against nature, either through ouermuch grossenesse, or slendernesse. For fat folke are more without bloud, then other folke, and they haue lesse and streighter veines, and that little bloud which is in them, turneth almost all into fat. But those that are leane & slender, which be wasted with some continuall sickenesse, they haue no superfluous bloud in them. Moreouer, the menstruis do not flow in them whose bloud is either grosse or clammie, or if it be sent to some other part of the body, and purged out: as for example, if it go out at the nose, or at the fundament. Also in some that haue cast out much bloud from the breast, the menstruis are stopped, and in some, because much bloud hath gone out of a veine being cut. Also other kind of emptyings haue often done the same thing; as abundant sweating, continuall vomiting, fluxes of the belly, and all kindes of pustules and wheales which budde out of the skinne. Besides the causes now rehearsed, oftentimes the menstruis

Causæ.

In whom the flowers are naturally stopped.

In whom the flowers are stopped against nature.

are withholden through great and sharpe sickenesses, and through abundance or scarcitie of foode. For of little foode, that little doth expirate and breathe out straight; and of much foode the passages are stopped, and the excretion and voyding out of the menstruis is preuented and letted. And for those causes the menstruis are specially suppressed and stopped, the whole body being euill affected. Also they are in like manner withholden and stopped, when the wombe it selfe is afflicted with a particular disease or vice: which thing chanceth to the wombe sometime through hote or cold distemper of the same. Also many times the purgation of the menstruis is letted thorough hardnesse ingendred in the mouth of the matrice, or through some excrescence and growing vp of a peece of flesh, or also through abundant fatnesse. Also to some by and by in the beginning, certaine filmes or thinne skinnes ingendred about the necke or entrie of the matrice; to other some the scarres of vlcers which haue beene before in the wombe, haue stopped the mouthes of the vessells which carried bloud into the wombe. To some after the abortion of the wombe (the mouth of it being exulcerate, and afterward healed and brought to a scarre) there commeth conioyning and compaction of it, which besides that it letteth all other transpirations of the wombe, it also stoppeth the excretion and voyding out of bloud. Moreouer, stubburne carefulnesse, immoderate feare, and great sorrow, do stoppe the menstruis.

Signa. There followeth suppression and stopping of the menstruis, heauinesse of the whole bodie, desire to vomite, abhorring of meate, and certaine terrible discursions, such as chance to those that haue conceiued. Moreouer, there be paines about the loynes, thighes, necke, the hinder part of the eyes, and the fore part of the head. Also there follow continuall feuers, and blackish vrine, with certaine red atter and filth in them, euen like as one should mixe soote with the water wherein new killed flesh hath lately beene washed. Also to many either the vrine doth come forth difficultly, or else it is stopped altogether.

Cold distemper. The diuersity of causes is knowne partly by the disposition of the whole body, and partly also for the most part, by the telling of the patient. Women may know a cold distemper in themselues, by these signes specially, because they be more sleepie and slower to all kinde of mouing, and whiter of colour, and as it were of a leadie colour. Moreouer, their vrine is waterie and such like

Note distemper. signes appeare, which are often rehearsed before. The tokens of hote distemper are cleane contrarie to these signes of a cold distemper before rehearsed.

Plenitudo. Signes of fulnesse, besides those that may be gathered out of the former chapters, are wont specially to be these: that women that are vexed therewith, are grieued most in the time of the menstruis, and they feele vehement paine about the loynes and the priuie members, and their veines are swolne vp verie

Curatio. Cure of cold distemper. great. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes. For if a cold distemper of the liuer or wombe do stop the flowing of the menstruis, it must be cured and driuen away with contraries: that is with meates and medicines that do heate. Therefore you must giue vnto them hote meates, and wine that is yellow, odoriferous, and old. Also you must prescribe to them exercises, and you must minister other things which can helpe the body. Aboue other, these things that follow are good, Peniroiall, Thime, Calamint, Sothernwood,

wood, Diptaine, roote of *Ireos*, *Cassia*, Gladon, *Asarum*, and Saueine: of which you may make decoctions and foments. Also you must minister vnto them fasting, after a bath, pure wine hote. Also the meete and conuenient times to take these medicines be first, if the patient drinke straight way, when the time of purgation is at hand: secondarily, if she drinke straight after a bath, fomentation, or annointing, that the medicine helping the bodie being yet hote and loose, may shew his strength and effect the more easily and continually. Women that be too hote, and vse much exercise, haue no need of curing: for it were better to the safegard of their proper health, to prescribe them such a diet, whereby their bodies should be so dried, that the menstruis should not need to be purged: but this were against conception: for they do not conceiue which be not purged. Therefore for conceptions sake, and for because that almost all women keepe an vndiscreete diet, purgations be necessarie. Therefore it is good also to adioyne the cure, whereby the menstruis that are stopped through hote distemperature, may be brought out. Women therefore that be hote, and vse many exercises, must chiefly be made moister by moist meates and drinkes taken in good quantitie, as be soupings of Ptisan, and of *Alica*, and meats that are made of Lambes flesh, Kids flesh, and Fishes that be tender, birds of mountaines, and milke. Let their pot-herbs be Lettuce and Gourds, and their fruit new Figges. They must vse white wine that is not very old, and let it be alayed. Also bathes of sweete water are good, and to conclude, that diet ascribed to them that haue the feuer hecticke, is to be prescribed to these. If the menstruis be with-holden and stopped by reason of the fulnesse that vexeth the woman, and if nothing else do let it, you must begin the cure with letting of bloud. And you must cut the veines of the anckles, or of the hammes: and that not before the accustomed time of the menstruis. Neither will it be vnprofitable, if cupping glasses be fastened to the legs. The bloud being emptied, minister potions which can prouoke menstruis, and apply fomentations, bathes, and annointings of other things which we will describe heereafter. But if there be no fulnesse, but onely grosse and flegmaticke humours do stoppe the flowing of the menstruis, first you must minister medicines which can cut and diuide the aforesaid humours, and prepare them and make them easier to be expelled and purged out: as is this decoction: ℞. the rootes of Gladon, *Ireos*, Parsley, and Sperage, ana. ℥.j. of the seedes of *Apium*, Fennell, *Bruscus*, Annise, *Daucus*, Ammi, and Nettles, an. ℥ j. Calamint, Wormewood, ana. M.ß. Origan, Sothernewood, Mugwort, Peniroiall, *Asarum*, ana. M.j. Hysope, M j.ß. chosen Cinnamon, ℥.j. seethe all these in a conuenient quantitie of water, vntil the third part be consumed: then straine it, and make the licour of that decoction sweete with Sugar, and clarifie it with the white of an Egge, putting into it of the syrups of Calamint, of Hysope, and of Horehound, ana. ℥.j.ß. and make a potion, whereof minister daily in the morning, the weight of ℥ iiij. When that decoction is drunke vp, minister some purging medicine: as is, *Hierapicra*, *Diaphœnicon*, and *Electuarium Nidum*, pilles of Garlicke, of *Benedicta*, or such like. After purging, the patient must vse exercises, and frictions of the neather parts, and specially walkings. Moreouer, apply fomentations, and bathings made of Cammomill, Mother-

Cure of hote distemper.

Cure of fulnes.

Purgatio.

Exercises.

Foments.

wort, Mints, & other things rehearsed in the decoction abouesaid Also annoint the patient with this ointment: ℞. of the oiles of Lillies, and Rew, ana. ℥.j. Motherwort with the thin leaues, Peniroial, Calamint, ana. ℈.j. roote of *Ireos*, ℈.ij. Hysope, Origan, an. ℈.iij. with wax as much as is sufficient, make an ointment.

Vnguentum.

After this, for the cause abouesaid, minister medicines which can straightway prouoke & bring forth the menstruis being stopped, such as these be: Mirrhe, *Castoreum*, Laurell berries, Madder, Pepper, Sage, Saueine, *Cassia*, and such other, which be rehearsed before of vs. This medicine is notable good ℞. *Castoreum*, ℥.j. wild Mints beatē into powder, ʒ ß. old wine, or *Mulsa*, ℥.iiij. commix them together, & minister it hote after a bath Also the decoction of Peniroial, Mugwort, Rew, Comin, *Daucus*, Sage, Dil, *Ammeos*, Fēnel, *Aenula campana*, & such like are good. Also Calamint beatē into powder, the weight of ʒ.ij. or Saueine, the weight of ʒ.j drunke in wine or *Mulsa*, is very good. Moreouer Trochisks of Mirrhe do maruellously profite. Also wine wherein Wormwood hath bin infused or sodden, must be drunke all the time of the cure. Also you must vse to put pessaries into the wombe, if that necessitie so require it, such as this is: ℞. of *Triphera magna* that is without *Opium*, ʒ j. of the meale of *Ernum*, *Nigella*, Mather, Mugwort, Peniroial, ana. ℈.j. ß. iuyce of Rew, ʒ ij. commixe them together, & make a pessarie, and put it in with Wooll or Cotton. Or this pessary: ℞. Mirrhe, *Bdellium*, Storax, an. ℥.j. Calamint, Sothernwood & Wormwood, an. ʒ j. ß. roots of Gladon & Mather, ana ʒ j. seed of *Nigella*, dry Rew, Laurell berries, an. ℈.ij. Saueine, ℈.j. *Castoreū*, ℈ ß. beate al these to fine powder, & commix them with hony, or *Triphera*, or *Mithridatum*, & make pessaries to put into the womans priuities. Also you must cast into the wombe hot oiles, as is oiles of *Ireos*, Lillies, Laurel, & such like. Also it is good to vse suffumigations made of Storax, *Galbanum*, Frankinsence, *Bdelliū*, the root of *Aristolochia*, Mugwort, Cloues, Cinnamon, & such like. Exāples wherof you shal find in our booke of making medicines. Moreouer the wombe must be euaporated and fomented with odoriferous things, as with Marioram Sauory, Calamint, Cammomil, Peniroial, Mugwort, root of *Ireos*, & such like soddē in a pot, which you must couer with a couering that hath a hole bored through it, wherin you must put a reed or some other pipe; and you must annoint it round about aloft, that the woman sitting thereon, may be fomented with it. Also it will profite if the woman sit in this decoctiō vp to the nauell, & after receiue the pessaries before rehearsed. Fat women must be cured with a diet that can extenuate, and with swift exercises, and with other medicines which can make the body slender and leane: as be continuall deiection & solution of the belly, ointments that haue vertue to euaporate & breathe out, & such like, which be abundantly intreated of by *Galen lib*, 14 *Ther. meth. cap*. 15. and *lib*. 6. *De tuenda sanitate*. Those which are not purged of their menstruis, through leanneſſe of the body, whether it chance through sicknes, or any other meanes, you must first recreate & refresh them, & restore the flesh of their bodies by a conuenient diet, and by other medicines, which *Galen* rehearsed in the places aforesaid And if they wax fleshy, there is good hope that the menstruis will burst out by their owne accord which if they do not come forth alone, then you shall prouoke them by potions, foments, and other medicines aboue rehearsed. If the menstruis do not flow,

To prouoke menstruis.

A notable medicine.

Pessus.

Alius.

Suffitus.

Cure of fat women.

Cure of leane women.

flow, because of some disease and vice of the wombe, first you must cure the euill that is caused of the stopping of the menstruis: and after that, we must proceed to the prouocation and purging of the menstruis. The cure of the diseases of the wombe, must be sought of their proper places. *Cure if it be of vice of the wombe.*

CHAP. LIIII.

Of flowing of the menstruis.

WE say, that menstruis do redound and ouerflow in women, when that great plenty of them do flow out longer then the accustomed time of their purgation. There is no iust or certaine time of their purgation: for to most women they flow two or three daies, to many fiue daies, & to some seuē daies. The menstruis do chance to flow out of measure, through great or smal vessels opened wide, or broken. Also immoderate purgations do ingender in women sometime through grieuous trauell in childbirth, which also do ceasse oftentimes of themselues. Oftentimes after abortion, they labour of a vehement purgation & fluxe of menstruis, & somtime it bringeth them into a dangerous perill. If the greater vessels be broken or open, the bloud floweth out gushing on heaps: but if the lesser be open, it floweth out by litle & litle, & not in great quantitie. If it be caused through eating or gnawing, it doth not onely flow by litle & litle, but also it floweth with very great paine. Moreouer when the menstruis flow immoderately, there followeth a filthie colour, the feet are puffed vp with a light swelling, the strength of the body is decayed, both the digestion and appetite of meat is corrupted: & in all points such signes as were wont to follow immoderate voiding of bloud, either by the hemorhoides, or by anie other fluxe of bloud, do follow in this disease. First therfore in the beginning of the cure, you must bind the places between the ioynts & the extreme parts of the body with bands, beginning at the armhols, & the shares. Also you must fasten great cupping glasses lightly vnder the paps, as *Hippocrates* teacheth, 5. *Aphor.* 20. Also they must vse meats and drinks that be sharp and restrictiue, as is Rice, and such like: and let the sicke rather eate rosted meats then sodden: and specially such flesh as is of nature able to drie vp, as be birds that liue on mountaines, & wild beasts. They must abstaine from mouing, and wine, and in steed of it they must vse some restrictiue potion, or *Posca*, not cold but warme. Moreouer, you must minister restrictiue medicines in drinke, as these simples be following: ℞. Pomegranate flowers, *Hypocistis*, *Acatia*, Corall, *Lycium terra Lemnia*, Calles, Knotgrasse, both the *Consolidaes*, the stone *Hæmatites*, shells of Mast, Plantain, Barberies & such like. Compound medicins be these following, as syrupes of Roses, Mirtles, trochisks of Amber, & of *terra Lemnia*. Also these pils following are maruelous good to stop & restraine the menstruis. ℞. *terra Lemnia*, Bolearmoniack, Frankinsence, Masticke, Gals, ana. ℈.ij Dragons bloud, the stone *Hæmatites*, ana. ℈.j. Harts tong burnt, ʒ i. *Hypocistis*, *Acatia*. red Corall, ana. ʒ ß. Pomegranate flowers, red Roses, ana. ℈.ii. Amber, ℈.i. commix thē with sirupe of Mirtles, & make pils, whereof minister the weight of one drachme or ʒ ß. Also fomēt the place outwardly with the oiles of Roses, Mirtles, Quinces, & sharp wine. And apply ointments, emplaisters, and cerats, & restrictiue Epithems, wherof you shal find many before in the chapters

Causæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

To restraine menstruis.

Catapotia.

of the fluxes, *Dysenteria*, *Diarrhea*, and *Lienteria*. Also insessions made of the decoctions of the aforesaid medicines be good. Also you must vse such medicines as are cast into the wombe with an instrument. For the which purpose iuyce of Plantaine is maruellously commended, wherewith *Galen* saith, in foure dayes he stopped a fluxe of the wombe, that could be stopped with no other medicine. The quantitie that must be throwne in, should be the measure of one cyath. Of the same effect be the iuice of Knotgrasse, or Nightshade, or *Hypocischis*, or *Acatia*, or such like cast in. Also the vsing of pessaries is not to be despised: among which this is specially praised: ℞. of Frankinsence, Pomegranate flowers, and Galles, ana. ℥.i. of Gumme Arabicke, *Acatia*, Amber, Harts horne burnt, ana. ℥.ii. Bolearmoniacke, ℈.ii. beate all these to fine powder, and mixe it with Wooll dipped in oyle of Roses, and put it into the wombe.

Insessus.

Pessulus.

CHAP. LV.

Of womans fluxe.

VTERI *fluor* in Latin, fluxe of the matrice in English, is a continuall distillation, and flowing out for a long time, of the whole body purging it selfe. That which is voided out, doth represent such forme and colour as the humor that doth abound in the body. For some is red, as bloud putrified, or atter: some white, which commeth of fleame: some is pale, which signifieth choler: and some is waterie, which is of a wheyish matter. And if pure bloud come forth, as in the cutting of a veine, you must take good heede, that some erosion and gnawing be not ingendred in the wombe. By these signes following the fluxe is knowne. The places are continually moist with the humours, being diuers in colours. The patient is ill coloured, she sauoureth no meate, but abhorreth it: in walking she breatheth difficultly, her eyes be swollen, sometime with paine, and sometime without paine, or with exulceration, or without it; and either with an inflammation, that is, with the vlcer, or else it is filthie or vnpure. The diuersitie of causes you may know by the colour of that that floweth foorth, as is aforesaid. And if a woman be vexed with a red fluxe, in the beginning, if age and other things will suffer it, you must come to letting bloud. For many incommodities would follow, if you should first go about to represse and stoppe the rage and violence of the bloud that floweth, as the Dropsie, vice of the sinewes, or of the mouth of the stomacke, or of the head. You may part the times of your bloud-lettingas you do in them that spit bloud, so that thereby the auersion and turning away of the bloud may be the longer a little. You must cutte a veine in the arme. After this you must binde the extreme parts of the bodie with bands, and you must vse and apply all such things as can turne the fluxe of the humor another way. Therefore all those remedies that be rehearsed of vs in the former chapters be good. Let her whole diet be restrictiue, and such as doth ingender grossenesse and thickenesse. Let her drinke be water, or if she be weake, wine that is grosse and restrictiue. But if the fluxe that is white or wheyish do vexe a woman, it may not be stopped at the beginning, that euill humours may be purged out of the bodie. Nor also it is not against reason, seeing

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of the red fluxe.

Victus ratio.

Cure of a flux that is white and atterie.

seeing that that which is flowed out, is ingendred of fleame, if you do minister a medicicine to her, which doth purge fleame. And you must minister and apply to the whole body, medicines and remedie which do drie vp, seeing that the disease is moist. Therefore exercises, specially of the vpper parts, and frictiõs are good. Also they must eate flesh which hath vertue in it to drie, as birds of the mountaines, and wild beasts. Also in the beginning of the euill, such medicines may be ministred as do extenuate grosse humours, and after that do bring them out with the vrine, as be, *Asarum*, Fennell, *Apium*, and such like, often rehearsed before. The beginning being past, you must apply to the wombe things that be moderately restrictiue, as be, oiles of Roses and Quinces, and other rehearsed in the former chapter. Also you must vse abstersiue and scouring medicines, lest that vlceration be made with the humour that floweth: wherefore the wheyish humour must continually be washed with hote water. After the scouring and cleansing of the filth, you must annoint with oile of Roses, or of Quinces, or of Mirtles. Likewise, when a woman is diseased with pale fluxe, it may not be stopped at the beginning, but the body must be purged with a medicine that purgeth choler. Then you must studie how to pull backe, and turne away the humour, and you must vse other restrictiue medicines, not neglecting abstersiue and scouring things, whereof you shall haue speciall need, because of the sharpenesse of the humour. Moreouer to conclude, when the fluxe ceasseth, they must long abstaine from swift goings and walkings, from much frictions and rubbings of the belly and the loynes, also from eating of sharpe things, from things that heate, and from such things as do prouoke vrine.

Cure of a pale and cholericke fluxe.

CHAP. LVI.

Of Strangling of the Wombe.

SVFFOCATION or strangling of the wombe is nothing else, but a drawing backe of it vp to the vpper parts. It is caused through stretching out of it, which is ingendred of fulnesse that followeth after the retention & stopping of menstruis. For in women the wombe, when it is retched and stretched out, it runneth not to an other place like a wandring beast, but is drawne backe through the extension. Also it chanceth oftentimes through the seede that is restrained. Also many times it chanceth through cold which happened to the wombe, at the time that the purgation of the menstruis is ministred. Also sometime it commeth through some hard abortion, or when as any hath hasted to stop sodainly a fluxe of blood flowing from the wombe. They that are vexed with this disease, when the fit is nigh, there followeth heauinesse of mind, slownesse, weakenesse of the legges, paleness of face, and a sorrowfull countenance. But when the suffocation and strangling is now present, there followeth disposition to sleepe, doting, a withholding of the instruments of the senses, the voice doth waxe dumbe, and the legges are drawne vp together. The pulses are small and weake. Also oftentimes they are altogether stopped. Also in many the breath that should come out at the mouth and nostrills, is stopped altogether, and yet that which is in the arteries doth remaine still. When the euill doth ceasse, the balles of the cheekes beginne to waxe

Causes.

Signes.

red, and the eyes be lifted vp and opened. Also a certaine humiditie and moistnesse, that one may by feeling perceiue to run out of the wombe of women, and the bowels do make a noise: and also the wombe it selfe is a little loosened, and so their mind, senses, and mouing cometh to them againe. This disease commeth by courses at certaine times, as the falling sickenesse doth, and that chanceth when the matrice (as is aforesaid) is filled with seede, or with some other matter that putrifieth and rotteth in it. When the wombe it selfe is diseased with the quantitie and qualitie of any thing, then menstruis, or seede, or other kind of *Symptomes* are ingendred. If that which is able to coole the whole body, do cause this disease, the body is so vehemently cooled, that both breathing and arteries beating, cannot be perceiued by the senses. Which humour, if it be either grosse or sharpe, it causeth conuulsions and crampes: but if it haue the nature of melancholy, it causeth sorrow and sadnesse, and defection of the mind, refrigeration and paine of the stomach. This kinde of disease ingendreth in all seasons, but specially in Winter and Autumne: and most commonly yong folke, and such as be prone to lecherie, and barren, specially if they be made so by medicines, be most taken with this disease. Many do recouer from this disease, and many againe do perish sodainly in the very fit, or at the least way within few houres after. That chanceth when the pulses be swift and inordinate, and then do leaue off and vanish cleane away. At the last a cold humour in little quantitie doth bedew and moisten the skinne aloft. In the fits therefore you must bind the extreme parts, and besides the bindings, you must rubbe the legs and all the whole bodie, and do euen as you would recouer one that is swounded. And you must place the sicke with her necke & shoulders bending, and rising vpward, and with her thighs and share leaning downeward. You must apply to her nostrils stinking things, as the snuffe of a candle newly put out, feathers, specially of Partriches, burnt, or Wooll burnt, or soles of shoes, or shales of Garlicke or Onions: also haires burnt, and specially if they be the haires of the sicke, or Goats horne burnt. Also Pitch melted vpon the coales, *Galbanum* or *Castoreum*, or such like. Also you may hold a chamber vessell with old vrine to their nose, or old linnen clothes dipped in Brimstone and burned: and you must perfume the priuities beneath with odoriferous things, as be *Storax*, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, Cloues, and such like. And it is good to fasten cupping glasses with much flame, and lightly to the parts aboue the priuie members, and to the bottome of the belly. As soone as the fit doth come, you must apply foments, and litle bags warmed, to the bottome of the belly and share, for you shall scarcely find a more present remedie in the coming of the fit of this disease. And you shall make them of both the Motherworts, and with Origan, Betony, Cammomill, Calamint, Wormewood, Peniroyall, Lineseed, Louage seed, and such like. And if the fit be prolonged, you must also adde to such things as are good to dissolue and bring out windines: whereof you shall find example, & names out of the chapters of windinesse of the stomach, and pain of the Cholick. Also then you must poure into the wombe, both ointments and oiles that be very odoriferous, as is, oiles of Spike, & *Ireos*, & such like. Also let a midwife dip her fingers in these oiles, and then put them into the mouth of the matrice, rubbing it long and easily, that

How to do in the fit.

Sacculi.

that through that prouoking, the grosse and clammie humour may be auoided out. Also let the woman be raised with loud callings, and call her loud by her proper name. Also at this time you must minister those things that cause sneezing, as be, Pepper, *Castoreum*, *Struthium*, and such like. There be some that thinke it good to vse insessions made of the decoction of Laurell berries and leaues, Peniroiall, Calamint, Motherwort, Horehound, Saueine, *Althæa*, Cammomil, *Serpillum*, *Ireos*, *Aristolochia*, and Fenugreeke. But in the time of the insessions, we may not omit the cure of the braine, but you must irrigate and sprinkle the head with oile of Roses and Vineger. But I iudge, that you must rather vse foments and litle bags then insessions, specially when as for the most part, although thou wouldest neuer so faine, thou canst not vse insessions in this euill. When the fit resteth and is ceassed, compell the patient to vomit: for all vomites do lighten, but specially such as are vexed with meate. The third day after, you must apply cupping glasses with scarification to the loynes, and the ilions. After the seuenth day minister the purgation of *Hiera Colocynthide*, or pils of Agaricke, and by and by come to the drinking of *Castoreum*, which being continually drunk, it deliuereth the patient straightway from this euill. Also you must minister euery day thereof, ℥ j. sometime with *Mulsa*, somtime with the decoction of Motherwort, and sometime minister it with thin wine. Therefore at this time, rather then in time of the fit (as is said) it is lawfull for you to vse insessions & pessaries that do mollifie, made of Goose grease, *Storax*, Masticke, gumme Armoniacke, and such like. Also the wombe must be perfumed beneath with such things as do heat, and haue vertue to bring out winde. Therefore vse this perfume specially: ℞ of the Trochisks of *Gallia* & *Alipta Muscata*, ana. ℥ j. ß. *Storax*, ʒ iij. Cloues, Maces, ana. ℥ j. wood of *Aloes*, ℈ ij. Cinnamon chosen, leaues of Laurell, ana. ℥ ij *Ladanum*, ℥ ij ß. beate them into powder, and commixe them with *Storax liquida*, and make Trochiskes for perfumes. In the meane season, let the woman be cõtent with a very litle meat and drinke, & let al her diet be exsiccatorie and drying vp. This cure following is to be vsed in the fits of this disease. In restoring and recreating the whole bodie, specially if that the disease hath endured long, you must begin oftentimes with bloud-letting, specially if the menstruis haue been stopped, and letted of their purging. Then you must come to purging with *Hierapicra*. The purging being done, you must fasten on cupping glasses lightly, but with much flame, and you must draw them off violently. Also sometime the places may be scarified, and strew vpon the scarification, Salt: then you must heale it with conuenient medicines. Also you may apply very well *synapismes*, and dropaces made of *Euphorbium*, Pellitorie, Pepper, and Mustard seede. Also a good diet doth helpe much, as, deambulations in the morning, gestations and carryings in a cart, or in a ship, or on a beast, be good. Also, after they be moued with carrying about, crying out loud, distinct & apt reading is conuenient. Also annointings and frictions vsed now and then are good. Baths of sweete water are seldome to be admitted, and not, but because it should scoure and cleanse the filth. It is very good to vse naturall bathes, which flow by nature, and this is as it were the very last refuge. Aboue others those baths are good which be in *Badenia*, In the base Germanie, in *Marchia*. And our Bathes at Bathe, and as

What must be done straight after the fit.

Trochiskes of perfumes.

Diet.

Cure of the whole bodie.

Buckſtones in Darbiſhire, and there is a bath neare Newmarket in Suffolke, a t a towne called Exning, they be all very good; but if they go to any of theſe baths, they muſt take heed of cold.

CHAP. LVII.

Offalling out of the wombe.

WE ſay, that the matrice falleth out, when it is ſo turned downward, that it ſticketh out outwardly. And yet the whole matrice rolleth not downe, being looſened from the bands & ligaments, as many vnwiſe folke do thinke; for if it ſhould fall downe ſo, it could not be reſtored againe. Although the wombe do fall out but ſeldome, yet there be many cauſes of the falling out of it. For, a woman falling from a high place, if ſhe fall on her haunches, the pannicles and filmes that hold vp the womb, and the members adioyning, do breake, and cauſe this diſeaſe. Alſo it chanceth many times that in a ſore trauell of child-birth, the wombe falleth out becauſe of the drawing out of the ſecundine, which the wombe that ioyneth to it doth follow. Alſo many times it chanceth through negligent and vnskilfull drawing out of the child, ſpecially if it be dead. Moreouer it chanceth ſometimes through a ſtripe, or lifting vp of a great weight, or through vehement perturbation of the mind, as death of children, or coming of enemies, or through perillous ſailing, or through ſome ſuch like cauſe, all the body being looſened, the wombe falleth out. Alſo ſometime this euill chanceth (all the wombe being looſened) through reſolution or weaknes of the pannicles and muſcles, which thing chanceth ſpecially to them that be old. Oftentimes the wombe falleth out, through the flowing downe of an humour much in quantitie and clammy. It falleth out moſt commonly by the mouth of it, and that which falleth out, is like to the egs of an Oſtrich, differing onely in this, that it is bigger, or leſſe in quantitie. There is no neede of many ſignes, becauſe the diuerſitie of cauſes may partly be knowne by the conſtitution and ſtate of the body, and partly by the telling of the ſicke, and them that be with them daily. When this diſeaſe is but newly begun, you muſt endeuour to put vp the wombe againe, & to reſtore him into his owne place: for in the beginning it will be obedient to be put vp readily, and being in his owne place, it will tarry ſo ſtill, ſpecially if age agree vnto it. For in them that are well ſtriken in age, the wombe being put vp againe, it ſlideth out againe through euery light cauſe. It is good therefore, if there be hard dung in the right gut, to bring it out with a cliſter. Likewiſe if vrine be gathered in the bladder, let it be brought out with a cyring, that the matrice may be at free libertie on each ſide. For otherwiſe it chanceth by their ſtretching out, that the matrice which is in the midſt between thē, is preſſed together & pent in a ſtrait place, and ſo when he is fallen out, they let it and ſtop it, that it cannot be put vp again into his owne place. When you haue thus done, you muſt lay the ſick vpright, ſo that her hanches may lie higheſt, her hammes bowed, & her legs ſpread broad: then you muſt bathe & nouriſh abundantly that part of the matrice which is fallen out, with warme Oile, or Butter, or Mallowes ſodden, or with the decoction of *Althæa*, Fenugreeke, Lineſeede, or ſuch like: and you muſt prepare Wooll together on a heap, in figure and thickneſſe according to the

Cauſe.

Signa.

Curatio.

proportion of the member, and wind it about aloft with a fine and pure linnen cloth: then dip it in the iuices of *Acatia* or *Hypocischu* infused in wine, and put it into the wombe, and you shall wrest and writhe vpward all that which is fallen downe by little and little, and without violence, vntill the matrice be put vp into his owne proper place. Outwardly you must couer the parts about the priuie members with a sponge wrung out of *Posca*. The woman shall lie with her legges stretched out and ioyned together, that the one may leane vpon the other. But it is more safegard to binde the feete together, bringing the band vp to the knees. But if that part of the matrice which is fallen out, be swollen through continuance of time, and be stuffed vp with plentie of humours, so that the swelling do let the purging vp of it, you shall nourish it with decoction of Beetes, and then you must cleanse it and wash it with Vineger, and strew in it Salt finely powdered; and when it leaueth swelling, then put it vp as is aforesaid. Then fasten cupping glasses with much flame to the nauell, and both the ilions or small guts: and apply continually to the nose odoriferous things. The third day (the Wooll being as yet still in the wombe) let the woman sit in blacke soure wine a little warmed, or in the decoction of Mirtles, Bramble leaues, Pomgranate rindes, and such like. This being done, let her lie vpright againe with her haunches highest; then take the former wooll out, and put in such another in the stead of the first, dipped in the same medicine. Also apply cataplasmes and emplaisters outwardly to the bottome of the belly, made of Dates, Pomegranate rindes, Lentils, and such like. Also Cerates that are made of Masticke, wood of *Aloes*, *Ladanum*, Frankinsence, Squinant, *Acorus*, Nutmegs, gumme *Tragacanthe*, and such like, are good to be applyed. But let these things be changed euery third day, vntill the cure be ended perfectly. Also during the whole time of the cure, let the woman eschue mouing, and such things as prouoke sneezing. And the wombe must be perfumed beneath with stinking things, but to the nose you must apply most odoriferous things: for the matrice flieth from stinking things, and it followeth and embraceth odoriferous things. Let her meates be such as ingender good iuyce, and giue her odoriferous wines. Also the belly must be made soft and soluble, lest if she should go to the stoole difficultly, the matrice should also fall out againe. But yet you must take good heede, that the belly be not too much loosened, for then the parts adioyning are loosened, and so the matrice will fall out againe. Moreouer, if that part of the wombe which is fallen out, hath through continuance of time by negligence beene putrified and rotten, and through continuall wetting of it with vrine, and filthines sticking in it, it be exulcerated: you must cut off and feare that which is vnprofitable, or burne it without any feare of danger: for it hath been knowne (as *Paulus* testifieth) that the whole matrice, because it was rotted, hath beene taken away, and the woman liued still.

Victus ratio.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the Mole of the matrice.

MOLA in Latin is called of *Aetius & Paulus*, a swelling that is hardened, somtime in the mouth & entry of the matrice, & somtime it sticketh out in al the matrice, & in feeling it is almost like a stone. *Galen in li. 14. Ther. meth.*

Causa. defineth *Mola* to be a peece of flesh without shape. This disease is caused of womans seed, and much menstruous bloud flowing into the matrice, & there kept, retained and stopped, which immoderate heate doth ioyne together, and

Signa. changeth it into the forme and fashion of flesh. There followeth this euill, a hard swelling, with contraction and drawing vp of the sides, slendernesse of the bodie, euill colour, losse of appetite, and suppession of the menstruis. Also in this euill the paps do swell, so that at the first it causeth some to suspect that the woman is conceiued with child, but in processe of time it may be discerned. For paine followeth the *Mola*, causing pricking, neither is there any mouing perceiued in this disease, as is in conception. Many of them do make a suspition of the Dropsie, but yet there is a difference betweene them two: because the swelling is hard, and doth not giue place to the thrusting of the hand and finger, as the Dropsie doth, nor maketh a noise as the Timpany doth. But yet often in processe of time, the liuer is cooled, and the Dropsie ingendreth. This euill for the most part is incurable, except remedies be applied in the begin-

Curatio. ning. But howsoeuer it chanceth, the cure may not be neglected, but you must apply and minister all things that seeme to be good for it. But first of all you must giue her meates that ingender good iuyce, and let her vse moderate drinking of wine. Let not the woman vse vehement mouing, for that wil cause the fluxe to the disease, but let her vse gestations, and carryings, and deambulations, and baths, and in her lying, let her feete be highest. In the meane season if fulnesse be present, you must cut a veine in the arme, and then you must purge her by *Pilulæ fœtidæ*. When the body is purged and emptied, apply cataplasmes, foments, insessions, pessaries, ointments and cerates, which haue vertue and power to dissolue and loosen, as they be that are made of *Althæa*, Mallowes, Cammomill, Melilot, Fenugreeke, Lineseed, and such like. For this pur-

Vnguentum. pose also it is good to apply *Vnguentum Dialthæa*, or *emplastrum Diachylon simplex*, or apply this ointment: ℞. of the oile of sweet Almonds, ʒ.iij oile of Lillies, ʒ.ij.ß. Goose grease and Hens grease, ana. ʒ.j ß. muscilage of Lineseed, and Fenugreek, ana. ʒ.j. of the gummes *Ammoniacum* and *Bdellium*, ana. ʒ.ii. roote of *Althæa*, *Nigella* seeds, and *Daucus*, ana ℈.ij. dissolue the gums in wine, & with Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must

Pessus. put in pessaries made with Butter, Swines grease, Harts marrow, Raisins, fatte Figs, Lineseed and Fenugreek. After this you must minister such medicines as

Mosuli. can prouoke menstruis: for which purpose besides those things that wee rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis, this medicine is good: ℞. the powders of *Diacinnamomum*, *Diagalanga*, *Diacuminum*, ana. ʒ.ß. powder of Diamber, ℈.j. powder of *Dialacca*, ℈.ß. Cinnamon chosen, S. Iohns wort *Calamus aromaticus*, *Asarum*, root of Gladon, Annise seed, ana. ℈.j. seed of Rew, Ginger, Motherwort, Horehound, *Dictamus*, Sage, ana ℈.ß. Sugar dissolued in the waters of Motherwort, and S. Iohns wort, as much as is sufficient & make lozenges, whereof minister daily the weight of two or three ʒ. Also it is good

Pessus. to put in this pessary: ℞. of the root of *Asarum*, Gladon, and Madder, ana ʒ.ij. seed of Rew, *Nigella*, ana ʒ.ß Marioram, Nutmegs, Cloues, Laurell berries, ana. ʒ.j. Saueine, ℈.i. *Castoreum*, *Euphorbium*, ana. ℈ ß. powder them, & searce them that haue need, and with Turpentine make a pessarie. To conclude, you

must

must vse medicines that can dissolue and loosen congealed bloud: for so there will follow excretion, and voyding out of much blacke bloud and clodded. Also it profiteth maruellously to the taking away of this disease, specially if the euill haue continued long, to vse naturall bathes, and such as do ingender by themselues, which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse. Moreouer, many other remedies rehearsed in the chapter of the Dropsie, may be vsed in this.

CHAP. LIX.

Of inflammation of the wombe.

THe wombe is inflamed through many causes: as through a stripe, or retention and stopping of menstruis: also by abortion, exulceration, or vnmeasurable lechery, sitting on a very hard stoole, very long and swift deambulation and walking. Also oftentimes it chanceth through cold, prohibition and letting the transpiration and breathing out. The companions to inflammation of the matrice be these: an acute feuer, paine of the head, the share, the loines, and the roots of the eies: conuulsion and crampe of the armes, the fingers, & the necke, and declining of them contrary. Also paine of the stomach, and shutting vp of the mouth of the matrice, and pulse that be small and often. If the inflammation be feeble and small, the aforesaid signes will not be great and strong, and the wombe will be vexed with greater paine. But if the inflammation be vehement, then the whole wombe is vexed with a panting paine, and all the signes will be the more vehement. If all the wombe be inflamed, it will be painefull all ouer, but if some part of it be vexed with an inflammation, then the paine is greatest in that part. For if the hinder parts of it be vexed with inflammation, the paine will afflict the loynes most, and hard dung is withholden & stopped, because then the right gut is presled together very much. If the former part be inflamed, then there is paine about the priuities, and the strangury or difficulty in pissing is ingendred, because the bladder is pressed together. If the sides of it be inflamed, the parts aboue the priuie members are stretched out, and the legges are grieued, and difficultly moued. When inflammation afflicteth the mouth of the matrice, there is paine in the *Abdomen*, and if you put in your finger, you shall feele the mouth hard, vnpleasant, shut vp, and burning hote. In the beginning therefore of the cure, if neyther age, nor state of the body, nor time of the yeare do let it, you must cut the veine of the hammes or of the anckles (if the inflammation came not after abortion, or great voiding of blood.) Afterward you shall place the sicke in a darke house, which is moderately warme, bidding her to be quiet, and prohibiting all mouing from her legges. Then you must rubbe the space betweene the ioyntes, and also the extreme parts, that you may turne away the course of the fluxe from the wombe. For her meate, which must be little in quantitie, you must vse Ptisan broth and rere Egges, but there must be a day betweene: she must abstaine from drinking of Wine, and for that she must vse the decoction of Cinnamon, or hote water. Also the belly if it be not soluble enough of it selfe, must be washed and emptied by easie and mollifying clisters Outwardly you must apply vpon the loines and about the share, Wooll wet in Vineger, wherein Roses haue beene sodden. Also Dates or Quinces sod-

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Diet.

Localia.

den in wine commixed with oyle of Roses, is good to be applyed. Also you must apply cataplasmes made with the meale of Lineseed, Fenugreeke, and with Melilot, Plantaine, Lintels, Knotgrasse, Pursiaine, Singreene, and such like: and that specially if the inflammation be of the nature of an *Erysipela*. Moreouer, you must put into the matrice, Wooll moistened with the oile of Roses, or Quinces, or in the iuyce of Purslaine, or Singreene. When the inflammation beginneth to decline & ceasse, you must come to the vsing of those things which haue vertue to release dissolue and discusse. Therefore you shall bid the patient sit vp to the loynes in Fenugreeke sodden, or in the decoction of *Althæa*, Lineseed, Mallowes, and sometime also Motherwort, Horehound and Sage. Also you shall annoint aboue the priuities, and the loynes, Barley meale with Fenugreeke and Lineseed sodden in *Mulsa*, or the decoction of drie Figs. Also put in pessaries made of Butter, Harts-marow, Goose grease, Hens grease, and such like. When the cure hath proceeded, sundry meates and light will be much profitable. And when the declination of it is manifest, bring the sicke to bathes, and giue her wine that is waterie and thinne.

CHAP. LX.

Of windinesse in the wombe.

Causa. THe wombe is puffed vp through cold or humors corrupt in it, or through abortion or sore trauel in child birth, the dore of it being shut, or a clod of bloud being in it, and stopping it. Oftentimes the windines ingendreth in the hollow bought and space of it, sometime in the bosome of it, which is euident to the senses, & sometime in the thinner parts of the substance of the wombe, not appearing to the senses. There followeth this euil, swelling of the bottome *Signa.* of the belly, with hardnes and paine that pricketh, which goeth vp to the midriffe and the stomacke: and yet neuertheleſſe it is stretched out on both sides, sometime to the share, and sometime the paine is in the loynes, and at the nauell, to whom also the head agreeth. Also many times wind breaketh out of the priuities, that the sicke may feele it. If therefore windinesse be gathered in the hollownesse of the matrice, there is heard a certaine rumbling and noise in the body, such as chanceth to the guts which are vexed with gripings: also if you beate your fingers on it, it maketh a noise like a timpanie. But when the windinesse is contained in the thinne and slender passages of the matrice, then they are vexed with more vehement paine, and harder to cure. This euill is cured *Curatio.* first, if age, the region, and time of the yeare do not let it, by bloud letting, fasting, and purging with *Hierapicra Galeni*: which being done, you must vse foments, and annointings with oile of Rew, or with oile wherein Dill hath beene sodden. Also let her vse insessions made of the decoction of Rew, Penyroyall, Calamint, Horehound, Motherwort, *Althæa*, and such like. Also apply cataplasmes, made of the seeds of *Apium*, Fennell, Caraway, Comin, Louage, *Daucus*, Annise, Fitches or Darnell meale, and such like. Also you must powre into the wombe such things as haue power to loosen and dissolue windinesse, as is, oyle of Rew, *Ammeos*, Origan, and the decoction of things before rehearsed. And if windinesse be included and stopped through the meanes of a clod of blood, after the vsing of the aforesaid things, and specially insessions,

let

let the Midwife put her finger being first annointed, into the womans priuities, and dissolue, and bring forth the clod easily and by little and little. And if the euill hath continued long, you must come to more effectuous remedies. Therefore you must vse liniments, emplaisters, and cerates that be stronger, as this is, ℞. Sothernwood, Origan, and Calamint, ana. ℥.ij. seed of Tutsan ℈.ii. of Centorie the lesse, ℥.j. Caraway seeds, *Ammi*, ana. ℈ ß. *Cassia* ℈.j. *Bdellium*, Armoniacke, ana. ℥ i. ß. oile of Rew and Dill, ana. ℥.i. with Waxe and Turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerate and applie it to the wombe: also sometime you must proceed to the vse of Synapismes and Dropaces. Also cupping glasses may be fastened to the places lightly in a circuite, and must be pulled away violently, for these do helpe as it were a charme. Also sometime scarification must be made: and you must vse such things altogether as haue power to draw out, and call forth from the bottome to the toppe. Also, for her diet you must minister foode that doth attenuate and dissolue windinesse, and minister medicines also that haue the same vertue, as *Diamson*, and *Diacuminum*, and *Diacalaminthes*, and such like. *Ceratum.*

CHAP. XLI.

Of exulceration of the wombe.

THe matrice sometime is exulcerate, because of hard child birth, or drawing out of the childe, or through corrupting of the matrice, or through sharpe medicines, or fluxes, or through impostumes or botches broken. They that haue this disease do feele a pricking paine in the agrieued part: and at certaine times stinking and atterie humours are sent out from the filthie vlcer. And other signes proper to the diseases of the wombe do follow, as headach, and specially of the fore-part of the head, of the great sinews in the necke, and at the rootes of the eyes is felt paine, which also extendeth vnto the fingers ends, and other tokens declared before in the Chapters of inflammation of it. Therefore if the vlcer may be seene, it may be knowne by an instrument called *Specillum Oricularium*: But if it be deepe within and hidden, those things which come from it will declare it: for a diuerse humour is sent foorth. If the vlcer be inflamed, the humour is little in quantitie, bloudie or dreggie, with great paine. If the vlcer be foule and filthie, the humour commeth forth in more great abundance, and is matter with lesse griefe. If the vlcer doth eate and feede, the humour is stinking, blacke, and with vehement paine. For the cure, when the bile or vlcer is inflamed, you must vse bloud-letting and other medicines that are good against inflammation, as is afore taught. In other causes you must vse purging medicines, especially if the body doth abound with vicious and corrupt humours. Also applie such medicines as do represse and stop the flowing of humours, and correct their hote distemper, as is, the iuyces or waters of Purslaine, Plantaine, *Bursa pastoris*, and such like before rehearsed. Then if the vlcer be filthie, you must vse scouring and cleansing medicines, as is, *Ptisan* with Honey, *Mulsa* with the decoction of the roote of *Ireos*, *Aristolochia*, Wormewood, or Agrimonie. Those vlcers which do eate and feed, must be washed with Mares milke, or Asses milke newly milked: you must mixe with milke, hony and root of *Ireos*. *Cause.* *Signa.* *Curatio.*

These things, if the vlcers may be seene, may be annoynted: but if they be deepe within, cast them in with an instrument called *Metrenchita*. When the vlcers be well purged and cleansed, you must vse such things as wil close them vp: first gentle things, and then those that be of more effect. The cerate of *Aetius* doth especially please me, which is this: ℞. of white Waxe, ℥.i. of fine oyle of Roses, ℥.iii. and melt them together vpon the coales: and when it is cooled, then put it into a mortar, and put thereinto womans milke, or Asses, milke, or Goates milke newly milked, and worke them together with a pestle vntill it be white; then powre out the aforesaid milke, and put in new milke, and then worke them againe, and then put to it about ℈.j. of Saffron. And if thou wouldest haue it to mitigate paine more, adde to it oyle of Roses, ℥.ii. the grease and marrow of a Goose, an. ℥ß also you must put to oile of Quinces, in stead of oile of Roses. You must apply this cerate to the belly and the hanches: for the vertue of it is sent into the wombe by secret and hidden passages. Also you may cast into the matrice of that faculte: as be, the decoction of Pomegranate rindes, Roses, Quinces, Bramble, Mirtles, Sumach, *Acatia*, *Hypocistidis*, with restrictiue wines. To this place you may transferre and bring medicines out of the former bookes, and out of the chapters of vlcers of the reines, the bladder, and the yard.

Ceratum.

CHAP. LXII.

Of straitnesse of the Matrice.

PHINOSIS in Greeke, *Obduratio* or *Coarctatio vteri* in Latin; it is a stopping or streightning in the mouth or necke of the matrice, whereby those places are made so streight, that it will not admit nor suffer any seed: or if they do receiue it, they cannot hold it; for because of their knobby hardnesse it cannot shut together. Sometime it receiueth seed, and it is kept and retained in the streight mouth of the wombe, and thereof is a child conceiued, but the conception bringeth occasion of death to the woman: seeing because of the great streightnesse of the places, it cannot be brought foorth. This disease is caused in the mouth of the matrice, either of exulceration going before, or of an inflammation there hardened. There is no neede of signes to know this disease by: for by the telling of the sicke, and by touching of it, you may easily know it. The cure of it must be wrought with fomentations, that can release, dissolue, and mollifie. Also with cataplasmes and insessions, that be of like power and vertue. Therefore you must applie foments made of the decoction of Fenugreeke, & *Hydrelæon*. Also you must vse pessaries that can mollifie and dissolue, as that is which is made of *Aesipum*, that is, oile tried out of wooll in sheeps flanks or necks, Saltpeter, & Turpentine. To be short, to the cure of this disease you must vse mollifying medicines, as is, Mallowes, *Althæa*, *Nigella*, Fenugreek, Lineseed, *Ammoniacke*, *Bdellium*, Rosin, Grease, and such like, of the which you may make cerates, emplaisters and all kind of outward medicines. And if the euill be waxed old, you must vse suffumigations, and euaporations made of aromaticke things. And when the places do seeme to be softer to the feeling, then you must put a drie sponge, that hath a cord banged at it, into the streight place, to the intent to make it wider: which if it fall out, you must

Causa.
Signa.
Curatio.

put

put in another that is thicker. Therefore you must haue many and sundry drie sponges ready. Afterward you must annoint vpon the sponges that you will put in, some medicine made of Alume, & *Eleterium*, mixed with Hony, that thereby the place may be made wider. And if after the sponges be takē away, the place do not seeme open and wide enough, and inflammation be present through the eating and gnawing of the medicines that were applied, then annoint vpō the sponge that you will put in this ointment: ℞. oile of *Ireos*, ℥.j. of fine Turpentine, ℥.ij. of Goose grease, ℥.j. root of *Ireos* and Frankinsence, ana. ℥ß Waxe as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment. But if the inflammation be vehement, take oile of Roses or Violets in stead of oile of *Ireos*. When the inflammation is ceasted, & the place is open, annoint vpō a sponge a cerate made of oile of Roses, & Goose grease, and vse that vntill it be healed, making the place a litle sounder: but yet you must alwayes put in sponges vntil the end of the cure, lest that the mouth of the wombe do gather together againe. *Vnguentum.*

CHAP. LXIII.

To take away barrennesse.

STERILITAS in Latine, barrennesse in English; it is caused of the womans part, or of the mans part. It is of the mans part when his seed is either hote, and as it were burned; or else cold, thin, waterie, and feeble, as is the seed of old and feeble men: or when it is sent forth thicker then it ought to be: or because the men be halfe geldings, and haue a very short yard, so that they cannot cast their seede into the innermost place of the matrice, which also sometime chanceth through much fatnesse: for fat men haue such great bellies, that they cannot cast the seed into the deepest parts of the bodie. Also women of their part cannot conceiue, that haue their matrice either hote and fierie, or cold and moist, or foule, filthie and drie. For (as *Hippocrates* saith 5. *Aphor.* 62.) the seed is corrupted or quenched in such. Also women that be verie grosse and fat, do not conceiue (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth 5. *Aphor.* 46.) Moreouer, women that be leane and slender do not conceiue, or if they do conceiue, they suffer abortion straightway, which also *Hippocrates* witnesseth 5. *Aphor.* 44 Also some do not conceiue, because their wombe is weake, or streight, or short: or because the vessels of it be stopped or shut vp, or blinded and couered, by reason of a scarre: or because the necke of the wombe is drawne crooked: or because the mouth of the matrice is too streight, or too wide open. Also vnwilling carnall copulation for the most part is vaine and barren: for loue causeth conception, and therefore louing women do conceiue often. Also age too great or too little, doth let conception. Therefore you must separate them that be young from carnall copulation, so that the man may be thirtie yeares old, and the woman eighteene. But specially an vncomely and foolish shape and forme of the womans bodie, doth giue an occasion to barrennesse. For a woman that is fertile, ought to haue a moderate stature and height of the body, breadth of the loynes, and the share, buttockes sticking out, a handsome and conuenient greatnesse of the belly, a straight breast and large pappes. The signes whereby the diuersity of causes be knowne be these. The hote distemper of a man, is easily knowne by the abundance of haires, *Causæ.* *Signa.* *Hote distemper.*

ſpecially blacke haires vpon the genitalles, and the places adioyning, from aboue vnto the middle thighs. Alſo this diſtemperature is laſciuious and readie to carnall luſt, but it is ſoone ſatiate and filled. A temperament that is too cold, is declared by the parts about the ſtones being bald and without haire. Alſo they that be of this temperature, be not deſirous and prone to carnall luſt. Heate of the matrice is knowne by the heate in the reſt of the bodie, and becauſe few menſtruis are ſent out, and that with paine, ſo that ſometime the womans priuities are exulcerate with it, and that which is ſent out is blackiſh. Alſo there followeth this temperature, an inſtinction or tickling to lecherie, and drineſſe of the whole bodie. A temperature of the matrice which is cold, is knowne by ſuppreſſion and ſtopping of the menſtruis. Alſo they that haue this temperament, do deſpiſe vſe of carnall luſt, and haue the mouth of the matrice drawne together. If through too much moiſtneſſe, barrenneſſe be ingendred, then in the act of generation, they are very much bedewed with moiſtneſſe, and the menſtruis floweth much in quantitie, and thinne. Drineſſe is knowne by the contrary ſignes to moiſtneſſe. The reſt of the cauſes may be knowne, partly by ſight, and partly by the telling of the partie, or other about her. For the cure common to both, as well the man as the woman, it is conuenient for them to keepe the whole bodie very temperate, and to keepe a meane and meaſure in labouring, eating, drinking and bathing, and in all other exercises. Men therefore that haue their ſeed corrupted through naughty and euill kinde of diet, if they vſe a more ordinate diet and healthfull, their genitors will haue fecunditie and fertilitie. Let the woman neither wearie her ſelfe with too much labour, nor let her be altogether idle: for idleneſſe doth fill and ſtuffe the whole bodie with ſuperfluous humours and excrements: but great labour drieth vp the bloud, and conſumeth the menſtruis. Let her vſe meates and drinks eaſie of digeſtion, and ſuch as the ſtomach may well comprehend and conſume. And you muſt ſpecially obſerue in their order of good diet, that neither the man nor the woman be made fatte: for they that be fatte, are vnapt to procreate and beget children, becauſe their genitors cannot touch together, and alſo becauſe they ſend out little ſeed. Moreouer, it is conuenient that you giue vnto ſuch as deſire to get children, ſome accuſtomed and pleaſant thing to eate or drinke before meate, which is moſt apt to prouoke carnall luſt, and to ingender ſeed: as thoſe be that do heate meaſurably, and puffe vp with wind. Therefore wine in this caſe meaſurably drunke, is to be preferred before water. For as the Prouerbe is, *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, that is, If you haue not bread and wine, carnall luſt will coole and pine. For pot-herbs they muſt vſe Rocket, *Orminum* (it is an herb like vnto Horehound) *Eryſimo*, and other ſuch like which we haue rehearſed for them that cannot vſe carnall copulation, Rew, Calamint, and Mints muſt be eſchewed altogether: for Calamint and Mints, although they ingender much ſeede, yet that which they ingender, is feeble and weake: but Rew doth altogether corrupt & deſtroy ſeed. If a woman do not conceiue, through the vice and corruption of certaine humours, it is good to emptie her with a purging medicine, and to amend her with a good diet. Particularly for women, it is good for them to take as good heed as can be to thoſe things that chance to the matrice, and that

Cold temperature.

Cure of both to man and woman common.

Cure of a woman full of corrupt humours.

their menſtruis may flow without any impediment. Therefore when the purgation of their menſtruis is nigh at hand, let them keepe a meaſure in eating and drinking with all their diligence. And let them take ſome of thoſe things that can prouoke and ſtirre vp the purgation of the menſtruis, as be herbs that be odoriferous and ſharpe, as is, *Cerefolium*, Fennell, *Apium*, Louage, and ſuch like, whereof you ſhall finde plenty in the chapter of the ſtopping of the menſtruis. After the purging of the menſtruis, both the right ſide and the left ſide of the matrice is open. If cold diſtemper doth cauſe barrenneſſe, you muſt correct and amend it by foments, cataplaſmes, and ſuffumigations, and other medicines that haue vertue to heate: as thoſe be that are made of Mother wort, Peniroiall, Sage, Rew, Anniſe ſeede, Commin, Gladon, and ſuch like. Alſo it profiteth her to drinke *Caſtoreum*, and odoriferous ſeeds, Comin, Anniſe ſeed, and Iuniper fruit, and other things that be rehearſed in the chapter of ſtopping of menſtruis. You muſt amend and correct a hote diſtemper of the matrice cauſing barrenneſſe, with ſuch things as do coole and moiſten: as theſe hearbs be, Lettuce, Mallowes, Gourds, Purſlaine, and Orach, with ſuch like. Alſo ſhe muſt drinke wine that is thinne, white, and alayed. Alſo it profiteth her to ſleepe, and to bathe in ſweete water. Alſo you muſt apply to the loynes and about the priuities ſuch things as do coole, as iuyce of Nightſhade mixed with oile of Roſes, which alſo being layd vpon Wooll, may be put well into the matrice. They which cannot conceiue through moiſtneſſe of the matrice, it is good for them to vſe a drier dyet. Alſo they muſt exerciſe themſelues much, and they muſt be rubbed in the vpper part of the body. Alſo, to the intent to purge out, and turne away humors, let them vomit ſometime after dinner, and ſomtime faſting: and you muſt drie them with ſcarcitie of meate, and let them eate fleſh of middle aged beaſts roſted, and giue them pure wine, that is mighty to drinke, but giue it them ſeldome. Alſo it profiteth to applie reſtrictiue things to the matrice, as be, Roſes, leaues of Briar, Galles, Sumach, Mirtles, Knotgraſſe, Pomegranate rindes, and ſuch like ſodden. But you may not do this, vnleſſe the whole bodie be firſt purged. A drie matrice muſt be cured by the contrary to that which is aforeſaid, as with baths of ſweete water, annointings, and meates that do moiſten. Let her vſe Wine that is alayed, being not very old. And if a womans conception be impedited and ſtopped through groſſe humours, if they be gnawing, it is good to purge the woman well with *Hierapicra* in whey: and ſhe muſt vſe a moſt exquiſite dyet, and meates that do ingender good iuyce: but you muſt conſume the flegmatike humours with much labour, with ſweating, vomiting, or by purging by the neather parts: and all other things which be rehearſed in the chapter of ſtopping of menſtruis, which it behoueth not to rehearſe heere particularly. Alſo windineſſe ingendred in the wombe, doth let the fertilitie of conception, and cauſeth barrenneſſe. Such women therefore as haue this, muſt firſt be amended with a ſtreighter diet. Then you muſt miniſter both outwardly and inwardly to them, ſuch medicines as can diſſolue, diſperſe, and conſume windineſſe, as is, Comin, Rew, Dill, ſeed of *Apium*, and ſuch like, which be rehearſed in the chapter of windineſſe of the matrice, and in other places. If ſhutting vp of the matrice doth cauſe barrenneſſe, you ſhall open it by caſting in of o-

Cure of cold temperature of the wombe.

Cure of hote diſtemper.

Cure of a moiſt diſtemper.

Cure of a drie diſtemper.

Cure of groſſe humours.

Cure of windineſſe.

Cure of a matrice shut vp.

doriferous clisters, and by vsing of foments and insessions made of Fenugreek, Lineseed, Mallowes, and such like rehearsed in the chapter of streightnesse of the wombe. And afterward you must proceed to stronger medicines, as Motherwort, Calamint, Peniroiall, and Marioram. They which haue the mouth of the matrice gaping much, it is good for them to vse a drying diet, and drying foments. And it is good also to vse restrictiue medicines, as be, the decoction of Galles, Bramble rootes, Mirtles, and such like rehearsed before in the cure of a moist distemper. Last of all, if crookednesse of the matrice do cause barrennesse, you shall direct and make straight the matrice with mollifying foments, for foments can do that best: but yet you may conueniently put in mollifying pessaries: but specially the decoction of Peniroyall, and Motherwort, and *Castoreum* drunke with *Posca*, are wont to be good for a writhed matrice. *Paulus* saith, that the carnall lust vsed backeward is good to conceiue. We here haue generally comprehended the cures onely by other chapters: for the particular cure of each cause, must be sought out of his proper chapter.

Cure of an open matrice.

Cure of a writhed matrice.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Of sore trauell in child-birth.

Difficilis partus causæ.

SORE trauell in child-birth doth chance either through default of the parent, or of the child, or of the secundine, or through some outward cause. Of the parent, if she be grosse and fat, faint hearted, and vnskilfull of paine; or if the whole matrice be small, or if there be inflammation of the whole wombe, or of some part of it, or that it be vexed with some other diseases: or if she be naturally weake, so that she cannot driue out the child: or if that she do labour before time. Also if the necke of the mouth of the matrice be crooked, or if there be some peece of flesh ingendred there, by reason of a bile or vlcer going before. But default of the child is, if it be of an vnaccustomed greatnesse, or small and of a little weight, or if it hath a great head, or if it be monstrous, as hauing two heads, or three feete, or if it be dead, and so doth not labour to come forth, or if it swell: or being aliue, if it be weake, so that it cannot proceed foorth: or if they be two or moe, and do all rush sodainly together into the necke of the matrice, or if the childe be fashioned contrarie to nature. For the naturall forme of a child coming forth is, first with his head (his hands being stretched out vpon the thighs) and with his head declining to the neather parts, but straightly directed to the mouth of the matrice: the best forme in coming forth next vnto this, is, first with his feete, hauing the hands stretched vpon both thighs, and so descending straight out. All other formes in coming forth, except these two, are contrary and abhorring to nature. The trauell is made difficile through the secundine: if it be not pulled away, because of the grossenesse or thicknesse of it, or if it breake before it should do, because of the thinnesse of it. For then the humour that is gathered together in the matrice, is sent out before conuenient time. Therefore the priuities be without moisture, and be drie at the time of the trauell, when moistnesse were necessary, which should make a slippery and easie going out of the child, and so through drinesse the child slideth out hardly. Also difficultie in child-birth is ingendred of outward causes: as of cold, which thickeneth the matrice,

matrice, and maketh the passages streighter; or through a great heate, which dissolueth and weakeneth the strength. But outward causes are knowne by the telling of the patient, or of them that sit by her. Weakenesse of the woman that laboureth, as fatnesse, may be knowne by the state of the body. Also by diseases, that she hath had before, you may readily come to the knowledge of weakenesse, and of many other euils. Weaknesse of the child is knowne by feeble and slow mouing of it. Which if it be dead, it moueth not, and there is coldnesse of the belly, and great paine about the nauell. Also a stinking breath is breathed out, and a naughtie colour of the face. Greatnesse of the childe may be coniectured by the constitution of the parents bodie, and by greatnesse of the womans belly. Grossenesse and thicknesse of the secundine may be gathered and knowne thus: if none of the aforesaid signes be present, and the woman strong and lusty, and the childe moueth quickely and easily. As for the cure, it varieth according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore you must place a fat woman downeward in a little bed, that is, hanging downeward with her head, and her face towards the ground, bending and inclining her knees to her thighs, that her wombe stretching to the *Abdomen*, may be right with his mouth. You must with your fingers annoint the mouth of the matrice, with butter, oile, Ducks grease, Hens grease, and such like: and you must spread it abroad, and open it wider by little and little. You must comfort and incourage a fearefull woman. And if she be vnskiltull of paines in trauell, admonish her to hold and stop her breath strongly, and let her thrust it out to the illions with all her might. If sore trauell in child-birth be caused of adstriction, and binding, or astonishment, or as it were, adarctation and penning in of the childe, you must helpe it with dissoluing and releasing, by powring in largely sweete wine and hote. Also the decoction of Fenugreeke, or Mallows, or Linseed, or also egges are good, because they are of a loosening and mollifying vertue. Afterward you must nourish the parts about the priuie members, and the belly & loynes with the aforesaid decoction, or with some other loosening and mollifying medicines. Also it profiteth to vse hote insessions and euaporations, and to haue the aire of the house inclining to heate. Also it is good to vse infusions, and annointings with oiles that be hote in touching and vertue, and conuenient cataplasmes be good. And if neither a feuer nor any thing else do let it, she must vse releasing and dissoluing bathes, and you must moue her, with bearing her in a chaire, in an aire that is meanely hote. Many do vse to such violent shaking of the bodie. And if any woman be weake, and haue sore trauell in child-birth through resolution of the bodie, you must comfort and refresh the body with medicines that do thicken, and draw together, and with such meates and drinkes as do recreate, restore, and adde strength to the bodie: as be insessions and sprinklings with Mirtles, Vine leaues, Pomegranates, Roses, smelling to Vineger, and annointings with Wine mixt with cold oyle of Roses. When the infant is ouer great, you must applie those things which can make wider, stretch out, and loosen the mouth of the matrice. If sore trauell do chance through an vnnaturall forme of the child in comming forth, you must bring him to a naturall forme and figure, as much as is possible, partly by putting backe, partly by drawing to you, partly by turning, and

Signa.

Cure of a fat woman.

Cure of a fearfull woman.

partly by making it ſtraight. And if the head or foote be ſent out firſt, you may not draw out the childe taking hold by that member, but put your fingers to the ſhoulders or hanches of the child, and thruſt vp that againe which is come forth, into the conuenient place. If there be two or three, or moe children, & do thruſt altogether into the necke of the matrice, you muſt driue back the reſt into the bottome of the wombe, & bring that out firſt, which ſeemeth to be moſt ready: but if it do not come forth becauſe the infant is dead, or hath a very great head, or through ſome other cauſe, you muſt come to drawing out of the child, or to cutting, which is taught abundantly of *Aetius, li.16. cap.23.* and of *Paulus libr.6. cap.74.* For it is not our purpoſe to teach handie cure heere. Moreouer, if the tunicle or ſecundine of the childe be thicker and ſtronger, then that it may be broken, you muſt cut it. Thoſe that haue the humor which is contained in the tunicles or ſecundine, flowing and running out before the conuenient time, ſo that the places be dried vp, you ſhall waſh it all about with whites of Egges, with the decoction of Mallowes, and Fenugreeke ſtrained, or with iuyce of Ptiſan warmed. A medicine that doth vniuerſally helpe all that haue ſore trauell in child-birth, is this that followeth:

Puluis optimus. ℞. Cinnamon choſen, ℥.ij. Mirrhe, *Caſſia lignea*, ana ℈.j. white Amber. ℥.j.ß. beate them together, and make a fine powder, whereof miniſter in wine that is odoriferous, the weight of one drachme. Moreouer the child being borne, oftentimes it chanceth that the ſecundine doth ſticke faſt in the wombe; which if it chanceth, then ſometime the mouth of the matrice is found open, and ſometime ſhut: and the ſecundine many times is ſtill ioyned to the bottome of the wombe, and many times it is ſeparate. If therefore the mouth of the matrice be open, and the ſecundine which is left therein, do cleaue to ſome part of the wombe, being wound vp together like a ball, it may eaſily be drawne out. You muſt draw out the ſecundine with your left hand being warmed, and annointed with ſome fat thing, and put into the wombe. If the ſecundine be faſtened and knit to the bottome of the wombe, you ſhall likewiſe put in your hand, warmed and annointed with greaſe, and take hold of the ſecundine and draw it out: but you may not draw it ſtraight forth, leſt the matrice come out with it: nor pull it very vehemently, but ſoftly and eaſily, firſt pulling it crooked, bringing it this way and that way: then after that, you may draw it ſomewhat harder, for by this meanes you ſhall looſen it from the faſtening. But if the mouth of the matrice be ſhut, you ſhal vſe perfuſions, and with the fingers of your left hand you ſhall labour to open it eaſily, and to make it wider by little and little. Which if you cannot bring to paſſe, it is good to apply about the priuities, foments, perfuſions, and ointments that can molliſie, diſſolue, and releaſe. If ſhe be ſtrong, you muſt put into her noſtrils at that time alſo ſneezing powder, made of *Caſtoreum*, Pepper, and ſuch like. For *Hippocrates* in 5. *Aph.*49 writeth thus: That the ſecundine may come out, giue her ſneezing powder, and let her ſtoppe her noſe and mouth. Alſo you muſt miniſter vnto her potions that can prouoke menſtruis: which things aforeſaid, you muſt do the firſt and ſecond day. Moreouer, ſhe muſt vſe ſuffumigations, ſeething in a pot, Motherwort, *Ireos*, Saueine, Peniroyall, Calamint, *Dictamus*, and ſuch like. Then put the pot vnder a cloſe chaire, vpon the which

To draw out the ſecundine.

let

let the woman sit, being compassed in round about with clothes. After that, if you find the mouth of the matrice opened, put in your hand, and labour to pull out the secundine as is aforesaid; but if it will not obey to come forth, you may not rend it, for within a few dayes after, being rotten and turned into atter, it wil fall out. But because through the euill sauour and smell, when it is rotted, it filleth the head, and marreth the stomach, they that are troubled with this euill, must be continually perfumed. For which purpose these things are good: *Cardamome, Bdellium*, with Saueine, Frankinsence, *Storax*, *Ladanum*, wood of *Aloes*, and such like. Also perfuming with ieate by a pipe, which is put into the mouth of the matrice, doth profite maruellously. Also simples, such as prouoke menstruis, be good: as decoction of Motherwort, and Laurell berries, with *Vinum mulsum*. Also make pessaries of Mirrhe and *Cyclaminum* commixed with oile.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the Sciatica.

ISCHIAS in Greeke, properly is called a most grieuous paine, which is wont to chance about the ioynt which the Greekes do call *Ischion*, the Latines *Coxa*, in English the huckle bone. The Latines call this disease *Ischias*, and they that are afflicted with this disease, are called *Ischiadici*. The barbarous sort call this disease *Sciatica*, and they call them that be diseased with it *Sciatici*. It is caused through a grosse and flegmatike humour, which being congealed, abideth in the ioynt of the huckle bones. Therefore continuall crudities and rawnesse, and vnmeasurable vsing of venerious acts, do not a litle helpe the ingendring of a *Sciatica*. Also sometime swift deambulations and walkings, and suppression or stopping of the Hemorhoides, and custome of vomiting being omitted, and purgation of menstruis, or else other familiar and accustomed emptyings being impedited and stopped, and neglecting of exercises: for each of these do ingender abundance of flegmatike humors. There goeth before this euill sometime paine of the muscles that be nigh vnto it, and specially of the loynes; sometime the beginning is in the huckle bone it selfe: also sometime it chanceth (that the paine of the huckle bone being taken away) there remaineth griefe onely about the hammes, and to some about the ankles, but in some all the legge is equally vexed with paine. Also in many, there is paine about the priuie members, and then also the bladder being vexed, doth ingender difficultie in pissing: and then chiefly the whole legge, from the haunch to the heele suffereth paine. Let the cure be begun with voyding and purging of the humour that doth afflict the patient. And if the body do equally abound with all humours, before all other remedies, cut a veine in the hamme, or the outward ankle, or also in the arme, on that side that is diseased. For sometime the *Sciatica* is cured in one day, by this emptying out of the legges. But if the bodie be stuffed with a flegmaticke and grosse humour, you must beginne the cure with purging of that humour. For the which purpose you must minister Clysters often, made after this sort, or in this manner: ℞. of Centorie, Sage, *Verbasculi odorati*, Rew, *Chamæpityos*, ana. M.j. rootes of Gladon, ℥.j. *Stæchados*, ʒ.iij. seedes of Annise

ἰσχιας.

Causæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Clyster.

and Fennell, aua. ℥.ij.ß. Agaricke of the best, ℥.ij. roote of Polypodie, ℥.v. Seethe these in sufficient quantity of water, vntil the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction, ℥.xiij. of *Hierapicra* ℥ ß. of *electuarium Nidum maius*, ℥.ij. of oile of Lillies, ℥.ij. oile of Rew, ℥ j. the yolkes of two Egs, Salt, ℥ j.ß. commixe them all and make a Clister. Also vomiting doth helpe them, that haue the *Sciatica*, much more then the purging downeward by the belly, for that doth repell and put backe the humour downeward sodainly. Therefore you must prouoke vomits in the beginning by and by after meate. But afterward you must minister vomiting medicines, beginning first with them that be easie. They that haue humours vehemently compact and thickned together, which can difficultly be dissolued and loosened, caused through Phisitions vsing sharpe medicines out of time, such be holpen by fastening on of a very great cupping glasse with scarifications. But in the *Sciatica* we do not vse such medicines as can represse and stoppe the fluxe. For seeing the disease is placed in the bottome of the huckle bone, bloud is expelled from the veines and muscles that be nigh adioyning to it, and is sent thither. Therefore in the beginning of this disease, there is neede of medicines that can mitigate and aswage, which neither do coole much, nor that do heate vehemently. For as those things which do coole, do thrust the humours violently to the anckle bone: so those things that do vehemently heate, do draw more matter out of the members adioyning. Moreouer, you may not come to the vsing of sharpe medicines, till after bloud letting or emptying by purgations. For if any man apply sharpe medicines to the diseased member, before the bodie be emptied or purged, he shall make the disease hard to cure, because of a multitude of humours so thickened there, that they cannot be dissolued. For besides other things, it is made grosse and viscous, and through the heate and drinesse of the sharpe medicines, it suffereth as it were rosting or burning. First therefore you must irrigate and sprinkle the aggrieued place with oile of Rew. After you must apply more effectuous medicines, which do heate, and can draw humours from the bottome to the toppe, as be *oleum Vulpinum*, oyle of Pepper, *oleum Costiuum*, oyle of Iuniper, *vnguentum Aragon*, *Martiatum*, and *Agrippa*. Also Sage, Rew, Laurell leaues, Elderne, roote of Walwort, Peniroiall, Saueine, *Opoponax*, *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and such like. Of the which you may make foments, oyntments, emplaisters, and cerates. But if griefe be extremely painefull, then vse this which followeth, for it is most excellent against this euill: ℞. Rosin of the Pine tree, ℔.j.ß. *Galbanum*, ℥.v. melt them with a soft fire, and then straine it through a cloth, and put vnto it of the powder of Masticke, ℥.j. and then spread it warme vpon Dogges leather, or Lambes leather, and strike it a good thickenesse; and before you apply this plaister to the pained place, annoint the place with this ointment following: ℞. fresh Hogs grease, ℥.j.ß. and take Sowes or Monkes peason, in number twenty, and beate them both well in a mortar, till they be well incorporate, and therewith annoynt the places and the plaister, and warme the plaister against the fire, till it be soft, and lay it to the agrieued place, and let it lie nine dayes. If there be haires vpon the place, you must shaue them off first, and rolle it well, lest it slippeth away; then euerie day, morning

Vomitus.

Cucurbita magna.

When sharpe medicins may be vsed.

Simples.

Emplastrum.

Vnguentum.

morning and euening at each time, let the patient take, ℥.j. of this electuarie: ℞. of the roots of *Acorus*, or Gladon, being made cleane, ℔.j. stampe them very small, (as possibly you may do) then take of clarified Honey, ℔.iij. and put in the rootes by little and little, euer stirring it, and when it is well sodden, put into it of Cinnamon, ℥.j. made in very fine powder, which being well incorporate, keepe it to your vse: and at the end of the nine dayes, if the paine be not cleane gone, lay to the forenamed plaisters other nine daies, vsing the same Electuarie, and procure vomite, as before, euery sixth or seuenth day; for that doth greatly reuert the humour. But in the beginning of the griefe, apply to the agrieued place againe and againe, sponges wet in the decoction of Iuniper, or Sage, or Elderne leaues. Afterward vse this ointment: ℞. of *vnguentum Martiaton*, ʒ.iij. oile of *Ireos*, and Lillies, ana. ℥.ß. iuyce of Rew, and *Chamæpityos*, ana. ʒ.ij. Honey, ʒ j ß. Sage, Peniroiall, Pepper, ana. ʒ.ß. Pellitory, Stauesacre, ana. ℈ j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also the vsing of this cerate profiteth: ℞. *oleum Costiuum*, and *Vulpinum*, ana. ℥ ij.ß. oile of Pepper, ℥ ß *Opoponax*, *Bdellium*, *Storax*, ana. ʒ.iij. roote of Briony, Salt-peter, leaues of Elderne, ana ʒ.ij. *Aristolochia rotunda*, Rew, ana. ʒ.i.ß. *Euphorbium*, ℈ j. dissolue the Gummes in very sharpe Vineger, and with Turpentine and Waxe as much as is sufficient, make a cerate. And if the euill do remaine still, you must vse clisters againe: and then fasten a very great cupping glasse with much flame to the huckle bone, making good deepe gashes with scarification. And if that the disease be not ended so, you must vse againe purging vomites, and the other remedies aforesayd; which being done, you must come to the vsing of Dropaces and Synapismes, and so to the vsing of burning medicines: amongst which, the roote of the hearbe called *Iberis*, is not the worst, being new digged vp in Sommer, and diligently braied, and mixed with a little old Swines grease, being layed and bound to the ioynt of the huckle bone, or to the whole shanke or legge. Also the leaues of it will do the same thing. And being so applied, let it lie not past two houres to women, but let it lie foure houres to men, if it be possible for them to suffer it: for it raiseth swelling with burning and rednesse, as a Synapisme is wont to do. Afterward bring the sicke into a bath, in the which, when he hath swet a little, bid him sit downe in the vessell, because of the biting heate, and compell him to suffer it strongly. For in the beginning, it is wont to bring biting and gnawing with burning heate; then bring him out: from which alwayes almost (as *Aetius* witnesseth) although they be carried in of other, they will go out alone vpon their feet. After the bathing, commixe much oile with a very little wine, and shake them together, and annoint it: then wipe off the humour with a sharpe cloth, and couer the leg it selfe with verie soft wooll. And truly (this being done) it hath beene wont to need no other remedy for the cure. But if sometime it chanceth any part or remembrance of the euill to be left still, within a few dayes after, you may vse againe the same remedy. And certaine dayes after, you may lay on the cerate which is a little before described. Moreouer, among burning and blistering medicines, this is good: ℞. *Mel anacardinum*, Leauen, ana ʒ.i. *Cantharides*, (the wings cast away) ʒ.ij. Vineger as much as is sufficient, and commixe them together.

Electuarium.

Aliud vnguentum.

Ceratum.

Causticum.

Aliud. Or this is good: ℞. *Euphorbium*, Saltpeter, ana. ℈.ij. Sope, quicke Lime, ana. ℥ j. *Mel anacardinum*, as much as is sufficient, so that all being mixed together, may be of the thickenesse of honey: let his diet be such, that his meate may be meanely thinne, and easie of digestion. Let his exercise be walkings, continuall writhings, leapings, or dauncings and running. It is good alwayes to haue the bodie soluble. And if the disease hath endured long, and cannot be driuen away with the aforesaid medicines, you must vse burning in three or foure places, after that sort as *Paulus* teacheth *in libr. 6. cap. 76.* and *Aetius lib. 12. cap. 30.*

Victus ratio.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the Goute in the feete and ioynts.

PODAGRA and *Arthritis* in Latine, be diseases of one kinde. And therefore they differ not but in places diseased. For in both of them there is weakenesse of ioynts, and an vnnaturall humour floweth to them. And if that the fluxe of the humour do flow to the feete, that is called *Podagra* in Latine. But if the humour flow to other ioynts, it is called in Greeke *Arthritis*, in Latine, *Articularis morbus*, the ioynt sickenesse. Sometime this euill doth rush in sodainly, being equally dispersed throughout all the ioynts. But for the most part, the fluxe is wont to fall in priuily, and by little and little. For in some, paine doth inuade the ioynt of the great toe, but in some the end of the heele is afflicted. Againe in some other, the hollownesse of the foote is grieued, either through chafing of the shoo, or some such like thing. The Goute taketh his beginning at the feete, whereupon it taketh the name; and it proceedeth vpward by litle and litle to the knees, & also to the ioynts of the huckle bones, and the thighes; afterward to the hands, euery ioynt particularly being grieued. They that are taken extremely with this disease, haue paine in the backebone ioynts, and in the ioynts of the ribbes, and eye liddes, and to some paine in the throat also: neither is there any connexion or knitting of bones, which is free from this euill. This disease is ingendred of continuall crudities and drunkennesse, and of immoderate vsing of lecherie, through vehement and swift deambulations and walkings, through long standing, or often riding, by suppression and stopping of accustomed excretions and fluxes and through intermission of familiar exercises. Sorrowes, cares, watchings, and other perturbations of the mind, do not onely ingender this euill, but also do breed hurtfull and corrupt humours. Also many times the Cholicke being naughtily cured, is wont to be a cause why the ioynt sickenesse should follow. But for the most part, a disposition to this kind of disease proceedeth from the parents to the children, and their posteritie. Also vniuersally abundance of all raw humors is the cause of this disease. The humours that do abound, and do fasten themselues in the ioynts, either be sanguine, or cholericke, or flegmaticke, or melancholious. Also sometime this euill is ingendred of commixtion of humours. The outward causes may easily be knowne by the telling of the sicke, or them that be about him. The difference of humours you shall know by the signes following. The humor of blood, if it be much in quantity, it causeth fulnesse, and great swelling, not onely of the veines, but about the skinne

Podagra.
Arthritis.
Causa.
Signa.

skin of the whole member that is grieued, and maketh it red in colour. They which are afflicted with this euill, cannot suffer remedies to be applied that be very cold, or very hote: and they are continually vexed with paine, because the flowing of the bloud doth chance continually and equally. Their vrines are yellow and meane of substance. Also their veines do abound with bloud, and are puffed vp and swollen. The conuenient age for this euill, is youth. Also meats that ingender good iuyce, and nourish abundantly, were eaten before, and exercises were neglected. The time of the yeare in the which the patient is most afflicted, is Spring time. If the humour that floweth into the ioynts be cholericke, you may know it by the yellowish colour of the skinne. Somtime rednesse is mixed with the yellow colour, that is, when choler is commixd with blood. Also there is sensible heate and sharpe paine like lancing. Also moistnes sodainly bursteth out of the skinne, without euident swelling. The patient is eased with cooling medicines, and reioyceth: but with hote things his paines augment. In the state and strength of the fit, a feauer taketh him, and a very great thirst. His vrine is cytrine, and sometime also it is sharpe. There is wont to go before this disease, great cares, and wrath, watchings, and wearinesse, & a diet that was apt to ingender choler. The age, complexion, and time of the yeare that is hote and drie, be apt to cause this cholericke fluxe. And if the humour that floweth into the ioynts, be flegmaticke, the swelling will giue place to the thrusting of the finger, and it is loose and moderate: the colour of the member afflicted, is white. Old age is much afflicted with this humor, and a complexion cold and moist, and it chanceth in the winter time. His vrine is thinne and watery. There went before it idlenesse, rest, and a diet that ingendred flegmaticke humors. If it be salt fleame, great itch, and gnawing, or biting doth trouble the diseased members. If the fluxe to the ioynts be of melancholy, which chanceth but seldome, the colour of the swelling is blackish. The age which doth most ingender this fluxe, is the declination of middle age. Also the complexion is cold and drie, and the time of the yeare, Harueſt; a countrey that is cold and drie, and like state of the aire, and a diet that ingendreth melancholy. When the humor that floweth into the ioynts is bloud, by and by you must let bloud, not once only, but often, taking it away by litle and litle: for if you do omit bloud-letting, and do vse repercussiue medicines, you shall be an author of great euill. For the bloud being driuen backe from the vnnoble members, it rusheth vp to the principall members, & that be necessary to life. Therefore in fluxes of bloud, letting of bloud is very necessary, specially in them that abound with bloud. You must cut a veine in the arme beneath, right against the leg that is vexed with the fluxe. And if the right hand be vexed with paine of this disease, cut a veine in the right legge, about the hamme, or the anckle, or the sole of the feete: for a veine being cut right against the member that is afflicted, it is of great efficacie and strength. Then specially must bloud-letting be vsed, when this euill beginneth first to inuade any man. For they that be vexed often with this fluxe of bloud, do feele more hurt then helpe of bloud-letting, specially if their bodie be weake and cold. After bloud-letting you must apply remedies to the agrieued member, which do neyther coole greatly, lest they should driue together and thicken the

Signs if bloud do flow.

Signes of cholericke fluxe,

Signes of flegmaticke fluxe.

Signes of melancholy flowing.

Cure by bloud letting.

Localia.

humors; nor heate vehemently, lest they should draw more humors vnto the diseased member. Therefore you must sprinckle the grieued place with old Vineger, and oile of Roses mixed together, specially if the cause of the paine do seeme to be deepe within. For Vineger of his own proper thinnesse, going into the depth, maketh a way for the oile of Roses, which naturally can ease paines. But if the paine be aloft nigh the skinne, you shall helpe it greatly with oile and wine, applying it in Sommer warme, in Winter hote. Afterward also you must vse cataplasmes which can ease and ceasse paine, without any prouoking of fluxes, made of the meale of Fenugreek, Barley, Beanes, Lupins, Cammomill, and such like: and you must see that those things be euer hote, which may well be, if they be continually changed, & couered ouer aloft with wooll. Also this medicine profiteth not a litle: ℞. Goates milke, ℥v. the yolks of two Egs, oyle of Roses, ℥.j. Saffron, ʒ ß. crums of bread as much as is sufficient, that it may haue the forme of a cataplasme: stamp these till they be well commixed together, and then apply thereof to the member that is grieued. Also you may make an emplaister or cerate of oile of Roses, Vineger, Rosin, Waxe, *Galbanum*, gum Ammoniacke, Frankinsence, Saffron, and such like. You must giue him meates which do extenuate, and that do nourish but little, as be pothearbs. Let him abstaine altogether from flesh, except it be birds of mountaines. Let him vse fishes that breed in stony waters. Wine if the intemperance of the sicke may suffer it, must altogether be taken away: for it is almost the onely reason whereby health should follow: which, seeing among a thousand, scarce one doth obserue, it is not maruell though there be verie few which be deliuered from this disease at these dayes. In stead of Wine let him vse water, wherein Cinnamon, Annise seedes, or such like hath beene sodden: or that drinke which is called foolishly nowadayes *Ipocras*: the making whereof you may finde before in the chapter of the Palsey. Let the sicke diligently auoyde fruite, and carnall lust. Also he ought to haue a soluble belly alwayes, that can auoyd out the ordure readily alone: which, if they do not well, wash it with some easie clister. If through flowing of choler, the disease in the ioints be caused, then your labour must be to void and purge out the humour that doth vexe the patient, which you must do, as well by vomiting as by the belly downeward. Therefore you must surely purge them that be thus afflicted, by medicines that draw out choler. After that, vntill the full state of it, you must apply medicines that haue vertue to coole and restraine; as be those that are made of Singreene, greene Roses, sharpe Sorrell, Nightshade, Plantaine, and such like, often before rehearsed. In this kinde of fluxe, many times, because of the vehemencie of the paine, you must vse such medicines as can cause astonishment. For the which purpose, it is good to apply the medicine which we described before, of Goates milke, crummes of bread, Saffron, and yolkes of Egs, with the which you must commixe Poppy seeds, ʒ.iij. or *Opium*, ℥ ß. or more or lesse according to the paine. Also, for the same purpose, leaues of Hemlocke and Henbane do profite, being applied and layed on. But you must note, and take heede, when you be compelled to vse stupefactiue things in feruent and vehement pains, that afterward you do recreate and nourish those members by such things as do heate. For vnlesse you do so, you shall make

Cataplasmata

Victus ratio.

Why few be cured of the goute at these dayes.

Cure of the cholericke fluxe.

Stupefacientia.

Note.

make those members weake and intemperate, and so they shall be subiect to a perpetuall fluxe, and shall soone catch hurt in their actions. Heating medicines be, Origan, Sauorie, Mustard seed, Pepper, and such like. Also you must helpe to prouoke sweating with heating and rubbing of the bodie: but so, that you touch not the aggrieued member. Moreouer, you must minister in drink those things that do prouoke vrine: for such do voide out choler by the vrine. Also such things ministred as do cause sleepe, are wont to do good, because the fluxe is stopped and dried vp by them, specially if they be ministred after a purgation. You must giue them meats that do coole, but not that do moisten: for moistnesse increaseth the fluxe. Let them not suffer hunger, for that maketh choler sharper. Of fruits, let them vse restrictiue Apples and Medlars, and other that do coole and stoppe or let the fluxe. Let them abstaine altogether from Wine, as is aforesaid. They which are diseased through flowing of fleame, you must beginne the cure of them with purging of fleame. The flegmaticke humour is auoyded by vomiting, but neuertheleſſe also downeward by the belly. But the best purging in this euill, is downeward by the belly, whether the disease sticke about the hands or the feete: and so much the more, if the fluxe be in all the ioynts of the bodie. For the way that is most familiar, and least perillous for fleame, is to go out by the guttes. For if it were drawne by violence vpward to the stomacke, and not purged out, it causeth perill. Therefore it is more safe and healthfull to purge it downward. But before you minister purging medicines, you must minister those things that haue vertue to cut, extenuate and diuide, that by this meanes the grosse humours may be prepared, and made apt to purge. If emptying may not be done by purging, then they must vse hunger and famine many dayes; for they that be flegmaticke of nature, can suffer hunger easily and without hurt. Hereupon *Hippocrates* saith, 7. *Aphor* 6. It is good for the bodies that haue moist flesh to vse hunger: for the hunger drieth the bodies. Also they must vse discussiue and dissoluing frictions, and strong clisters, and medicines that prouoke vrine: but you must apply outwardly such medicines as can ease and ceasse paine, and which can dissolue and drie moderately, of which we spake a little before. But in the beginning of the disease, you must mixe with them some things that haue vertue to restraine and bind. After the beginning, you must vse onelie dissoluing and discussiue things. The gentlest is this: leaues of *Althæa*, sodden and beaten alone, or with floure, or Barley meale applyed to. Also the roote of it sodden in *Aqua mulsa*, and stamped and applyed, is good. And this ointment is good. ℞. of the oiles of Laurell, and *Ireos*, ana. ℥.j. old swines grease, butter, ana. ʒ iij. the marrow of a Hart, ʒ. ij. fine Turpentine, ʒ.v. *Galbanum* dissolued in Vineger, ʒ.j. Hysope, roote of *Althæa*, Fenugreeke seed, an. ℈ ij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. Moreouer, let the meates that you giue to nourish him, be drie of nature, and small of nourishing, as is iuyce of Rice rootes, and such like: but yet flesh of the birds of mountaines roasted is not hurtfull for them. Capers with *Acetum Mulsum*, doth maruellously profite. Giue vnto him Wine, in very little quantitie at certaine times, and let it be thinne, yellow and old. They that are diseased through flowing of melancholy, must be emptied eyther with *fleame*.

Diet.

Cure of flegmatike fluxe.

Flegmaticke folke can suffer hunger easily.

Vnguentum.

Victus ratio.

Cure of a melancholie

bloud-letting or by purgation. Vse bloud-letting, when the bloud is infected with melancholy: and vse purgations, when the patient declineth to melancholie; but if both these abound together, it is not sufficient for you to vse one of the aforesaid things: but first cut a veine, and then vse a purging medicine: which thing you must also do in other euils that haue need of double purging. In the beginning of the disease, and in the very time of emptying and purging, you must vse such things as can represse, stop, and also heate sensibly. After purging, vse those things that can gently heate, attenuate and dissolue or discusse, as is afore taught. But because knobbes and hard swellings do ingender afterward in the ioyntes, as well because of the grossenesse, and earthie hardnesse of the humor that hath flowed thither, and also through the vsing of immoderate discussiue and drying medicines, without mixing of such with them as haue a mollifying vertue: therefore to take those knobbes away, you must vse those medicines, which be declared of vs before in the Chapter of hardnes of the spleene. But specially very old and sharpe cheese, brayed in the decoction of very fat and old swines flesh, is good to be applied. Also, for this euill, Figges braied and laied on are good. Also *Althæa* twise sodden, Oates, Nettles, Briony roote, round rootes, Dill, Sothernewood, Mayweede, Horehound leaues mixed with Pitch, Sulphure and wine. Also you must commixe fat and greases of swine, Goates, Calues, and Geese. Also all marrows and other things that haue vertue to mollifie and soften. And also bathings, after the inflammation is ceassed, are most commodious and profitable to all that haue the Gout. While they wash them, put sponges wet in Vineger & Salt mixt together, round about the diseased places, that they may remaine safe from humours flowing to it. They must wash themselues, not once onely, but often, in an aire that is altogether meane and moderate. But they may not tarry long in hote water. It is best therefore that they be sprinckled and wet with hote water powred on them. Also it is profitable that all the bodie be rubbed with drie linnen clothes. Moreouer, they that be cured of the Goute, shall defend themselues afterward from it, by this meanes: First, twise in a yeare, that is, at Spring time and Autumne, if nothing do let it, let him bloud largely. Also about those times, and oftener, let him vse purging medicins. Also it is necessary for him to eate little meate, and to abstaine from fulnesse. Also he must vse meates that be easie of digestion, and which readily be distributed into the members of the bodie, and be without excrements. Let him abstaine altogether from wine, or let him vse it very scarcely. Let him vse exercise very often, and that before meate: for labour (as *Hippocrates* saith) must go before meate. And to conclude, they that desire to be freed from the Gout, let them remember this short and most wholesome precept of *Hippocrates*: The way to helpe and preserue health, is, not to be filled with meates, and to be vnslouthfull in labouring. Also let his sleepes and venerious acts be in a meane. As for remedies in this case, let Salt be braied small in oile, and the ioynts rubbed therewith, for it helpeth greatly all those that will be free from this euil, except they be of a wonderfull drie temperature. And he must vse annointing with that, morning and euening all the daies of his life.

Cure of knobs.

Bathes.

A defence for the goute.

The end of the third Booke.

THE

THE FOVRTH BOOKE TEACHING THE CVRE OF FEAVERS.

CHAP. I.

An expoſition of Feauers.

EBRIS in Latine, a Feauer in Engliſh, it is an vnnaturall heate, which taking his beginning at the heart, is ſpread by the arteries and veins into the whole body, and doth hurt, and let the operation of it. For although a man be hotter now then he was before, it followeth not, that he hath a Feauer, vnleſſe the heate being immoderately increaſed, do offend the man, and hurt his operations and actions. *Feby is quid.*

Moreouer, as there be three things (*Hippocrates* witneſſeth) which do ordaine and conſtitute our bodie, (that is to ſay) things contained, things containing, and things that flow about violently; (that is) the hard and ſound members in the bodie, the humours, and the ſpirits or aire: ſo alſo there be three kinds of ſimple Feuers. For if immoderate heate be kindled in the ſpirits and aire of mans bodie, it is called in Greeke, *Ephemera*, and in Latine *Diaria febris*, and in Engliſh it may be called, one day Feauer. This Feauer is like to hote ayre or winde, included in a bladder or bottle: for like as the ayre heateth the bottle that it is in, euen ſo, the ſpirits of a mans bodie, being heat more then they ſhould be, do heate all the whole bodie. There chanceth in this kinde of feauer but one fit, and for the moſt part it endureth but one day of his owne proper nature, whereupon it is called *Diaria febris*, that is, the one day feauer. For they ceaſſe after the firſt fit, if they be rightly handled. But you muſt note, that there be feauers called *Diariæ*, which laſt vntill the third day, as thoſe be which are ingendred of thickening and ſtopping of the conduits and paſſages. For although that this word *Diaria* be not of the very ſubſtance of ſuch feauers, yet becauſe they lacke a conuenient name, to the intent that our teaching ſhould be brieſe and euident (notwithſtanding that the word repugne againſt it) ſeeing that they be of the ſame nature that true *Diaries* be of, they may moſt rightly be called *Diariæ* (as *Galen* ſheweth abundantly *in lib. 9. Therapeutices, cap.* 1.) Hereupon it is euident, that there be two kinds of *Diaries*: one which is named *Diaria* ſimply and without adiection or putting to of any word, which feauer doth not extend aboue the ſpace of a naturall day (that is) twenty foure houres. Another kind there is, which is called *Diaria plurium dierum* (that is) a diarie of many dayes. It is called by another name of *Galen* (that is) *Synochus non putrida*. The ſecond kinde of ſimple feauers is, when as immoderate heate is kindled in the humours, and

Three principall kindes of ſimple feuers
Εφημερα.
Diaria.

Note.

Diaria ſimplex.

Diaria plurium dierum.

Putrida.

it is called *Putrida*, that is, rotten, onely because the humours in this kinde of feauers do putrifie and rotte. It is like vnto hote water: for as that doth heate a coole vessell that it is powred into: so also humours, hote aboue nature, do heate the body. The humours do putrifie and rot, either within the vessels or without. If they rot within the vessels, then either all the humors do putrifie together, or else one alone. If all the humours do putrifie equally and alike within all the vessels or veines, or specially within the greatest, it causeth a feuer called *Synochus putrida*: which, to the intent you may perceiue what it meaneth, you must note first, that the Phisitions of Greece do call that feauer *Synochus*, in the which one fit remaining still continually from the beginning to the ending, extendeth and continueth many dayes: or, it is a feauer which is without any great mutation vntill the end of it. This feauer may be called of the Latines *Continens febris*, and in English, a constant or continuall feauer. But although there be one forme and likelihood of such feauers, whereupon, they name them *Synochus*, yet their nature is not all one. For some of them haue manifest signes and tokens of rottennesse: and some againe haue none at all, which (as we said a little before) be of the kindes of *Diaria*. We, to the intent that our doctrine may be the more euident, do call the first, *Synochus putrida*: and the last we call *Synochus non putrida*. And in this place you may not follow the barbarous sort, which call the last of them *Synocha*, and the first *Synochus*: seeing the Greekes (as *Galen* witnesseth) containe them both vnder the name of *Synochus*. Of those feauers which are named *Synochi*, there be three sundrie sorts or differences: for some of them do endure of an equall vehemencie and force from the beginning vntill the ending: those the Greekes call *Homotonos*, and *Acmasticos*, that is, remayning still in the same force and vigour. Some alwayes increase and augment by little and little: those the Greekes do call *anabaticos* and *epacmasticos*, that is, increasing and augmenting more and more. Some do decrease and diminish by little and little, those the Greekes call *paracmasticos*, that is, decreasing. Moreouer, if one onely humour do putrifie and rot within the vessels, it kindleth a feauer, which the Greekes do call *Synechis*, and the Latines, *Continua febris*, in English a continuall feauer, which is when the feauer doth not leaue the patient, but it hath a certaine remission and slaking of euerie fit. Whereby it is euident that the feauer *Synochus* and *Synechis*, that is, a constant feauer, and a continuall feauer, do differ much asunder. For in a feauer *Synechus*, there is no remission or slaking of the heate, but in the feauer *Synechis*, there is sensible remission and slaking in euerie fitte. Also the feauer *Synochus* hath but one onely fit: but in *Synechis* there be many fits. And they two agree in this, that neyther of them doth leaue the patient sometime. Of feauers that are called *Synechis*, or else *Continua febris*, there be three kindes: for if choler do putrifie and rot within the vessels, it causeth a continuall Tertian, or a burning feuer, which is called of the Greeks *Causos*. If fleam do putrifie or rot within the vessels, there ingendreth a continuall Quotidian. But if melancholy do putrifie and rot within the vessels, there ingendreth a continuall Quartane. And these continuall feauers be somewhat like to the intermitting feauers, of the which we will speake straightway. For a con-

Σωνοχος.

Two kinds of Synochus: Synochus putrida, & non putrida.

Three sorts of Synochus.

1
2
3

συνεχης.

What a continuall feuer is.

Difference betweene Synochus and συνεχης.

Three kindes of continuall feauers.

Tertiana continua.

Quotidiana continua.

Quartana continua.

a continuall Tertian agreeth with a true intermitting Tertian, in this, that it hath a fitte as well as it euery third day. And a continuall Quotidian agreeth with an intermitting Quotidian, because each of them hath a fitte euerie day. Also a continuall Quartane agreeth with an intermitting Quartane, because both of them causeth a fitte euery fourth day. But yet these feauers do differ two wayes, notwithstanding that they agree in the humour that causeth them. First they differ, because in continuall feauers the putrified humour is contained within the veines, but in intermitting feauers, that humour is dispersed into all the members of the bodie; whereupon it chanceth through violence of spreading of humours, the feauers are purged out by themselues. Hereby also they differ another way, that is, the intermitting feauers slake betweene the fittes, but the continuall feauers do not cease at all betweene the fittes. Hitherto we haue rehearsed what kindes of feauers humours putrified within the vessels do cause and ingender: now we will expound, what feauers humours putrified without the vessels do conceiue, ingender and kindle. If therefore an humour do putrifie and rotte without the vessels, it causeth an Intermitting feauer, which is so called, because the fitte doth not endure continually, but it hath a slaking or ceassing, and leaueth off betweene the fittes. It may most aptly be called in Latine *Febris interpolata*, because the fittes come and renew at their times: some call it *deficiens febris*. Of this feauer there be three kindes, that is, a Tertian, a Quotidian, and a Quartane. A pure and exquisite Tertian is caused when choler doth putrifie and rotte without the vessels. It is so called because it ceasleth one day, and commeth againe the third day. An exquisite Quotidian, which in Greeke is called *Amphemerinon*, is caused of sweete fleame being putrified and rotten without the vessels: and it is so called, because it returneth euerie day. We did not raishly say sweete fleame: for if glasen fleame do putrifie and rot a little, it causeth a feauer called *Epialos*. And this *Epialos* is a feauer, in which the patient is both feauerous, and feruently cold, and doth feele both heate and cold immoderate in all parts of his bodie, both at one time together. To the aforesaid feauer doth belong a feauer, in Greeke called *Lypiria*. In this feauer there is heate felt within, and in the bowels and entraile: but in all the outward parts, there is cold felt. An intermitting Quartane is ingendred of melancholy putrified and rotted without the vessels. It is so named because it ceasseth two dayes, and returneth againe the fourth day. The third kinde of simple feauers in generall is caused, when heate is kindled in the sound, hard, and fleshie parts of mans bodie, and it is called both in Greek and Latine, *Hectica febris*, and in English the feauer Hecticke. This feauer is like to a hote vessell; for as the vessell doth heate the water that is powred into it: so also the feauer Hecticke, which sticketh in the sound and fleshy parts of the body, and is infixed in them, is able to heate all the humours of the body. And if this feauer do not increase, that it doth melt and consume the whole body, and all the hard and sound parts of it: then it is called *Hectica marasmodes*, and *marasmus*. And this (as *Galen* witnesseth) is vncurable. For although you might quench the heate, yet the drinesse which is left, being proper to old age, will kill the patient. Besides the feauers now of vs rehearsed, there is another fe-

Likenesse betweene continuall and intermitting feauers.

Difference betweene continuall and intermitting feauers.

Intermittens febris.

Interpolata.

Tertiana intermittens.

Quotidiana exquisita.

Epialos.

Lypiria.

Quartana intermittens.

Hectica febris

Marasmus.

Pestilent feuer.

uer which is caused of breathing in of pestilent aire. But seeing this Feuer (as *Galen* witnesseth, *libro primo De differentia febrium, capite quinto*) is ingendred of rottennesse; for the aire about vs being corrupted with a putrifying and rotting euaporation, causeth also the humours of the bodie to rot: therefore it may be contained vnder the second principall kind of the feuer called *Putrida*. Moreouer in this place, we may not let passe to tell, that some feauers be ingendred without disease or griefe in any member of the bodie, and some feauers be kindled through the inflammation of some member. Therefore, as the former feauers haue their names, so also each of these that follow haue their proper names. For the feauer which is ingendred through inflammation of the filme or kall that girdeth in the ribbes, it is called, *Pleuretica febris*. That which ingendreth through inflammation of the lungs, is called *Peripneumonica febris*. That which chanceth through inflammation of the stomacke, the liuer, or the lungs, is called in Greeke *Typhodes* (that is) inflaming or burning. Likewise all other feauers which ingender through inflammation of any member, haue diuerse names, according to the diuersitie of the member. Therefore in euery sicke person you must diligently discerne feauers which come without disease of other members, from those feauers which ingender through inflammation of some member. Of the aforesaid feauers, some be *Typicæ* (that is) certaine and ordinate: and some be *Erraticæ* (that is) vncertaine and vnordinate. *Typicæ* be such feuers, whose fits, and flakings from them, do come iustly at their appointed time. *Erraticæ* are such feuers as be contrarie to these, for they keepe no certaine and iust time, nor any order of fits, nor the intermission betweene them, as be those feauers which ingender of melancholy, which is moued in certaine members, and in some it remaineth vnmoueable, in other members it putrifieth, or beginneth to boile. Hitherto we haue rehearsed the kinds of simple feauers: it remaineth therefore, that we declare briefly the kindes of compound and mixt feauers. Therefore compound feauers are caused two wayes: first, because these feauers aforesaid (that is) a Tertian, Quotidian, and Quartane, may be mixed together without the disease of any member. Secondarily, because these feauers, which be ingendred through inflammation of some member, may commixe together. The feauers that come without inflammation of any member, are sometime compleate and ioyned together, and sometime they are altogether confounded. Complication (as *Galen* witnesseth) is, when the Feauers inuade the patient at diuerse houres: and confusion is, when they beginne at one time. There be foure complications or ioyning together of the Feauer Tertian and Quotidian (as *Galen* witnesseth.) One, when a Tertian and Quotidian are mixed together, being both intermitting feauers. Another is, when an intermitting Tertian is ioyned with a continuall Quotidian. This is called by a peculiar name of the Greekes *Hemitritæus*: because all his nature hath the halfe part of each of the said feauers. The third is when an intermitting Quotidian is mixed with a continuall Tertian. The fourth is when a continuall Quotidian is ioyned with a continuall Tertian. To be short, feauers of one kind are complicate and ioyned with feauers of the same kinde, as continuall with continuall, and intermitting with intermitting feauers, and

Feuers ingendred by inflamation of some member.

The kinds of compound feauers.

Complications of Quotidians and Tertians.

Hemitritæus.

Tertians

Tertians with other Tertians, and one Quartane with another Quartane. Also it chanceth many times, that feauers of diuerse kinds are coupled together, as Quotidians with Tertians, and each of them with Quartanes, and sometime intermitting feauers are mixed with continuall feauers. Moreouer, after the same sort, feauers which are ingendred with inflammation of some members, are sometime mixed together, as if diuerse members do each of them kindle a feuer proper to themselues, or the affection where they ingender be mixed. Seeing therefore, that feauers are compounded and mixed many sundrie wayes, first the kinds of simple feauers must be with great diligence perfectly learned of them that studie Phisicke: for vnlesse they know them very perfectly, it cannot be that euer they should know well compound feauers. Therefore seeing the knowledge of them is verie hard, in so much that oftentimes cunning Phisitians are deceiued in iudging of them, you must seeke the signes and tokens, whereby you may know them, diligently out of *Galen*, who hath taught this thing more exactly then any man. We, to help the memory of the studious, haue comprehended all the kinds of simple feauers in this Table following.

TABVLA FEBRIVM.

- Of simple feauers there be three principall kindes. For vnnaturall heat ingendred
  - In the spirits or breath, causeth *Ephemera*, or *Diaria*, whereof be two kindes, that is,
    - *Ephemera simpliciter*, or *Daria*, one day feuer.
    - *Diaria plurium dierum*, otherwise called *Synochus non putrida*, enduring three or foure dayes.
  - In the humours, causeth *Putrida febris*, a rotten feauer. They do rot in two places,
    - Within the vessels, & that two waies. For eyther
      - All the humors do putrifie & rot equally, & cause a feuer called *Synochus putrida*.
      - Or
      - One only humour putrifieth, and so causeth a continuall feuer. If there be putrifaction
        - Of Choler, it causeth a continuall Tertian, or a burning feauer.
        - Of Fleame, it causeth a continuall Quotidian.
        - Of Melancholy, it causeth a continuall Quartane.
    - Without the vessels, and cause an intermitting feauer. For if there be putrifaction
      - Of Choler, it causeth an intermitting Tertian.
      - Of Fleame that is
        - Sweete, it causeth an intermitting Quotidian, exquisite and pure.
        - Glasen, it causeth *Epialos*.
      - Of Melancholy, it causeth an intermitting feauer Quartane.
  - In the fleshie parts, causeth eyther,
    - *Hectica Febris*, or *Marasmus*.

CHAP. II.

Of one day Feauer.

Ephemera quid.

DIARIA *Febris* in Latine, *Ephemera* in Greeke, in English, one day feauer; it is that which hath one onely fit, finishing for the most part in one day, at the most, of his owne nature. For it endeth after the first fit, and doth not exceede nor passe a naturall day, if it be rightly vsed. And that becauſe of the matter wherein it is, that is, the ſpirit or breath, which is eaſily diſſolued and diſperſed. Therefore *Galen* doth moſt worthily call this, the moſt ſimple feauer, becauſe it is the ſhorteſt, and the moſt gentle feauer, being nothing malignant. Therefore if any thing in this feauer be committed eyther by ignorance of the Phiſitions, or through the intemperance of the ſicke, or by errours of the miniſters and aſſiſtants, whereby it turneth into another kinde of feauer, that doth not chance through the nature of this feauer. *Diaria febris* is cauſed, when as the ſpirit or breath is inflamed and heat aboue nature, without any putrifaction or rottenneſſe. And that chanceth many wayes: ſometime through conſtipation, binding, or thickening of the skinne, which ſtoppeth and keepeth in the vapours or ſpirits which were wont to flow out by the pores, which becauſe they be hote and ſharpe, therefore they ingender a feauer. Sometime it is cauſed through wearineſſe and vehement defatigation. Alſo through watchings, crudities, and lacke of digeſtion, ſadneſſe, feare, ire, vehement care of the mind, burning of the Sunne, cold, hunger, drunkenneſſe, and ſwelling of the kernels in the throte, and ſuch like, which can heate the ſpirits and inflame them. The ſignes wherby *Diaries* are knowne, are of two ſorts: for ſome ſignes be common to all *Diaries*, and ſome be proper and peculiar to each cauſe. The common ſignes be ſixe in number, whereof the firſt is the pulſe. For all the *Diaries*, as much as in them is, do change the pulſe in greatneſſe, ſwiftneſſe and oftenneſſe. But it keepeth exquiſitely that order, ſoftneſſe, and equalitie, which is according with nature. The ſecond common ſigne is the vrine, which in *Diaries* is altogether according to nature, or doth little turne from a naturall ſtate. An vrine that accordeth with nature, is ſubruſe in colour, meane in ſubſtance, hauing in it a reſidence white, light, and equall. The third token is the equalitie of heate, which in all *Diarie* feuers is gentle, pleaſant and eaſie. The fourth ſigne is the maner of ending of it: for all *Diaries* are looſened and ended by a breath or vapor which cannot be perceiued, or by abundant vapours or moiſtures, or ſweet ſweates. The fift is the wanting of euill ſymptomes, and accidents: as be, vehement paine of the head, and ſtomacke, and other parts, abhorring of meates, vnquietneſſe, vnſatiable thirſt, and ſuch like. The ſixt common ſigne is, that all *Diarie* feauers be ingendred of an outward cauſe, which the Phiſitions at theſe dayes call a primitiue cauſe. But the particular ſignes, whereby each *Diaria* doth differ from other, be theſe that follow. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer, cauſed through watching, there chanceth to them a naughtie colour, and ſwelling of the face, heauie motion of the eyes, for they ſcant lift vp the eye liddes: there is moiſtneſſe of the haires of the eye liddes, and ſmall pulſes. For watching (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) ſeeing it letteth digeſtion, it ingendreth abundance of crude

Cauſe.

Signa.

Common ſignes ſixe.

1

2

A naturall vrine.

3

4

5

6

Particular ſignes of Diaries.

Signes of watchings,

crude and raw humours and vapours, it diminisheth the naturall heate, and looseneth the bodie, whereupon there follow the tokens aforesaid. To be short, watchings do reuoke and pull backe nature from digesting: therefore they cause great cruditie and rawnesse, as well in the braine, as in the rest of the bodie, whereupon also do chance the tokens aforesaid. The signes of a Diarie, caused of care and sorrow be these, leannesse of the bodie. If sorrow be the cause, it is clearer: if care, it is darker. Also hollownesse, and drinesse of the eies doth signifie both the said effects, but in thoughts and cogitations it is least, because the spirits and humours are lesse consumed. And it is most euident in sorrow. Also there follow these effects, a certaine vnaccustomed paleness or swartnesse, so that the skinne is destitute of her naturall colour. They which haue a Diarie through wrath or furious anger, haue neither hollownesse of eyes, nor euill colour of the face, but rather their eies seeme to sticke out further, and their face is red, and there is a loftinesse of the pulses. So also the signes of the rest of the Diaries being ingendred through perturbation of the mind, may chiefly be knowne by the pulses. For in sadnesse the spirits are carried inward, and therefore the pulses be small, feeble, and rare. In feare new begunne, the bloud and spirits runne inward, as it were to the spring head, and the mind is troubled. For nature being vexed, driueth the spirits hither and thither, which through mouing are inflamed, whereby the pulses are made swift, necessitie compelling them, and the minde being chafed maketh them vnequall and sharpe. In old feare (the spirits being dispersed, and vertue being feeble) it causeth such pulses, as we spake of before in sadnesse. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer through burning and heate of the Sunne, their skinne is hote and drie, their head seemeth to them to burne, because of the spirits inflamed in it. Their eyes waxe redder, and sometimes the veines in their eyes, temples and forehead, and in all their whole face, are stretched and puffed vp. They that haue this feauer through cold, are taken with heauie distillations, and reumes, because cold bindeth, and withholdeth and keepeth the fumous excrements within the skinne. Moreouer, the skinne is lesse hote, and all the body sheweth to haue a greater moisture, because the wonted fluxe is restrained and stopped through cold. Moreouer, there is no filthinesse in the face for the same cause. They which haue this feauer caused of wearinesse, their skinne is made drier then it is in other Diaries, because exercise drieth vp the bodie, and draweth out the moisture of it; also their pulses be vnlike: for they that haue vsed great exercises, and be wearied aboue measure, haue small pulses, because of imbecillitie and weakenesse of strength: but they that haue vsed small labours, their pulses be great, because their strength is not diminished yet. They which be taken with a *Diaria* feauer through drunkennesse or hunger, neede no signes to know the cause, for such causes may be knowne by telling of the sicke. They which haue this feauer through kernels, swellings or impostumations about the throate or mouth, or other where, they haue verie great pulses, and because of the feauerous heate, they be swift and often. Also there is equalitie of their pulses, because the instrument of mouing is not letted, neyther by obstruction, nor through abundance of humours, nor of sharpe vapours, nor by pressing together, vn-

Signes of care and sorrow.

Signes of anger.

Signes of sadnesse.

Signes of feare.

Signes of Sun-burning.

Signes of cold.

Signes of wearinesse.

Signes of drunkennesse and hunger.

Signs of swellings about the throate.

lesse the inflammation be very great. Their face is altogether red and swollen, because of the abundance of heate. And their vrine appeareth pale, because the choler that should colour the vrine is transferred to the botch or impostumation. The cure of all diarie Feauers is brought to passe by dyet, whose chiefe point in all diaries that be simple, consists in this, that you minister vnto them meates that ingender good humours, and that be easie of digestion, and apt to be distributed about the bodie. Giue vnto them that are burnt in the Sunne, and to them that be angred, a diet which doth coole and moist. And vnto them that are cold, giue a diet that nourisheth lesse, and that doth heate moderately. Against watchings or sadnesse, or consuming with ouermuch care, vse a diet which can both moisten, and prouoke sleepe, that it may deliuer them from the drinesse that those euils haue caused, and also that it may recreate and refresh their strength. They that haue a Feauer of wearinesse, you must allow them to eate as much meate as they digest: for you must alwayes eschew crudities and rawnesse of the stomach. For the substance of the bodie being dissolued and dispersed with labour, must be repaired with much meate being easie of digestion. You must measure the quantitie of taking of meate, by the patients strength, age, naturall temperament, and custome of the sicke. Moreouer, by the time of the yeare, the region, and such other like. But those whose temperature of the bodie is very hote and drie, such you must feed with meate by and by at the first beginning of the fit. For in them the diarie feuer will change very swiftly into an acute and rotten feuer. Chiefly aboue other, they may be fed with a thinne diet, which haue a diarie caused of a botch or impostumation; for in them the substance of the bodie is not diminished. Wine that is white and thin is good almost for all diarie feauers, those which be properly named so, and do endure but twentie foure houres. For besides that it helpeth digestion, it also prouoketh vrine and sweate (as *Galen* saith.) But you may grant it more abundantly to the feauerous through watchings, sorrow, or care; because great abundance of the spirits is spent and consumed in them, which wine will easily and quickly restore in them againe. But to those that haue headach, whether they haue watched, or be feauerous by any other occasion, they must refraine from wine, because it pierceth the head quickely. And they that haue this feauer ingendred of great anger and fury, vnlesse they be altogether quiet from that perturbation, may haue no wine giuen to them; for the spirits and bloud are maruellously chafed, and boileth sore. Also you must driue from Wine those that be feuerous through the swelling of botches or kernels in the throte, vntill it be loosened: not, that it is so vnprofitable for the feauer, but that it hindereth the cure of the botch. For it increaseth the flowing of the humours into the grieued places, and so causeth inflammation, and thereby augmenteth the feauer. You must cure all simple Feauers that be diaries (as *Galen* witnesseth) with baths. Therefore who soeuer hath this Feauer, in the declination of the first fit, you must bring them into a bath: but yet all may not be bathed alike, nor all must vse the same parts of a bath. For they that haue this Feauer caused of botches or impostumations, may profitably tarrie in the ayre or fume of the bath; because it both ratifieth and maketh thinne the skinne, and also it prouoketh

Victus ratio.

Wine good for Diaries.

Curatio.

and

and enticeth ſweate out of the bodie. Neither doth it hurt thoſe patients with drineſſe, as it would do thoſe that haue this feauer ingendred of wearineſſe, watchings, cares, and other perturbations of the mind. For ſeeing their bodie is dried vp altogether by thoſe cauſes, they muſt be kept from the aire of the bath, leſt it augment their griefe. Therefore ſuch may tarry the longer in a bath of ſweete water being made hote, that through the moiſture of it, they may recouer the humiditie that is loſt, and is decayed in them. Afterward ſoft hands muſt rubbe them gently, with plentie of warme oiles, wherein there is no manner of reſtriction or binding. For this friction and rubbing doth moiſten, looſen, and ſoften the hard and fleſhie parts, and it diſſolueth and diſperſeth thoſe things which are contained in the pores and conduites of the bodie. They that haue this feauer cauſed through burning of the Sunne, you muſt cure them by and by in the beginning with cooling, and with many bathings of ſweete water, and onely with powring on a little oile, without friction or rubbing of it, for it raiſeth heate. Things that do coole the head being applied to it, be oile of Roſes, and of vnripe Oliues, and other which be rehearſed *in libro primo.* Theſe being firſt made cold, and then receiued with Wooll, and holden vp aloft, you muſt preſſe it with your hand, and let it droppe downe vpon the forepart of the head, and that continually, while the feauer doth decline: then afterward bring the ſicke into a bath. If anie perſon haue this feauer through cold, he muſt alſo be brought to a bath in the remiſſion of his fit, and his head muſt be nouriſhed both before and after the bathing with oile of *Ireos*, and *oleum Nardinum*, and ſuch like. For they that haue a feauer through this cauſe, haue need of medicines that can heate, and remoue conſtipation and binding. They that labour of a *Diaria* feuer through hunger, in the declination of the fit, you muſt bring them ſtraight vnto a bath, and powring vpon them much ſweete oile warmed, rubbe them ſoftly, and you muſt keepe them long in the water of the warme bath, that thereby the drineſſe which hunger hath cauſed in the body, may be corrected & amended by the oile and the bath. When they be come out of the bath, you muſt recreate and refreſh the ſtrength with conuenient meates, and then you muſt bring them againe to a bath, and when they come out againe, (the perturbation with their bathing being ceaſſed) you muſt giue them hote water to drinke, and by and by you muſt miniſter iuyce of Ptiſan, and ſometime they may take Lettuce, and they may eate fiſhes taken out of grauelly places, as being light meate, ſodden in a white broth: which, what it was in old time, *Galen* ſheweth in his fourth Booke, *De ſanitate tuenda.* If the feuer *Diaria* do chance through cruditie or rawneſſe of the ſtomach, you muſt firſt conſider, whether the wombe be ſoluble, or elſe coſtiue. If it be ſoluble, and thoſe things onely which be corrupt, do ſeeme to void forth, then you muſt waſh him, and nouriſh him in the remiſſion of the feauer; but not vnleſſe firſt you diligently behold and foreſee all things chancing to the ſtomacke. For if ſuch abundant emptying hath beene already, or doth now continue, ſo that the vertue and ſtrength of the ſicke is wearied, it is better to giue him meate, and waſh him both together. But you muſt diligently behold firſt thoſe things that be about the ſtomacke. You muſt vſe about the ſicke, if the emptying do endure no

longer, irrigations and sprinklings of the stomacke with oile of Wormewood, and other things which are rehearsed before in the third booke, in the chapter of weakenesse of the stomacke. But those things that be applyed to the stomacke, let them be well heate. For those things that be applyed bloudwarme do dissolue and loosen the strength of the stomacke. If the belly be altogether costiue, handle & feele the sides, and then the whole body, and consider whether the meat is descended into the small guts, or into the Colon. And if the meate abide yet still in the stomacke, let the sicke drinke much warme water, or put his finger or a feather downe into his throate, and vomite vp all that vexeth and troubleth him. Then you must foment and nourish his hypochonders and sides, and let him rest. But when the food is descended alreadie into the bowels, you must bid them lie with their face and stomacke downeward, and you must nourish the bellie and prouoke sleepe, for that digesteth cruditie maruellously. After sleepe to bring out excrements from the wombe, you must put in a suppositary, or cast an easie clister to loosen the wombe. They which haue a feauer caused through swelling of the kernels of the throte, in them you must first cure the bile or botch that caused the inflammation, after that sort that *Galen* teacheth in his Bookes *De medendi ratione*. When the fit declineth, they must be washed. Also they must be nourished with a thin and scarce diet, because in them the substance of their body is not lost. Also they must be kept from wine, for the causes aforesaid. And this sufficeth for the curing of a *Diaria* feauer, being so called *simpliciter*, without any addition.

Note.

Sleepe digesteth.

CHAP. III.

Of a Diarie lasting moe dayes.

Diaria pluriumdierum, Synochus non putrida.

THERE is another kind of Diaries, which is named *Diaria plurium dierum*, for no other cause but because it extendeth and continueth vnto the third day. It is otherwise called *Synochus non putrida*. The ancient Authors haue called this feauer *Diaria*, because it is of the same nature that right Diaries are of. For it endeth after the first fitte, if it be rightly and well handled This feauer is caused of thickning or stopping of the pores and passages of the skinne. That thickning (as *Galen* witnesseth) doth chance either because the small pores are stopped vp, or because they waxe narrower, or also because the body it selfe is moderately thicked; which is wont to chance through cold, or after a bath, or by a medicine that is very sharpe and restrictiue, or through burning of the Sunne, and other such like which can drie the skinne. This feauer may be knowne first by touching: for in them that haue it, the skin is felt harder, and more compact together then it is wont to be: Secundarily you may know this feauer by mouing of the heate: for at the touching it seemeth gentle, and easie; but afterward, if you hold still your hand longer, the heate is sharper. Thirdly you may know this feauer by the vrine, which is much altered from his naturall substance and colour: for the bloud doth not boyle very much, neither is there much choler ingendred, whereby the vrine should be made higher coloured. Fourthly you may know it by the bignesse of the body, which keepeth one state, and doth not fall away, because the thicknesse of the skin doth let the dissoluing of the vapours and moisture; and therefore also

Causæ.

Signa.
1
2
3
4

alſo the eyes are not hollow, nor drie, but more ſwollen, and full of moiſture, then they ſhould be naturally. Fiftly you may know it by the pulſe, which is equall, great, ſwift, frequent and vehement. They that be taken with this feauer, if you will cure them rightly and truly, you muſt let them bloud, and you muſt draw out ſo much bloud as the ſtrength of the patient will ſuffer. And know this for a ſurety, that vnleſſe you vſe this remedie to thoſe which by nature haue their bodie vnapt to breathe out vapours becauſe of abundance, it will come to paſſe, that either they ſhall be choked, or be in danger of often ſwounding, vnleſſe great ſtrength, or much ſweating, or large fluxe of bloud do deliuer them from death. The body being emptied by bloud-letting, ſhortly after miniſter meates and medicines which can cleanſe and ſcoure. The meates which can do this in feauers (as *Galen* witneſſeth) be *Ptiſan* and *Mulſa*. The medicines be *Ptiſan*, and *Oximel*, and things ſodden in *Mulſa*, as be Calamint, Hyſope, Origan, Serpillum, *Ireos*, and *Apium*. But all theſe be hotter then they ought to be, and therefore they inflame and kindle feauers, as alſo Wine doth. *Oximel* doth onely ſcoure and cleanſe ſtrongly, & doth not inflame and kindle feauers, ſo that it doth diſſolue thoſe things that be glutinous, clammy, tough and groſſe, and it deliuereth the conduits, pores and paſſages from obſtructions and ſtoppings. Obſerue and watch how much of the feauerous heate is diminiſhed by this diet. For if the third day in the morning, you ſee very little of the feauer left, and if there be no ſignes of rottenneſſe of humors in the pulſe, nor crudetie of rawneſſe in the vrine: if the ſuſpected houre wherein the feauer tooke the patient the firſt day, be after noone, you may boldly waſh the patient quickely long before ſixe of the clocke, but it is ſufficient if you end the waſhing three houres before. Likewiſe if you ſuſpect the tenth houre, you may waſh him the ſeuenth houre, for three houres or foure is ſpace enough betweene the bathing and the fitte. When the bodie hath beene heat in the bath, being firſt annoynted with ſweete oyle warmed, and rubbed very moderately and eaſily, then by and by it muſt be wiped without and waſhed. Theſe things following do ſcoure and cleanſe moſt moderately, that is, meale of *Eruum*, and of Barley, and alſo of Beanes. Moreouer, *Mulſa* which is waterie doth the ſame. Stronger things be, *Ireos*, roote of *Panax*, and *Ariſtolochia*, and *Mulſa* which is of a meane commixtion; but that *Mulſa* ſcoureth moſt of all that is pure, which is, when there is but a litle water mixed with Honey, ſo that the melted Hony, may eaſily enter into the ſmall pores of the skinne. Stronger ſcourers then theſe, be, the froth of Salt-peter, the Salt-peter it ſelfe, and then *Aphonitrum*: Sope is one of them that is able to ſcoure moſt of all. Moreouer, after a bath, you muſt giue the patient nothing but water, which hath had a litle *Apium* ſodden in it, although there be three houres ſpace betweene the bathing and the ſuſpected houres. But if the fit doth inuade the patient in the euening, or two houres ſooner, then you may waſh him in the morning, and giue him meate, but you muſt giue him onely iuyce of *Ptiſan*. Then if the ſuſpected houres bring nothing with them, you may waſh him againe, if you will, and giue him meate, but you muſt haue reſpect to the vrine and the pulſe. But if there chance any thing in the ſuſpected houres, you muſt conferre it with the fit, which you had the firſt day, and

Curatio.

Abſterſiue medicines.

Oximel.

then you must consider the vrine, and also the pulses. For all these will appeare to be in a meane temperature, when there is left but a litle obstruction. Wherfore you shall wash him the fourth day, and giue him meate, hauing respect to the aforesaid considerations: and you shal hope that nothing wil be left the fift day. But if there be great obstruction caused, that feuer is not of the kind of *Diary* feauers.

CHAP. III.

Of a rotten Feauer called Synochus.

SYNOCHVS in Greeke, is a *Feauer*, wherein one fit continuing perpetually from the beginning to the ending, remaineth many dayes, or else it is a feauer which is without all great mutation vntill the end of it. Hereupon it is called in Latine *continens Febris*, and in English it may be called, a constant and stable Feauer. There be three sundry differences of these constant feuers, as appeareth before in the exposition of feauers. This Feauer *Synochus putrida*, or *continens Febris*, is caused when all the humours do putrifie and rot equally together within all the vessels, and specially in the great vessels, which be about the arme-holes and the share; which is wont to chance, when a feauerous heate is retained and kept in of a vehement binding and stopping, which is within the body. For whatsoeuer things be hote and moist, and may hardly breathe or fume out, they putrifie and rot quickly and readily. Therefore this kinde of Feauer is not ingendred nor kindled in folke that be leane and slender, nor in them that haue a thinne and rare state of their bodie, nor in a cold temperament of the bodie, nor in a cold age: but for the most part it ingendreth in them which do abound with bloud, and in those that be hote, as well by their age and nature, as by exercises and diet, and specially it kindleth in them that be fleshie, grosse, and thicke bodied, or else in them that be stuffed with hote excrements. They which haue this feauer, their pulse is very great, vehement, quicke, frequent and equall. The constitution or substance of the arteries is neither harder nor softer, then it should be by nature: but the quickenesse and frequencie of it, is according to the greatnesse of the feauer, & these signes are common with the signes of the *Diaria plurium dierum*. But particularly in this Feauer, there be signes of rottennesse, & that as well in the vrine, as in the pulse, and by the qualitie of vnkind heate. The cure of this Feauer must be begunne with letting of bloud. And if vertue and nature be strong, and no other notable thing do stop or let it, you must draw bloud till he do faint & swound. For if the patient be strong, this is the chiefest remedie for this kind of Feuer (as *Galen* saith.) For first the body is turned into a contrary state, for it is cooled quickely through the fainting and swounding. As for cooling of the bodie, nothing can be found that is more pleasant, or more profitable, either for the sicke, or for nature. Moreouer, in such bodies, there chanceth of necessitie, loosenesse of the belly, or a laske, and oftentimes also vomiting of choler: which things, moisture or sweats do gather from the whole bodie. Therefore you shall do best by and by in these Feuers, not to marke the number of days past, but only to consider the strength of the patient. For if that he be safe & strong, you may let bloud, not only the sixt or seuenth day, but also

Continens febris.

Causæ.

Signa.

in

In the dayes following. But if you are compelled at any time to cure a patient, to whom not onely the remedy of bloud-letting hath beene pretermitted and kept back, but now also either through ignorance of Phisitians, or through feare of the sicke or his assistents, in processe of time, you are forbidden to let bloud, you must come to the ministring of cold things. But you must diligently discerne & consider before, how much hurt may chance by it. For if the hurt wil be small or none, minister very cold drink, as much as the sicke wil drinke, and you may be the more bold to do it, if the patient hath been vsed to drinke cold drinks. But if you feare that great discommodity would arise through it, you shall abstaine from it, and vse other remedies whereby obstructiõs may be taken away, and abundance auoided, and that the burning heate of the feauer may be cooled and eased The discommodities and hurts which do follow cold drinke ministred immoderately and out of time, be these: first because it prohibiteth and letteth grosse and clammy humors to be attenuated and digested, whether they haue ingendred obstructions or rottennesse, or inflammation, or impostume, or knobby hardnes, or such like effects. As often therefore as a feuer is kindled of such humors, cold things are not good for their auoyding: but to this feuer it bringeth much ease, because it quencheth the feuer that is alreadie kindled. But yet seeing the cause of the feuer remaineth still, of necessity an other feuer must be kindled new againe, and many times a worse then that which went before, because that the body is thickened through cold. And this is one discommodity not to be neglected. Another is, that cold things hurt many weake members of the patient whether they be weake by naturall distemperature, or by some vice that they haue gotten. So in some it hath bin found that their throte hath bin so hurt, that they could not swallow; in some the stomach, that they could scarce digest: in some the mouth of the stomach, or the liuer, or the gut Colon, or the lungs, or the midriffe, or the reines, or the bladder, or some other such like member, is so striken with cold, that it is made weake and vnable to do his proper action and office. Many by immoderate drinking of it out of time, haue by and by beene taken with difficulty of breathing and with crampe and trembling, and haue had hurt in all their sinews. Therefore to be short, in them that haue any swelling, or fleame, or bloud, or any knobby hardnesse, you may not giue cold water vnto them, nor yet to them that a raw humour doth hurt with obstruction or rottennesse. But if there be no such swelling as is aforesaid, and then you do perceiue euident signes of digestion and concoction in the vrine, and if there be no member so giuen to a cold temperature, that it might take hurt, then you may boldly giue cold water. Also if the sicke haue vsed to drinke cold water, you may more boldly minister it: for all the members haue learned before by experience to suffer it familiarly without hurt. The drinking of cold water is perillous in them that haue but litle bloud and flesh. Therefore by these things before rehearsed, it is euident to all men, that the chiefest remedies of these kindes of feauers called *Synochus putrida*, be these two, bloud-letting, & drinking of cold water; but bloud-letting may be vsed at any time, if the strength of the patient will suffer it, and drinking of cold water must be vsed when euident signes of concoction are seene in the vrine, when the feuer is greatest, and when you are compelled to leaue bloud-letting.

When cold things should be ministred.

Discommodities of cold drinke.

Of cold water.

Continens feuer hath two remedies chiefly.

You must note well the time when you should let bloud, and marke what went before, and what followeth. For if cruditie and indigestion of meats do go before, you must refraine so long time from bloud letting, as will suffice as well to digest the meate, as that the excrements may descend downe. But if there wil follow of necessity any fluxe and emptying, you must leaue so much bloud still, as will voyde by that fluxe. Therefore if at the time of bloud-letting the menstruis do chance to flow, or also that the hemorhoides do open and burst out, if you beholding the vehemency of the fluxe, shall thinke it to be sufficient to purge and empty out that which you require without any helpe, then you shal let nature work alone. But if you thinke it contrary, draw out so much bloud, that thereby vnder them both conioyned together, you may bring to passe your request and expectation. Let the diet in these feauers be chiefly this that followeth. In those that haue been let bloud, minister to them two houres after bloud-letting, iuyce of Ptisan, and command quiet and rest. And when they are awaked out of sleepe, minister againe Ptisan broth. In this diet the patient must persist and continue vntill the third day. You must note, that in these feauers called *Synochi*, the patients must be fed, at such time as haile folke are wont to eate, and when they feele most ease: for so they shall the easilier suffer and beare their foode. And if they be strong and lustie, and you looke for the vigour and state of the feauer straightway, the patient must vse a most thin and scarce diet. But contrariwise if he be weake and feeble, you cannot minister a thinne diet to him without perill. Therefore in giuing of meate to the patient, you must diligently foresee, and ponder his strength and abilitie. He that desireth to know more of this kind of feauer as touching the cure of it, let him reade *Galen in lib. 7. Therapeut. meth cap. 5.*

You may not let bloud on a full stomach.

Diet.

When the sicke should be fed.

CHAP. IIII.

Against continuall Feauers.

FEBRIS *Continua* in Latine. *Synechis* in Greek, in English it is called a continuall feuer: it is a feuer that leaueth not off altogether betweene the fits, but it hath a certaine sensible slaking of heate betweene the fits. A continuall feuer is cauled, when one onely humor doth putrifie and rot within the vessels. And there be three differences of this feauer, according to the diuersitie of the humor that putrifieth in the veines: for if choler do putrifie within the vessels, it ingendreth a continuall Tertian, which the Greekes call *Causos*, in Latine it is called *ardens febris*, in English a burning feuer. If fleame do putrifie and rot within the veines it ingendreth a continuall Quotidian: but if melancholy do putrifie within the veines, it kindleth a continuall Quartane. There is not a more certaine signe of a continuall feuer, then that none of them do come to intermission and slaking altogether betweene the fits, vntill the feuer be quite ended and quenched. Their other signes are common with the intermitting feauers: for an exquisite burning feuer, or continuall Tertian, hath all the other signes of an exquisite intermitting Tertian: differing onely in this, that it doth not inuade and begin with vehement cold and stiffenesse, neither doth it end in quiet and rest. Likewise a continuall Quotidian hath all the signes of an exquisite intermitting Quotidian, but it onely differeth from it, because it doth

Febris continua.

Causa.

Three differences of continuall feauers.

Signa.

not intermit and slake betweene the fits. In like manner the continuall Quartanes haue the signes of intermitting Quartanes, but that they come not to quiet and rest betweene fittes. Seeing it is euident by that which we haue said, that continuall feuers be of the kinde of rotten feuers, it is necessarie for him that will cure them commodiously and rightly, first to stop and let the putrifiing & rotting. Therfore two things must be taken heed of at the first, whereof one is the feauer, another is the rottennesse. And in the feauer you must also regard two things, the one, that the portion of the feuer, which is now kindled and inflamed, may be cured and quenched: the other is, that the portion of the feuer which is not yet kindled may be letted and stopped. Also two things must be considered concerning the rottennes: one is, that the rottennes alreadie ingendred, may be healed: the other is, to let and stop that which is readie to ingender putrifaction. That which is readie to ingender, is caused through perspiration and breathing out, if it be impedite and letted. So that of this other two considerations do spring: first, that the humour which is withholden, may be purged and emptied out: secondarily, to prohibite and keepe in that which is to be withholden and kept backe: it wil be prohibited with those remedies which do heale obstructions. Againe note, that the obstructions which are ingendred must be cured, and they which are to come must be letted and driuen backe away. You must cure that obstruction which is already ingendred, by those things that do loosen, deliuer and open obstructions. And you shall driue away and stop the obstructions which are to come, if you bridle and stop the fluxe of obstructiue and stopping humors: whereby it appeareth euidently, that the last thing which we haue found in this *Compendium* of curing, must be done first in the working of the cure. Seeing therefore that (when we haue examined the matter particularly) there be fiue things in continuall feauers from the which considerations in curing be gathered, that is, the feauer, rottennesse, perspiration impedite and letted, obstruction, and abundance of obstructiue humours, you must begin the cure with the last consideration. Therefore seeing that the abundance of humours that cause obstructions, doth require purging and emptying out, in the beginning, if vertue be strong in the patient, and if time of the yeare, and his age, and other things do agree, you must let him bloud. You must then specially let him bloud, when the whole body swelleth more then it was wont to do, or when the veins be swollen vp, or stretched out. for that doth signifie abundance of bloud. When the multitude of humours are voided and emptied out, you must next come to the curing of obstructions, and you must minister medicines, whereby obstructions may be taken away. But because most of those medicines be hote, it is to be feared, lest they should increase both their rottennesse, and also the feauer. Therefore you must vse to minister those things that can deliuer the patient from obstruction without heate. What those things be, we haue declared before in the second chapter of this Booke. When those humours that caused the obstructions be diuided, cut, and scoured, you must aslay to auoid & emptie them out by the wombe or guts, by the vrine, and by sweats. But seeing those things which should bring this to passe, be hote, of necessity the rottennesse and the feauer must be increased by them, therefore, as much as we may, we must

A compendium of curing in feauers.

There be fiue things to consider in feauers.

Curatio.

Bloud-letting.

How obstructions should be healed.

Bathing doth coole.

labour to choose such a thing as doth heate but little, or if we can find any that doth not heate at all (as in this case a bath) you must vse that. *Galen* teacheth *in libro tertio De sanitate tuenda, capite tertio*, that a bath can do this. For he saith, that the strength of sweet waters made hote, if they be temperate, be hote and moist, but if they be warmed, they be cold and moist. And a little after he saith, A bath if it be discreetly vsed, mollifieth the hard and stretched parts, & it bringeth forth excrements or moltings, if any sticke within the skinne. These things being done, and those humours being scoured out, which were compact together in the skinne, so that the obstruction and perspiration impedited be taken away, you must come to the cure of the rottennesse. Therefore at this time you must first corroborate and restore the strength, whereby it may exuperate and ouercome the rottennesse, and be able to digest the humours. And you shall heale the putrifaction and rottennesse, if you do void and emptie out by all meanes that which is corrupted and putrified. That which is left still within, you must bring to an exquisite meane by moderate motions, and coole breathings: and you shall worke the emptying out of your humours by vrine, egestions, vomiting and sweats. Last of all, you must proceed to the curing of the feauer, which must be done by cooling things. For euerie feauer, inasmuch as it is a feauer, must be remedied by cooling and moistning things. But to know how each of these things should be rightly done, it is partly rehearsed before, and partly it shall follow hereafter. In continuall feuers, whose state or vigor of the disease will come at the fartheſt within seuen dayes, if their strength be lusty, and their age agreeing to it, you must ordaine them a verie exquisite and thinne diet. But in the continuall feauers, whose vigour, force, and state is longer then seuen dayes after the beginning, or if vertue be weake and feeble, at the first you must feede them liberally: when the vigour and state draweth neare, their diet must be more scarce. But in the state and vigor of the disease, you must feed them most thinly and scarcely. Afterward againe, augment his diet, and feed him most, increasing his diet in like case as the vigour and state of the feauer doth diminish, as *Hippocrates* saith in the first Section of his Aphorismes.

Cure of putrifaction.

Cure of the feauer.

Diet.

CHAP. VI.

Of a burning Feauer.

Continua Tertiana.

ARDENS *Febris* in Latine, *Causos* in Greeke, in English it is called a continuall Tertian or a burning feauer: it is of the kinde of continuall feuers, as is declared in the former chapter: and it is caused when choler putrifieth and rotteth within the veines. Therefore it agreeth with an exquisite intermitting Tertian, because it is ingendred of the same humour that the other is. But yet it differeth from it in that, that in an intermitting Tertian the choler is carried all ouer the bodie: but in a burning feauer the choler is contained in the vessels together with the bloud. Hereupon it cometh that the fittes in a burning feauer do not intermit nor slake. But when the choler in them is stirred most vehemently, and is driuen about by nature waxing strong, then there is wont to come vehement cold and rigour, and the feuer endeth. Which *Hippocrates* declareth 4. *Aphoris.* 58. saying, He that is taken with a burning feauer, if

Difference betweene a burning feuer & a Tertian.

if it be vehement cold, & rigor come vpon it to him, he is deliuered from the diſeaſe. A burning feauer is knowne by theſe ſignes: their tongue that haue this feuer is drie, groſſe, rough and blacke; there is gnawing of the ſtomacke, intollerable thirſt, watchings, and alſo many times rauing, and egeſtions of the wombe be liquid and pale: which ſignes *Hippocrates* rehearſeth *in libr. 4. Vict. Acuterum.* They which haue this feauer, let them lie in a cold place, and in a ſweete ayre, from whence pure winde commeth. Alſo let him lie in a ſoft feathe bed, which muſt be made often, let the couerings be very thin and cleane: which muſt be continually changed, & let his bed be of a great wideneſſe, that he may eaſily moue his members that be hot to other cold places of the bed. And if the aire be quiet, ſtirre it with a fanne, or ſuch like. You muſt giue him meates that haue vertue to coole and moiſten, as is, Lettuce, Gourds, Sorrell, Ptiſan broath, and ſuch like. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle Cinamon hath beene ſodden, or Veriuice. If the ſicke haue vſed it, or if no other thing do let it, after meate giue him cold water a ſpoonefull or two, or mixe Iulep of Violets, or ſome Iulep of Roſes, or ſuch like with decoction of Barley. Moreouer, the ſtomacke muſt be refreſhed with iuice of Roſes: and other cooling things muſt be vſed, as ſtrewing of the floore with greene Vine leaues, & with the leaues & floures of Roſes, water Lillies, and Violets, and by ſprinkling and powring often of cold water on the floore vp & down. For the cure, in the beginning ſtraightway, you muſt cut a veine, if age, time, vertue, and ſtrength do permit it. Hereupon *Hippocrates* ſaith in his Aphoriſmes thus: In great burning feuers, if bloud be drawne till the heart faint, by and by the ſtate of the whole bodie is cooled, and the feuer is quenched. In many alſo a laxe is cauſed, and ſweats flow forth. Afterward let the breaſt and ſtomach be nouriſhed with Dates braied with oile of Roſes, or of Quinces, or of water Lillies. Alſo other cooling medicines be good, as be Vine buds braied, Endiue, Succory, Knotgraſſe, Lettuce, Sorrel, Vine leaues, & ſuch like. Alſo a fine napkin folded together and dipped in oile and water made hote, and applied to the breaſt and ſtomach, it ceaſſeth the burning of feuers maruellouſly. Alſo a hādfull of wooll ſoked in water and oile of Roſes heat greatly, & being holden vp aloft to drop vpon the breaſt, doth eaſily quench the vehemency of the burning heate. Theſe things muſt be hote, for warme things do diſſolue the ſtrength & vigor of the members. Neither ſhall you raſhly alſo commixe Vineger againſt vehement burning feauers. You may not apply epithemes nor other cooling medicines in the beginning and increaſing of the fit: for at that time the effect of the bodie is driuen about, & the heat is in the inward members: therfore cold things applied do driue the heate to the innermoſt parts, and be an occaſion of greater hurt: for fierie heate being oppreſſed and ſtopped within, it raiſeth a more vehement & burning heate againe. Therefore in the force, ſtrength, and vigor of the fits, when the heate is alreadie ſpread ouer all the bodie, theſe cold things may be well applied: for then the reſidue of the vniuerſall heate which remaineth about the inward members may be really quenched. Hereupon the patient will begin to breathe better, & ſhalbe troubled with an eaſier thirſt. Alſo ſome by breathing out of a dewie vapor do fall on ſleep. The epitheme which you muſt vſe in this feuer, is this: ℞. of Roſe water, and Lettuce water,

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

Outward medicines.

Epithema.

ana ℥.iij.ß. waters of Endiue and Succory, ana ℥.j.ß. good Vineger, ℥.j. all the three Sanders, of each, ℥ ß. seed of Purslaine, gra. iiij. commixe all together, and make an epitheme. Moreouer, when the vigour and strength of the sickenes is at hand, you may safely minister pure cold water, if none of those things which be rehearsed in the third chapter do let it. And if feare of any hurt, although it be very little, do let it, you shall minister the first draught retrained after this sort. Take one cup full of temperate water, and commixe fiue cup fuls of pure cold water with it, and so minister it to suspected bodies. To conclude, in the curing of burning feauers, you must needs bring to passe one of these things, that eyther the cholericke humours may be voided and emptied out, or else that they may be quenched within. They may be voided and emptied out by sweats, vomits and egestions. They may be quenched by drinking of cold water, wherewith very often great burning feauers haue beene cured quite and cleane. A bath of sweete water is good onely to them which haue a burning feauer without any swelling, tending to the nature of an inflammation or *Erysipela*: but if signes of concoction do appeare in the vrine, it is much more conuenient for the patient. Let the sicke which in a vehement burning feauer desireth to vse a cold bath, be yong, and of a moderate state of the body, as also *Hippocrates* witnesseth and monisheth. Neither let it be done to him in Sommer time, and in hote times of the yeare, and in the vigour and strength of the feauer, and let it be one that hath vsed to wash in cold water in his health. But when the feauer waxeth more moderate, and vertue is stronger, and if there be signes of concoction together with it, a bath of sweete and temperate water is sufficient, and doth good. For annointings, oile of Cammomill doth good, specially if the weather be cold. But the abundance of matter whereof you should make competent remedies against burning feauers, you shall finde in the chapters following.

When cold water may be ministred.

Nota.

To whom a bath is good.

Fictions.

CHAP. VII.

Of a pure intermitting Tertian.

Exquisita Tertiana febris intermittens in Latine, an exquisite and pure intermitting Tertian feauer in English, it is cauled of choler carried by the sensible parts of the bodie, and by the proper nature of it, it remaineth pure, sincere, and vnmixed. Therfore seeing it is ingendred of choler that is sincere and pure, and not commixed with any other humor, it is called of the Phisitions exquisite. This feuer ingendreth in persons that be cholericke by nature, and in their flourishing age, in Sommer time, in hote and drie regions, and when the weather is hote and dry, and in bodies oppressed with labors, watchings, cares, deep thoughts, and burning of the Sunne. Also this feuer by and by in the beginning, and in euery fit causeth a vehement cold, rigour and stiffenesse and by this meanes it differeth from a burning feauer, as is before rehearsed. And the cold in this feauer differeth from the cold in a Quartane feauer, thus, because in this feauer the patient thinketh his body were pricked, and as it were vlcerated. But in a Quartan the cold seemeth to the patient, like the cold that haile folke feele in Winter time. Therefore a Tertian feauer doth not chance without vehement rigour and cold, pricking and wounding in the flesh: but a Quartane

Cause.

Signs.

Differences of coldnesse in a Tertian and Quartane.

Quartane feauer doth not by and by the first day inuade the patient with vehement rigour and cold. For as it proceedeth forward and increaseth: so also the rigour and cold increaseth, and the patient doth not feele pricking, but rather feeleth great cold, and as it were nipped to the bone with it. There is in a Tertian feauer, an exact and perfect order and equalitie of the pulses: but yet in the increasing of the fits, the pulses are raised and prouoked to vehemencie, greatnesse, and frequencie. Moreouer, in the vigour and force of the feauer, it causeth thirst, and burneth vp the patient, so that he casteth off the clothes, to make him bare and naked, and he breatheth largely and often, and he bloweth out as it were a flame of fire, and requireth to drinke cold water. Afterward the heate spreadeth equally all ouer the bodie, so that the breast is no better then the extreme parts and members. And when you lay your hand vpon him, at the first touching you shall feele much gnawing and biting heate, bursting out as it were with a certayne vapour and moysture: but not long after your hand will vanquish it, if you do hold it still. Moreouer, there followeth this feuer vomiting of choler, and the belly is laxatiue, and they pisse vrine that is cholericke, subrufe, and somewhat yellow, and moderately thicke. Also their vrine hath by and by a white cloud, or a laudable sublation in the midst. If the vrine be redder, and if in the first fitte there do appeare neither sublation in the midst, nor cloud, the feuer will extend and remaine seuen fits. Moreouer, this feauer leaueth off till another fit, when the fit hath endured the space of twelue houres at the most. For this is the longest time of a fit in true & pure Tertians. But sometime the fit is shorter then the aforesaid space of time, hauing difference more or lesse according to the quantitie and qualitie of choler within, or because of the strength of the patient, or through the present affect of the patients bodie at that present time. Therefore we name that an exact and pure Tertian feuer, which endeth his fit within twelue houres: but that which hath a longer fit, is not called an exquisite Tertian, but an extended and stretched out Tertian. And if the feuer doth inuade the patient daily with vehement rigour and cold, and with the signes aforesaid of the vrine and pulses, as also of other things afore rehearsed, then it is called *duplex Tertiana*, a double Tertiã. But as for an exquisite Tertian, because it is ingendred of pure choler moued about, you must moisten it, and coole it, as much as you may possibly by all meanes. For this humour (as *Galen* witnesseth) is the hotest and driest among all the other that be in the bodie. Let the sicke lie therefore in a cold place, against a sweete and pleasant ayre. Also you may not suffer many to be in the house, because they should make it hote with their breath. Let the floore be sprinkled often with cold water, and with Rose water, Violet water, and such like. And strew on the floore Willow leaues, floures of Roses, Violets, water Lillies, and such like. Let the patient vse meates that haue vertue and power to coole and moisten. And you must giue him so much of them as he can verie well digest. Let his pot-herbs be Orach, Beets, and Spinach, Mallows, Lettuce, Gourds, Sorrel, Endiue, Succory, and such like. Also giue him *Ptisan* broth, and soupings made with Alica. Of fishes, let him eate such as liue in grauelly places: for such, besides that they do coole and moisten, they ingender good iuice and are easie to digest. Of fowles, let him eate them that be of soft flesh, as be chic-

Signes of a double Tertian.

Victus ratio.

kens and Partrich, Doues, yong Sparrowes, Feasant, and such like: but of those that haue not soft flesh, let him eate their wings, which are without excremēts, because of their often exercises. Also he may eate Cocks stones, & Sowes feete, for they be without excrements, because they are exercised: and their braines, specially if they be well sodden. Also if you minister the flesh of Pigs well sodden, you shall not hurt, for so it may the easilier be consumed of the stomach. Also rere Egs, which be but onely hote through, may be suffered, specially the yolkes of them: for they be easier to digest than the whites, and they do coole meanely. You may suffer him to eate fruits which be not verie hard to digest, as be, Cherries, Prunes, Mulberies. He must abstaine from Honey, because it will easily turne into choler, and from Mustard, salt meates, and all sharpe things. Also you must keepe the sicke altogether from wine, vntill the disease be digested, and let him drinke in the meane season water wherein a little Cinamon hath bin sodden. Or let him vse to drinke this: ℞. Iulep of Violets, ℥.iiij. water wherein a little Cinamon hath bin sodden, ℔ j. commixe them together, and powre them out of one vessell into another, often. But when the disease beginneth to digest, you must giue him in the beginning a little wine that is thin & alayed with water, & giue him more liberally of it when the end of the disease is at hand. This is the order of diet for many, but not of all men: for they that are not daintily brought vp, but do liue hardly, and are strong of nature, you must ordaine for them a thinner diet, that is, let them be contented with Ptisan broth vntill the iudgement of the feauer. As for sleeping, they may not sleepe in their fits, but rather let them watch, that thereby the bloud, and spirits, and naturall heate may be letted and stopped from creeping to the inward members, and contrariwise may thereby be drawne to the outward parts: for otherwise the feuers will scarse be dissolued, and they will come very slowly to their state, & fluxes will increase and be multiplied: when the fitte is ended, sleepe is not hurtfull. The patient must eschue exercises, and all other vehement motions. Also let him refraine perturbations of the mind, specially anger, feare, sorrow, and such like. But you may not onely vse the diet before prescribed, but also you must minister medicins to the patient which can coole and moisten. In the beginning to quench the boiling of choler, and to mitigate the cholerous heate, let him vse this decoction: ℞. of floures of Violets, Borage, and red Roses, ana. M.j. ß. floures of water Lillies, M.ß. Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, ana. M.j.ß. of Raisins picked, ℥ j. Damascene Prunes, number ij. seeds of Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, Purcelain, Gourds, ana. ʒ.iij. of the roote of Succory, ʒ.vj. seethe all together in ℔ ij. of well water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the liquor of that decoction sweet with Sugar, and purifie it with the white of an Egge; then adde to it sirupe of Endiue with the broad leaues & Iulep of Violets, ana. ℥ ij.ß. commixe them together, and make a potion, and let the sicke drinke thereof euery morning fasting, ℥.iiij.ß. But if the sicke be more delicate, and do abhorre potions, let him take daily of this medicin: ℞. of conserues of Violets, Borage, Roses, water Lillies, & Succory, an. ʒ.ß. *Electuarium de prunis Damascenis* without *diagridiū* ʒ.vij. *diarrhodon abbatis* ℥.j. *Diatriō santalon* in powder, ℥ ij. of Iulep of violets as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make a loch. Moreouer, you must remoue the

Potus.

No sleepe in fittes.

Curatio.

A decoction to digest choler.

Mistura.

the cause of the feuer: which you shall do if you emptie out the cholerick humor. Therfore you must empty out the choler which is crept into the stomach, by prouoking vomite. By what means you may prouoke vomite it is declared in the former Books. The choler which is caried downward, it is best to empty it out by a laske of the wombe, which also is wont to come sometime of it selfe in an exquisite Tertian. Vomiting should be prouoked chiefly in the beginning of the fit, for at that time nature is wont to thrust in choler thither: as in the declination and slaking of the fitte, nature thrusteth it to the neather parts and to the skinne. Therefore at that time you must cast in an easie and soft clister, that it may both bring out the choler easily, and that also by his gentlenesse, the sharpenesse of the choler which is wont to vexe and gnaw the guts, may be stopped and broken. Make therefore such a clister: ℞. of Mallowes, leaues of purple Violets, Mercury, Endiue, and Succory, ana M.j. seede of Purslaine, and of Melons, ana. ℥.ij.ß. seethe them all in a sufficient quantity of water, till the third part be consumed: straine it, and adde to the licour of decoction, of the marrow of *Cassia fistula* newly drawne, ℥ j. oile of Violets, ℥ iij. common salt, ℥.j.ß. commixe them and make a clister. Also you must empty out choler by prouoking vrine, and sweats, specially if it be carried thither by nature. This thing you may well do by medicines that prouoke vrine, but not by all such, but by those that can do it without drying. Therefore you must prouoke vrine with potions wherein *Apium* or Dill hath beene infused or wet. And if signes of concoction do appeare, then you may minister Wormewood safely, which is a speciall remedy for the stomach, when it is vexed with choler: specially, if you take of the tops of it as much as is sufficient, & infuse it in *Melicratum*, that is, wine and hony sodden together: for it purgeth choler out of the wombe and stomacke by egestion, and out of the veines it purgeth it by vrine. You shall prouoke sweating with this and such like medicines: ℞. roots of *Apium*, Sperage, and Succory, ana. ℥.ß. of the seeds of Parsley, Fennell, *Bruscus*, and Louage, ana. ℥.ij. blacke Cicers, ℥.iij. Dill, M. ß. seethe all in sufficient quantity of water that runneth, vnto the third part: then let it be strained, and make it sweete with Sugar, adding to it *Oximel compositum*, ℥.ij. and make a potion. Or beate all the aforesaid things into powder, and minister of it euery time, ℥.j. or ʒ.j.ß. with ʒ iij of *Ox mel simplex*. These medicines which prouoke sweate, must be ministred in the declination of the fitte, or on that day that the sicke hath not his feauer. For this purpose also annoyntings with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, and such like, are not a little profitable. Moreouer, hote baths of sweete and potable water do profite two wayes, both because they prouoke out some of the choler, as also because of their qualities, they do much good: for such baths do moisten and coole. But baths of sea-water, salt-water, salt-peter water, and brimstone water, they bring out more choler, but they profite much lesse then potable waters. Therefore it is best not to call them profitable, seeing they do more hurt by drying, then they do good by emptying and voyding: for the remedies must haue contrarie qualities to the humours that haue inuaded against nature: for that doth more good then the emptying by any meanes (as *Galen* witnesseth *ad Glauconem*) by the which words it is euident, that emptyings & purgings in an exquisite Ter-

Vacuation.

Vomitus.

Clyster.

Prouokers of vrine.

Absynthium.

To prouoke sweate.

Bathes of sweet waters.

tian, do but litle please *Galen*: specialy those emptyings that are done by bloud-letting, and by a vehement purging medicine; for all such kind of purging medicines be of a hote faculty and quality. But seeing this feuer is the hotest of all other, therefore it rather desireth to be cooled and moistned, then to be vehemently purged. It rather permitteth and requireth emptyings by other means, and specially when nature laboreth and assayeth to driue out the humor. Also nature must be holpen, if of her selfe she be not able to performe her intent. As for a bath, this is the effect and scope of it, thereby to haue the body wet and moistned. Therfore you must strew in, neither Salt peter, nor Salt, nor Mustard seed, but it is good to powre much oile, being made hote, vpon the patient, and to bring him into the bath, and to wash him. And if he will swimme in it, you may suffer him to do it as long as he can. And they that are delighted in bathing, if you suffer them to wash twise in a day, you shall not do amisse. But you must haue this in memorie, that it be done opottunately, and in due time; for if signes of concoction do now appeare, then if you wash him oftner, you shall not erre from *Galens* doctrine.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Against the bastardly Tertian.

A Bastardly Tertian is caused, when choler is mixed for the most part with fleame. Hereupon it commeth that all the signes of the feauer do not declare the nature of pure and sincere choler, as in an exquisite Tertian they do. In this feauer also the time of the fits doth exceed twelue houres, neither is this iudged in seuen fittes, as an exquisite Tertian is. Moreouer, in this bastardly Tertian, the signes of concoction do appeare more slowly, neyther is there such great heate in the vigour and state of this feauer, as in the exquisite Tertian. Besides all these, it doth not end with abundance of sweat, as an exquisite Tertian doth. Therefore the diet in this feauer must not be altogether cooling and moistening, as it is in an exquisite Tertian: but let it haue some power and vertue to heate, cut, and diuide; for the choler in this feauer is grosser, neither is it so hote. They therefore that haue this feauer, may profitably take broth of *Ptisan*, wherein some Pepper is put, and you must giue them *Mulsa* to drinke, wherein hath beene sodden, Hysope, Origan, and Spikenard. Also you must giue them soupings and broths easie to digest. Moreouer, seeing the time of the fit is long, and so endureth a whole day, you may not giue him meate daily, but each other day: for by this meanes we shall beware and take heede, that Nature be not called away from her office and worke, and so the disease should be increased: for you must onely take heede that the disease do not increase, and that the strength of the sicke, which must striue and fight a great while, be not weakened, debilitate, and cast downe. But it is hard to keepe and saue both, because hunger, looke how much it profiteth to the digestion of the disease, and so much the more it hurteth and debilitateth the strength. And meates, looke how much they increase the patients strength, and so much they hinder and let concoction and digestion. To conclude therefore, you must vse hunger to them that be strong and lustie, and their disease hard to digest: and you must feede them more largely whose strength

Causa.

Signa.

Diet.

ſtrength is debilitate and weake, and their diſeaſe not ſtubburne for to digeſt. Let their drinke be water, in which a little Cinnamon, and ſome Hyſope or Origan hath beene ſodden. Quiet and reſt is good for them, but exerciſes do hurt them: for this doth call forth outwardly nature, and naturall heate, which could concoct and digeſt crude matter within. For the cure, if you may let the patient bloud, you may not faile to do it, but by and by in the beginning, if the age, time, region, and ſtate of the bodie will permit it: you muſt draw out ſo much bloud as the preſent ſtate of the bodie requireth and will ſuffer. By the preſent ſtate, vnderſtand the ſtate as wel of the patient as of the diſeaſe: for the ſicke, if he be ſtrong, may ſuffer bloud-letting, if not, the contrary: if the diſeaſe remaine, and be cauſed through abundance of humours, it requireth bloud-letting, not a meane quantity, but according to the abundance of them. But when the diſeaſe will endure long through cruditie and lacke of digeſtion, you muſt draw out but a meane quantity of bloud, that the ſtrength of the patient may be kept and endure vntill the end of the diſeaſe. Alſo you muſt caſt into the belly not very eaſie cliſters, that they may bring forth the ſluggiſh and hurtfull matter, and make them thus. ℞. Mallowes, Mercurie, leaues of Violets, Origan, and Hyſope, ana M.j. ſeed of *Cardamum.* ℥.iij. ſeethe all together in ſufficient quantitie of water, and adde to the liquor of that decoction, *Benedicta laxatiua, Hierapicra*, ana. ℥ iij. *Mel roſarum*, ℥. vj. oyles of Violets and Cammomill, ana ℥.j ß. common ſalt, ℥ ij. and make a cliſter. Alſo you muſt miniſter to the patient, decoctions made of ſuch things as can cut, and diuide, and alſo prouoke vrine without any great heating and drying: as is this: ℞. roots of *Apium*, Fennell, and Succory, ana ℥.j. Endiue, Succory, Origan, and Hyſope, ana M.j. Lettuce, M.j.ß. the foure common cold ſeeds, ana. ℥.j. ſeedes of Fennell & *Apium*, ana. ℥.j.ß. ſeethe all theſe in two pounds of water, vntil the third part be conſumed. Then ſtraine it, and make the liquor ſweet with Sugar, and purifie with whites of Egges the ſtrained liquor. Then adde to it *ſirupus acetoſus ſimplex*, *Mel roſarum* clarified, *Oximel ſimplex*, ana. ℥ j ß. and make a potion, whereof miniſter daily euery morning ℥.iiij. After theſe you muſt miniſter ſuch medicines as do empty the belly gently, as is infuſion of Rubarbe, *Electuarium è Pſyllio*, and *Diaphœnicon*, and ſuch like, which are able by themſelues, or mixed with other, to bring and purge out choler together with fleame: whereof we haue rehearſed many in our former Bookes. After the ſeuenth day, you may miniſter continually decoction of Wormewood: alſo *Oximel* drunk alone helpeth many. Alſo vomiting after meate is ſo healthfull and profitable to theſe old and inueterate feauers, that many (as *Galen* witneſſeth *in lib.* 1. *ad Glauconem*) haue beene cured with this one remedy. For a feauer which hath continued long, doth ingender and breed many flegmaticke excrements in the ſtomacke, which being caſt out by vomiting, the patient is deliuered from the feauer. Alſo the ſides muſt be nouriſhed with hote medicins, that thereby the winds and bolning which ſtretcheth them out, may be diſſolued and diſperſed. Among other this foment is very good. ℞. flowers of Cammomill, Melilote, and Dill, ana. M.j. Wormewood, M.ß. red Roſes, M.j. Lineſeed, and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥ iij. boile theſe in ſufficient quantitie of water, vnto the third part, then dip a ſponge in it, and nouriſh the ſides there-

Potus.

Curatio.

Bloud-letting.

Clyſter.

Decoctum.

Purgatio.

Abſynthium.

Oximel.

Vomitus.

Fomentum.

with. Also it profiteth to annoynt the stomach with this or such like oyntment:

Vnguentum. ℞. oiles of Masticke, Roses and Cammomill, ana. ℥.iij. of Cloues, ℥ j ß. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Moreouer, bathing in this feauer is not healthfull, before that signes of concoction do appeare, because crude and raw humors, which should be digested within, are brought out by it to the skinne, and so it doth increase obstructions.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a Quartane Feauer.

Cause. AN exquisite Quartane is another kind of the intermitting feuers, which is ingendred onely of a melancholy humour, putrifying and rotting without the vessels. This feauer doth not by and by in the beginning inuade the patient with vehement rigour and cold the first day, but it is like to them that are cold in Winter through vehement frost: but when the feauer hath continued and proceeded forward and is increased, then also the rigour and cold increaseth with it, and waxeth greater and stronger daily, till the whole disease be come to his full increase and force. And the cold doth not seeme to the patient as it were pricking and vexing the skinne, as it doth in an exquisite Tertian, but there is caused vehement cold, and as it would breake the bones. Their pulses are very rare and slow in the beginning of the fits, but when the feauer is in his full force, or also when it is increased, then of necessitie the pulses are swift and often: but yet they do keep their naturall slownesse and rarity, if you consider the swiftnesse and frequencie coming in the fits. But the mouing of the heate, the increasing, and the vigor and force of this feuer is cleane contrarie to that in Tertian feauers. For in this feauer the melancholy humor is kindled and inflamed by little and little, and as it were a stone, or a shell, or a bone, or some other such cold and drie bodie. And when that anie flame or heate is kindled in it, then in the fit it leaueth nothing fumous or smoakie, but it burneth and consumeth it. And therefore there is longer ceasing and intermission of this humour betweene the fits, then there is in fleame. And the intermission and ceasing betweene the fittes seemeth to be exquisite and pure without any griefe at all: because in this feauer, looke how much melancholie is kindled and inflamed, and so much in the time of the fit is dispersed, consumed and drawne out cleane. Moreouer, in a Quartane feauer there followeth not vomiting vp of choler. Their vrines are thinne, white, and waterie, and as it were strained from a grosse matter. Also this feauer beginneth specially in Autumne and Harueſt, comming after erraticke feauers. But you must behold both the nature of the patient, and his temperament, also his diet vsed before, his age, the region, and other such like. For if those things be cold and drie, then you may looke more surely, that a Quartane feauer will ensue, specially if at any time Quartanes be rife among the people. They that haue a Quartane feauer, in the beginning must be handled and ordered moderately and gently, neither may they be vexed with anie vehement medicine, or by vehement emptying and purging, for the humour which causeth the Quartane is stubburne to be drawne and handled. Therefore in the beginning, and before it be digested, it will hardly and scarcely follow the medicine that

Signa.

Cause of long intermission in Quartane fits.

Curatio.

that draweth it: and that becauſe of his groſſeneſſe and coldnes, and alſo becauſe it ſtoppeth the narrow wayes, by the which it ſhould paſſe out. Yet if bloud do ſeeme to abound much, then you muſt take away that. And if when you haue ſtriken a veine, the bloud that commeth out do appeare blacke and groſſe, as for the moſt part it doth in diſeaſes of the Spleene, you may then boldly draw it out. For great abundance of bloud being drawne out, nature will get the vpper hand in digeſting the reſt of the humour, and will make the feauer ſhorter. You muſt cut the innermoſt veine of the left arme, which is called *Lienaris vena*, the Spleene veine, or *Mediana*: for this veine emptieth out the melancholy humour, ſpecially from the Spleene, which is wont to be diſeaſed in a Quartane feauer: but if when the veine is ſtriken, the bloud doth appeare thinne, and yellowiſh, you muſt ſtoppe it by and by: for ſuch an humour is not vnprofitable in a Quartane, but it correcteth and amendeth the groſſe and cold humour, as well becauſe of his ſubſtance, as alſo with his qualitie. You muſt ordaine for the patient a very good diet, ſuch one as is not windie, and ingendreth good iuyce. Therefore you muſt keepe the ſicke from ſwines fleſh, and from all other meates that be groſſe, tough and clammy, and ſlow of digeſtion. Moreouer, let him abſtaine from all things which do coole and drie the bodie. He muſt eate birds that liue vpon mountaines, and do ingender good iuyce: for thoſe that do liue in fennes and mariſhes, they be vnwholeſome and full of excrements, and do ingender a groſſe humour. He muſt vſe fiſhes of grauelly waters, which be ſoft and without toughneſſe: but in this feauer ſalt things and Muſtard muſt be miniſtred in meates, that they may extenuate, cut, and diuide the groſſe and clammie humours, and that they may conſume and feed vp the ſuperfluous humiditie and moiſture. They muſt vſe Wine that is white, thinne, and meanely hote: for that by the thinneſſe it doth extenuate the groſſeneſſe of the melancholy humour, and by the meane heate that it hath, it heateth the bodie by little and little, which is cooled with the melancholious humor; and it helpeth digeſtion and alſo prouoketh vrine. They may not altogether be kept and refraine from frictions, deambulations, and other accuſtomed exerciſes, that is to ſay, you muſt ſuffer them to vſe exerciſes, but not ſo much as they did in their health. Neither may they vſe frictions, deambulations, and other exerciſes of the bodie ſo often nor ſo vehemently as they did in their health; for that would cauſe perill and danger of obſtruction. But if exerciſes be vſed moderately, and that in the time of intermiſſion betweene the fits, they will voide out excrements, and bring other commodities which *Galen* rehearſeth *in lib. ſecundo De tuenda ſanitate*. They muſt altogether abſtaine from bathing if they can, and be content onely with frictions and rubbings: for although bathing, becauſe it doth heate, doth profit, yet, becauſe it calleth forth humors outwardly, it bringeth perill of obſtruction, ſpecially when the bodie doth abound with excrements. And if the Quartane be ſhort, and not violent, it is not hurtfull in the intermiſſion betweene the fits, when the patients haile dayes be, if he vſe his wonted exerciſes. As for the belly, if it can be by any meanes, it muſt be kept ſoluble, either with his accuſtomed meates, or with medicines mixed with them, or with clyſters, firſt gentle and eaſie, and after ſharper: for you muſt increaſe

Bloud-letting.

Diet.

Vinum.

Balneum.

the strength and sharpnes by litle and litle, as the matter of the feuer doth concoct and digest by little and little: for at the beginning (as is said before) you must handle and order these feauers gently and easily. You may seeke examples of easie clisters out of the former chapters. A clister somewhat sharper is this that followeth: ℞. Mallowes, Cammomill, Mercury, leaues of blacke Violets, ana M. j. leaues of Sene, the rootes of Polipodie, ana. ℥ v. Hartstongue, M. j. ß. seethe all these in a sufficient quantitie of water vntill the third part. Then straine it and commixe with the licour of that decoction, the marrow of *Cassia fistula*, ℥. j. *Diasena laxatiua*, ℥ ß. common oile, ℥ iij. *Mel rosarum*, ℥ ß. salt Gem, ℥. j. and make a clister. Within certaine dayes, giue to the patient *Diatrion piperion*: but because it doth heate vehemently, you may not minister it daily; whose making and vertue you must seeke out of *Galen in lib. 4. De sanitate tuenda*. Also (as *Galen* saith) the patient shall do rightly, if he drinke daily, onely Pepper with water: for it heateth and dissolueth the grossenesse of windie spirits and vapours, and it extenuateth and digesteth the crude and raw humours, which are heaped and gathered vp together in the hypochonders, and sides. And these things must be done from the beginning of the feauer, vntill it come to the vigour, force, and state. And if the sicke seeme now to be in the vigour and state of the disease, then he must vse a thinner diet then he did before or must do afterward, and you must command long quiet and rest to the patient, lest nature being occupied about digesting of the matter of the disease, should be called from her office and worke. Afterward you must prouide and foresee the intrailes, which are wont to be swollen and stretched out, with viscous, tough and grosse humours, and also with abundance of windie spirites, and vapours: which being dissolued and emptied out, the bowels waxe soft and are loosened. Therefore you must annoint them with those things which can mollifie and loosen, as be, ointments which are made of Barley meale, seede of *Apium*, rootes of *Ireos*, Rew, and such like. Among other annoint the left side with this ointment, ℞. of oile of Capers, ℥ iij. oile of *Ireos*, and of sweet Almonds, ana. ℥ ij. seeds of *Apium*, and of Comin, rootes of *Ireos*, ana. ℈. j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. After these things you must minister medicines which haue vertue and power to prouoke vrine, and not before this time: for if you minister such things before the inward members be free from obstructions, because those medicines be hote, they carrie the humours downe with them, and do increase the obstructions. For to prouoke vrine, you must minister *Malsa*, wherein Dill, or Rew, or else *Apium* hath beene sodden. If signes of concoction do appeare, then you must straightway vse purging medicines which can purge out melancholie: and you may not purge him once onely, but oftner, if the matter seeme to require it: for that melancholy cannot be brought out all at once, seeing the bodie is not able to suffer & beare so strong a purgation, as should purge out all that stubburne humour at once. You may seeke examples of such medicines as do purge out melancholie, out of the first Book in the chapter of melancholiousnes. But yet aboue other things, *Aetius* praiseth sweet wine infused in the inwaed part of *Coloquintida*, but so, that you commixe with it some *Apium*, or *Daucus*, to make it pleasant. After meate,

Clyster.

Piper.

Prouision for the intrailes.

Vnguentum.

Prouokers of vrine.

Purgation of melancholie.

meate, you must prouoke vomite (if nothing let it) with white Hellebore first commixed with Radish, as is declared in the other Books, which if it work little or nothing, you must minister Hellebore by it selfe. And if any man abhorre from Hellebore, let him vse this or such like medicine: ℞. iuice of Radish, or distilled water of it, ℥.iij. *Oximel simplex*, ℥ ij. commixe them and make them warme to drinke: but they which cannot vomite, must be purged downward, such be they that haue a straight and slender breast. After purging you must giue them *Theriaca*, or somewhat that is of like vertue, as this is: ℞. *Liquoris Cyrenaici*, fine Mirrhe, Pepper, of each like much: beate them by themselues, and commixe them with the iuice of Rew, and make pilles thereof, and minister the weight of ℈. ß. They that minister any of these medicines at the beginning of the sickenesse, or at all, before the vigour, state, and force thereof, they make of a simple Quartane oftentimes a double Quartane, or without doubt they make the single Quartane greater and more vehement: and of a double Quartane they make a triple Quartane, or else the double one is made greater. *Vomitus.* *Vomitus.*

CHAP. X.

Of a Quotidian Feauer.

QVOTIDIANA *Febris intermittens*, that is, an intermitting quotidian feauer; it is ingendred of putrified and rotten fleame being thrust of nature by the sensible parts of the bodie. It is called of the Greekes *Amphimerina*, because it causeth a fit euery day. But if glasen fleame which is the coldest of all other fleames, do putrifie by it selfe the one halfe of it, that is, if the whole substance of it do not putrifie equally, but some parts of it do putrifie and some do not, then it ingendreth a feauer called *Epialos febris*: in which the patient is feauerous, and vehemently cold together, and at one present time he feeleth immoderate heate and immoderate cold in all the parts of the body together. For part of that humour which is not putrified nor rotten as yet, being spread by all the veines, or in the rest of the body, ingendreth the rigour and cold, but the other rotten part of the humour ingendreth the feauer. A Quotidian feauer doth not inuade the patient with rigour and vehement cold by and by the first day, but in processe of time, it commeth rather like a cooling, then like a rigour. The pulse when the fit beginneth is inordinate and vnequall, slow, little and weake. Neither also in the augmenting and increasing of the Quotidian is there swiftnesse of mouing of the pulses, nor greatnesse, nor vehemencie. The heate in this Feauer is not so sharpe and vehement as it is in a Tertian: for it neyther burneth them, neyther are they compelled to make naked their bodies, and to throw off their clothes, neyther doth it compell them to breathe much and often, and to blow out of their mouthes as it were a flame, nor to desire to drinke cold water, but it is moist and smokie, and commixed with much vapour. Also it is hardly kindled and it consumeth a long time, vntill that by increasing it come to the force and state. Moreouer, they that haue this feauer do not thirst, because not onelie the tongue, but also the whole bodie in this Feauer is moist. The vrines in Quotidian Feauers eyther be white, and thinne, and waterie: or thicke, and *Causa.* *Epialos febris.* *Signa.*

troubled. There burſteth out no ſweate at all in the firſt dayes, neither is there any exact and perfect reſt from being feuerous. For the feuer remaineth each time almoſt the ſpace of 18. houres. There chanceth alſo to them vomiting of fleame: and thoſe things which are ſent out by egeſtion, are colder, moiſter, cruder, more waterie, and more flegmaticke. Alſo a Quotidian feauer doth chiefly vexe them that be moiſt and flegmaticke of nature. Alſo it chanceth in a moiſt ſeaſon, ſpecially in Winter that is cold and moiſt, and in olde folke and children. Hereupon *Galen* writeth, that he neuer ſaw a young man that was cholericke and drie by nature, taken with this feauer: but they that be moiſt and moſt flegmatick, hauing a groſſe ſubſtance of the bodie, and do liue an idle life, ſeruing their belly, and giuen to drunkennes, vſing bathing often, and ſpecially after meate, they are ſoone taken with this Quotidian feauer.

Victus ratio. Let the diet in this feauer be altogether extenuating, cutting and diuiding. Therefore you muſt now ſeeke ſuch places, wherein we haue declared abundantly what kind of diet it ſhould be. In the firſt dayes, that is, when ſignes of

Curatio. crudities and indigeſtion do yet appeare, the fleame muſt be diuided and cut, and the pores and paſſages that be ſtopped, muſt be ſcoured and cleanſed. And therefore you muſt miniſter *Oximel* becauſe it doth ſcoure mightily, it cutteth and diuideth the glutinous and clammy humours, and it deliuereth the pores from obſtructions. And you muſt miniſter thoſe things which prouoke vrine, that the fleame (being already extenuated and diuided) may the more readily paſſe by the conduits, and be emptied out. Therfore it is good to miniſter decoction of the roote of *Apium*, Parſley, *Ireos*, Fennell, and ſuch other like often rehearſed before, with *ſirupus acetoſus compoſitus*, and *mel Roſarum*, and *ſirupus è duabus Radicibus*, and other that haue the vertue and power to extenuate, cut, and diuide. About the vigour and force of the feuer, you muſt take heed and haue regard to the ſtomacke, and ſpecially to the mouth of it. Therefore you muſt prepare thoſe things, which being applied outwardly, may adde ſtrength to the ſtomach, ſuch as be, Maſtike, Spikenard, Wormewood, and ſuch other like. Therefore before meate, vſe this ointment: ℞. oiles of Maſticke, Wormewood, and Nard, ana. ℥.ij ß. Maſtick, Cloues, and wood of Aloes, ana.

Vnguentum. ℈ v. Cinnamon, ℈.j. with Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an oyntment, wherewith annoint the region of the ſtomach. The ſtomach being ſtrengthened, you muſt compell vomiting, firſt by miniſtring of Radiſh, then after, meats muſt be eaten; for ſo it liſteth vp the meats, and cauſeth the eaſier vomite. After he muſt vſe medicines that do purge out fleame: for fleame when it is digeſt, may conueniently be purged. What medicines thoſe be that can purge out fleame, it is euident in our other Bookes, and this heere ſufficeth to cure a Quotidian feauer.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Feauer Hecticke.

HECTICA *febris*, is a feuer wherein an vnnaturall heat is not only kindled in the ſpirits and humours, but now alſo it is kindled in the maſſie, ſound and fleſhie parts and members. This feauer knoweth no paine, and they that haue it, do thinke that they haue no feuer, neither do they perceiue or feele any heate,

heate, seeing all the members of their bodie be equally heat (as *Galen* declareth abundantly in his Booke *De inæquali intemperie.*) The feuer Hecticke is ingendred and caused two wayes. First, for the most part, of burning feauers, which haue continued so long, that in processe of time they consume the humiditie and moisture that is contained in the body of the heart: or also if it resist more abundantly, then those feauers are not onely Hectickes, but also *Marasmodes*, that is, consuming and melting feauers. For feauers being ingendred (the humiditie yet remaining still) when they haue caught and occupied the bodie of the heart, hereupon they are specially kindled and inflamed, like the flame of a candle with a match. And this is one way of ingendring the feuer Hecticke. Another way of ingendring them is this, when they begin of themselues by and by, being ingendred as Diarie feauers be, either of sorrow, or anger, or ouermuch wearinesse, together with burning by the heate of the Sunne. The feauers that be thus ingendred, be not very hard to cure: but such feuers of these as be turned into consuming and wasting, which the Greekes do call *Marasmos*, through the negligence and ignorance of Phisitions: if those feauers be in their force and strength, and not as it were beginning still, it is not onely hard to cure these, but it is also impossible to remedie them. For the nature of them is hote and drie, so that the heart is in like case as the snuffe of a candle when it is very much burnt: for when it is much burnt, it will breake and dissolue, and through drinesse fall asunder, so that although you powre abundance of oile to it, yet you cannot cause a greater flame to be kindled: for the flame being small and weake, panteth alwayes vp & downe in it, and waxeth continually lesse and lesse, till it be altogether quenched out. Euen such is the feuer which is altogether *Marasmodes*, that is, cõsuming. The feuer Hecticke which turneth into *Marasmus*, or a consumption, is very readie and easie to know: for before you do consider the pulses and heate by touching them, you may see the eies wonderfull hollow, as though they were hid in some ditches or furrowes: for then all the moist substance of them is exhaust and consumed, so that you may see the bones of the eye-browes sticke out. Also there hangeth on the haires of the eye-lids, drie gumme and filth, and vncleanely affects, as is seene in them specially that go a long iourney in the dust, when the Sunne burneth hote. Also the vitall floure in them perisheth, and the skin of their forehead is drie and retched out, and their eie-lids winke often as though they were sleepie; but their disease is not to sleepe, but is rather impotencie and debility to watch. Also the flesh of their temples is consumed, so that they seeme hollow places: for what other thing haue they but skin and bone? For, if you looke vpon their bare bellie, it shall appeare to you, that neither bowell nor filme is left. The hypochonders and sides are pulled vpward to the breast, and if you touch their skinne, it is verie drie, which if you take hold on with your fingers and pul it vp, it is like the hide of a beast. The pulses be thinne, hard, weake, and often. The heate when you lay your hand first on him, doth seeme weake: but a little after it bursteth out sharpe and gnawing more and more, if you hold your hand long vpon him. Also this shall be a great and vndubitate signe to you: when you do giue him meate, the heate is inflamed and increased, and the pulses are augmented in greatnesse

Cause.

Marasmos.

Signe.

Hectica febris. and swiftnesse. It is called a feuer Hecticke, so long as naturall humiditie and moisture is kept and reserued: but when it is to be doubted that there is left no more humiditie and moisture in the bodie, then it is an absolute and perfect consumption, which is called in Greeke *Marasmos*. For the cure of a feauer Hecticke before it come vnto a consumption, you must by all meanes coole it. And therefore the effect and summe of the whole cure doth consist in these points, that is, to coole & moisten, as well with those things that be outwardly applied, as also by them that are ministred inwardly. Therefore let the ayre that the patient doth breathe in, be cold and moist. And, if it be not so by nature, make it so by Arte, as is taught before in the sixth Chapter, in the cure of the Tertian. He must also vse meates that do coole and moisten, as broth of Ptisan, bread steeped in a little cold water, the flesh of kiddes, feasants, birds of the mountaines, cockes stones, capons flesh, rere egges, new cheese without salt, and fishes of grauelly waters, Lettuce, Endiue, Succorie, Gourds, Spinach, Mallowes, and such like: Cherries, Proines, Pomegranates, Melons, Figs, and such like. He must also taste milke, for that profiteth him marueilously, so that this feauer be not compounded and mixed with another feauer that is ingendred of rottennesse of humours. Let his drinke be cold water, but specially if the sicke haue beene vsed to it before. Let him drinke thereof moderately, or let him drinke water wherein a little Cinnamon hath beene sodden, or wine that is watered and thin. Moreouer, it is good to them that haue this feauer to eate meate often in a day, that by that meanes they may beware and take heed that they eate not great abundance of meate at one meale, which vertue, being weake, should not be able to ouercome and digest. They must eschue immoderate mouing, and all things that can resolue and weaken the strength. You may not minister any purging medicines to them that haue a feauer Hecticke: for purgations are hoter and vehementer then they are able well to suffer: but if the belly be more bound then it ought to be, you must loosen it with easie clisters that can coole and moisten, adding to them marrow of *Cassia fistula*. You must minister such things within the bodie as haue power and vertue to coole and moisten; as among the compound medicines be these, sirupe of Violets, of Water-lillies, and of Tame-endiue, *sirupus acetosus*, and such like. Also *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diapapauer*, and such like. Of simples these be good, the iuyces and distilled waters of Lettuce, Purslaine, Tame-endiue, and Poppie. Among those things that are to be applyed outwardly, bathes at all times are conuenient and profitable to them that haue this feauer: I meane bathes of sweete waters, to the which the sicke must be carried in a bed, or in a fine sheete, and let there be foure to carrie the sheet, at each corner one. The water of the bath must be most temperate: and also the patient must not tarrie in it long, lest any of his moisture within him should be drawne out by it: therefore in no case must he sweate in it. There be some that vse to seethe in the water of the bath hearbs, as Violets, Mallows, Lettuce, flowers of Water-lillies, and such like: some other do seethe calues feete, or lambes heads, vntill the flesh be sodden from the bones. Also you must beware lest any thing be powred on his head, seeing it is sufficient for it to be dipped twise or thrise in the water with the whole bodie, the sheete being let

Marasmos.
Curatio.
Aer.
Diet.
Lac.
Potus.
Nota.
Balneum.

let downe easily, & then againe lifted vp by foure yong men which must carry him. Straight when he is brought from thence, he must be dipped all ouer once in cold water, but he may not tarry in it any time at all. They that haue this feuer and be brought into a bath, vnlesse they be dipped in cold water, it helpeth them nothing (as *Galen* saith.) By and by, as soone as he is drawne out of the water, let another sheete be ready, and cast him into that, and then into another. Then lay him in his bed, and first wipe him with sponges, & after with soft linnen clothes; and let them not handle him violently that do wipe him, but as easily as they can possibly. To conclude, after this he must be annointed with cold oiles, and with other moistning things. Among other this Liniment is good: ℞. oile of Violets, ℥ ß. oile of Gourds, ʒ.iij. new butter without Salt, Swines grease, ana ʒ.j.ß. commixe them and make a Liniment, wherewith annoint the whole body Or adde to it muscilage of *Tragacanthæ*, ʒ.ij. marrow of calues shankes, ʒ. iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. Also oile of Water-lillies and of Poppie, are good, and specially oile of Roses, which (as *Galen* saith) doth marueilously moisten dried bodies. When he is annointed and clothed, you must bring him againe vpon a bed or a sheet, into the place where he is fed, and you must nourish him with meates. Also it profiteth him to haue his heart cooled and moistened with Epithemes: as is this: ℞. waters of Violets, Water-lillies, and Lettuce, ana. ℥.iij. strong Vineger, ℥ ß. red Roses, all the Sanders, ana. ʒ.j. powder of *Diamargaritou*, ʒ.ß. seede of Purslaine, ʒ.iij. Saffron, ℈ ß. commixe them & make an Epitheme, & apply it to the region of the heart cold. Likewise it is good to coole & moisten the liuer thus: ℞. water of Lettuce, ℥.ij. Vineger, ℥.j. *Diarrhodō abbatis*, ʒ.j.ß scraping of Iuory, ℥.ß Purslaine, ℈ ß. commixe them & make an Epitheme, and apply it to the liuer. Also for them that haue the feuer Hecticke medicines are good which can coole & moisten with their odor and sauor, as be floures of Water-lillies, Purslaine, Violets, Roses, and such like. Also you may find moe things that are good for the cure of the feauer Hecticke, in the second booke, in the Chapter of the Ptisicke or Consumption. And in curing of the feuer Hecticke this onely must be your study & labour, that the body may not only be cooled & moistned with those things which be ministred inwardly, but also by things that be applied outwardly, and specially by annointing with oyle. How much oile applied and annointed outwardly, specially doth helpe to the conseruation of the body, and to the restoring of strength, we are taught by the notable example of *Pollio Romulus*, who being aboue an hundred years old (as *Pliny* telleth) *Diuus Augustus* his host asked him, by what meanes he kept that vigour, force, and strength of body and mind: he answered thus: *Intus mulso, foris oleo*, that is, I keepe me moist with *Mulso* within, and oyle I annoynt vpon my skin.

Epithema cordis.

Epithema iecoris.

Odoramentum.

Pollio Romulus.

CHAP. XII.

Of an Hemitrice feuer.

ALthough there be diuerse kinds of compound feuers, as is declared in the beginning of this booke, in the explication of feuers: yet in this place we will onely speake of that feuer which is compounded of an intermitting Tertian, and a continuall Quotidian. And it is called in Greeke *Hemitriteus*, and in

Latin *Semitertiana*, in English halfe a Tertian. It is so called because this whole feauer hath halfe the nature of the said feauers, each of them: by the example of this compound feauer, you may learne to cure all other compound feuers.

Causa. Therefore an Hemitrice feuer is caused, when putrified fleame is commixed with rotten choler. It is declared before that a Tertian inuadeth the patient with rigour and vehement cold, and a Quotidian commeth with cooling of the extreme parts. Therefore the feauer which is compounded of them both

Signa. causeth horrour and shaking for cold, which is lesse then the rigour of a Tertian, and greater and more vehement then the cooling of a Quotidian: so that it is a meane betweene them both. It is ingendred two sundry wayes: for eyther two fits are ioyned together by and by at the beginning, and do inuade the patient together both at once; or else each of them cometh separate from the other. Therefore when the Tertian doth exceede the other, it causeth a more horrible feauer, and also it hath much rigour and vehement cold in the augmenting of the fit, and there is present greater heate and more burning, and choler is driuen out either by vomiting, or by egestion, or it breatheth out a moist vapour: but when the Quotidian exceedeth the Tertian, then cold is in the extreme parts, and but a little shaking, and neither burning nor thirst doth vexe him. But when the intermitting Tertian and the continuall Quotidian be equall, and of like force and greatnesse, the fit doth come with horror and shaking for cold. And when the Quotidian is of greatest force, the pulses and horrour waxe lesse and gentler: but if the Tertian preuaile, by and by the pulses and horrour increase and waxe greater. Note therefore, when a feauer is ingendred of an intermitting Tertian and a continuall Quotidian, being

Exquisitus Hemitritæus. equall, of like force, greatnesse, and strength, then it is called an exquisite *Hemitritæus* ague: but if one feauer do exceede the other, then it is called an vn-

Non exquisitus Hemitritæus. pure Hemitrice. You may vnderstand by the former Chapters, how this feuer should be cured. For seeing an exquisite Hemitrice feuer is ingendred of two feuers equally commixed, that is, a Tertian and a Quotidian, you must also vse

Curatio. a cure conuenient & agreeing equally to a Tertian and a Quotidian. But in an vnpure Hemitrice, when there is most of choler, or most of fleame, you must also varie and change the cure, according to the humor and feuer that aboundeth. For if choler haue the vpper hand, you must chiefly vse the remedies which we haue declared in the cure of the Tertian. But if fleame abound most, vse the things most that be declared in the cure of the Quotidian. To conclude, you must most couet the cure of that which hath most neede, and doth most abound; but so, that you do not altogether neglect the other. Therefore we need not in this place rehearse the remedies whereby this feuer should be destroyed and cured, seeing euery man may learne the cure of them more readily according to the diuersitie and nature of the humours, out of the Chapters of curing of the Tertian and Quotidian. Therefore if any man do first learne to know exactly and perfectly the curing of simple feauers, he shall also know how to cure compound feauers without any more labor: for the cures of simple feauers being knowne, and considered, it is most ready to any man to cure compound feauers: so that here we shall not need to write seuerally of the curing of compound feauers.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Peſtilence.

SEeing that at this preſent time and day, there be euerie where Treatiſes of the Peſtilence made of diuerſe new Authors, I neede not now long diſpute here of it: but it ſhall be ſufficient, if we do briefly declare the cauſes, ſignes, and curing of it, as we haue done in other diſeaſes before. There be two eſpeciall cauſes of the Peſtilence, as *Galen* writeth *in lib.* I. *De differentijs febrium, cap.* 5. The one is, an infected, corrupted and rotten aire. The other be humors gathered through naughty and corrupt diet of the body, which humors be ready to putrifie and rot, when a man taketh any light occaſion to kindle a feuer of the corrupted aire. Therefore the chiefeſt cauſe why men are infected with the Peſtilence, is breathing in of aire, without which no breathing thing doth prolõg their life. For it beginneth for the moſt part of breathing in of aire which is corrupted of a putrifying and rotting euaporation. The beginning of corrupted aire, and of the rotten euaporation, is either a multitude of dead bodies not burned or buried, as it chanceth in warres: or the euaporation of ſome pooles, fennes or mariſhes in Sommer time. It chanceth alſo ſometime to come before immoderate heate of the aire, when the temperature of the aire is changed from his naturall ſtate, to immoderate heate and moiſture, of neceſſity the Peſtilence muſt follow. Hereupon *Galen* ſaith, that of all temperaments of the aire, the worſt is that which is hote and moiſt. Alſo oftentimes (as is aforeſaid) naughtie and corrupt dyet ingendreth humours in the bodie that be eaſie & ready to putrifie and rot, and ſo is the cauſe why ſuch bodies are infected with the Peſtilence. And then truly they ſpecially haue the Peſtilence, which vſe a naughty and corrupt diet, and ſo be full of all kinds of ſuperfluities. Therefore it need not ſeeme maruellous, if ſometime ſome one among many (which yet doth very ſeldome chance) be infected with this diſeaſe, the ayre yet not being peſtilent and corrupt. For they that keep a good and healthfull diet, and be without ſuperfluities in their bodies, they take no hurt at all, or elſe very litle hurt, although they be in the corrupt and peſtilent aire: and may eaſily returne and be brought to their naturall habite and ſtate. Hereby it is eaſie to anſwer them that aske, how it chanceth that all men are not taken equally with the Peſtilence, ſeeing euery one is conſtrained to breathe in the peſtilent aire. The firſt cauſe why ſome remaine vnhurt, is becauſe they be not full of ſuperfluous humidity and moiſture, but do vſe moderate diet and exerciſes, and haue their body eaſie to breathe out vapours. Another cauſe is, becauſe all mens bodies be not of like diſpoſition and effect. For diſpoſitions of mens bodies are of many ſundry formes: for ſome bodies are quickely ouercome and infected, and do moſt readily ſuffer any cauſe: but ſome againe be inſuperable, and cannot be ouercome, nor will at all ſuffer the infection, or elſe very hardly. And therefore the greateſt portion of ingendring of diſeaſes, is the diſpoſition of the body of him that ſuffereth the diſeaſe. For elſe all men that taried long in the burning heate of the Sunne, or that vſed ouermuch mouing, or that were loden with wine, or inflamed with anger, or affected with ſadnes, ſhould fall into a feuer. Alſo we do not deny, but that ſometime great

Cauſe.
1
2

Whereof rottenneſſe beginneth.

Note.

Plagues from God.

plagues and pestilence be sent of God, for the grieuous sinnes and horrible offences of men, wherewith he punisheth our great offences: whereof there be many euident testimonies in the Prophets, and specially in *Ezechiel* chap. 5.

The time of the Plague.

The time of the yeare in the which chiefly by nature the Pestilence is rife and flourisheth, is the end of Sommer, and the beginning of Harueſt or Autumne: for then both the ayre and mens bodies are most apt to putrifie, corrupt and rotte, for many causes. There be many and diuerse signes of the Pestilence to come, rehearsed of the new Authors: among which signes, the first is the changing of the times of the yeare. The second is often *Phænomena* in the aire, specially in Autumne. The third is, when pushes, and pocks, and measles do not only vexe children, but also yong folke of perfect age. The fourth is, when the winds are often in the South and in the West in Autumne. The fifth is a darke and troubled aire in Autumne threatning raine, but yet it doth not raine at all. The sixt is, if women conceiued with child, do suffer abortion for euery light cause. The seuenth is, when in Sommer after raine suddenly a great abundance of frogges of diuerse colours do gather together on a heape. The eighth is, a great multitude of flies, wormes and creeping things The ninth is the dying of foure footed beasts and fishes. The tenth is, the flying of birds from their nests, leauing their egs there still. The eleuenth is, the dearth of victualls and corne. The twelfth (which is the most certaine signe) is a hote and moist temperature of the yeare. There be many signes that declare when one is alreadie infected with the Pestilence. The first is, if the outward members be cold, and the inward members burning hote. The second is, heauinesse, wearinesse, sloath of the whole bodie, and difficultie in breathing. The third is, paine and heauinesse in the head. The fourth is, carefulnesse of the mind, and sadnesse. The fifth is, a maruellous inclination (for the most part) to sleepe, for sometime watching and rauing do vexe him. The sixt is, a diuers and frowning look of the eyes. The seuenth is, losse of appetite. The eighth is, immoderate thirst and often vomiting. The ninth is, bitternesse and drinesse of the mouth. The tenth is, a pulse, frequent, small and deepe. The eleuenth is, the vrine for the most part troublous, thicke, and stinking like beasts vrine: although sometime the vrine of them seemeth to differ little from the vrine of healthful men; therefore by such an vrine, they that are vnskilfull of the other signes be quickly deceiued, suspecting no hurt, because of the good colour of the vrine. The twelfth, which is the most sure token of all, is, if there do arise and ingender botches behind the eares, or vnder the armeholes, or about the share, without any manifest cause, or also if carbuncles do suddenly arise in any member: for when they appeare, they betoken strength of nature, which being strong and mightie, doth labour to driue the poison out of the bodie. Also they do declare which members of the bodie being affected aboue other, do thrust out from them the venimous humors. For if they do appeare in the necke, they declare that the veines be chiefly vexed: if vnder the armeholes, the heart; but if they appeare in the share, the liuer is most affected. But seeing that botches do not alwayes appeare, (which is most perillous and dangerous: for it betokeneth that nature is weake and feeble, and is not able to expell and driue out the venimous humors) you must haue respect to other signes and tokens which

Signes of one infected.

1 2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9 10
11
12

Signes of one infected.

1 2
3 4
5
6
7 8
9
10 11
12

Signifying of botches.

which be rehearsed a little before. As for the cure, if the aforesaid signes do appeare, then if nothing do let, by and by you must cut a veine on that side in which the pestilent botch doth appeare. If the botch do appeare behind the eares, or about the chinne, or in other parts of the face and necke, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. If it appeare and come out vnder the armeholes, you must cut the innermost veine of the arme on the same side: it is cõmonly called *Basilica*: or if that vein wil not appeare, take the middle veine. If the botch do appeare in the share, you must draw out bloud from the ankles of the same side. But if there do appeare no botch outwardly, you must draw out bloud from the same side where there is felt greatest paine and heauinesse. But out of which veine you must let bloud, the paine and griefe of the members afflicted, will declare to you well enough: for if the members aboue the breast be grieued and afflicted most, cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if the parts beneath the necke be most grieued and afflicted, cut the *Basilica* or the middle veine: and if the neather parts be most vexed, you must cut the veine of the hamme or ankles. And if nature be strong, and other things not letting, you must draw out bloud abundantly. But if through age, or for other causes, you may not vse bloud-letting, you must fasten cupping glasses to the necke and the shoulders, or to the backe, or to the legges. And if the Pestilence do inuade any man at his dinner time or supper time, when the stomach is filled with meate, then he must vomite straightway. At the last, when the bodie and stomach is emptied, you must by and by minister some medicine that can resist poison, that it may draw the poison to it, and call it backe from the heart: for that is the propertie of such medicines. Among a great number of the which, this is praise-worthy, which is called *Electuarium de Ouo*, which once a good and wise Emperour called *Maximilianus* did vse. Why I do preferre this almost before all other, is, because of his maruellous effects and vertues which haue appeared often in diuers sicke persons: and because it is easie to make, except the roote of white Diptaine, which cannot well be gotten; for the which it is better to vse the leaues of true Diptaine, which may well be come by; minister of the foresaid Electuarie to them that be of perfect age, ʒ. j. and to them that be younger, sometime ℈. ij. will suffice: you must dissolue it in water of Roses, or Endiue, or Scabious. Also this medicine vsed, is good to preserue a man from the Pestilence, if he take thereof daily the weight of a graine or two of Barley, or the quantitie of a Pease. Also the taking of this potion doth helpe much: ℞. *Theriaca Andromachi* ℈. ij. *Mithridatum*, ℈. j. Bolearmoniacke prepared, ℈. ß. waters of Roses, Scabious, and Bugloſſe, ana, ℥. j. Commixe them. What power and strength is in Bolearmoniacke to driue away the Pestilence, *Galen* teacheth abundantly *in libro nono, de simplicium Medicamentorum facultatibus*. Where he writeth, that in a great Plague that was in Rome, as many as dranke this medicine were quickly healed. Wherefore this medicine ought chiefly to be vsed in the time of the Pestilence. Moreouer, this powder doth profit very much: ℞. the leaues of true Diptaine, the root of Turmentill, the root of Pimpernell, Zedoary, Gentian, root of *Betonica altilis*, commonly called *Tunica*, ana, ʒ. ß. Bolearmoniacke prepared, ℥. j. *Terra lemnia*, ʒ. iij. *Aloes* Epatike, Myrrhe, ana, ℥ ß. Saffron, ʒ. j. Masticke, ʒ. ij.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Cucurbita.

Vomitus.

Alexiteria.

Electuarium de Ouo.

Potio.

Bolus armeniacus.

Puluis optimus.

and beate them all to very fine powder, and make a *Tritura*. Wherefore minister to the sicke, ℥.j. in Rose water, or Sorrell water. When the patient hath taken some of the aforesaid medicines, lay him in a warmed bed being made with soft sheets, and well couered with clothes, that he may there sweate foure or fiue houres, or longer, according to his strength. But if by this meanes you can scarcely prouoke him to sweate, you must lay tiles being heate at the fire, to the feete of the patient; for these by reason of their heate will readily prouoke sweate. And in all the time that the sicke doth sweate, you must onelie take heed, that he do neither sleepe, eate, nor drinke. After sweating, you must diligently wipe off the sweate with very cleane and fine linnen clothes. Then afterward let the sicke rise vp from his bed, if he will, or if he can, and let him eschue the open aire. Let the aire of the chamber in which the sicke doth lie, be corrected, amended, and purified with odoriferous things, and with sweete smelling perfumes, daily foure or fiue times. It is best for the sicke to change from one chamber to another: because the aire of one chamber, by the continuall tarying of the sicke in it, is much corrupted, and cannot easily be corrected and amended. Let the aire of the chamber, into the which the sicke shall remoue, be first corrected and purged with perfumes. What those things should be, we will declare afterward. Two or three houres after the patient hath sweat, giue vnto him the broth of a Chickin, and that you must do often afterward, according to his strength: for the sicke must be nourished and refreshed by little and little. Therefore it is good for him to eate often, and but very little at once: for they that are thus fed, will sooner recouer againe then other. Also he may vse to eate the flesh of Chickins, sodden with Sorrell, or with iuyce of Limons, or else Veriuyce. Also the sicke must be kept altogether from sleepe the first day by talke of the assistants, by rubbing of the extreme parts, by pulling of their eares, nose, and haire. For the which purpose it is not vnprofitable to dip a sponge in very sharpe vineger, and hold it to the nose. If the patient haue vehement thirst, he may vse this potion: ℞. Iulep of Violets, ℥.iij. sirupe of the sharpe iuyce of Citrons, ℥.j.ß. sirupe of sowne Endiue, ℥.ij. of the decoction of Sorrell, Scabious, and flowers of Buglosse, ℥.x. or so much of their distilled waters: commixe them, and make a potion. Also you must take the water wherein Barley hath beene sodden a little, and commixe with it iuice of Roses, or Sorrell, or Limons, or of vntipe Grapes and minister it in stead of drinke. And you must minister medicines (specially if the strength be feeble) which can strengthen and comfort the heart, and other principall members of the bodie, as is this: ℞ conserues of Violets, Roses, and Buglosse, ana ℥.j.ß. Bole armoniacke prepared, ʒ.j. red Corall, ℈.j. barkes of Citron apple, ʒ.j.ß. Camphire, ℈.v. with sirupe of the iuyce of sharpe Citrons, as much as is sufficient: make an Electuary or liquid Antidote. Also you must lay vpon the region of the heart (specially if the sicke do yet feele heate about the breast) this Epitheme: ℞. waters of Roses, Buglosse and Sorrell, ana, ℥ iiij. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, ʒ j. wood of *Aloes*, red Sanders, the barkes of a Citron apple beaten to powder, the bone of the Harts heart, ana. ℈.v. Saffron, grain. six: commixe them all, and make an Epitheme. But you must note, that the Epithemes may not be applied, except they be made hote: and

Sudor.

Aeris correctio.

When meate should be ministred.

Of sleepe.

Potio.

Comfortatiues

Electuarium.

Epithema.

and as soone as they are cooled, you must take them away straightway; for then they constraine and shut vp the pores, and so do bring vnto the patient no small griefe. Therefore it is better to vse cordiall bags, as this is: ℞. flowers of red Roses, Water-lillies, and of Violets, ana. ℥.ij. of all the Sanders, Corall white and red, *Spodium*, Pearles, ana. ℥.iij. Cinamon, Cloues, the bone of the Harts heart, wood of *Aloes*, barkes of the Citron apple, Saffron, ana. ℈.j. seed of Sorrell, ℈.ij. seed of Purslaine, grain.iiij beate all these into fine powder, and make two square bags of silke, and apply each after other being heat. *Sacculus.*

Moreouer, you must altogether couet and labour, that the venimour humours may be entised & drawne to the place where the botches appeare & burst out, and you must do it by setting to of cupping glasses, or by medicines applied, that haue vertue and power to draw those humours, as this is: ℞. fatte Figges, in number sixe, great Raisins, ℥ ß. salt Gumme, ℥.ij Hony, ℥ j. with oyle of Cammomill: make it into the forme of an Emplaister, and apply it hote to the botch. Or apply this plaister, which is much commended of all men: ℞. a great Onion, and cut off the head of it, and picke out all the kore within, then fill it with *Theriaca Andromachi*, adding to it iuyce of Rew or Sage: which done, stop the hole fast that is in the top of the Onion with lute, and set the Onion in the imbers to roast: and when you do thinke that it is roasted enough, pull off the barkes of it, and then bray it in a mortar vntill it be thicke like an Emplaister, and apply it hote to the botch. You need not to be afraid to applie *Theriaca* to the botches, because of the authoritie of *Gentilis* and *Valescus*, and some other authors. For *Theriaca*, and such like medicines against poison, do not worke their operation by driuing the poison from them (as they being in a wonderfull errour do affirme) but rather they worke by drawing the poison to them, as *Galen* teacheth in his booke *De Theriaca ad Pisonem*. Also this Emplaister is good, for it helpeth much to the rotting of the botch: ℞. meale of Fenugreeke, and Lineseed, of flowers of Cammomill, ana. ℥.ß. roots of *Althaea* and white Lillies, ana. ℥.ß. Figs in number sixe, leaues of true Diptaine, ℥.iij. rootes of Valerian, ℥.ij Mustard seed, ℥.j ß. Doues dung, ℥.ß oyles of Cammomill and Lillies, ana. ℥.j. ß. make them into the forme of an Emplaister or Pultice. Also this is practised: ℞. of *Emplastrum diachylon simplex*, ℥ ij. of gum Armoniacke, and *Galbanum*, ana. ℥.j. bray them together, and bring them to the forme of an Emplaister. But if the botch will not breake of himselfe by applying the aforesaid things, you must then lay vpon it Goose dung dissolued in the common oile, or in oile of Camomill. And this is sufficient to speake of here, as touching the cure of thé which be taken with the pestilence. *Outward medicines.* *Emplastrum.* *Error of Gentilis and Valescus.* *Emplastrum suppuratorium.* *Aliud.*

Now we will briefly expound, by what means a man may preserue and defend himselfe from the infection of the Pestilence, which vexeth and infecteth in some certayne place or region. And seeing (as we haue declared in the beginning of this Chapter) it is euident that the Pestilence is not caused but through the breathing in of the pestilent and corrupt ayre: there cannot be a more present remedy to preserue one, then flying from the corrupt ayre. For there is no other meanes to auoid the pestilent aire, because whether we will or no, we must draw in such aire, vnlesse we get vs away into some other place, where the aire is not corrupted nor infected, but pure and good. Which *A preservation from the pestilence.* *Flight is the best remedie.*

you must the rather and more quickly do, if the euill be greatly infectiue. And you must flie farre off into such a place whereas the aire is knowne to be pure and good, and destitute of corruption: neither must you returne home againe from that place very soone. Hereupon it is not rashly said of the common sort, that these three Aduerbs, *Citò*, *longè*, and *tardè*, in the time of the Pestilence, do more pleasure and profit then three shops very well furnished. Therefore they that may conueniently for their businesse flie away, let them not suffer themselues to be perswaded by any meanes to tary in the pestilent aire: which if they do, they shall foolishly put themselues in danger of pestilent death. But if you may not flie for vrgent businesse, and iust causes, then let your first care be, that the house in which you must tary, be without all kinde of stinke, and kept cleane from all filthinesse and sluttishnesse. Let the windowes of it be close shiut, specially in cloudy and rainie dayes, that the pestilent aire enter not in. But if you will open them, see that they open vpon the East or North quarter, and do it when the Sunne is risen aboue the earth some houres. You must come abroad but seldome, and not except the element be cleare and bright: neither come then, vnlesse you haue first taken some medicine which is able to preserue you from the infection. You must make fires daily in your houses, with Oken wood, Iuniper, *Tamariscus*, Laurel, or such like, that thereby the corrupt aire that is in the house, may be corrected and purged. For there is a maruellous vertue and strength in fire, to amend and correct the rottennesse and corruption of the aire. Also you must strew vpon coales this powder following: ℞. Rosemary, M.ß. Sage, Betonie, Wormwood, Marioram, Origan, ana. M.j. bray all finely, and make a powder. Or vse this powder: ℞. of Iuniper berries, ℥.j. Myrrhe, ʒ.iij. Frankinsence and Masticke, ana. ʒ.iij ß. roote of *Benedicta*, ʒ.j. Rew, ℥.ß. Cypresse barks, ʒ.j.ß. roote of *Angelica*, Lauender, ana. ʒ.ij. beate all together, and make a powder. Let poore folke lay vpon quicke coales, Iuniper cleft in small stickes, or the berries of Iuniper. Let richer folke vse wood of *Aloes*, or powder of *Gallia moschata*, Cloues, and such like. When necessitie constraineth you to go abroad, carry this or such a like Pomander with you: ℞. *Lapdanum*, ʒ.iij. *Storax calamitæ*, ʒ.ij. Cinamon, Mace, Cloues, Nutmegs, ana. ʒ.j. wood of *Aloes*, ℈.j. Spikenard, ℈.ß. Myrrhe, Masticke, Frankinsence, ana. ʒ.ß. Muske and Amber, ana. gra iij. powder them and searce them, and with *Storax liquida* and water of Marioram as much as is sufficient, commixe them, and make a *Pomum odoratum*. In Sommer time let the aire be purified and corrected with cold things, as with flowers of Roses, Violets, Water-lillies, Vine leaues and branches, Willow leaues, and such other like. Also sprinkle the pauement with water of Roses, Sorrell, and such like: or with cold water wherewith some Vineger is commixed. Also it profiteth to smell Roses, Vineger, Camphire, Sanders, and such other like: or to smell to this Pomander: ℞. *Lapdanum*, ℥.ß. *Storax calamitæ*, ʒ.iij. flowers of water-lillies, Roses, and Violets, ana. ʒ.j barks of the Citron apple, ʒ.j ß. all the Sanders, ana. ʒ.ß. of Maces and Cinamon, ana. ℈.j. Masticke, ʒ.j. white Poppie, ʒ.ß. Camphire, ℈.ß. Amber, Muske, ana. gra ij. bray and commixe them with *Storax liquida* and Rose water, and make a Pomander. But seeing *Galen* saith, that one of the chiefest things which they that would be preserued from the

Suffimenta.

A pomander.

Pila odorata.

the peſtilence, ought to regard and take heed of, is, that their bodie be for the moſt part without ſuperfluities and excrements, and may well breathe out the vapours: truly there is nothing more to be eſchued at ſuch a time, then ouermuch deuouring and ſwallowing in gluttonouſly of meate and drinke. Therefore let their meates be altogether eaſie of digeſtion, and ſuch as ingender good bloud, and be not ready to putrifie and rot. And alwayes commixe with the meates that be eaten at that time, ſome Vineger, or ſome other ſharpe iuyce, as Veriuice, or iuice of Citron apples, or of Limons or Orenges. In Sommer time he muſt vſe for pot-hearbs, Bugloſſe, Endiue, Succory, and Lettuce: and in Winter, let him vſe Sage, Parſly, *Apium*, Marioram, Balme, and Hyſope. He muſt abſtaine from all fruits, vnleſſe they be ſharpe, as be Pomegranates, Citrons, Limons, Orenges, and ſuch like, which are good for him to vſe. Let his drinke be Wine that is thinne and watery. Let euery man beware of ſtrong Wine that is vnlayed and new. To conclude, let his diet be altogether cooling and drying. Therefore he may not vſe exerciſes, but in a meane and temperate place, and in an ayre being firſt purified, amended and corrected by medicines and perfumes. Therefore you muſt eſchue common dancings openly, and alſo turnings, leapings, and whatſoeuer ſuch like exercise there be that requireth often breathing in of aire. Therefore becauſe of this alſo in the time of the Peſtilence he muſt eſchue companies gathered together by magiſtrates by ſome open commandement, for matters of the commonwealth, as Courts, Seſſions, and ſuch like. Let his ſleep, watchings, and all other things be moderate and in a meane. But he muſt ſleepe in a chamber that is cloſe, well ſtopped and ſhut, leſt the peſtilent aire ſhould enter into it: the aire of which chamber muſt be purified and corrected with ſome perfume aforeſaid, morning and euening. He muſt vſe ſheets that be pure and cleane, and that haue been laied vp a while with odoriferous things. When he is awaked from ſleep, let this be his firſt care and worke, to empty the bodie of ſuperfluities and excrements. And you muſt onely take heede and beware, that the bodie be not coſtiue at any time: therefore if it do not of it ſelfe void out excrements daily, you ſhall prouoke them out with *pilulæ Rufi*, or with a ſoft Clyſter, or with a Suppoſitary made for the purpoſe. When the bodie is emptied from ſuperfluities and excrements, as well by the gutties as by the bladder, he muſt take ſome medicine that can preſerue him from the infection of the Peſtilence; for the which, there be many things before rehearſed. And if neceſſarie buſineſſe do conſtrain you to go abroad openly, you may chew Zedoary, or root of Angelica, or Pimpernel: or you ſhall ſmell to Rew, for the ſauor of it doth marueilouſly reſiſt the peſtilent aire. He muſt eſchue all carnall luſt, ſpecially immoderate vſing thereof. After copulation he muſt keepe him out of the open and infectiue aire. Bathes muſt altogether be abhorred, as a moſt preſent poiſon, ſpecially common baths: becauſe when the pores of the bodie are opened by the heate of it, the peſtilent aire doth readily creepe into the bodie. They that will vſe a priuate bath, let them preſerue and defend themſelues moſt diligently from the corrupted aire when they go out of the bath. But it is better, and more wholeſome to vſe frictions at home in a rectified aire, and let baths alone: but yet you may waſh the head weekly with lie, wherein hath bin ſodden

Diet.

Exercitium.

Excretion.

Venus.

Balneum.

Asarum, Marioram, Lauender, Rosemary, Betony, Sage, Cammomill, and such other like: but yong men and such as abound with bloud, must in the time of the pestilence vse bloud-letting; and that not onely once, but (if nothing let to the contrary) bloud-letting doth often profite much to preserue them in health, because it doth much coole the state of the bodie, and bringeth it to a moderate heate. Also you must purge the bodie (if need require) with purging medicines, and that specially in the Spring time and Autumne. As for perturbations of the mind, he must eschue sadnesse, anger, hatred, feare, great cares, and heauie thoughts, and he must vse ioy and mirth in a meane. Now it remaineth that we describe medicines which can keep and preserue vs safe from the infection of the pestilence: among which the pilles that are called *pilulæ Rufi* or *Pestilentiales*, or else *Communes*, are principall and chiefe: ℞. Aloes epaticke, two parts, Saffron orientall, Myrrhe, ana. part. 1. with white Wine, or with water of Scabious, make pilles, of which minister daily ℈.j. and more or lesse according to the age and strength of the patient. These pills, because of the Aloes and Myrrhe in them, which do most resist putrifaction, they haue a maruellous efficacie & vertue against the infecting of pestilent aire. Also you may vse these pils following: ℞. Aloes epatick, ʒ.iij. Myrrhe, ʒ.j ß. Agarick prepared, ʒ.j. Saffron orientall, ʒ.ß. Bole armoniacke prepared, ℈.j. seede of Citron apples, ℈.ii. Mastick, ℈.ß. root of Pimpernell, ʒ.ß. with Rose water, make 13. pils of ʒ.j. of which minister one or two. Also you may vse that medicin that is commonly called *Electuarium de nucibus*: ℞. of Walnuts in number 20. of fat Figs in number 13. Rew, M.ij. of Wormwood, *Cotula fœtida*, and Scabious, ana. M.j. root of *Aristolochia longa*, ʒ.ß. roote of *Aristolochia rotunda*, ʒ.j.ß. of Turmentill, *Petasitis*, and Pimpernell, ana. ʒ.ii.ß. leaues of true Diptain, M.j. of Laurell berries, ʒ.iij. of Harts horne burnt, ʒ.ii.ß. Maces, Myrrhe, Bolearmoniack, true *Terra lemnia*, ana. ʒ.iij. Salt of the Sea, ʒ.i.ß. *Nux vomica*, ʒ.ij. flowers of Buglosse, M.j. beate them all, and commixe them with ℔.ii. of clarified Hony, and made a liquid medicine like a Loch. Also this powder is very good: ℞. leaues of true Diptaine, ℥.ß. of the rootes of Zedoary, *Tunica*, Pimpernell, and Turmentill, ana. ʒ.ß. barks of the Citron apple, ʒ iij. *Terra lemnia*, ʒ.vi. Bolearmoniack, ℥.j. Myrrhe chosen, Aloes epatick, ana. ℥.ß. Saffron, ʒ ß. Masticke, ʒ.i.ß. Liquorice, ʒ.i. Scabious and Sorrell, ana. ʒ.iii. red Sanders, ʒ.i. scraping of Iuorie, and *Authera*, ana. ʒ.ß. the bones of the Harts heart, red Corall, ana ℈.ii. seed of Purslaine, gra.v. bray all finely, and make a powder. If you will, you may make of these, Lozenges, with Sugar, and waters of Roses and Scabious, and minister daily of them ʒ.i. or more, or lesse, according to age and strength. Also onely Bolearmoniacke taken with Vineger, is notably praised. Likewise *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, and such other are good, whereof there is plenty named of them that haue written of the Plague. We therefore here will make an end of speaking of this kind of euill.

Bloud-letting.

Purgatio.

Preseruatiues

Pilulæ communes.

Pilulæ.

Electuarium de nucibus.

Pulvis.

The end of the fourth Booke.

THE FIFTH BOOKE, CONTAINING THE CVRING OF TVMORS WHICH HAPPEN ABOVE NATVRE.

CHAP. I.

¶ What that swelling is which happeneth besides nature, which commonly is called by this generall name Apostema: and the sifting out of the true definition, and of the diuision of the same, according to the opinion of the Neoterickes.

THose Tumours which haue their being besides nature, the later sort both of Phisitions and Chirurgians, and not they onely, but almost the vniforme consent of old writers, haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*: whereas indeede *Apostema*, both by *Galen* and other Grecians, hath beene reputed but as one kind of those swelling tumours, which commonly are said to chance besides nature; which the Latines haue very fitly termed *Abscessus*, and the crew of yonger Phisitions do call it *Exitura*, deriuing the originall of the word from the interpreter of *Auicene*: of the which, as also of all other kinds we will intreate particularly in his seuerall Chapter. Although, indeed, it hath pleased some of the later sort to make *Apostema* as the *species* or *differentia* of those tumours besides nature: appoynting it to be diuerse from that which they call *Exitura*, and also from that other kinde *Pustula*. For vnder the name of Apostemes, they will conclude and place those tumours onely which being lifted vp into a great bignesse, do fetch their procreation from the influence of naturall humours (as they terme them) whereupon they call them *vera Apostemata*. Therefore when *Apostema* is taken for the *genus*, comprehending vnder it all the tumours besides nature, by *Auicene* and his followers, it is thus commonly defined. An Apostemе is a disease compounded of three kindes of maladies, all aggregated into one bignesse. Which definition they do affirme to be essentiall, consisting (as they say) of *genus* and *differentia*, which do very sufficiently explane the nature of that which is defined, appointing this word disease to be the *genus*, and the other words which are annexed, do stand to manifest the difference of other the like infirmities, which do happen by the composition and construction of the instruments: all which distinctions and diuersities, *Galen* doth recite in his Booke intituled, *De morbo & symptomate*. But these three kindes of sores, which in that swelling besides nature, commonly called *Apostema*, do concurre as establishing the essence of one onely disease, are these: intemperature, which

Apostema.

Abscessus.

The common definition of Apostema.

Three kinds of diseases causing the essece of tumors besides nature.

they also call an euill complexion: immoderation, whereby they intend a sinister composition: and the solution of that agreeing vnitie which nature affoordeth to euery body. To which three kindes, the Greekes haue assigned three opposite and fit termes, calling the first δυσκρασία, the second ἀμέλεια, the third συνεχείας λύσις: but they bring also many other descriptions rather then definitions of this *Apostema*: for definitions I dare not terme them, when as they do not conuert with that which is defined, neither do they serue either to the sufficient explication of his nature, or the constitution of his essence: which they verie well knowing, are content to let them go vnder the name of accidentall definitions. One of them they haue desumed and taken out of *Galen* his Booke which he wrote *De tumoribus præter naturam*. An Aposteme or tumour besides nature, is one of those things which happpening vnto the bodie, doth inflate that part which it occupieth, to the extremest dimension. This definition they haue extorted out of *Galen* his words, which he set not downe as an exquisite definition, but as an ordinary assertion. You may fashion (if you please) many such definitions, as this for one. An Aposteme is an increment exceeding naturall constitution. Or this: An Aposteme is a tumor, in the which the parts haue departed from their naturall state and habite in quantitie and bignesse. Whereas *Galen* in his *lib.* 13 *Therap Meth.* hath these words: In this thirteenth part of our whole worke we wil begin to discourse of those tumours happening besides nature, in which the parts haue forsaken their naturall constitution by becoming more bigge: so that you seeing the slender weight of these definitions, must annexe this particle, *actiones lædens*, hurting the duties of the bodie: or thus, inducing an euident detriment to the actions, or else they will not be absolute or essentiall: for euery tumour making distention or swelling in length, breadth, or profunditie, beyond the ordinarie constitution of nature, eyther in all the bodie, or in any part thereof: or, euery excrement or greatnesse exceeding nature, must not according to the vulgar acception be named either *Apostema*, or a swelling besides nature. For (as *Galen* saith in his booke *De tumoribus præter naturam*) such like augmentations may befall not onelie to the diseased, but also to the healthfull, as well in the whole bodie, as in any member of the same. For grosse men although they be enlarged, and as it were distended both in breadth and profunditie: yet they haue not this distention besides nature, but (as he saith) onely not naturally. For they haue not yet passed the bounds of nature, neither are the actions and duties of their part maimed or annoyed, which is the border of those increments which are besides nature: and those tumours which abide in those parts which are yet sound and without the taste of griefe, may well be said to be aboue and beyond nature, but not besides nature; as for example: if both the teats, or one of them onely, be maruellously increased, or inflated, yet so that his substance be free from all annoyance, this cannot appositiuely be said to be besides nature, but onely beyond nature. Therefore if you desire an absolute definition of this tumour which happeneth besides nature, collected out of the writings of *Galen*, you shall thus define it. A swelling besides nature is an increment surpassing the ordinarie habite of nature, bringing with it a maime to the actions thereof. But such like tumours besides

Accidentall definitions.

Definitio prima.

Secunda.

Tertia.

A perfect definitiõ besides nature, taken out of the writings of Galẽ.

sides nature are wont to be diuided into three kindes by *Guido* and those of his age, into impostumes, abscessions, or pushes and vleers. Impostumes they call great tumors, in which the matter whereof it springeth doth offend in plentie or quantitie. Pushes are those little tumours (which they call *Bothor*) in which, the substance whereof they arise is troublesome rather in quality then in quantitie; yea and in them there lurketh a poisonous venime (as they say.) But the Abscessions are those tumors which the Latines call *Abscessus*, & of the Greeks may well be named ἀπόστηματα. as we proued before: but let it be lawfull for euery man to impose what titles or names they will, so that (as *Galen* saith) they do not swarue or stray from the naturall meaning of the things themselues. Therfore leauing all the scrupulous and scholerlike contentions, which some do vse in the intreatie of this subiect, as impertinent to our purpose, I will orderly set downe the branches of all the tumors or impostumes (if so you will terme them) which happen besides nature: and first we will begione with inflammation.

The diuision of a tumour besides nature into his species, after the opinion of the later sort.
Apostemata.
Pustulæ.
Exituræ.

CHAP. II.

Of the difference of those tumours which happen besides nature.

THere be many and sundrie differences of tumours besides nature, which are commonly called by this generall name Apostemes: the differences whereof, of the later Chirurgians are obserued, to proceed either from the substance of the sore, or from the matter thereof, or from the accidents, or from the affected parts, or else from the efficient causes. The differences, which they desume from the substance, are supposed by *Auicene* and his sect to be two, either the greatnesse of the swelling, or the littlenesse thereof. Amongst the bigge tumours they do recken *Phlegmone* (which appeare commonly in the fleshie parts, which are fit to be distended) and *Oedema*, *Erysipelas*, and *Scirrhus*, which do all grow vp to a great bignesse and quantitie. Little tumours are called of them little eminences or appearings, or breakings out called pushes, which are commonly seene in the skinne and the vttermost parts of the bodie, as the Greekes leprosie, the scab, the ringworme, and such other like, of the which we will speake more large hereafter. The matter of the aforesaid tumours are the foure humours, as well naturall, as not naturall, that is to say, fleame, melancholie, choler, and those humours which are altogether besides nature; sometime the soundnesse of certaine bodies, and sometime a yellow or pale humour; the handling of all which differences we wil referre vnto another place. The symptomates or accidents which are commonly incident to these tumors, are, griefe, heate, softnesse, hardnesse, and such like: from the which they will deriue some differences. But those which they take from the members and from the affected parts, are *Ophthalmia*, the inflammation of the eye, the squince, the inflāmation of the throat, *Phyma*, *Phygethlum*, and those inflammations which we terme *Glandulæ* and *Bubones*. But the efficient causes from the which certaine differences be borrowed, are congestion and fluxe, and *Crisis*, that is to say, iudgement thereof, which happeneth

The diuision of a tumor into his differences.
From whence the differēces of tumours besides nature are taken of the later sort.
Substantia.
Materia.
Accidentia.
Pars affecta.
Causa efficientes.

in diseases. There be also certayne other causes both internall and externall, whereof we will dispute more copiously and earnestly in that which followeth. But yet truely all diuersities and differences of these kindes of swellings chancing aboue nature, haue their beginning from the nature and substance (which prouoketh the swelling) of that which floweth, as witnesseth *Galen* in his book which he wrote of Tumors aboue nature. Likewise in his second booke that he wrote *ad Glauconem cap.* 13. *Meth. med.* In which places he declareth, that the varietie of all swellings which are aboue nature, doth arise of the nature of that which floweth: for when (saith he) a flatuous matter hath more free accesse, then also the tumors are made more flatuous: but they are more like vnto *Phlegmone* when as bloud aboundeth: as likewise *Erysipelas*, when choler hath his course: and they also be more vexed with *Oedema*, when fleame or rheume descēding from the head doth reigne. Also they be grieued with the disease *Schirrhosis*, when either a thicke or too cold humour is setled in some part thereof. Therefore (as *Galen* saith) all tumours do chance besides nature, which proceede eyther of humours, or of a flatuous and windie spirit, which is gathered sometime vnder the skin, sometime vnder the thinne filmes that couer the bones; sometime in the belly, sometime in the intrailes, oftentimes in the midst of these, and of the *Peritonæum*. The Greekes call it *Emphysema*, and *Auicen* termeth it a windie *Apostema*. If such swellings happen of humours, then they are either hote, or cold, or mingled together. Hote tumours come of the best bloud, that is to say, which is perfectly ruddie, and of a meane soundnesse and moderate qualitie: and then the Greekes call it *Phlegmone*, the Latines *Inflammatio*: or they proceed of yellow choler, or of burning and thinne bloud, or else of those things which be hoter then bloud or choler. They terme this euill *Erysipelas*, but these name it *Sacer ignis*. But cold swellings are prouoked either through thin fleame, and then the Greekes call it *Oedema*, but our Phisitions terme it *Laxus tumor*, the Interpreter of *Auicen*, *Vndimia*: or also it is caused through the humor melancholy, or through thicke, cold, and clammie fleame. They call this *Schirron*, the Latines *Durities*, the Arabians, *Sephirus*. Also swellings sometimes do chance by reason of a late taking away superfluous bloud, as hereafter shall be declared. Tumors are said to be mingled, when such kind of humors are tempered together: and if one maistereth the other, the name is giuen to the swelling from that humour which exceedeth in the mixture: as in bloud-ruling choler, we will call *Phlegmone* the principall to be *Erysipelatodes*: and also because melancholie gouerneth, *Erysipelas* is said to be *Phlegmonodes*. Now of other mixtures there is the like interpretation, both of *Schirrus Phlegmonosus* with *Phlegmone Schirrhosa*, and of *Oedema Phlegmonosum* with *Phlegmone Oedematosa*. And after this example you shall name the other tumours, although there chance commixtion of three or foure humours together at once. Moreouer, if the humours be of like force, and equally incorporate, so that the one cannot ouercome the other, then we will name the tumours by the coupling together of those humours which they stirre or raise vp. As if bloud be equally mingled with choler, that euill may be called, by reason of their ioyning together, *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*, or (as *Galen* hath it) it may be termed a meane in the

From whence the difference of tumours aboue nature doth come.

Emphysema.

Calidi tumores.

Tumores frigidi.

Tumores serosi.

Tumores complicati.

One euill seemeth to haue affinitie with another.

the kind and nature of *Phlegmone* & *Erysipelas*. These truly be the chiefe swellings and tumors which are recited in *Galen* by the flowing of humours (that is to say) *Phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, *Aedema*, *Scirrus*: whereunto innumerable other tumors exceeding the measure and bounds of nature, are reduced, and comprehended, although they haue chosen to themselues diuerse names, according to their sundry causes. Therefore there pertaineth vnto a kind of *Phlegmone*, *Phygethon*, which is called *paruus*, (*Celsus* being the author) but of our men *Phyma* and *Tuberculum*: also it is named of the same *Celsus Terminthon*, of *Oribatius*, the kinds or *species* of *phyma*: but of *Aetius*, *phigethlum*: also they be called *Dothiens*, which *Celsus* calleth *Furunculi*, felons. Likewise *Gãgræna* of some member, νεκρώσις, that is to say, mortification, but not absolute, and also *Sphaselus*, which is called of the Latines, *Syderatio*, & of *Auicen*, *Ascachilos*. *Carbunculus* also is called of the Greeks *Anthrax*, whereof *Auicen* writeth in the chapter *De pruna & igne Persico*. But vnto *Erysipelas* are referred *Herpetes*, which in kinde be two maner of waies, that is to say, *Miliares* and *Excedentes*, biting and gnawing, which the Greeks do call ἑρπήματα. He which expoundeth *Auicen* hath called both the kinds *Formicæ*, but he being deceiued with the likenes of the name hath mixed them in the same Chapter by great ouersight, with those *Verrucæ* which the Greeks call *Myrmeciæ*, the Latines *Formicæ*. *Celsus* seemeth to haue comprehended those *Herpetes* vnder the name of *ignis sacer*: but the Chirurgians of later times haue numbred them among the cholericke pustules, as they terme them. There commeth also of choler almost all those diseases called of the Greekes *Phlyctænæ*, and therefore they belong vnto *Erysipelas*, whereof *Auicen* doth intreate in his chap. *De vesicæ inflammationibus*. Vnto the tumours caused of fleame, that is to say, vnto *ædemata*, are referred certain tumors comprehended of the Greeks vnder the name *Apostema*, which be called of *Auicen*, *Nodi*, of *Haly Abbas*, *Selaa*, and *dubeleta phlegmatica*, of the Latines *abscessus*: wherof there be diuers kinds, according to the diuers matters cõtained in them. Moreouer in *Galen* there be three kinds of *Abscessus* chancing very often, wherof euery one hath borrowed his proper name of the Greeks: those be *Atheromata*, *Stratomata*, *Melicerides*, which indeed be called after the likenes of bodies contained in thẽ, as we wil declare hereafter more at large. There is also a kind of *Apostema*, that is, of *abscessus*, wherein are other things contained, which do represent not onely the properties of humors but also of certain sound bodies: but these (saith *Galen*) chance very seldome, and of these we wil also speak hereafter when we shall intreate of abscessions. But now vnto the said kinds of *Abscessus* there appertaine certain names of tumors being deuised of the later sort, and neuer as yet found out amongst ancient writers, as *Testudo*, which is a soft swelling cleauing to the whole head of a man, and *Talpa*: the one seemeth to belong vnto *Atheroma*, the other vnto *Melicerides*. But vnto *Stratomata* doth belong a certain swelling without paine, which they call *nata*, or *napta*, whereof we will speake in his place. Hitherto also do pertaine the euils called of the Greekes *Ganglia*, of *Auicen*, *Glandulæ*, which do differ from the aforesaid *Nodi*. There commeth also of fleame that which the common sort call *Scrofula*, and therefore they are reduced vnto *ædemata*. These be called of the Greekes *Cherades*, of the Latines, *Strumæ*. Notwithstanding *Galen* in a certaine place

The chiefe tumors that are caused of flowing humours.

What tumors do associate phlegmone.

Erysipelatosi tumors.

Aedematosi tumores.

Certaine new names of tumors giuen of the latter sort of Phisitions.

Testudo.

Talpa.

Ganglium.

Strumæ.

amongest the diseases named *Scirrhi*, doth take it for *Durities*. Also vnto *ædema* is referred in *Galen* that kind of *Hydrops*, which is named of the Greekes, *Leucophlegmatia*, & *hypofarca*. But the swellings or tumors which pertaine vnto choler, and which be comprehended vnder the said *Schirrus*, are *Cancri*, which of the Greekes be called *Carnici*, and *Carcinomata*: Notwithstanding *Celsus* maketh a difference betweene *Cancer*, and *Carcinoma*, that he might say, that it did come and proceed by litle and litle of those things which do chance outwardly, and that it is ingendred within (some member being corrupted.) The same *Celsus* diuided *Cancer* into many parts or kindes, that is to say, into *Erysipelas*, *Gangræna* & *vlcus nigrum*: of this kind also is *Elephantus*, or *Elephantia*, or *Elephantiasis*, called of the common sort of Phisitions *Lepra*, and of some, *sancti Lazari morbus*. Therefore the name of *Lepra* signifieth with *Auicen* and with the vnlearned company, a most grieuous & deadly disease, when yet with *Gal. Paul. Aegineta*, & with other Grecians it is counted but a light griefe, not much differing from that which we call *Scabies*, which is called of the same writers *Psora*. Among this hard swelling kinde of tumors, are accounted the diseases called in the Latine tongue of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Verrucæ*, which be swellings like vnto little hillocks appearing in the skin, whereof they haue this name being called of the common sort *Porra*. To this kind also may be referred *Myrmeciæ*, as if one should call them *Formiculæ*, & *Acrocordones*, which of our countrimen are termed *Pensiles verrucæ*, and *Clauus* also, which in forme is like to a hard round pillar called of the Greekes ἧλος, of *Auicen* they are called *Almisinar*, *Thymion*, or *Thymon*, representing the knobby tops of the hearbe Thime. *Auicen* seemeth also to haue giuen it this name *Tusium*, or (as another translation hath it) *Tarsecum*. Also among the diuers kinds of *Veruecæ*, there be euils called of *Auicen Cornua*, so called, because they being very long, are turned againe crooked like vnto hornes. In like case also there be *Calli* which the Greekes call τυλοὶ, these are ingendred by means of the skin being obdurated and hardned through much labour. Vnto choler also there seemeth to pertaine this euill, which the Grecians cal *Dracontion*, the Latins, *Dracunculus*: according to the liuely similitude or likenes of that name, *Auicen* calleth it *Venæ medeni*, *Haly Abbas*, *Venæ sanioſæ*. Whereof *Paulus Aegineta* intreateth, *cap. vltimo lib.* 4. This disease is not very rife with vs. Besides these tumours which we now haue rehearsed, there chanceth other also, affecting oftentimes the superficiall parts of the body, that is to say, certain smal appearings, which they cal *Pustulæ*, and *Bothor*. Which although they differ both among themselues, and also from those tumours which we haue aboue recited, yet they are caused of the same humors, of the which also they are now called great tumours. Therefore they onely seeme to differ from them in respect of their greatnes and smalnes. But that such little tumours (which truly a Chirurgion ought not to be ignorant of) might appeare most manifest, and easie to be conceiued of euery man, I haue thought it expedient, and a thing worthy the labour, to set downe in this place the names of them, both in Greeke and Latine, and also their barbarous title, with a certaine rude description thereof, as we haue already done in the greater. Therefore, that we may enter into the matter it selfe, there are of the kinde of pustules or pushes, *Lepra*, so called of the Greekes, and retaining the

Leucopelegmatica.
Scirrhosi tumores.
Cancer.
Carcinoma.
Elephantiasis.
Verrucæ.
Porra.
Myrmeciæ.
Acrochordones.
Clauus.
Thymion.
Cornua.
Calli.
Dracunculi.
Pustulæ.

the ſame title amongſt the Latines, and *Pſora* called of the ſame writer *Scabies*, being truly diſeaſes very neare of affinitie among themſelues: for there is roughneſſe and ſharpeneſſe of the skinne, with itching and pritching in the bodie, comming of the ſame humour, that is to ſay, of choler. Notwithſtanding they differ in this, becauſe *Lepra* doth conſume the skinne with manifeſt ſcales ſomewhat deepe, as it were in a circle: but *Pſora* doth onely hurt the outward part with diuerſe formes, and doth vnloose a certaine ſcurfe of the body. Hitherto alſo doth pertaine that light infection of the skinne called of the Greekes *Lychene*, of the Latines *Impetigo*, in Engliſh the Ringworme, and commonly of ſome (as *Manardus* reporteth) they be called *Volatica*. This chanceth by reaſon of the mingled putrifaction of wilde bloud being thinne and ſharpe, with other that be thicke: and very often and eaſily it doth turne it ſelfe (*Galen* affirming the ſame) into the aforeſaid euills, that is to ſay, into *Lepra* and *Scabies*, which they call *Pſora*. Yet there are ſome which thinke, that that which the Greekes call *Lepra*, is called of *Celſus*, *Impetigo*. But truly ſeeing he doth write ſpecially of *Impetigo*, appointing foure kindes thereof, *Libro quinto ſuæ medicinæ*, it is euidently apparent, that he meant ſome other thing by this word *Impetigo*, then *Lychene* amongſt the Greekes, ſeeing that truly we neuer reade in any Greeke Author, that there were ſo many kindes of *Lychene* euer agreed of or acknowledged. Therefore if we will with *Galen* ſpeake properly, *Lepra*, and *Lychene* or *Impetigo*, cannot be one and the ſame euil: otherwiſe the ſame ſhould be changed into it ſelfe. That I may therefore draw the whole matter into few words: when the skinne is lightly infected, with an onely roughneſſe and itching, that is called in Greeke *Lychene*, but in Latine *Impetigo*, But when the griefe waxeth worſe, it changeth the name together with the forme. But if *Lychene* doth cauſe manifeſt ſcales, and doeth pierce the skinne ſomewhat deepely; it is properly called *Lepra*. But if it be ſtretched out onely by the outward *Superficies*, and doeth cauſe brannie or ſcalie bodies, it is called *Pſora* of the Greekes, of vs it is called properly *Scabies*. Although this word *Scabies* doth extend very farre commonly alſo among the Phiſitions of late time, who do name all the euill of the skin to be *Scabies*. But they ſpeake very improperly: for the pure and true *Scabies*, ſo called of the Latines, is without all doubt that diſeaſe which is called of the Greekes *Pſora*, of *Auicen* alſo *Albara* and *Morphea*, cleane contrarie to the opinion of ſome. For that which is ſaid of him and almoſt of all the Phiſitions of Africke to be *Albara*, is named of the Greekes and of *Celſus* alſo *Leuce*. But amongſt them it is called *Morphea*, among the Greeks *Alphon*, in which diſeaſe the whole fleſh is not affected, but onely the externall parts of the body, euen as though (as *Galen* ſaith) it were ſet about with certaine ſcales. But theſe *Alphi* (as it is in *Galen*) in their kinde are of two ſorts, that is to ſay, white, which come of fleame: and blacke, which proceede from a melancholike humour. But theſe things we haue ſpoken of, being led by the conſequence of things. For neither *Leuce* nor *Alphi* themſelues are accounted amongſt the tumors beſides nature, but rather among the euils of the skinne. Which things although they hurt very little, yet becauſe they do diſhoneſt and bring ſhame, they are wont to be for the moſt part a greater beauineſſe

Lepra.
Pſora.
Lychene.
Foure kinds of Impetigo.
Lepra.
Pſora.
Scabies.
Albara.
Leuce.
Alphon is of two ſorts.

and wearinesse (especially vnto women) then many other diseases which truly do hurt, but yet they be secret. Both these euils, that is to say, *Leuce* and *Alphi*, *Celsus* hath comprehended vnder the name of *Vitiligo* (making three kindes thereof) although other Students of Phisick, turning Greek into Latin, do conuert *Leuce* in al places into *Vitiligo*, which would more aptly agree if it were put with his Epithet or addition, as to say, *Alba vitiligo*. *Vitiligo* therefore, if we wil comprehend it vnder any certain head or kind, is a filthy colour of the skin, proceeding of an euill habite of some part of the body, which could not well receiue any nourishment to it selfe. For this euill chanceth through the default of the nourishing facultie, whereof some do constitute two kindes, the one which doth infect the skinne onely with certaine markes, which do cleaue fast vnto it like vnto little scales; the other which goeth in somewhat deeper, so that it toucheth the very flesh, and coloureth the haires: for in it there ariseth gray haires, like vnto a certaine kind of mosinesse: this is gathered together of viscous and glutinatiue fleam: but both of them do defile & staine, either with their white, or especially with their black colour. The first *species*, which is aloft and superficiall, whether it be white or blacke, it is called of the Greeks, *Alphis*, by the same name, as before, because it changeth the colour of the skinne, for ἀλφίνει (whereof ἄλφις is deriued) signifieth amongst the ancient Greekes to change. *Auicen* calleth it *Morphea*. But the other kinde, which we haue declared to pierce somewhat deeper, is called of the Greekes, and of *Celsus* also *Leuce*, and of the rest of the Latins *alba vitiligo*, of *Auicen*, *Albara*. *Haly Abbas* onely among the Arabians calleth it *Lepra*, a filthy disease which is hard to be cured, yet he doth not declare it to be pernicious and deadly, who hath not accounted it altogether as a light thing (as the Greeks affirme it) & litle differing from a scab: neither (as *Auicen* thought) pernicious and grieuous, but onely lothsome and filthy. Whereby we may coniecture, that little credite is to be attributed to wordes or names, vnlesse the matter be throughly discouered. For one and the selfe-same word by varietie of Authors, hath enforced to vphold many diuerse and different significations, as in their Commentaries doth euerie where appeare. But we haue spoken by the way of the euills and defedations of the skinne, onely that the confusion of things might be eschued, which happeneth by words mis-understood. Therefore omitting these things, we will returne vnto our purpose, and with as much breuity as we can, we will dispatch the discourse of the residue of swelling sores, among which, besides those which we haue rehearsed and touched alreadie, are reckened by the Greeks, *Ionthi*, *Epinyctides*, *Hidroa*, *Psidraces*, *Exanthemata*, *Celsi papulæ*, and *Plinij mentagra*. *Ionthi* are little swellings, and those hard, which arise in the outward skinne and *Superficies* of the face (as *Paulus* and *Galen* thought) proceeding from a grosse humour, which are either resolued, or else ripened by a litle matter which springeth with it. The Latines call them *Vari*: *Galen* maketh mention *libro quinto*, *De medicam. secundum locos*, of an affect, which he calleth *Ionthosus affectus*, which he saith is the foundation and beginning of *Elephantiasis*, vnder the which disease he seemeth to comprehend the third and fourth kinde of that which *Celsus* nameth *Impetigo*. *Epynictides*, (as *Celsus* supposeth) are Pestilent pushes, eyther of pale colour, or of a blacke colour

Vitiligo.

Small credit to be giuen to wordes or names.

Ionthi.

Epinyctides.

lour, or of a white hew, not exceeding the bignesse of a beane, arising eyther in the legs or in the feet. About them there is alwayes a very vehement inflammation, and when they are opened, there is found a very thick and clammy exulceration within. His colour is like vnto his humor: but the griefe greatly surpasseth the bignesse of the sore, which in quantitie surmounteth not a beane. They borrowed their title from the night, either (as *Celsus* thought) because that in the night time they pricked and molested more grieuously, or because they most cõmonly arise in the night. *Pliny* termeth them blewish pushes, disquieting especially in the night time. The Arabians call them *Essere*, *Sere*, or *Saire*, which words explane the forenamed nature of the sore. Those which are called of the Greeks *Hidroa*, the Latins terme *Sudamina*, & *Plinie Papulæ sudorum*, *Auicen*, *Planta noctis*, & *Almansorus*, & *Alhasaphum*: whereby it cometh to passe, that *Epinyctis* doth much differ from *Auicen* his *Planta noctis*, althogh the Greek word *Epinyctis* doth draw his originall from the night. But these *Sudamina*, as *Galen* saith, *lib. 4. Aph. Aphor. 21.* are reckned amongst those kind of pushes or whelks, which sticking in the very *superficies* of the body, do pricke and shoot, not vnlike to our common vlcers: and they come (as their name doth declare) by many bilious sweats, which bite the skin, & make it to itch and pricke like vlcers. But this affect is common to boyes and yong men, and to those which are cholericke, & in the time of heate; but it is so easie to be cured, that of it selfe (without any aide) it will heale, ripening with a white top. But *Auicen* thinkes, that these desudations, by their description, agree rather with *Celsus* his *Exanthemata*, then with *Galen* his *Sudamina*. But he who wil obserue the nature of the words, will thinke that *Auicen* his desudations may well be the Greekes *Hidra*, which the Latines call *Sudamina*. But we must not follow the names so much among the Barbarian and Arabian Writers, but the genuine and sincere descriptions of the things themselues. *Psydraces* or *Psydraica*, are pushes, which abiding in the very vttermost part of the skinne, are resembled to bladders excited by fire, which are called *Phlyctæne*. These rise specially in the head. *Psizacion* is not truly read in *Celsus* for *Psydracion*. Those pushes which grow in the skinne, first comming by thicke humours stuffed in the skinne, and are commonly called *Morbilli* and *Variolæ* of *Galen*, because they swell, and waxe big, as it were the bud of a flower, they are called *Exanthemata*; but of *Hippocrates* (because they do breake out of themselues) they are termed *Ecthymata*. For ἄνθος whereof *Exanthema* is deriued, signifieth a flower, and ἐκθυεῖν (wherof *Ecthyma* commeth) signifieth to burst out. *Pliny* calleth such pushes, whelks, and the corruptions of flegme. But these are of two kinds: for some of them are steep, and some go out into breadth. Those which are steep, do grow of a more thinne and hote humour, and do excite itch; but those which are broad, do flow, and proceed from a more cold and thicke humour, and do not a whit procure itch. The first sort of the common Phisitions are knowne by the name *Morbilli*: the second by this name *Variolæ*. But the Frenchmen preposterously abusing the names, haue called the low and broad kinde *Rubeole*, but the higher sort *Variole*. *Hippocrates in libro tertio* Epi. doth diuide these kindes of pushes into little and great *Ecthymata*, in calling the steeper kinde *Magni herpetes*, eyther because (as *Galen* saith) they occupy a great place, or else because they happen with a vehement gnawing.

Why they be called Epinyctides.

Sudamina.

Planta noctis

Desudationes Auicenæ.

Psydraces.

Morbilli.

Variolæ.

Exanthemata

Ecthymata.

For indeed these sometimes appeare great in height onely, sometimes both in height and breadth. *Cornelius Celsus libr. 5. medicinæ suæ* in his treatise of *Impetigo*, remembreth two kindes of whelkes: the one somewhat small, which if it be daily rubbed with fasting spittle, it waxeth whole: the other somewhat greater, wherein the skinne is made more sharpe, and is exulcerate, and groweth very vehemently, and looketh red, and is hardly cured. He saith, that this is termed of the Greekes ἄγρια, in Latine *fera*. But in both these kinds he confesseth, that there is lesse impediment or corruption then in *Impetigo*, so that he affirmeth, that euill, whose cure is hard, except it be taken away, doeth change and turne into *Impetigo*. The Frenchmen (if I may iudge thereof) do call both these kindes, but specially the first, *Dartræ*. For that euill beginneth to be very round, and after the same manner it commeth (as it were) into a circle, and creepeth slowly. Which whelkes or pushes do agree in all things to be those which are said of *Celsus* to be of the first kinde. Some do constantly affirme, that these whelkes so named of *Celsus*, do nothing differ from *Lychene* among the Grecians, or the *Impetigo* among the Latines. And we haue read, that that onely Author among the Latines hath turned *Lychene* into *Papulæ*. *Mentagra* a Latine word vsed of *Plinie*, wherein he seemed in the beginning *libr. 26.* to haue altogether meant another thing from *Impetigo*, and that it was farre away a worse euill then that which the Greekes comprehend vnder the name of *Lychene*, although in his Physicke he hath interpreted sometime *Lychene* among the Greekes, to be *Impetigo*, and the like disease called *Mentagra*, he termeth also in the same place *Lychene*. Furthermore, the same *Plinie* reporteth, that this euill crept first into Italy in the raigne of *Tiberius Cæsar*, which griefe in all the time before was vnknowne to all Europe, much lesse vnto Italy. It was of so great filthinesse and corruption, that anie death was to be preferred or wished before it, and also of so great infection, that by the swift passage thereof, onelie by kissing one another it infected the people, but chiefly those that were gouernors and rulers among them. This euill beganne almost at the chinne, for that it did chiefly affect and annoy, whereupon it tooke this name *Mentagra*. This perhappes is that scabbe, which certaine of the Frenchmen call *mala dartra*. *Galen* also seemeth to acknowledge this disease: for in his first booke *De medicam. compos. secundum locos*, he remembreth a most vile kind of *Impetigo* of the chinne, which (as he rehearseth out of *Crito*) prouoketh itching, it afflicteth also the patients, and bringeth them into no small danger. For sometime (saith he) it ruoneth ouer the whole face, and goeth vp to the very eies, and it causeth the greatest deformitie of the bodie almost that can be: which description of *Impetigo*, doth consent in all things with the *Mentagra* of *Plinie*. But they do greatly erre, which do thinke that this most contagious *Lychene*, called of *Pliny Mentagra*, is that disease which at this day commonly some do call *Gallicum malum*, some *Neapolitanum*, othersome not bearing any hate or iniurie to their Countries, do call it *Venereum*. For this infection was altogether vnknowne to the ancient Phisitions, and also of the former age: and first of all it crept into Neapolis, in the yeare after the incarnation of Christ 1493. at which time *Charles* the eight, the most inuincible king of France did ouercome and winne the Alpes, going about also to

Papulæ Celsi.

Dartræ Gallicæ.

Mentagra.

Plinie lib. 26.

Galen acknowledgeth Mentagra.

Morbus Neapolitanus, & venereus.

inuade

inuade Italy; although not long before, it had spread it selfe abroad through the countries of Spaine, as some report. Wherefore hauing as it were the originall and beginning from thence, it beganne to be called *Hispanica lues*, the Spanish pestilence: which plague being sent vpon the earth, as it were, by the iust reuengement of GOD (as we may thinke) for their filthie and abhominable whoredome forbidden of God, hath corrupted and ouerthrowne with the contagion thereof a great part of humane kind. For the same sickenesse the magistrates and officers tasted of, the prisoners and captiues felt, the heads of their countries sustained, and the common people also were infected withall: so swift was the passage thereof from one to another: and now also it strayeth & wandereth through the countries of Spaine, France, Italy, & all Europe, to the great annoyance of the people. There are also certaine pushes besides these, rehearsed euen now out of *Auicen li.* 4. called *Glandosæ*, which do seeme to differ nothing from the disease called *Ganglion*, but in respect onely of the lesser or the greater. There is mention also made by the same *Auicene libro* 3. of certaine whelks, which he calleth in the same place *bothores iunctturarum*: and *in libr.* 4. he calleth them *almatim*, which, because he sheweth that they be blacke and resembling greene corne, they must doubtlesse be those which the Greekes call *Terminthi*, which a little before we accounted among the *species* of *Phyma*. These *Celsus* seemeth to compare vnto *vari*, which be spots in the face: who also iudgeth them to be called of the Greekes *heleodes*, that is, *vlcerosæ*, full of scabs or sores. These white and milkie pushes, so called of *Rasis* and *Serapion*, and of *Auicen*, *leuis bothor*, if their descriptions be throughly considered, they will seeme to pertaine vnto the whelks called of the Greeks *Ionthi*, which we in Latine haue named *vari*: although the selfe same remedies which *Auicene* hath set downe for them, be taught of *Dioscorides* for the disease *ephelide*, that is to say, for the roughnesse and swartnesse of the face, being caused by the heate of the Sunne. Hitherto we haue intreated of the differences of tumours aboue nature, which chiefly haue their residence outwardly aboue the bodie. Now let vs proceed to declare the causes of them.

Pustulæ glandosæ.

Terminthi.

Pustulæ albæ.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of tumors aboue nature, appearing vniuersally on the outside of the bodie.

THere are two causes of tumors chancing besides nature, agreed of among the latter sort of Physitions and Chirurgians: that is to say, generall and speciall causes. Generall causes are these, the fluxe, which the Greeks call ῥεῦμα, and the congestion or heaping together of humors. Againe, by the same Writers there are appoynted to be sixe causes in number of this fluxe, that is to say, 1. the strength of the repulsiue member: 2. the weaknesse of the retentiue: 3. the abundance and plentie of matter: 4. the loosenesse or fulnesse of the pores of the body, through the which the fluxe happeneth: 5. the straightnesse of the repulsiue parts: 6. and the lower situation of the place retayning the fluxe. But these may be reduced vnto foure heads, as vnto the repulsiue member, the part that retaineth, the state of the humour that floweth, and the place or course through the which the flowing chanceth. But the fluxe is prouoked

The causes of tumors besides nature.

Fluxionis causa.

Pars propellẽs

Particula excipiens.

Humor fluens.

either by the meanes of the expulsiue member, or because of the fortitude of the expulsiue vertue, or by reason of the naturall knitting together that it hath with the retentiue member, or because of the straitnesse of the particular pores: but some part receiueth the fluxe, because it is either painfull, or hot, or somewhat weake, or seldome, and base, or setled in the neather roome. Furthermore by meanes of the humor, there is a defluxion or flowing downe into some part of the body, because it is in abundance superfluous, of nature troublesome, and of substance thin. But the space or place is a cause of the fluxe, by reason of the largenesse of the passages, as of the veins, arteries and pores. But of congestion, (which is the other generall cause of tumours which chance aboue nature) there are assigned two causes, that is to say, the fault of the vertue nutritiue, and the imbecillity of the vertue expulsiue. By which things we gather, that hote tumours happen for the most part through the defluxion of humors, but cold tumours are rather prouoked by their congestion. But after what manner a hote fluxe exciteth the tumour, *Galen* doth declare plainely and wittily, in that little booke which he intituled *Inæqualis intemperies*, writing after this manner: A hote descending of a fluxe (saith he) as soone as it hath once placed it selfe in the muscle, first the greater arteries and veines are filled and stretched out, then by their meanes the lesser are distended, and so it proceedeth vntill it commeth to the least of all. In them, when a fluxe is strongly compact together, and can no longer be contained, part thereof issueth out through the extreme parts of them, and part is strained out through the holes of the tunicles, and is speedily sent forth; and then those void places are filled with the fluxe, which are betweene the best and chiefest bodies. Thus all things proceeding of the humour, do waxe hote in euery place, and also are still powred forth. And these are the sinewes, the bindings or ligaments, the small filmes, the very flesh, and besides these, the arteries and veines, which truly being the principall, are diuersly and many wayes afflicted aboue the rest. For inwardly, by reason of the fluxe they are both made hote, and also are stretched out, and torne and pulled asunder. And outwardly also, they are not onely made hote, but also are suppressed and made heauy. But the other parts of the body, some truly are onely made hote or kept downe, and some are affected with both. And this disease is called *Phlegmone*. Hitherto *Galen*. Therefore in such kinde of tumours chancing besides nature, which are caused of the flowing of humours, something already (at the least way at the beginning, and before the fluxe did begin to striue) is made & ingendred, and something is yet to come, and resteth in the generation. That which doth happen as yet, is the matter which went before, which as yet abideth in the fluxe: but that which is ingendred already, is the ioyned matter, which hath already flowed, and is compact in the aggrieued place. Hereupon therefore there must be vsed a diligent care of the Physition in such kinds of *Phlegmone* which as yet remain in generation (as in all other tumors also and diseases which are yet in beginning, neither as yet haue obtained perfection) as *Galen lib.13. meth. med.* doth declare them to be knowne and perceiued, both by that which foreseeth, & that which cureth: but these things pertaine to another kind of study. But it is conuenient that we set downe the speciall causes of tumours which are aboue nature, to the

Spatium.

Causes of congestion.

How a hote defluxion prouoketh a tumour.

There is a twofold declaration of all those euills which are yet in begetting.

the which these three are commonly appointed: Primitiue causes, which we call both *Prægressæ* and *Euidentes*; and causes antecedent, which we name *Antecedentes*: and ioined causes, which we terme *Coniunctæ* or *Continẽtes*. These be called of the Greekes προκαταρκτικαὶ, προηγούμεναι, συνεκτικαὶ. The primitiue causes are said to be these, which while they do worke any disease, are separated, as a fall, a stripe, a blow, a bruise, a tumor, or a solutiõ, or that euil which is cõmitted by admitting a dissolute diet. Antecedent causes, are those which of themselues are fit and materiall to beget any disease or affect, as are foure humours both naturall, and not naturall. Naturall humours are those which serue to nourish the body, and haue their being with the bloud, and are comprehended vnder the name of bloud. Which if they be sent out from the veins and arteries, they do suddenly congeale and gather together, whether they flow without the body, or do remaine stil in the place wherein they be contained. But they call those vnnaturall humours, which are found seuered from the bloud, with the which the body is nourished; and by reason of their corruption & naughtines by their owne nature are not nutritiue, the which do somtime grow, although they remaine in the aire which compasseth vs. And these, as it were, by a certaine kind of prouidence of nature, being destined and ordained for some vse, are demitted and sent into certaine receptacles, either into the vttermost parts of the body, and so ingender vnkind swellings, called *Abscessus*, or whelkes, scabbes, desedations and alterations of the skinne, and vnnaturall sweats: or sometime by an insensible aire inwardly infused they do excite sweatings. Sometime also they putrifie within, and beget Feauers. But such like (say they) are improperly termed humours, assuming to themselues the names of naturall humors. For they hold this opinion, that onely those iuyces which come from the liuer in the generation of bloud, and of nutrition and moisture, are properly to be termed naturall humours. Such are sincere and pure bloud, cholericke also, flegmaticke and melancholicke; by the which foure kindes, all the parts of the body are generally nourished and maintained: some parts with a more pure, and (as I may say) a more bloudy humour: other with a humour more cholericke, other with a flegmaticke, and other with a melancholicke, as the nature of euery part requireth. Therefore all the humours are contained in the veines and arteries, the which may appeare by their varietie of colour and consistencie (as *Galen* hath expressed *in libro de atra bile.*) Furthermore, of those foure humours which are called naturall, foure especiall Tumours are ingendred, which are commonly called *Apostemata*. In the which the swelling is very bigge, and the matter doth offend rather in quantitie then in qualitie. They are called by their proper names, *phlegmone, erysipelas, ædema, scirrhus*. Of humours not naturall (as it pleaseth the latter Physitions) do proceed *Abscessus*, which they also call *Exituræ* and *Pustulæ*, which they thinke cannot well be called Apostemes. To the which they will adde and reduce two other kindes also, flatuous and watery, which proceed of a fluible substance, and are commonly called *apostemata ventosa & aquosa*, that is, windie and waterish apostemes. There be therefore six titles attributed vnto simple tumors, that is, *phlegmonosi, erisypelatosi, ædematosi, scirrhosi, flatuosi, & aquosi*. But the compound tumours are not called according to the concourse of humors,

Speciall causes of tumours aboue nature.

Prægressæ.

Antecedentes.

Which are said to be naturall humours.

Which are said to be vnnaturall.

What iuyces are properly termed naturall humours.

Of the foure naturall humours are ingendred foure lawfull aud especiall tumours.

What tumors do come of vnnaturall humours.

(because a great many may happen in one disease) but they are named by the predominant humour, especially as we haue manifested heretofore, and will hereafter more plentifully in his owne place. But *coniunctæ causæ* or *continentes* of those tumors besides nature, which they commonly call *apostemata, pustulæ*, and *exituræ*, are matters and seuerall substances, which are found to be aggregated and stuffed together in the affected part, and which do yet remaine after they haue excited the swelling: and while they increase, the tumors also do greatly augment; and when they decrease, the tumours are diminished: and when their substance is vtterly spent and extinguished, the Tumours also of themselues do fall away. And this cause, called *coniuncta* or *continens causa*, of all the maladies and sundrie dispositions of the bodie, is after this manner by *Auicen* defined, that when it is present, his disease alwayes accompanies him: and also when it is taken away, his disease also vanisheth. But for all this, some Physitions of our age, and those very well learned, do contend that *Galen* would admit but two causes, that is to say, an externall and an internall: or as they say now, a primitiue and an antecedent. Of the which, that (he saith) doth happen to the body outwardly, which altereth and changeth the same greatly, the which alwayes is separated, vntill it hath established his maladie, as heate, cold, the biting of a Scorpion. But the internall hath his being within the body, and doth presently procreate the maladie, as are humours affected besides nature. But they do constantly affirme, that he neuer so much as dreamed of that, which they terme *causa coniuncta*, when as according to his opinion, euerie affect which letteth and hindereth the actions and dueties of the bodie, is a maladie it selfe, and not the cause of a maladie: and that *coniuncta causa*, which *Auicen* and his Sect haue inuented, according to their owne description, which they assigne vnto it, is nothing but a certaine kinde of affect letting the execution of those dueties pertaining to the bodie, which is the verie definition of a maladie it selfe. And therefore they proue, that it nothing differeth from a disease it selfe, which is wont to preiudice those actions which agree with nature. But because one and the selfe same opinion hath occupied all mens minds of this latter age, concerning this triple kinde of the causes of all such diseases, it shall not seeme altogether absurd, if that I throughout all this Treatise of mine, for plainenesse sake, shal diuide & distinguish these three causes, into these three kinds and titles: I meane *primitiua, antecedens* and *coniuncta*. And thus much for the causes of tumours happening besides nature. Now the course of our Treatise doth exact that we should adde the signes and tokens of the same, if that before, we shall intreate somewhat of the nature and generation of the *abscessus*. *Abscessus* therefore, called of the Greeks ἀποσήματα, and of the common Physitions *exituræ*, are called of *Galen* (*libro de tumoribus præter naturam, & secundo ad Glauconem*) dispositions, in which the parts of the body do depart one from another, which before did touch and meete: for the matter which doth excite these tumours, being thrust out without the flesh of the muscle, doth bring the parts out of their places, and maketh them part and seuer. Therefore saith *Galen*, there must of necessitie be a place voide in the middest, which borroweth either some flatuous, moist, or tempered, or mixed substance from the parts, which in length of time is altered into many and

Coniunctæ causæ tumorum præter naturã

What it is which is called continens causa.

Some thinke that coniuncta causa nothing differeth from the maladie it selfe.

What abscessus Galen thinketh to be.

and ſundry circumſtances. But there is a double kind of theſe *abſceſſus*: one is, when as the inflammation being turned into matter, the matter it ſelfe is packed vp together in a corner or hole: the other is, when as no inflammation proceeding or going before a certaine humour, either vaporous, or elſe a ſubſtance mixed of both parts, is in ſome part collected together, which alſo happeneth two wayes: for either in the ſpace lying betweene the ſeuered parts, ſuch like ſubſtance is ingendred, or elſe it runneth into the parts themſelues, and that either in the beginning, or elſe that way by the which thoſe diſeaſes happen, called ἀποσκήμματα which (ſaith *Galen*) then do chance, when as humours which before haue infeſted and grieued ſome one part, do thence remoue, and are enforced into another. And this ſubſtance which begetteth this *abſceſſus*, worketh himſelfe a place betweene the skinne and the fleſh. And in time it doth fley off all the skinne, eyther becauſe it is very vehement, or elſe becauſe the plenty of matter doth putrifie, and ſo breake the skin. But if thoſe humors, with the which the ſpace ſituated betweene the ſeuered parts is filled, do continue any time, they haue (as I ſaid before) many alterations, and are changed into many ſubſtances, which do repreſent the properties not onely of humors, but euen of ſolide and hard bodies. For you ſhall find ſundry matters within theſe ſpaces, ſome like vnto ſtones, ſome to grauell and ſand, ſome to wood, ſome to coles, ſome to dirt, ſome to the foam of oiles, ſome to the dregs of wine: the varietie of ſubſtances ſome ignorant men haue thought to proceed from the force of incantation.

Two kinds of abſceſſus, Gal. lib. 14. Thera. meth. & lib. 2. ad Glauconem

ἀποσκήμματα.

What things may be found in abſceſſus.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the ſignes of tumours beſides nature generally appearing, together with the iudgements thereof.

TVmours beſides nature, being reſiant in the extremeſt parts of the bodie (the examining and ſpeculation whereof doth appertaine to the Chirurgion) being ſurueyed by the iudgement of the ſenſes, and the affected parts being touched and felt with the hands, are eaſily deſcried and knowne. For in euery part of the body, there appeareth a certaine kind of increaſing exceeding the naturall ſtate, and diſtending aboue the meaſure of nature, that part which it affecteth, and it letteth the ducties or actions thereof, becauſe either ſome humour, or ſome ſuch ſubſtance proceeding of the humour, or which do ſauour ſomewhat of the nature of the humour, or a vaporous ſpirit hath excited it, there alſo muſt needs happen a tumor beſides nature. But the tumors which they call true Apoſtemes, are diſcerned by their ſwelling, by their paine, and by their heate, being ſtretched out more or leſſe. But they are not counted to be true Apoſtemes indeed, which we haue termed *puſtulæ* and *abſceſſus*, beſides that tumor: which malady the Grecians call *cacoethia*, and alſo in the greater or leſſer ſequeſtration, *determinata*. But the ſignes of euery particular difference, and of their matter whereof they be ingendred, ſhall be declared in their due place, in that which followeth. In the meane time we will handle the ſimple differences of thoſe tumors which are aboue nature, by the which the compound differences ſhall alſo be eaſily knowne. But we muſt not

General ſignes of tumors aboue nature.

Particular ſignes.

come vnto particular things, before we haue throughly discourſed of vniuerſall, for that order is wont to be obſerued in the inſtitutions of the Arts, neyther truly vnworthily, or without cauſe. For thoſe vniuerſall and common things are more manifeſted vnto vs then particular, becauſe theſe particular things are more confuſed and more mixed one with another, as *Ariſtotle* teacheth *lib.1.Phyſicorum,ca.1.* Let no man therfore maruell,though euery where in this treatiſe of Chirurgery, we alwayes begin of more common things, and of thoſe which comprehend many things vnder them. But let vs returne to our purpoſe, and let vs proſecute the iudgements of tumors conſiſting aboue nature. In the which firſt of all we muſt note,that all thoſe tumors which they call true Apoſtemes, (if we will credit *Galen* and *Auicen*) are greatly complicate and folded together, neyther can any of them be eaſily iudged or found out to be pure and ſincere: for (as *Galen* ſaith) with *Phlegmone*, that is, with an inflammation coming of bloud, there is ſomething chiefly mingled which doth preſerue the nature either of *Eryſipelas*,or *ædema*,or *ſcirrhus*: but chiefly *Eryſipelas*,becauſe it repreſenteth a kind of *Phlegmone*,or *Aedema*,or *Scirrhus*:and ſo conſider and mark in all the reſt of the tumors. But truly thoſe tumors beſides nature,which they terme not true Apoſtemes,are very often found ſincere and pure. But we will handle the cures of ſimple and ſincere tumors in thoſe things which follow, by the which the remedies alſo of compound and intricate tumors ſhall manifeſtly appeare. For I thinke it good to diſcourſe of all the kinds of tumors, and alſo to diſpoſe aright that which ſhall ſeeme ſuperfluous. For if a man ſhall know all the ſimple tumors, and learne after what manner they be compounded together, he ſhall be furniſhed ſufficiently to exerciſe himſelfe particularly in the reſt. But now let vs ſee other opinions and iudgements generally concerning the tumors themſelues. *Periodi,paroxiſmi*,and the *criſes* of tumors beſides nature,do follow the analogie of the humours whereof they be conflated or ingendred, (*Guido* affirming the ſame) which analogie, we heere declare to be a property or proportion, a nature or a likeneſſe of ſubſtance, which they call *forma ſpecifica & occulta*, a ſpeciall and hidden forme. Such kind of tumors, eſpecially they which be wholeſome, and which are cauſed of the flowing of humours, are diſtinguiſhed by foure times, that is to ſay, by their beginning, by their increaſing, by their ſtate, and by their declination. The ſigne of their beginning is, when the member beginneth to be ſtretched out,and when the beginning of fluxe is preſent,but yet with ſmall griefe. We may alſo iudge augmentation to be preſent, when we ſee the tumor to be raiſed like a heape or pile, and the place affected to be filled, and the ſymptomates which are wont to follow euery tumour, to be manifeſtly increaſed. But the tokens of their ſtate is, when all the aforeſaid things, that is to ſay, the tumour, and the ſymptomates of the differences of euerie tumour hath his owne proper force and vigour, neither can they any longer admit any increaſing, but the matter cauſing the tumour doth degenerate and change it ſelfe into another kinde of ſubſtance. But their declination is then knowne to be preſent, when the pile of the tumour and the proper ſymptomates thereof are decreaſed and diminiſhed, or when the matter which prouoketh the tumour beginneth to be transformed into another ſubſtance. Therefore ſuch kind

1 *Iudicia.*

Lib. de differ. morborum.

Foure kindes of tumors beſides nature.

1 *Principium.*

2 *Augmentum.*

3 *Status*

4 *Declinatio.*

kinde of times do receiue their differences from three kindes especially, that is to say, from the essence of the tumor it selfe, that is, from the greatnesse or smalnesse, from the disposition of the matter, and from the accidents, which do very much alter the declaration of the cure. But these foure times, somtime do seeme to happen all together, because of the short hardnesse of euerie one of them, which almost cannot be perceiued, (as it chanceth in the venimous inflammations,) yet not mortall or deadly, which straightway do flourish and increase. Furthermore these kinde of tumours, which do chiefly happen thorow the influxion of humours, except they be hindered by repressing the matter that floweth, or except they lurke secretly within, eyther of their owne accord, or without any manifest cause, (the fluxe having recourse thither) it is necessarie that they should be comprehended vnder one of these foure, either vnder insensible exhalation or resolution, or vnder suppuration, or putrifaction, or induration and hardening. But of all these wayes the best, and the most to be desired, is that which is made by an insensible dissolution, and next to that, that which commeth by suppuration or mattering. But that which is caused by induration and hardening, is said to be euill, and that which happeneth by the corruption of the affected part, is to be thought the worst of all the which *Galen* doth insinuate *in libro de inæquali intemperie*, writing on this manner: Therefore of the two, we must of necessitie follow the one, either that the bodie be putrified and corrupted, because fluxion is predominant, or else we must graunt that this putrifaction being resisted and ouercome, the muscle must returne to his naturall habite and constitution. Let vs therefore imagine that all fluxion is withstood and impeached, then you haue two meanes to cure it, eyther by digesting those humours which were in the affected part, or by dissoluing or loosening them: of these the dissolution is best. But in the concoction of the humours, these two things are specially required, viz. the perfect generation of the matter, and also his abscession into some space by it selfe. And a little beneath he addeth also these wordes. But if that fluxion do make the parts as it were subiect to it, then they do fall to so great an intemperature, that their ordinarie action perisheth, and in processe of time they are corrupted and putrified. Thus farre *Galen*. The tokens of dissolution and loosening of the humours are these: the softnesse of the sore, and the little throbbing and beating thereof. But the signes of predominant fluxion, and of the putrifaction of the part it selfe, are the blacke and blew colour, to which also sometime happeneth an odious stinch. But the tokens of a stony hardnesse of the tumor are, the imminution of the tumor, and also the extreame hardnesse thereof. The notes and signes also of the egestion and lurking of the tumor, are, the sodaine diminution thereof, which chanceth sometime by too much refrigeration and coldnesse, sometime by reason of a secret venime, which lurketh in the place. And this same sodaine and often imminution of the tumour succeedeth commonly some feauer, and also other euill symptomates. And thus farre of the signes and tokens of those tumours which our common Phisitions haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*. The tokens also of those tumours which we call *Pustulæ*, shall not be forgotten, when we shall haue occasion to handle

The times of tumors do take their differēce from three things chiefly.

Tumors aboue nature are cōtained vnder foure moodes.

Gal. lib. de inæquali intemperie.

Signes of dissolution.

Signes of putrifaction.

Signes of induration.

Signes of the regression and lurking of a tumor.

handle them. But the ſignes and tokens of the abſceſſes, commonly called *Exitura*, either thoſe which foreſhew their coming, or elſe thoſe which do manifeſt their preſence already, are theſe. When thou ſeeſt (ſaith *Auicen*) pulſation and beating, or hardneſſe to haue continued a great time, and alſo that the grieſe together with much heate doth augment, then you may imagine that the next euent that followeth, is, that the Apoſteme will be turned into matter and ſuppuration, and ſo conſequently to be an abſceſſion. But when thou findeſt that the place is ſoft, and that the grieſe is ſomewhat aſſwaged, and the heate mitigated, and that one place of the tumor is ſupereminent aboue the reſt; and againe if by thruſting it with your finger, you ſhall perceiue a wateriſh inundation to ſubſiſt; and againe that the colour of his top ſhall waxe white, then you may well thinke that the tumour is mattered, and alſo that it is turned into abſceſſion. And therefore it was well iudged of *Hippocrates*, that Feauers did oftner happen when that the matter was in ripening, then when it was alreadie come to his maturitie. Moreouer, the markes and tokens as well of the preſent abſceſſion, as alſo of the abſceſſion to come, are comprehended in theſe common verſes,

Signes of abſceſſion to come.

Signes of abſceſſion already preſent.

Aph. 47 li. 2.

Duities longa, pulſus, dolor, & calor aucti,
Signant pus fieri: ſed factum, dicta remiſſa,
Sub digitis vndans, albeſcens pars & acuta,

Which may be thus Engliſhed,

By hardneſſe long, by pulſe and grieſe, and eke by heate increaſd,
We know that matter doth approch but made we iudge indeed,
If that it yeeld to fingers weight, and whiteneſſe doth appeare,
——— and painfull be alſo.

But you muſt be very attentiue and vigilant in diſcerning and iudging of the matter it ſelfe. For the manifeſt knowledge of the matter and ſuppuration is ſometime withholden from the Phiſition, by reaſon of the thickneſſe of the skinne in the which it is included, (as it is proued by this Aphoriſme of *Hippocrates*:) Whoſoeuer is ignorant of the ſuppuration which is in the body, his ignorance proceedeth of the thickeneſſe of the matter, or of the place wherein it is comprehended. And thus much for the ſignes of abſceſſions. Now of the iudgements of them, theſe things are deliuered vnto vs of *Auicen* and his Sect. Abſceſſions which are planted neare vnto any ſtrong member or vnto any iuncture or ioynt, and in thoſe places where there are moſt veines and ſinewes; and againe in a weake part, hauing gathered his debilitie by the defect of naturall heate, being indurate alſo and couered with a thicke skin, containing alſo thicke matter, and ſo the more ſlow in motion, the outward place being plaine alſo, and euen, not aſcending like a little hillocke, I ſay, ſuch a like ſore is greatly ſuſpected, and verie hardly and ſlowly ripened: and ſuch a one as is euerie way by deſcription oppoſite and contrary to this, is of good and laudable habite; for both ſoone and eaſily it mattereth, and oftentimes alſo (no outward medicine aiding or aſſiſting) of it ſelfe it gapeth and openeth. If therefore the abſceſſion do grow vp into a ſharpeneſſe, and the ſubſtance of the matter be thinne, and the skinne not thicke or hard, of his owne nature and power it will expell and thruſt foorth the conceiued humour without any

Aph. 41. li. 6.

Iudicia abſceſſuum.

What abſceſſions may eaſily be digeſted.

any forreine aide, vnlesse a man by making incision will anteuert and preuent his voluntary opening. Such like abscessions are digested sometime by breathing or wind (no solution being made subiect within the skinne,) but that happeneth when the matter is small in quantity, good and thin, and not sticking very deep. But if there be any emissarie or way made into the tumour, either by Nature or by Art, the humor conceiued within doth breake foorth ostener then digest. But that opening or apertion which is made by nature, is a great deale safer then that which is made by the hand: but if it be so, that it must be mollified by Art, you shall safelier do it by a sharpe pen-knife or other cleare and bright instrument of yron, then by that medicine which they call *Ruptorium medicamentum*. And therefore (as before I said) euery apertion which is made & enforced by Art, is worse then that which Nature affordeth of it selfe, because such like manuall openings to make the matter ranke, may perhaps turne into a *Fistula*. But when necessitie vrgeth, and when we cannot vse a better remedy, we must boldly attempt that. And by this meanes you shall eschue those discommodities, which before I named, if (when the matter so requireth) you do seasonably make apertion, and by that meanes hasten the ripening of the other baggage which lurketh in the tumour. *Hippocrates* in his last Oracle of his first booke of Prædictions hath expressed the very notes and markes of the worst matter, and of the best, speaking after this maner: That matter is esteemed best, which is of colour white, and euery way like it selfe, and soft and gentle to the toucher, and as little vnpleasant to the nose as may be. And that which is euery way contrary to this, is the worst of all. But the tokens & signes of all the other humours and solide substance also which are included in these abscessions, shall be manifested and shewed in their particular chapters, as they shall by consequence and order ensue.

What abscessions may soonest be ended through resolution.

Abscessions are safelier opened with a penknife then with ruptorium medicamentum.

The notes of the best and worst matter out of Hippocrates.

CHAP. V.

¶ *Of the generall method of curing all tumors besides nature, but of those especially which proceed from the influxion of humours, as Apostemes, and Abscessions, commonly called Exituræ.*

OF all tumors aboue nature, as well those which are already ingendred, as those which are not yet in generation, there is one common and principall order of curing (as it is in *Galen libr.* 13 and 14. *Method med.*) namely that that which is aboue nature resident in any member, and raiseth the same into a tumour, should altogether be emptied out. But those which are yet in begetting, in them there is a certaine obstruction of the humour that floweth to the aggrieued place, before the euacuation. In them therefore is required a diligent and singular care of the Phisition, to declare the cure of them. But these common manifestations, according to the difference of the tumour it selfe, and the nature of the affected member, do very much differ and alter. For truely in all tumours alreadie ingendred, and in euerie part of the bodie, the euacuation of that which annoyeth and infesteth, is in no case to be vsed and ministred, as *Galen* teacheth *libro secundo ad Glauconem*, and in the places aboue recited, which also shall manifestly appeare in that which followeth.

The common order of curing of tumours.

The common method of curing of tumors doth change according to the difference of the tumour, and the member affected.

But we must not cure those tumors with such remedies, which are yet but beginning and occupying euerie member, or emptie out that which is alreadie ingendred in them, but we are enforced (if we intend to follow the right order in curing) to vse sometime one remedie, sometime another, which is of force to stop the fluxe, and auoyd out that which is ingendred, so farre forth as the kinde of the tumor, and the nature of the affected member doth require.

The order of curing of tumors is chiefly taken from two things.

The essence of a tumor doth containe three things in it.

Galen therefore chiefly draweth the demonstrations of the cure of tumours aboue nature from these two things, viz. from the disposition it selfe or essence of the euill, and from the nature of the affected member. Moreouer the disposition of the euill (which we haue now in hand) or the essence thereof doth comprehend three things in it, according to the iudgement and consent of the later sort, that is, the quantity, the quality, & the matter or substance which prouoketh the tumour. By meanes whereof that chiefe and common declaration is changed, and from them is taken also the particular order of curing. For a great tumor is cured one way, and a small tumour another way. For the difference of them is knowne by their greatnesse and smalnesse (as some suppose.) And one way is a mighty *Phlegmone*, and another way a litle *Herpes* healed. Otherwise also is that tumour remedied, which is caused by fluxe, and is yet in begetting, then that which is procreated through congestion, or is alreadie ingendred and congealed. Also a hote tumour, as *Eryſipelas*, is otherwise cured then a cold, as is *ædema* and *Scirrhus*. The quantitie therefore which in a tumour aboue nature varieth the cure, is either great or small. The qualitie is the fluxe, or (as some terme it) the deriuation and congestion. The matter thereof is the humour, be it either hote or cold. But in the nature of affected members foure things chiefly are to be considered, viz. their temperature, their forme or fashion, their situation or place, and their power and strength. To the which also may be added a fifth thing, which is, the facilitie (as I may terme it) and difficulty of the senses. Except you will with *Galen* comprehend and containe it vnder the last thing, which is the vertue and strength of the tumor. These things therefore also do much alter that generall order of curing, which is commonly obserued throughout all kinde of tumours aboue nature. It is therefore requisite, that in curing those tumours which chance besides nature, we remember all those declarations which are taken from them. For *Phlegmone*, or any other tumor which hath his abode in the fleshie parts of the body, is otherwise cured then those which are situated in the sinewy places: otherwise in the eye, then in the knee or necke: and otherwise are the kernels in the throate cured, then those which are resident in other parts of the body. But to be short, the temperature, the fashion, the situation and the strength of the member that is affected and beset with the tumour, do change all those operations, which we shall attempt and proue in their cure: retaining still that generall inuention, which *Galen* hath taught to be alwayes taken from the disease. Therefore first we haue here decreed to set downe a common & generall method of curing of tumors aboue nature, especially of those which are caused through the influxion of humors, taking their manifestation from the affect or euill it selfe, nothing respecting the affected part. Afterward we will teach the vniuersall cure of them, but chiefly of inflammations, when as they shall

Foure things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members.

Libr. 2. ad Glauconem.

The order of handling that which follows.

ſhall degenerate and change into abſceſſions. Then moreouer, we will declare the particular order of curing all differences, eſpecially of thoſe which be ſimple, by whoſe proportion or analogie, the cure of compound tumours ſhall eaſily be learned. And in the meane time, as the place ſhall require, we will rehearſe out of *Galen* certaine things concerning the order of curing, which haue their aſſumption from the parts which are affected, and as it were beſieged with a tumor: which things being rightly weighed and conſidered, it ſhall be eaſie for any reaſonable Phyſition or Chirurgian, by our certaine method and order, to cure all kinde of tumours which are incident to any part of the bodie. We therefore imitating *Galen*, will draw the beginning of the cure of tumours which are ſaid to be aboue nature, from the flowing of ingendred humours, and from the inuention of the cauſe of the verie euill, that ſo both the cauſes which excite the ſame, may be preuented, & that which is alreadie in it may be taken away. Therefore by example and analogie of one difference of tumours which are cauſed through defluxion (for here we minde to intreate onely of them) we will vnderſtand alſo other differences, which do grow through flowing of humours. And here we will ſet downe a briefe and compendious curing of one kinde of *Phlegmone*, which chanceth very often, and procureth feuers and other very dangerous euils and ſymptomates. But in this place vnder the name of *Phlegmone*, our intent is not to comprehend euerie hote and flaming diſpoſition which the Greekes call *phlogoſis*, but that onely which proceedeth by the meanes of a bloudy fluxe, chiefly incident to fleſhie and fat bodies, wherein is vehement paine and redneſſe appearing in the outward parts, and as it were a burning heate, a ſtretching out, and a ſtriuing or thruſting, and when the euill is increaſed, there is ſence of the pulſes beating. For this inflammation with *Galen* and other Greeke Writers, as *Paulus Aetius*, and *Oribaſius*, which do follow him as their beſt guide, we properly call *Phlegmone*. That we may therefore come to the matter it ſelfe, theſe are the verie words of *Galen*. The common ingendring of euery *Phlegmone* commeth by the influxion of bloud, and that more abundantly then was wont to happen to that member: for bloud doth flow very abundantly (ſometime one or other member ſending it foorth) and that part doth entertaine and receiue it, which beginneth to be affected with *Phlegmone*: but ſometime that member which is afflicted doth draw it to it ſelfe. But the parts which ſend it foorth do driue out the iuyce, being eyther ſuperfluous by reaſon of the plentie thereof, or grieuous becauſe of the qualitie, or elſe becauſe of both. But they which are attractiue, doe draw or pull with a ſickely heate or griefe. But to theſe are adioyned certaine helping cauſes, viz. the weakeneſſe and baſeneſſe of the member, the fulueſſe of the conduits and paſſages through which the fluxe paſſeth, the ſtraitneſſe alſo and narroweneſſe of the pores and expulſiue parts, and the inferiour places, as we haue alreadie declared. Therefore of all theſe, there are three inuentions of curing thoſe tumours which haue their beginning of flowing, collected and gathered of the latter ſort of Chirurgians. 1. The firſt is to turne away the fluxe, and preuent it altogether. 2. The ſecond is to mitigate the griefe, and altogether to remoue that cauſe, for the which the member entertayneth or alſo draweth the fluxe vnto it. 3. The

The finding out of the cauſe is the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature.

Phlegmone quid.

Gal. lib. 13. Meth. med.

The common ingendring of euery Phlegmone.

The helping cauſes of flux.

Three orders are ſet downe for the cure of thoſe tumours which are cauſed through the influxion of humours.

third is, to emptie out all that humour that hath flowed in the aggrieued place.

Primus scopus. But how the first intention should be finished, *Galen* hath fitly taught, *lib. 3. Meth. med.* where he declareth vnto vs all the waies to auert and turne away the fluxe, and the meanes to stop and inhibite *Phlegmone* which as yet remaineth in generation, writing after this manner: When humors are equally augmented amongst themselues (which the Greekes call *Plethora*) yea also when all the body is voide of excrements, and doth containe a mediocritie of iuicie humors, (paine and the heate of that member also wherein *Phlegmone* raigneth raising the fluxe) through the emission of bloud we helpe and remedie *Phlegmone* which now beginneth to rule. *Plethora* also is cured both with often bathings and with exercise, and also with much friction and rubbing. Furthermore it is cured by medicines that will digest, so that a feuer be not present, and besides all these it is helped through hunger, and a good diet, although the sicke be feuerous. But when the body is stuffed either with melancholie, or choler, or fleame, or with other clammie and viscous humours (which state of the bodie the Greekes call *Cacochymia*) the euacuation thereof must be laboured by a purgation, which is a fit remedie for euerie humour that raigneth. But of them we will speake more at large in their particular Chapters. Now *Antispasis*, that is, a reuulsion the contrarie way, is a common remedie against all these kinds of tumors, while the fluxe doth yet strongly preuaile, as in the beginning and increasing of the euill: but in the end of the state, and in the declination therof, while the fluxe now remaineth and sticketh in the member, and the whole bodie is sufficiently emptied, the euacuation must be attempted, and fetched either from the affected part, or from that which is next adioyned thereunto. The second intention containeth remedies to prouoke sleepe. viz. which do mitigate paine, and also binde and preuent the fluxe. Moreouer it teacheth remedies which are able to loosen and dissolue the naturall pores, by the which the affected member is wont to be throughly purged. But the matter of all these shall be abundantly described hereafter. Now we will handle the third intention, which is perfited with such things as do euacuate the matter that exciteth the tumors from the affected place. And that matter is euacuated not onely by medicines which do euaporate and dissolue, but also by such as do repell and represse, such as the Greeks call ἀποκρουστικὰ. And therefore, in the beginning of these phlegmonous tumors, and other whatsoeuer do deriue their beginning from the influxion of humours, we may rather vse repressing medicines, then those which do euaporate: except in certaine cases, of the which (saith *Guido*) *Galen* seemed to haue appointed foure. 1. The first is, when that such tumors be in cleane and pure members. 2. The second is, when the subiect thereof is venimous. 3. The third is, when the matter is thicke, and not pliable to repulsion. 4. The fourth, when it is very vehemently packed together. *Auicen* excepteth onely two cases, viz. when it happeneth in any cleane or pure part, or in any other place, out of the which it is to be feared that the matter will flow to some principall part of the bodie. Some other appoint onely one case, other sixe, other ten, other nineteene, other twenty three. But before we do establish any thing of this so doubtfull a case, we must know that there

Plethora quid.

Cacochymia.

Antispasis.

Secundus scopus.

Tertius scopus.

Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies.

there be two kinds of repulsiues, both amongst the late Physitions and also the Arabians, that is to say, common, and proper. Common repulsiues are such as do inhibite all fluxe, keeping vnder and repressing the same, and that is done either by cooling it, or by thickning it, or else by stuffing it, that is, by reason of the thicknesse of his substance, by shutting & occluding the pores & wayes whereby it should flow out, or else by confirming the parts affected. These things following do represse fluxe by refrigeration and cold, Syngreen, Lettuce, *Psillium*, *Cotiledon*, that is to say, *Vmbilicus Veneris*, *Lenticula palustris*, *Caphura*. And these also do stuffe & stop the passages, *Farina* called *Volatilis*, the white of an eg, *Amylum*, *Gluten*, and the kinds of gums: to conclude, all such things as do refrigerate with ease and without biting. But those things which do confirme and roborate (I meane such as do restore the naturall temperature to the part affected) as oyle of Roses, *oleum Omphacinum*, ole of Mirtles, oile of Cammomil, *Absynthium*, Horehound, *Nux cupressi*, & such like things, which being applied do strengthen the affected part, & so do free it and defend it from all imminent fluxe. But proper repulsiues are such, as when the humors do slide into some other part, do meete with the same, and do enforce them to retire againe. And these are to be vsed then when the member is growne thicke, as attractiue medicines are commonly applyed to thin tumors. Of these manie are of a cold qualitie, and many of a hote, but both sorts, that is, both hot and cold, are in operation astringent, and binding. The medicines repressing, which of nature are cold, are Vine leaues, Plantaine, Nightshade, *Dipsacos* viz. *Virga pastoris*, or *Bursa pastoris*, *Glaucium*, *Balaustium*, *Omphacium*, *Sumach*, *Terra cimolia*, commonly so called, and *Terra sigillata*, and others of that kinde. Those be the simples out of the which many compounds are made, as *Oxycratum*, the oyntment of Bole, the oyntment of *Galen*, and such like. But the hote repulsiues are, Alume, Cypresse nuts called *Galbulæ*, *Iuncus rotundus*, or *Odoratus*, called of the Græcians χίνε ἀνθῶν, called also *Blatta bizantia*, *Lupinorum farina*, and certaine austere and sharpe wines, and many other such like things. But we will set downe the whole order of applying of repelling medicines in the beginning of fluxion, prescribed by *Guido* in two seuerall Prologues. In the beginning of all tumours, which proceed from the influxe of humors, but specially of such humors as are phlegmonous, it will be auaileable to vse repulsiues, as they are called, these ten cases onely excepted, that is to say, when the tumour is in a fat member, or when it proceedeth of a venimour matter, or a substance which is very thicke, and so vnfit to be repelled: or else when the humour is vehemently packed in the affected part, and deeply also; if the tumour be inclined to supputation, or descending from a primitiue cause, if it be in a plethoricke or full bodie, and verie weake, if it be seated next vnto a principall member: to conclude, if it happeneth with vehement griefe: for in these cases, we may better vse medicines which will mitigate the tumor and the paine, rather then such as shall repell and resist the humours. The second Prologue is after this manner: In the beginning of all tumours, but chiefly of those which are phlegmonous, common repulsiues are profitable (three cases onely excepted,) that is, if the tumour happen in those parts which are called *glandulosæ*, if they be enclined to sup-

Repellentia communia.

Repellentia propriè dicta.

Frigida reprimentia.

Calida repellentia.

The first prologue of Guido in repressiue things.

Gal. 2. ad Glauconem.

The second Prologue.

tion, or if they proceed of a venimous matter. And in all these cases, but especially then, when the humour doth stand, and when the fluxion consisteth, and is almost made a tumor, it is behouefull to dissolue and scatter the matter, applying to the swolne place *Diaphoretica*, not biting or sharpe, but milde and gentle, being moderately hote and moist; but this must be done principally in the three last remembred cases, in the which we must endeuour to attract and draw the matter which is dispersed, to the head where the tumor most appeareth: and we must increase the tumour as much as we can and so inhibite the course and fluxion of the mixed humors. Which truly wee may sometime do, by vsing attractiue emplasters, and oftentimes by fastening cupping glasses to the aggrieued place, (as *Auicen* teacheth.) Let this therefore be a generall rule of Art. In the beginning of all tumors which proceed of the influxion of humours, (those three excepted which were named a little before) onely pure repressiues are to be vsed. But in their increasing we must mingle with these repulsiues, some of those things which do dissolue and discusse. But in the state of tumors, yea and somewhat before the state, we must commixe repressiue medicines equally with discussiues: and when there is declination present, or the end of the state, we may lawfully vse onely resoluing and releasing remedies. To conclude, so long as the humour doth yet abound, we must labour to repell it, and driue it away: but if the fluxe doeth still remaine, we must seeke to digest it. But if it dependeth vpon both, that is to say, that partly something hath alreadie flowed, and cleaueth fast to the place; and partly something may yet abound and flow: then it shall be lawfull to vse commixed remedies, that is, partly those which can resolue and vnbinde, and partly those which are able to bring backe and repell. For contrarie diseases being gathered into one place together, we must vse also compound cures, as *Galen* saith. 13. *Therap.* Furthermore, all these things truly are to be vnderstood thus, as if a tumour aboue nature is to be dispatched and cured by resoluing medicines, or (that I may speake generally) by the way of resolution. But their cures, whereby we will finish all those intentions whereof we intreated before, according to their diuers matter that exciteth the tumor, shall be described and declared in their particular Chapters, as by consequence and order they shall follow.

Si tumor iam factus est.

Emplastrum. Cucurbitula. Artis canon generalis.

CHAP. VI.

Of the cure of abscessions generally.

Of the cure of tumors which are turned into abscessions, which they call Exituræ.

BVt if *Phlegmone*, or any other tumour doth degenerate and turne into *Abscessus*, the cure thereof in the beginning is finished and ended (as saith *Galen Libro 2. ad Glauconem*) by helpes and remedies that do mitigate, which the Greekes call *Chalastica*, that is, by resoluing and remitting medicines: of the which nature and force is that medicine, which is called of *Galen Tetrapharmacum*, being very soft, and prouoking sleepe: with the which, according to the opinion of the same *Galen*, *Lib.* 13. *Therap.* there must be commixed a little honie. But *Tetrapharmacum* consisteth of foure things, of the which there must be of euery one a litle portion or quantitie, that is to say, of waxe, of rosin, of the gumme of the Herbe *Colophonia*, which distilleth from the roote thereof, and of Bulles tallow. But in processe of time we must passe ouer vnto those

Tetrapharmacum.

those things which are able to concoct and digest, or to ripen and bring to suppuratiõ. But those which are turned into another kind, that is, into another substance, and that altogether besides nature, they are to be remoued and cured by the Art of Chirurgerie. Moreouer, in remouing them, according to the counsell of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* it shall be requisite to consider, that among all the wayes and meanes whereby we intend to finish our purpose, we should alwayes make choise of the best of them. The best meanes and wayes are declared and manifested vnto vs three manner of wayes: viz. By the shortnesse of the time to cure in, by curing without paine, and chiefly by curing safely and without danger. Againe, that thou maist cure safely, there are three speciall things diligently to be considered. The first and the chiefest is, that you throughly attaine to the perfection of your labour. 2. The other is, that if you cannot attaine to the same, yet at the least, that you hurt not the sicke. 3. The third is, that the euill or disease may not easily returne or come againe. By these considerations, if you will declare the best method of curing, you shall find in all those tumours before mentioned, when the cure is to be ended by the helpe of Chyrurgerie, and when by the force of medicines. But truly the studie of Chyrurgerie in those chiefly which now we do intreate of, that is, in those tumors which are altogether aboue nature, doth tend to the killing and destroying of them, and doth wholly declare after what sort they may be taken away. But if it cannot bring this to passe, the next counsell is, to transferre the euill, as we vse to do in those humours called *Hypochymata*, that is to say, the web in the eye. But that which is fetched from medicines, doth first tend vnto this end, that that which is aboue nature, may both turne into matter, and also into putrifaction: but this he appointeth in the second place. These things hath *Galen*. Therefore when the parts which are troubled with *Phlegmone* do beate very vehemently, so that now you begin to despaire of their cure (they being not yet mattered) all the ancient Chyrurgians (saith *Galen* 4. *Therap.*) do minister and apply such kind of medicines which do speedily procure matter: but before it be mattered, they vse none at all. And although those parts that are annoied with *Phlegmone* be annointed with a Cataplasme, which may both heate them, and moisten them, & bring them to suppuration, yet the same doth not appeare by the first reason or way, that is, as the remedy and helpe of the euill, but as the mitigating & easing of the symptomat, that is, of the paine. For truly the remedies of *Phlegmone* are of a drying nature. And the same *Galen* addeth moreouer a litle after, that a short and compendious cure of those parts which are affected with *Phlegmone* is quickly ended and dispatched, by remedies which can dry & vnbind, which truly doth altogether either remoue the affect, or else, if they leaue behinde them some litle relict, which may turne to suppuration, it is needfull to vse some other sharpe medicine, which is able to bring out the matter; or if the skin about the tumour be thin, and you willing speedily to ease the sicke, you necessarily must vse incision. And this truly is that which *Auicen* saith, namely, that the cure of an Aposteme (as it is an Aposteme) is the extraction and drawing out the strange matter which raiseth the Aposteme. But to declare the remedies of them, wherewith it is expedient to draw and moue the matter, and to manifest other things also which

The best order of curing is declared three wayes.
1
2
3

Ex lib. 4. Therap. meth.

Auicen.

When absceſſiõs are chiefly to bee cut and opened.

we ſpoke of a litle before, they are to be ſought out of their particular Chapters. Furthermore, the abſceſſion being already come to ſuppuration, or changed, or ſtrongly compact together, if the matter or any other baggage therein contained, be not diſcuſſed aud diſſolued, or if in conuenient ſeaſon, and while the occaſion is offered, it be not opened without the labour of the hand, you muſt make an iſſue by inciſion, for that which otherwiſe will not be digeſted. But this thing chiefly is to be proued and enterpriſed, if there be feared any eroſion or gnawing to enſue, or any other danger; yea if neceſſity cõmandeth, it ought ſtraightway to be opened, and the matter to be drawne out as ſpeedily and ſafely as is poſſible, for the cauſe before alledged. But apertion is made more ſafely with a knife, then with burning and ſcalding medicines, if nothing do hinder it. And commonly ſuch kind of phlegmonous tumours, being already turned into ſuppuration, are opened with a penknife. Moreouer apertion, or the letting out of the matter ought to be done by reaſon both of the abundance of matter there gathered together, & alſo of the affected place. But if any part of the mattered member ſhall ſeeme to be putrified and rotten, it is needfull to cut it off, to the forme or likeneſſe of an Oliue or Mirtle leafe, that it may heale the more eaſily. But *Galen* commandeth to auoid and eſchue alwayes any great inciſions, who did heale ſuch kind of mattered tumors, both in the parts about the priuie members, and alſo in the armeholes, onely by inciſion (as he vſed chiefly to do) and by medicines that were of force to dry. Now if need ſomtime required to cut off ſomwhat by reaſon of the plenty, not only of matter, but alſo of the corrupted parts, he vſed no greater inciſion then the breadth of a great Mirtle leafe. For by wide & large ſections, when the mẽber is brought vnto a ſcarre, beſides that it is made moſt filthie, it alſo becometh very weake, and vnfit to moue withall. But theſe kinds of ſections imitating the Mirtle leafe, are vſed in thoſe tumours eſpecially which do matter vnder the armeholes and about the ſhare. And in thoſe truly the lengths of them muſt be drawn ouerthwart, & not by the ſtraightneſſe or rightneſſe of the leg or body: for when we bend the leg or the arme, the skin naturally doth apply it ſelf with it. But in other places we alwayes almoſt do vſe ſimple inciſions. Now in this apertion or inciſion ſeuen things are eſpecially to be conſidered, according to the conſent of the later Chyrurgians. Firſt, that inciſion be made in that place wherein the matter is contained. The ſecond, that inciſion be made in the neather place of the tumour, that the mattered and corrupted filth may the better be voided out. The third, that it be made next the wrinkles & proceſſe of the muſcles. The fourth, that you do auoid and eſchue the ſinewes, veines, and arteries, as much as you can. The fifth, that all the matter be not brought out abundantly all at once, eſpecially in great abſceſſiõs, leſt that by too much emptying out, and that ſuddenly, and alſo by the reſolution of the ſpirits, there follow weakneſſe and faintneſſe. The ſixt, that the place be handled & touched very gently, & with as litle paine as can be. The ſeuenth, that apertion being made, the place be wiped very cleane, and filled with fleſh againe, and brought to a ſcarre, after the manner of vlcers. But *Galen lib.* 13. *Therap.* warneth vs chiefly to marke two things in the inciſion of a ſuppurated abſceſſion, writing after this manner. 1. If at any time the abundance of matter exceedeth and ouercometh

A mattered tumor is more ſafely opened with a knife thẽ with burning medicins. Lib. 13. *Ther.*

A ſection imitating the Oliue or Mirtle leafe.

Great hurt cõmeth by wide inciſions.

Why mattered impoſtumes about the ſhare muſt bee cut ouerthwart.

Seuen things to be diligẽtly marked in the apertion of an abſceſſion alreadie mattered.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

Two things conſidered of Galen in the apertion of a mattered tumour.

cometh your medicines, neither do they seeme vnto you to be able to digest all the corruption: it is requisite to make an issue by incision for that matter which yeeldeth not to digestion, in that place especially where it is most high. 2. Moreouer in the incision also of another abscession which pertaineth vnto fluxe, and yet respecting both the kinds, you must not forget to cut and lanch that which is already come to suppuration: and then applie some medicine thereto which can drie it without erosion or gnawing. But after the impostume is opened, you must vse remedies that be of a scowring and cleansing nature, and fit to purge the filthy vlcer, as are, soft flaxe or lint, and soft linnen, Emplaisters and Ointments which shall be spoken of in their particular Chapters. At the first time *Guido* did apply the yolke of an egge being thickened with Alume *Zuccharinum*, which medicine *Gulielmus à Saliceto* did also vse. But afterward you must come to the applying of *Mel Rosatum*, and *Mundificatiuũ cũ Apio*: and last of all, to *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, and *Ægyptiacum*, if the matter so require. But aboue, without you must minister ointments, as *Basilicon*, *Diachylon*, and *Diaphœnicon*, and other of that sort, which are appointed for vlcers. For when you haue cut an abscession, it must be cured after the manner of other vlcers. *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* after the skin was cut in those phlegmonous tumors which chance about the armeholeis and priuy members, he did fill the affected place with that medicine which the Greeks call *Manna*, which is, *Thuris purgamentum*. For this hath a light astriction or binding. But you must also (saith he) first assuage the lanced member, (as much as you see cause, first with foments, then with Cataplasmes, and straight after with some moistning medicine, or else with such as do not much drie, (all these being applied outwardly vpon the vlcer.) For in the very vlcer, both of *Manna* (as hath bene said) and also of those remedies which are taught and declared by vsing of lint, those things are first to be layed on, which do moue and prouoke the matter, and afterward those that do purge and cleanse: after the applying of which things, if there remaine any hollownesse, you must minister such things as may fill the same: but if it fall out otherwise, you must vse things to bring it to a scarre. Moreouer if the sicke will not suffer incision to be made, either with some bright instrument, or with a penknife by reason of the softnesse thereof, then the appertion is to be finished with burning medicines. For this purpose *Auicen* praiseth the seede of Line or Flaxe, leauen and Doues doung, which you may make more excellent and forcible if you mingle them with a little soft Sope, or with the filthinesse that cometh of Mustard seede. But that medicine which is called *Ruptorium*, or *Causticum*, which is made of Lime and Sope, in this matter is most excellent, and obtaineth greatest fame. Hitherto haue we spoken of tumours aboue nature generally: now it followeth that we intreate of the particular differences of them as they follow in order.

Detergentia.

Ointments are to be applied aboue a tumor that is opened.

The vse of Manna and Thus after the incision, & the vertue of thẽ.

The launced part must first be eased.

What things are to be layed to an vlcer.

Auicennas in fine tractat. 1. Fen. 3. lib. 4.

CHAP. VII.

Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumours ingendred of bloud.

HAuing spoken generally of those tumours which consist aboue nature, it is conuenient that we intreate particularly of the differences of euerie

one of them, taking our exordium from *Phlegmone*, as a tumor which chanceth very often, and exciteth (as *Galen* saith) very dangerous symptomates. Therefore *Galen lib. 1. de morbis & symptomatis*, taketh *Phlegmone* two kind of waies. One way generally, after the manner of the ancient writers which were before his time, that is, for euery kind of inflammation of any member, or for any heating or burning, that is, for euery hote and flaming disposition, which the Greeks do properly call φλόγωσις. Another way both with *Galen* and other late writers, it is taken for a true and pure tumour ingendred of bloud that is the best, and that also which retaineth but meane thicknesse or grosnesse. And this truly borroweth his name of the kind thereof, and of the Latins it is called diuersly, by reason of the kind, *Inflammatio*, of the Greeks absolutely, *Phlegmone*. But this after the mind and consent of the later sort is two fold, *videlicet. Vera & non vera.* A true *Phlegmone* is caused of good bloud, which is the best both in quality and substance or essence, but yet more abundant then naturally should happen to the member. But *Phlegmone* which is not a true & lawfull *Phlegmone*, is caused of naughtie and vnnaturall bloud. For bloud is a hote & moist humour, proceeding from a more temperate part of the very *Chylus*, which is a certaine iuyce that cometh of the meate in the first digestion; and it is two wayes, naturall and not naturall. Naturall bloud is a hote and moist humour, slender, and meane in substance, but of a very red colour; in sauor & taste, it is sweet, gentle and good. But that bloud is said to be vnnaturall, which differeth or digresseth from the former description of bloud, yet notwithstanding containing it selfe within the bounds of his breadth and largenesse; which if it doth once passe, it is no more to be called a bloud, but some other humor. But bloud doth chance to degenerate from his proper nature, two kinde of wayes. The first way is (as they terme it) in it selfe, that is, in respect of it selfe, (his proper substance being changed without any commixtion with another.) The second way is by another, or in respect of another; and yet it consisteth two waies by it selfe, that is to say, either because the substance thereof is more thicke, or more thinne then it ought to be; or because it is burnt, and that which is thinnest of it, is turned into melancholy; but that which is thicke into choler, and that without separation. But in respect of another, bloud becometh not vnnaturall, when as another humor is mingled withall. Which may happen many waies, according as the diuers kinds of choler, fleame or melancholy may be commixed with bloud. By which thing it is manifest, that of bloud there are engendred foure kinds or differences of tumors aboue nature. First, of naturall and good bloud there is engendred a true *Phlegmone:* but of bloud which is corrupted through the admixtion of other humors, there do grow three differences of that kind of *Phlegmone*, which is neither true nor lawfull; because that the three other humors, that is to say, fleame, choler and melancholy, may be easily commixed with bloud. Therefore if melancholy be mixed with bloud, it is called *Phlegmone Scirrhodes:* if choler (which then is conflated of both kinds) it is called *Phlegmone Erysipelatodes:* if fleame, it is termed *Phlegmone Ædematodes.* But of bloud, which is filthy and corrupted through the adustion and corruption of his owne proper substance, according to the manner of the thinnesse or thicknesse thereof, there are ingendred either

Phlegmone taken two waies.

Phlegmone taken for Phlogosis.

Phlegmone also is taken for an inflammation coming of the best bloud.

Phlegmone duplex.

1. Vera.

2. Non vera.

Sanguis quid.

Sanguis quotuplex.

Bloud doth degenerate from his proper nature two waies

Foure differences of tumors caused of bloud.

Carbuncles, which are called of the Greeks *Anthraces:* or else *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus*, which we call Cancres. Of the which diseases we will speake hereafter in that which followeth,

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Causes, Signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.

THere are three causes of *Phlegmone*, as there are also of all other tumors besides nature. which do chance through the defluxion of humors, *videlicet:* 1. *Primitiua*, which we call both *prægressa* and *euidens:* 2. *Antecedens:* 3. *Coniuncta.* Euident causes of inflammation are outward causes, as, beating or belking, diruption, conuulsion, breaking or bursting a wound, a voluntary vlcer, a loosenesse, and other of that sort which do prouoke fluxe, by exciting paine in the affected member. The Antecedent cause, is abundance of bloud, which is good and faultlesse, as when the veines touch nigh together to the moderate repletion of the Arteries. For then is bloud prouoked (as a certane superfluous thing) to flow and descend to some member which is either weake or immoderately hote, or affected with paine, where it is thrust, and abideth compact together, vnlesse it be by and by repressed from the beginning, as we haue said before in our generall Chapter: to the which we must therefore haue continuall accesse, that we may attaine to a more perfect knowledge of particular tumors, whereof we now intreate. The coniunct or continent cause, is the bloud it selfe, which is already stuffed in the affected place. The markes or tokens of *Phlegmone* are the tumor, or the augmenting of the member aboue the naturall habite, vehement heate, so that the member seemeth to burne. There appeareth rednesse in the outward parts such as is wont to come through bathes which are made hote either with the fire, or by some other meanes. There is extreme paine, vnlesse the member hath altogether a dull sense. There is also grieuous beating, and pulsation very vehement inwardly. There is also extension or stretching out of the member, which not onely we alone haue found out, but also the patient himselfe may perceiue by his owne feeling. There is furthermore resistance of the member if it be touched after the manner of extension. There be also other such like signes, which do testifie that abundance of bloud is present in some part of the body. *Phlegmone* hath foure timee: 1. the beginning: 2. the increasing: 3. the state: and 4. the declination: except at the leastway, fluxe hath recourse within, or it be straightway repressed by repulsiue medicines But when it shall lightly passe ouer these foure times, it is needfull either to resolue and draw out the matter of it, or to bring it to suppuration, or else to putrifie and rot it, or to turne it into a *Schirrus* and stonie hardnesse. And truly the signes of all these are to be sought out of the Chapter that intreateth generally of them: where the markes of all times, and the meanes to finish tumors aboue nature (which they commonly call *Apostemata*) be declared and expressed But *Phlegmone* is accompanied with many other euill symptomates which do alter and change the order of his cure, as are vehement paine, which doth greatly occupie the sensible part: recourse of the matter from the kernels (which the Greeks call *Adenæ*, and commonly they be called *Emunctoria*) to the internall parts. Also mortification of the affected

The causes of Phlegmone.
1. *Prægressa.*
2. *Antecedens.*
3. *Coniuncta.*
Signes of a true Phlegmone.
Foure times of Phlegmone.
Iudicia.
Symptomates which hinder the cure of Phlegmone.

affected member (which they call *corruptio esthiomenica*) proceeding of too much refrigeration, & of a strong compacting or stuffing of the matter which did cause the inflammation. Also a stony and almost an indissoluble hardnesse, commonly called *Sclirotica*, which proceedeth through a certaine ouerthwart and vntoward dissolution of the thinner humor. Wherefore in curing tumors which consist aboue nature, we must diligently ostentimes mark and consider how farre we meane to proceed in the matter, and what accidents may chance vnlooked for, that so we may chiefly insist, and be occupied about that most which appeareth, and is most vrgent: which *Galen* hath admonished vs of very well, *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, and 13. *Therap.* speaking after this sort: In diseases, whose resolution is difficult and hard, it is to be feared lest some remnant of them be left behind, which is very hard. Wherefore in euery resolution, we must diligently consider into what thing euery tumour, whose cure is once begun, may be changed. For that cure which is attempted by medicines that do mightily drie, doth leaue very hard knobs, which are hard to remoue. Hitherto *Galen*. But the time requireth, that we now declare the cure of *Phlegmone*.

CHAP. IX.

The order of curing the Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humors affecting the outward parts of the bodie.

The method of curing Phlegmone which is yet in generation.

SEeing that *Inflammatio*, which is called of the Greeks properly *Phlegmone*, doth ingender and grow through the influxion of bloud, happening more abundantly to some member then nature requireth, and fluxe also (*Phlegmone* being yet but beginning to raigne) is partly in begetting, and partly begotten already: there must needs truly be a double consideration in the cure of the *Phlegmone* being yet but beginning, that is to say, to emptie out and auoide that which hath flowed already, & to hinder & stop that which is now a flowing. Moreouer we shall stop fluxe, if we shall draw backe and repell the humor that floweth, if we will adde strength to the afflicted member, and if we shall seeke to remoue that which causeth the fluxe. We shall draw it backe and bring it into a contrarie defluxion of the other humors, by bloudletting, if strength and age will suffer it; but if not, we shall do it by applying cupping glasses, or by vsing bindings and frictions, and by heating those parts which haue a direct passage to the affected part. We shall bring backe and repell fluxe, by ministring those medicines which are able to driue and turne the fluxe another way. We shall also remoue the causes that do bring or fetch defluxion to the member already infected with *Phlegmone*, by confirming and strengthening the member, if it be weake, by vsing astriction if it be too loose, by cooling it if be too hot, as it is wont to be, by easing the paine if it be vehement, & by emptying the whole body with bloudletting, if it doth abound with bloud, and if it sendeth infection to the member: of all which things we will speake by and by. But we do empty out and auoid that which is flowed alreadie, and hath gotten it selfe into the affected part, not onely by those medicines which do digest, that is, which do discusse & dissolue, but also by those remedies which do bind together

By what meanes the fluxe is stayed.

1. Retractio.

2. Repulsio.

3. Causa summotio.

Vacuation of that which is flowed alreadie Gal. Ther. 13.

together and refrigerate. And truly in Phlegmonous tumors now beginning, we must rather vse (saith *Galen*) cooling and astrictiue medicines, then those which do concoct and digest, and so much the rather, if that which floweth be not of a thick substance. But if bloud be greatly compact together in that part which *Phlegmone* hath caught and taken vp, you must not apply any longer repercussiue remedies, as we said before, but then it is conuenient to vse those which can digest. Also in an old and inueterate inflammation, which after the euacuation of the whole body, and other some fit cure, hath left behind it a certaine hardnesse & blacknesse in the mẽber: it is not vnprofitable (*Galen* also affirming the same) to take away the bloud by scarification. And these things haue we spoken briefly and by a generall method, concerning the cure of inflammations that do happen through the defluxion of humours, which the Greeks properly are wont to call *Phlegmone:* which things may be sufficient to content a reasonable Physition, and one which is exercised in this kind of studie. But because we haue taken in hand to write these things for the practitioners of Chyrurgerie, and not for the learned only, it shall not be amisse, neither any thing from our purpose, if after this generall and compendious method, we set downe more particularly those things which not onely the ancient Physitions, but also the later sort of Chyrurgians haue left behind them in writing. Therefore aboue the generall rule, as they terme it, the Chirurgians of our age are wont to reduce the order of curing *Phlegmone*, vnto foure branches, or patticular intentions: that is to say, into a iust obseruation of a good diet. 2. the stopping of fluxe, or the turning away of the matter which went before, 3. the emptying out of the humour, which hath already entertained himselfe in the member (which they call *Materia coniuncta.*) 4. and the correcting or amending of the symptomats. The first intention therefore is made perfect by the due vsing or administration of fixe things commonly called vnnaturall things, and by the vsing of those things also which are said to be anexed vnto them. And these things which are fixe in number, called of the Physitions *Res non naturales*, (as hath beene declared from the beginning of this treatise) are, the aire, meate and drinke, mouing and rest, sleeping and watching, emptying and filling, the affections of the minde or the accidents. All which things (because *Phlegmone* doth commonly prouoke feuers) ought to pertaine vnto coldnesse and moderate moistnesse. For which causes we haue thought good to set downe these precepts following. Let the sicke be in a pure and cleare aire, and that somewhat cold. Let him keepe a thin diet, cold and moderately moist. Let him drinke small Ale, or Beere, or other small drinkes. But if a vehement feuer shall haue any accesse (which is wont often to happen) let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let him not exercise or moue that member which is beset with *Phlegmone*. Let him be quiet as much as he can, especially if there be very great abundance of humors in the body. Let him keepe a measure in sleeping and watching: and let him shun sleeping on the day time, specially about noone. Let him diligently beware of drũkennesse & gluttonie. Let the belly be alwayes kept soft and soluble, and now and then let it be washed with Clisters if need require. Let him flie anger, cryings out, and wrath, as deadly enemies. Let him abstaine from venereous actes as a mortall foe.

Scarificatio.

Foure intentions in the cure of Phlegmone.

1. The first intention is an order in diet.

Res non naturales.

Aer.
Cibus.
Potus.
Motus.
Quies.
Somnus.
Repletio.
Inanitio.
Animi pathemata.
Venus.

The

2. The auersion of the fluxe is the second intention.

A veine is alwaies to be cut directly.

The second order in curing *Phlegmone*, which is the turning away of the fluxe, is dispatched by letting of bloud, if strength and age do suffer. But in all members of the body, whether you intend to reuell, that is, to draw backe againe another way, or to turne it from the place at the side, either straight ouer against the place, or directly forth, which is called in Greeke κατεκτὴ, a veine must alwayes be cut, though there be great abundance: but directly, the right sides do answer to the right parts, and the left to the left. Therefore if *Ophthalmia* doth annoy the right eye, or the squinancie doth affect the right side of the throate, the shoulder veine, or some other in his place (if that doth not appeare) must be cut in the right arme, by and by at the beginning of the fluxe. But if a humor doth flow in the knee you must cut a veine in the elbow, either the outward or the middle veine, except you meane to scarifie the other leg, or breake the veine asunder in it, as *Galen* counselleth in a certaine place.

The choice of bloudletting is declared of the afflicted part.

Therefore the election of the cutting any veine, and the inuention to turne the humor another way, which *Hippocrates* calleth *Antispasis*, is manifested and declared by the affected part, and by the place or situation of the member that is to be cured, as *Galen* 13. and 14. *Meth. med* and in other places, doth oftentimes teach. But that body which *Phlegmone* occupieth, not onely when it is plethoricke and full of humors, but also when the greatnesse of the euill doth exhort vs to it, though it be but meanly stuffed with humors, we must emptie and euacuate by letting of bloud, if we will follow the aduice of *Galen*, who *lib. 13. meth. med.* commandeth that it should be so, writing thus: Paine, and truly the heate of the member wherein *Plegmone* hath setled himselfe, although the whole body be void of excrements, do happen by reason of the fluxe. But then it is expedient to do it but meanly, that is, to draw forth bloud, and to make euacuation no further then it shall best agree with the age and nature of the patient. Further, you must haue consideration both of the time of the yeare, of the nature of the aire wherein the sicke remaineth, and also of the former custome of the man. Also these do profit not a litle to draw backe the bloud that floweth to the affected part, walkings, frictions, and binding of the opposite member, but first chiefly the detraction of bloud, as hath been said. Therefore if *Phlegmone* appeareth in the hands, the legs are to be exercised, bound & rubbed; if in the legs, the hands must be also so vsed. But these things belong more vnto the Physition then to the Chirurgion.

3. The third intention is the euacuation of the humour already compact in the member.

Repressiues in the increase, must exceed digestiues.

We now dispatch the third scope or intention, in the beginnings of *Phelgmone*, onely by applying repulsiue things to that member which laboreth with the inflammation, excepting these cases before rehearsed. For that which is filled with corrupted water, as *Galen* saith, is emptied out, not onely by those medicines which digest, but also by those which do binde and refrigerate: as be those which are called *repellentia* and *regerentia*, repulsiues and restitiues. But in the increasing thereof at the present intention, that is, to emptie that which is flowed, and also to stop, that no more doth abound, you must ioyne digestiue medicines with repressiues, but yet so, that the abundance and strength of the one may preuaile with the other. But in the state they must equally be commixed together by euen portions, and somewhat more milde, in mitigating, remedies must be applied, if paine be vehement. But in the end and

declination

declination of the ſtate, it is requiſite to euacuate by digeſtiues only that which is compact together, if that *Phlegmone* muſt be ended by reſolution or diſcuſſion. If truly it doth turne into abſceſſions, and that it cannot be that the gathering together and eruption of the matter ſhould be letted, it ſhall bee lawfull to vſe medicines which can both matter, open, and cleanſe the vlcer. Furthermore, thoſe remedies which do drie, are profitable in the end of both the euils, that is, of *Phlegmone* and *Abſceſſus*, for they do altogether conſume that which remaineth of the humour: but when inciſion is made in the abſceſſion, which is alreadie come to ſuppuration, you muſt lay on ſuch a medicine as may dry without eroſion or gnawing, as hereafter ſhall bee ſhewed. But in thoſe phlegmonous tumours which now are but in the beginning, the moſt apt remedie to repell and driue backe, is *Oxicraton* in *Galen*, which the Latines call *Poſca aquoſa*. It is a mixture of water and vineger, ſo tempered together that it may be drunke: and then a ſpunge being wet and laid in this *Oxicratum*, muſt be applied to that part where *Phlegmone* is. But in ſtead of *Oxicratum*, by the counſell of *Galen*, we may take ſharpe wine, or apply cold things onely to the parts which are about the ſinewes. Theſe are the words of *Galen*: In thoſe parts which are about the ſinewes, it ſhall bee ſufficient in the beginning of *Phlegmone*, to lay on a ſponge dipped either in cold water, wherewith a little vineger is mingled, or in water onely, or in ſharpe and ſoure wine. For the ſame purpoſe alſo this Cataplaſme of the ſame *Galen* is very effectuall, made of Syngreene and the rindes of Pomegranates ſodden in wine of *Rhu*, that is, *Sumach* and *Polenta*. This by reſtraining doth repell that which floweth, and by drying doth emptie out that which is contained in the tumor; and both wayes it doth ſtrengthen and corroborate the affected parts. The remedie hath been deſcribed of the latter ſort: of *Auicen* after this ſort as followeth, ℞. of the iuyce of Syngreene ℔.j. of wine that is thicke of ſubſtance, & ſharpe in taſte, ℔.ß. of Barley meale, one quart, of the rind of Pomegranats, and Sumach powdered, ana. ℥. ß. boyle them and make an oyntment. There is alſo another which greatly auaileth for the ſame purpoſe, inuented of *Haly Abbas*: ℞. of *Santalum*, white and red, ana. ʒ.iij. of *Memitha*, which is called *Glaucium*, ʒ.ij. of *Terra cimolia*, and Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥.j. ß. Let all be brayed into very fine floure or powder, and well ſearced, then diſſolue them in the iuyce of Syngreene, or Purſlaine, or Lettuce, & make a Liniment. Another alſo in the beginning of phlegmonous inflammations, very common and much vſed, which is very profitable for greene wounds, and bruſes taken lately. It is made of the white of an egge, of oile of Roſes, and of the diſtilled water of Roſes, that is, of Roſe water, wherein you muſt wet fine clothes, and lay them to the inflamed member, and let them be changed often. But there are many other medicines both ſimple and compound, which do profit in the beginning of *Phlegmone* to reſtraine and repell fluxe, which are to be ſought out of other Authors, which haue written of this thing. But theſe ſhall content vs for this time.

If Phlegmone do turne into abſceſſions.

Repulſiues are to be vſed in the beginning of Phlegmone.

Oxicratum.

Lib.13. Method. medendi.

Galeni Cataplaſma, lib.2. ad Glauc.

Fren.3. lib.4. tract.1. cap.30.

Haly Abbas Linimentum

Alind.

Among the remedies which in the increaſe of *Phlegmone*, being outwardly applied, do greatly helpe, oile of Roſes is maruellouſly effectuall, (the Greekes call it *Rhodium*.) For this doth partly draw backe, & partly doth digeſt through the

Remedies to be vſed in the increaſing of Phlegmone.

the vapour: because it perfectly holdeth a middle nature betweene the oyle and the Roses. Therefore in oyle of Roses there is a certaine astriction, which cannot (saith *Galen*) ouergo the weake parts of the tumour: but when they haue pierced somewhat deeper, it beginneth then to worke outwardly according to the strength, both to thrust together, to draw into one place, and to thicken greatly; whereby it commeth to passe, that in the augmenting of Phlegmonous tumours, oyle of Roses is a most excellent and readie helpe. In the augmenting of *Phlegmone* there is another in *Auicen* very profitable. ℞. of the leaues of Mallowes, M. j. of Wormewood, Roses, ana. ℥. ß. of Barley meale, ℥. j. oyle of Cammomil, quart. ß. Seeth them, and bray them together, and bring them to the fashion of a soft Emplaister. Another of the same. ℞. of wine boyled either to the halfe or third part, (the one we call *Sapa*, the other *Defrutum*) quart. j. Rose water, and Vineger, ana. quart. ß. Saffron, ʒ. ij. Let them be a little heat ouer a soft fire, then straine them, and dip a cloth in the liquor of that decoction, which you must apply to the phlegmonous member after the manner of an Epitheme. Moreouer such kinds of remedies which are vsed in the increasing of the inflammation, and haue their power and vertue commixed together of repressiue and digestiue medicines, ought seldomer to be remoued and changed, then those which repell the matter, being ministred in the beginning of *Phlegmone*.

Lib. 3. de simp. medic.

Oile of Roses a present remedie in the increase of Phlegmone.

Aëtius, in the vigor or state of *Phlegmone*, & when there is vehement paine felt, hath set downe these remedies: as Mallowes mingled with a little bread, and with oile of Roses. Also Meliot boyled in the liquor called *Passum*, and applied with a little bread: of the like vertue (saith he) are Dates sodden in *Passum*, and mingled with the bread and oile of Roses. Another also which digesteth through breathing in the vigour of *Phlegmone* very effectuall. ℞. Pellitorie of the wall, Mallowes, ana. M. j. fine branne, the floure of meale, ana. pug. j. Fenugreeke, Dill, ana. ℥. ß. oyle of Cammomill, quart. ß. Let them be boiled in wine, and brayed together till they be well incorporated, and make an Emplaister. Another taken out of *Galen, lib. 13. Threap.* ℞. of the crummes of bread made of corne, ℔. j. steepe it in hote water the space of one houre, then straine it, and commixe therewith of the best honie, quart. j. and make it to the forme of a Cataplasme. This doth dissolue and mitigate paine. *Auicen* counselleth to minister in the vigour of *Phlegmone*, *Vnguentum Basilicon*, and that which is made of the iuyces thereof, called *Diachylon*: but the one is good to mollifie, the other to ripen and bring to matter; although notwithstanding both of them do carrie with them a digesting qualitie. But these and other such remedies, which are ministred to dissolue that which is alreadie flowed, and to ease paine, because they are of a very moist nature, must be changed very seldome. Furthermore, when as by the remedies before mentioned, the humour which is fallen into the member that is troubled with *Phlegmone*, is dissolued and discussed, and the tumour together with the extention thereof is diminished, and the griefe somewhat asswaged, then it is to be iudged that the declination of the inflammation is at hand, at which time you must vse onely discussiue things, as are wild Mallowes bruised, and annointed, Raisins (the kernels being taken out) applyed with bread and a little honie, and

What things do helpe in the state of Phlegmone.

Emplastrum Galeni.

What remedies must be vsed in the declination of Phlegmone.

Barley

Barley meale vſed alſo with honie. Alſo moiſt wooll, flaxe, a ſponge, or ſome ſuch like thing, wet in hote wine, then ſtrained or wringed, you muſt miniſter it: for all theſe haue an excellent diſcuſſiue nature, and prouoke not paine. But if, by reaſon of the ſtubburnneſſe & hardneſſe of the diſeaſe, the affected place doth containe too great plentie of matter, and that ſuch as reſiſteth reſolution; you muſt not by and by (as ſome do) breake forth vnto Chirurgerie, that is, to make inciſion, or to ſcald it and burne it; but you muſt labour by all meanes poſſible, that the humor collected together may be digeſted and diſſolued by ſuch medicines as can worke this effect. For it is conuenient to attempt the digeſtion of the humor by ſuch medicines as can profite in that caſe, before you begin to cut the inflammation. But if the tumour will not yeeld to digeſtiue medicines, and no further hope doth remaine to diſſolue that which is compact in it, but the matter ſeemeth rather to pertaine vnto ſuppuration, you muſt come vnto thoſe things which can ripen and procure matter. And we hope that a tumour (although it degenerate into abſceſſion) may through the vapour be digeſted, if the matter which exciteth the ſame be thinne and little, and fit to be reſolued: or if it remaineth not any thing deepely within, & the skin of the affected member be thinne. But if the humour be plentifull, and thicke, and lurketh very deepe, and the skin alſo thicke, exhalation or reſolution is not to be hoped for. Therefore you muſt come vnto thoſe helpes which can ripen and prouoke matter, of which ſort is this Cataplaſme, made of wheate meale, ſodden moderatly in water and oile: for this (*Galen* being our author) doth ſpeedily bring to ſuppuration thoſe inflammations which will not yeeld to digeſtion, and it hath alſo a heate like vnto our heate, that is, temperate and meane; and by reaſon of the meale and oyle (which haue a certaine clammie and glewiſh propertie, whereby in ſtopping the pores they hinder the naturall heate of the member) it hath the force of an Emplaiſter: which two things are moſt required in medicines that do ripen and moue matter. There are ſome which do mingle with this Cataplaſme a little Saffron to colour it. But if a tumour, by reaſon of the thicke and viſcous humours which are ſtuffed in it, be hardly brought vnto ſuppuration, this Cataplaſme doth notably helpe which is made of the decoction of the rootes of *Althæa*, and of figs that be ſweete and fat, which do reſemble the thickneſſe of honie, commixed with wheate meale, as followeth. ℞. of the foreſaid decoction, ℔. j. of wheate meale ℔. ß. boile them throughly together, and bring them into the forme of a Cataplaſme. But if in ſtead of wheate meale, you vſe barley meale, or crible bread, which the Greekes call συγκόμισον, it more auaileth to diſcuſſe the inflammation then to bring it to ſuppuration, as *Galen* hath noted *lib. 2. ad Glauc.* There is another alſo excellently profitable to prouoke matter in the declination of *Phlegmone*, which is commonly vſed of the common Chirurgians. ℞. of the barke of the roote of Marſh mallowes, that is, of *Althæa*, of the root of Lillies, Grownſwell, called in Greek ἐρύγερον, leaues of Mallowes, ana. M. j. wheate meale quart. j. of the meale of Flaxe ſeed, ℥. j. freſh ſwines greace, ℔. ß. Seeth the herbes in ſufficient quantitie of water, and bray them with the other things in a mortar, and make a Cataplaſme. But if (when the matter is gathered together and diſpatched) the abſceſſion whereinto *Phlegmone* is turned, doth not open

What reſolution is to be hoped for.

Pus mouentia.

Lib. 2. ad Glaucon.

Haly Abbas remembreth this Cataplaſme.

A common Cataplaſme.

open of the owne accord (the members now being free from the inflammation) you must go about to euacuate and emptie out the matter which cannot be digested, with a penknife, or some other instrument, or by some drawing medicine. Then you must bring the vlcer vnto a scarre, like vnto other vlcers, which you must do by cleansing the sore, by filling it with flesh, and ioyning it together, which at the last will cause a scarre. Moreouer, if the matter be thicke which bringeth forth the tumour, and very disobedient to resolution and digestion, and be exceedingly compact in the passages of the flesh (as is wont to be in continuall inflammations which be naughtily cured, the thinne part of the humour being resolued), and the thicke part remaining still in the passages) then you must not be afraid to vse scarification, especially (as *Galen* admonisheth, *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*) when hardnesse, blewnesse, or blacknesse do appeare.

Symptomatiũ correctio. The fourth intention, which in the cure of *Phlegmone* was propounded to the Chyrurgian and Physition, is the correction and the remouing of the symptomates which do so suddenly come vpon the inflammation, and those are paine, recourse of the matter, whereof the tumour is raised, to the outward parts, putrifaction and corruption of the mattery member, and as it were a certaine stonie hardnes remaining behind, by reason of some mightie drying and digesting medicines. Therefore if vehement paine shall happen to the tumour, you must labour by all meanes possible to mitigate and asswage the same: because (besides that it weakeneth the strength, and hindereth the lawfull duties of the bodie) it prouoketh fluxe, and draweth bloud vnto it. If paine therefore do grieuously torment in *Phlegmone*, straightway you must lay on those medicines which can lenifie and ease the vehemencie of the paine without any hurt, as is this of *Galen*, which was made of the licour called *Passum*, of oile of Roses, and a little waxe mixed with them both: but this is to be taken in moist wooll, which hath much oile in it, and to be ministred cold in Sommer, and hote in Winter. Therefore such a medicine being tempered and applied, as is said before, doth rarifie, extenuate, digest, and euacuate: it maketh the humour that is sharpe, viscous, grosse, or plentifull, and which cleaueth to the aggrieued parts, to be equall, constant and moderate; and it discusseth the thicke vapour which can finde no fit issue, and so it mitigateth paine: It bringeth no hurt with his heate, for it maketh dull or taketh away the heate of the oile of Roses. Whereby it cometh to passe, that this remedy doth asswage paine without doing any hurt, and disprofiteth not the euill, as hote water, oile, and wheate meale, which things in an inflammation that happeneth with paine, cannot be profitable (as *Galen* witnesseth.) For these do loosen and release through their heate and moisture, and do resolue the strength of the member, whereby it is made more weake, and more prone and apt to entertaine fluxe. To the same vse (that is, to allay the paine in *Phlegmone*) you may apply effectually oile of Roses, yolkes of egges, crummes of white bread steeped in hote water, and then streine them, and commixe them with oile of Roses. These also are a present remedy, Mallowes sodden in water, and mingled with branne and oile of Roses, or with oile of Violets. But *Auicen* in mitigating euery paine vseth Saffron, which he profitably commixeth

Dolor.

Lenifiers of paine in phlegmone.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

eth with aſſwaging medicines. Furthermore if the ſharpeneſſe of paine be ſo great and vehement, that it cannot be eaſed with thoſe things, which becauſe they mitigate and lenifie paine, (the ſuccors of nature being ſtretched out) are properly called *Anodyna & paregorica*, that is, prouokers of ſleepe and helpers of paine, you muſt paſſe ouer vnto thoſe aides which we call *Narcotica*, that is, ſtupefactiues. Amongſt the which we haue tried by daily experience beſides the authoritie of ſome Writers, that Henbane hath profited in this caſe maruellouſly, whoſe leaues you muſt take, and bake them in the hote embers, then mingle them with ſwines greaſe and applie them to the place. This doth pacifie vehement paine, and bringeth Phlegmonous tumours vnto ſuppuration. But while you attempt this thing, you muſt haue a diligent care leſt you apply too much moiſture, becauſe it is a thing, which in the beginnings of inflammations, when fluxe aboundeth with great griefe, it is very pernicious (as we ſaid a little before.) But if you feare recourſe of the matter, that exciteth *Phlegmone*, to the inward parts, and that chiefly toward the principall members: you muſt cauſe it to come forth by ſome drawing medicines, or elſe by applying cupping glaſſes, which do draw vehemently from the inward parts. But if by reaſon of vehement drying and digeſting medicines being raſhly applied to the inflammation, the relicts of the tumor do turne into *Scirrhus*, you ſhall boile in water the rootes of wild Cucumber (which is commonly called in Herbaries and ſhops *Cucumer aſininus*) or of Briony or of *Aſarum*, ſeething them oftentines alone by themſelues (as *Galen* commandeth) and ſometime putting to them fat figges. Then commixe Meale with Water, to the which alſo put a little ſuet, either of a Gooſe or a Cocke; but if there be not plentie of theſe at hand, adde ſwines greace, and make Cataplaſmes. This doth notably heale that ſcirrhous affect which through mighty drying and digeſting medicines in the member which *Phlegmone* occupied, doth ſtill remaine behinde: alſo the aforeſaid Herbes together with the rootes of *Althæa*, being after moderate boyling well mingled with bread and ſuet, and then applyed, to diſcuſſe and diſſolue ſuch hardned tumours: as *Galen* doth plainely teach, *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.* Therefore if you feare, that Phlegmonous tumours which are ſcarcely digeſted through their vapor, neither yet are eaſily concocted, be turned into *Scirrhus*, you muſt alwayes commixe with digeſtiues thoſe things which can mollifie and ſoften. Moreouer if any part of the mattering member ſhall putrifie, you muſt ſtraight way cut it out, or elſe ſeeke to cure it by many deepe ſcarrifications: afterward you muſt ſprinkle on it ſalt water, and then lay on it an Emplaiſter made of the meale of Beanes or Tares ſodden in *Oximel.* There be other things alſo to be proued in this caſe, which we will by and by ſet downe in the cure of *Gangræna.* But now it ſhall be more profitable, if we comprehend the Chapters concerning the cure of ſuch Phlegmonous affects, in ſome ſhort ſentences. And firſt we will begin to declare the ſumme of the cure of *Phlegmone*, being yet but beginning, and not yet vexing with any grieuous paine. 1. Let the whole body be emptied with conuenient purgations, and eſpecially by letting of bloud, if nothing do let it. 2. Let the inflamed member be all to waſhed and annointed with ſuch things as haue power to driue backe the flowing of the

Nota de Hyoſciame.

Recurſus materiæ ad interiora.

Durities relicta.

Galens Cataplaſme for hard tumors.

Putrefactio.

Galen lib. 2. ad Glauc.

1.

2.

3. humour. 3. Let the humour, which is contained in the aggrieued place, be
4. emptied out by drying and digesting medicines. 4. Let the affected part, and those also which are about it be strengthned and fortified. Now followeth the summe of the cure of the said *Phlegmone*, when it tormenteth with a more grieuous paine. 1. When as inflammation being caused through the defluxion of humours, doth vexe with great paine, you must mitigate the vehemencie of the same without any hurt doing. 2. Then, you must not minister those things which do strongly binde, or vnloosen, through their heate and moisture, or resolue strength. 3. But you must apply to the inflamed place such helpes as by meanely binding can repell that which floweth, and euacuate that which infesteth the affected member. 4. Applie to the tumour, a sponge dipped in sharpe wine or *Posca*, that so you may preuent the passage of the humour that floweth. 5. If these things shall profit, and yet the matter appeareth not any where, you must vse soft and gentle Emplaisters, and those especially, which are made as remedies against fluxe. 6. Amongst those things, which are of power to drie, and repell the fluxe of bloud without paine, you must chuse the best, as is that resolution with oile of Roses, which is made of the stone *chalcitis*: then lay vpon it pure woll dipped in sharpe wine. 7. But when matter appeareth in the member, you must often apply the foresaid Cataplasme, or that rather which is made of Barley Meale. 8. If the abundance of thicke matter doth exceede the medicines, so that there is no hope of resolution, you must make an issue for that which yeeldeth not vnto digestion, in that place especially where it is higheſt. 9. After incision, you must drie the wound, if paine be not vrgent, and cleanse it and scoure it without griefe. 10. If after incision paine be vehement, you must first asswage it with foments, then with a Cataplasme, straight after with some moist medicine, or with such a one as drieth not. 11. If the member be still enflamed, lay on a Cataplasme made of a certaine pulse called Chittes, which doth emptie out and driue backe.

The summe of the cure of Phlegmone when it afflicteth with much paine.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11.

CHAP. X.

Of a Carbuncle, and a Cancre, and of the maladie named Sphacelus, all which they call sanguineæ pustulæ, that is, bloud pushes.

De Carbunculo.

ἄνθραξ. γαγγραίνα. σφακελος.

Gangræna & Sphacelus do follow great Phlegmones.

The generatiõ & description of a Carbuncle.

SEEING that we haue intreated aboundantly, as much as pertaineth to a Chyrurgian, of *Phlegmone*, which is the first difference of inflammations, and most incident to mans body: it now remaineth that we speake first of *Carbunculus*, which is called in Greeke ἄνθραξ: next of *Gangræna*, the Cancre, and last, of *Sphacelus*; (which with the expounder of *Auicen* they commonly call *Esthiomenon*) for that hath his beginning of a bloudie fluxe, as *Phlegmone* hath, and doth prouoke a most sharpe feuer; but these are wont oftentimes to accompanie great *Phlegmones*, as *Galen libello de Tumoribus præter naturam*, and in many other places hath diligently noted. A Carbuncle therefore proceedeth of the flowing of bloud, which is blacke, thicke, filthie, burning, and exceedingly hote; with the which if there be mingled but certaine thinne humours, there are raised vpon the out side of the skinne whelkes or

pushes,

pushes, like things that be burned or scalded, and then this inflamation is called *Carbunculus cum pustula*, the Carbuncle with the push, which euill doth happen very often. In the meane time notwithstanding it beginneth (although seldome) without push or pushes: but then is caused a crustie or hard vlcer: I say without push or pushes, because sometime there ariseth with this euill one onely push of some greatnesse, which being broken the vlcer is brought forth with a scurfe or scabbe: but oftentimes not one push alone doth breake out, but many litle and slender ones, sticking thicke in the member like vnto the seeds of Hirse: which being burst forth, there doth likewise arise a certaine crustie vlcer, such as hote iron doth cause. But betweene their beginning, before that the pushes do appeare, they trouble the member throughly. Now these scales or scurfe do sometime receiue an ashie or earthly colour, somtime blacknesse, and in that place the skin cannot be eased, but it is as it were fastned to the inner flesh. The flesh also about it is brought to an exceeding hote inflammation, which the Greekes call *Phlogosis*, and is blacke in colour, and shineth after the manner of Lime or Pitch, as though there were a litle blacke commixed with a great quantitie of red. This colour is caused altogether of melancholie. And these truly are the signes and tokens of a Carbuncle drawne from the very effect it selfe, to the which may be added a very grieuous and vehement paine of the afflicted member, as though it were bound with strong chaines. They also which are thus affected, do necessarily fall into a Feauer, and that sooner then they which are troubled with *Phlegmone Erysipelatosa*. But if any poyson doth lurke within (as oftentimes it chanceth) the sicke persons are miserably tormented with perbraking and continuall vomitting, together with want of appetite, and loathing of meate. There are present also with them quaking of the heart, panting or mouing of the stomacke, & an often fainting of courage. This euill is called properly of the Chyrurgians of our age, *Anthrax*, differing from *Carbunculus*, by reason of the malice and crueltie of the euill: When as in very deed ἄνθραξ, among the Greekes is the very same that *Carbo*, or *Carbunculus* is among the Latines. Therefore it is superfluous to distinguish and to handle in diuers Chapters the signes and cure of them (which all Chyrurgians almost do vse at this time) But these Carbuncles do chiefly arise of violent causes, killing the people suddenly, and they follow a pestilent plague. Wherefore there is required a diligent heed or care about them, neither must they in any case be neglected. Moreouer, although ἄνθραξ, or euery Carbuncle be a sharpe disease, dangerous and contagious: yet the worst of all, and the most deadly, is that of *Auicen*, which doth arise in the purest places, and neere to the principall members. For it is to be feared, lest the venimous matter which exciteth the Carbuncle, do suddenly returne to the inward parts, and to some principall member: which if it shall happen, the sicke is in great danger of his life, especially if any euill signes shall bewray the same. But if the exhalation thereof be onely filthy and corrupted with abhominable poyson, it is enough to kill the man. If a Carbuncle chanceth about the stomacke, or about the cheekes, or iawes, it suddenly oftentimes (as *Celsus* saith) bursteth out the stomake. And lesse deadly is that Carbuncle in *Auicen*, which appeareth first red, and then yellow, or of an Orange colour.

Carbunculus duplex
Signes of a Carbuncle,
1. *Vlcus crustosum.*
2. *Some great whelkes, some small.*
3. *The colour of the crust either earthly or blacke.*
4. *The flesh blacke about it.*
5 *Grieuous paine.*
6. *A vehement feauer.*
7. *Nausea.*
8. *Vomitus.*
9. *Want of stomacke.*
10. *Cordis tremor.*
11. *Animi deliquium.*
Indicia.
1. *Whē a Carbuncle is most deadly (the iudgement thereof being taken from the affected place)*
2. *Another iudgement taken from the affected place.*
3. *Iudgement of the colour.*

4. Iudgement of the accidents.

But if it waxeth blew or blacke, it killeth almost euery man, and there is none that is iudged more dangerous of the owne nature then it. If the accidents which are wont to accompanie this disease, be very much remitted or released, there is some hope of recouerie: But if they be still more and more stretched out, and made more vehement, then truly the matter is in great despaire.

CHAP. XI.

Of the cure of a Carbuncle.

The cure of a carbuncle must be begun by bloud letting.

Vena è directo secanda.

Deepe scarification.

Sprinckling of hote salt water.

Arsenicum.

Sanguisugæ.

Fluxe in a carbuncle cannot be turned away, neither ought it.

Lib. 14. Ther.

A Cataplasme good for a carbuncle.

Cataplasme made Arnoglossa.

A cataplasme of Pom granates.

Galen *lib. Method. med.* 14. *& secundo ad Glauconem*, commandeth that the cure of a Carbuncle (hauing set downe a conuenient order of diet) must be begun with bloud letting by and by at the beginning (if none of those things do let, which are wont to forbid the cutting of a veine) who also willeth to draw bloud euen to the fainting of the heart: for it profiteth much those that be troubled with this euill. And this alwayes is to be marked, that the veine be stricken directly against the vlcer. But the choice of the veine is manifested vnto vs of the affected member (as we haue said in the cure of *Phlegmone.*) Therefore in that matter, euen a skilfull Physition must take counsell of the Chyrurgian, who hath the knowledge to declare from what place and how much bloud is to be drawne out. The veine (as it behoueth) being cut, if nothing (as I said) do hinder you, it shall not be amisse to scarifie the said tumour, vsing somewhat deepe cuts or wounds, by reason of the thicknesse of that malicious humour, that is, such cuts as are somewhat deeper then ordinarie (as it pleaseth *Galen*) There are some, which would haue scarification made in the crustie or hard vlcer onely, and then they straight way sprinckle those incisions with hote salt water, that bloud might not meet together in them, and increase, but that it might be emptied out. Sometime they also apply some gnawing medicine, as Arsenicke, which in this case among the rest hath the greatest vertue: but some do minister to the scarified place horse-leeches, or bloud-suckers. But strong repulsiues are in no wise to be vsed or applied to the aggrieued member (although refrigeration bee needfull, which indeed doth belong vnto the inflammation;) for you cannot so turne away the fluxe, or preuent the malice hereof, because of the thicknesse of the humour. And if at any time you shall do it, you shall find some other naughtie humour (as *Galen* saith) which is setled in the depth or inward parts of the body: but this humour must not be suffered to flow abundantly (the same *Galen* being our authour.) Therefore such remedies are to be sought for, as by a moderate repression can digest or disperse the humour. Such truly is that Cataplasme, both that which is made of Plantaine, and also that which is made of Lintels twice sodden. But with this you must commixe crummes of bread, which hath been baked in an ouen. Let the bread (after *Galens* counsell) be neither altogether without Branne, nor very full of it. But this kinde of Cataplasme is called of the latter sort *Emplastrum de Arnoglossa*, which they make after this sort. ℞. of Plantaine, Lintels, bread baked in an ouen, of each a like portion, let them be boiled in water. To these *Auicen* putteth Gaules, who also for this purpose doth allow the Cataplasme which is made of the two

Pome-

Pomegranats sodden either in Vineger, or in sharpe or tart Water, and these they apply both to the affected member, and also to the parts about it. Of this mind also is *Paulus Ægineta*, who saith, that if you will plucke vp a Carbuncle as it were by the rootes, and disseuer it from hauing any societie with the parts about it, you must seeth in Vineger a sharpe Pomegranate cut in small peeces: when the sore is corrupted you must wipe it smooth, and cleanse it with a linnen cloth, and when it waxeth drie, you must moisten it with Vineger. Also the kernell of the old filberd nut, or of the young, doth ripen and breake Carbuncles. But the best remedie for the parts lying about it, is the ointment made of Bolearmoniacke, of the oile or Roses or Mirtles, and of Vineger: which is vsed, because the humour which hath flowed already, should not returne backe againe within. There are some which do draw, and allure the poyson and malicious humour in a pestilent Carbuncle, with sucking or drawing it with cupping glasses, and with medicines that can bring the humour to the place which is beset with *Carbo*. Which thing truly I would also counsell to do, if ἀνθραξ doth occupie the arteries, and the parts about the lesser veines, and if the fluxe doth moue but slowly. But if it rusheth or breaketh forth strongly and aboundantly, the rage of the humour must be tamed and bridled by medicines that can moderately represse (as of late we recited out of *Galen*,) lest that there be caused too vehement paine through the fluxe that floweth so strongly in the affected member, & so the euill be made more painfull and angrie. But vpon this hard or crustie vlcer, especially when the member is putrified, you must lay some strong medicine, both which can greatly drie (but not that which can concoct or digest) and also which can moue the matter, (seeing that so you shall fauour the putrefaction of the member:) of this nature is that of *Andron*, *Musa*, *Pasio*, or *Polyida*: and it must be washed in some sweet wine, or in *Sapa*, by reason of the thicknesse of the filthie humour. That Cataplasme also which in *Galen* is made of the meale of Tares or Oximel, is rightly applyed, when as the vlcer is malignant and corrupted. But commonly the ointment called *vnguentum Ægyptiacum* is to be applied. But if these things do little profite, you must come vnto more sharpe remedies, which haue euen a fierie force. Of the which kind are these, the roote of *Dracunculus*, of *Aristolochia* broken and laid in Vineger, Lime, Arsenicke, yellow Oker, and other of this sort, which do burne like fire. These do profit sufficiently, if they do throughly resolue the corrupted member, euen from the quicke. This being done, whatsoeuer is corrupted and dead within, you must by and by pull away, and plucke it vp by the roots. But when after these gnawing medicines there followeth a scurse or scarre, which is drawne euery way from the quicke flesh, the wound truly, which is raised through them, must be diligently regarded, as in sores that be burned. But being in extreme diseases, (as *Hippocrates* saith) extreme remedies are perfectly the best: we are constrained sometime, (our medicines not prenailing with the euill) to roote out a malicious Carbuncle by actuall or manuall instruments (as they call it) that is, with a bright knife or some other such thing. But the end of burning is, while there is sense of paine euerie way, as *Celsus* hath taught very well. After these things the crust or scabbe which is vpon the vlcers

Paulus.

Nux auellana

Remedies to draw the poyson in a carbuncle.

What must be applied to a crustie vlcer.

A cataplasme of the meale of Tares & Oximel.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Adurentia medicamenta.

When adustion must be vsed.

Finis adurēdi.

vlcers, must be resolued by such medicines as are meete for that purpose. But if the sicke shall refuse to suffer adustion, the helpe of some poore and base fellow is to be vsed, who by laying hold on the Carbuncle with his teeth, may quite extinguish and pull vp the same; as were in time past certaine people in Italie named *Psilli*, who did sucke their wounds which they receiued by the stinging of Serpents, and that without any harme taking thereby. Moreouer the Carbuncle being thus taken away, or consumed any other way, the hollownesse thereof (the inflammation now ceasing) must first be cleansed, and afterward being made pure and cleane, it must be healed with filling medicines (which the Greekes call *Synulotica*;) which when it is throughly filled, neither doth there remaine any hollow place at all in it, it is conuenient to vse those things which can bring it to a scarre, as in other vlcers. But if the euill do not rage very much, but shall seeme to offer vs truce and peace, it is ripened and opened (as *Auicen* saith) by applying Figs commixed well together with leauen and Salt. And when this Cataplasme or the like is layed too twise or thrise, the place is wont to appeare altogether blacke, and full of chinkes or clifts; and then the place is to be scowred and cleansed with mundificatiues made of *Apium*. That medicine also which is made of the yolkes of egges and of Salt, if it be often applyed, it ripeneth and openeth a Carbuncle (as *Theodoricus* writeth.) For the same purpose we vse commonly at this day that medicine which is made of Honie, Salt, Wheate meale, and the yolkes of egges. *Consolida maior*, that is, Comferie (which the Greekes call *Symphyton*) being brayed betweene two stones, doth heale *Anthrax* very maruellously (as they report,) and within the space of one day it quite destroyeth it, so that it needeth no other curing any more after; besides also it is a common helpe for other wounds. Some also do declare wonderfull things of *Scabiosa*, because that (being eaten, or drunke in wine) it thrusteth out internall tumours to the externall places, and it doth dissolue and discusse them without paine.

Psilli.

Maturatiuũ Auicennæ.

Mundificatiuum ex Apio.

A common cataplasme vsed in Paris.

Consolida maior.

Scabiosa.

What things do resolue the crusts of vlcers

In the vlcers of a Carbuncle these do resolue the crusts of the scurfe, fresh butter, swines suet, and other fat things of that sort. For this purpose also this Emplaister following doth maruellously profite: for besides that it resolueth the scarre, that is, the crust, more speedily then the aforesaid things, it also aswageth the paine that is caused either of the sharpe and burning medicines, or of the bright instrument, and it mightily discussleth the malignous humour which exciteth the Carbuncle. ℞. of Wheate and Barley meale, ana. ℥. iij. of the which make a solide Emplaister with the decoction of Mallowes, Violets, and the rootes of *Althæa*, and put thereunto of Butter, and Swines suet melted, ana. ℥. ij. the yolkes of two egges, which must be put in when they are taken off the fire, and all these must be diligently commixed and incorporate together with the aforesaid rootes and herbes; which must be well beaten and brayed together the one with the other, and then sifted through a searce. As concerning their diet, Epithemes, Cordials, and other of that kind, which are made to strengthen the heart, also euacuations, if they be needfull, do altogether pertaine vnto that part of Physicke which cureth with diet and medicines. Wherefore in ministring them, you must aske the aduice or counsell of some learned Physition. But commonly all men almost do vse *Theriaca*, which is

Theriaca.

wont

wont to be ministred to the greatnesse of a Beane, made of the water of Scabious, or if a very sharpe and vehement feuer be present, you must make it of Rose water, or water of Buglosse: which the sicke must take sixe houres after meate. But because we haue made mention before of the Trochiskes of *Andron*, *Polyida*, and *Musa* (which *Galen* so greatly vsed) it shall not be amisse to set downe here the description of them.

℞. of Cytrines, that is, of the first flowers or buds of Pomegranates, ʒ. x. of Alume that may be cut, ʒ. iiij. of Coperous or Vitrioll, ʒ. xij. of Mirrhe, ʒ. iiij. of Frankinsence, *Aristolochia*, & Gals, ana. ʒ. viij. of Salt ammoniack, ʒ. iiij. *Andronis Trochiscus.*

℞. of Pomegranate rindes, ʒ. vj. of Mirre, ʒ. viij. of Alume that may be cut, ʒ. v. of Frankinsence, ʒ. iiij. of Coperous, ʒ. iiij. of the gall of a bull, ʒ. vj. Let these be taken in sweete wine. *Polyida Pastillus.*

℞. of cut Alume, ʒ. iij. Frankinsence, ʒ. iiij. of Mirrhe as much, of Coperous, ʒ. ij. of the flowers of Pomegranates, ʒ. xij. of buls gall, ʒ. vj. *Aloes*, ʒ. viij. Take these in sharpe wine. *Polyidæ pastillus alius.*

℞. of cut Alume, *Aloes*, Mirrhe, Copetous, ana. ʒ. vj. of Saffron and of the dregs of the oile of Saffron, ʒ. iij. of the flowers of Pomegranates, ʒ. iiij. Let them be taken in *Mulsum* made of *Falernum*. *Musæ trochiscus.*

CHAP. XII.

Of Gangræna and Sphacelus.

GALEN *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, calleth them Cankers, which by reason of the greatnesse of the inflammation be made and changed into mortifications, yet they be not throughly ingendred and alreadie confirmed. The force and tyrannie of this euill is so outragious, that except it be remedied verie speedily, the affected member doth easily represent the habite of death, that is, it doth very readily draw together the extinction and quenching both of life, sense, and mouing. But when the member is so corrupted and so feeble, that it is altogether without sense, and as it were dead, so that whether it be striken, or cut, or burned, the sicke feeleth it not, then the Greeks call this euill no longer *Gangræna*, but *Sphacelus*, the Latines *Syderatio*, the later sort call it *Esthiomenon*: which name also they giue vnto *Gangræna*. But *Auicen* calleth it *Esthiomenon*, when as the corruption thereof doth passe to the continuall parts, which terme the Grecians do vse in another order. Some call this affect sometime *Herpeta Esthiomenon*, sometime very improperly, *Cancer vlceratus*. But this affect chanceth also to the bones, when as the flesh being beset & compassed about with them, bringing forth and ingendring filthy & stinking corruption, doth infect them with this horrible poyson, and consumeth them with most corruptible rottennesse. Therefore when as the member shall together appeare void of life, sense, & mouing, you must by and by pare it to the quicke as neare as you can to the sound flesh. *Sphacelus* therefore differeth from *Gangræna*, because the one doth grow vp in the bones, (as we haue declared) and not in the flesh and the vessels of the bodie onely: but the other cometh not to the bones; notwithstanding it is one kind of *Sphacelus*, but it borroweth a proper & singular name beside the cõmon terme. This kind of corruption being

What a Canker is, & whence it hath his beginning.

Gangræna pessimus tyrannus.

Sphacelus.

Syderatio ossium.

The benũmed member must straight way be pared.

perfect in the affected part, and altogether depriued of sense, is called commonly in France *Ignis Sancti Antonij*, in another place, *Ignis Sancti Martialis*. But this mortification of the members, or the extinguishing and destroying of the life in them, chanceth three wayes. One way, when as the member can no longer receiue the life that is sent to it from the heart through the Arteries, by reason of the dissoluing of the mixture and consent of the affected member. Which mixture and harmonie of the member is dissolued and destroyed, either because of too much cold (as sometime it happeneth in sharpe and boisterous winter) or by reason of immoderate, rash and vnaduised refrigeration of the inflammation, or else because of the exceeding and vnmeasurable vehement heate, and poyson of the inflammations, and malignant vlcers (as they call them.) Another way *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus* are caused, when as the life being gotten into the member, is choked and stopped, as it oftentimes happeneth in great inflammations, which sometimes do close vp and stop the veines, arteries, and pores of the skin, that there the spirits (the breathing forth of the vapourous streames, and the drawing in of the aire, being altogether hindered) are strangled and choaked. The third way, these mortifications, and destroyings of life are caused in the members, when as the passage and flowing of the vitall breath from the heart to some member is letted and forbidden: and that happeneth either by reason of a vehement and strong binding, or else because of some bruise receiued in those passages and pores through the which the breath is carried. To conclude, *Gangræna* and *Syderatio*, which the Grecians call *Necrosis* and *Sphacelus*, do chance vnto mens bodies, destroying either the member or the vitall facultie, or the naturall heate and temperature of the body. But the signes of *Gangræna* and *Syderatio*, *Galen* in his litle treatise of tumours aboue nature, declareth to be these. First truly that flourishing colour is extinguished in them, which is wont to be in phlegmonous inflammations: then paine and beating of the pulses, that is, the mouing of the arteries, which is felt of the sicke, do depart a little aside, yet their naturall disposition is not altogether ended, but their sense altogether dead and mortified. Whereupon the member straight way appeareth blacke, and it is very soft and full of corruption, it breatheth out a filthy sauour, and it is like vnto a dead thing without life. Whereby it commeth to passe, that when it is touched with the finger, it easily yeeldeth very deeply, neither after doth it rise vp againe or returne, but the skin appeareth as though it were separated from the flesh. But this mortification of the affected member (which the Grecians call *Gangræna*, is of so great crueltie and madnesse (as *Paulus* saith) that except you presently seeke a remedie for it without all delay, the affected member soone perisheth, and then it inuadeth the other parts that be next vnto it, and killeth the man. But if (as *Celsus* reporteth) it yet hath but small power, but is now in beginning, it is not very hard to cure, especially in a young mans body, and so much the rather if the muscles be sound and whole, if the sinewes be not hurt, or smally affected. But when this euill hath taken deepe roote, and is turned againe into *Sphacelus*, it is vncurable, and very many do die of a cold sweate.

Ignis Sancti Antonij.

Three causes of mortificatiõ

1 *What things do dissolue the mixture of the member.*

2.

3. *Signes of Gãgræna and Sphacelus.*

1.

2.

3.

4.

Indicia. lib. 4.

Lib. 5.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the cure of Gangræna caused of great inflammations, and of the destroying or curing of Sphacelus, which is ingendred of Gangræna.

BEcause the abundance of bloud doth ingender a Canker, the order of the cure thereof must be straightway attempted by a plentifull and copious euacuation of the corrupt bloud, which is packed together in the affected member. But in the meane season, you must not neglect those things which shall seeme to belong vnto diet, medicines, cutting of a veine (if need require) and strengthening of the heart, in which things the Chyrurgian must take the aduise of some learned Physition, who knoweth how to instruct him therein (as the matter shall require.) But there must be great plentie of that congealed bloud (which causeth mortifications) drawne out from the affected part, either in the veine that is cut, if it appeareth any thing full and swolne about the same member, or in the whole skin of the part affected, together with his substance either kept downe and made obedient, or cut or diuided by many deepe scarifications. Some to this end do apply horse-leeches, and they do open a little the veines that be next the sore; but those deepe and often sections or scarifications are much more effectuall to cure that euill. But because of the greatnesse of the Canker, we vse great sections, or often incisions (which we call scarifications) the one, when the euill is more rotten, the other when it onely beginneth to rot. For the greater the euill is, the greater remedy it requireth (as euery man may know.) But when you haue drawne out bloud abundantly by those deepe slashes or cuts, you must wash the place with salt-water, that the thicke bloud which otherwise would abound there, may be brought forth. Then you must apply some medicine that can let and dissolue putrifaction, as is the meale of Tares or Darnell (which the French men call *Yuraria*, because it doth prouoke drunkennesse after the manner of wine:) or if there be scarcity of them, you must vse the meale of Beanes with *Oximel* and *Syrupus acetosus*. It shall be profitable also to wash the scarified place twice a day with hote vineger, but especially with *Mulsum*. For these by reason of the drinesse, do consume the filthinesse and corruption, and do cleanse it; but because of their coldnesse they do challenge of putrifaction that which is not yet defiled and corrupted. But when this feruent heate is now abated, and the furie of the euill somewhat remitted and slaked, you must lay aboue vpon the sore that ointment which is commonly called *vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, made of Verdigrease, Alume, Honie, and Vineger, of each a like quantitie commixed and boiled together. This doth stop putrifaction and resolue it: and it doth disseuer also the putrified and corrupted humour from the sound and whole parts, and it doth cause it to fall and perish. Moreouer it procureth a crust or scarre, and preserueth and defendeth the whole parts from any infection. But if you will apply a more strong and effectuall medicine, mingle Salt with the aforesaid things: or if the euill shall increase yet more and more, minister some of the Trochiskes before mentioned, being throughly brayed & beaten together

Emptying of corrupted bloud.

After scarificatiō you must wash the place with salt water.

Medicines putrifactiues.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Burning Trochiskes.

together, and then washed in Vineger and Wine: as that either of *Andron*, or *Polyida*, or *Musa*, or one of those which are called of the latter sort *Calidicon*, *Aldaron*, or that made of *Asphodelus*, which by reason of the burning force do separate the corruption from the sound parts. In this matter before all other things *Arsenicon* is praised and allowed of, which they call *Sublimatum*, *purum* or *correctum*, which must be dissolued either in some powder or in wine, and taken in linnen or cotton (which the Frenchmen call *Coton*,) and so applied betweene the sound and corrupted member: for this doth straight way stay the euill, and that truly without paine. But if necessitie requireth, you must deuide the good from the euill with a certaine instrument called a probe, or slice. But in ministring medicines (that the matter may be handled more without care) you must be diligent to know the nature of the sicke body (as *Galen* hath well taught vs saying:) If the body be rusticall and hard by nature, it requireth very vehement medicines: but if it be tender and soft, it requireth more gentle and mild medicines. Infants also or children, and they which loue to liue at their owne pleasure in idlenesse, must haue gentle medicines ministred to them. Moreouer the nature of the parts which are euill affected must be regarded as well as the whole bodie, when you do either cut off, or cut about that which is putrified and corrupted. For there are some sores, which very quickly do come to matter and corruption, if they be negligently cured: and some very slowly: some also do slowly feele the force and benefite of medicines applyed, and some very soone.

Arsenicon. sublimatum.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

Furthermore if (notwithstanding these burning medicines) the euill shall yet remaine, you must burne that place which is betweene the whole and corrupted member. But all these remedies are wont sometime to profit nothing at all, and then this is the onely helpe, although (as *Celsus* saith) it be a miserable helpe, that is, to cut off the member, which by little and little waxeth dead, that so the other parts of the body may be without danger. For that which is once corrupted, euen with touching, it doth infect and corrupt that part which is whole and sound, after the manner of poyson. But if at any time you shall cut off this putrified and dead member, or shall lance off that which is corrupted in any member euen to the sound flesh, then by the counsell of *Galen* for more quietnesse sake, you must seare or burne with some bright instrument that member, which as a roote is ioyned to the whole and sound body, for so you shall quickly stay the flowing of bloud, and debarre corruption. Now adustion being done and ended, you must vse the iuyce of leekes, or (as *Paulus* saith) you must apply salt with the leekes, or some of those remedies which we haue spoken off a little before. For these do dry and bind the corruption, and do also stop the fluxe of humors. But when by vsing these remedies, rottennesse or corruption shall seeme to cease: that the crusts and scurfe may soone fall away, you must vse a Cataplasme made of bread, or barley meale, or wheate meale boyled in *Hydreleon*. Also that medicine which they call *Cephalicum*, annointed with hony. These through their cleansing or scouring, do resolue the crust from the flesh which lieth vnder it. Moreouer that medicine which is called *Tetrapharmacum*, and that also called *Macedonicum*, by mouing and mollifying the matter, do bring the scurfes from the parts that lye vnder them,

When adustion is to be vsed.

If the Canker turneth into Sphacelus.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

Lib. 4.

Remedies that can loosen the crusts from the seared members.

them, as all other things do, which do bring the sores vnto suppuration. For these remedies do both mollifie, and ripen or end the matter vnder the crust, which matter doth resolue it: (I meane that matter which lieth betweene the crust and the flesh.) Bread also beaten and brayed in *Apium*, or *Ocinium*, thorough their cleansing doth mightily draw the crusts from the whole parts without erosion or gnawing; of the like vertue also is *Iris*, or the roote of *Panax*, or of *Aristolochia*, or of *Acorus* mixed with Honie. But they are cõmonly wont to vse Butter or some other annointing thing to resolue the crusts. But *Butyrum.* when the crust is fallen off, they wash the place with Vineger, and apply this Plaister following, which is rehearsed by *Gulielmus de Saliceto.* ℞. Honie, ℔. ß. raw yolkes of egges, three or foure, of Barley meale, ℔. ß. mingle these together, and bring them to the forme of an Emplaister. But two or three dayes after, that the mundification or cleansing may be the better accomplished, you may adde to this Emplaister, of chosen Mirrhe, ℥. x. But in tender and yong bodies for the separation of the crust, and detersion of the filthy corruption, the meale of Tares mingled with Honie, or Frankinsence (which was vsed of *Galen*) doth abundantly suffise. These things being rightly ordered, such kind of vlcers must be brought vnto some soundnesse of health with such kind of medicines as can draw together the flesh, & procure a scarre: the Grecians call them *Synulotica* and *Epolotica.* 1. Emptie out abundantly the corrupted bloud, which is stuffed in the affected member. 2. After scarifications or sections, wash the affected member with salt water; then lay on a medicine appointed for corrupted sores. 3. When the furie of the euil is somewhat slaked, minister *vnguentum Ægyptiacum.* 4. If the euill will not yeeld to these remedies, seare with a bright and hote iron that place which is betweene the filthy and corrupted member. 5. But if all these things shall nothing helpe, and now *Gangræna* is changed into *Sphacelus*, cut off that member very speedily which is so perished, euen to the whole, so that no filthinesse remaine behind. 6. When you haue cut off that which is putrified, you must vse some hote burning instrument, that so you may the more quietly pull vp euen the very root of the euill. 7. After exustion, minister the iuyce of Leekes, and other such things as do drie, binde, and stop fluxe. 8. Make no great speed to resolue the crust or scurfe by vsing burning medicines, or some hote instrument from the subiect places (for then there is wont to follow abundance of bloud.) 9. When rottennesse or corruption is ceassed, and you feare no more the flowing of bloud, apply those things which can draw off the crust. 10. When the crusts or scurfes be fallen from their places, you must vse the same cure as in other places.

Emplastrum Gulielmi à Saliceto.

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

The summe of the cure of Gangræna & Sphacelus.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

1. First appoint a thinne and cooling diet for them which are vexed with *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus.* 2. If nothing do let it, turne away the fluxe by letting of bloud: and draw it out abundantly, if it flow plentifully. 3. Purifie the bloud with the medicine which is called *Catholicon*, or with the blacke pith of *Cassia fistularis*, or with the decoction of *Tamarindi*, of Hoppes, and Fumitorie. 4. Let the sicke take *Theriaca*, and other of that kinde, which are able to defend the heart (which is the fountaine and beginning of life) from those corrupted and filthy smelling fluxes, which are mounted vp from the putrified members.

Aphorismes pertaining to a Physition.

1. 2. 3. 4.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Erysipelas and other tumours caused of Choler.

Fleame in the generation of humors is next vnto bloud.

ALthough fleame in generation of humors, doth follow next vnto bloud, & there be greater abundance of that humour in the body, next vnto bloud, then of other humours, yet because tumours aboue nature proceeding of choler (which they commonly call cholericke apostemes) do in many things greatly conspire and agree with bloudy tumours, it followeth (after the determination of *Phlegmone*, and other tumours consisting aboue nature, which proceed of bloud) that we now speake of those swellings which are caused of choler, and are called of the Greekes by this generall name *Erysipelata*, but of the ancient Latines *Ignes sacri*. *Erysipelas* therefore is the branch or bud of cholericke fluxe most abiding about both the skinnes, that is, both about that which outwardly couereth all the parts of the body, and also about that filmie and thinne skin which inwardly compasseth the internall parts. But oftentimes also it occupieth some of the flesh that lyeth vnder it, as *Phlegmone* (which is the issue of bloudy flux most incident to fleshy bodies) doth also possesse some of the skin. Therefore when very thin choler, or hote bloud, which is thin also in substance, (called of the latter sort *Cholera naturalis* but of *Galen* χολὴ ξανθὴ) is spread abroad ouer the skin onely, nothing molesting the flesh vnder it, and yet somewhat raising the mẽber into a tumor with a languishing inflammation and yellow rednesse, and altogether doth yeeld when it is touched; this affect is properly called of *Galen*, a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*. But this is for one consideration, or (as they say) it chanceth vniformely, and without vlceration. *Auicen* calleth it *Spina*. But when a humour of bitter choler shall be more thicke and sharpe, then that it can returne againe naturally, it doth exulcerate or fetch off that little outward skinne which the Greekes call *Epidermida*, and sometime that exulceration of the skin in processe of time pierceth somewhat deeply, so that it toucheth the inner flesh vnder it, and then that affect is called also *Erysipelas*, but with vlceration, which (as *Galen* saith) is all one with *Herpes*. But if it be neither a cholericke fluxe, nor a bloudy humour, but equally congealed of them both, it is not then *Erysipelas* onely, but *Galen* termeth it a disposition throughly commixed with *Erysipelas* and the inflãmation. But of that which is predominant in the mixture, is the title giuen to the euill. For when bloud ruleth, it is called *Phlegmone erysipelatosa*: but when choler raigneth, terme it *Erysipelas phlegmonósum*. But when neither hath superioritie, but the accidents of them both appeare equall together in power, then that euill shall be called a meane betweene *Phlegmone* & *Erysipelas*. Now also of the other mixtures, there shall be the like interpretation, that is, if much choler be mingled with a thin and small humor, either of fleame or melancholy, it shall be called *Erysipelas ædematósum* or *schirrhosum*. Moreouer when we speake simply of choler, or of a bilious humour, after the manner of *Galen* and other Phisitions, we meane pale choler, yellow, and bitter, and not that which is soure and blacke. And this is called of others, *naturalis & certa cholera*, hauing his generation of bloud that is thin and hote. But melancholy we neuer absolutely do terme choler, but alwaies with an adiection of the humour

Erysipelas quid.

Erysipelas exquisitum.

Spina.

Erysipelas cũ vlceratione.

Erysipelas non legitimum.

Medium vitium.

Bilis.

mour, which ioyneth the colour of the name. Choler therefore, which is called of the Greekes χολὴ, and commonly *Cholera*, is a hote and dry humour, proceeding of the thinner and hotter part of *Chylus*, or thin and hote bloud (as we said alate.) And this is two maner of wayes according to the diuision of the new Physitions, that is to say, naturall choler is a hot and dry humor, in substance thin, of colour yellow, or red, declining vnto a certaine colour like Orenge tawnie, but in taste very bitter, and sharpe or soure (as some vntruly haue affirmed.) Vnnaturall choler is said to be that, which doth degenerate from the aforesaid bilious humours, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuite, which if it doth once passe or go out of, it is now not to be accounted choler, but rather some other humour. But this (I meane choler) doth happen to transgresse the limits of his libertie or circuit two wayes. 1. One way (as wee may say) by it selfe. 2. The other way by admixtion with others. By it selfe and in it selfe it is also two-fold. 1. One way, when as that naturall choler doth putrifie, and is burned within, and that is called *Adusta per putrefactionem*, that is burnt through putrefaction. 2. The other way, when as vnnaturall choler called *Vitellina*, is throughly concocted euen with a fierie heate, in the liuer or in the stomach, or in the veines; & it is made of the colour of leekes, which they also call *Prassina*, or it is caused to be rusty or cankred, which truly are extreame griefes. But vnnaturall choler, or choler aboue nature, through admixtion, is caused, when as another humor doth come vnto it extraordinarily. And this truly happeneth many wayes. For if thin and watrish fleame be mixed with it, it is made yellow, and like vnto Saffron; if thick and vicious fleame be commixed therewith, it is made like to yolkes of egs: but if burned melancholy be ioyned therewith, it is made *bilis adusta per admixtionem*. And so after *Auicens* minde and iudgement, there are sixe kindes of naturall choler; with *Haly Abbas* foure onely; for he maketh no mention at all of two kindes of adusted choler. But *Gal. 2. de virtut. naturalibus* saith, that there is no choler besides nature, but that which is *vitellina*, very like both in colour & thicknesse to the yolkes of egs: for he saith that *porracea* & *æruginosa bilis* are ingendred oftentimes in the stomach, of naughtie and corrupted humours, by reason of cruditie or rawnesse of meates and drinkes, as are, the herbe called Bete, Onions, Colewortes. And also sometime, when these things are not well digested, it ingendreth in the very veines, by reason of sicknesse, or some other euill disposition By these things therfore is gathered, that there are foure kinds or differences of inflãmations ingendred of choler (which commonly are called cholericke apostemes;) that is to say, of true, sincere, and laudable choler (which we call thinne and hote bloud) is ingendred that kinde of inflammation, which *Galen lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, calleth a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, which is as it were a passion of the skinne onely: in Greeke it is called ἀκριβὲς ἐρυσίπελας. But of vnnaturall choler, being mixed with other humours, there do arise three other differences, *Erysipelas Phlegmonôdes*, *Erysipelas ædematôdes*, and *Erysipelas Scirrhôdes*. And of choler which besides nature is caused of adustion, by reason of thinnesse or thicknesse of the substance thereof, there are ingendred either *Herpetes esthiomeni*, that is, *exedentes*, which are of the same kinde with those *Erysipelata*, which do chance with vl-

Bilis flaua duplex.

Not naturall.

Choler doth digresse from his owne nature.

Bilis vitellina
Porracea.
Prassina.
Aeruginosa.

Crocea.

Auicene.
Haly.

Foure differences of inflammations coming of choler.

Verum Erypelas.

Three vnlawfull Erysipelas

Herpes exedens.

ceration,

Phagedæna. Cancri vlceratio.

ceration, or there are ingendred *Phagedænæ*, which do somewhat deeply gnaw the flesh together with the skin, & there are caused exulcerate cankers, & other such gnawing euils: there are also engendred *Cacoëthe*, that is, malignant vlcers, which are called of the late Chyrurgians *Pustulæ corrosiuæ*. Therefore in such kinde of humours, that is truly the most thinne, which raiseth the exulcerated *Herpes*: and that most thicke, which prouoketh the Canker. Then that which pertaineth vnto thicknesse, occupieth the next place, which doth ingender *Phagedænæ*, as *Galen* hath noted *Lib.* 14. *Meth. med.* The causes of a true *Erysipelas*, as also of a true *Phlegmone*, are three, *Prægressæ*, which are called also *Primitiue*, 2. *antecedentes*, and *coniunctæ*. But *Erysipelas* is seldome caused of any primitiue cause: notwithstanding violent frictions, the applying and ministring of attractiue medicines, do oftentimes excite and cause the same.

Causæ veri Erysipelatis

CHAP. XV.

Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas.

Signes of Erysipelas.

THe marks and tokens of a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, are gathered and known by conferring the same with *Phlegmone*, according to the doctrine of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* and 2. *ad Glauconem*: whereby it plainly appeareth, that a true and lawfull *Erysipelas* is a certaine *Species* of *Phlegmone*, that is, of an inflammation as it is generally taken. The signes therefore of *Erysipelas* are these, a red colour to behold, declining somewhat to yellow, which yellowish colour doth easily yeeld to touching or handling of it, that is, by thrusting it downe with the fingers, and then it slideth in againe, a small tumour rather remaining in the skin, then descending deeply, vehement heate causing a more vehement feauer then that which is ascended of *Phlegmone*: for *Erysipelas* is farre away more hote then *Phlegmone*. No great or strong breaking of the pulses, which is the proper symptomate of a great *Phlegmone*. A biting and pricking paine without any extension, as it chanceth in *Phlegmone*, and many other like signes which do signifie the dominion and rule of choler. But that which pertaineth vnto the iudgement hereof, *Erysipelas* doth chiefly lay hold on the face, and beginneth commonly in that part of the nose which is commonly called *Lepus*; then straight way it spreadeth ouer the whole face, and that through a double occasion, that is, for the thinnesse of the skinne, and lightnesse of the choler. But in the vncouering or laying naked of any bone, *Erysipelas* is a sodaine and maruellous disease, as *Hippocrates* writeth *Lib.* 7. *Aphorisme* 19. that is to say, it is an euill symptomate, if the flesh lying round about the naked bone doth seeme to be occupied of *Erysipelas*, but this, as *Galen* witnesseth, chanceth very seldome. Againe, the same *Hippocrates* writeth in the Aphorisme following, that of *Erysipelas* there commeth corruption, suppuration, together with the disease, which things (saith *Galen*) neuer do chance to *Erysipelata*, except it be to them which are very malignant. A true and lawfull *Erysipelas* hath foure times or seasons, as other tumours also aboue nature haue: the signes whereof are to be sought out of those things which went before. An exquisite *Erysipelas* is seldome ended by suppuration, but chiefly through an insensible transpiration or resolution. There happen sometime in *Erysipelas* certaine symptomates, which oftentimes by reason of their greatnesse do exceed the very cause of the euill it selfe, and therefore they do

A yellowish rednesse yeelding to the finger, a small tumour, vehement heate. Small pulse. Pricking paine. Indicia.

binder

der the order of the cure, that is, they do change and peruert the method of curing (as hath also bene said before in *Phlegmone.*) Moreouer also *Erysipelas* followeth the mouing of a Tertian feauer, with whose matter it hath a certaine analogie and proportion: for the matter of them both is a cholericke humour. But it is not good to driue or turne *Erysipelas* from the outward parts to the inward, but contrariwise from the inward members to the outward parts, as *Hippocrates* hath written, *Lib.6. Apho.* 25. But those *Erysipelata* which do arise about the head, do put vs to more trouble, which (as *Paulus* saith) are wont to be so dangerous, that except they be holpen with some effectuall remedie, they somewhat strangle and choke the sicke. *Hippocrates* also writeth, that *Erysipelas* is very mortall and deadly, if it chanceth in the wombe of a woman with child; for *Erysipelas* being thus ingendred in the wombe, the child of necessitie dieth. For truly a sharpe feuer (as *Galen* saith in his commentaries) oftentimes destroyeth it without inflammation.

Erysipelas followeth the order of a tertia feauer.

Erysipelata about the head are very hard to be cured.

Erysipelas in the wombe of a woman killeth the child.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the cure of Erysipelas.

SEeing that *Erysipelas* (as also *Phlegmone* whereof we intreated a litle before) is a hote affect, and ingendred of the defluxion of humours, the method of the whole curing thereof shall also be two-told; that is to say, refrigeration, and euacuation. And as in *Phlegmone* the order of euacuation doth surmount and ouercome the method of refrigeration, so in *Erysipelas* refrigeration is more needfull then euacuation; for the one doth trouble and molest in quantitie, but the other (which is *Erysipelas*) in quality. Therefore *Erysipelas* must be greatly cooled and little emptied, whereas contrariwise an inflammation ought to be plentifully euacuated, and little refrigerated. Although there be a common Chapter and summe of curing both affects, (as *Galen* saith) that is, the vacuation of the troublesome humour: and therefore after that *Erysipelas* hath bene cooled, we vse those medicines which can digest or discusse. Furthermore that we may attaine vnto this vniuersall method which we haue said to be two-fold (I meane refrigeration and euacuation of the noysome humour,) it shall not be amisse, if we declare this cure by foure other particular orders after the consent of the Chyrurgians of our time. The first scope consisteth in the right obseruation of a good diet. The second concerneth the auersion of the humour that floweth to the affected member, which they call *Antecedens materia.* The third consisteth in the emptying out of the humour which hath flowed alreadie into the diseased part, which they also call *Materia coniuncta.* The fourth and last is busied and occupied about the correction and keeping backe of the euill symptomates that may happen thereunto. We shall easily dispatch the first scope, if the applying of all those things which they call *Res non naturales*, shall belong vnto moistnesse and to coldnesse, as is a feauer Tertian; seeing that *Erysipelas* hath his beginning of choler, which is of a hote and drie temperature. Therefore chuse and prepare an aire as neare as you can, that is somewhat cold and moist. In Sommer let the sicke be in a very cold house somewhat within the ground, that is windie, and towards the North. But if there be no such place to be had, and the aire be very hote, make it ready for him

Two generall orders in the cure of Erysipelas.

Foure particular intentions of curing Erysipelas.

1.

2.

3.

4.

Primus scopus

Aër.

him your selfe by Art. Powre cold water verie often out of one vessell into another, sprinkle the pauements of the house daily with water that is altogether vcie and cold. Spread vpon the floore Roses and Violets, Vine leaues and branches, Sallow boughes, and other flowers and buds which are of a cold and moist facultie. Let no great companie of men come into the parlour or place where the sicke abideth. Let him eschue all fat, sweete, sowre, and hote meates. Let him eate Lettuce, Gourds, Purslaine, Sorrell, (which they call *Acetosa*) Rice, and other things of that kind, which do thicken and refrigerate bloud. Let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let his drinke be Ptisan broth, or Barley water. Let him keepe a temperate diet. Let his bellie be alwayes soft and soluble. Let him abstaine from all exercise and mouing, especially that which is vehement and immoderate. Let him eschue anger, contentions, and all vehement motions and perturbations of the mind, as mortall enemies. Let all things be cleane and handsome about him. Let him refraine from carnall copulation. And let these things suffice concerning the first scope. But we shall also bring to passe our second intent about the cure of *Erysipelas*, if by conuenient euacuation we take away the humour which is left behind in the bodie. Therefore in a true and lawfull *Erysipelas* (not necessarily as in *Phlegmone*) we must draw bloud out of a veine, but we must also purge the bellie downward with some medicine which can expell choler, (called of the Greekes *Chologogon*) if that the affect be great, and the bodie doth seeme to abound whith choler. Therefore when *Erysipelas* doth accend and kindle feauers, and those more vehement then *Phlegmone*, those medicines which are exceeding hote, as the iuyce of *Scammonium* (called of the new Greekes *Diacrydion*) and that also which is commonly called in the shops *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, are in no wise meete or conuenient for this disease, and therefore you must vse either Rewbarbe, or that potion which of *Rasis* is called *Aqua Tamarindorum*, which is made as followeth. ℞. Damaske prunes, xxiij. *Tamarindi* that be new, ʒ.x. of broken Sugar, quart. ß. to the which things to make them more effectuall, you may adde Rewbarbe that is well washed. But if the euill be very little and small, these medicines called *Cholagoga* shall not neede, but it shall be sufficient to vse at that instant some sharpe clyster, (as it pleaseth *Galen*.) But in a phlegmonous *Erysipelas* your labour shall not be frustrate, if you shall begin the cure with bloudletting (if nothing do let it.) For that kind of *Erysipelas* doth often lay hold on the face; whereupon *Paulus* commandeth, that by and by in the beginning you must cut a veine in the elbow, especially chusing in it the shoulder veine. But if that do not appeare, you must take that which is most obiect to the sight. And if any thing do hinder the detraction of bloud, he commandeth to vse a purgation made of some medicine which is dedicated and appointed to driue out choler; yet *Paulus* doth not contend with *Galen*: for whereas *Paulus* hath commanded to cut a veine in that *Erysipelas* which doth rise about the head and face, he meant that of a phlegmonous *Erysipelas*, which verie often molesteth the face: but *Galen* speaketh of a lawfull *Erysipelas*, wherein he vsed no detraction of bloud. But in *Erysipelas œdematôsum* or *scirrhôsum*, you must vse a purgation which hath a mingled & manifold force, that is, which can purge, partly choler, partly fleame, or a melancholy humor.

Cibus.

Potus.

Motus. Animi affectus.

Venus.

Secundus scopus.

2. ad Glauc. In a phlegmonous Erysipelas it is good to let bloud.

And

And truly in all these things the aduice of some wise and learned Physition is to be asked, from whose counsell and decree the Chyrurgian ought not in any wise to swerue or digresse. And let this be sufficient, that once you haue bene admonished, that the Chyrurgian ought not to attempt any thing at all in those things which belong vnto purging and bloud-letting, without the counsell and warrant of some cunning Physition, except sometime necessitie shall compell him, and when no Physition is ready at hand. The third intention is finished and performed by cooling and repelling medicines in the beginning of the fluxe, excepting those causes which we haue mentioned in our generall discourse. But the beginning being passed, and fluxe now remaining, you must emptie that which cleaueth fast vnto the member, and is compacted therein, by applying outwardly digestiue or euaporatiue medicines, that is to say, through the transpiration and breathing through to the sense. But of all these kinds of tumours thus consisting aboue nature, there is a double euacuation. (*Galen Lib.* 14. *Therap.*) one of repulsiues to the other parts, the other of outward digestiues, through that vaporous breathing which doth flie the sense. But because *Erysipelas* doth afflict and molest not onely in quantitie, but also in the very qualitie, by reason of the vehement inflammation, it doth require a more often and greater refrigeration theu *Phlegmone* doth. Therefore after the emptying of the whole body (as we haue said a little before) we will vse repressiue remedies, cooling as is conuenient the afflicted member, or that part which sustaineth the skinne: especially when *Erysipelas* is engendred without any manifest cause. But the end of refrigeration is the mutation or change of the colour: for that which is a pure *Erysipelas* doth by and by rest and ceasse with this; but that which is not pure, but after a sort Phlegmonous, if you shall refrigerate it much, it maketh the skin blacke and blew: but if you shall desist from seeking to change the colour, it waxeth black, especially in an aged body: so that some of those refrigerated tumors cannot perfectly be healed, no not with digesting medicines, but that some scirrhous tumour will remaine behind in the member. It is farre better therefore (saith *Galen*) when you see the colour of the affected member altered, to passe ouer from refrigeration and moderating helpes vnto their contraries, that is, vnto dissoluing or digesting and drying remedies, before that the member be altogether blew or blacke. But you must alwaies beware and take good heed, that those things which be annointed, be very liquide and moist, and that they be often changed, and that those things which be applied, be often washed with sponges dipped in some liquor: for the great heate of the member quickly burstingforth into a vapour, doth dry vp these things. But amongst those things which carry with them a refrigerating and repelling force, very conuenient for this affect, *Auicen* chiefly praiseth among simple remedies the sprinkling on of cold water. But *Galen* commendeth the iuyce of Nightshade, of Syngreen, of Purslaine, of *Psilliũ*, of Henbane, of Lettuce, of *Vmbilicus veneris* (which herbe is called of the Greekes *Cotylidon*) of Endiue and Succorie, of fenne Lintels, of Gourds, and other of that sort. Also that cerate made of very cold water, which containeth foure times as much of oyle of Roses with white waxe. ℞. oyle of Roses with oyle of vnripe Grapes made without salt,

In phlebotomy and purging, the Chyrurgiã must be taught by the Physition.

Tertia intentio.

Hic Guido deprauatè citat Gal.

How much Erysipelas is to be refrigerated.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Materia refrigerantium ex Gal.

Ceratum.

which being made very soft and pliable in a mortar, sprinkle on cold water as much as you thinke good, with the which if you commixe a little Vineger that is thin and very cleare, you shall make the medicine more excellent and more effectuall. Moreouer all these things must be ministred cold, and often changed, before they be any thing dried or withered. It profiteth also very much & that presently, to annoint the member annoyed with *Erysipelas*, with Ceruse onely, or mingled with Vineger and *Lycium*, or with *Terra cimolia*, or with potters clay, with Nightshade, or with *Spuma argenti*, with oyle of Roses, and with *Acatia* with vineger. To this purpose also this compound following helpeth much. ℞. iuyce of Plantaine, ℥. j. oile of Roses, ℥. iij. *Lithargyri nutriti*, ℥. j. *Cerusæ lotæ*, ℥. iij. of womans milke, ℥ ß. Let all be commixed together, and brayed in a leaden mortar, and make a Liniment. But *Lithargyrum* and *Cerusa* ought first to be beaten and then the oile and iuyce aforesaid must be powred on them softly by little and little, vntill they be throughly incorporated together the one with the other. But if you desire greater coolers, you may cõmixe with these and other remedies before recited (according to *Paulus* mind) a little *Opium* or *Cicuta*, or Mandrake. But I thinke it good to abstaine from applying either of them or the like, which are of a stupefactiue nature, except great necessitie doth moue you thereunto. But when the inflammation of the affected member is somewhat abated, and the heate of *Erysipelas* slaked, *Galen* (before any blewnesse did appeare through refrigeration) did vse to dissolue the humour gotten into the member (which they call *coniuncta materia*) by laying on a Cataplasme of Barley meale, or of *cruda Polenta* (called in Greeke ὥμηλύσις) and of other things before mentioned in the order of curing *Phlegmone*. For euen as the signes of *Erysipelas* were desumed and knowne by the analogie of the tokens of *Phlegmone*: so also the remedies of the cure of *Erysipelas* are to be fetched frõ the proportion of the remedies of healing *Phlegmone*. Furthermore of such kind of medicines which haue a dissoluing & breathing qualitie, very necessarie in this euill, there are very many, both simples and compounds, rehearsed of *Paulus Ægineta*, *lib.4.cap.* 21. and of *Ætius*, *lib.* 14. *de re Medica*. But now it shall be sufficient to rehearse among so many, one onely remedie, which of all the rest seemeth in my opinion to be most excellent, ℞. of the tender leaues of *Althæa*, ℔. j. boyle them in *Hydrelæum*, and being well boyled, bray them well together, putting therunto of oile of Roses ℥. iiij. *Argenti spumæ*, and *Cerusæ*, ana. ℥. ij. ß. againe plaine or smooth thẽ with the iuyce of Coriander, or Syngreene, or Nightshade: then put thereunto a few crummes of bread, and annoint them after the manner of an Emplaister. But if peraduenture blewnesse shall not occupy the place (the skin being cut before) you must lay a Cataplasme aboue vpon it, and sprinkle the place abundantly, as *Galen* hath commanded, with hote water: for it doth digest and wash the wound. Also water and salt-brine in the meane season shall auaile to nourish or cherish the place, when it is somewhat thicke and grosse, which things do scoure and cleanse the thicknesse thereof. The fourth intention of the cure of *Erysipelas*, which is the correction of the accidents, is perfected (as we haue said in the cure of *Phlegmone*) when as we shall returne and driue backe the recourse of the matter, induration, and corruption together with the paine and the

A compound medicine.

Euacuation of the ioyned matter by euaporatiues.

ὥμηλύσις.

Hydrelæum is a mixture of water & oyle.

Si liuor iam locũ occuparit.

Quarta intentio.

the heate. For these symptomates are wont to happen as well vnto *Erysipelas*, as vnto *Phlegmone*. Moreouer the best remedy to asswage paine and vehement heate, is made of leaues and roots of Henbane, which you must roll vp in tow and seeth them with Prunes: then commixe them with the ointment commonly called *Populeon*, or with Swines greace (as is said before in the cure of *Phlegmone*.) But if *Erysipelas* shall chance to be exulcerated, you shall cure it with applying *Vnguentum album* or *Vnguentũ de Lythargyro*, with the which if you shall commixe a little *Scoria*, which is the drosse of lead molten in the fire, you make the remedie most excellent and effectuall. But it shall be more profitable to comprehend the whole order of the cure of *Erysipelas* in some short sentences, after the manner of an Epilogue, that those things whereof we haue spoken before somewhat at large, may take the deeper roote in our minds and memorie. For this cause therefore we haue taken out of *Galen* these seuen Aphorismes following, which summarily do containe the whole cure of *Erysipelas*. 1. In an exquisite *Erysipelas* make no detraction of bloud. 2. If the bodie be full of choler, and the affect be great, purge the bellie downeward with the medicine of *Cholagogon*. 3. If the disease be little and smal, and the body without choler, vse no medicine to purge choler, but content your selfe with some sharpe clyster. 4. When you haue purged the whole body (as you must) annoint the affected in the beginning with medicines that can moderatly represse and abundantly refrigerate, euen to the changing of the colour. 5. When you see the colour of the aggrieued member altered, and the heate of *Erysipelas* slaked, and the inflammation ceasled, you must passe ouer from refrigerating and adstrictiue medicines before that the member be throughly blew or blacke, vnto their contraries, that is, vnto digestiues, or discussiues & drying remedies. 6. Those *Erysipelata* which are caused of vlcers, and other manifest causes, you must scarifie, and afterward apply a Cataplasme of Barley meale. 7. If *Erysipelas* be not exquisite or true, but phlegmonous, you may let bloud without fearing any thing, specially if bloud do abound in the body.

A remedie to mitigate paine and heate.

If Erysipelas be exulcerated

Seuen Aphor. out of Galen concerning the whole cure of Erysipelas.

1. 2.

3. 4.

5.

6.

7.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Tumours which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians cholericke pushes.

THOSE tumours aboue nature which haue any societie with the aboue mentioned *Erysipelas*, or any way do seeme to pertaine thereunto (for that they haue their proceeding of vnnaturall and hidden choler, that is, which is not mingled with other humours) both the latter sort of Physitions and also of Chyrurgians, do call *Mala cholericæ pustulæ*: But the Grecians, as *Hippocrates*, *Galen* and *Paulus*, do call them *Herpetæ*, which word doth almost sound and agree with the Latines, as *Malum quod serpit*, the creeping euill. For ἑρπω in Greeke, is all one with *serpo* in Latine, whereupon ἑρπης is called *serpens*; yet *Herpes* doth not perfectly signifie among the Physitions *Malũ quod serpit*, but a certaine kind of disease whereof we now intreate: therefore the creeping euill extendeth and stretcheth further then *Herpes*; for *Phagedænæ* are also called

De Herpete.

Pustulæ cholericæ vulgò appellatæ Herpetes.

Formicæ Auicennæ.

serpentia vlcera, creeping vlcers. But *Auicen* called all these kinds of pushes *Formicæ*, and *Galen* numbreth them among inflammations, but *Celsus* seemeth to comprehend them vnder the name of *sacer ignis. Lib.5.cap. 28.*

When Herpes is caused.

Herpes therefore is caused, when yellow choler, vnnaturall alone, and secret, that is to say, which is commixed with no other humour, doth flow into some member, and there remaineth: whose substance if it be any thing thicke and sharpe, it exulcerateth the whole skin, euen to the flesh which lyeth vnder it, and then this euill is called of *Hippocrates* and other Grecians, ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος, but of the Latines *Herpes exedens* or *depascens*, an eating or feeding *Herpes*; and it is called 14. *Therap.* of *Galen*, by this absolute name, *Herpes*. But if choler be somewhat thinne, and not so thicke and hote, it exciteth small whelkes outwardly in the superficies of the skinne (for that it doth not onely as it were burne but scald) like vnto the seed of Millet or Hirse: by reason of which similitude and likenesse, the affect is then termed of the Latines *Miliaria herpes*: but of certaine of the Grecians after Hippocrates time, it was called for the same reason κέγχρια: for κέγχρις in Greeke, is called *Milium* with vs. And this kind of species of *Herpes* (*Galen* witnessing the same, *lib.2. ad Glauconem*) doth borrow his name or title of the generall word, seeing that the same *Galen* calleth it *Herpes* simply and without addition. Notwithstanding in another place by the name of *Herpes*, *Galen* calleth it *Herpes esthiomenos*, that is, *exedens*, as afterward shall be said. But this kinde doth not altogether cause the vlcer, as the other doth which is called *exedens*, but as hath bene said, it exciteth little small pushes to the likenesse of *Milium*, which pushes in processe of time, when they are broken out, do turne vnto an vlcer. Therefore not without great reason or cause did *Oribasius* and certaine other also before *Galens* time, iudge and thinke, that in this kind of euill, there was mixed with choler some thinne fleame, which did bring forth those little pushes, whereupon it was called of some *pustulosus Herpes*. But the other which is called *Esthiomenos*, is not so mixed with fleame, but seemeth to be a pure choler infected with no other humour: and therefore it chanceth with erosion, which continually affecteth the skin, whereupon this name is attributed vnto it. For *Esthiomenos* is all one with *erodens* or *exedens*. And truly this euill is of one and the same kinde with a pustulous and exulcerate *Erysipelas*, from the which notwithstanding it somewhat differeth by reason of the thinnesse of that bilious humour (whereof both of them do take their beginning.) That is that which *Galen* testifieth in these words: It is (saith he) a very thinne humour which raiseth *Herpes*, and so thinne truly, that it passeth through not onely all the inward members, which are euery where of a fleshie substance, but also through the very skin, euen vnto the outward little skin (which is called of the Greekes *Epidermida*) which onely because it stayeth there, it both gnaweth and feedeth on: but if it should also pierce through this, after the manner of a sweate, it should in no wise excite any vlcer; for that is a common thing vnto vlcers which do arise of a biting humor, which vlcers they call *Spontanea*, because the humour which causeth them is stayed, and tarieth still in their going out or issue: hitherto *Galen*. When he nameth *Herpes* simply and without any addition, he meaneth *Herpes esthiomenos*, as it is easie to be knowne by the ioyning together thereof, by the signes and cure; and so in

Two kinds of Herpes.

1. ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος. *i. exedens, vel depascens.*

2. κέγχρια, *siue Herpes miliaria.*

Lib.14.Ther.

Ex Paulo & Gal.

Lib. de tumoribus præter naturam.

Lib.4. Metho. medendi.

The cholericke humour, which causeth Herpes is very thinne.

in that place it borroweth his title of the generall word, when it is ſimply and abſolutely called *Herpes*, as in that little booke *de Tumoribus præter naturam*, where the ſame *Galen* writeth thus of that ſame kind of *Herpes* word for word; *Herpes* alſo feedeth and gnaweth vpon thoſe parts which are about it, but the exulceration is of the skin onely. But almoſt all the barbarous ſort of Chyrurgians, euen thoſe of late time, do comprehend both theſe kinds of *Herpes*, viz. *Miliaris* and *Exedens*, vnder this title of *Formicæ*, to whom both in this thing, and in many other alſo, *Auicen* firſt gaue the occaſion of error; who being deceiued by the likeneſſe of the name, becauſe the Greeks call *Myrmeciæ*, that is, *Formicæ*, a certaine kind of *Verrucæ*, hath through a maruellous ouerſight, euen in the ſame Chapter, confounded thoſe *Verrucæ* with *Herpetes*. *Guido* notwithſtanding maketh a difference betweene *Herpes* and *Formicæ*, and confundeth the name of *Formica* ſometimes with *Verrucæ*, which the Greeks call *Myrmeciæ* and *Acrochordonæ*, ſometime with *Herpes exedens*, which (I meane *Herpes comedens*) is ſometime named of the ſame *Guido Herpeſtes*, ſomtime abſolutely *Herpes*, who alſo thought this *Herpes* to be nothing elſe but a puſtulous and vlcerated *Eryſipelas*, when this notwithſtanding, as we haue alleadged out of *Galen*, doth differ from the other by reaſon of the thinneſſe of the humour. For that choler which exciteth *Herpes*, is thinner then that which cauſeth an vlcerate *Eryſipelas*. Furthermore *Eriſipelas*, which chanceth with vlceration, doth not onely occupie the skin, but with it alſo it annoyeth ſome part of the fleſh vnder it. But *Herpes*, whereof we now intreate, layeth hold on the skin onely & exulcerateth it. Therefore although theſe euils are of one and the ſame kinde, (as *Galen thought*) yet they are not altogether one, neither are they alike. Thoſe whelkes alſo which the interpreter of *Auicen* and the vnlearned companie of Phyſitions, do terme *Morbili*, *Hippocr. lib. 3. Epidemiarum* hath comprehended vnder *Herpes*. But theſe *Morbili* are cauſed of a more thin and ſlender matter, then thoſe puſhes which are commonly called *Variolæ*. For theſe (as *Auicen* writeth) proceed of bloud, but the other are cauſed through the admixtion of choler & bloud. But if any man do long or deſire to know what name the ancient Phyſitiõs did bequeath vnto theſe puſtulous vlcers, we haue declared that in Latin they are called of *Plinie*, *Papulæ*, and ſometime *pituitæ eruptiones*, flegmaticke eruptions, but in Greeke of *Hippocrates lib. 3. Epidemiarũ*, *Ecthymata*, of *Galen Exanthemata*. But the ſignes, iudgements and cauſes of both kinds of *Herpes*, may ſufficiently be knowne by thoſe things that went before. It remaineth therefore that we now declare the cure of them. In curing theſe euils called *Herpetes*, (as in other ſuch like voluntary vlcers which haue their originall of a biting and vehement humour) three intentions are to be obſerued and marked. The firſt is, that the confluxion of the humor vnto the affected part be ſtopped and letted. The ſecond is, to make euacuation, of that, whatſoeuer is flowne already into the aggrieued member, and ſticketh faſt in the ſame. The third is, to heale the vlcer. We do finiſh our firſt intent, by purging the whole body with ſome medicine that can bring forth the humour whereof the euill doth grow, and when the body is throughly emptied, by repreſſing & driuing backe the humor that floweth. Therefore in *Herpes exedens* we muſt vſe ſome medicine which can prouoke choler downward, ſeeing (as

Herpes exulcerateth onely the skinne.

Auicen confoundeth myrmeciæ with herpetes.

Herpes Eſthiomenos and Eryſipelas vlceratum, are all one.

Morbili ſunt ex Herpetum genere.

Variolæ.

Papularum eruptiones.

Ecthymata.

Herpetum curatio.

Three things to be marked in the cure of Herpes.

1. 2. 3.

Primus ſcopus.

Herpes requireth the medicine Cholagogon.

we haue ſaid before) a pure and ſincere bilious humor doth procreate this euill. It hapneth therefore that in reſpect of the emptying of the whole body, *Comedentes Herpetes* muſt be cured like vnto *Eryſipelata*. Therfore becauſe it is a thin and wateriſh humor which cauſeth this euill, *Galen* hath ſufficiently declared to mollifie & ſoften the belly gently, or to prouoke vrine with thoſe things which can moderately cauſe the ſame. But in the other kind of *Herpetes*, which by reaſon of the ſimilitude which it hath with *Milium*, we haue ſaid to be called in Greeke *Miliaris* and *Cenchria*, there is required ſome remedie which is of a mixed faculty, that is, which can purge forth both choler and fleame. For ſome haue thought, and that not without great reaſon, (as *Galen* ſaith) that in this euill there is ſome fleame commixed with choler. Furthermore that humour which aboundeth in the body and cauſeth the euill, being emptied out (as it is required) you muſt apply thoſe medicines which can repreſſe & keepe backe the flowing of the humour; for then miniſtring of them ſhall be more without danger, and more conuenient alſo, ſeeing that (as *Galen* ſaith) if one do thruſt backe but a little portion of the vicious humour, which after conuenient purging remaineth yet in the bodie, to the bowels and great veines, it will not cauſe any ſenſible euill at all, that can be felt. But if the quantity of the humour be great, it ſometime coucheth it ſelfe in ſome principall member, whereas through the force of the purging nature, the whole body is not euacuated, either by purging downeward, or by vrine, or by the skin, which includeth the whole body. But repreſſiues and repulſiues be not onely thoſe which do bind, but alſo thoſe which can refrigerate without any aſtriction. Of which nature are theſe, Lettuce, Knotgraſſe, fenne or pond Lintels, Purſlaine, Endiue, Syngreene, and other of that ſort, which were very conuenient alſo for *Eryſipelas*. But thoſe medicines which beſide their cooling, are alſo apt by nature to moiſten *Herpetes*, eſpecially *depaſcentes*, do in no wiſe require, but they do onely admit thoſe refrigeratiues which can alſo greatly drie vp. For thoſe remedies which haue but a meane and weake force to coole and drie, as is Nightſhade, are not ſufficient for them. Therefore by *Galens* counſell you muſt in the beginning lay vpon them the yong tender buds of the Vine, Bramble leaues, of *Rubum caninum*, and Plantaine. After apply alſo with theſe Lintels, ſometime Honie & Barley meale. Alſo miniſter that Cataplaſme *ſine Semperuiuo*, which is appointed for thoſe phlegmonous tumours which proceed of fluxe; for it doth repell that which floweth, and it drieth vp that which is contained in the affected member, and it ſtrengtheneth the parts about it. The beginning of the being paſt, this remedy auaileth greatly. Make a Cataplaſme of the rinds of Pomegranates ſodden in wine, and of *Rhu* or *Rhoo*, that is, of the ſeeds of the ſhrub *Coriarium* (which of the late Phyſitions is called *Sumach*) and of the meale of Barley. But by this Cataplaſme you ſhall very wel accompliſh the ſecond intention or ſcope of curing *Herpes*, becauſe it is of ſufficient power to digeſt that which is flowed already into the affected place: for it appeareth euidētly, that thoſe remedies which haue a repreſſing faculty, ought to exceed in the generation of the vlcer; but when the vicious humour doth ceaſe to flow any more into the affected part, then thoſe medicines are requiſite which do digeſt. As concerning our third intent, which declareth the cure

Herpes miliaris requireth a remedie which can purge both choler and fleame.

Reprimendi tempus.

Lib. 14. Therap.

Repreſſiues are not to be vſed if the humour be plentifull.

Reprimentium materia.

These remedies which do coole & moyſten are not meete for herpes exedens.

Repreſſiues meete for herpes exedens.

Cataplaſma.

Sumach.

These things do accompliſh our ſecond intention.

cure of the vlcer, it behoueth you briefly to know these things following, viz. That euery vlcer whether it cometh of the owne accord, or be caused of some accidentall cause, doth desire to be dried vp by some medicine (as *Hippocrates* saith) that is not sharpe, byting, or vehemently prouoking, except, when the vlcers be malicious and full of corruption; for such euils (saith *Galen*) require more sharpe medicines, and those which haue euen the power of fire, as is, *Mysos* and *Chalcitis*, and *Arsenicum*, and Lime, and *Sandaracha*, and other things of that kind, which burne as hote as fire. Those places therefore that are exulcerated in *Herpes exedens*, must be tended with Pils, and Trochisks, written for the cure of *Herpes* in those bookes which are called *Pharmaceutici*: which remedies, when necessity compelleth vs to vse thē, must be throughly washed in *Passum* or in some other sweete wine, or if sweet wine be not ready at hand, in thin and somewhat sharpe wine, which is not too old (that is, which for age hath no sharpe tast) or else in *Posca aquosa* (which they call *Oxycratum.*) *Paulus* in *Herpes* which annoyeth vnder the skin, vseth these remedies; the scowrings of Lead steeped in the iuyce of smooth Rew, or a Cerate of Mirtles in stead of Rew. Another of old wooll, washed and burnt about a torch, ℥ xij.ß. of Waxe, ℥.xxv. of the scourings of Lead, ℥.j. of Goates tallow, trimmed and washed with water, ℥ xxv. of Mirtles, ℥.v. But for those *Herpetes* that do gnaw and bite vehemently, called *depascentes*, he chargeth to vse this remedie. ℞. of the rind of sweete Pomegranats, ℥.vj. *Argenti spuma*, ℥. vj. of washed wooll cleauing to the torch or to some sweete wood, and that burnt, ℥.iij. of Waxe, ℥.xij. of Ceruse, ℥. viij. of Frankinsence, Alume scissible, ana. ℥. j. let them be steeped in wine or in oile of Mirtles. But now the vlcers being of long continuance, those Trochiskes abouesaid, and other such like medicines which are appointed to cure *Herpetes*, must be washed neither in sweet wine nor in *Posca aquosa*, but rather in wine that is somewhat sharpe, especially in that which is blacke, and if that be not to be had, you must vse white wine But those medicines which are most effectuall and most meete at that time, when the vlcers be inueterate, are the Pils of *Musa*, *Andron*, and *Polyida*, whose descriptions are set downe in the end of the cure of *Carbunculus*, and those Trochiskes also, which of *Auicen* and the later sort of Physitions are called *Calidicon* and *Aldaron*. But those *Herpetes* which do onely exulcerate the outward skin, as they be which we haue called *Miliares*, must in no wise be enioyned to any of those medicines before rehearsed (if we wil credit *Galen*) for they be very vehement and do greatly drie. But those medicines whatsoeuer they be, which haue the nature and force of *Glaucium*, that is, of *Memytha*, shall suffise these vlcers, and you must wash them with this, but specially with water. But if these things shall nothing auaile, you must also commixe Vineger therewith. Also if you annoint it with iuyce of Nightshade, or Plantaine, you shall helpe it greatly. Hitherto haue we spoken of *Herpes*. Now because in that which we haue said, we haue not as yet touched by the way any thing concerning the euils called *Formicæ*, which both the Arabians, and the latter sort of Physitions do erroneously, as we haue said, confound with *Herpetes*: this place doth require that we set downe a few words, both of them and of other tumours and increasings appearing in the skin, which the Latines call *Verrucæ*.

The cure of the vlcer in herpes is our third scope.

Euery vlcer must be dried vp.

Lib.2.ad Glau.

How exulcerated places must be looked to.

Posca.

Remedies takē out of Paulus.

Aliud.

Ad herpetes depascentes.

For inueterate vlcers.

What is to be done in pustulæ miliares if they turne into an vlcer.

Lib.secundo ad Glauconē.

Of the euils called Formicæ, and of other differences of Verrucæ.

Verrucæ.
Porra.

THose little tumors, or low swellings, which are seene to appeare in the skinne like little hillockes, the Latines haue fitly called *Verrucæ*; for *Verruca* signifieth properly the highest part of a mountaine or hill: but the common sort call them *Porra*, Leeks, because sometime they haue certaine threads lying betweene them not much vnlike vnto the rootes of Leekes. The Greeks haue no name wherein they may comprehend all those kindes of *Verrucæ*, but they do call a certaine kind thereof by proper names, which be these, μυρμηκία, ἀκροχορδόνες, ἥλοι, θύμιον. *Verrucæ* therefore of them be called *Myrmecia*, which are of a large foundation, and as it were sitting iust to the ground, and when they be touched, they are felt painefull like vnto the biting or stinging of an Ant; whereupon their name is giuen vnto them; for the Greekes do call μύρμηκα, *Formica*. Wherefore the Latins applying the name thereof to the Greeke word, haue called *Formicæ*, *Verrucæ*, & for their forme and fashion, *Sessiles Verrucæ*. These euils, saith *Celsus*, *lib.* 5. do grow either in the palmes of the hands or in the soles of the feete: but these take deeper roote, and are lower and harder then a wart, and do cause greater paine: & they send forth more store of bloud, and they scarce at any time exceed the bignesse of a Hop. But *Acrochordon* is a *Verruca* that is as it were hanging, & of a more narrow foundation, that is, a certaine round bignesse or growing vp in the skin which hath the foundation, that is, the neather part, very straight to the skin. It is so called because it seemeth to hang as though it were tyed with a string. By this difference therfore *Acrochordones* are distinguished from *Myrmecia*, because they are very small at the neather end next the skin, but at the other end are very large & broad: contrariwise *Myrmecia* (as hath been said) are of a large foundation, but at the other end they are very small and slender. But these oftentimes are equall together with the skin, and *Acrochordones* do alwayes appeare aboue the skin, (as *Gal.* 14 *lib. de morbis curandis* hath manifestly declared.) Beside these things *Acrochordones* (as *Celsus* saith) do grow vp thicke and many together, and do most trouble children, and oftentimes they fall againe sodainly, and sometime they cause but meane inflammation: there are some also which are turned into corrupted matter, but they seldome passe the greatnesse of a Beane. They be called of *Auicen*, *Claui*, but the Latins do terme *Claui*, *Verrucæ albæ*, because they be like to the round heads of nailes. These do chiefly happen in the fingers, and the soles of the feete, where they do cause great paine: the Greekes call them ἥλοι, but *Auicen*, *Almismar*. These be often caused of a bruise, and sometime otherwise. But *Thymion* or *Thymon*, in English a wart, is called of *Celsus* and of the Greeks *Verruncula*, a litle hillocke, appearing aboue the body, which at the neather part next the skinne is verly small (as *Acrochordon* is) but aboue it is more large: it is also somewhat hard, and very sharpe in the top, which doth represent the colour of the floure Thyme, wherupon the name is giuen vnto it, and also it is easily spread abroad. Oftentimes it giueth forth some bloud, and is almost as great as an Ægyptian Beane, seldome

There be diuerse kindes of Verrucæ.
Myrmecia.
Sessiles Verrucæ.
Acrochordon pensilis verruca.
The difference between Acrochordon and Myrmecia.
Claui.
ἥλοι.
Almismar.
Thymion.
Thymij magnitudo.

ſeldome bigger, but ſometime leſſer: ſometime there groweth vp one alone, ſometime many together, either in the ankles of the feete, or in the hands, or in the ſoles of the feete. But the worſt *Thymia* of all are in the filthie parts of the body, where they do commonly bleed. *Auicen* ſeemeth to haue named this kinde of *Verruca*, *Tuſium*, or (as another tranſlation hath) *Tarſeum*. Of this kinde of *Verrucæ* be thoſe euils alſo, which *Auicen* called *Cornua*, not much differing from the other ſorts, but that they be ſomewhat long, and are turned crooked againe, like vnto hornes. The euils called *Calli* (called of the Greekes alſo Τύλλοι) do not much differ from the aforenamed *Claui*, but that they be of themſelues without griefe and nothing painefull, and of the colour of the skin wherein they are reſident; neither do they ingender of themſelues or of their owne accord, but of the hardneſſe of the skin cauſed by labour.

Thymia in obſcœnis peſſima.

Cornua.

Calli. Τύλλοι.

CHAP. XIX.

The iudgement and cure of Verrucæ

AMong all theſe euils *Acrochordon* and *Thymion* are oftentimes (as *Celſus* reporteth) ended, and do heale of themſelues, and the leſſer they be, the ſooner they be ended. But *Myrmecia* and *Claui* do ſcarce at any time ceaſſe without curing. If *Acrochordon* be cut off, it leaueth no roote behind it, and therefore it groweth not againe. But where *Thymion* and *Clauus* be cut off, there riſeth vp vnderneath a little round roote, which deſcendeth downe ſomewhat deepe into the fleſh, and there abiding, it doth cauſe the aforeſaid euils to grow againe. *Myrmecia* do holde faſt with verie broade rootes, and therefore they cannot be cutte off without great vlceration. It is profitable to cut off *Clauus*, and then ſprinckle it ouer with hoate water; for ſo it doth waxe ſoft and tender without any more ado: and if it doth bleed, it oftentimes dyeth and ceaſſeth. It is alſo taken away, by cleanſing it round about, & by laying on it Roſin mixed with the beaten powder of *Lapis molaris*. But the other kindes (as the ſame *Celſus* affirmeth) muſt be cured with hote medicines. Now the fitteſt remedy for the other euils, is that which is made of the dregs of wine; and that medicine is good for *Myrmecia* which is made of Alume and yellow Oaker. *Paulus Ægineta lib.4.cap.* 15. rehearſeth very many remedies, which do take away and vtterly aboliſh theſe *Verrucæ*, eſpecially thoſe which be *Seſſiles* and *penſiles*. Of the which kinde are *Elaterium* (which is the iuyce of wilde Cucumbers) rubbed on with Salt, the barke of Frankinſence with Vineger, rathe ripe Figges, which are ripe before their time, with Vineger, meale and *Nitrum*. Alſo the iuyce of *Tythymalus*, in Engliſh Spurge, the head of the fiſh *Smaras* ſalted and burnt, the ruſt of ſome mettall with quicke brimſtone, that is, which is not throughly burnt in the fire, the leaues of *Ocymum* with ſhoemakers bleach, (which the Greekes call *Chalcanthum*,) the water of the greene twigges of the Vine burnt in the fire, ſheeps doung with Vineger, goates gall annointed, the fruite of the great herbe *Heliotropium* applyed by it ſelfe, or miniſtred with wine, Rew with *Nitrum* and Pepper, *Nitrũ* with the vrine of a yong boy not yet accuſto-

Acrochordon, Thymion. Lib.5.

Myrmecia.

Claui.

Myrmecia.

The cure of Verrucæ out of Paulus.

Aqua ex ſarmentis diſtillans.

Stercus bubulum.

Lacertæ capat.

med with venereous actes, oxes dung ministred in Vineger. But these which we haue mentioned as remedies for the extirpation of *Myrmecia* & *Acrochordones*, are greatly also effectuall for those euils called *Claui* and *Thymia*. They do vse also the head of a Lisard to take away *Myrmecia*, *Acrochordones*, and *Claui*. There are some which do boile the heads of salted fishes in that water which distilleth out of greene branches, while they be burning: which they do declare to be a most excellent remedie for the aforesaid euils. Other some to extinguish these diseases, do make a Liniment of the rust of brasse, (which of the late Phisitions is called *Vitide æris & flos æris*) of Brimstone, and of the distilled water of Vine branches. And this is the onely method of curing which they are wont to vse in racing out of *Verrucæ*, that is, by gnawing and scalding medicines But this one thing is most diligently to be obserued in administring such kinde of medicines, which *Celsus* doth admonish vs of in his fift booke: namely, that those parts which are about the euils, ought to be couered with leaues, lest they also be exulcerate; for which cause some do annoint the places about the diseases, with ointment of Bolearmoniacke, with *Terra sigillata*, with Rose water and Vineger. Furthermore we abolish *Acrochordones*, *Myrmecia*, and *Thymia*, not onely with these aforesaid burning medicines, but also with the flame of fire, or with some hote instrumēt rightly applied to them. Oftentimes also we cut them off. But sometime we do take them away and vtterly destroy them, by a ligature cunningly made and prepared for them, (as it hapneth in that true disease called *Ficus*) or else by setting too the foreteeth, as some at Rome in *Galens* time were wont to do. But if you shall apply fire or some hote instrument to *Verruca*, you must prouide that a plate of Iron or some such thing, being bored through, be made ready for the burnt sore, the hole whereof must so fitly comprehend the same, that none of the skin about it may be seene. A adustion being now made, you must resolue the crust with Butter, or with some other annointing medicine. Afterward you must cure the sore like vnto other vlcers. But how *Myrmecia*, which do not appeare out of the skin, but altogether equall therewith, ought to be brought forth and cut off, *Galen* teacheth very well *lib.* 14. *Metho. Med.* where he maketh mention of one in his time at Rome, who deuised a new order to cure these *Verrucæ*; first, he brought out the euils by applying his lips vnto them, or by sucking them, and then (which did seeme maruellous) he plucked them from the roote; afterward setting too his foreteeth, he vtterly destroyed them. But *Acrochordones*, appearing aboue the skin, he straight way bit off with his teeth, and so quickly dispatched them, *Galen* also setteth downe another double manner to cure these euils saying: But a Chyrurgian being somewhat exercised in manuall practise, may easily cut off these *Verrucæ*, both with that instrument made to the forme of a Mirtle leafe, and with that also which the Greekes call *Scolopomacherion*: this alwaies prouided, that the sore be kept and separated from the skin or parts about it. We also bring forth *Myrmecia*, by laying some strong and stiffe quill about the compasse or circle thereof, the hollownesse of which quill must be equall with the thicknesse of *Myrmecia*, that it may pinch it round about in euery place, which being afterward turned about the sore, and enforced downeward, it will quickly bring

Other orders of curing.

How Verrucæ are safely burned.

The cure of Myrmecia being equal with the skinne.

A new cure of Myrmecia out of Galen.

Another cure of Myrmecia, Lib. 14. *Meth. Med.*

Scalprum.

Scolopomacherion.

Another cure inuented, by a quill.

forth the whole *Myrmecia* together with the very roote; but you must marke, that the very end of the quill which shall cut it in a circle, ought to be not only thin & slender, but also sharpe & strong. The quill therfore of an old Cocke, or rather of an Eagle is very fit for this purpose. But you must cut it off onely towards the roote, seeing the hollownesse of the other part of the quill may easily comprehēd *Myrmecia*. And truly by this abscession, if it be done cunningly, you shall learne great Art. Hitherto speaketh *Galen*. But the vlcer which remaineth (*Verruca* being thus taken away) must be filled vp and brought vnto a scarre, as other vlcers be.

Prima scitè radicem versus abscindenda.

CHAP. XX.

Of Oedema, and other cold, flegmaticke, and flatuous tumours.

HAVING sufficiently intreated of those tumours which are engendred through hote humours, we are now againe determined to handle those tumors which haue their original of a cold matter, taking our exordium from that euill which of the Græcians is called *Oedema* For as *Erysipelas* is caused of a cholericke fluxe; so *Oedema* proceedeth of a flegmaticke humour. *Oedema* therefore (*Galen* defining the same) is a certaine loose and vnpainfull tumour: or it is a certaine thinne swelling without paine, rising of a flegmatick humour that floweth into some member of the body, so that the same *Galen in lib.* 14. *Ther.* thought of *Oedema*, that it was a disease and no symptomate. For truly we know (sayth he) that *Oedema* doth come otherwise then of the flowing of a flegmaticke humour, that is to wit, of a flegmaticke humour or vaporous spirit, gathered into some member, and sometime engendred in the same, as in the legges and feete, which are troubled with a corrupted water running vnder the skinne, and with the euils called *Phthoe*, and *Cachexia*, which are euill habites and deformites of the body. For in those dangerous dispositions, *Oedema* is an accidentall symptomate of that affect which oppresseth the man, that is, an accident necessarily following, which, requireth no seuerall or proper cure (as afterward shall appeare.) *Oedema* (as *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas* also) is discerned of the Chyrurgians by two differences, that is, by the true, or vntrue or vnlawfull *Oedema*. A true *Oedema* cometh of naturall choler, which truly is nothing else but a raw bloud not throughly digested, which is found in a lumpe of bloud, very fit to nourish flegmaticke members. An vntrue and vnlawfull *Oedema* proceedeth of vnnaturall fleame. That we may not deale herein any thing obscurely, naturall fleame is a cold and a moist humour, in substance crude or raw, in colour inclining to a certaine whiteneſse; but in tast, and (if I may speake it) in smell, it is sweete and pleasant: vnnaturall fleame is that which doth degenerate and differ from that fleame before described, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuite and liberty, which if it shall once passe, it is then no more to be called *Phlegma* or fleame, but some other humour. But this fleame chanceth to degenerate from his owne proper nature two manner of waies One way is (as they say) in it selfe, when in his owne naturall and proper substance it is changed, without any admixtion with any other humour, which truly hapneth very often: for it is turned either into a waterish

Oedema quid.

Oedema est symptoma.

Oedema duplex.

Verum.

Illegitimum.

What fleame is

What, & after what sort, fleame doth degenerate from his owne nature.

waterish substance, or into a flatuous substance, or into a very thin matter, and then it is called *Phlegma aquosum, flatuosum,* or *tenue*: or it is turned into a thicke and viscous substance, which maketh the fleame very grosse & clammy, and through a greater, or (as we say) through a further induration, it is caused to looke like a Plaister, or like glasse; or it doth putrifie and is altered, and then it is made both salt, nitrous, and corrosiue. The other way vnnaturall fleame is caused through admixtion, that is, when as some other humour doth happen to come vnto it extraordinarily: as for example, either bloud, or choler, or melancholie. If bloud be commixed with fleame, it is sweet: if choler be mingled therewith, it is caused to be salt: if melancholie, it is made soure and sharpe. There are therefore eight kinds of naturall fleame after the opinion of *Auicen. Haly Abbas* appointeth foure onely. But *Galen* (saith *Guido*) seemeth to assigne vnto it onely two kinds, that is, salt and sowre, although in his second booke of the differences of feuers, and in his second booke *De locis affectis*, and in many other places also he maketh mention of the fleame called *Vitreum*, which oftentimes doth ioyne it selfe with sowre fleame, by reason of that affinitie and acquaintance that it hath with it. By these things therefore it is gathered, that of fleame there are ingendred eight *species* or differences of tumours besides nature. For, first of fleame that is naturall cometh a true and a lawfull *Oedema*. Secondly of vnnaturall fleame, by reason of admixtion, there proceed three other differences of tumours, because that three other humors may be commixed therewith; and these be they, *Oedema phlegmonodes, Oedema erysipelatodes*, and *Oedema scirrhodes*. Thirdly of vnnaturall fleame, through the alteration of his naturall substance, there arise foure other differences of tumours. For first of windy and vaporous fleame doth come that tumor, which of the Latines is properly called *Inflatio*, but commonly among the Physitions it is termed *Apostema ventosum*, a windie aposteme. Secondly, of waterish fleame there proceedeth a waterish aposteme. Thirdly of raw, thicke, & grosse fleame, there are ingendred those tumours which some do call *Leues nodi*, and there are also ingendered flegmaticke abscessions, which they do commonly call *Exituræ phlegmaticæ*. But these are called of the interpreter of *Auicen, Dubelet frigida*, of which sort are these, *Steatomata, Atheromata*, and *Melicerides*: *Ganglia* also, which be called of *Auicen, Glandulæ*, & other of that kind which shal be spoken of in that which followeth. Now of hard or rather of indurated, and (as I may say) of caked fleame, there do arise all those hard knots, which are most found in the ioints, and those euils also called *Strumæ*, which are cõmõly called *Scrofulæ*. Fourthly of corrupted & putrified fleame, there do come *Fistulæ*, & other vlcers which they call *Scrufulosa*. The causes of *Oedema*, as also of other tumors besides nature are threefold. First, primitiue causes are these: a fall frõ some high place, a stripe, a naughty diet. Secondly, antecedent causes, as the abundance of a flegmatick humor running downe into some mẽber of the body. Thirdly, *coniunctæ causæ* is the very fleam which is already stuffed in the member that is beset with a rumor. The signes of *Oedema* are these, a loose and soft tumor, which yeeldeth to the weight of the finger, and is hollow after the maner of a caue or den, and riseth not vpagaine at the remouing of the finger, but retaineth the very footstep or marke of that which presseth it. There is

Galen appointeth two kinds of fleame.

8. Differences of tumours beside nature coming of fleame.

Three causes of œdema.

1.

2.

3.

Signa œdematu.

is felt very ſmall paine, or almoſt none at all; very little heate, a very white colour, or (as ſome will haue it) a meane betweene whiteneſſe and paleneſſe, and other ſuch like ſignes, which do teſtifie the dominion and power of fleame. *Oedema* (as other tumours alſo) hath foure times, the beginning, the augmenting, the ſtate, and the declination of the tumour. This kind of tumour is moſt cured by reſolution, or exhalation, but ſeldome by ſuppuration, very often by turning and changing them into knots or kirnels called *Nodi*, or into other increaſings (as they call them) which are termed of the Grecians *Apoſtemata*, but of the Latines *Abſceſſus*. But the markes and tokens of the ending and finiſhing of theſe kinds of tumours are handled before in our generall diſcourſe of tumours. Theſe œdematous tumours are rather excited in the winter time, then at other ſeaſons, for then very much fleame is gathered together in mens bodies. Theſe tumours alſo do greatly and very often trouble old men, and them which be giuen to gluttony. *Indicia.*

CHAP. XXI.

Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humour flowing into ſome member.

BEcauſe *Oedemata*, after the manner of other tumours, are raiſed through the fluxe of humours into ſome member, the ſcope and order of their cure ſhall be alſo twofold. 1. The one is, to diſſolue the ſubſtance of thoſe humours which now do occupie the member. 2. The other is, to withſtand and reſtraine the fluxe. And as the one ſcope doth excell the other, ſo the remedies of their cure muſt be commixed together the one with the other, either ſomewhat plentifully or ſomewhat ſparingly. When therefore the order of reſtraining ſhall ouercome that which counſelleth vs to vſe euacuating and digeſting remedies, the force of reſtrictiues muſt be augmented. But when there is more need of euacuation then of reſtriction, the nature and vertue of digeſtiue or diſcuſſiue and drying medicines muſt of neceſſitie excell in the mixture. Moreouer, both the plentifull fluxe, and the ſmall deale of matter in the affected part, doth tell vs, that in the mixture the vertue of reſtrictiue medicines muſt be more effectuall, and of greater force. Contrariwiſe you muſt vſe a greater meaſure of drying and digeſting medicines, when matter aboundeth in the member very plentifully, and the fluxe very little. But in an old and inuetereate *Oedema*, and that which is alreadie ingendred, you ſhall not vſe any longer this order of curing which hath a mingled power, but you ſhall apply ſuch things as can diſperſe and diuide the matter. Which thing is alſo diligently to be obſerued in all other continuall vlcers. But *Oedema*, which is an euill ſymptomate following other dangerous affects, as leanneſſe of the body, the Dropſie, and an euill habite of the body, which the Grecians call *Cachexia*, doth deſire no proper, peculiar, or ſeuerall cure (as we haue before mentioned) for it cannot be cured but by expelling that euill affect wherof it firſt groweth. Yet ſomewhat is to be remitted out of it, if it doth debilitate the ſtrength or increaſe the chiefe affect, or elſe hinder the cure. It ſhall therefore be ſufficient (if it ſhall need any cure) to rub diligently the ſwelling place, ſometime with *Oxyrhodinum*

Curandi œdematis ſcopus duplex cum adhuc gignitur.

The order of curing an old œdema.

Oedematis vt ſpecialis eſt curatio.

Oxyrhodinum, sometime with oile mingled with Salt, or else with *Oxyrhodinum* and salt. For this kind of friction doth slake the tumour, and mitigateth the paine, if it be prouoked through too much distention (as somtime it chanceth:) *Oxyrhodinum* doth stay the fluxe, oile with salt hath power to digest and emptie out that which is compact in the member. But *Oxyrhodinum* with salt, doth partly digest and drie vp, and partly restraine and stop the affluxion of humours. But our generall method being before declared, let vs turne our pen to declare the proper and particular order of curing a lawfull *Oedema*, which hath his beginning of the flowing of thinne fleame: which method, according to the opinion of the Chyrurgians of our time, doth consist of foure things, (as hath bene said of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*) that is to say. 1. In a iust order of diet. 2. In preparing of the flegmaticke humour, which they call *æquatio*, an equall diuision, and in purging the same. 3. In repressing, dissoluing and drying vp the humor that is flowed already, and now doth occupie the member. 4. And last of all, in correcting and remouing the symptomates or accidents which do follow *Oedema*. These therefore are the foure particular intentions whereby we dispatch those two generall orders before mentioned. The first intention therefore is perfected or finished by the due and iust vsage of sixe vnnaturall things, which shall be well and fitly applyed to the sicke body, if they shall all decline vnto heate and drinesse, with a certaine attenuation or diminishing.

Foure particular orders to be kept in curing a lawfull Oedema.

Prima intentio.

Aer. Therefore chuse and prepare a thinne and drie aire.

Potus. Let him take for his drink wine that is fined, and cleane from dregs, cleare, white, or somwhat red, which they call Claret wine, which in his kind must be excellent good, and allayed a little with water.

Cibus. Let his bread be very well baked, and well handled. Let him eate the flesh of sheepe, or the flesh of the birds of mountaines & of the plaines, and those rather rosted then sodden. Let him vse sparingly fat brothes, potherbes, and other fat meats. Let him abstaine from things that be vnleauened, raw, and verie moist. Let him not eate of any kind of pulse or cheese, nor of vntimely and vnripe fruits, nor of fishes (except they be those that liue in grauellie places, and those also either rosted or boiled in wine.) Rosted meates generally are better then sodden, and better then those things also which the industrie of the Baker can prouide. Let him eate little, and drinke lesse. In all his diet let him eschue lecherie and gluttonie. If the bellie be bound, loose it with Figs, or with *Carthamus*. Take therefore fiue or sixe drie Figs, and fill them with the pith of the seed of *Carthamus*, and eate them either in the morning, or before dinner. Let the bodie be exercised moderately, if so be the affected member can permit the same without hurt.

Somnus. Let his sleepe be little and short.

Balneum. Let him altogether auoid bathing, and all other moistning things.

Secunda intentio. The second intention is accomplished by preparatiues, or by remedies equally deuiding (which they commonly call digestiues) and by medicines which can euacuate that flegmaticke matter wherewith the body of the sicke doth abound. Therefore you must giue him some kind of *Oximel*, which can cut, and deuide, and purge forth the fleame that lurketh in the bodie. Afterward the matter going before the expulsion being thus prepared, at the appointment of some cunning Physition, must be emptied out with some medicine that can purge fleame, called *Phlegmagogon*. But if (saith *Guido* out of *Cauliacus*) abundance

be

be present in the body, you may safely open a veine, but yet not without the aduice of some expert Physition. But in a plethoricke and full bodie there are scarce at any time seene any *Oedemata*, especially those which be lawfull; for fleame doth not abound in it more plentifully then other humours do. Therefore it being simple and alone, not commixed with others humours, it can seldome flow into any part of a plentifull bodie; wherefore letting of bloud especially in a lawfull *Oedema*, may seeme to be nothing profitable. The third intention is finished in the beginning by applying repercussiues, and not by those remedies which by binding vehemently with their naturall coldnesse do repell and driue backe, but by those which haue power to drie greatly, and digest well, which they call prouokers of drinesse and resolution: but in the increase by vsing discussiue remedies somwhat more forcible. And in the state thereof, especially about the end, the fluxe being alreadie stayed, by pure medicines, and by those which do very strongly digest and resolue. But in the declination by consuming and drying helpes, if the cure be to be dispatched by resolution. But if it doth degenerate and turne into abscessions which they call *Exituræ*, it shall be cured by ripening medicines, and by other helpes which are set downe for the cure of Abscessions. Moreouer, repressing remedies endued with a drying digesting nature, which do profite in the beginning of *Oedema* coming of the influxion of a flegmaticke humour, are comprehended vnder three speciall rules. The first is out of *Galen, lib. 14. Therap. & 2. ad Glauconem*, where he saith, that if *Oedema* doth consist of a flegmaticke humour flowing into some member, a sponge wet in water wherein is a little vineger, shall sometime abundantly suffice. But these must be so well tempered and commixed together, that they may either be drunke, or that they may not haue much vineger vpon it. But you must bind the sponge to the place, beginning at the neather part, and ending aboue. Let the sponge be very new. And if there be not a new to be gotten, you shall cleanse and scoure the old very diligently, by washing it in *Nitrum* and *Aphonitrum*, and in lye. *Auicen* commandeth, that in steade of a sponge, you sometime apply a double linnen cloth, or some such like thing. The second rule is mentioned of *Auicen* himselfe. ℞. *Baurach* of the decoction of water, that is, of Salt peter, or of the fome of Salt peter, of Ashes, of Vineger, of each as much as shall suffice. The third rule is described of *Razis* after this manner. ℞. *Aloes*, Mirrhe, *Licium*, *Acatia*, *Sief*, *Memitha*, that is, of *Glauciũ*, of *Cyperus*, of *Crocus Orientalis*, of Bolearmoniack, of each a little quantitie; powder them, and commixe them with the iuyce of Coleworts called *Brassicæ*, and with Vineger, and make an Emplaister. Furthermore those remedies which were of late rehearsed, do also helpe much the increasing of this œdematous tumour, if you do put vnto them a good quantity of Vineger, and a little Alume, especially in strong bodies, which haue a hard skin, and when as *aquosior Posca* shall not auaile. Therefore if *Oedema* doth not cease or rest with these helpes mentioned a little before, when you bind it too againe, you shall cõmixe a little more Vineger, that the *Posca* may be the stronger; or you shall lay on a little Alume, and apply a new Sponge: for this doth helpe as an excellent medicine, & doth long continue very effectuall, and with the substance it drieth the affected member. If there be no plentie of new sponges,

Tertia intentio.

Remedies to be vsed in the beginning of Oedema.

1.

Posca aquosa.

2.

3.

Emplastrum Razis.

Remedies to be vsed in the time of increasing.

Lib. 14. Ther. & 2. ad Glau.

ſponges, it is better (ſaith *Galen*) to vſe that which the common ſort call *Elychnion*. But aboue all things let it be ſoft, which kind is vſed at *Tarſis*, whereof if there be any plentie: you may boldly vſe: for you ſhall trie it to be more profitable then the vſing of ſponges, but let it be wetted in *Poſca*, aud a little Alume therewith. Then (as it is ſet downe already) let it be bound to, and let the binding begin at the neather parts, & end aloft. Let the binding be meane and ſmall, as in the ſetting of a bone. But truly the firſt caſting about of the ſwathing band, which muſt begin beneath, ought to be tyed ſomewhat ſtrait; but all the reſt muſt be ſlacked by little and little, but yet not ſo, that any part of the binding be looſe. Now the remedies which are miniſtred after the vigour of the ſtate, when the fluxe is ſtayed, and in an vniuerſall declination (if *Oedema* doth require reſolution) are wont alſo to be deſcribed and contained vnder a threefold rule; 1. The firſt is of *Auicen*, which is a ſponge dipped in lye of the aſhes of the figge tree, of the vine, and of the holme, which is a kind of oake; apply theſe to the member, for truly in them there is great power and vertue both to drie and cleanſe. 2. The ſecond is of *Brunnus*, which *Theodoricus* alſo vſed. ℞. of Alume, Brimſtone, Mirrhe and Salt; of each a like quantitie: commixe all theſe with oyle of Roſes: and with vineger, and make a Liniment, which yet doth dry more ſtrongly then the former remedy 3. The third is of *Auicen* likewiſe, whoſe deſcription is this that followeth. ℞ of cowes dung, ℔.ß of *Olybanum*, of *Styrax*, of *Vſnea* that is, of the moſſe of trees, which is called of the Græcians *Bryon*, of *Calamus aromaticus*, of Spikenard, of Woormwood, ana. ℥ ß. apply all theſe with vineger, and with the decoction of Coleworts, & make an Emplaiſter. And this truly is the way to cure *œdema* which is finiſhed by reſolution. But if they do not yeeld vnto digeſtion, but do come vnto ſuppuration, you may apply, and that very profitably, *Vnguentum è ſuccis* called *Diachylon*, and that ointment eſpecially which *Rogerius* was wont to make. To the ſame purpoſe alſo this Emplaiſter following is very effectuall. ℞. Mallowes, branke Vrſine, or *Hircina*, which is called *Achantus* and *Achanta*, roote of *Althæa*, roote of Lillie, roſted Onions, Snailes, leauen, Lineſeede ſodden and kneaded, & mingled with ſwines greaſe, or with butter; bring them into the forme of an Emplaiſter, or rather of a Cataplaſme. Another for the ſame purpoſe very effectuall. ℞. of the iuyce of Elder, or Walwort, (which our late writers do call *Lapatium acutum*) of *Leniſticum* or *Ligueticum*, and of Fenel, of each of them as much as you thinke good, yet of an equall weight; boyle them with *Dialthæa*, with hony, oile, and butter, and of them make a Cataplaſme. The Apoſteme being ripe, do not tarrie till it open of the owne accord, for that happeneth ſeldome, or peraduenture neuer; but let apertion be made with ſome hote iron, or ſome burning medicine, wherewith the matter may be purged out, according to the maner and forme before expreſſed. Then let the filthineſſe be cleanſed out & wiped away with that ointment commonly called *Vnguentum Apoſtolorum*, or with a mundificatiue of *Apium*, and with the iuyce of Wormewood, or with this ointment following which doth draw and cleanſe the thicke and groſſe matter. ℞. of *Galbanum*, of *Ammoniacum*, of Roſin, *Terebinthina*, Pich, of bullocks tallow, of oile, ana. a like quantity: diſſolue the gummes in vineger, and let them melt or boile

Remedies for the ſtate and declination.

1. *Spongia aqua lixiua imbuta.*

2. *Liniментum.*

3. *Emplaſtrum Auicennæ.*

Vſnea quid.

Concoquentia ſeu maturantia.

This is giuen by Theodoricus.

Apertio.

A mundificatiue ointment which is attributed to Diuus

vpon

vpon the fire with the reſt, and make an ointment. Afterward let it be cured like vnto other filthy vlcers. But we diſpatch our fourth intention, according to the nature and quality of the accidents that chance very ſuddenly, as if paine doth happen, it muſt moſt eſpecially be mitigated, by applying moiſt oile of wooll (after the doctrin of *Auicen*) or by boyled Wine, or by a cerate made of the oile of Cammomil, of the oile of Wormewood, of the oile of Spike, & of Waxe. But if hardneſſe be preſent, it muſt be diſſolued and mollified with the marrow of the bones of bullockes, or with Harts marrow, or with ſome ſuch like thing, as hereafter ſhall be ſaid. But *Galen* in an inueterate *Oedema* did annoint the ſore with oile, and then miniſtred a ſponge dipped in Lye, & binding it ſomewhat iuſt or ſtraite, did perfectly cure the euill.

Quarta intentio.

Li. 2. ad Glau. Oedemata diuturna.

Now it remaineth that we ſet down the ſumme of the cure of *Oedema*. 1. Firſt therfore vnto an *Oedema*, which is a ſymptomate happning & coming ſuddenly with other diſeaſes (as the Dropſie, leannes of the body, and that euil called *Cachexia*) apply ſuch medicines as can diſcuſſe & dry vp without griefe 2. Therefore rub the ſwolne place diligently with *Oxymel*, or with *Oxyrhodinũ*, or with oile & Salt, or elſe with *Oxyrhodinum* & Salt: for by this friction you ſhall both mitigate the paine (if any be cauſed through diſtention) & remit the tumor alſo. 3. But to an *Oedema* that cometh of the influxion of thin fleame, if fluxe doth not yet ceaſſe, apply thoſe medicines, which partly digeſt, and partly conſtraine and reſtraine. 4. Therfore bind a new ſponge, or ſome other dipped in Lye, or wetted firſt in alayed *Poſca*, eſpecially in ſoft and tender bodies, and if (the tumour doth poſſeſſe the members of the body) binde about them ſoftly ſome ſwadling band from the neather part to the vpper, as we vſe to do in ſetting of bones. 5. But if by theſe remedies the tumour doth not ſlake or yeelde, put a litle Alume with *Poſca*. viz. with *Oxycratum*. 6. But if the affect ſhall be of any continuãce, you muſt not vſe any more thoſe remedies which haue a mingled faculty (that is to ſay, digeſting and reſtraining) but rather digeſtiues. 7. Therefore the member being firſt annointed with oyle, you muſt miniſter a ſponge (as we ſaid) dipped in ly, & bind it with ſwathing bands ſomwhat iuſt & ſtrait.

Capita curationis œdematis.

1.

2.

Oedema morbus.

3

4

5

6

Oedema inueteratum.

7

CHAP. XXII.

Of Tumours aboue nature, which the Latines call inflations, but they are commonly called windy Apoſtemes, Apoſtemata ventoſa.

IT is now very requiſite for vs to diſpute of the Tumours called *Inflationes*, whoſe cure is diuerſe from the cure of *Oedemata*. For they (as *Galen* ſaith *lib. 14. Therap.*) haue their originall of a phlegmaticke humour, and therefore do yeeld vnto touching and handling, and our fingers being laid thereon do deſcend ſomewhat deepely into them. But inflations do come of a flatuous ſpirite gathered together, breeding ſometime vnder the skinne, ſometime vnder the thin filmes which are compaſſed about with the bones, or they do ſhut in and include the muſcles, or elſe ſome part of the bowels. Furthermore ſometime there is alſo not a little of this humour gathered together in the belly and in the inward parts, and alſo in the middle ſpace of them and of the

The differẽce between inflatio & œdema.

Lib.4. the *Peritoneum*, as in that kind of water (saith *Paulus*) vnder the skinne, which euill we call a Tympany. These also differ from *Oedemata*, because they being touched with the finger do not retaine any marke, and they do giue a sound like a tabour, and also because sometime they are contained in a sensible hollownesse, and that oftentimes very great. The cause of these kinds of inflations, is the weakenesse of the naturall heate, which is placed in a flegmaticke matter to prouoke windinesse. For truly heate may take vp such a vapor of a moist substance, but it cannot deuide nor discusse it. For euen as (saith *Galen*) we see in outward things, that a very cold constitution (especially when the Northwind bloweth) doth make the aire very calme, and a very hote constitution in sommer maketh the aire pure & cleare, but the middle constitutions do cause clouds, so it hapneth in liuing creatures. For heate, neither by extreme weaknesse, nor yet by vehement strength can beget wind, but when it getteth a meane between these affections. For this vapour is holden in some place (as *Auicen* saith) either because of the thicknesse of the member, or of the grossenesse of the vaporous spirite. Which thing also *Paulus* after the opinion of *Galen* witnesseth in these words: saying, that the thicknesse of the members, and the grossenesse of the spirit or vapour, doth cause that the same vapour is not dispersed abroad.

Inflationum causæ.

Lib.6. de morbis & symptomat.

Lib. 4.

Inflationum notæ.

The signes of inflation are these; a tumour not yeelding to any touching or handling: it appeareth very cleare and bright, and when it is beaten on, it giueth a sound like vnto a Bottle, or Tympany. Moreouer there is felt oftentimes windinesse throughout the whole body, sometime running this way, sometime that way, which causeth extensiue paine. But concerning the iudgements and opinions hereof, a flatuous or vaporous spirite, which is not dissolued and dispersed, doth procure many discommodities. But a breathing and windy vapour, coursing vp and downe within the body with paine and great anguish, is greatly to be feared, because it doth seeme to be drawn from some venimous matter. But now seeing these three things, viz. the moist matter, the imbecillity of the naturall heate, and the thicknesse of the pores of the body, do concure together to the generation of *Inflatio* (as hath already bene declared) the order therefore of the cure thereof shall be this; first, to strengthen the substance of the heate, to extenuate the vapour and flatuous matter, and to preuent or open the thicknesse of the pores of the body (wherein this vaporous spirit gathered now together, is contained) Now we make perfect and finish the two latter things, that is, the rarifying of the thicke body, and the extenuation of the grosse vapour, by one & the same kind of medicines, which is, by vsing those remedies which do profite to the extenuation of the members, and by applying those helpes, which can heate either more or lesse according to the inflation of the afflicted members, according to the thicknesse or thinnesse thereof, and according also to the grossenesse or thinnesse of the vapours. For according to the difference of these things, the power or faculty of those medicines which are ministred, ought to be intended and remitted, The thin parts therefore, and the vapour or spirit which is not very thicke, are but meanely to be dealt withall: but the grosse members, and that vapour which cõtaineth much thicke matter, do require medicines which may greatly extenuate

Inflationum prognostica.

Inflationum curatio.

extenuate and heate them. But if the substance of naturall heate shall perish or diminish, it must be repaired againe, regarding the greatnesse of the losse thereof. But if it shall be altered, you must bring it vnto a certaine mediocrity. But if griefe shall there vexe or molest the sicke, you must hasten vnto those helpes which can mitigate paine. Very well therefore haue the Chyrurgians of our age declared, that the cure of inflations (which they call *Apostemata ventosa*) is dispatched by three intentions. The first consisteth of a iust and due obseruation of diet. The second of a good concoction or digestion; & the third dependeth of the discussing and dispersing of the windy spirite, which is assembled in the member. Therefore let the institution of diet be after this manner. First of all you must abstaine from all grosse, viscous, raw, flegmaticke and windy meates: as are, sweete meates, all kinde of pulse, raw fruite, Rape roots, Chest-nuts, and other things of that sort, which do ingender a flatuous vapour. You must vse hote and dry things, and those remedies also which can attenuate and dissolue windinesse, as is bread made of Barley with a little Salt and Commin seed. Let the patients drinke be small Ale or Beere, Let him vse the decoction of Cicers mixed with Onions. Let him take *Apium hortense* (which is commonly called *Petroselinum*, Parcely) Calamint, Rew, Commin. Let the flesh which he eateth on, be rather rosted then sodden, and especially the flesh of birds (as hath bene said in the former Chapter.) But now, that you may dispatch the second intention, you must strengthen and corroborate the vertue concoctiue with some sweet and odoriferous sauours, and by confections, and electuaries appointed for this purpose, as be these, *Diacuminum*, *Diaclaminthe*, *Aromaticum rosatum*, and this decoction following which they call *Drageta*. ℞. of Annise, of Fennell, *Cornus*, *Daucus*, Commin, of Laurell berries beaten together, ana. ℥. j. of Liquorice, Galingale, white Ginger, ana. ℥.ß. of Cloues, Cubebs of long Pepper, seed of Rew, ana ʒ.ij. of Annise seede couered ouer with Sugar, ℥.i j. of Sugar ℔ j.ß. make a powder. But outwardly let the stomacke be annointed with oile of Spike, of *Costum*, and oile of Rew: or make an Epitheme of those things which can discusse winde, and which are appointed to helpe concoctiõ, and let it be applyed to the stomacke. But these things do rather appertaine vnto Physicke then vnto Chyrurgery. The third intention is accomplished by applying some medicine which hath a double vertue, that is, which can both concoct, digest, and moderately binde, neither will increase paine. But to the perfecting of these things, there are appointed three manner of remedies in *libro.14.Therapeut.* The first is mentioned of *Galen* in these words: In the arteries (sayth he) and in the muscles which are vnder the skin, or vnder the filmes which do couer the bones, when *Inflatio* is risen, if it be without griefe, some liquor applied to the thinnest members shall profite greatly, of the which nature is lye ministred with a new sponge. But if griefe doth also trouble him, you must annoint the member with some oyle which hath power to mitigate and remit the same. These diseases happen through a stripe or bruise, when as either the muscle or the filme which compasseth the bone, is bruised or hurt, vpon which filme that goeth about the bone, the aforesayd sponge must be layed. The second rule is described also in the same place af-

Three intentions of curing inflations.

Prima intentio.

Cibus.

Potus.

Secunda intentio.

Drageta helpeth digestion.

Tertia intentio.

ter thisfort: But vnto the muſcles (for they ſometime are painefull) you muſt apply ſome medicine which can mitigate paine in greater meaſure, ſo that to them you muſt apply not onely Lye alone, but you muſt put into it both *Sapa*, and alſo a little oyle. But it ſhall be more profitable in the beginning not to apply Lye, but to vſe *Sapa* with Wine, and a little Vineger, and to put to them a little oyle, which things when they are mingled together, it is good to heate them, and lay on vnwaſhed wooll (which they call *ſuccida*) dipped in them. But if there be no plenty of ſuch wooll, then the oyle of wooll is to be vſed with the former mixture; but if neither oyle of wooll be at hand, you ſhall commixe very well ſome cerate, which is made of the oyle of wooll. For the bruiſed muſcles muſt needes be lenified with ſome medicine which hath a double ſtrength, that is, which can both concoct, digeſt, and moderatly bind. But if the medicine containeth no aſtriction, it increaſeth ſometime *Phlegmone*, and eſpecially in thoſe bodies which are plethoricke and full of humours. Being mindefull therefore of theſe three indications already declared (that is, of concoction, digeſtion, and moderate aſtriction) in the muſcles which are inflated by meanes of ſome bruiſe or ſtripe when great paine doth afflict, you ſhall the rather vſe a more mitigating medicine, and you ſhall greatly reſiſt paine, by vſing more Oyle and Wine, whoſe force I know to be mighty, when as paine together with the inflation doth ſpeedily haſten to an end. And truly the time is the ſhorter, if you miniſter thoſe things which haue a ſtrong and mighty effect, as are theſe, Lye and Vineger, and next after them Wine hath a mighty operation. As often therefore as you mind not to aſſwage paine, you ſhall caſt into the mixture, a greater quantity of Lye and Vineger. Againe when you intend to repell and driue backe, you muſt put in more of Wine then of other things, which wine ſhall be more effectuall for this purpoſe if it be blacke and ſharpe. But if you pleaſe to digeſt, you ſhall miniſter the greater quantity of Lye. But if you ſhall mingle Vineger with them, the mixture ſhall be profitable both wayes, becauſe that Vineger hath a double and mingled faculty. But when the muſcle is not pained, you may lawfully for want of Lye vſe *Aphonitrum*, but it muſt not be grauelly, but rather fomie. The third rule is an Emplaiſter made of the filthines which is wiped from the bodies of men that wraſtle, & of vnſlaked Lime, boyled together with water and Wine. Theſe are the words of *Galen lib.* 14. *Therap.* But thoſe inflations (ſaith he) which through negligence are inueterate and of ſome antiquity, you ſhall apply to them thoſe helpes which are made of Lye (as hath bene ſaid before:) and ſecondly you ſhall miniſter ſome Emplaiſter. But I will declare alſo the example or order how to prepare theſe things. Firſt, the filthineſſe which cometh from mens bodies muſt be heat, and throughly ſtrained, that it may be cleane and pure: then againe take the Lime, which muſt be brayed as ſmall as meale, and ſprinkle it in the veſſell where the filthineſſe is, and temper it together to the thickneſſe of clay. That medicine is alſo very good for the inflations which is made of *Sycomorum*, and other remedies of that ſort do greatly helpe alſo. But if this flatuous ſpirit, which cauſeth the inflation ſhall be ſmokie, wicked, corrupt, and excited of a venimous matter, with intollerable paine, and vehement heate, running vp and

Sapa.

Lana ſuccida.

Oeſipus.
Ceratum ex teſipe.

Pro lixiuio Aphonitrum.
Formula tertia.

How an old inflation muſt be handled.

If the windy vapour ſhall be venimous.

and downe in the members of the body, no more ſafe or better counſell can be giuen, then that (when it is reſident in ſome particular member) that member muſt be ſtraightway bound beneath and aloft, and in the midſt the tumour be opened with a razor, or with ſome hote inſtrument, ſo that the venimous vapour may eaſily come forth. Afterward the gaping wound muſt be filled with Aloës, and with Bolearmonicke diſſolued in the oyle of Roſes and Vineger. But within three or foure dayes after, you muſt fill vp the wound with fleſh, and bring it to a ſcarre. But in ſuch venimous inflations, a very thin diet muſt be obſerued, and the body muſt be emptied with ſome purging medicine. And if you miniſter *Theriaca* to the ſicke, it will helpe him greatly. Now there remaineth the ſumme of the cure of a flatuous tumour, which we mind to declare in theſe words following. Firſt, confirme and ſtrengthen the weake ſubſtance of heate that is in the affected member, reſtore the ſame againe, and when it is altered bring it into ſome mediocrity. Secondly, extenuate the vaporous and windy humour which raiſeth the tumour. Thirdly, open the thicke pores of the skin, and of the whole affected member, with medicines that are effectuall for the thinneſſe of the members: afterward ſeeke to diſcuſſe the flatuous vapour. Fourthly, (but according to the difference of the affected parts, and according to the thickneſſe of the flatuous vapour, or thinneſſe of the medicines which are applyed,) intend and remit aſwell the matter as the faculty & vertue of them. 5. Furthermore, if ſuch a vaporous tumour ſhall chance with griefe and with inflãmation (as it hapneth in the muſcles which through ſome bruiſe are ſtuffed out with wind) apply in the beginning mitigating medicines: but in proceſſe of time, vſe ſuch remedies as haue power to diſſolue, increaſing by little and little the plentie thereof. Sixtly, inflations which through negligence are inueterate, firſt annoint them with Lye, and then lay to ſome plaiſter, which can mollifie, diſſolue and diſcuſſe them.

Victus ratio.
Theriaca.
The ſumme of curing of a flatuous tumour.
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a tumour cauſed of a thin ſubſtance, which they call aquoſum Apoſtema, that is, a wateriſh Apoſteme.

IF fleame doth vniuerſally abound throughout the whole body, that kinde of diſeaſe (which is a wateriſh humour running betweene the skinne and the fleſh, called *Leucophlegmatia*) doth accompanie the ſame, as *Galen* hath noted in his ſixth booke *de Symptomatum cauſis*. But when this flegmaticke humour doth flow in one onely member, there is engendered *Oedema*: for ſo they call a looſe tumour, which is without paine. But if wateriſh excrements do abound, they are wont to bring the Dropſie (which they call *Aſcites*) which if they ſhall couch themſelues in one onely member, they do raiſe in it *Phlyctænæ*, that is to ſay, puſhes or whelkes. Furthermore the latter ſort of Phyſitions haue bin accuſtomed to call this kind of wateriſh tumour, *Aquoſum phlegma*, as alſo they do terme that humour to be fleame which floweth in the feete and legges of them that are troubled with the Dropſie, and aboundeth in the leane parts of the body, and in other members, which do labour of an euill habite (which the Græcians call *Cachexia*.) And theſe kinds of tumors which do pro-

Leucophlegmatia.
Seroſum incrementum.
Phyctænæ.

ceed of waterish fleame, or of the aforesaid serous increasing, they do also call vnlawfull and vntrue *œdemata*. But in those dangerous dispositions or diseases, they call it *Tabes*, which name *Hydrops* and *Cachexia* do require: but *œdema* (as hath bene already declared out of *Galen*) doth not deserue the name of a disease, but of a symptomate, for that it truly needeth no particular or seuerall cure. For the onely rubbing of it with *Oxyrhodinum*, or sometime with Salt and Oyle, or with Salt and *Oxyrhodinum*, doth stop it, and many other things of that kinde do worke the like effect. But the cause of these tumours are these, the altering of the vertue or faculty of the members through a cold and corrupted intemperature of the body, and the naughtinesse of nourishment declining to aquositie, as you may easily gather out of the sixth booke *de Symptomatum causis*. The signes and iudgements are almost all one with a true *Oedema*. Yet they differ in this, because in the waterish tumours the tumor is more loose then in a lawfull *Oedema*: and therefore it doth not so resist touching, neither doth it sound like winde, but rather as water, and it doth seeme to shine after a sort, when one holdeth it against the light. Now concerning the iudgements of this kind of tumour, there is no doubt but that a waterish tumour proceedeth of a greater coldnesse then a flatuous tumour doth, as *Galen* declareth in the eleuenth commentarie of his fourth booke of Aphorismes. But it seemeth (saith he) that a waterish *Hydrops*, which they call *Ascites*, is engendered of great coldnesse, but a *Tympanie* of the lesse cold, which disease is named of *Hippocrates*, a drie water running btweene the skinne. For a moist substance cannot be changed into a flatuous vapour without some heate. Moreouer waterish tumours do happen oftener in the feet, in the stones and cods, in the head and in the ioynts, then any other parts of the body, both because such a kinde of humour doth readily rush into those parts, and also because heate is very meane and little in them, for because they be farre off from the hottest members. And as a flatuous vapour is seldome found without a waterish humour; so a waterish or serous humor is scarce contained at any time in any member without a windy spirit. Hitherto we haue spoken of the generation, the causes, signes, and iudgements of a waterish tumour: now we will set downe the cure thereof. Seeing that these waterish tumours are caused (as we haue said already) of the flowing of a serous humour, there needeth no other meanes, specially no other generall order to cure them, then that method which we haue expressed already in the cure of other tumours, which are engendered of the influxion of humours into some member. The order therefore of remedying such kinde of tumors in the beginning shall consist of two points, that is to say, first to empty out that which is flowed, and secondly, to stoppe and inhibite the fluxe of the humour. Wherefore, as in all other diseases, which are yet but in begetting, so also in these affects, the Physition must be carefull and diligent, as well in curing them, as in foreseeing the danger following, that is, both to remedie the disease and prouide for the fluxe. The first order therefore is subiect to that part of the Arte of Physicke which cureth the diseases: but the second belongeth to that part which preuenteth the disease to come. But that we may profite, and dispatch this double and generall method, it is necessary to recite fiue other

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem, & 14. Therap.

Causa.

Signa.

Iudicia.

Ascites is caused of more cold the Tympanites.

What parts these tumours do most occupy.

Aquosi tumoris curatio.

Curatio duplex.

other particular intentions, expressed of *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* for the cure of a waterish tumour; in this manner and order as followeth. The first consisteth in a iust institution and obseruation of a good diet. The second in the helping and furthering of concoction. The third in purging out the waterish humor by the belly. The fourth in bringing out the waterish humor through the passages of the vrine. The fifth and last consisteth in the euaporation and drying vp of that waterish humiditie which is compact and contained in the aggrieued member. But because the foure first intentions do rather pertaine to the Physition then vnto the Chyrurgian, for whose profite we haue taken this worke in hand, and also because they may sufficiently be knowne by those things which went before, I haue set downe the cure in the 33. Chapter of my third booke: and am determined to handle in this place the last intention onely, which requireth some new intended remedies. The first intention therefore is ended with those medicines which can dry vp, and resolue those waterish and serous humors which are contained in the affected member. But of those remedies there are commonly set downe three rules or orders. The first is out of *Galen, lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, and *lib. 14. Method. medendi*; which is made of *Oxyrhodinum* and Salt (as hath bin before declared.) The second is out of the same author, which is a new sponge dipped in Lye: and to this purpose serue those remedies also which we haue before set downe for the cure of *Oedemata*: with the which helpes (that they may drie vp and discusse the more strongly) you must commixe *Aphonitrum*, Alume, and Brimstone. The third rule is a certaine emplaister described of *Auicen* for the cure of *Scrofulæ*, which emplaister he attributed to *Galen in libro suo de compositione medicamentorum κατὰ γένη*. And this emplaister (as he sayth) within one weeke at the most, and oftentimes within three dayes, doth resolue all the hardnesse of the euill. But although this emplaister cannot be found in the booke before rehearsed to belong vnto *Galen*, notwithstanding we may vse the same very fitly to the dissolution of a waterish and flatuous hardnesse: whose description out of *Auicen* is this that followeth. ℞. of Mustard seede, of Nettle seede, Brimstone, *Spuma maris, Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Bdellium*, ana. ℥ j. of Ammoniacke, old oile and Waxe, ana. ℥ ij. But if the hardnesse of the tumour be not discussed by this emplaister, you can deuise no other more excellent or more present remedy, then to open with some instrument; and then to cleanse and scoure it, and afterward to cure it after the manner of other filthy vlcers. The summe of curing a waterish tumor is this. 1. Appoint such a diet to the sicke as can attenuate, heate, and dry vp. 2. Let him vse a moderate exercise of his bodie: let him eate and drinke little: let him not sleepe much, let him oftentimes prouoke his belly and bladder to auoid excrements. 3. Take heed that he digesteth his meate well, and that he begetteth not windinesse. 4. Purge out the waterish humour, wherewith the whole bodie of the sicke doth abound, by the belly and by the pores of the vrine. 5. Drie vp and digest through breathing that serous humour which is included in the affected member. 6. But if it cannot thus be discussed, put some penknife, or some other hote instrument into the tumour, if it occupieth the arteries, and open it in that place where it is most inclined downeward, that so the humour may the more easily come

Fiue particular intentions in curing a waterish tumour.

1 2
3.
4.
5.

1.
2.
3.

Auicens Emplaister to discusse waterish tumours.

Capita curationis aquosi tumoris.

1 2
3
4
5
6

7. forth. 7. Euacuate the humour which did cause the tumour, by some emissarie, and then without delay dispatch all other things which do pertaine vnto the cure of other corrupted vlcers of the like nature.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the diseases called Glandulæ, Nodi, and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmaticæ excrescentiæ.

Enumeratio abscessuum pituitosorum.

GANGLIA so called of the Græcians, *Chœrades*, that is, *Strumæ*, which they also call *Scrofulæ*, *Bronchocêle*, which they name *Bocium*, and *Hernia gutturis*, *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*: also *Testudo*, *Talpa*, *Nacka* or *Napta*, which names giuen to tumours were inuented of the late Physitions, & are not to be found among ancient writers. Those tumours also which *Auicen* calleth *Fugillæ*, and *Nodi*, and *Vulgaris Bubo*, together with many other tumours of that kind, in what part soeuer of the body they do grow, they haue their generation of fleame, and for that cause are iustly referred vnto phlegmaticke tumours. But although certaine of the aboue named Abscessions do degenerate into a stony hardnesse, and into scirrhous diseases, yet the roote & the originall beginning of them for the most part is fleame, (as *Auicen* declareth:) yet we will not deny, but that some other humour may sometime be commixed with fleame, whereof such kinde of Abscessions do come, and so there do grow vp those Abscessions which are both compound and of another kinde. But our intent is to speake here of simple Abscessions onely, by whose proportion or analogie the knowledge of compound tumours shall appeare most euidently: for the one must alwaies be referred vnto the other, as it were vnto certaine rules or canons (as we haue said elsewhere.) Therefore all the aforesaid tumours are comprehended vnder the kind of phlegmaticke Abscessions, or (that I may speake after the manner of the common Chyrurgians) vnder the *genus* of phlegmaticke increasings, which diseases haue certaine speciall differences among themselues (as it shall afterward appeare.) For *Glandula* (as *Guido* thought) tooke his title of the likenesse of *Glans*, an acorne, which forme he doth seeme to vnderstand in this place. This *Glandula* (saith he) is euery where soft, one alone, moueable and disseuered from the other parts lying about it, oftentimes growing in the cleane and pure parts of the body. But *Glandulæ* in *Auicen* doth breede either in the hand, or in the foote, or in some other place ioyned to the sinewes and cords of the body, and these *Glãdulæ* he would not haue destroyed, lest the sicke thereby should fall into *Spasmos*, the crampe. They do happen also in the palme of the hand, and in the forehead, as *Auicen* saith, who also calleth them sometime *Glandulosa Apostemata*, sometime *Nodi*: for he doth intreate of those euils very rashly in diuerse Chapters, as in his Chapter *de Nodis*, euen vnto the end, and in his treatise *de Glandulis*. Therefore *Auicens Glandulæ* do seeme to be diuers from *Guido* his *Glandulæ*, and *Ganglia* among the Græcians to be all one with *Auicen* his *Glandulæ*, which thing *Paulus* his words next following do plainly testifie.

Simplicia sunt regula compositorum.

Glandulæ Guidonis.

Auicens glandulæ are alone with Ganglia.

Ganglium (saith he) is a gathering together of the sinewes, which is caused of some stripe, or of wearines.& that in many parts of ỹ body, especially in those which are alwaies mouing, as in the midst of the hand and in the feete. *Ætius* saith, that it seldome possesseth the elbow and the head, and it doth seldome also arise voluntarily. And againe the same *Paulus lib.6.cap.39* declaring what *Ganglium* is, how it doth grow, in what members chiefly it doth arise,& what signes or tokens do accompanie it, confirmeth those very words which we spake before, saying *Ganglium* is a conuulsion of the sinewes, caused of some blow, or of labour, chancing for the most part in the ioynts of the hand and of the armes, and in the ankles and ioynts of the feete, although also it ariseth in other parts of the body. These are the signes of *Ganglium*, the tumour is all of one colour, resisting touching or hãdling, & without pain but if you do thrust it any thing violently, it is felt painfull, being not deeply rooted, but lying vnder the very skin next the sides: but again, if you prouoke it by force, it doth so neither before nor after. Hitherto speaketh *Paulus Aegineta de Ganglijs*, now we will discourse of other flegmatick tumors. Those Abscessions which the common sort call *Scrofulæ* are nothing else but hard kernels contained within the little filmes, *videlicet Glandulæ*, chiefly appearing in the necke, the armeholes, and in the parts aboue the priuie members, where *Glandulæ* are placed by the vessels of the body that lye vnder them: yet sometime (although seldome) they are caused by meanes of the flesh of the same places, which through a certaine kind of affinity is turned into the nature of *Strumæ*, and is increased by the addition of matter (as it pleased *Leonidas*.) The Latins call them *Strumæ*, but the Greeks *Chœrades*, either truly because of the stones called *Chœrades* growing in the sea, or else because of those beasts called Sowes, that bring forth a great company of pigges at once (for these euils do rise vp many together) which beasts are often infected with that disease. For *Scrofæ*, that is to say *Sues*, haue thicke and glandulous necks, & commonly they be strumous & full of kernels. But *Celsus* saith, that *Strumæ* is a tumour, wherein vnder the congealed place there do arise certaine things like *Glandulæ* of matter and bloud. But these do not onely possesse the necke, but also the nostrils, the priuy parts of the body, and the sides. The Chyrurgian *Meges* declareth also, that he hath found them in the paps of women. *Paulus* also speaketh thus of them: *Strumæ*, saith he, do arise in the forepart of the necke, or in one part or other both at once, either two or more: but all are included within their filmes, as *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Melicerides*. *Lupia* (saith *Guido*) is soft and round like vnto a Hop, and chiefly chuseth his place in hard and dry places of the body, as in the eye lids and in other sinewy members: the Frenchmen call it commonly *vne Loup*. Therefore if the description and cure of it, (which shall be afterward handled) be conferred with the description and cure of *Ganglium* amongst the Greekes, the diseases will appeare not much different or vnlike: but they do greatly erre, which do make this euill called *Lupia*, to be all one with that disease called *Lupus*. For *Lupus* is a malignãt vlcer quickly consuming the neather parts, but specially annoying the thighes & legs, & it is very hungry like vnto a wolfe (whereof it seemeth to receiue his title) eating vp the flesh that lieth next vnto it, which without doubt is of the kind of *Phagedænæ*. Diseases

Signa Ganglij.

Scrofulæ.

Chœrades Græcorum.

Sues.

Struma Celsi.

Lib.6.

Lupia.

Lupus morbus.

therefore are farre diuerse among themselues the one from the other, al-
Nodi. though in name they be somewhat acquainted. *Nodus* (as the knot of a rope)
is said of the same *Guido*, to be round, hard, and abiding in one and the same
place, growing especially about the sinewie place of the body. But *Auicen*
Auicenæ nodi. in a certaine place, defineth *Nodi* to be *dubeleta frigida* and he compareth this
name with *Steatomata*, which are called *adiposi* and *adipini Nodi*, fat kernels;
and with *Melicerides*, which are called *mellitij Nodi*; and with *Atheromata*,
which consist of a certaine kind of matter like vnto a pulse, which the Greeks
call *Athera*. But because these three kinds of abscessiõs, that is to say, *Steatoma*,
Meliceris, and *Atheroma*, are most incident to mens bodies, and *Galen* maketh
mentiõ of them in very many places, we think it conuenient (hauing here got-
ten so fit oportunity) to treate of them plainely, to declare their nature, and
their markes, whereby they may be knowne, and in what things also they do
Atheroma. differ and dissent, and wherein they do also conspire and agree. *Atheroma*
therefore is a tumor of one and the same colour, and without paine, contai-
ning within the filme or sinewie tunicle a soft humour like vnto *Athera*, that is,
a kind of pulse which is made of boyled meale. Sometime also in *Atheromata*
together with a soft humour, there are found certaine stonie and hard substan-
ces and other things like vnto small peeces of Brimstone: oftentimes, there
are found in them certaine things like vnto the chewed bones of a henne, and
like vnto haires wound vp together. This tumor *Atheroma*, appeareth in forme
and figure very long, and somewhat eleuated in height, which being pressed
with the fingers, by reason of clammishnesse and thicknesse of the humour,
doth slowly yeeld or go backe, and the fingers being remoued it doth slow-
Meliceris. ly also returne againe. And *Meliceris* is a tumor which is void of paine also, but
yet it is round, wherin the humor which is also included in some sinewy tunicle,
(which they call *Cystis*) is found somewhat thinne, representing the substance
of hony whereupon some of the Latines do call it *Mellifauium*, a hony combe.
Miliceris therefore doth differ from *Atheroma* in fashion, and in substance
of the humor; for both the forme is more round, and the substance of the hu-
mor more slender. This hony tumor therefore is further extended then *Athe-
roma*, and by pressing it with the fingers it doth speedily giue place, and when
the fingers are remoued, it doth with the like celeritie returne to the former
Steatoma. place. But *Steatoma* is a tumour also besides nature, all of one colour, and very
gentle to be handled; in the beginning truly it is very small, but in processe
of time it increaseth and becometh more copious, wherein is contained a
humour very like vnto tallow, which is also comprehended vnder the filmes
of the body. This is distinguished from *Miliceris* and from *Atheroma*, by rea-
son of the hardnesse thereof, for it is both full and plentifull; and it doth so
resist touching, that it will in no wise yeeld to the thrusting of the fingers. But
let vs now proceed to declare other kinde of Apostemes which are almost re-
Testudo. duced vnto these three whereof we haue now intreated. *Testudo* (saith *Guido*)
is a great Abscession, very humerall, soft, and of a broade fashion, after the
manner of a target, (whereupon it receiued the name) which euill if it groweth,
(saith he) in the head, it is called *Talparia* or *Talpa*: if in the necke, it is called
Bocium: if in the stones, *Hernia*: but sometime it is found with matter, or with
certaine

certaine scales, or with a *Fistula* accompanying it. But *Testudines* and *Talpæ*, amongst the ancient Physitions, had neither any proper name, nor yet once intreated of. But some of our dayes do define *Testudo* to be a soft tumour, or not greatly hard, yet somewhat big, in the which is contained a grosse matter lying hid in a certaine tunicle, which doth so cleaue vnto the whole head of a man (for it is a disease incident to the skin of the head) that oftentimes it corrupteth the same. This euill (no doubt) is to be accounted among the number of Abscessions, and comprehended vnder *Meliceris* or *Atheroma*, but it rather seemeth to incline vnto *Meliceris*: but *Talpa*, because it containeth a white matter is rather referred vnto *Atheroma* then vnto *Meliceris*: Notwithstanding *Guido* affirmeth, that it is a kind of *Testudo*, yea also that it is *Testudo* it selfe (as we said of late) as *Hernia* also and *Bocium*, which he also nameth: but these affects haue borrowed their diuerse names according to the variety of the place wherein they are found. But that which the common sort call *Bocium*, the Greekes (fetching their title or name euen from the very depth) do properly call *Bronchocêle*: we call it *Herniam gutturis*, whereupon they also call them *Gutturosi*, which do labour of that disease. *Bronchocêle* is a great tumour chanceing in the necke, very round, betweene the skin and the wind pipe, wherein there is included, sometime dead flesh, sometime a certaine humour like vnto hony, or fat, or sodden meale, or water. Sometime also (as *Celsus* saith) there are found in such tumours certain haires mingled with little bones. *Nacta* (as *Guido* writeth) is a great tumor, ful of flesh like vnto ỹ flesh of a mans buttocks, of diuers formes and greatnes, as are Melons & Gourds, & therfore it borroweth sundry names according to the variety of the fashion & member wherin it it placed. Moreouer this tumour which of the latter sort is called *Nacta* or *Napta*, is voide of paine, except peraduenture it be so great, that by the continuall drawing of the parts of that mēber, it bringeth some griefe to the parts about it. This also is of the number of Abcessions, & doth pertaine vnto *Steatomata* (as we haue said before in enumeration of tumors besides nature. *Bubo* (saith *Galen*) is a disease of the loose members, or of *Glandulæ* (which the Greekes call *Adenæ*) that is to say, a simple inflammation. Wherefore *Guido* hath either vnfitly here rehearsed it among the number of flegmatick abscessions, or else he vnderstandeth some other matter then *Galen* doth. But *Bubones* which are caused through a fall from some place, or by other vlcers & diseases, are without any danger: but those which are wont to happen in pestilent feauers, are the worst of all (whether they inuade the thighes, or the nostrils, or the necke. *Fugillæ* (saith the interpreter of *Auicen*) is of the kind of glandulous Apostemes, and this terme (saith he) is appropriated vnto it, because it is a disease chancing behind the eares. By the which description it may easily be coniectured, that *Fugillæ*, so called of *Auicen*, is that tumour, which is called of the Greeks *Parotu*, that is a glandulous disease growing vnderneath the ears. But some do thinke *Fugillæ* to be all one with *Bubo*: but then *Bubo* is farre otherwise taken of them then of *Galen* and *Paulus*, which is (as they say) a tumour that is deeply planted and rooted, and oftentimes not compassed with any skin or filme: it is very hard also, after the manner of the euils called *Scrofulæ*; & in that signification (as I iudge) is *Bubo* taken of *Guido*, because he doth

Talpa.

Bocium.

Bronchocêle.

Nacta.

Nacta or Napta is referred vnto Steatoma.

Bubo.

Fugillæ.

What Bubo is with Guido and other late Physitions.

register

The differeces of flegmaticke abſceſſions.

regiſter *Fagillinus Bubo* amongſt the nūber of flegmatick abſceſſions. But there are now found out very many titles giuen to theſe kinds of phlegmaticke abſceſſions. But we ought not greatly to ſtand vpon the names of them, ſo that we know and vnderſtand the only differences of them, becauſe it falleth ſo out, that according to the diuerſity of their names, their cures and iudgement do varie. Therefore of ſuch kinds of abſceſſions, ſome truly are included within a certaine skin or tunicle (which they call *Cyſtis*) and ſome are deeply planted in the fleſh: ſome haue a ſlender foundation, or ſmall roote, and ſome againe are very large and broad. Alſo ſome are eaſie to be reſolued, and ſome are farre otherwiſe: ſome great and ſome little. Some alſo do come vnto ſuppuration, and ſome do not. To conclude, ſome tumours are ſcalie, fiſtulous and cancerous, but ſome do admit or ſuffer none of theſe things. The cauſes of theſe kindes of tumours are threefold, *videlicet*, 1. Primitiue cauſes, as a fall, a ſtripe, exceſſiue or inordinate liuing, and an euill diet. 2. Antecedent cauſes, as are vnnaturall humours, eſpecially thoſe which be flegmaticke and true *Oedemata*, which do degenerate into abſceſſions. 3. *Coniunctæ cauſæ*, which are the diuerſe ſubſtances; and properly the matters of euery abſceſſion contained in the affected member. But in theſe kinds of tumours there are contained certaine humours, which be either ſerous or wateriſh, as is vrine, putrified and corrupt, or filthy, or dirty: or elſe humours like vnto hony, or ſodden meale, or vnto fat. But there are ſometime found within theſe abſceſſions, phlegmaticke, and wateriſh, and glandulous fleſh, ſometime alſo ſtones, ſand, ſhels, wood, coales, and other ſuch like ſolide ſubſtances. Notwithſtanding theſe three kinds of tumours do moſt frequent mens bodies (as we haue ſayd before,) whereof euery one hath borrowed in Greeke his proper title: as *Atheroma*, *Steatoma*, and *Miliceris*, which are thus called by reaſon of the ſimilitude of the ſubſtances contained in them. For there is another tumour amongſt theſe, like vnto tallow, or ſome other fat thing, another like vnto honie, another like vnto a thinne kinde of meate, which they call *Athera*. The ſignes and iudgements of ſuch kinds of tumours, which belong vnto fleame, may eaſily be found out by their deſcriptions and differences before declared. But the marke whereby we may know whether they be couered with any veile or not, is this; there is moueableneſſe and inconſtancy of the filme or skin called *Cyſtis*, which the ancient Phyſitions haue named *Tunica*, and there is a ſeparation of the skinne: but when they be ſurely fixed, that is, abiding in one place, and do cleaue faſt to the fleſh, it is an euident token that they are garded about with no filme or tunicle at all. Furthermore, thoſe tumors which are new and tractable, may eaſily be diſcuſſed, but they which be hard and inueterate, can in no wiſe be reſolued. Redneſſe, paine, and increaſing of heate, do declare that thoſe abſceſſions will either come to ſuppuration, or elſe degenerate into a fiſtula or a canker. *Strumæ numeroſæ*, which do affect the outward member, and do often change their place, wandring here and there about the body, with a certaine extraordinarie heat, do teſtifie and declare very plainly, that they will beget and breed thoſe inward diſeaſes called *Chœrades* as *Arnaldus* hath noted in a certaine place. Thoſe remedies therefore, which are outwardly applyed to them, do profite little or nothing. But theſe diſeaſes (as

Of the cauſes, ſignes & iudgments of the aforeſaid tumours.

Cauſes of tumours which pertaine vnto fleame.

The matter of flegmaticke abſceſſions.

14. Therap.

Signa.

Note abſceſſus velamento incluſi.

Iudicia abſceſſuum pituitoſorum.

Arnaldus à Villa noua.

Auicen

Auicen thought) are increased and do multiply by some fall, or some hurt or bruise in the body. Now these strumous tumours are greatly helped by vsing purging medicines, diuretical potions, and Electuaries, (as they call them) which can dry vp. Also the change of aire doth greatly auaile in yong children. But children, by reason of their excessiue eating and immoderate diet, and the slendernes of body, are very often annoyed with *Strumæ*. But old men by reason of the contrary causes are seldome troubled therewith. Moreouer they which haue a narrow forehead, and straight temples, and great cheekes, are subiect to *Strumæ*: for in such the matter is readily brought down to the neck, as one *Henricus* among the number of the late Physitions hath noted very wel. But *Strumæ* (as *Celsus* saith) are wont commonly to weary Physitions, because they procure feauers also, neither do they at any time ripen easily, and they are cured either with some hote instrument, or with medicines, and oftentimes they do rise vp againe besides their scarres, and a long time after they require medicines againe: and moreouer it so cometh to passe that they remaine in the flesh a long season. The incision and corrosiuing of such tumors is greatly to be feared about the belly, the necke & the ioynts, by reason of the affinity and knitting together of the veines, the arteries, and the sinewes, and also of the internall capacity. In the incision also of great Glandule, it behoueth greatly to eschue that veine which lyeth at the roote of them, and doth bring nourishment vnto them. For ostentimes it bringeth great profusion of bloud, wherupon there ensueth straightway no smal danger. These euils called *Strumæ*, do greatly differ among themselues, but in greatnes, nature, place, biginning, multitude, and ioyning together of the vessels (as *Ætius* hath gathered out of *Leonidas*.) Therefore little *Strumæ* are sooner and more easily cured then the great, euen as the gentle tumours are more tractable then those which are inflamed. Noisome *Strumæ* cannot be remedied; for seeing all such diseases called *Strumæ* are cancerous, and do stuffe vp the vessels of the body, while they are curing, they must needs bring the danger of profusion of bloud, besides that also they are found very deepe in the flesh, and therefore they cannot any way be cut off. For a malicious and hurtfull *Struma* doth possesse the best vessels, that is, the greatest veines and arteries (which are called *Carotides*) euen as though it should hold by certaine rootes. The superficiall *Strumæ* are more easie to be cured then the internall, by reason of their place, and those are curable which do happen in the necke, where yet you must be very diligent to eschue the loud and great sinewes: for many by cutting *Strumæ* about the windepipe, and by cutting other sinewes, haue caused the sicke all the time of his life after to remaine speechlesse. For besides the excision of that sinew, the great vessels being laid bare and cooled in the cure, do hurt the duty of the tongue. For the multitude of *Strumæ*, it appeareth that one alone may easilier be cured then many together. And concerning the manner of their rising, it is manifest also, that they which hang downward are a great deale sooner healed, then they which are planted in the flesh. Thus much of *Strumæ*, which *Ætius* hath recited out of *Leonidas*. The cure of these kinds of abscessions, which haue their originall of fleame, is of the late Chyrurgians appointed to be twofold, that is to say, 1. Generall, and vniuersally

In what ages and bodies Strumæ do reigne.

Celsus.

Magnitudo Strumæ.

Natura.

Locus.

Multitudo.

Ortus.

Duplex abscessuum pituitosorum curandi ratio.

common

common to all, 2. particular, which is proper in euery difference. Therefore our generall methode of curing these tumours shall be, to appoint such an ordinarie and conuenient diet to the sicke, as that the matter which causeth such abscessions be not heaped vp together in the body, and by all meanes to preuent and turne away the antecedent matter (as they call it) which now is gathered together in the sicke body, lest at length it be vnited to the ioyned cause, that is, vnto the matter which now bringeth the disease. But we shall accomplish the first intention of our generall cure, if the sicke do diligently obserue that kinde of diet, which is prescribed in our former Chapters (this one excepted) which is, that they ought to keepe a very thinne diet, and that which is more conuenient to deuide thicke and clammie humours. Therefore if they will follow the counsell of *Auicen*, let them eschue all those meates which are of a grosse iuyce, the drinking also of cold things, too much satietie and immoderate fulnesse, and those things also which procure vomite and abhorring of meates. But they must abide as much hunger as can be. They must chiefly procure good digestion, and auoid a moist house, that is either situated in low valleys, or in fennes, or frequẽted with corrupted waters. Let his drinke be wine that is excellent and of the best, or else let it be water of Alume, or of Brimstone: for such kind of minerall waters, especially those which do represent in tast the dregs of wine, do not onely diminish and discusse these inward strumous and flegmatick abscessions, but those also which do outwardly affect the superficiall parts of the body (as *Arnaldus* affirmeth.) But we do perfect the other part of our former proceeding, that is to say, to turne away the antecedent matter, lest it be mingled with *coniuncta materia*, by foure kindes of euacuations, that is, by some medicine to purge fleame downeward, & sometime by letting of bloud, also by those things which can prouoke vrine, and last of all by those remedies which can through their vapour both resolue and digest the humour which is gathered together in the inward parts of the bodie. To purge the bodie downeward, the powder of *Turbith* is greatly commended, which is made thus in *Auicen*. ℞. of *Turbith*, Ginger, and Sugar, of each a like portion: but he taketh thereof two Drachmes, and affirmeth also, that (besides that it doth resolue grosse fleame) it doth neither heate, nor violently wrest the inward members. But *Razes*, who was very bold in declaring and vsing purging medicines, made this kind of powder, in his ninth Chapter *de doloribus Ventris ad Almansorem*, of twenty parts of *Turbith*, of ten of Ginger, and thirty of Sugar, and ministred of it at one time, ℥. iij. *Benedicta* also and *Hierapicra*, and *Pilulæ de Agarico*, and *Pilulæ maiores de Hermodactylis* do greatly helpe these diseases. To prouoke vrine, *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* was wont to vse this potion following, which (he saith) he gathered out of the writings of many Physitions. ℞. of *Scrofularia partes* iij of *Phylipendula partes* ij. of Pimpernel, Mouseare, *Tenacetum*, of red Coleworts (which of some are thought to be *Brassica maruciua*) of *Rubia maior*, ana. part. j: of the root of *Aristolochia*, of *Spathula fœtida* of the roote of Radish, ana. part. ß. put them all together, and boile them in white wine and hony vntill halfe be consumed, then streine them, whereof euery third day in the morning let the sicke take three ounces, and let it be drunke hot. But in the applying of all these remedies,

Victus ratio.

Aquæ aluminosæ vsu.

Antecedentis materiæ euacuatio.

Vacuantia per aluum.

Puluis Turbith.

Razes.

Hierapicra.

Prouokers of vrine.

Potio Guidonis è Cauliaco.

remedies, (as also for bloudletting, if at any time it be required) the counsell of some learned Physition is to be vsed, who may prescribe both the quality, quantity, and vse of them. But to resolue through breathing, and to digest the humour which is gathered together in the depth of the body, and doth excite inward Glandule, (which also are the causes of outward diseases) *Galen lib.* 14. *Therap* willeth vs to minister *Theriaca*, *Athanasia*, *Ambrosia*, and that medicine also which is made of *Cretica Calaminthe*, the Greeks call it *Diacalaminthe*: whose composition is to be sought out in *Lib.* 4. *De sanit. tuen.* Many other helpes are appointed for the cure of these abscessions, as potions, electuaries, and oiles, which are cast into the eares. There are also very many remedies called *Empirica*, consisting in practise, described, and celebrated of the ancient Physitions; the vse whereof I do not allow, and therefore I thinke it good to pretermit the declaration of them in these our commentaries. Notwithstanding this one thing I stedfastly affirme, that the Christian King of France is indued as it were by inspiration with so wonderfull a gift, that with the onely laying on of the hands he can restore them which be diseased with *Strumæ* or *Scrofulæ* to their perfect health againe. King *Edward* also (as histories do report) was wont marueilously to cure Strumous persons onely by touching them, which gift immortall doth come as it were by inheritance to the Kings that succeed. For the Kings of England at this day, by laying on of hands, and rehearsing certaine ceremoniall prayers, do heale *Strumæ*. And these things truly are generally spoken in all the abscessions before mentioned. Now those things which follow do concerne the particular and proper method of curing euery difference: which methode is made not onely diuerse, but also it is changed both by the substance of matter whereof they haue their beginning, and by the quantity of them whether they be great or small, and by the nature also of the affected member, and of the whole body. But the continuance of time, although it declareth not the cure, yet sometime it sheweth vs, and it doth insinuate the quality of the disposition thereof, (as *Galen* hath set downe *lib.* 4. *de morbis curandis.*) Therefore although many indications and intentions of their cure may be gathered and learned by those things we haue spoken before, yet for our present purpose, we haue reduced them into 6 points which we haue expressed in these sixe canons following. The first whereof is after this manner: imprimis, let those flegmaticke abscessions that are soft and small, (which are commonly called *Lupiæ*, & of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Glandulæ*) if they be seated in the strong parts of the body, and because they are nor yet inueterate, haue their thin *Cystu*, that is, their filme to couer them, let them I say, be appeased, suppressed, consumed, and afterward dried vp. 2. Mollifie, discusse and consume the great abscessions which be not greatly hard nor inueterate, after the manner of œdematous tumours, whereof we haue before intreated. 3. Ripen, open, and cleanse such flegmaticke, corrupted, and vlcerous apostemes, which do pertaine vnto suppuration. 4. Those *Strumæ* which are not cured by the former remedies, and yet are moueable, gentle, tractable, and obedient, cut them off, and draw them out. 5. Those which are vnmoueable, deeply rooted, inwardly planted, and wound about the veines and arteries, and broad at the roote within, corrosiue them about, and cleanse them

Quæ per halitum digerant.

The Kings of France do cure Strumæ by applying the hands.

What things do alter the particular cure of abscessions flegmatick.

Tempus quid insinuet.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

them throughly, 6. Those which are fastened but to a thin and slender roote, bind them about and pluck them out. The first canon, according to *Auicen* his opinion is perfected after this manner, if when you do consume and suppresse vehemently these soft and little abscessions (which *Auicen* doth call *Glandulæ*, and the new Physitions *Lupiæ*) you do lay on a plate of lead made fit for the tumour, and bind it very strongly in the middest, lest it slide from the place: for this doth digest these kinds of tumours. First therefore let *Lupia* be softly rubbed with the hand vntill it waxe somewhat hote, vntill it be after a sort softer then it selfe. Afterward let the affected member be surely laid hold on with the hands, and let it be so often, and so vehemently stricken, with the bottome of a saucer, or with some other solide thing, that it may be disseuered, and that the inward *Cystis* thereof (which is the filme wherein it is included) may be rent and broken, and so the matter therein contained may be dispersed: which thing being done, apply the plate of lead vpon the place, and let it be bound very strongly with a swathing band that hath two ends, neither let it be remoued for the space of nine or ten daies, but let the plate be of that greatnesse (as it was said of late) that it may answer to the proportion of *Lupia*. But there are some which before the application of any plate of lead do minister this ointment, made of burnt lead, of the barke of the Elder tree, or of the Figge tree, with oile and vineger. Other do first vse an Emplaister made of Aloës, *Acatia*, Mirrhe, *Olibanum*, *Sarcocolla*, putting to them a little vineger, or the white of an eg, as much as shall seeme sufficient to commixe with the rest. *Henricus* was wont to lay vpon them little flakes (as he and many other Chyrurgians of that sect do call them) made of flaxe, dipped in the white liquor of an eg, with salt & alume *Zuccharinum* vnthicked. Moreouer *Philagrius* almost after the same manner was wont to cure *Glanglia* (as it is in *Aetius*) which diseases are tumors vnequall (as we said before) speaking after this sort. We deny (saith he) the labour of the Chyrurgians, that is, bloudletting in *Ganglia*, especially if they chance in the hands, or in the feete; but we must cure them onely by medicines. For we annoint them by the fire with Ammoniack, which must be made pliant to the thicknesse of an Emplaister: afterward we apply a plate of lead equal for the tumour; and lest it should slide away from the place, we bind it in the middest with straight bands. But a few daies after, when we know that *Ganglium* is mollified, we take away the bands, and (not saying any thing to the sicke) while the place is yet hote, we fasten the thombe of our right hand vpon *Ganglium*, and laying fast hold on the member without other foure fingers we violently breake it, and so *Ganglium* is presently dissolued. Hitherto *Philagrius*. Therefore by this our order of cure, it may easily be gathered, that *Lupia* amongst the late Physitions, *Auicen* his *Glandulæ*, and *Ganglion* among the Greeks, is all one disease, which the former description of them doth also manifestly declare. *Archigenes* in this disease, commandeth to lay on lime with the fat of a goose, and with Rosin, *Terebinthina*, which is the right Turpentine. The same *Archigenes* also did oftentimes vse that medicine made of the stone called *Lapis Achates*, as *Paulus* reporteth. But *Oribasius* vsed very often this medicine, ℞. of Ceruce, *Resinæ piceæ*, old oyle, ana. ℥.j. of Ammoniacke, *Thymiama* and *Galbanum*, ana. a like quantity,

Compressio & attritio.

Lupiæ curatio.

Laminaplũbea

Vnguentum Rogerij.

Ganglij curatio ex Philagrio.

Lupia & ganglion is all one euill.

Archigenes lib. 4.

Oribasius his medicine to mollifie Ganglia.

quantity, of waxe, ℥.iiij. The same medicine is to be seene in *Ætius*, but the quantity doth vary in certaine things, as thus, ℞. of Ceruse, old Oyle, and *Resinæ piceæ*, ana. ℔.j of Waxe, ℥.ij. of *Ammoniacum*, *Thymiama*, and of *Galbanum*, ana. ℥.j. boile the Ceruse with oyle till it lose his staining faculty, then bray the Ammoniacke, and cast it into the Ceruse with the oyle, afterward cast in the *Resina picea* and the Waxe, and last of all the *Galbanum*, which first must be made very soft and tender. Moreouer that famous Physition of Greece, I meane *Oribasius*, did not apply any plate of lead, as *Philagrius*, *Auicen*, and other late Chyrurgians were accustomed, but he did lay and bind vnto *Ganglium*, a thicke round peece of lead like vnto a wherue, which doth hang vpon womens spindles to make them turne round, which was more large and ample for the disease. For truly, saith he, with the weight thereof, it doth more speedily dissolue the euill. Therefore in the cure of *Glanglia*, it is far better to vse such mollifying and discussing medicines, then the diligence of the Chyrurgian (with excision of the tumours,) especially when they do grow in the legges, or in the armes, or in the principall parts of the body. For it is to be feared, that if they be cut off, the member is made lame and vnperfect. But those diseases which do occupie the head or the forehead, may safely be cured with the hand, that is, may be cut off or pulled vp by the roots. Therefore deuide the outward skinne with a penknife, and then (if the tumours be small) lay hold on the foundation of them with a paire of pinsers, or some such like instrument, and cut them off from the roote. But if they be great, thrust them through with a hooke, and lift them vp and wind them round about, vntill you haue plucked and drawne them foorth: last of all, sew vp the sides or brims of them together, and vse those medicines which are appointed for bloudy vlcers. But these things belong vnto the fourth canon. The second canon (because I will be silent in those medicines which are appointed for flegmaticke and œdematous tumors, which we haue described already, and yet together with these remedies following, they be very profitable and expedient for these Abscessions whereof we now intreate, and also for all kind of *Hernia*) is finished by the applying of a certaine Emplaister, which is described of *Galen libro sexto de compositione medicamentorum κατὰ γένη*: which Emplaister (as he himselfe testifieth) doth digest though breathing, and doth repell *Phlegmone*, and is effectuall against the diseases called *Strumæ*, *Pani*, and *Parotides*: it is auaileable also against the gowte, and it benefiteth many other diseases. The Emplaister is this. ℞. of old Oyle. ℥. 100. *Spumæ argẽti*, *Picis siccæ*, ana. ℥.50. of *Ladanum*, ℥.52. of *Ærugo rasa*, ℥.8. of *Galbanum*, ℥.4. let *Argenti spuma*, which they call *Lithargirum*, be braied and boiled in the oile, and when they are somewhat thickned together, put in the Pitch and the rust of the scourings of brasse, commonly called verdigreace, then the *Ladanum*, and *Galbanum*. Afterward powre them into a mortar, and bray them and mollifie them, and reserue them to your vse. Some to make it haue a good colour, and to looke somewhat brown, do commixe with them also the offal of brasse, ℥.viij. for otherwise it would be very blacke. This Emplaister is found otherwise described in *Guido* his commentaries, vnder this forme. ℞. of old oile, ℥.xij. of the scourings of brasse, ℥. xiiij. of dry Pitch, ℥.vj. of *Ladanum*, ℥.iij. of

Verticillum plumbeum.

Gangliorum. per Chyrurgiã curatio.

Secundus canon.

Discussion by digestiues.

Emplastrum.

Diachylon. *Lithargirum*, ℥. xij. of *Galbanum*, ʒ.iij. For the same purpose *Diachylon* also which is called *commune & ireatum* doth profite much, whereof you must take one pound, and commixe therewith the powder of the roote of Ireos, ℥.j. The same effect hath that *Diachylon*, called *magnum Mesues*, whose description shall afterward ensue. Some counsell vs for the digestion of these abscessions to apply vnto the aggrieued place, the olde dung of a Goate with hony and vineger, which must be heat ouer the fire vntill they be well incorporate together, and then brought to the forme of an emplaister: also an emplaister made of Fenugreeke, of the seed of flaxe, and of coleworts, with the scraping of the roote of *Althæa*, which medicine (if there be any hope of suppuration) doth ripen it notably. *Haly Abbas* also for the same purpose doth greatly commend this emplaister following. ℞. of Beane meale, and Barley meale, ana. ʒ.v. of the roote of Liquorice, of the roote of *Althæa*, and pitch, ana. ʒ. x. of white waxe, goose suet, ana. ʒ. x. bray them, and mingle them together with olde oile, and with the vrine of a child that hath not yet tried Venus sports, and ouer a soft fire make an emplaister. Another out of *Auicen* which *Guido* vsed. ℞. of Oxes dung, ℥.ij. of the root of Coleworts, of the roote of Capers, of the fish called a shrimpe, of fat Figges, ana. ℥.ß. of Hops and *Bdellium*, ana. ʒ.ij of vineger, hony, Sowes tallow, of the dregs of old oile, of each as much as is sufficient, whereof make an emplaister. *Brunnus* approueth this remedie, following, whose opinion *Theodoricus* also doth confirme. ℞. of Ammoniacke, *Bdellium*, *Galbanum*, of each a like quantity: steepe them three daies in vineger, whereto (when they be dissolued) you may adde of small bran as much as shall suffice, and make an emplaister. *Rogerius* was wont to vse this remedie for *Strumæ* (which they commonly call *Scrofulæ*,) ℞. of the roote of brakes of Daffadil, or of Walwort (if you please) of each as much as you thinke good, let them be boyled in the best wine, and then brayed in a mortar, and adde to them a little quicke brimstone, and make an Emplaister. *Guido* his maister *in Monte Pessulano*, hath often tried this emplaister to be most effectuall, which is made of xij. Snailes (which they also call *Limaces*) boiled in wine or in lye made of ashes, commonly called *clauelata*. But that which is more profitable, he did minister euery day to the sicke to be eaten one Snaile, either dry or otherwise prepared, and as they terme it, made ready to chew. *Paulus* also was wont notably to discusse *Strumæ* with vnslaked lime, steeped in hony, or in the filthinesse of mens bodies that doth arise either in exercising themselues, or in bathes, or else in oile, or Sowes Grease. The like vertue, saith *Ætius*, hath the filthinesse of exercising places scraped from the walles, which must be vll beaten together and spread vpon a linnen cloth, and applied after the manner of an emplaister. For the same purpose this helpeth effectually. ℞. of lime and *Nitrum*, ana. a like portion, of *Cardamomum* and Fenugreeke, foure times as much, with hony, and apply it after the manner of a mollifying plaister. Also the meale of bitter Hops boiled and annointed with *Oximel* doth discusse *Strumæ*. For the same purpose also Oxes dung boiled in vineger and annointed, doth notably auaile, which being applyed after the manner of a Cataplasma, doth maruellously dissolue all hard and scirrous tumours. Rath ripe Figgs also, especially, of the wild

Stercus caprinum vetus.

Haly Abbas emplastrum.

Emplastrum Auicennæ.

Brunni & Theodorici emplastrum ad strumas.

Rogerij emplastrum.

Emplastrum præceptoris Guidonis ex limacibus.

wild fig tree, applyed with Hogs grease, do discusse all kinds of tumors. Therefore by this our methode of curing, you shall heale all kind of *Strumæ* which are but newly begun, & not yet inueterate, as well in children as in them which cannot abide manuall practise, euen by the applying of such medicines as can dissolue, and digest, & discusse. But first you must labour to mollifie and afterward to dissolue, or else vse some medicine of a double quality, which can work both these effects together, of which kind are all those remedies almost which are before described. Now if digestiue medicines shall nothing preuaile in these Abscessions, they must be either brought vnto suppuration, or consumed, or else cured by Chyrurgerie, (as it shall be said hereafter. But here we must not omit that thing which is recorded of some very diligently: namely: that they which are diseased with *Strumæ*, & with any leprosie, are maruellously holpen by the vsing of Vipers & Serpents, and by drinking of the gumme called *Laser*, euery day fasting to the quantitie of a cich pease. Therefore cast the dead Serpent into a pot, and stop the mouth thereof very iust with some plaister, and set it in the fire, then take the ashes of the burned Serpent, and mingle them with the like quantity of Fenugreeke, and vse them in wine. For this doth excellently helpe them which be strumous. Also in them that labour with *Strumæ*, you must prouide that the belly be made soluble, and a slender diet obserued: you must dayly prouoke vomiting, & indeuour to purge fleame vpward: you must dry the head, and apply Cataplasmes to the forepart thereof, which can raise vp litles pushes in the skin, as is, the root of Capers, with *Polenta*, and other such like things. And you must vse purging medicines and fine powders that be of like vertue. We also do generally dispatch the declaration of the third rule, by the vse of the former remedies: for all mollifying and resoluing medicines, if they finde any place of matter disobedient vnto resolution, they doubtlesse do ripen the same matter, and bring it to suppuration, especially if the said matter be gentle and tractable, or commixed with bloud. But *Haly Abbas*, that he might bring these kinds of Abscessions vnto maturity, ministred a plaister made of Barley meale, pitch, and *Olibanum*, & of the vrine of a yong child, all well incorporate together, But *Auicen*, to represse the vehemency of the heate, willeth to commixe the decoction of Coriander with the aforesaid vrine. But if these things do nothing helpe, and there be required a more effectuall remedie, take of Myrrhe part j. of *Licium* parts ij. and mingle them with the aforesaid decoction. This medicine vnder written, doth bring *Strumæ* vnto suppuration, which medicine is recorded of *Paulus Ægineta, lib.4.* ℞ of Myrrhe ʒ.x. of *ammoniacum Thymiama.* ʒ. vij. of *Viscus quercinum.* ʒ.viij of *Galbanum*, ʒ.iiij *Propelis*, ʒ j. beate them in a mortar. But when these Abscessions be ripe, and brought vnto suppuration (which you shall easily perceiue by these tokens of matter) they must be opened & cleansed with that ointment cõmonly caled *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, which is an ointment of great efficacy in maligant and vlcerated *Strumæ*. To this purpose also the ointment called *Vnguentũ Aegyptiacum* is very profitable, & the *Emplastrum de succis* (which they call *Diachylon* & *Diapalma*, which the Greeks cal φοινικίον whose desciptions are to be found in other places. But if these Abscessions shall possesse any member, wherein there subsisteth any putrifaction: & cor-

The vsing of vipers and serpents doth marueloustly helpe them which are strumous.

3 *Tertij Canonis declaratio. Suppurantia. seu maturantia.*

Pauli medicamentum ad strumas suppurandas.

Detergentia.

Vnguentum Apostolorum.

Vnguentum Ægyptiacum

Diachylon.

Diapalma.

ruption of the bones, or any euill symptomate shall haue accesse to them, they must be cured after the manner of vlcers, with which they haue some affinity and acquaintance. Concerning our fourth canon, you shall cure gentle obedient, superficiall, and curable *Strumæ*, very cunningly and shortly, after this sort. First, command the sicke to lie downe: for that when he sitteth his heart will quickly faile him. When he is thus laid, bind his legs surely together, and tie them to the bedstead, and charge the seruants about him to hold his head very hard. Then cut the skin that compasseth the tumour, either with a right or a little ouerthwart section, but that incision which is drawne ouerthwart in the necke is altogether vnprofitable, because in it the vessels and sinewes are extended right forth. But you shall not cut the whole thicknesse of the skinne hastily at one time without ceassing: for our minde is to vse no violent thing in this our worke. And truly in little tumours, that is, in small *Strumæ*, make but a simple incision, or deuide them with a small line: but in great Abscessions cut the skin to the forme of a Myrtle leafe: then those vessels which are vncouered (as the veines and arteries) put them softly and easily aside. After these things, distend & stretch out the sides of the section, or the edges of the deuided skin with pinsers, or with other such instruments, and plucke out the filmes within, either with your fingers, or with some other instrument appointed for that purpose, and so by litle and little picke out *Strumæ*, where it appeareth bare and vnfolded from the tunicles. But if *Strumæ* shall be wound about the vessels, you must handle the cure with great attention, lest through negligence there followeth a copious profusion of bloud. Therefore in dispatching this cure draw one ouely side of the section at once with the pinsers, and so by little and little separate it with the point of a penknife from the other parts thereunto adioyning: and when you haue drawne & loosed the connexion on the one side, do the like also on the other side, and then cut out the whole foundation or groundworke, because of the sinewes and vessels lying vnderneath. But in those *Strumæ* which do chance about the armeholes, and about the priuy members, you must make an ouerthwart incision, by reason of the doubling of the skin. Moreouer, in that section which is made in *Strumæ* that possesse the necke, you must haue a singular care, lest either the arteries, which they call *Carotides*, or the quiuering sinewes be touched and hurt. But if by the cutting of any vessell when you make incision, the profusion of bloud doth delay and hinder your worke, either take vp the vessell with a small cord, or (if it be not very great) cut it quite off, (as *Paulus* counselleth) or else, (if it bursteth not out with great violence) apply such remedies as are appointed to stanch the bloud. Afterward returne againe vnto your enterprised labour. Therefore when the foundation of *Strumæ* is brought into a narrow roome, cut it cleane off cunningly and handsomely, and then put in the forefinger, and search the place diligently, whether there be any other *Strumæ* thereunto adioyned or not: which (if there be any found) you must also draw forth after that manner which we haue before expressed. Moreouer you shall easily represse a meane fluxe of bloud by applying those things which haue power to dry vp, as flaxe, sponges, or liniments made of cotton, infused in cold water, or in Vineger, or in a mixture of both, (which they call *Oxycraton*) & afterward

4. *The way to cure and destroy Strumæ, out of Albucasis and Leonidas.*

ward wrong out. But if the section shall continue without blodshed, fill it vp with the powder of Frankinsence, and apply liniments, and for the longer preseruation of the liniments, binde to wooll dipped in wine. But if any ful veine worthy the speaking of be connexed within the root or bottome of *Glandula* or *Strumæ*, or some such like tumour, it is not conuenient to cut it off at the very ground, but to take it vp and bind it with a small cord, that it may fall out of it owne accord, peece by peece without danger. In which fall the cure must be followed with liniments: but the cord must be of some matter which will not easily putrifie, as are those threads which are called *Serica*, or small lute strings: for those bands which do quickly rot, do soone fall from those members whereunto they are tyed. But if when the worke is finished, some of the skinne which couereth the matter of the former Abscessions, or some other strange thing shall remaine behinde, *Albucasis* willeth it to be drawne out, first, by filling the wound with cotton, or with some other like thing dipped in salt water. But *Guido*, to draw out those relicts which remained behinde, did fill vp the gaping vleer, first with the white of an egge, and with Alume sprinkled ouer it, afterward with *Vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, or with some of those corrosiuing medicines which are described in the Antidotarie. Moreouer in all these operations, you must apply such medicines as can lenify paine: but amongst all other things, we do commonly lay on flaxe dipped in the white of an eg, and in oyle of Roses. You shall finish the scope of our fift rule after this sort: breake the skinne with some burning hote medicine according to the greatnesse of the abscession: But while you attempt that thing, you must giue diligent heede, lest that the scalding medicine do touch the others parts lying about the tumours. You shall notably dispatch this labour, by applying some hote medicine made of lime or sope, which things do happily execute their effects within the space of twelue houres: but though they remaine somewhat longer, yet there will ensue no danger or discommodity thereby. The skinne therefore being thus broken by some burning medicine, and the crust procured in the place thereof, you shall deuide the tumour with a straight line all along through the middest of the crust; but you must make incision somewhat deeply almost to the very quicke, and then lay vpon the cut or gaping wound, a liniment striked with some consuming or eating medicine, as is, the powder of *Asphodelus*. Moreouer although many do apply a great number of medicines in these abscessions, yet Arsenike in this case obtaineth the preheminence, so that a man know how to vse it aright. But the certaine quantity of vsing the same cannot be described (as *Galen* hath noted in *libro tertio Therapeut.*) It is not therfore to be vsed rashly, because it is a medicine vehement and violent without measure, exciting feauers, and procuring many other vicious symptomates. Besides that also the ministring of a small quantity doth performe a maruellous and almost an incredible effect: notwithstanding the common measure or quantity thereof, is the mediety of one graine of wheate in a strong bodie, and in those members which are farre off from the principall parts: but in weake natures, and in those places which are situated neare vnto the principall members, a lesse quantity must be applied. But to be short, it is better, and more

What is to be done, if a veine be annexed vnto Strumæ.

Cords made of silke.

Albucasis.

Corrosio & mundificatio.

Causticum ex calce & sapone.

Arsenicum.

Quantitas Arsenici.

more safe; to minister a little at once and often, then at one time to apply an immoderate quantity. The operation or effect of Asenicke remaineth three whole dayes, in all which time the sicke must vse the diet of them that are feuerous. But the affected member, & the parts lying about it, both for the owne defence and to stop the fluxe (which immoderate heate may cause) ought to be annointed, and all to washed with the ointment called *Populeon*, with water also, or with the iuyce of Nightshade, and with vineger, and with other refrigerating remedies of the like kinde. But when you are certainely assured, that *Glandula* is destroyed and wasted away (which you shall know by the hardnes and swelling of the procured crust) then the crust must be resolued euen from the quick, by washing it with butter, & by applying a litle wheat meale thicked together, and by some other fat and vnctuous thing that is not salted, as swines grease and such like. But when the crust is fallen from the tumour, if any thing either of *Glandula*, *Lupia* or *Strumæ* do yet remain behind, it must be fetched out with some gnawing medicine, as with powder of *Asphodelus*, with *Vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, or with some such like thing. But if there remaineth nothing behind, it must be brought vnto a scarre after the maner of other vlcers. But now that we may also accomplish the intention of our sixth canon, these abscessions which haue very narrow bases or foundations, must be fast bound either with a cord of silke, or with horse haire, and they must be bound dayly more and more, either with the former bands, or with other new cords, vntill they appeare very drie, and voluntarily do fall away of their owne accord, (as we haue said of those Abscessions which are deepely planted, and folded about the great vessels.) But the band must be ayded with some consuming & drying medicine. The paine also must be aswaged with the white of an egge, with oyle of Roses, with *Vnguentũ Populeon*, or with some other remedie that can mitigate paine. But when the cord shall fall off alone of it owne accord, the tumour must be cured after this manner which we haue before expressed. And thus much generally concerning those abscessions which vniuersally consist aboue nature, especially of them that haue their originall of fleame. Now we haue here thought it conuenient to set downe the proper & particular method of curing *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*, which diseases are alwayes & often incident to mens bodies, and do comprehend vnder them other certaine kindes & differences of tumours besides nature, called of the late Physitions after certaine new titles and names, which among the ancient sort were neuer heard of, as *Talpa*, *Testudo*, *Nacta*, and others of that kinde, which we haue expressed in our former chapters: in those three kinds of Abscessions which do most frequent mens bodies, (I meane in *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, & *Meliceris*) there is one generall order of their cure, namely that the matter which is contained in the tunicle which they call *Cystis*, may be discussed, or that the whole tumour together with the very tunicle may be consumed by medicine, or taken away by section. But some of those tumors require a threefold method of curing, as those which containe a more liquid humour, as is *Meliceris*. Some againe are cured two waies, as *Atheroma*, which is destroyed by section, and consumed by medicines. But *Steatoma* can neither be discussed nor consumed, but it is cured by the onely labour of the hand, that is, by section

Quando crusta à vino resoluenda.

6 Ligatura & euulsio.

Curatio Atheromatis, Steatomatis & Meliceris.

How many wayes these Abscessions may be cured.

ction onely. Moreouer of medicines which in these affects haue power to discusse and dispersse, you shall finde plentie among those remedies which we before haue set downe for the cure of *Strumæ*. But *Paulus* doth particularly and properly discusse *Melicerides* with that medicine, which containeth of pressed Grapes (the kernels being taken out) xx. of the scourings of Brasse, ℥.iiij. which medicine must not be applied before the member be nourished with foments. Another Emplaister appointed for *Melicerides*, which *Ætius* reported vnto *Leonidas*. ℞.of pressed Grapes (the kernels being detracted) ℔. j. of Comin seede beaten very small, ℥.vj.of *Nitrum*, ℥.iij. bray al together in a mortar, and bind them to the tumour. Another discussiue medicine expressed of the same writer, very profitable against *Melicerides*. ℞. *Salis ammoniaci*, of the scourings of siluer, and of Ceruse, ana. ℔.j.of Waxe *Terebinthina*, *Chalbana*, *Opoponax*, ana. ℥.j. of *Rubicra sinopica*, ℥.vj. of Vineger, ℥.vij.ß. boyle the scourings of siluer, Ceruse and Salt beaten very small together, then cast in the *Rubrica sinopica*, which first must be steeped in Vineger, and melt them together: last of all, when they be all boyled together and cold, commixe therewith *Opoponax* and *Chalbana*, both dissolued in Vineger, and conserue them to your vse. But if in such kind of Abscessions you mind to wast the humour by applying of gnawing medicines (which the Græcians call *Septica*) it is expedient first to vncouer them (as also in *Strumæ*) by hote burning medicines applyed to the skinne, whereof (saith *Paulus*) the best remedie is that which consisteth of quicke Lime, that is, which is not yet quenched with water; of Sope, and of the ashes of Lye that are made in a stillatorie. There is another more diuerse remedie which may be kept a long time. ℞. of vnslaked Lime, ℥ iiij. of *Sphecle*, that is, of the burnt dregs of Wine, Liquide *Nitrum* parched in the fire, ana. ℥.ij. of *Minium* or *Rubrica sinopica* ℥.j. Let them be brayed with the distilled ashes of Lye, and when you haue brought them to the thicknesse of Liquide Hony, heate them thrise ouer the fire, that it may be of a meane substance, and lay on *Pixis plumbra*, with the distilled Lye aboue, lest it dry vp too soone. Therefore first breake the skin that is beset, with such medicines as can procure a crust: but when the crust is fallen off, apply consuming remedies, among which this remedy following doth notably wast without gnawing and biting ℞.of the offal of brasse, ℥.iiij. of *Sandaracha*, that is, of red Arsenike, and of *Helleborus niger*, ana. ℥.ij applie them with oyle of Roses. Another remedie very effectuall for the same purpose. ℞.of a burnt Hedgehog, of *Testa sepia*, and of Orpine or Arsenicke, ana. an equall portion, commixe them with oile of Roses. But the parts which lie about the tumour and are adiacent thereunto, let them be first annointed with Ceruse and oyle. But if we purpose to cure these kinds of Abscessions by making incisions, that is, by Chyrurgery, truly in that method of curing (whether it be a mealy humour, or a hony, or a fat humour, or of what substance soeuer it be, which is contained in them) we must obserue one onely and principall intention, namely, to take away the tunicle wherein the tumour is included.) But in enterprising the same, we must be very attentiue and wary (as we haue said before of *Strumæ*) that we rashly hurt not and teare in peeces the filme or tunicle, whereupon the humour which was contained therein,

Lib.4. Curatio per digerentia.

Lib.15.

Curatio per exedentia. Lib.4.

A medicine to wast without byting.

Curatio per chyrurgiam.

gushing out plentifully, doth both hinder our operation, and some portion thereof also remaineth still behinde. For if (when the tunicle is deuided, and the humour issued) the tumour shall sinke downe, the tunicle will hardly be plucked away and cured. But if any remnant of the humour be left behind in the Abscession, it is to be feared that the disease will grow againe (as doth *Strumæ*) when as any portion thereof sticketh behind. But if any such thing doth happé, it is not expedient to sew together the Abscession, but to draw out the relicts thereof, either with those consuming medicines which we haue before expressed, or by some such remedies. Now, if *Steatoma* hath a very broad top, and a very narrow and slender foundation, then (setting aside all other superfluous medicines) you must cut it vp quite euen by the very roote; for so the labour of the Chyrurgian may be quickly ended, the vlcer made plaine and equall with the other parts, and the cure shortly dispatched.

Ætius lib. 15.

CHAP. XXV.

Of hard and scirrhous tumours, engendred of melancholy.

WE haue hither discourſed of those tumours which are caused of bloud, choler, and fleame: of *Verrucæ* also, and of the abscessions which are excited through a waterish humor, and a flatuous vapour: of those Apostemes also which haue their beginning of a flegmaticke substance, and of other tumours generally consisting aboue nature. Now it remaineth that we intreate of those Abscessions which do proceede of a melancholike humour, as are *Scirrhus*, indurated cancerous tumours, which they call *Cancerosi*, *Apostemosi*. To *Scirrhus* therefore (as also to *Phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, and *Oedema*) there is assigned of the late Chyrurgians, a double difference, which notwithstanding is comprehended vnder the same title, *videlicet*, *Scirrhus verus*, & *Scirrhus non verus*. But a true and lawfull *Scirrhus* is said to proceed of naturall melancholy. Also naturall melancholie is the dregs of good bloud, and as it were a certaine slimy superfluity, and very grosse bloud, whose colour is blacke, but the tast thereof sharpe and soure (as it is not vnknowne to them that do vomite the same:) it is lodged in a certaine bloudie corner, wherein all the humours are contained, and appointed of nature to nourish the melancholike members. But an vnlawfull *Scirrhus*, after the opinion of the late Chyrurgians, is that which is engendred of vnnaturall melancholy. And vnnaturall melancholy is that which differeth from the former description of the naturall humour, and yet it keepeth within the precincts of his liberty, which if it shall once pretergresse (they say) it is no longer to be called melancholy, but some other humour. But melancholy (to enter into the generall definion thereof) is a cold and dry humour, proceeding (as *Guido* saith) of a very grosse portion of that which we call *Chylus*. But of vnnaturall melancholy there are commonly appointed foure differences. 1. The first is, when as that melancholike humour which is called naturall, and doth dayly engender in the body, euen when a man is in perfect health, is in his owne proper essence, burned, putrified, and become exquisite melancholie. For that

Scirrhus duplex.

Melancholia naturalis.

Scirrhus illegitimus.

Melancholia non naturalis.

Differentiæ. 4. non naturalis melancholiæ.

that (as *Galen* saith) is engendred of a blacke humour that is vehemently burnt, and it glistreth like vnto Lime or Pitch. But this is soure,& being powred vpon the ground,it is hote like Vineger, and it riseth vp like leauen. It is also very vnpleasant to all creatures liuing, so that neither mice nor flies will taste thereof. It sheweth likewise like vnto abundance of Salt, wherein no liuing thing can vphold his life, as the sea which is said to be dead. Furthermore this blacke kinde of choler is then ingendred,when as that slimie bloud (which we haue said to be naturall melancholie) doth continue long in the body, and is purged out neither by any sensible nor secret fluxion, but is transformed,corrupted, and rotten. For truly this humour (saith *Galen*) when it waxeth vehemently hote, either because of the corruption thereof, or because of a burning feauer, it causeth melancholy: which truly is cold,because it resembleth the nature of the earth, but yet it is not void of heate, as is ashes and vineger; and when it is purged downeward (as it appeareth sometime to them which are diseased with *Dysenteria*) it appeareth more glistering and more blacke then that thicke aud blacke bloud which we do call a melancholious humour. 2. The second *Species* or difference of vnnaturall melancholy is that which cometh through the adustion of other humours, as that which proceedeth of choler vehemently burnt, which is of so great malice and rancour, that it raiseth the earth, and lifteth it vp on high, after the manner of exquisite melancholy. But the flies also do abhorre it, as in a true melancholie. If bloud also or fleame shall be vehemently heated in the body, and burnt, there is also caused a melancholike humour, which *Auicen* because of the adustion, termed to be vnnaturall: but these two last kinds, which do come of the adustion of bloud and fleame, *Auicen* hath thought to be very milde and gentle: yet *Galen* writeth, that the kinde of melancholy which is engendred of burnt choler, is a great deale more dangerous then that which hath his generation of grosse bloud, which is like vnto the dregs of Wine in the bottome of a vessell or in proportion resembling the dregs of oile; for this is more gentle and milde, yea and especially when as it tarieth not long within the body with any abundant heate exceeding nature.But before it be changed into exact melancholy, it passeth first into a yellowish forme, secondly into leekie substance, and thirdly into a rusty colour. 3. The third *Species* of vnnaturall melancholie is that which borroweth his originall of a certaine stony concretion,as when through the ignorance of the vnskilfull Physitions or Chyrurgians, *Erysipelas*, and those inflammations which the Græcians call *Phlegmone*, or any other tumours proceeding of naturall humours, are too vehemently cooled and bound by the applying of extraordinary medicines: or else when those medicines which do mightily draw and digest, are ministred to the same tumours. For then (the whole substance which was very small in them, being dispersed) the grosse matter which remaineth,being exceedingly dried, will resemble the hardnesse of a stone, and be conuerted into a melancholious humour. 4. The fourth difference of vnnaturall melancholy ariseth, when as some other humour is mixed with naturall melancholy: which thing while it hapneth,it is made sweete. and doth waxe milde, vntill such time as one burnt choler or other be commixed therewith;for thē it waxeth sharp and

Lib.4.Apho. Lib.14 Therapeutices.

2 *Melancholy cometh by the adustion of other humours.*

Com.29. lib.3. prædict.Hip.

3 *Bilis atra per congelationem (vt vocant) & indurationem.*

4 *Melancholy through admixtion of other humours.*

Foure differences of tumours caused of melancholy.

Verus scirrhus non exquisitus.

bitter, & is made partaker of immoderate gnawing. We may gather therefore by our former words, that the 4. differences of tumours aboue nature do proceede of melancholy: for first of naturall melancholy (which we haue said to breed daily in sound bodyes) there is caused a true and lawfull *Scirrhus*, called of the Arabians *Sephiros*, of the Greekes σκιῤῥὸς and σκιῤῥὸς ἐκ ἀκριβοῦς, that is, *Scirrhus*, or *Scirrhus non exactus seu non exquisitus*, which kind of tumour truly is very hard and void of paine, but yet not altogether insensible: *Auicen* calleth it *impurus*. Yet *Galen lib.* 14. *Meth. med.* pardoning them which do contend about the names of tumours, calleth it a tumour conflated of a melancholious humour, and then properly *Scirrhus*, when as notwithstanding it is expert of any feeling or sence: but if it be not yet made altogether insensible, it is rather to be called a scirrhous tumor, then *Scirrhus* it selfe. Secondly of vnnaturall melancholy through the admixtion of other humours there do grow three other differences of tumors, that is to say, *Scirrhus phlegmonòdes, œdematòdes*, and *erysipelatòdes*, which diseases are here rehearsed for one onely difference. Thirdly, of vnnaturall melancholy caused through a certaine stony hardnesse and concretion, there is engendred an exquisite *Scirrhus*, hard, and void of sense and paine: it is called of *Auicen purus*, which euill admitteth no cure. Fourthly of vnnaturall melancholy through deustion, are all these kinds of cankers engendred, as well vlcerate as not vlcerate: of the which kind is *Scirrhus cancrosus*. *Scirrhus* therefore properly is a tumour very hard and without paine, but yet not altogether without feeling, proceeding of a naturall melancholy, and vncorrupt humour; which definition the late Chyrurgians haue assigned thereunto. The causes of *Scirrhus*, as of other tumors besides nature, are three. First primitiue, as an euill diet, ingendring and gathering grosse and melancholike bloud. Secondly antecedent, as a melancholike humour collected in the body, which is drawne from the splene (whose duty it is to purge the liuer from that grosse and muddy bloud) and yet is not expelled without the body (as it ought to be.) Thirdly *Coniuncta causa*, is the melancholike humour it selfe, compacted in the affected member. The signes of *Scirrus* his presence (as *Guido* reporteth) are these, a hard tumour, and mighty resisting, a middle colour betweene a red and a blacke, which is a browne colour. This *Scirrhus* when it hapneth in the parts of the body, many of the Physitions (as *Galen* saith) do call it *Pelidnon*, that is to say, blacke and blew. Moreouer if the affected member hath any manifest veines appearing in it, you shall see them puffed vp and swolne by the meane of thicke and black bloud, such as is sometime purged downeward in them which labour with the disease of the liuer, but then it is called *Scirrus impurus & cancrosus*. For these signes which *Guido* doth here ascribe vnto *Scirrus*, do properly agre with the signes of Cancer, as *Galen* writeth 14. *Meth. med.* And truly they may very fitly be attributed vnto *Scirrhus*, if this one thing be excepted, namely that *Scirrus* hath not such swelling and full veines as Cancer hath, except *Scirrhus* (as we haue said before) chance to be *cancrosus*: for *Scirrus* doth oftentimes degenerate into Cancer, and that not without great cause, seeing that both proceede of one matter, that is, of a melancholicke humour. The proper signes therefore of a lawfull *Scirrus* are these: a hard and stony tumour, very obstinate, and resisting touching

Sirrhus phlegmonòdes, œdematòdes.

erysipelatòdes.

Scirrhus exquisitus.

Scirrhus cancrosus.

Scirrus proprie quid.

Causæ 3. Scirrhi legitimi.

Signa.

14. Metho. med.

Guido not as Cancri tribuit Scirrho.

ching, wherein there is present a very dull sense. There do appeare many other signes which do testifie the dominion of a melancholy humour in ỹ body. Such tumors as are truly *Scirrhi*, in their beginning and first conception are wont to appeare very small, but in processe of time, they do grow and increase by litle and little, and become great and mighty, whereof some do annoy one onely member, but other some of the said tumors do leaue that member which they did first infect, & afterward do passe ouer into the possession of another, which thing when it hapneth, then *Auicen* calleth the euill *Ferinos*. Furthermore, these kinds of melancholious tumors if they be rightly handled, they are cõmonly cured by resolution; oftentimes they continue indurated and hard, and many times (which is worst of all) they degenerate and change into *Cancer*.

Indicia Scirrhi

Ferinos.

The cure of a true & lawfull scirrhus, yet not exquisite, and grown into a stony hardnes, altogether insensible.

But now we will prosecute that absolute cure of these kinds of hard tumors aboue nature, which are called true *Scirrhi*, and not *exquisiti*, by three speciall intentions. The first prescribeth a conuenient order of diet. The second admonisheth vs to take away the antecedent matter, which is ready to procure the disease. The third warneth vs to enterprise the vacuation of that coniunct matter (as they call it) which now causeth the euill. Therefore (to speake generally) you must appoint to them which are diseased with *Scirrhus*, a sober and moderate diet, and such a one as declineth vnto heate and moisture in those things which they call *Res non naturales*, as before. Giue him therefore meates of good iuyce, and which can ingender good bloud. Let his bread be made of wheate, well kneaded, and baked in an ouen with a soft fire, and let it haue some leauen, and Salt as much as shall suffice. Let his drinke be small ale or beere, giue him rere egges, the flesh of chickens, capons, hennes and the brothes of them. Let him also eate the flesh of Partriches, Pheasants, Quailes, yong Kids, sucking calues, and of weathers of a yeare old. For pot herbes, let him vse that which the Arabians call *Aspanar*, but we somewhat altering the name do call it Spinach; also Lettuce, Hops, Borrage, Buglosse, & other herbes of that nature which can purge forth bloud, and make it more pure. To conclude, let him flie and auoid all those things, which naturally do engender melancholike bloud, which thing *Galen in libro tertio de affectis, capite sexto* hath described vnto vs; as are, the flesh of Goates, and of Oxen, and of Buls, but especially the flesh of Asses, and of Camels, of Foxes and of dogs, of Hares also and of Bores; furthermore Snailes (if they be accustomed to be eaten) and the flesh of all terrestriall creatures seasoned with salt. The flesh also of fishes, as of Tunie, of the fish called *Balæna*, the sea Calfe, the Dolphin, the Dog fish, and all kind of Whales. But of pot-herbes, Coleworts are wont onely to engender this kind of bloud. The buds also of trees, when they are seasoned either with Brine or with *Oxalme*, especially of the tree called a Mastixe tree, of the Terebinth, of the Brier, and of the wild Eglantine brier (which the Greekes call *Cynosbatos*.) But of all kind of pulse, lintels chiefly are accounted among the number of melancholike meates. Bread also made of bran, and that which is made of Rie and of other corrupt and naughty seedes, which other countries do vse in stead of corne. Moreouer, thicke and blacke wines are very fit to engender a melancholious humour: especially, if one drinking them abundantly, doth by occasion keepe his body in great heate.

Victus ratio.
Euchymia.
Panis.
Potus.
Oua.
Carnes.
Olera.

Carnes.

Limaces.
Pisces.
Olera.

Oxalme is made of vinegar and salt.

Leguminum.
panis.
Typha.
Vinum.
Caseus.

Finally

Finally, old cheese when as by chance it shall be exceedingly hote in the body, doth easily breed this kinde of humour. These things haue we hitherto recited out of *Galen*. Furthermore you must diligently beware of meates that are burnt, rosted, and fried, which do vehemently dry vp; of salt meates also, and those which are sharpe and sowre, as Onions, Garlicke, Pepper, Mustard, and of other things of that kinde which do burne the bloud. You must also eschue anger, wrath, sadnesse, watchings, heauinesse, carefulnesse, and immoderate exercise. Quietnesse and tranquillity of minde, with mirth and gladnesse is greatly to be desired: and you must diligently endeuour euery day to empty the belly. Hitherto concerning the first scope. 2. Now that we may accomplish that which our second intention doth propound, let vs somewhat consider the precept of *Auicen*, who willeth vs to euacuate the whole body both by bloud-letting, if too blacke and grosse blould shall appeare, and also by some purging medicine, which can repell melancholy, as are those which follow out of *Mesua*; *Epithymum*, *Sene*, *Polypody*, *Fumus terræ* (which of the Græcians is called *Capnos* or *Capnios*, of the Latines *Fumaria*) *Lupulus*, and the herbe called *Volubilis*. Also *Cassia fistula*, *Myrobalani Indi*, *Lapis lazuli*, which the Greekes call *Cyaneus*, the Romanes *Cæruleus*, *Diasene*, *Diacatholicon*, *Hiera Ruphi*: all which things do purge forth melancholike humours. But these things which pertaine vnto Physicke do exceed the bounds of Chyrurgians. Omitting therefore the professors of the art of Physicke, we will hasten to the third scope, which we shall very speedily dispatch, if we labour to empty out all that matter, which vnnaturally is compacted in the aggrieued member. Which truly is the generall and principall indication of all tumours which consist aboue nature: in which that leeky matter (as we haue said before) is not yet engendred. But this is the onely and proper way to euacuate them, about the which the Chyrurgian ought to be very circumspect, and attentiue. For truly the matter of such kind of tumours, is naturally so malignant and stubborne, that it will turne into a stony hardnesse if it be rashly resolued. Againe, if it be mollified more then is requisite, it is greatly to be feared that it will putrifie and corrupt, and that *Scirrhus* will degenerate into *Cancer*. We must therefore in this case follow the counsell of *Galen* and *Paulus* (who wrote of this thing long before *Auicen*,) namely, that in such scirrhous affects, we must not apply any vehement, hote, and drying medicine, neither any thing else which hath the power onely to mollify and moisten. For that tumour which hath a superfluous humour, it doth nothing at all dissolue: but that which hath a small fluxe it doth more dry vp thē neede requireth. Hereupon *Auicen* did well admonish vs, to apply to these indurated tumours by turnes, sometime mollifyng, and sometime digesting remedies. But because that order was very tedious and hard to be done, it pleased *Galen* to vse for the cure of these euils, such medicines as had a mixed and double faculty; which deuice was more safe, and lesse dangerous. For by this meanes we shall both mollifie and digest the indurate and hard substance all at one time: yet in the beginning we must commixe something with them which can moderately represse. For this purpose *Auicen* hath set downe many kinds of remedies, which because they are rather appointed for these *Scirrhi* which proceed of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas* when they

Sanguinem adurentia.

Animi pathemata.

Exercitatio,

2 *Vacuatio materiæ antecedentis.*

3 *Vacuatio materiæ cōiunctæ.*

Materia scirrhorum cautè tractanda.

Gal. 2. ad Glauc.

Medicines good for scirrhus.

they be exceedingly cooled (as we wil declare in the chapters following) we will omit them, making choyce of that medicine which *Razis in libro septimo ad Almansorem* hath described, vsing notwithstanding at the beginning some equall repression of the flowing of humours (by applying some moderate repelling remedy.) The forme of the medicine is this. ℞. of *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each a like quantity: beate them in a mortar with oyle *de ben*, which the Greekes call *Balanum myrepsicũ*, the Latines, *Glans vnguentaria*, or with oile of Lillies. Then take of the filth of Fenugreeke, of Lineseed and Figges the weight of the former things: bray them all together till they be throughly incorporated the one with the other. *Galen* for this cure doth greatly commend the barke of the roote *Althæa*, which the common sort (saith he) doth call *Anadendro malache*, as though one would say *Arborescens malua*, melted with the fat of a goose or of a cock, and then beaten together, and brought into the forme of a Cataplasme. But if the tumour doth belong vnto supuration, you must be very warie, lest the affected member be incended or stirred vp with hote medicines, or by any other meanes, for so *Cancer* should easily be procured: but if the tumour be opened, and the substance thereof already turned into matter, you must vse the helpe of that ointment which is called *Diachylon*. Againe, if it shall degenerate into a stony hardnesse, you must straightway repaire vnto those remedies which shall be described in the chapters following.

Razis medicamentum ad scirrhos emolliendos & discutiendos.

Galeni cataplasma. Therap. 14.

If Scirrus will matter.

But now when as through the vnskilfulnesse and ignorance of Physitions, those inflammations which the Græcians call *Phlegmone* or *Erysipelata* are exceedingly refrigerated, or else rashly resolued, through the ministring of such medicines as can vehemently draw and digest by their vapour, then all that substance which is any thing thinne and slender in them, is dissolued, but that which remaineth behind, being as it were congealed together & maruellously dried vp, doth take vnto it a stony hardnesse, and at the last commeth to that disease which is called of the Greekes *Scirrhus*. But it chanceth sometime, that some member is hardned through extension of the flesh which cometh by reason of winde or by some waterish humour (as we haue sayd before in our Treatise of flatuous and waterish humours.) Oftentimes also there ariseth vp in certaine members a stony hardnesse caused of the priuation of the moisture of the body, and through too much dryenesse, as it hapneth in the hardnesse of the ioynts, and in the pores of the body, when the gowte or such like diseases do reigne. But here we will onely discouse of *Scirrhi*, or of other hard tumours, which haue their originall from *Phlegmone* or *Erysipelæ*, or else from *Oedema*, when as they be often refrigerated and cooled, which tumours we haue termed not without some reason *Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati*, that is, *Scirrhi* proceeding of an vnity, being as it were a double disease incident both at one time. The signes and tokens of an vnlawfull *Scirrhus* which is not exquisite or perfect are these: a hard tumour, scarce sensible, that is as though it were without feeling and paine, perfectly representing the colour of the body, drawing his beginning from vnnaturall melancholy. This euill is not altogether incurable, and yet it admitteth no easie cure, neither is it easily remedied. For that humour whereupon this euill gathereth his force, is

Scirrus illegitimus & non exquisitus. Quando generetur.

The causes of hardnesse in the parts of the body.

Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati.

The signes of an vnlawfull Scirrus.

Indicia. is clammish, glewish, and thicke, or (as *Galen* saith) a partaker of both kinds, which when it is stuffed in the hard members, it doth obstinately withstand resolution, and when the humidity thereof is throughly resolued, then that which remaineth behinde is dried vp, and made as hard as a stone.

Scirrus exquisitus curationem non admittit. But an exquisite *Scirrhus*, and such a one as is altogether insensible, doth not receiue any cure. But if it may be holpen any way, it must be done by some moystening medicine. That hardnesse also which cometh through too much exsiccation, and when the moisture of the body is cleane extinguished, is also incurable; for it is sufficient if you stoppe it, that the drinesse may proceed no further. But those *Scirrhi* also, wherein there do grow certaine haires, and which are great and very hard, and do resemble the colour of the bodie, are neither cured, nor yet changed at any time into any other disease, as *Auicen* hath declared.

Scirri incurabiles.

Summa curãdorum scirrorum. The common and generall declaration of curing these tumours, is in this order described: namely, to euacuate all that matter which vnnaturally is contained in the member. For the onely way of euacuation (as *Galen* hath noted *lib.* 14. *Metho. med.*) is this, euen to cleanse and draw out that corruption which stubburnly doth cleaue vnto the humour. But if any man shall assay to make euacuation by those medicines which do vehemently draw and digest, neither shall mollifie and soften with any drying and moistening remedies, the cure shall seeme to him within very few daies greatly to haue preuailed: for *Scirrhus* will manifestly appeare to be diminished, but that which remaineth of the disease will be incurable. For truly when the whole substance which is very thinne in the tumour, is digested or dispersed, then that which remaineth behind is turned into a certaine stony concretion. For this cause therefore there is no medicine that doth vehemently heate or drie vp, meete and conuenient for these hard and scirrhous affects, but such remedies onely which can fitly both mollifie, and also digest, as are these things following: the marrow of a Hart and of a calfe, also Goates suet, Bulles suet, the tallow of a Lybard and of a Lyon. Among the fat of birds, Goose grease is greatly commended, next that the fat of a Cocke and of a Phesant. Also *Ammoniacum Thymiama, viz. Suffimen*, perfume, *Galbanum*, and *Bdellium* of both kinds, but rather that which is called *Scythicum*, because it is somewhat moist. *Styrax* also which is something moist and fat. Moreouer the roote of *Althæa*, and of the wild Mallowe, which groweth almost euery where, the leaues whereof must be moderatly boyled with Goose or Cockes suet, or if there be none of these at hand, you may vse Swines grease: these remedies are greatly profitable for this intention. But *Auicen* warneth vs not to commixe any Hogges tallow that is salted with the former things, and to vse Masticke, *Labdanum*, oyle of wooll, *Strigmenta gymnasiorum* (which they call the filthinesse of bathes) Asses dung, and the dregs of oile of Lillies, of oile of *Alchanna* which they call *Cyprinum*, and of *Cherua*, which of the Greeks is called κίνιδος, but of the Latines *Recinium*. But that cure which is administred by Vineger is profitable for this euill, that is, for *Scirrhus* which is full growne, and when the member is prepared to receiue mollifying medicines, as *Galen* also hath declared: for truly saith he, the force of Vineger, if it be vsed moderatly and in due time, is very wholesome

Medulla cerui.
Adipes.
Gal. 14. *meth. med.*
Anadendro malache.
Oleum reciniũ.
14. *Meth. med.*
Vsus Aceti.

wholesome in these diseases, because it doth deuide and resolue the grosse humors included in them: but if it be applied immoderately and out of a conuenient season, it violently consumeth the thinner parts, and maketh that which remaineth behind to become very hard; also if it be vsed long, it will diminish and corrupt the very substance of the sinewes. For this cause therefore we must not very often nor at the beginning, nor any long time, apply those medicines to the great sinewes or cords of the body, which are compounded and made of Vineger Wherefore *Galen* did cure the child of one *Cercilius*, who through too much cooling and vehemẽt binding of *Erysipelas*, had a hard and scirrous tumor remaining in his thigh, after this maner. First, he annointed his thigh with *Oleum sabinum*, which of all oiles is most thin, in stead whereof they vse in these dayes *Oleum sambucinum*, oile of Elder, which the common sort call *Iasminum* When he had thus washed and annointed the member, be applied *Ammoniacum Thymiama*, which must be grosse and not very old, commixed with the aforesaid suets and marrowes. Afterward he annointed his whole thigh round about with very fat *Ammoniacum*, dissolued in exceeding sharpe Vineger, and commanded the child to hoppe on the other legge, that so the more nourishment might be brought vnto it. By such medicines therefore as could release and mollifie the tumour, and by digesting or resoluing remedies also, and by the moderate and right vse thereof, he perfectly cured the child. But in those great sinewes and ligaments of the body, which are drawne together & couered with *Scirrhus*, you must vse Vineger after this sorte as *Galen* counselleth vs: Take a stone and heate it very hote in the fire, and quench it in very sharpe Vineger: if it be possible, let the stone be that which we call *Pyrites*, but if there be no plenty thereof, take the stone called *Lapis molaris*, which the Greeks call *Mylites*: then let the affected member be holden ouer the hote vapour that riseth vp from the stone out of the Vineger, that it may receiue the steming vapour, which doth dissolue *Scirrhus*; and afterward lay on againe some mollifying medicine: yet the affected part must be euery day euen from the beginning throughly annointed with oile and not with water, which oyle must not be astrictiue in any case, but of a thin substãce, as is oile of Sauine. Sometime you may boile in oile the rootes of *Althæa*, and of the wild Cucumber, and other things of that sort. By this method of curing, many men truly haue bene perfectly healed in a short space, so that some haue thought it (as *Galen* saith) to be done by the art of Magicke. By these things therefore it doth plainely appeare, that with that cure which we accomplish by mollifying remedies as well in the sinewes, as in the ligaments of the body, you must commixe some medicine that can cut, dissolue and deuide, among which number Vineger is chiefly the principall. Now as concerning other medicines which can mollifie the hardnes of these tumours, we haue spoken nothing, hoping that they may easily be gathered out of our former discourse. Now followeth the summe of the cure of *Scirrous* tumors, which we haue drawn into a cõpendious forme hereafter ensuing. 1. That kind of *Scirrhus* which hauing all his humidity and moisture consumed and wasted, is growne into a stony hardnes, and is altogether destitute of sence, (as is that which *Galen* calleth *exquisitus Scirrhus*) of such a *Scirrhus* I say, attempt not the cure, but leaue it as an

Historia. Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.
Oleum sabinũ.
Suffimentum.
The cure of scirrhus, sinewes, and veines, out of Galen and Paulus.
Lapis mylites.
Lapis pyrites.
Oleũ sabinum.
2. ad Glauconẽ.
The summe of curing scirrhous tumours.
1

2 euill incurable. 2. To *Scirrhum non exquisitus*, which is not altogether insensible, and yet scarce feeleth any thing, apply such medicines as cary with them a
3 maruellous heate, and a meane moisture, that is to say, which by mollifying, can also moderately digest. 3. Vnto such members as are infected with *Scirrus* minister no remedies which do vehemently digest, and immoderately dry vp, for in them their small humidity is quickly resolued, and then that which abi-
4 deth still behind is dried vp and turned into a stonie hardnesse. 4. In hard and grosse members, which are annoyed with *Scirrhus* (as are the great vessels of the body) and in other places also, where the euill is inueterate, you must commixe such medicines as haue power to cut and deuide, as is Vineger, with
5 those remedies which can mollifie and moderately digest. 5. Also command that this scirrous member which is hard and grosse, or any other part besides, which is affected with *Scirrus*, be holden ouer the hote vapour of *Lapis molaris*
6 burnt in the fire, and quenched in Vineger, and let this be done often. 6. Furthermore let the aggrieued member be euery day annointed with some thin oile, wherein either the roote of the wilde Cucumber, or of *Althæa*, or greene
7 and fresh Dill, or some such like thing hath bene boiled and infused. 7. Apply vnto the aforesaid scirrous members such medicines as can drie, deuide, and resolue the grosse humours moderately, that is to say, neither often, nor any long time, nor out of conuenient season, that is, not at the beginning of the
8 disease, to preuent the vse of mollifying remedies. 8. To conclude, all such scirrous tumours as are not indurated and of a stony hardnesse, let them be
9 cured with such medicines as can fitly digest and mollifie. 9. Last of all commit the cure of a scirrhous splene and a lapidous liuer, to the wisedome of the Physition.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus.

Cancer pertaineth vnto two kinds of diseases.

1 THe name and title of the disease called *Cancer*, among the Physitions and Chyrurgians hath diuerse and sundry significations: for the notifying or declaration thereof is extended vnto two kinds of diseases, that is to say, vnto a cancerous tumour (which they commonly call *Cancer Apostematosus*, as well that which is euident and appeareth in the outward members, as that which is hidden, and lieth in the inward and secret parts of the body, as in the hips, the roofe of the mouth, and in the pappes of a woman.) The other signification pertaineth vnto an vlcerate *Cancer*. But both these euils are engendred of

2 *Of what humour cancer is engendred.* melancholie, that is to say, of such a humour as resembleth the dregges of Wine, and the filthinesse of oile, which thing *Galen libro decimoquarto Therapeutices*, and in his little booke, *De tumoribus præter naturam*, doth plainely testifie. Now this aforesaid humour, when it is quiet, milde, and gentle, it engendreth a secret or an inward *Cancer* without any vlcer. But if it happeneth to be sharp, fierce and malignant, it gnaweth the skinne, and causeth a Cancer with an vlcer. But here we will openly discourse of that kinde of Cancer which hath his residence in the outward parts of the body, and of that which is not

Cancer sine vlcere.
Cancer cum vlcere.

yet

yet exulcerate, which also sometime (as *Galen* affirmeth) is said to be a priuie Cancre. That Cancre therefore whereof we now intreate, is a hard tumour, vnequall, round, hauing the veines round about swolne and puffed vp: it is blew or browne, and (as *Paulus* saith) it is more blacke in colour then an inflammation: it is also hote, but yet not so vehement as inflammations are; it sodainely increaseth, and greatly wearieth the sicke, and afflicteth them almost with a continuall griefe: in the Greeke it is called καρκῖνος, and καρκίνωμα, which title aswell the Latines as the Græcians haue assigned to this disease of the fish called a Crabbe, because the veines about this euill are filled and stretched out, very like vnto the feete of Crabs, descending from the round compasse of their bodies. But some haue giuen it this name, because it is very hardly pulled away from those members which it doth lay hold on, as the sea Crab doth, who obstinately doth cleaue to that place which it once hath apprehended. Moreouer this tumour doth also represẽt the colour of a Crab, whose hew is very blacke. But the first beginnings of these Cancres are sometime so confused and so small, that the common sort may be ignorant thereof: for when they do begin, they do scarce resemble the greatnesse of a pease or of a beane. Wherefore it is no maruell (saith *Galen*) though the common sort do not know them, for they be like vnto the little rootes that arise out of the earth, which are not discerned but of skilfull husbandmen. But afterward they grow vp into such huge greatnesse, and do bring with them so vehement, great, and manifest symptomates, that a child may easily discerne them. Let no man therefore doubt of the name thereof, seeing all men with one consent do terme this kind of disease *Cancer*, because (as we haue said) the veines in this euil do swell on euery side, and are greatly stretched out, and they do represent the forme and likenesse of a Crab. A cancerous tumor (as we haue sayd before) is hard and vnequall, which by the touching of it doth plainly appeare. It hath a blew or browne colour, which is a meane betwene red and blacke, called of the Greeks πέλιδνον. About the place where Cancer is lodged, there is felt a certaine beating or pulse, and as it were a pricking, sometime also (as *Celsus* saith) the tumour is asleepe, and as it were dead. It maketh the veines round about it to swell and rise vp, like vnto the Cancer in the armes. Oftentimes also in some they are secretly hidden, and when the place is touched, it is felt in some very painefull, but in other some it is contrary. This tumour also is maruellously stout, and resisteth touching. Moreouer it hath in it a certaine strange and extraordinary heate. *Cancer* or *Carcinoma* generally is a grieuous and pernicious disease, for it can scarcely be healed any way, by reason of the grosnes of the humour, neither can it be repressed or discussed, neither will it yeeld to any purgation, though it be throughout the whole body. The malice also of this disease is so great, that it contemneth all gentle and easie remedies, putting forth but the middle finger to thẽ, (as the prouerbe is) but it must be stirred and chafed, and ouercome with very vehement remedies (as we are wont to do in the euil called *Crabro*.) This disease is wont to happen in euery part of the body, but especially in the vpper parts, about the face, the nosthrils, the eares, the lippes, and about the pappes of women, and those chiefly, which are not naturally purged of menstruis.

Cancro sit tumorũ descriptio.

Cancri nomen à Cancro aquatico.

Cancri notæ per initia confusæ, & obscuræ.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Notæ Cancri euidentis non vlcerati.

Iudicia.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Celsus lib. 5.

Gal.lib.2. ad Glauconem.

But Cancres do also commonly haunt men, whose accustomed purgings are suppressed through hemorrhoids growing in the fundament: for by them that grosse and thicke bloud (wherupon this euill taketh his first beginning) is wont naturally to be purged out. Moreouer whē this melancholious humor, resembling in portion the dregs of wine, doth descend and flow into any member, and there abideth compact together, it causeth sometime the disease called *Varices*, and sometime it breedeth a Cancre, as when the same is somewhat cooled. But when it is thrust out to the whole skin, it causeth that euill which they call *Elephans. Cancer* therefore is a certaine particular *Elephantiasis*, which the common sort call *Lepra*, the Lepry. But the thicker and the blacker the bloud is whereof Cancre proceedeth, the more dangerous will the disease be. Now when Cancre is full growne (as they say) and inueterate, it admitteth not any cure, except it be plucked vp by the roots, either by section or by adustion: but those Cancres which haue their constitution in the inward parts of the body, do not desire any such kind of cure, as that ancient *Hippocrates*, simply the Prince of Physitions, hath taught vs very well in the Aphorisme following: saying that it is not good to cure all inward Cancres: for when they are cured, they do soone perish againe, but when they are not cured, they remaine a long time. For experience hath taught vs, as *Galen* witnesseth in his commentary vpon this Aphorisme, that they which enterprise the cure of these Cancres either by section or vstion, do rather increase their fury then abate it, whereby they shortly destroy those men whom this euill hath attached. Those Cancres therefore are onely curable which do sticke in the outward part of the body, and which are exulcerate, and so do weary the sicke, that they willingly desire the diligence of the Chyrurgians: and these tumors also do consist in those parts, which a man may cut and seare off by the rootes. Now when I name the rootes of *Cancer*, I meane as *Galen* affirmeth, those veines which are full of melancholicke bloud, and which euery way are extended toward the places lying about the tumour. But of an vnulcerate Cancre there often proceedeth an vlcerate tumour, when as in processe of time the humour doth putrifie, and the disease is couched in the vessels of the body, or else when it is stirred and made worse by medicines vnaduisedly ministred. This exulcerate Cancre of all other is thought to be most vile, because it doth altogether resist the true cure, which attempteth and worketh all thinges to bring the sicke member vnto health; for this tumour, to cure it perfectly and absolutely, doth require gnawing, sharpe, and vehement medicines: howbeit by such remedies, as we haue said, it is the more prouoked and stirred to anger, & therfore it cannot be, that it should either be lenified, or cured by thē. It shall therefore be sufficient to hinder the increasing of vnulcerate Cancres, which as yet do occupy the outward parts of the body, especially those which be great and inueterate, withdrawing our skill from any perfect cure, which thing *Hippocrates* also admonished vs in his former Aphorisme. For those tumours which do weary the sicke without exulceration, *Galen* also hath called them secret and inward Cancres, wherein both their vehement heate and their great pulse or beating, do threaten or foretell exulceration to ensue. The cure of a Cancre which is not yet vlcerate, but newly begun, hath three principall intentions,

Aph.38.lib.6

What Cancre must be rooted out, and what not.

An exulcerate Cancre worst of all.

What things do foretell exulceration.

Curatio Cancri non vlcerati.

tions.1.The first is to stop the generation of the melancholick humour. 2.The second is to empty out the melancholious humour dispersed throughout the whole body.3.The third is to digest the humour which possesseth the affected member, and to strengthen and confirme the diseased place. The first intention is finished by a iust and due obseruation of that kind of diet, which is before described in the chapters *de Scirrho legitimo*.But among other things this is chiefly and principally to be obserued, namely that such nourishments be giuen to the diseased, as haue vertue to refrigerate and moisten, and which do engender good and slender iuyce, as are these; the iuyce of Barley steeped in water and pressed,fishes of grauelly places,birds of all kindes,saue those which liue in fenny grounds, the yolkes of egs, but specially of rere egs, (which the Græcians call ῥόφυτα) and other things of that sort. But if any extreme heate shall infect the aggrieued place, and yet without a feuer, you may safely giue him heifers milke, from the which the butter is taken, or else the whey of milke. Pot-herbes also which haue a coole and moisting nature,as Mallowes, Orach,Spinage, and when time seruetb,Gourds:Citrons also and Borage may be giuen him in meate. The second scope(which is to purge the whole body from that melancholy humour,whereof this euill proceedeth)is accomplished by the applying of purging medicines, which are appointed to euacuate melancholie, whereof you may finde plenty in the Chapter of *Scirrhus*: amongst the which *Epithymum* (which the Romanes call *Inuolucrum*) as a present remedie,doth obtaine the preheminence, wherof you must take foure drammes steeped in the whey of milke,or in *Mulsa*, (as *Galen* cõmandeth *lib.14.Meth. med.*) But this quantity of *Epithymum*, or somewhat more,must be offered euery third day, that the melancholicke humour which is gathered together in the veines, and causeth the generation of Cancre, may by little and little be emptied and purged out, because it is impossible to euacuate all at one time. But we cannot alwaies prohibite the fluxe, lest afterward the like humour be engendered in the body, and compact together in the veines. The purging therefore of the antecedent matter must be attempted at the beginning, as it were by turnes, by the applying of some simple medicine: afterward (if the matter so requireth, and the ministring of simples doth little auaile) you may vse the helpe of some compound remedies, as is that medicine of *Galen* dedicated for the purging of melancholie,which consisteth of two & thirty simples,or *Hiera Ruffi*,or *Hiera Auicennæ*,which is made of blacke *Helleborus*. But you must not desist from those former rehearsed purgations, vntill the whole melancholious humor which is stuffed in the veines be brought out,and vntill the member which is beset with this cancrous tumor,be throughly reduced to his natural state.But if nothing do let it,as age & strength, it shall not be amisse in these Cancres to let bloud,and then to purge(as we haue said before:)and if they be women,you must labour to purge menstruis,if they be not aboue fiftie yeares old(as *Galen* hath taught vs *lib.2 ad Glauconem.*) This second indication (saith *Galen*) is the first and chiefe of all, for that which is put in the first place, doth rightly chalenge the second degree. The generall manifestation therefore(saith he)of the cure of a Cancre consisteth in the speedy emptying out of that humor whereof this euill groweth, and in the prohibition and

Primus scopus.

Victus ratio tenuis sit & probi succi.

Secundus scopus.

Humoris melancholici vacuatio.

Epithymum.

Hiera Ruffi.

Hiera Auicennæ.

Sanguinis missio.

Lib.14.meth. medendi.

ſtopping thereof, and to foreſee, (if it be poſſible) that this melancholious humour be not collected in the veines by the meanes of another. But if that thing cannot be brought to paſſe, you muſt euacuate the humour by turnes, now ſome and then ſome: and you muſt alſo endeuour to ſtrengthen the member, leſt the abundance of the humors do plentifully flow vnto it. 3. The third intention, which is generall to all ſuch diſeaſes coming of the flowing of humours, doth will vs to digeſt the humour which lurketh in the affected member, and to roborate the ſame, leſt the humours abundantly haue acceſſe thereunto: moreouer you muſt appoint a conuenient time to repell that which is flowne, and that in the beginning, as well in the very time of purging, as before; but now when the whole body is throughly purged, then may you lawfully endeuour to digeſt, and if there went before but a ſmal & meane purging, then you muſt apply ſome remedie which hath a mixed faculty, that is to ſay, which can both repreſſe and digeſt. Now, that we may iuſtly accompliſh theſe intentions, we muſt make choiſe of thoſe medicines which are of a meane force, and of a gentle quality, for ſuch remedies are moſt conuenient for theſe diſeaſes. For thoſe which cary with them a weake and feeble power, do worke no effect (as *Galen* ſaith) but are eaſily ouercome: but ſuch remedies as are ſtrong and mighty, do vehemently either digeſt or thruſt backe the thinne bloud which lieth in the veines: but the groſſe and melancholike parts, which we haue likened before to the dregges of wine, they neither purge foorth nor repreſſe, but rather do make them more obſtinate and more hard to be diſſolued and diſcuſſed. Therefore to cure theſe Cancres but yet beginning, you muſt vſe medicines of a meane and moderate ſtrength, which neither for their imbecillity can be vanquiſhed, nor for the vehemency can mightily thicken the bloud. Furthermore you muſt apply (as it is ſaid) ſuch medicines as are gentle, and which do not gnaw or bite: becauſe the malignity of the euill through ſuch vehement medicines is ſtirred and prouoked, & made more fierce and ſauage (as we commonly terme it.) But when the matter whereof theſe Cancres do come, is for the moſt part groſſe, and thicke, and diſobedient to reſolution, and partner alſo with many other vicious humours, we ſhall deale ſufficiently in this caſe (eſpecially when we feare the danger of Chyrurgery, & that the euill cannot otherwiſe be cured) if we by the vſe of the former remedies, which are made of burnt & waſhed mettals (as *Galen* counſelleth) ſhall ſtop and hinder their growing and increaſing, eſpecially if they be great tumors; or elſe after the opinion of *Auicen*, if we ſeeke to defend the frõ vlceration. For the which intentions, *Galen lib. 2. ad Glaucon.* doth greatly commend the iuyce of Nightſhade, & that medicine which is made of *Phompholygos*, or that which conſiſteth of *Chalcites* cõmonly called *Diapalma*. Therefore *Theodoricus* alſo for the ſame purpoſe, appointed the ointment named *Diapõpholygos*, which is made of oile of Roſes, of white waxe, ana. ℥.v. of the iuice of red Pomegranats, & of Nightſhade ana. ℥.iiij. of Ceruſe waſhed, ℥ij. of lead burnt and waſhed, of *Phompholygos*, which is commonly called *Tuthia*, ana. ℥.j. of Frankinſence, ℥.ß. *Galen* alſo reporteth *libro primo de compoſitione pharmacorum ſecundum locos*, which booke is intituled of the ancient interpreter *Myanis*, a certaine ointment inuented of *Apollonius* for vlcers appearing in the

Tertius ſcopus.

Quod aptum medicamentũ cancri. Lib. 14. Ther.

Succi Solani, Diapompholygos. Diaphenicon ſeu diapalma. Vnguentum Diapompholygos Theodorici.

the head which the Greekes call *Achorae*: which oyntment he affirmeth to be very effectuall against the cancrous tumours. The medicine is this: ℞. of oile of Roses, or of vnripe Oliues, *Hemina*, which the Greekes call *Cotyle*, viz. ℥.vij.ß. which must be infused or put into a leaden mortar, and stirred vp and downe with a leaden ladle, or else brayed with a leaden pestill so long till it waxe thicke and blacke resembling the very colour of lead: then beate by it selfe *Lithargyrum lib.*1, of Ceruse as much, and commixe them with the oile, and make an ointment. Moreouer how great the force of lead is in all such cancrous dispositions, especially that which is burnt and washed, all men may sufficiently know, which haue had some experience thereof, and which haue studiously perused those things which *Galen libro nono de simplicium medicamentorum facultate*, doth write of lead, which he himselfe calleth in Greeke *Molybdos*. For this cancrous disease *Paulus* and *Auicen* do greatly commend the Emplaister made of sea Crabbes, especially if it be mingled with an equall quantity of the scourings of Brasse. Take therefore of sea Crabs burned, and of the offall of brasse an euen portion, beate them to flower and strew thē vpon the tumour, or else lay on the ashes of the Crabbes with a searce cloath or cerate. But the same *Auicen* willeth to plucke vp these little cancres hard by the rootes, or else to cut them off, and then to wring and crush out the thicke bloud on euery side, and afterward seare the place with some hote instrument. For this doth dissipate the relictes of the matter, and consumeth them, it strengtheneth the member and stoppeth the fluxe of bloud. *Galen* also before *Auicen* his time, did allow that cancres might sometime be cured by Chyrurgery. But truly although *Galen* and *Auicen* do permit this manuall cure by Chyrugery, yet to auoide the danger of immoderate fluxe of bloud and of vlceration, yea and of the life of the sicke, omitting those things, we ought to follow the prescript rule of curing, which is onely accomplished by gentle and milde medicines, as a more safe way and lesse troublesome, and to content our selues with that onely methode: because that if such a cancrous tumour which is growne to a mightie bignesse, should be cut round about in those places which are ioyned to the whole parts, the danger of immoderate profusion of bloud would straight follow, by reason of the greatnesse of the vessell and widenesse of the arteries, which parts (saith *Galen*) if you should take and binde them with cordes, the other members by reason of their neare acquaintance would be troubled and greatly grieued. Moreouer *Celsus* sayth, that although *carcinomata* be cut off, and brought to a scarre, yet they will returne againe, and giue occasion of death. But if you intend to seare off the rootes of this euill, yet truely you cannot do this neither without hurting of the next parts, especially if you make exustion neare vnto the principall members. Great Cancres therefore, and those which are inueterate must neither rashly be burned with any instrument, nor cut off with a penknife, but rather handled gently and mildly (as we haue said before.) For many men not by the applying of any forcible or vehement medicines to take away this euill, but by the onely ministring of easie and gentle remedies, which can as it were please or delight, haue so hindered the tumours, that they could not attaine vnto any perfect age or ripenesse. Now followeth the

Appolonij medicamentum.
The force of lead is marvellous in cancred tumors.
Paulus lib.4. ex Archigene.
Lib.14. Meth. med.
Chyrurgery not rashly to be vsed in cancres.
Lib.5.
Capita curationis Cancri non vlcerati.

ſumme of the cure of *Cancer non vlceratus*, which is yet in beginning, and
1 doth occupie the outward parts of the body, briefly in theſe words. 1. Inpri-
mis in a Cancre which is but newly begun, and which conſiſteth of no very
thicke humour, nor cauſeth the veines to ſwell greatly, purge out the melan-
cholicke humour which cauſeth this euill vniuerſally throughout the whole
bodie. 2. If age and ſtrength do ſuffer it, cut a veine in the elbow, and draw
2 out as much bloud as need requireth. 3. Afterward miniſter to the ſicke ſuch
3 medicines as can purge melancholie downeward: in the beginning let them
be gentle and eaſie, but afterward ſomewhat vehement, increaſing their force
by little and little. 4. If the purging of menſtruis in women before fiftie yeares
4 of age, or if hemorrhoides both in them and in men be ſuppreſſed that
bloud aboundeth not at times now and them, you muſt prouoke them by all
meanes poſſible. 5. In the meane time appoint vnto the ſicke a thinne diet
5 which can engender good iuyce, and cauſe no melancholicke bloud. 6. If you
6 cannot auoide it, but that a groſſe and melancholious humour be gathered
together in the veines, you muſt euacuate the ſame by turnes, both with ſimple
and compound medicines. But theſe former Aphoriſmes do pertaine vnto the
7 Phyſition: now we will declare the duty of a Chyrurgiã. 7. Apply vnto the affe-
cted member both before purging, and in the very time of purging, ſuch me-
dicines as can repell, and driue backe: but when the body is vniuerſally pur-
ged, then vſe digeſtiue remedies, but let them be ſuch as are of a moderate
8 ſtrength and of a gentle nature. 8. Therefore miniſter to the aggrieued place
iuyce of Nightſhade, or the medicine made of *Pompholygos*, or that which
9 conſiſteth of *Calcites*, commonly called *Diapalma*, and other remedies of that
ſort. 9. But if by the art of Chyrurgery you dare enterpriſe the cure of *Cancer*,
you muſt firſt (taking the Phyſitions counſell) purge forth the melancholicke
humour, and then cut the corrupted tumour cleane off, and ſuffer a
good quantity of bloud to come forth, and wring
the thicke bloud out of the adioyned parts,
and afterward cure the diſeaſe af-
ter the manner of other
vlcers.

The end of the fift Booke.

THE SIXTH BOOKE, CONTAINING THE CVRE OF THE DISEASE CALLED MORBVS GALLICVS.

CHAP. I.

Of the diuerse names of the griefe which I minde to speake of, and where it had beginning.

HAuing promised to write of all the infirmities in mans body, and now spying many faults in the first print and in the second, I will performe my promise, and amend the faults escaped in all the bookes, for the benefit of my countrey: and being preuented by the Printer, this Booke was left out, wherein is contained a grieuous paine and trouble, which doth reigne in all the world at this day, in great fury and raging manner: in so much that it spareth none of what degree or calling soeuer they be of, (if they seeke for it) be they Kings, Lords, or Ladies, it searcheth them. This griefe hath gotten many names, and so many as come to my memory I wil rehearse, and where they were first begotten. First, the Spaniardes borrowed it of the Indians, and brought it home in stead of their gold, and afterward *Charles* the eight, King of France, who was a man of great power, and delighted much in shedding of bloud, sparing neither man, woman, nor child; in so much that he spoiled a great part of Italy, and subdued the Dukedome of Millan, with great hurt, ruine and spoile to all the common wealth of Florence: and at the last he came to Rome and Naples with his whole hoast, spoiling all as he went with great cruelty: and for his hire, this disease began first to shew it selfe plentifully among his people, and specially because his soldiers were much giuen to venerie. The Frenchmen at that siege got the buttons of Naples (as we terme them) which doth much annoy them at this day. But the first finding of this grieuous sicknesse, was brought into Spaine, by *Columbus* at his coming home, so that all Christendome may curse that King and *Columbus*. This griefe at the first was so extreme, cruell and so mercilesse, that it molested those which were infected therewith, euen the head, eyes, nose, palate of the mouth, skinne, flesh, bones,

ligaments, and all the inward parts of their bodies. Then *Columbus* trauelled againe, and brought with him litle gold, but all his men were well infected with this griefe: in so much that the Physitions in those daies did not know what to make of the griefe, nor how to helpe the people. So for want of knowledge many were spoiled. After (as I told you before of the siege of Naples) the Spaniards for friendship they bare to the Frenchmen, sent to them of their cuttizans infected with this griefe, minding to let them haue some of their iewels, which they brought out of the Indian countrey. The Frenchmen (not knowing their kind hearts) fel in loue with them, and (being rauished with their beauty) dealt with them to their great cost and trouble to this day. Now to the variety of the names: First, the Italians call it *Morbus Gallicus*, and some call it *Variolam Gallicum*, because it first appeared among the Frenchmen at the siege before named. The French call it *Scabiem*, or *Morbum Italicum*, because they had the victory, & for that they had this sicknes. And they also call it, *Scabiem Hispanicam*, because the Spaniards first brought it out of the Indies. The Germans call it *Menium*; why they should so terme it I know not wel, vnlesse *Menium* do signifie the priuy parts infected with this disease. Some of them call it also *Scabiem Hispanicam*. In Spaine they name it *Morbum Neapolitanum*: the cause I told you before. They of Naples call it also *Patnysa paradneptur*, that is, the proper name at home in India. Some interpret it *Violentum morbum*, or thus; a great, foule and vehement disease. Other some call it *Pendenlagra*, because it first infecteth the priuy parts both of men and women: and we in our country call it the French disease. But howsoeuer it be called it skilleth not, so that we know how to helpe it, which I minde to declare hereafter by Gods grace.

CHAP. II.

Of the signes.

BVt first I meane to declare the signes how you shall know those that are infected with this griefe, and then the nature of this French disease; as by the effects following it may appeare; and after the cause thereof is shewed to be nothing else but that contagion, it resteth that we now say somewhat of the signes, whereby you may vnderstand and perceiue those which are infected with this disease: and because signes do proceede and are taken either of the nature of the affects, or of the causes of the sicknesse, or also of some symptomates or consequents thereof; and because it chiefly beginneth in the Liuer, and cannot be looked into, let vs not looke for any signe as *Analogia morbi*. for all signes that can giue certaine testimony and shew thereof, are contained vnder the affects, and consequently of the disease. Of these there be two sorts, some are *Symptomates*, and some be *Morbi*, or affects of nature. *Symptomata* be these, falling of haires, ach in the head and members, and small infection of the skin. Those which I call *Morbi*, be most sore and vehement vlcers, tumours of the shins, and other parts of the body, with pustules, &c: which follow this disease, euen as the shadow waiteth vpon the sunne. But because long diseases haue their times, to wit, beginning, increase, state, and declination, and this French disease is one kind of long disease, great reason there is why it should haue his distinct times, and according to the diuersitie of those times there

happeneth

happeneth diuerse *Symptomata*. For one kind of symptomates happen at the beginning of this disease, another kind to the state or vigour,&c. And therefore I will deuide all symptomates into two sorts, to wit, those that follow and properly belong vnto this grief,beginning at those which follow the same being inueterate & confirmed; & these next ensuing be of the first sort. Straight waies after a yong man is infected, he feeleth in himselfe a certaine lassitude 1
or wearines come vpon al his members without any outward occasion,as walking,or mouing,&c.which foresheweth this cruell disease. and happeneth vnto them which are most strong & lusty before. There is perceiued also a lumpish heauines in the whole body, a dulnesse, faintnes, lithernes ,or slownes to moue in all the members. The occasion of this, is the infection of the naturall spirits, which are the immediate instruments of the faculty sustaining and giuing liuelines to the whole body: by whose infection,the body waxeth more heauy and wearisome then it was before. Moreouer, there is a certaine paine 2
or ach, which wandreth throughout all the body and parts thereof. After this lassitude of the body, the head aketh: and againe by and by,it leaueth the head and goeth into the shoulders, and from the one shoulder into the other. Out of the shoulder it fleeteth into the legs,the one of thē or the other, and in like sort may it be said of all other members. The cause of this is a certaine vapor which beginneth to rise vp from the liuer. The euill humor of this affect is not yet begottē: but by reason of that feruent heat of the liuer caused by infectiō, there is engendred a certaine small vapor,whereof do grow these wandring or fleeting pains. Thirdly,whē the disease hath begun,& hath a litle preuailed,the 3
colour of the face is changed;you shall see the most beautiful,liuely,and cleane cōplexion of the skin,in three or foure daies space changed into a much worse course then before; and what maner of motion this is, I cannot tell. But certes their face differeth not a little from that is was before, the colour is altered,the liuely spirits in the eies be changed,the mouth, lips,& cheekes sometimes are changed from their naturall comelines. And marke you this(which may much further your iudgement & knowledge therein)there is vnder their eies a wan-coloured or blewish circle,such as appeareth in women when they haue their naturall purgation, or before it. Noting and finding these things in him,consider with your selfe whether he passed measure in drinking, in watching, or sleeping, or haue vexed his mind with care; & if it happen not through one of these, thē may you iudge he is taken with this disease. Fourthly,there is wont to 4
breake out a notable heate in the palmes of the hands, and the soles of the feete,yea euen in the Winter time. This appeareth through vaporous spirits, taking their beginning of the liuer, which being infected, the face also is affected, and the extreme parts or vttermost members are fore distempered with heate. Fiftly, yon may adde a drousinesse, or a disposition to sleepe oftentimes interrupted: and this is caused through a turbulent vapour, which 5
is increased through the infection and heate. Sixtly,you may adde heauinesse, 6
and sadnesse of the mind: for though a pleasant and merrie nature should be infected with this disease, yet he shall straightway be sad, and giuen to pensiuenesse, and euen grone therewith. This infection increasing, burneth the bloud, which sendeth vp troublous and noysome vapours vnto the head,

7 and ſeate of the mind. Seuenthly, the patient ſometime hath a feauer, becauſe of
8 the heate which is about the diſtempered parts: but this ſeldome chanceth: The eight is the appearance of ſome putrified matter, and this is *ſignum Pathognomicum*, a ſigne to diſcouer the maladie. Therefore as oftentimes as you ſhall ſee this putrified matter, yet ſmall in quantity, about the priuie place, and know no occaſiõ to haue gone before, you may pronounce it to be the Frẽch diſeaſe. And what is the reaſon? This *caries* or matter cannot happen but of two cauſes: either becauſe the corruption of the womans matrice hath eaten and gnawne the fine skinne of the yard; or elſe becauſe the contagion is communicated and imparted vnto the Liuer by the naturall ſpirits, and the Liuer expelleth thoſe infected ſpirits and ſanious matter vnto the priuy parts. Of this
9 *caries*, how it may be knowne when it cometh of *Morbus Gallicus*, and when it is cauſed otherwiſe, I will ſpeake afterwards. In the ninth place ſucceedeth *Bubo*, and that not great, as thus; A yong man had to do with a woman, after which act there came vpon him a heauineſſe of his members, and a ſadneſſe of the mind, and after two or three daies there appeareth *Bubo paruus*, that is to ſay, a ſmall tumor in the armeholes or ſhare, which is painefull, not growne to any greatneſſe: this ſignifieth that the diſeaſe is yet gentle, and in the beginning, but the cauſe of this is the greatneſſe by the purging places of the Liuer,
10 and therefore the Liuer disburdeneth himſelfe by ſending the diſeaſe vnto them, and hereof cometh *Bubo*. The later ſigne of this diſeaſe at the beginning is *Gonorrhoia Gallica*, which bewrayeth vnto vs the nature of this Proteus. After the firſt coming of this diſeaſe, for the ſpace of forty yeares, there was not ioyned with it *defluuium capillorum*: but the nature of the diſeaſe is to be changeable and diuers, for *Gonorrhoia Gallica* hath not bene ſeene aboue theſe fiue and thirty yeares. Therefore we may looke for new and ſtrange *Symptomates*, I pray God they be light and eaſie to be holpen. Now how this *Gallica Gonorrhoia* is to be diſcerned from that which is not *Gallica*, I will hereafter declare, to auoid tediouſneſſe in this place. The cauſe of this *Gonorrhoia* is *labefactatio ſpirituum*, weakning and ſubuerſion of the ſpirits which rule the naturall faculties or vertues of the teſticles & ſpermaticke veſſels, by reaſon whereof the ſtrength of thoſe parts is diſſolued: ſo that they cannot keepe their ſeed but it cõtinually droppeth forth. But now let vs ſpeak of thoſe ſignes which are appropriated to the diſeaſe in his progreſſe or confirmation: and firſt, of hard puſtules in the whole body, and the ſame grieuous and deformed in the head and beard, ſometime with ſanious matter, ſometimes without it. And know you, the diſeaſe cannot be aboue the age of fiue or ſixe moneths at the moſt when theſe *ſymptomates* appeare. And if the diſeaſe beginneth in the Winter, it ſhall bring forth his cruſts in the beginning of Sommer: if it begin in the Spring time, his cruſts appeare in Autumme, &c.

CHAP. III.

Of the cauſes of the breaking out of Puſtules.

1 AND the chiefe cauſes of this breaking out of puſtules are theſe: Firſt, be-
2 cauſe the matter infected is ſent thither from the liuer. Secondly, becauſe the parts infected do not digeſt and expell (by way of tranſpiration) his excre-

ments, and therefore they remaine in it still; and grow vnto crusts. The third 3
signe of this disease confirmed, is callous vlcers about the priuy parts, which
either be callous at the beginning, or become callous afterward: and there-
fore as often as you see the *caries* in the priuie parts healed, and that there re-
maine *Calli* or hardnesse about the place where it was, be you assured that
this is *Gallicus Morbus* confirmed. Therefore I wish that you remember this,
when you take in hand the cure; for those hardnesses be most manifest and cer-
taine signes of this disease confirmed. The fourth is hanging downe of the *v-* 4
uula; the *vuula* hanging downe in the further part of the mouth, and if it do so,
much moisture cometh to the mouth, by reason whereof happeneth *raucedo*
vocis, a great hoarsenesse of the voice. Therefore open their mouth, when you
shall heare them speake thus hoarsely, and you shall perceiue the *vuula* full of
moisture, and (if the patient haue no catarrhe) say that it is *morbus Gallicus* con-
firmed. The cause of the humectation or moistnesse of the *vuula*, is the natu-
rall spirits infected and changed, which is caried with the bloud of the veines,
throughout the whole body, and because it is so infected and weakned, there-
fore the function thereof is weake and feeble in the stomach, and maketh euil
digestion. Therefore the same stomach aboundeth with fleame in the braine,
and it doth not his function. Therefore in the braine there is engendred *Mu-*
cus, that is, a skinned cold moisture in the veines, by reason of the weakenesse
of the spirits, engendred of flegmaticke boud, with vnnaturall humours. If
they be afterward by accesse of heate adust, the disease becommeth very grie-
uous and vehement. No maruaile therefore, if this abundance of moist hu-
mours fall to the *vuula*, and be pressed downe with moisture: and if the bloud
be sharper, then the skals breake forth in the skinne, the rootes of the haires
be consumed, so that they fall: it exulcerateth the mouth, the palate, and the
nose: it perisheth the scalpe of the braine, and is the occasion of many other
Symptomates. The cause of hoarsenes of the voice, is humidity and excrements
which do stop and let the waies of the voice. Fiftly, you may adde the tumors 5
of the glandules in the further part of the mouth; and when you see this, be
you out of doubt, that the infection of the disease is now confirmed. For the
infected matter is now sent vnto the head, which is expelled by his *emunctory* 6
places, that is, glandules. And sixtly, adde thereunto the corruption of the
palate of the mouth, and of the teeth: and when you see these, looke not to
any greater signes of the confirmation of this euill. In the seuenth place I put 7
outragious and continuall paine, making the patient euen to crie out: this
beginneth at the two and twentieth houre of the artificiall day, and continueth
not fully vntill midnight; and these most orgueilous and extreme paines are
caused of a very moist and maligne vapour, which riseth vp from the liuer, and
from the excrements be acquired and gathered by euill nourishment in euery
part, & especially aboue the *periostion*, that is, the rims which couer the bones
of euery part. And in the eight place, I remember corruption of the bones 8
in the head, and in the armes, before there appeare any vlcer. How you may
know the bones to be corrupted, the skin remaining whole and sound, I 9
will hereafter shew. In the ninth place you may adde tumours *atheromatous*,
that is, tumours which yeeld a tough slimie matter. These of some writers are

called *Bumbata* or *Gummata*, by a similitude takē of trees. For in *Morbo Gallico* tumors do grow like the gummes which issue out of trees, and this happeneth either because the party himselfe is not well nourished, and heapeth vp vndigested excrements, or else because the liuer communicateth and sendeth
10 vnto it infected matter. We may adde here in the tenth and last place, maligne vlcers in all the parts of the body, which vlcerate the whole skinne, head, and all parts, through abundance of offensiue matter. To conclude, there succeed this disease sometime their effects, as *Asthma*, which when it is come vpon a patient, it declareth him to be past cure. Therefore neuer put such a one to paine by medicines or other meanes, for you shall neuer heale him. Now will I teach you in processe of time following, the wayes how to asswage and cure all the *Symptomates*, which although they be very hard and rebellious to remedy, yet I vndertake vnto you that I haue found out such waies and meanes by medicines, as will assuredly, speedily, and without danger (as much as is possible) helpe and cure them, by Gods grace.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.

NOw after we haue declared the names, nature, causes, and signes of this affect, it remaineth that we proceed and declare also the cure. And vnderstand you, that the wayes of curing thereof are manifold and diuers, because the nature thereof is not comprehended in any method of curing, but was alwayes opened by the experiments of Empericks; for *Hap* and *Hardy* haue giuen vs medicines against this disease. And because diuerse medicines haue bene found out by chance, therefore there be diuerse waies of curing this affect, of the which one is light and easie, that is, great mouing and exercise of the body, which is in yong men, strong and lusty, able to endure sweate, either in wrastling, leaping, darting, dancing, or playing at tennise, or such like, hath bin a sufficient remedie for this euill in the beginning: for by it the heate so groweth, and the excrements thereby be so abundantly expelled, that the spirits be renewed and made more pure and apt to ouercome the infection: and therefore it is not to be maruelled, if by this meanes the liuer sometimes purgeth himselfe, when the disease hath taken no deepe roote in him. Why doth *Febris putrida* cease and take an end without medicine? Because perdy, it is not in the sound parts of the body. But in *Febris hectica* the patients are healed by medicines alwaies which coole and moisten, because the affect consisteth in the sound parts. Semblable, in *Morbo Gallico*, when the disease is in the beginning, and not confirmed or fixed in the inward parts it is possible that the spirits may be restored of themselues; for this affect is in the spirits. Therefore to returne to our purpose, some in deede by procuring a great sweate haue bene cured, but this was in the beginning of the disease, in very strong bodies, and yet it hath not had in all such successe neither.

CHAP. V.

Of Fumigations.

THere is another way that Empericks haue vsed to cure this disease, and that is *per Suffumigia*. The Ancients cured indeed diuerse affects by suffumigations,

migations: but the Emperickes trying all waies to helpe this effect, at length found out an excellent Suffumigation, *ex Cinaberi*, yet this oftentimes hurteth: albeit it is counted amongst the waies of curing this disease, and sometime doubtlesse it healeth them.

CHAP. VI.

Of purging Morbus Gallicus.

HAuing thus farre proceeded in this matter, we will now come vnto the first scope proposed, I meane euacuation of the matter present *in substantia*, wherewith is ioyned *feruor*, out of the which groweth a hote distemper and excrementous matter; first therefore naturall, and that whensoeuer you go about to cure this disease: for the very Emperickes do that euer at the beginning of their cure. And because the present humours may offend either in quantity, or in quality, or in both, you ought to vse diligent consideration therein. For if they offend in quantity onely, first we must giue him a lenitiue medicine, either of *Cassia*, or *sirupe Ros. sol.* and after that open a veine, that the ebullition of bloud in the liuer may so be tempered & asswaged. Secondly, abate and diminish the matter, which requireth first to be altered by medicines, and afterward to be expelled. Thirdly, for as much as the disease happeneth by contagion, which contagiō infecteth the liuer, vnto the which as their fountaine all the humours haue their recourse, it behoueth reuulsion to be made from the inward parts vnto the outward, as in bloudletting it is. I omit the greatnesse of the disease, which also indicateth Phlebotomy: but the three first onely we take as indications of bloudletting, and the veine that is to be opened is *Hepatica*, in the right arme, because it is direct vnto the parts affected. But vnderstand that sometime we may not vse this euacuation, because in the beginning of the disease (for the most part) the patient is wont to haue *Bubones*, which *Bubones* because they come from the liuer, expelling the superfluous or vnnaturall matter vnto his emunctory place, if we should cut the veine the patient hauing them vpon him, we might haply thereby diuert and turne backe the matter againe vnto the liuer, to the danger of the patient. So that in this case it is determined among learned men, that a veine ought not to be opened, lest the matter (as I sayd before) should be drawne againe vnto the liuer, and the disease made more dangerous and painefull.

CHAP. VII.

Of the preparation of humors.

AFter the patient hath bene let bloud, as his strength may permit, the time well seruieth to prepare his humours: and for as much as in the beginning of the disease, there is not alwayes the same mixture of humours that is in the end, in which there is *pituita* and *exusta materia*, this *pituita* ought to be prepared, first by those things which haue power to attenuate and scoure, and to open obstructions, of which medicines you shall finde plenty in the former bookes, for the auoiding of cholericke, flegmatick and melancholike humors and mixt humors, and then let vs come to the cure.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the certaine and true medicine for the diſeaſe.

IN the cure of this diſeaſe, after euacuation is made, the ſtate and temperature of the inward parts by conuenient meanes altered, the body prepared by the medicines before ſufficiently, and purged, and afterward confirmed and comforted againe as before we haue declared: if we ſee the diſeaſe continue ſtill, and not yeeld to all this miniſtration, we ought then to come vnto that which maketh the true and certaine alteration of the inward parts, and that of it ſelfe hath a knowne vertue, both to alter and reſtore the Liuer to his naturall eſtate: and this is the decoctiõ of *Lignũ Guaicum*, otherwiſe called *Lignum Indicum*, and *Lignum Sanctum*, which medicine was found by chance, and confirmed by great experience to cure this diſeaſe, the patient obſeruing a very ſlender diet, and drinking the decoction, in which there is a vertue to attenuate, and power to ouercome this diſeaſe.

CHAP. IX.

What ſort of that wood is to be choſen as beſt for this purpoſe.

NOw ſithence it is determined that for this purpoſe to vſe this wood is beſt, it is neceſſary to ſhew alſo the maner of vſing this wood, concerning
1 which you ought to obſerue theſe things. Firſt what maner wood, and what
2 3 maner rind is to be choſen for the beſt. Secondly the preparation: Thirdly the way of giuing it. Fourthly the order of diet to be vſed in miniſtring it. Firſt
4 concerning the election or choiſe of the wood, I ſay it is not to be doubted, alwaies to chooſe that which is of moſt vertue, and that is *Lignum Sanctum*, which is yellowiſh and fatte, hauing no blacknes in it: and if we cannot haue this, let vs vſe *Guaicum*, whereof there is more plenty. Moreouer, in both kinds of this wood the meane ſort is beſt: we may haue it of a tree that is old, or of a yong tree, or of a tree of middle age. I call that the meane ſort, which is not altogether blacke, nor for the greater part white, neither ſlender, nor groſſe. I chooſe this middle ſort, becauſe it hath more vnctuoſity and oyliſhneſſe in it then the other which is growne vnto age. For if the ſame vnctuoſity doth more abound in the yonger wood, it is more inconcoct and excrementous. Moreouer, we ought to chooſe that which is beſt in reſpect of the diſeaſe, to wit, in a confirmed diſeaſe, the moſt vertufull and efficatious, as is *Lignum ſanctum* of middle age: but if the diſeaſe be not ſo greatly confirmed, but light and eaſie, we may vſe that which is of a more weaker operation, both in *genere* and in *ſpecie*. Furthermore, regard muſt be had alſo of the patient his age, for in an old body, the old plant is moſt conuenient: for one that is yong, and ſtrong, the middle ſort is to be choſen. Fiftly, in chooſing this wood, we muſt conſider of the time of the yeare: for in a cold ſeaſon, as in the Winter,
5 we ought to vſe the hotter, ſharper, and bitterer kind, which we may iudge by our ſenſes: in the Summer time, that which is leſſe ſharpe, and leaſt of all bitter, either of an old or yong tree. And the markes whereby we may diſcerne the beſt from the other, of the wood of the old tree, which hath in

it

it great quantity of blacknes, are these: it is very bigge, and hath a grosse and thicke rinde, which so cleaueth vnto the wood, that vnneath it can with a knife be separated. For as often as you see the rind to come easily from the wood, it hath bene moistened with salt water, and is of the worst sort. In the middle sort of this wood, all these things appeare in a meane. Besides this, I would wish you to rape a little of this wood, and if in so doing you perceiue not a smell proceede from it, you may be bold to say, that it is either very old, or else corrupt. The third signe to choose this wood by, is, if in raping it appeareth oylish, so that the dust thereof doth somewhat glister. Fourthly, you must taste of that you haue raped in your mouth, and if it biteth the tongue forthwith, and afterward yeeldeth a bitternesse, it is good. Fiftly, take and rape it, and if there appeareth in the substance thereof manifest pores and small holes after you haue raped it, and the superficies remaineth not equall and sound, it is of the worse sort: and if you make your decoction thereof, it is cleare, and neither bitter nor sharpe in taste. Sixthly, it ought to be chosen very ponderous & heauie. Seuenthly, see that it be such as hath not the whitish colour enclining to dimmednesse, neither hauing the veines of the white parte blacke, but greenish, and of dimme pale colour: for if it be otherwise, it is a token of corruption. The last proofe of this wood is. to boile the rapings thereof, and if the decoction be thicke, very bitter, and sharpe, it is good. The signes of goodnesse in the rind are these: First, that it be taken of a tree which is old, or of middle age, for that which cometh of a small bough is naught; and we know when it cometh of a middle age or old tree, for it hath great peeces, and large cauities. Secondly it is required, that the rinde be very thicke. Thirdly that it be very hard. Fourthly that on the inside it seemeth as it were blacke, sprinckled with an ashe colour: and this is the colour of the most excellent barke. If withall in breaking it appeareth blacke but not like vnto *Ebenus*, be ye sure it is of the best sort.

CHAP. X.

Of the decoction of Guaicum.

THe wood being thus raped, we come to his boyling, which we call decoction. And touching that, we shall note that the common vse is, for euerie ounce of raped wood, to adde a pound of water. But truth it is, if we deale with a ladde or stripling of tender yeares, of hote complexion, and that in Sommer season, we must vse for euery ounce of the wood, to take one pound and a halfe of water. But the common custome is (as I said) for euery ounce of the said wood, to take one pound of water. Therefore in making the decoctō we are wont to take one pound of the raped wood, and twelue pounds of the water, except in the Sommer season when the sirupe cannot be kept: and then we take *Lignum*, ℥.vj. of water, ℔.vj. Also in the Winter time we take of the wood raped, ℔.j. ß. of water eighteene pounds. In the middle seasons or times betwixt both these, one pound of the wood, & twelue pounds of water. But you must take and macerate or infuse the wood twelue houres before, or sometimes more, sometimes lesse while. Some infuse the wood in cold water,

but I like not that way: for if you marke the difference which is betweene the decoction made after the infusion of cold water, and that which is made after the wood is infused in hote water, you shal find the last far more sharper, more bitter, and more thicker. Therefore hardly let it be infused in water which is made euen seething hote. Moreouer, I wish that you stoppe your pot very closely, and set it in a place amongst Branne, couering it vp euen vnto the middle part in the said Branne: for by this means it long time retaineth his heate. Besides this, encompasse it round about with linnen clothes, that it may be perfectly macerated, and the decoction haue his requisite strength and to be boiled in a vessell of stone, or of earth well glased within; those vessels of glasse are best of all. And note you furthermore, that this decoction may be made two diuerse wayes, to wit, by dry fire, or in *Balneo Mariæ*, which is the more excellent way: for the decoction will be farre better, and worke better effect, and sooner. Also choose your vessell hauing as small a mouth as may be, and boile your liquor therein, the top being close stopped, and keepe it in boiling continually: let it boile till halfe be wasted, as the common vse is: some will boile it till three pints be consumed, to haue it dry more. This is the rule for boiling this decoction, which when it is boiled, sometime is suffered to coole before it be strained, and some straine it whiles it is yet boyling hot, that the wood make not the decoction thicke or grosse with his substance. I thinke it no matter whether it be cleansed hote or cold, and this is the making of this first decoction. The spume or froth thereof must be gathered for that purpose, which hereafter I will declare. The second decoction is made in this wise: we take the same wood (without macerating it any more) and boile it againe in the same quantity of water (as custome is) that it boile vnto the consumption of the third part: so that of twelue pounds, after boiling there remaine eight. But in the second decoction we vse to increase the quantity of this water: for sometime we adde eighteene pounds of water, sometime fifteene; and this we are accustomed to do when we haue a patient that is giuen to drinke much. Secondly, we increase the *dosis* of the water, if it be in the Sommer season, for then the patients are compelled to drinke betweene dinner and supper. And this is to be drunke at dinner and supper, or (if need be) at any time of the day. Neuertheleſſe ye shall vnderstand, some Physitions do giue the first decoction euen at dinner and supper also, and so they make but one decoction onely: but this vse is but rare, and when they will dry vehemently. One thing I must adde, which is this, that in leane and weake persons we vse to prepare this wood to be giuen with the broth of Veale, of a Chicken, or a bird, so that the broth be not fat. It is boiled after the manner aforesaid: and this I thought necessary to let you vnderstand. Thus much may suffice the simple for making of these decoctions.

CHAP. XI.

Of making the compound decoctions of this wood.

THis *Guaicum* is boiled not onely single and by it selfe, (as I haue shewed before) but also diuerse other things in boiling are mixed and compounded

sed therewith diuersly. First I will declare vnto you those decoctions which be made of this wood most singly; afterwards others, which because they haue more things added vnto them, are called compound decoctions of this wood. The most simple or single decoction is made of the rinde of the wood, and pure water onely. And this simple decoction the best Physitions do vse, when they will make the decoction strong. The forme of making it is this. We take the same quãtity of the wood *Guaicum*, & the fome of water which is declared in the chapter before, and we adde vnto the same the barke or rind of *Guaicum*, which hath no determinate quantities; for sometime we put v. sometime 3. sometime 4. ounces vnto one pound of the wood, and for halfe an ounce of the rinde we adde 4. pounds of water: as for example, admit the quantity of the wood be 1. ℔. the quantity of the rind, ℥. ij. the quantity of water shall be 16. pounds. But when we will haue the medicine of great operation & strength, we take of the wood 1. pound, of the rinde, vj. ℥. of water, ℔. 18. we beate the rind into grosse powder, & afterward steep it in the water 24. houres, then boile we it to the consumption of the 3. part, in such wise as is said of the simple decoction. In certaine places they prepare & make this decoction with wine: the forme of preparing it is this: ℞. *Guaici*. 1. pound, *corticis eius* halfe a pound, water ℔. 18 let these be infused together according to art, afterward boile them to the consumption of 2. or 3. parts, so that 6. pounds onely of the decoction do remaine. This done, they adde thereto of strong white wine, which they boile a litle, and then straine it, and vse it as before. Sometime it happeneth (by the weaknes or vice of the patient his stomacke) that the whole decoction is cast vp againe: therefore that it may pierce the sooner, we adde wine thereto, but if the patient can receiue and retaine it without wine, it were the better way. Yet haue we another decoction of this wood which is more compounded, which is this: ℞. *ligni Guaici* ℔. j. *corticis eius* ℔. ß. *aquæ* ℔. 18. these be infused according to art, then they boile to the consumption of the 3. part: then we adde to it *Carduus benedictus*, which is much vsed, *Camedrios*, *Betonicæ*, of each of these herbs a handfull. Againe they boile it euen till the one halfe be wasted: so that of the whole decoction remaineth no more then 6. pounds. Then we adde thereto againe of wine 3. pints, and after 1. walme or 2. boyling we cleanse or straine it. ℞. the same wood, the same rind, and the same water in quantity, infuse and boile them after the same maner: then adde of Rosemary, *Fœniculi*, *Stæchadis*, *Betonicæ*, ana. M. j *Scine*, Annise, ℥. j. let these boyle to the consumption of the halfe part, so that there remaine of the liquor but 6. pounds, and thereto adde 3. pints of wine, after the maner aforesaid. Lastly, we make it another way, as thus. ℞. the same quantity of the wood and rind whereof we spake before, and adde of the rootes of *Enula campana*, of the roots of *Alchæa*, of the dry roots of *Ireos*, ana. ℥. j. of Maidenhaire, of Liquorice, *Stæchados*, ana. ℥. ß. Boile these together to the consumption of halfe, then put vnto it three pints of wine, and so the decoction is made perfect by boiling, as is aforesaid. And these be the formes and descriptions of those decoctions which are vsuall with practitioners and others. They which vse to minister these manner of decoctions, make no second decoction, but prepare some other liquor for their dinner and supper at their discretion. I my selfe haue bin

wont in this decoction to put purging medicins, and specially to those which haue such stomackes as cannot haue purging medicines. I haue vsed the foresaid compound decoctions, but not alwayes, but especially in cold griefes, as *Asthma* & coldnes of the stomack, *Sciatica*, & Palsey, in Fistulaes, & other foule sores and paines in the ioints, and in affects of the feet coming of cold distemper: in these cases I haue vsed the said decoction with good successe. But the most simple decoction, I say, doth best against *Morbum Gallicum*, so that there be no compound disease ioyned with it, then the compound decoctions are chiefly to be vsed according to the direction of them which do practise.

CHAP. XII.

Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.

BVt at what time is this decoctiō to be giuen? Certes the most meete time is the Spring time; for although we require in the working thereof, heate, sweate, and much digestion of excrements, yet the heate of Sommer is too great, the bodies are thereby resolued and made faint. Therefore the middle Spring, & the beginning of Sommer is most conuenient. Next vnto the Spring is the Autumne; as for the Sommer and Winter they be seasons vnfit for it, the one for his great heate, and the other for his excesse of cold. And if of these two I must needs chuse one, yet I would rather chuse the Winter; for in the Winter season we may haue good fires, the chamber may be made close and warme. Therefore concerning the time remember alwayes the Spring is best, the Autumme next, the Winter next, and the Sommer worst of all.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the place where this decoction is to be giuen.

WE may not conueniently giue this decoction in euery place. Our ancestors the Physitions that liued before the last 40. yeares, were wont to keepe their patients in darkenesse, as it were in a dungeon, for the space of 40. daies, pining them euen vnto bones: and they did well, so cruell, so fierce, and outragious was then this disease. But now sithence it is become more meeke and tollerable, Physitions ought not to deale so hardly with all. Therefore we keepe our patients in a chamber, where is somewhat drier ground, not open vnto the winds, the windowes closed in with paper or linnen clothes, the dores not altogether kept close.

CHAP. XIIII.

What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once.

IN measuring the quantity we obserue these things. First, how great the affect is; for if it be great and rebellious, then must a great quantity of this potion be giuen: if the affect be not great, the quantity should be lesse. Vnto a child we minister a smaller quantity then to one of full growth. Also consideration ought to be had of the complexion of the patient; if his temperament be hote, a litle quantity; if it be cold, a great quantity is to be giuen. If the stomacke be weake, we giue a very small quantity; if the stomack be strong, we giue a great quantity. This quantity is giuen (when it is large) by 2. sirups, but whē it is litle by one sirupe onely: our limits are frō ℥.iiij. vnto ℥.x. In a child, frō 4. vnto 6. ℥.

if he be strong & valiant of stomack, you may proceed to ℥.viij. In the strōgest person, the disease also being rebellious, we proceed not aboue ℥. x. and that quantity we seldome vse in any. Moreouer, you must obserue another rule, that is, to giue a greater quantity alwayes of the sirupe in the morning then in the euening, because in the morning the stomack is empty: & in the night because of sleepe, the force thereof is greater. Againe this is to be obserued, in the 1. & 2. day we giue no more, but each day once of the day, which is in the morning, and likewise in the end of the diet. But after we giue the sirupe twise a day, to wit, morning & euening, at a certen hour, without failing or breaking of time.

CHAP. XV.

How many daies this decoction is to be receiued.

THe question hath bene to giue the decoction of *Guaicum* the space of forty daies, because this *Morbus Gallicus* is *Morbus erronicus*, a lōg disease, requiring therefore a long cure. But this time serueth when the disease is in a meane betweene confirmed and beginning. If it be but *Morbus incipiens*, we scarcely prolōg the vse of this decoctō til the thirtieth day, or the fiue & twentieth day; but when the disease is inueterate, we cast not to giue it in *Veratro*, vntill the 60. day. Whereby shall we know certainly when to leaue the vse of this decoction? Truly when we see that all *Symptomata* be ceasled and gone, & if they be ceasled at the sixteene daies end, let vs leaue the vse of the drinke: if not, let vs continue it still, vntill the *Symptomata* be all gone. But if after we haue giuen it forty dayes, the *Symptomata* ceasse not, yet leaue not off as yet for all that, but continue it still, prescribing to the patient *victus nobilium*, and let him till an hundred dayes be expired drinke of the decoction, lest the disease returne, or be confirmed more. And ye shall vnderstand, there be two rebellious *Symptomates*, which if they remaine, hope you not for any perfect cure. The one sort of these be certaine callous and hard scarres, we Englisshmen terme them the buttons of Naples, for they be certaine scars like indeed vnto buttons, and except the patient continue this decoction till these be perfectly cured, it is alwaies to be feared, that the disease will againe returne. The other rebellious *Symptomata*, is *Gonorrhoia Gallica*, which if it ceasseth not through the vse of the decoction or other medicine, of which I will speake hereafter, the disease also endureth. Therefore see that after forty daies, yet they drinke one of the decoctions.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the time of giuing the decoction, and things to be obserued therein.

NOw coming to speake of the time of giuing this decoction, I say that the Physitiōs giue it in the morning before dinner, the space of three or foure houres, and for the euening after supper three houres. And if it so chanceth that we giue but one sirupe only, the time is not so much to be regarded. Moreouer, remember that the decoction ought alwaies to be takē very hote, to the end it may prouoke sweate: againe, that it ought to be receiued of the patient

lying in his bed. The sirupe being drunke, the patients do vse to sleepe vpon it, and this they must attempt to do, that it may the better be digested and distributed into the habite of the body.

CHAP. XVII.

Of things to be eschued of him that receiueth this decoction.

CHiefly *Venus* must be shut out of the doore quite, especially while this decoction is in giuing. Some by committing this act but once in this cure, haue failed of remedy through the same. There be diuellish women desirous to be handled & dealt withall, who will beautifie themselues, to inflame mens hearts to lust towards them; abandon these your company, and thrust them out of the doores and house: let none of that hue be seene in your diet; beware againe of perturbation and chafing of the mind, which to auoide, flie cards, dice, and all manner of games, which may pronoke anger, and nourish fraud and couetousnesse, which doth inflame the bloud & stirre cholericke humours.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of things to be corrected, or symptomates to be oppugned in this cure.

CErtaine accidents also in this cure are to be corrected and holpen, among the which, one is a certaine loathing of the stomacke, or disposition to vomite, called of the Latines *Nausea*. This coming vpon the palate, letteth him to receiue his potion. This is resisted and helped by mixing pleasant things with the decoction, as is some pleasant Iulep to be mixed with the decoction according to the humor which is the cause therof: some hauing a hote stomack do abhorre it; therfore let them vse in the decoction cold waters, as *Cichory*, & such like, to make it more thin. Some cannot eate their bisket, in which case we permit vnto them good common bread, made of the best floure of the best wheat. Moreouer sharpe and grieuous paines are wont to happen vnto the patients after the fourth day, or the eight day of their begun diet, vntill the fifteenth day be past; which we endeuour to qualifie and lighten two waies. First by perswading with the patient to sustaine them patiently, telling him it is the nature of working of the wood, and that they will soone be at an end, to his great commoditie and much comfort. Secondly, by fomenting the parts, and annointing thē, whereof I will speake more at large, when I treate *de doloribus*. Another inconuenience that followeth this cure, is costiuenesse, & the patient cometh into lassitude or wearinesse: this is holpen by clisters giuen euery third day. Againe some do abhor clisters: vnto such we giue once in the day of the sirupe *cum duabus radicibus* or *mellis rosacei*. And if it be such a person as wil not be scoured by common *mel rosaceum*, then in stead thereof we adde vnto the sirupe *ros. soluti*, ℥ j. Some vse to giue pils of Aloes, but *mel ros.* in my iudgmēt is best. Also otherwhiles it happeneth that the patient fainteth or swoundeth; & this happeneth after foure and twenty daies, through the slenderness of

the

the diet. Then grant him a large diet, as an egge euery day, morning and euening, or some other thing at your discretion. And otherwhiles the cause of this their faintnesse and swounding cometh, for that they are not nourished, or because they take little of their bisket, in which case (as I said) we helpe them with a draught of ale, or an egge reare. But if their stomackes will not digest bisket, let him haue good fine bread. And you shall know this weakenesse of the stomackes digestion by these signes: When either the said solutiue sirupe or clisters be giuen them, (if their stomacke be so weake) there is brought forth with it a great part of the decoction, yellowish, somewhat resembling the colour of the yolke of an egge, and somwhat thicke or troubled, in the which ye may see crummes and small peeces of the bisket swimming whole. And when this appeareth vnto you, vse a remedie for it betimes, that is, permit vnto the patient a large diet, and let him haue a lesse quantity of the decoction, with which if you do mixe also some Iulep, it is the better. These be the *Symptomata*, and the meanes to remedy them by.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Excrements.

NOw am I come to that part of my Treatise wherein I haue to speake of Excrements. And concerning this matter, first you shall vnderstand, there be two kinds of Excrements which are to be regarded and considered of. The one is *Excrementum siccum*, that is to say, the ordure, whereof I haue spoken. The other kinde of excrements whereby the body is purged, being of three sorts, is auoided sometime by vrine, sometime by sweat, sometime by purging medicines. Although (in this case) it be not necessary that the matter be purged, but that the inward affected part be altered, yet euacuation is good by the way of vrine: very good it were indeed, but no Physitions haue attempted that way. For (be it neuer so good) they haue thought it inconuenient to send such hote matter vnto the reines, especially if the patient haue *Gonorrhoia:* for then assuredly the disease shall be exasperated, and more hurt then commodity wil thereupon ensue. To driue forth by sweat, Physitions do their diligence, for a large sweat dissolueth the matter of that disease. Some therefore do further and prouoke this sweating after the most simple and common way, that is, by couering the patient well with clothes, couering the patients head, by laying him in a hote bed, and giuing him his decoction warme to drinke (the head of the patient being couered, I doubt whether that will do hurt or nay.) I can commend it in such patients as haue not the head very hote and sweating already: also such as haue pustules, and do feare the shedding of their haire. Others take bread hote out of the ouen, and apply it to the backe and sides of the patient, that by the moist heate thereof, they might the more easily sweat. I like not this deuice, for the bread is infected thereby, & therefore this is not good. Some vse to lay a warme bricke sprinkled with wine or veriuice, and wrapped vp in clothes, and this is a good commendable way, obseruing yet this rule for the vse thereof, that you omit it in such persons as haue *Rhagades* in their feet: in such you must lay no brick to their feet in any wise. The last way of voiding excrements, is to expell them by the siege. And the *Guaicum* potion is wont

ſometime to worke that effect, but ſometime it doth not. The moſt part of Phyſitions do(in this caſe)cõmend euacuation made with conuenient diſtance of time by purgatiue medicines: wherefore if very great euacuation be made by ſweats let them euery eight day be purged: if they ſweate not pienteouſly, then purge them oftener, euery third or fourth day, in the name God: and the purgations which we in this caſe do vſe, be according to the humors which do moſt abound, as ſometime with pils, with *Sena*, *Epithymo*, *Hermodactylus*: and ſometime with Electuaries, as *confectio Hamech*, *Diacatholicon*, & ſuch other like, as you may find plenty in the firſt and ſecond bookes, if you looke carefully in them for medicines for the purpoſe which you would haue auoided.

CHAP. XX.

Of Diet to be obſerued in this cure.

NOw are we come to ſpeake of the diet to be vſed while this decoction is in taking. This diet is ordained alwaies ſlender touching the quantity, and drying: and it conſiſteth in bisket, which we giue vnto the patient firſt and before other things, to the intent the meate taken after it might the leſſe moiſten, (and ſo it helpeth much to the cure of the tumours which belong to this diſeaſe) and alſo becauſe this bisket bread tarieth longer in eating, and yet the patients appetite is ſomewhat ſtayed: and if the ſtomacke be very weake, permit him to eate common bread of the very beſt. His meate muſt be roſted and excellent good; Chickens, Rabbets, Mutton, Partriches, and ſuch like. And when he doth purge, let his meate be boiled that day: once, twiſe, or thriſe in the weeke let him haue to his ſupper bread and great Raiſins, as you like his ſtrength. Some do miniſter Corants, which I commend. But when the excrements of the body are daily auoided by abundance of ſweat, ſo that we may hope the patient ſhall that way be perfectly purged, then I thinke beſt to giue no purging medicines; for nature her ſelfe expelleth them to the skin, to be euacuated that way by ſweate, whoſe worke ſhould by purgatiue medicins partly be hindered. If his ſweate be not ſufficient, then it is beſt to vſe purging, of what kind you thinke beſt (as before.) For his ordinary drinke at meales and other times, let him vſe the ſecond decoction, whereof let him take as much as he will. But do not you beleeue, the more they drinke the ſooner they ſhall be cured of this diſeaſe. And if they cannot drinke the ſecond decoction, we muſt ſuffer them to take ſome ale or beere, but let it not be very ſtrong in any caſe. The time of the diet being expired, we ought forthwith to obſerue whether the liuer be too hote yea or no: if it be ſo, then preſcribe a medicine to qualifie the diſtemper, as thus. Take conſerues of Roſes, of Borage or of Violets, or ſuch like, whereof you may find plenty in our former bookes.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the roote of China.

NOw haue we to treate of the roote of China, whereof ſome Phyſitions do make very great account, not onely for *Morbus Gallicus*, but alſo for the cure of *Phthiſis*, vlcers of the lungs, conſumption of the members. In *Lepra Græcorum*,

Græcorum, *i. scabies*; *Elephantiasis*, *i. Lepra*, proceeding of the melancholick humor; *Podagra* (in all which affects they vse it) the Spaniards do bring ouer this roote, but from what place I cannot learne, I could neuer attaine to trie the vertues thereof this way, but vse it profitably against the Dropsie: also to represse and temper the melancholicke humour, for bleare eyes coming of a hote distemper: moreouer, in an exceeding hote distemper of the stomacke and liuer. But in the cure of *Morbus Gallicus*, I will not vse it againe; for I haue proued it three or foure times, and could yet neuer bring any thing to good perfection: to finish their cures they take two pounds thereof.

CHAP. XXII.

The way of making the decoction of the roote China.

THe decoction is made in this wise: we take this roote and cut it in thinne peeces, afterward we take ℥. ij. thereof, and xij. pounds of cleare water: we heate the water, and infuse the China in it, for a whole nights space, or foure and twenty houres. Afterwards we set it to the fire, and boile it to the consumption of halfe, so that sixe pounds and no more remaine. We make but one decoction, which forthwith we cleanse, and spread out the said thinne peeces vpon a table, that they may be dried in the shadow, because they are reserued to vse againe. The decoction is kept warme in a pot, set either vpon the embers or the hote coales, for if it remaineth not luke warme, it waxeth sowre. But obserue that the decoction be made in a vessell with a very narrow mouth: and the same stopped exactly with corke, while it is in boyling. Of this decoction we giue in maner of a sirupe in the morning, ℥.x. or xij. in ♈ euening as much. The stomacke liketh well thereof, for it is a pleasant drinke: sometime we permit the patient to drinke wine if he haue bene accustomed to wine, or else to common ale at his meate, if he be weake, or else not. Their diet is common bread of the best, and flesh both sodden and rosted in moderate quantity. No purging medicine is to be giuen before the end thereof, and so the decoction is daily made: for of two pound (which, as we told you in the end of the last chapter, is the full *Dosis* of the roote) we take daily two ounces, and so the whole lasteth twelue daies. Afterward we take againe of the same roote dried, and boile againe of the same euery day, ℥.iiij. and so it lasteth sixe daies more, till the space of eighteene daies be finished. Now if we will minister it longer, if need be be, we do as before. *Diet.*

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the election of China.

IF you will chuse the best China, take that which is rough in colour and ponderous, not worme-eaten, nor corrupted. And be diligent in this, for among a hundred rootes, vnneath you shall find foure good; for commonly they haue two faults: one, that they be spongious and light, another that they be corrupt & worme-eaten. And if you can haue none without both these faults, (as few there are indeed to be found) rather chuse those that be eaten with

wormes, for that they are lesse euill of the two. And spongious roores soone putrifie, and haue in the decoction no strength to profite the patient any thing at all. And this is the second way or manner, whereby some Physitions endeuour to vanquish this euill.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of another manner of making of the decoction with Salsa and the wood, and without the wood, and sometime with the barke.

I Haue alwaies obserued and followed this rule: I take of *Salsa periglia*, ℥.iiij. of water, x.pintes. I cut the *Salsa periglia* into small parts: afterwards infuse it in hote water, by the space of foure and twenty houres. When it is infused, it is boyled to the consumption of the one halfe, afterward it is strained, and this decoction kept for the sirupe. Then we take the same *Salsa* againe, and put thereto of water fifteene pints, and without any more infusion, we boile it vnto the consumption of the third part: and this decoction is good to be drunke at dinner and supper. Truth it is, I sometime make the decoction with wine, in this wise: The first decoction being made (as I haue before declared) I take of water fifteene pounds or pints, and the same quantity of *Salsa*, and boile them together till halfe the liquor be wasted; then before I take the vessell from the fire, I put thereto of white wine, not strong, but pleasant in drinking, one quart, and after it hath boiled a little, I cleanse it out: and this wine I vse to put vnto it when I see the patient not much infected, and so he may walke abroade if it please the patient; or else when his stomacke is much infeebled. Moreouer, sometime I vse to mixe the wood, and sometime the rinde, and then I take of *Salsa*, ℥.iij. of the Guiacke wood as much, and sometime of his rinde, ℥. ij. (but not both at once, very seldome.) Sometime I vse the one and sometime the other; after this forme. ℞. *Salsa*, ℥.iiij. *ligni Guaici*, ℥. iij. ß. or else of the rinde, ℥. ij. to which I put of water thirteene pints, and let them boile together till halfe be wasted. Againe to make their drinke for dinner and supper, I take of water eighteene pints, and boile it to the consumption of the third part: when I vse the barke, I take euen the same quantity of water, although there be of it but ℥. ij. Now when it chanceth me to haue a patient very delicate, and therefore will not giue him these decoctions, in this case I boyle the *Salsa* in thirteene pints of water, vnto the consumption of halfe: and when it is thus boyled, I haue a vessell either of the raped *Guaicum*, or the powder of the rinde, which I best like of, and into it I cleanse the decoction of *Salsa*, as hote as is possible; and so it is infused for thirteene houres, and then I straine it, and thus I prepare this sirupe. At dinner and supper, I giue onely the second decoction of *Salsa*. The reason why I thus admixe them, is because the decoction of *Salsa* doth litle offend the stomacke, but sometime it moueth the belly, therefore I mixe *Guaicum* therewith. Another cause why I mixe them, is to eradicate the disease, wherefore *Salsa* is needfull. Thirdly, when I haue one that hath had this disease long time, I vse both *Guaicum* and *Salsa*, yea and sometime the rind, but

but that I do very seldome, and I vse this decoction in all points as the other in quantity and time. And sometimes if the patient be very full of vlcers, I vse this decoction following; I take *Guaicum*, ℥ vij. of *Salsa*, ℥.iij. and infuse them in fourteene pints of warme water, foure and twenty houres; then boile them vntill there be left seuen pints, and towards the end of the boyling, adde to of Liquorice, ℥.j. Raisins of the sunne, the stones picked out, ℥.ij. the rootes of *Consolida maior*, ℥.ij. ß. of the seeds of *Carduus benedictus*. ℥. ß. and when it is cold straine it. This decoction take for the first morning and euening, ℥.viij. at a time warme, and euery morning procure him to sweat if it be possible. For the second decoction, take that which is strained, and adde thereto of fresh *Guaicum*, ℥.iij. of *Salsa*, ℥.j. put of water sixteene pints; let it infuse thirteene houres, and boile them to tenne pints, and adde in the end of the boiling Barley, ℥.ij. Liquorice and Raisins of the sunne, the stones taken out, ana. ℥.j. Violet flowers, ℥ ß. and then when it is cold, straine it, and drinke of it at his meate, and at any other time of the day, remembring to purge the body once in foure dayes, if there be need. And let him take this decoction thirty dayes, or fiue and twenty dayes at the least, as you see cause, and as the vlcers do heale, remembring to wash or bathe the places grieued, morning and euening with the first decoction warme.

CHAP. XXV.

Of other faculties or vertues which this Salsa hath.

BVt you shall vnderstand, that this *Salsa* doth not cure and put away this *Morbum Gallicum* onely, but the same is good for many other affects, as in a Catarrhe or distillation from the head, being sharpe and salt, in Cancres not vlcerate, and in tumours which are hard to be resolued: and I haue found by mine owne experience, that it yeeldeth good effect in the cure of *Scrofulæ*, commonly called the Kings euill. I minister it in this wise: for the space of forty dayes, I take of the powder of *Salsa*, and the powder of *Ruscus*, called of some *Bruschus*, of both a like portion, and euery day I giue of this powder, ʒ.j. with white wine, or ale, as I see cause; and it cometh well to passe thereby, sometimes purging the body as I see cause, and let the patient go abroad at his pleasure. I haue proued this powder in the tumour of the splene, but I adde thereto the iust quantity of *Tamariscus*, which maketh it the better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Suffumigations which some practitioners vse.

THis disease sometime is cured of practitioners by Suffumigations, otherwise called perfumes, which way of curing is not to be recommended amongst those wayes before named. The cause is this; often and many times sore inconueniences come thereupon, and it cureth not with so small danger to the patient. Wherefore, I haue alwayes held it the best (as much as may be) to shunne this way of curing, for as much as in some it is extremely euill and dangerous, as in leane persons, such as haue a hote and dry tem-

perament; also in those which haue streightnesse in the breast, either through obstruction of the vessels, or somewhat distilling from the head. Moreouer, it is pernicious vnto them which at any time haue spitted bloud: furthermore such persons as haue *Peripneumonia*, if they vse suffumigations, it costs them their liues. To be short, all such as are troubled with *Dysenteria*, or any other kinde of fluxe, ought to forbeare these suffumigations. I my selfe neuer vsed them, but in one case or two at the most; and maruell you not thereat, for I vtterly mislike of them. But I will speake a little of suffumigations; they haue in them these faculties, and strengths: First they opé all the conduits of the body: for their nature is such, that immediatly they pierce the body, in piercing they alter it; they mundifie or scoure the inward parts, and first the heart. And the braine it selfe is altered, for by the lungs it is communicated vnto the heart. by the nosthrils vnto the braine, as by the veines the same is also communicated vnto the liuer. And this appeareth by experience; for *Suffimenta* alwaies loosen the belly, and bring excrements vnto the bowels, euen as a purgation, therefore it must needes be that they pierce or penetrate.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the manner of perfuming the whole body.

FIrst, there is none so ignorant or foolish an Empericke, but he purgeth the body before the vse of these Suffumigations, by one, two or three purgations, with respect of the humour abounding, the habite of the body, and the sicknesse. And if the disease be confirmed and inueterate, the purgations ought to be strong; which rules of euacuation you may find before in their conuenient place, where we treated of purging the body, both in the beginning and the ending. And first to begin this worke with him, euen about that houre that the sunne riseth, they giue the patiēt a couple of rere egs, & straight after he hath eaten them, a sop of bread infused in Malmesey; then they let him drinke a little quantity. Lastly, after all these, they let him take ℥. j. of *Saccharum ros.* and lye still after that a quarter of an houre. In the meane time they prepare a litle chamber which they make very hote, and therein they make a pauilion or tent, which is made of a thicke and close cloth; within the which they set a pot full of burning coales, and the patient himselfe also sitteth naked vnder this tent on a litle seate for the purpose. And they haue their things ready at hand, which by little and little they strew vpon the coales, and the smoke thereof being closely kept in, flieth about the tent, drying and drawing out of his body. And when that which they haue already cast vpon the coales faileth, and is gone, they strew on more, and that diuerse times, and there they let the patient continue (if he can) the space of a whole houre, or halfe an houre, as he can abide it. But let them alwaies take heed, so long as he is vnder the pauilion, that they talke with him and aske of him how he fareth; for sometime they swound and fall downe within the tent, which is very dangerous: and if he answereth very faintly, take him out in all the haste you can, then wrap him in a warme linnen sheete, and lay him in bed, and there couering him with clothes, let him continue there two houres space.

And

And this is the way which they vse or ought to vse: they vse to perfume them three dayes together, and rest one day; and then other three daies, and so to nine daies. Sometime we vse this Suffumigation more daies, euen as the disease requireth: for if we see that the palate of the mouth is exulcerated, or sore in the third day, and that the matter floweth out, forthwith we leaue off; or if a laxe cometh vpon the patient, we cease: yea though it be in the third, fourth, fifth, or sixth day. If once in the day, we vse suffumigation still, and that is in the morning, afterward dry vp the sweate, and let him eate his meate, and drinke thinne ale. In all other things, let his diet be at large, and at his pleasure, to his best liking.

A good signe to know the time to leaue off.

Diet.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing.

THis way of curing by Suffumigations is endangered to certaine euil *Symptomata*, as sometime laxe of the belly, sometime corruption of the roofe of the mouth, sometime loosenes and shaking of the teeth. All which are wont to follow the annointing with quicke siluer: and when we shall come to treate of that way of curing, we shall speake our mind concerning these *Symptomata*.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmelesse.

I Told you before that there are two sorts of Suffumigations; one sort is compounded and made of things gentle and benigne, another sort is made of things venimous and maligne. First, let vs speake of those which containe a matter benigne and voide of malice, amongst which this is: (the first forme of one which is mighty indeed of operation, but yet of the gentler sort.) ℞. *Thuris masculi, Aloes, Myrrhæ*, ana. ℥.j. *Cinamomi, Storacis siccæ, Spica nardi, Moschatæ*, ana. ʒ.ß. *Ambræ vel Charabæ*, ʒ.j. *Moschi* gra.ij. These are mixed together and lightly beaten vnto powder, and with a litle spoone it is strewed vpon hote burning coales. Another is described thus. ℞. *Santal. alborum, rubrorum & citrinorum*, ana. ℥.j. *Nucis moschatæ, Macerij, Squinanthi, Cariophyllorum, Camphoræ, Assari*, ana. ℥.ß. *Corticum mali apioli, siccatorum ambra*, ana. ʒ.ß. They are mixed and beaten into powder, and with *Terebinthina* made into a paste, which paste is afterward deuided into round bals, which by litle and litle are laid vpon the fierie coales. The third compositiō being yet more strong in this. ℞. *Storacis siccæ, Belzoni, ligni Aloes, Galliæ moschatæ*, ana ℥.ß. *gummi Hederæ*, ℥.j. *Ladani*, ℈.ij. *Squinanthi, Cinamomi*, ana. ℥.ß. *Albiani-me Charabæ*, ʒ.ß. *misce*. These are beaten, and with *Storax liquida*, made into a paste, which paste is made into litle round bals, *vt suprà*.

1

2

3

CHAP. XXX.

Of maligne Suffumigations.

M*Orbus Gallicus* is ouercome by Suffumigations, which piercing through the whole body, do dry the braine, the heart, the liuer, and the whole

habite: these be of two sorts; the one sort particular, the other common. Of which some be light and easie, some strong and vehement, some of a matter more benigne, some of a matter more maligne. Which they be that consist of a benigne matter, we haue declared in the former Chapter; now we haue to speake of the composition of those which do consist of a matter maligne. Of this sort I will set downe three in number which are now in vse, and the principall things in them be *Cinaberis artificialis*, *Sandaracha Græcorum*, and *Auripigmentum*; and these be those which (for as much as they be poisons) of their owne nature, do inspire a certaine venimous vapour into the body. But to be briefe, you shall vnderstand that the whole effect consisteth in *Hydrargyro*, or in some other matter of like nature vnto it, as is *Arsenicum*, *Sandaracha*, and *Cinaberis artificialis*, or *Præcipitatum*. These things be mixed with Aromaticks to strengthen the inward parts, for otherwise they should be much offended by them and hurt; and the chiefe of these Aromaticke things be *Resinæ* and diuerse kinds of gums. The first forme of this sort is this. ℞. *Cinaberis*, ℥.iij. *Myrrhæ*, *Thuris*, *Mastiches*, ana. ℥.j. *Aloes hepaticæ*, *Sandarachæ Arabum*, *Stiracis siccæ*, *Belzoni*, ana. ℥. iij. These be beaten grosly, and thereof is made a powder, which is sprinckled vpō the fierie coales. The second forme is this. ℞. *Cinaberis*, ℥.iij. *Sandarachæ Græcorum*, ℥.j. ß. *Myrrhæ*, *Thuris*, *ligni Aloes*, *Ladani*, *Ammoniaci*, ana. ℥.j. These be beaten in grosse wise, and mixed with *Terebinthinæ*, and thereof are made small bals to cast vpon the burning coales. The third forme of maligne Suffumigations is this. ℞. *Cinaberis*, ℥. iij. *Auripigmenti*, *Sandarachæ Græcorum*. ana. ℥.ß. *Præcipitati*, ℥. iij. *Thuris*, *Aloes hepaticæ*, *Mastiches*, *Myrrhæ electæ*, *Belzoni*, *Stiracis siccæ*, *Ladani*, *Ammoniaci*, ana. ℥.ß. *Miscentur*. Of these make a grosse powder which is strewed vpon the burning coales. And these be the descriptions of those Suffumigations which haue a venimous faculty, and do expell by the malignity of their nature.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the cure by annointing with Quicke siluer.

THe first way that experience found out to heale this disease in Italy, was by *Argentum viuum*. For when this disease began to spread in that countrey, Chyrurgians attempting all things for the cure thereof, because they had read that Quicke siluer should be of great vertue against an old rebellious scab (for at the first coming in of this disease, it had alwaies vlcers ioined therewith) they thought good to try that *Argentum viuum*, and that with good successe, for some thereby gathered great riches. Many fell into *Marasmus* by this annointing, many lost their teeth after it: some had the palate of their mouth rotted away, some had the bones of their head eaten, which so doth continue still; one hath his mouth in like sort, another his face set awry thereby. For if it healeth not, it driueth the whole channell of vicious humors into the head. I haue takē in hand some, who haue bene annointed with this ointment three yeeres before; and when they haue had sores (called *Gumata*) vpon their skinnes, whereby the bones haue bene discouered, I haue seene the *Argentum viuum* gathered within the place: for this cause I commend not this medicine. I haue vsed it sometime when I could not attaine my purpose, by the said waies of curing, called

Hatmes following the vse of quicke siluer.

called *Regiæ*. I saw once a young stripling that had *Morbum Gallicum*, vpon whom all the aforesaid *Regiæ curationes* had bene practised, and he neuer the better therefore; yet he afterwards was cured by the wayes of annointing. Wherefore in such as haue rebellious affects, and are to be despaired of, I vse it, when I haue proued all waies, and all sorts of medicines before. And when I vse it, I obserue this order. First, to purge the humour that doth abound, and if the humours be mixt, then all the body: I giue the *decoctum Guaici* by the space of ten or twelue dayes, to strengthen the inward parts, as the head, braine, and liuer; and then the venimous medicine hurteth not so much. And after I haue thus prepared my patients, I annoint them in this sort. First three dayes if the symptomates do not appeare; then to foure, fiue, sixe, yea ten dayes, till I see the symptomates do appeare: then I annoint no more. Of these *Symptomata*, some happen commonly very much, other some very litle: it commonly happeneth that after annointing, the patients haue their palate swelled and raw, their tongue growne bigger, so that sometime they can neither speake nor swallow downe any meate: their tongue is exceeding sore by reason of great inflammation, and such abundance of corrupt and stinking spittle flowing vpon it; all their teeth are loose in their head, and do shake, sometime they lose some of them. Finally, such a quantity of corrupt matter is gathered and brought to the mouth, that sometime the teeth are quite couered therewith. This medicine of his owne nature flieth altogether to the mouth and there seeketh to breake forth. In this case you ought to appoint the patient a diet of things easie to be digested, as some cullaze of delicate flesh. Let the drinke which he drinketh be pleasant, and if he hath bene vsed to drinke wine let him haue it, and let his diet be large enough, of broth, and good store of fine bread in it, and so nourish him largely and plentifully: for the euacuation which he sustayneth is great, so that I haue bene compelled to cut the *Cephalica* veine for the swelling of the tongue.

CHAP. XXXII.

To correct the Symptomata which happen in the mouth in this way of curing.

AND amongst other things this also is to be obserued, as much as is possible to draw out the *Hydrargyron* which lieth soaked in the palate and the teeth. The way to do it is this: Let the patient hold and keepe in his mouth, a ring of fine gold, and draw it forth twise or thrise; and if it chance to looke white, lay it on the coales, and it will come to his colour as before: and then put it in and so keepe it at his pleasure. But if the patient haue great paine, we vse to wash his mouth with milke. If the paine continue, I vse Barley water and sirupe of Myrtle, or *Diamoron*, or *Nenuphar*, and sometime we vse *aqua Solani*, or Plantaine, Sometime we vse of repercussiue iuyce, as *succus foliorum Rubri, foliorum Plantaginis*; sometime of the iuyce of Vine leaues. Sometime we vse Barley water, with *mel ros.* sirupe *Myrti, Diamorum simplex*, to scoure withall the mouth. Another *Symptoma* yet followeth vpon this way

of curing, and that is, immoderate laxe of the bellie; for sometime the patient voideth by the siege pure bloud, or strings of bloud, as we see in *Dysenteria*. In this case (if the patient his strength may well sustaine it) let vs not stay the fluxe, but moderate it, and cause that the excoriation of the bowels do not thereby increase. First by ministring clisters of milke, wherein haue bene quenched red hote gaddes of steele, or litle blacke flint stones; or by the iniection of the iuyce of Ptisan, or pure milke. Sometime (the patient being weake) we come to the vse of astringent things, as *oleum Myrtinum*, or, *oleum Omphacinum in clistere*, also the iuice of Plantaine, or of the hip Briar. Sometime we put in our clisters also *Bolus Armenus*, or *Lapis Hematitis*. Moreouer, we vse astringent waters: sometime we open a veine, sometime we vse ligatures and other meanes or wayes of reuulsion: now if none of these *Symptomata* shal come vpon them, we nourish them with good meates (as it is said) and so end the cure.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be vsed in this way of curing.

THere be diuerse kindes of vnguents: I will set forth but two of them. ℞. *oleum Petroleum*, ℥.ß. *olei Lumbricorum, olei Spicæ nardi, olei Tartari albi, olei Turpentini*, ana. ℥.j. *vnguentum Dialthæa, vngu. Marciaton, Axungia Toxsion, Storax liquida, Turpentini*, ana. ℥.ij. *Axungiæ porcinæ*, ℔.ß. *Armoniacæ, Opoponacis, Bdellij, Elemnij, Ladani, Styracis, Calaminthæ, Belzoni*, ana. ℥.j. *Tartari albi combusti, Aluminis combusti*, ana. ℥. iiij. *Vitrioli Romani combusti*, ℥.j. quicke siluer. ℔.j. *Minium*. ℥.ß. mixe all, and beate them in a mortar 2. houres at the least (if it be three it is the better) without ceassing. ℞. *Pinguedinis gallinæ, Axungiæ porcinæ, Axungiæ vrsinæ*, ana. ℥. iiij. *olei Liliorum albi, olei Laurini*, ana. ℥.ij. quicke siluer, ℥. viij. In this composition, the fattes are not melted at the fire, but the filmes cleane taken out, they are beaten in a mortar very diligently; then by litle and litle the quicke siluer is put into the mortar, and the medicine is wrought in the mortar, by the space of two or three houres at the least. Afterward put in these powders: *Thuris, Mastiches, Myrrhæ, Ammoniaci, Styracis, pulueris Saluiæ, pulueris Stæchados, Lythargiry, Cerussæ*, ana. ℥.ß. Of these is made a very fine powder, which by litle & litle is put into the mortar, continually beating till al be wel incorporated. Thus these two ointments be made, the first is strongest and best. If there be many vlcers, and at the fourth or fifth annointing commonly the *Symptomata* will appeare, they vse no more annointing.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Præcipitatum giuen by the mouth.

Poss. FVrthermore you shall vnderstand, that some practitioners vse to cure this disease, not onely by annointing (whereof we haue spoken before) but by giuing *Præcipitatum* by the mouth. Some giue the common *Præcipitatum* so prepared: It is giuen in weight, gra. seuen, or tenne at the vttermost: they

they mixe this quantity with mdicines to alter the colour, that it may not be knowne. Some mixe it with *Aloes, Myrrhæ, Mastiches*, gr. iij. Some mixe it with conserues of Roses, some with *Mithridatum*, and such like. But there is a more safe curing then this, by *Turbith mineralis*, which the *Chymists* haue inuented in stead of *Præcipitatum*, which I better allow of, and it is very dangerous for the better sort of men: of the which I mind to speake hereafter as followeth. First, the vse of *Turbith mineralis* is betwixt graines xviij. and xx. grains, or xxv. graines at the most, after the strength of the patient: they vse it in this maner. First they take the dose as they themselues best like, and mixe it with *Mithridatum*, one part or two as they will: some mixe with it conserue of Roses, so that there be not in all past ʒ.j. or ʒ.j.ß. at the most. They make it into a ball: some make three or foure pils and gild thē, other some rolle it in powder of *Diambre* or such like. The patiēts body must be prepared by some easie meane, and eate a light supper: let the patient receiue it early in the morning: after he hath receiued it, let him lie in his warme bed an houre at the least, and sleepe after it, if it be possible; then let him arise and apparell himselfe warme, and sit by the fire. Let his chamber be very warme, so that he may sweate temperately. Within foure houres after he hath receiued the said Bole, cause him to eate some warme broth, and let him not come out of his chamber till he be throughly whole or cured. Let his diet be very good warme meates. Two mornings next following giue him a litle *Mithridatum* in clarified Mace ale, and cause him to sweate an houre or two in his bed. The third morning next following, giue him the *Turbith* as before, and let him keepe the order aforesaid: and if his mouth grow not sore in the meane time, giue it him the third time in the third morning next following the second time: do so till his mouth be sore, then seeke in the former chapter to heale his mouth as is taught there. Thus haue you all the waies and means to helpe this pernicious griefe.

The dosis of Turbith mineralis.

Libri sexti finis.

THE VII. BOOKE, TEACHETH THE FORME AND RVLE OF MAKING REMEDIES AND MEDICINES, WHICH OVR PHYSITIONS DO commonly vse at this day, and to know after what sort their proportion and quantity is distributed and noted, with the names of each medicine.

CHAP. I.

Of Suppositaries.

A Suppositary is a remedie, whole, long, and round, which it put into the fundament, that it may auoid the pricking, and moue and prouoke the vertue expulsiue to the auoiding of the excrements, compost, or ordure. We do vse Suppositaries especially for three causes: the first is for bringing out ordure, which when it lieth in the right bowell, it requireth no clister. The second is, when one or two clysters haue bene put into the body, and do not come out againe at the fundament, as it doth chance in passions of the cholicke, then it is very perillous to put in other clisters. The third cause is, when the sicke person is so weake that he may better suffer a suppositarie then a clister. A suppositarie is made of hony that is boyled so long, till it doth waxe thicke and hard; oftentimes common salt is mixed with the hony: but if you will make it more sharpe and quicke, take of salt Gemme, the dung of a Mouse, Agaricke, or else *Hiera simplex.* ℞. a Suppositary made of hony, which if you thinke so weake that it will not moue the compost or ordure, adde too these following. ℞. to make a common Suppositary of sharpe hony, *sal Armoniacke*, ʒ. ß. or of salt Gemme, ℈ ß. or of Mouse dung, ℈. ß. or ℈. j. or of *Hiera simplex*, ʒ. ß. Also make suppositaries of white sope, tallow of beasts, fat of bacon, candles, the stalkes of Beets, or Mercurie, or their rootes annointed with oyle or hony, and strewed with powder of salt, specially for children and sucking babes, for whō one corne of salt put in is sufficient. ℞. Thime, or *Cyclaminum*, or Wormwood, or Sothernwood, stamped in a mortar, ʒ. j. or ß. of boiled hony so much as sufficeth, and make a suppositary. Suppositaries are good against the Palsey, made of Pellitory & Pepper, Napy (that is, a kind of rapes called a Nauew) Cētorie, Bitumen, that is, a kinde of lime, the roote of *Panax*, Hysope, *Galbanum*, mixed with dry Rosin, or Pitch & Waxe. Let a Suppositary be round, and 6. 7. or. 8. fingers in length. We do vse no Suppositaries to them which haue the hemorrhoides, or any other swelling in the fundament.

A suppositarie to bring forth the ordure.

A suppositarie against the wormes called Lumbrici.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.
Of making Nodulus.

NODVLI be those which are called of *Ætius* in Greeke προσβέτα; they are good for those which haue clefts and swellings in the fundament. These do auoid and take away the hardnesse of suppositaries, because sometime we are compelled to vse flockes in their steads. Their matter is the same that suppositaries be. ℞ Flockes mingled or beaten with hony, and put into the tuel: and truly that *Nodulus* is best and sweetest which is made of salt and the white of an egge in cloth or wooll, made in the forme of a Beane, and put into the uell with a threed hanged at the end, that it may be drawne out againe.

CHAP. III.
Of making Pessaries.

A Pessary is a medicine which is made of soft wooll, or such like thing, and it is put into the priuities of women. The figure or shape of it is like a suppositarie, but that it is longer & thicker, because it must be put into the womb. It is made of Waxe, or of cloth or cotton, or of lint first dipped and wet in an ointment, or in a medicine meete and conuenient for the cure. Afterward wind them in silke, and hang a threed thereunto that it may be drawne out the more easily. It is put into the tuel and into the wombe to ceasse the inflammations and vlcers of them both. Priuatly it is put into the wombe to prouoke the menstruis and the secundine, or to stop immoderate fluxe of menstruis, or to mollifie the hardnes of the wombe, or to cure other diseases of the womb. ℞. a pessarie dipped and wet in *Vnguentum rosatum*, and put it into the place. To this sometime is added *Opium*, that is, where the inflammation causeth great paine. *Opium* by his coldnesse maketh astonied, therefore his quantity ought to be small, as from halfe a scruple to a scruple, and let it be holden a little time, lest through his coldnesse the parts which are sinewie be hurt. It therefore may be holden halfe an houre. ℞. a pessary dipped and wet in *Vnguentum Pompholyges*, put it into the tuel or into the matrice that is greeued. Pessaries to bring forth menstruis are made otherwise. The medicines are taken in silke cloth, that is as thinne as sindall, and let the forme and fashion be thicker, which may bring out with his powder, as thus. ℞. *Hierapicra composita*, ℥.j. of *Euphorbium*, and the apple of *Coloquintida*, ana. ℈. ß. mixe them and make a pessarie. Annoint it with *oleum Nardinum*, or with the iuice of herbes that prouoke menstruis. Such pessaries be made oftentime of brayed herbes prouoking menstruis: as. ℞. Mercurie, Neppe, or Mugwort, or Sothernwood, M. ß. bray them, and rolle them in silke, and make a pessary. If the menstruis haue endured with swelling and paine, first make a bath, for that doth mollifie and moist: the paunch ought first to be emptied, and the bladder to be vnloden, because the matrice is in the middest betweene them: for these being filled, and pressing the matrice, the menstruis for ouermuch straightnesse may be retained and made slow in coming out. If immoderate menstruis do flow, do thus: ℞. a pessary wet in *Vnguentum comitissæ*, and put it into the matrice: or thus: ℞. of Plantaine, or Knotgrasse, or Brier, of Mirtle or other that can

To ceasse inflammation.

To dry vlcers.

To bring forth menstruis.

To mollifie the hardnesse of the wombe.

stop menstruis, M. ß. bray them, and roll them in silke, and make a pessarie. Pessaries mollifying may be made of the marrow of a Calfe,& a Hart, of Rosin, Terebinthine, fatnesse of a Goose,or porke,and of Gumme Armoniacke dissolued in water.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Clisters or Enema.

A Clister or *Enema*, is a kind of medicine the which is cast and put into the bowels by the fundament, liquide and thinne, and it is profitable for eight things. 1. To mollifie the wombe restrained with hardnesse.2. To prouoke the violence detestable and astonied. 3. To auoide all kind of humours. 4. To put away ventosities.5. To ceasse dolours and paines.6.To bind and restraine the bellie. 7. To make cleane vlcers of the guts or bowels.8. To make sound the same. There may be also added to alter and change,as here followeth ℞.of Lettuce,Scarioll, *Rostrum porcinum*,leaues of Sallow,ana.M.j.flowers of Violets, and Nenuphar, of each a little handfull: make a decoction of one pound. In the strayning let one ounce of *Cassia fistula* be dissolued, oyle of Violets,and of Nenuphar, ana.℥.j.ß.Camphire ℈.j. and make a clister ℞.the foure kinds of remollitiues, or mollificatiues, Pellitory of the wall, ana. M.j. ß.the rootes of the Mallowes called *Althæa*, and white Lillies, ana ℥. j.seede of Flaxe, Fenugreeke and Annise,ana.℥.ß. of fat Figges,iiij make a decoction of ℔.j.in weight. In the straining thereof dissolue therein of *Cassia fistula,mel Violarum*, and fresh butter,ana.℥.j. oyle of Violets, ℥.iij. and make a clister.If you will make a clister mollificatiue lacking the things aforesaid, do thus.℞. oyle made warme ℔.j.and make thereof a clister, or thus. ℞. oyle and fresh butter,ana.℔.ß. and make a clister. ℞ the foure remollitiues, ana M.j.seede of *Carthamum*,℥.j. of Annise, Fennell,and *Careum*,ana.℥ iij.and make a decoction of ℔.j. and in the straining dissolue *Hiera simplex*, or *Benedicta*,or *Diaphœnicon*,or *Electuarium de succo*, or *Electuarium Indi maioris*,℥.ß.of clarified hony,or iuyce of Squil,℥ j.or common Salt,℥.ij.or salt Gemme,℈.j.or ℥.ß. Many do adde to clisters,℥ j.of the iuyce of Beetes,which do moue and grieue the belly, or iuyce of Beets and Coleworts, ana. ℥ ß. of common Salt, ℥.ij. or ℥.j. which bite and gnaw the belly, or lesse;but the iust weight must be as you coniecture to be easie or hard for the sicke. Also such a clister expulsing the detestable faculty or matter,may very well be made onely of hony or hony with iuyce of *Squilla*,or other things decoct. And if that the vertue expulsiue, be astonied and dull through the hardnesse of the ordure, then make a clister partly of mollificatiues & partly of expulsiues aforesaid. Clisters which auoid humours are made so, that they varie according as the humours differ. For when the humour is grosse and cold, euill disposing the bowels, let it be made thus. ℞.the foure remollitiues,ana. M.j. Cammomill, the tops of Dil, Origan, Calamint, Sothernwood, ana.M.ß.Annise, *Careum*, Comin, Ammeos, Seseleos,ana.℥.ß. berries of Lawrell, seed of Rew, ana. ℥.ij make a decoction. In the straining dissolue *Catholicon*, and *Diaphœnicon*, ana. ℥.ß. or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Benedicta*, ℥.vj. or of both,℥.ß. of red Sugar, and *mel Anthos*, ana.℥.iij.℥.ß. oile of Dill and Cammomill,ana. quart. ß. or oyle of Rew,℥.j.

A clister mollificatiue.

A clister prouoking & making voide the violence astonied.

A clister auoiding humours.

oyle

oyle of Dil, ℥.ij. or oyle of Lillies, ℥.ij. make a clister. If vẽtosity be preset, adde Calmatiues; if paine be present, take a medicine releasing griefe by prouoking sleepe, as hereafter shall appeare by examples. If a cholericke and gnawing humour must be brought out with a clister, then let the clister be made of such things as will auoid that humour, and mixe it partly with such helpes as do ceasse inflammation, as thus. ℞. Mallowes, Bismallowes, Violets, Pellitory of the wall, Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, Purslaine, ana. M.j. and if there be so much neede of coldnesse, take the foure great cold seedes bruised, ana. ℥.iij. or ℥.ß. of whole Barley, p.j. make a decoction of one pound. In the straining dissolue *Cassia fistula* and common Sugar, ana. ℥. j. the white of one egge or two, oyle of Roses, or of Violets, or common oile, quart j. make a clister. If such a passion cometh of a melancholicke humour, make it thus. ℞. the foure mollificatiues, the leaues of Bugloss and Borage, the tops of Dill, *Lupuli*, and Fumitory, ana. M.j. Melilot and Cammomill, ana. M. j. seede of *Carthamum*, and Polypodie of the Oke, ana ℥ j. Annise, and Fennell, ana ℥.ß. make a decoctiõ. In the straining dissolue *Hiera Ruffi*, which is not in vse, or *confectio Hamech*, ℥.ß. or *Catholicon*, ℥.j. red Sugar, or *mel Rosarum*, or Violets, ℥.j. oyle of Dill, Lillies, and Violets, ana. ℥. j. make a clister. ℞. Mallowes, Bismallowes, Pellitory of the wall, Origan, Calamint, Cammomill, the tops of Dill, ana. M.j. Annise, *Careum*, Comin and Fennell, ana. ℥. ß. or ʒ.vj. of Lawrell Berries, ʒ.iij or ℥.ß. seede of Rew. ʒ ij. or iij. and make a decoction in the straining dissolue *Benedicta*, or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Electuarium Indi maioris*, which we do not vse here, ℥.ß. confection of Lawrell berries, ʒ. iij. or ℥.ß. red Sugar, ℥.j. oile of Dill, Cammomill and Rew, ana. ℥.j. make a clister. Into these clisters which put away ventosities, oile of Nuts is wholesome to put in, and also (as *Galen* saith) *Vinum maluaticum Cretense*, may well be mixed with a clister as is aforesaid. The signes of ventosities and wind contained in the bowels, be often farting and noise in the guttes, because it chanceth as often as burbles are broken in the bowels. Bowels wherein be burbles (as *Galen* teacheth *Particula* 2. *Aphorism. strangulati nondum mortui, &c.*) be caused of aire shut and enclosed with the humour. Clisters to ceasse paines are made many wayes, for if the cause be a hote gnawing humour, the example is shewed afore by cold things, where he intreateth of a clister to auoid humours: if the paine be of a cold cause, take the same that is giuen against ventosity last before: if the paine do come of moe causes, make a clister of many of those things which are meete for the causes: and when the cause of the paine is not knowne, make it thus. ℞. flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, the toppes of Dill, ana pug. ij. make a decoction in milke. In the straining dissolue therein white Sugar, because the red is biting and pricking, ℥. j. ß. whites of egges ij. oyle of Dill and Cammomill, ana. quart. ß. and make a clister. Or thus. ℞. oile of Cammomill, Dill and Violets, ana. ℥ iij. cast it in with a clister, and when we want such oile, we make it of quart. iij or ℔.j. of oile Oilue. ℞. milke sodden, quart. iij. or ℔.j. *Amylum siue Amydum*, halfe a dramme, or a dram at the most, Gumme Arabique, or Tragacanth, or both, a litle burnt, ana. halfe a dram, or a dram, or two drammes: Bolearmoniacke, and *Sanguis Draconis*, ana. ʒ. ij. oile of Roses and Cammomill, ana. one ounce and a halfe: make

A clister to put & driue away ventosities.

A clister to ceasse paine.

A clister restraining.

A Clister profitable against a hote humour gnawing in the bowels.

a clister. ℞. the iuyces of Plantaine, *Arnoglossa*, that is, a kind of Plantaine, Knotgrasse and Purslaine: let these iuices be cleansed either by seething or residence; take of all these, or of one of these, as much as sufficeth for a clister, adding of the powder aforesaid, and with those oiles make a clister. Note that when there is need, then you may make clisters of those herbes sodden, or of the waters distilled out of them, adding Rose water, as: ℞. the water of *Arnoglossa*, of Plantaine, of Roses, of Purslaine, of Knotgrasse, as much as sufficeth, and dissolue some of the aforesaid things therein. It is to be noted, that sometime there are put into the aforesaid decoctions, seedes and fruits that be stipticke, to make hard, and to bind, so that they lacke sharpnesse, because else they would pricke, prouoke and expulse; therefore we can mixe together the seeds of Myrtle, Sorrell, of Purslaine, Plantaine, Cypresse, *Cauda equina*, Horstaile, and such like. Moreouer note, that oile must neuer be put into clisters, if the bowels be vlcerate, as they be in *Dysenteria*, (which is a fluxe in the body) yet many do neglect that, not knowing that oile is an enemy to vlcers (as *Galen* intreateth *tertio & quarto Methodi.*) Truly wine is a speciall friend, the creame or curde of a Hare or of a Goate, in weight ℥. iij. *Sorbus*, Proynes Medlars, Quinces, ana. ℥.j. more or lesse, do restraine and bind. ℞. of the whole Barley, p. ij. of red Roses and Cammomill, and Plantaine if paine be present, ana. p. j. make a decoction. In the straining dissolue therein *mel rosarum*, ℥ j. the white of one egge or two, make a clister. Such a clister is to be giuen alwaies before clisters restraining, binding and consolidating, by meanes wherof the thing is made prompte and easie. A clister consolidating is made when the filthinesse of the bowels is not purged and tried out, because that is deadly: and therefore there needeth no clister, but that prognostication is sufficient. ℞. of the iuyce of Plantaine, *Arnoglossa* and Purslaine, ana. ounces three, of Bolearmoniacke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Amylum*, ana. dramme one and a halfe: or the tallow of a male or female Goate one dramme, or one ounce & a halfe, and make a clister. And because Goates tallow cannot well dissolue, but almost alwayes it congealeth and hardeneth together in the bowelles of the sicke, therefore it may be and ought to be dissolued with a little oile of Roses, and then it need not be feared for vlcers. Also ointments consolidating (as is *Vnguentum album*) sometime are made liquide and mixed, and specially when the vlcers be nigh, or in the great guttes. Sometime in the stead of iuyces may clisters be made of milke very well for his whey portion, which doth restraine and consolidate. Oftentimes both in these and in restrayning clisters, the whites of egges hard sodden are dissolued. And thus finisheth the making and vse of clysters or *Enema*.

A Clister to scoure and cleanse vlcers in the guttes.

A clister consolidating. that is, making sound of vlcers.

CHAP. V.

Of making Syrupes.

A Syrupe is of medicines a iuyce with Sugar or honey molten therein, decoct and boyled vnto the measure of that Sugar. Practitioners do put a double vnderstanding in sirupes, that is, *simplex*, which is called vsuall; and *compositum*, which is called magistrall. Simples or vsuals be these, syrupes of

Violets

Violets, of Roses, of Endiue, of Nenuphar, of Maidenhaire, of Wormewood, of Mints, *Oxymel squilliticum*, sirupe of Eupatorie, of *Epithymum*, and of *Byzantijs*. They are called simples, as well because they consist in one simple medicine, as also because they are ordained for one sicknesse and for one vse. *Syrupus compositus* which is called magistrall, is compounded of diuers medicines being good for sundry diseases, as in example: if any man compound together sirupe of Wormewood and Stæchados, being taken in euen portions or quantity, there would come thereof a sirupe good for the stomacke, because of the Wormewood, and good for the head because of the Stæchados. A Syrupe is good and profitable to digest humours before a purgation, that they may the easier and better obey the purgation. Therfore they are vsed of many Physitions to be giuen before medicines, although we haue not read that old practioners did obserue it, but they did commit the digestion of humours wholie to nature. Looke the comment, *Aphorism. 9. Lib. 2.* When any man will purge the body, it behouerh to make it flowing. Truly *Hippocrates* would do thus, saying, that the concoct and digest matter ought to be healed and moued, and not the crude and raw matter. And *Galen ad Glauconem libro primo*, speaking of the cure of *Tertiana Notha*, would not haue Wormewood to be giuen till the seuenth day. Therefore it doth appeare for a truth that sirupes ought rather to be giuen for the humours left after a purgation, then for their digestion and coction. But many do obserue and vse, that humors being grosse and clammy and viscous, may by sirupes that do attenuate, cut, and deuide, be prepared and made easie to auoiding and purging; they call this digesting of humours. Cold and cleauing humours are prepared with sirupes that be hote, cutting and scouring; as to digest rheumy matter, such as is a feauer quotidian, and to prepare it to the purging, ℞. the fiue rootes apertiue, made cleane, and tempered in vineger foure houres, ana. ℥.ß. or ʒ.iij. or the rinds of the fiue roots, Origan, Calamint, Hysope, Betony, and Germander, ana. M.ß. of Annise and Fennell, ana ʒ.ß. of Raisins the stones picked out, ʒ. iij. both the Stæchados, ana. p.j. make a decoction. In the strayning, dissolue of good hony quarts iiij. of white Sugar, ℥. iiij. make a sirupe perfectly sodden. Minister three spoonefull with double as much of water of Liquorice, or with Prisan, or with water of Raisins or Annise. Humours that be moueable and thin, must be prepared to the auoiding and purging by sirupes that do make thicke and let the mouing, which humours if they be carried to the waies of expulsion, or be kept and contained in the waies and conduits by which an apt and ready expulsion may be made of them, then they may be auoided without any preparatiue. But if those humors be restrained and kept out of the places aforesaid, then they shall be rectified and remedied with cold sirupes, the making whereof doth follow.

A sirupe digesting of rheumy matter.

A sirupe against thinne and moueable humours.

℞. sirupes of Purslaine, Sorrell, Endiue, Nenuphar, of Ribes, of Barberies, of *Agresta*, of Quinces, of Roses, take of one of these or mo, ℥.vj. minister it with double as much of well water soddden. There may also conueniently be made a lulep in this wise. ℞ sirupes of Roses, Purslaine & Sorrell, ana. ℥.j.ß. or ℥.ij. water of Roses, *Arnoglossa*, Succory, or Endiue, or Purslaine, or Sorrell, ana ʒ. ij. water sodden or burnt, specially if fluxe of the bellie be present,

A sirupe to make humors grosse and thicke.

Note. ℥.vj. make a Iulep clarified, and aromatized with ʒ.ij. of Cinamon elect Furthermore, if those humours do not make and cause fluxe of the belly, but being inflamed do begin a feauer, then neither sirupes stipticke nor waters are to be vsed, but rather cold sirupes lacking stipticity, as be sirupes of Endiue, Purslaine, Violets, of *Nymphæa* called water Lillies, of Maidenhaire But if we do suppose that there ought to be a greater extinguishing and quenching, that the rotten matter may be driuen out the more easily, we do vse cold sharpe sirupes, as be *Syrupus acetosus simplex*, which is put in both causes, as well hote as cold: also *Oxysaccarum simplex* and *Syrupus de acetositate Citri*, and of Limons, which if the fluxe *Diarrhæa* be present, being raised and caused of such hote humours, then sirupes that be acetose and sharpe are not to be ministred, because they excoriate, rase, and flay; but syrupes of Ribes, Barberies, Quinces, and iuyce of Sorrell may be suffered and giuen, because they haue but meane sharpnesse and acetosity. But against hote humours, make potions of sirupes magistrall in this wise. ℞. Endiue that is yong, or new set, and not growne long, wash it not; *Adiantum*, Maidenhaire, Succory, Purslaine, Lettuce, Singreen, Scarioll, Plantaine, of all, or of some of them, two or three, ana. M.ij. the foure great cold seeds, ana. ʒ.iij. the roote of Succory, the roote of Sorrell, of Gramen, and Nightshade, that is, the lesse Sorrell, called *Solatrum*. ana. halfe an ounce, or ʒ.iij. make a decoction, to which may be added the iuyce of the herbes afore written, cleansed so much, and halfe so much, or halfe as much more as the third part of the decoction. In one pound of the strayning dissolue Sugar Taberzet, ℥.vj of wine of Pomegranates, ℥.j.ß. of vineger, ℥.ß. make a sirupe clarified & aromatized with ℈.ij. of white Saunders, or red, or both, ana. ℈.j. But if thou wilt make the sirupe perfectly concoct and sodden, adde too Sugar, and let it be sodden to the perfection that it may be kept. The vse and ministration must be with double as much of some liquor. as water sodden, water of Liquorice, or the water of some of the herbes aforesaid distilled; yet I do not much praise and allow the vse of distilled waters. But if the sirupe be not perfectly boiled (as is shewed in the first example) it must be giuen by it selfe, and without the administration of any thing else, neither shall the iuyces be put in, which should be put in, in a sirupe perfectly sodden. Like formes and vses may be made of sirupes, rubifying or digesting cold matter. Syrupe of *Epithymum*, sirupe of Fumitory, which is made two waies: one way is of the onely decoction or iuyce of Fumitory, and then it is *Syrupus de Fumiterra simplex*: another way is according to the description of *Mesue*, and such a sirupe hath Myrobalanes, *Cassia*, and many other things: which sirupe is called compound for that cause: sirupe of Buglosse, sirupe of Borage, sirupe of Harts-tongue, which openeth and looseth the stoppings of the spleene, and sirupe of Violets, because it moistneth very much.

A sirupe for melancholie humors.

The simple medicines wherewith these sirupes are compounded be these: Borage and Buglosse, Fumitory, *Lupulus*, *Epithymum* and such like that do help and aide the digestion of such an humor. Out of the aforesaid things may be made sirupes, potions, & Iuleps, decoct and boiled to the satisfying of these intentions and meanings. Oftentimes there be made sirupes laxatiue for the purging and auoiding of the matter that is rheumie and filthy, and also melan-

cholike

cholike matter, when long continuing diseases be bred of them, partly to the digestion of raw matter or humours, and partly to the auoiding and purging of humours which be rotten, as in long feauers.

A sirupe laxatiue against rhumy matter and feauers Notha.

℞. the roote of *Apium*, Fennell and Parcely scraped and made cleane, ana. ʒ.iij. of Hysope, Origan, and Calamint, ana. M.ß. of seede of *Carthamum*, ℥.iij. greene Polypody of the Oke, ℥. ij. of Annise, Fennell and Dill. ana. ʒ.j.ß. of Liquorice scraped, ʒ. iij. of Raisins the stones pulled out, ℥ ß. of the three cordiall floures, ana. p j. make a decoction strained to ℔ j. or ℔. j. ß. in the which infuse new trochiskes of Agaricke, ℥ j ß leaues of Sene cleansed, ℥.ij. after ten houres make a strayning, wringing it strongly, whereto adde sirupe of Violets, *sirupi de Bizantijs*, and white Sugar ana ℥.iiij. make a sirupe perfectly sodden and aromatizate with ʒ.j. of Cinamon elect, and with one sirupe ℞. j. *Xyloaloes*. The dose of this sirupe by meanes of the things that are put into it, may be ℥.j ß. which also the fourth or fifth day, may be giuen with double as much of hydromel, that is, water and hony sodden together, or *aqua Mulsa*, or of some other decoction. By like meanes may the laxatiues entring into this present sirupe be increased or diminished, by reason of the quantity making of the sirupe; for this present sirupe is ordained for 6. or 7. or more doses, therefore the forme and fashion of the proportions being kept, it may be made for 1. 2. 3. or moe doses. Moreouer by like reason a sirupe laxatiue is made for matter cholericke and filthy (as one would say) vitelline, the which causeth feauers hard to be eradicate and taken away.

A sirupe laxatiue against filthy cholerick matter.

℞. the roots of *Apium*, and of Fennell cleansed, and scraped, and tempered in vineger one nights space, ana. ℥. ß. of Hysope, Maidenhaire, *Adiantum*, *Polytricum*, some call it wall-ferne, Harts-tongue, Endiue, Succory ana. M.ß. or M.j. the 4. great cold seedes bruised ana. ʒ.ij. or ʒ.iij. Raisins the stones pulled out, ℥ ß. the three cordiall floures. ana. p.j. make a decoction, in the which infuse Agaricke newly made in trochiskes, ʒ. vj the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥.j. in the straining dissolue sirupe of Maidenhaire and Violets, ana. ℥.iij. of white Sugar, ℥.iiij. make a sirupe perfectly boiled, putting in the end of the strayning of it ℥.ß. of Reubarbe elect infused as it ought to be, which thing after it be strained, let it boile on a soft fire without flame or smoke, vnto the perfection of the decoction. the dose of it is, ℥. ij. or ℥.j.ß. with double as much of the decoction of Endiue, and Succory, or Liquorice, or with double as much of whey made of Goates milke. This sirupe is for fiue or sixe doses. And if the first dose will not satisfie your intent, then you must dissolue somewhat therein that hath power to purge the humour that thou wouldest haue brought out: as for example, ℞ of the sirupes aforesaid, ℥.j.ß. of whey made of Goates milke, ℥ iij. make a dose. And if thereof do not follow the effect that you looke for, adde thereto either of *Cassia fistula*, ℥.ß or of *Diaprunis laxatiue*, ʒ. j or ʒ ij. or *Diaphœnicon* ʒ j.ß. or also some Rewbarbe. You may also do the same in the example of the sirupe made to auoid rheume.

A sirupe against melancholie.

℞. of the iuyces of *Lupuli* (that is) Hops, and of Fumitory, but it is vnpleasant, of Buglosse, of Borage, and of sweete Apples cleansed, ana. ℥.ij. or iij. let them be twise cleansed, either by decoction & clarifying, or by residence of greene Polypody of the Oke, ℥.ij. or iij. of fat Tamarinds, ℥ j. *Epithymũ Cretensis* put

in the end of the decoction, ℥. ij. of *Adiantum.* Harts tongue, and the three cordiall floures ana. p. j. make a decoction strained to quarts iij. in the which infuse the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥.iij.make a straining, and mixe it with the aforesaid iuyces: afterward adde thereto sirupe of Violets, ℥.vj.sirupes of Buglosse, and Sugar, Taberzet, ana. ℥.iij.make a sirupe perfectly sodden, and Aromatizate with, ʒ.j. of Cinamon, and ℈. j. of white Ginger scraped. The dose is two ounces with water of Buglosse, or Hops, or Fumitory, or whey made of milke. And thus much of making sirupes.

CHAP. VI.

Of making Iuleps.

A IVLEP doth not much differ from a sirupe, but that it is lesse boiled then a sirupe is, and because also it is made without the permixtion of any other decoction with it, as sirupes are wont to haue when they are made. Iuleps are made either of water of infusion or distillation, or else of the iuyce of some simple medicine, as thus. ℞ of the water of infusion of Roses, or the water of infusion of Violets, ℥.v.Sugar, ℥ iiij. boile it easily and make a Iulep: minister it with twise or thrise as much of sodden water made cold againe. Or thus. ℞. water of Roses, ℥.viij.of Sugar ℥.iiij.boile them easily and make a Iulep. Or thus. ℞.the iuyce of Roses, or the iuyce of Violets, ℥.vj.Sugar, ℥.iiij. boile them easily and make a Iulep. Likewise Iuleps may be made of other things that do either make warme or hote, or that do open and loose, or that do restraine and bind. But yet Physitions commonly do call a sirupe, dissolued in sodden water, a Iulep: saying, ℞.sirupe of Roses, and the sirupe of Violets, or sirupe of Maidenhaire, or of any other sirupe, ℥.iij of sodden water. ℔.ß. mixe them together and make a Iulep.

CHAP. VII.

Of Dolis, sive Potio.

DOLIS, otherwise called *Potus* or *Potio*, is a medicine laxatiue, dissolued in some kind of liquor, and giuen in drinke. There be of this many differences, because of the diuersitie of humours that they voide and purge. The simple medicines do purge and bring forth rheume or fleame, as be these, *Agaricke, Turbith, Carthamus, Colocynthis*, and other often sought out by *Mesua.* The compounds be *Diaphœnicon, in forma opiatæ, Diacarthami* in the forme of lozenges, *Electuarium de Citro, Electuarium Indum maius & minus, Benedicta,* and *Hiera simplex, Hiera composita,* and such like. But these be compounded, not that they auoide onely one humour alone, but being mixed with another humour, as choler mixt with fleame or melancholy. Medicines are ministred in diuerse formes and fashions: as first in the forme of a potion, for one only dose, or for one time, in the forme of a bole, wherof shall be spoken hereafter; in the forme of an Electuarie liquide, as *Opiatæ*: whole in forme, as lozenges, in the forme of sirupes of Iuleps, also in the forme of powder and pils. ℞.*Diaphœnicon*, ℥.ß. or ʒ.vj if the sicke be strong, dissolue it with the water of the decoction of Liquorice, Raisins and Annise, as much as sufficeth. Make a dose with sirupe of Violets, ʒ.vj. or ℥.j. or dissolue it with common strayning,

The forme of a potion.

ning, and make a dose, or dissolue it with Hydromel, or dissolue it with certain distilled waters, as waters of Hops, Bugloſſe, Succory, or ſuch like; or dissolue it with the decoctiō or broth of a Chicken, or with the whey of milke, or thus: ℞. the three cordiall flowers, ana. one handfull, of Proines Damaſcene, *Iuiubarum* and *Sebeſten*, ana. foure in number, Liquorice ſcraped, ℥.j.ß Anniſe, ʒ.j. make a decoction ſtrained for one doſe: in the which diſſolue *Diaphœnicon*, ℥.ß or ʒ.vj. ſirupe of Violets, ℥.j. and make a doſe. If you will adde to it another Electuarie laxatiue, take of one a quantity away, and adde to as much of another, as where it is ſaid, take of *Diaphœnicon*, ʒ.vj. you may ſay take of *Diaphœnicon* and *Carthamum*, ana. three drams, and ſo likewiſe of other.

℞. Raiſins the ſtones pulled out, ℥.ß. the ſeed of *Carthamum* and Polypody of the Oke, ana. ℥.ß or ʒ.vj. of Anniſe, Fennell, and Liquorice ſcraped, ana. ʒ.j ß. leaues of Hyſope, ʒ.j. make a decoction, in the which infuſe Agarick newly trochiſcate, ʒ.j. or ℈ iiij. or ʒ.j.ß. In the ſtraining diſſolue *Diacarthamum*, or *Diaphœnicon* or *Benedicta*, ʒ.iiij. or ℥.ß. ſirupe of Violets, ℥.j and make a doſe. Theſe things auoid choler: iuyce of Roſes, Violets, Tamarindes, Manna, *Diagredion*, that is, Scammony prepared, *Pſillium*, Reubarbe and Myrobalanes. *Caſſia fiſtula* purgeth as well choler as rheume: iuyce of Roſes and Ireos do bring forth thin choler and yellow water. Compounds to auoid choler are theſe *Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum*, *Diaprunis laxatiuum*, *Diaprunis ſimplex*, trochiskes of Violets, which be ſeldome in vſe.

The forme of a potion or doſe, whoſe decoctiō doth auoid certaine rheume and fleame.

Simples to auoid choler.

Compounds.

℞ of fat Tamarinds, ℥.j. the three cordiall floures, ana. p. ß. Liquorice ſcraped, ʒ.j.ß. of Proines Damaſcene, number vj. make a decoction in a litle quantity of water, in the which let the Tamarinds be ſtrongly wrong out. In the ſtraining diſſolue *Caſſia fiſtula* that is new, ℥.j or ʒ x. make a doſe. In the like decoction you may diſſolue, ℥.ß. or ʒ.vj. of *Diaprunis ſimplex*, with ʒ.j.ß. or ʒ.ij. of *Diaprunis* laxatiue. If it be feared that *Diagredion* will do hurt, and if the ſicke be rich, in the ſtead of *Diaprunis* laxatiue may be diſſolued, ʒ.j. or ℈. iiij. or ʒ.j.ß. of Rewbarbe. Take heede and note, that ſuch a potion is good in cholericke feauers, and in thoſe feuers in which the Frenſie is feared; and truly it is excellent good, for by it is eſchued the auerſion, and alſo the refrigeration and the cooling. In ſtead of this preſent decoction and colature, medicines laxatiue may be diſſolued in a common decoction, or with water of fruits, or with Hydromel, or with waters diſtilled either with Endiue, Succory, Hops, or with the broth of a Chicken, or with the whey of milke. ℞. Raiſins the ſtones picked out, ʒ. iij. Liquorice ſcraped, and Anniſe ſeedes, ana. ʒ.j. Proynes Damaſcene, in number vj. Tamarinds ℥.ß. the three cordiall floures, Succory, yong ſet Endiue, ana. M. j. make a decoction boiled for one doſe, in the which diſſolue new *Caſſia fiſtula*, ℥.j. or ʒ.vj after the ſtraining, infuſe ʒ j. or ℈. iiij. or ʒ j.ß. of Rewbarbe elect as it ought to be, of ſirupe of Violets, ℥.ß. or ℥.j. make a doſe. Giue in the morning before dinner 5. or 6. houres, on that day he is leaſt afflicted. If choler be mixed with fleame, by reaſon of that mixture, let ſuch things as do looſen choler, and ſuch things as diſſolue rheume be mixed together. Spikenard which is wont alwaies to be ioyned with Reubarbe, is vnpleaſant to the belly, for it looſeneth oppilations and ſtoppings vehemently. Alſo it prouoketh vomit, and in women with child,

The forme of a potion looſing and reſoluing choler.

The forme of a common doſe, in the beginning of cholerickefeauers, eſpecially in tertian feuers.

it prouoketh menstruis strongly. Therefore many do thinke that it ought not to be mixed with Rubarb in medicins that are giuen to women with child, or to those which be apt to vomite. For that cause if it be mixed, ʒ.or 4.graines are sufficient for ʒ.j. of Reubarbe. For delicate persons which do abhorre all medicines, make a dose vnder the forme of a sirupe for two or three times, or for one dose after this sort, specially for Tertians exquisite and deinty. ℞. Endiue yong set, and Succory, ana. M.ß. the three cordiall floures, ana.p.ß. Liquorice scraped, ʒ.j.ß Proynes Damascene vj. in number, fat Tamarinds, ʒ.6. Anise, ʒ.ß make a decoction boiled to ℥.iij. or else you may make a decoction for one dose, in which dissolue sirupe of Violets, and Endiue, ana. ʒ. vj. or ℥.ß. of white Sugar, ℥ j. the wringing and straining of ʒ.ij. of Reubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be without Spikenard, make a long sirupe, that is as it were in the forme of an *Apozema* (which is a decoction so called of the Greekes, and vsed of them in stead of our sirupes. Let it be boiled vpon the coales without any smoake long time together, wringing the Reubarbe strongly, being bound in a peece of linnen cloth, clarifie it, and aromatizate it, and make a dose of ℥.j. ß. it may be multiplied for two or three doses (the proportion of all being kept and obserued.) But if you will made a sirupe to last long, seeth it to the perfection, and of that sirupe minister, ℥ j.ß. or ℥.ij. with whey of milke, or with the decoction that serueth for thy purpose. Also you may adde some Sene in the infusion, especially if you thinke choler adust doth reigne, or if you desire a more full and quicke effect of the medicine: ℞. of young set Endiue, of Succory of *Adiantum*, and of Harts-tongue ana. M.j. the foure great cold seeds. ana. ʒ.iij. the seede of *Carthamum*, ℥.j.ß. Polypodie of the Oke, ℥.ij. fat Tamarinds, ℥.j ß. seede of Endiue, Scarioll and Liquorice scraped, ana ʒ.ij. of Raisins the stones plucked out, ʒ. ij. Proynes Damascene 12. in number, the three cordiall floures, ana.p.j. make a decoction of ℔.j. or ℥ viij. in the which infuse the leaues of Sene cleansed, ℥.j ß. Agaricke newly trochiscate, ℥.j. In the strayning of the decoction dissolue sirupe of Violets, and Maidenhaire sirupe, ana. ℥.iij. white Sugar, ℥ ij. make a sirupe boiled vpon a lent fire, without smoke, putting vnto it the straining of ʒ.vj of Rubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be, make a sirupe perfectly boiled and aromatizate with, ʒ.ß. of Cinamon, & ℈.ij. of Red Saunders, reserue it in an earthen or glasen vessell. The dose of the aforesaid sirupe shall be the fourth part of it (that is to say, ℥.ij.) the which may be dissolued with whey of Goats milk, or water of the decoction of the common colature, or with the waters of the decoctiõs of distillations of Succory or Endiue. But *Igorrem* doth not allow distilled waters. And if the aforesaid doses do not sufficiently moue the belly & cause it to be soluble enough, an infusion may conuenintly be added to the second dose, ℈.ij. or ʒ j. of Reubarbe elect, or some *Diaprunis laxatiue*, or *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, as in example. ℞. of the aforesaid sirupe, ℥.ij the straining of two scruples of Reubarbe elect, or *Diaprunis laxatiue*, ʒ.j.℥. or ʒ. ij. of whey made of milke, ℥.ij. or as much as is sufficient, & make a dose. It is to be noted that the aforesaid sirupe ought rather to be giuen and ministred to those that haue *Tertianæ Nothæ* (that is, bastardly Tertian feuers) rather then to those that haue feauers exquisite, dainty, and lawfull; for these be of fewer

A dose vnder the forme of a sirupe for delicate folke.

A dose against bastardly feuers, especially Tertians.

fewer fits, and be ended in a short time. The other be long and of more fits, so that they remaine many times and often from one Equinoctiall to another. To this also the Tertians that be exquisite and pure do come, and are caused of sincere and good choler: and the feauers *Nothæ* and bastardly do come of filthy and vile choler. Here note also that *Carthamus* and *Agaricke* which do auoid and purge rheume, the leaues of Sene which do purge melancholy, and also Rewbarbe, which doth purge choler, may be put together to the aforesaid sirupe, whereby the matter that causeth feauers *Nothæ* of long continuance, is auoided and purged. Also note, that in one day, or in the third or fourth day, one dose ought to be giuen, but more daies must be let passe according to the doctrine of *Auicen de Cura Tertianarum Notharum*. These do purge melancholy: Hops, Fumitory, *Epithymum Cretensis*, Polypodie of the Oke, the leaues of Sene, *lapis Lazuli*, *Myrobalani nigri* or *Indi*, *lapis Armenus*, blacke Hellebore, and a thousand other are to be sought out of *Mesue*. The compounds that purge melancholy be *Catholicon* or *Diacatholicon*, *Diasenæ*, *Catharticon imperiale*, *Hiera Ruffi*, *Confectio Hamech*, *Pilulæ de Fumitoria*, Pils of *lapis Lazulus*, pils of the fiue kinds of Myrobalanes, of *Epithymum*, of Hellebore pils; whereof the dose is ʒ.j. We can or do seldome vse the other compound medicines, for the bitternesse that they haue in taste: All Electuaries (except *Catholicon*) be euill in tasting, & therefore they are confected, & made in forme of potiõs. ℞. Fumitory, & the tops of Hops, ana. M.j. ß the three cordial floures, ana p.j of Raisins the stones picked out, ʒ.iij. or ℥.ß. of greene Polypodie of the Oke, ʒ iij. of *Cuscuta*, & *Epithymum*, ana. ʒ.iij. of Annise and Liquorice scraped, ana. ʒ.j. ß. make a decoction, in which infuse the leaues of Sene made cleane, ʒ.ij. or ʒ.iij. In the straining of the decoctiõ dissolue, *Diacatholicon*, ℥.j. or ʒ.x. sirupe made of Violets, ℥.j. make a dose. In this dose sirupe of Violets, and the cordiall floures are put in, that they may temperate the drinesse of Sene and *Epithymum*. If we will more diligently purge melancholie, we do put in *Hierapicra Ruffi*, whose dose is, ʒ.ß. in which Hellebore is entred, which is not in vse at Paris Or else take *confectio Hamech*, ʒ.ß. the which is exceeding bitter for the plenty of *Coloquintida* that is therein. Remember and note, that medicines loosing and purging choler, or rather melancholy, may conueniently be dissolued with the whey of Goates milke, or with the water of the decoction or infusion of the things aforesaid, putting in the dose before written, as in example. ℞. of all those or of part of those good things which be written in the dose aforesaid, afterward make a decoction in the whey of Goates milke, and in the decoction infuse the leaues of Sene, &c. And with some of the aforesaid Electuaries confect and make a dose according to the nature and strength of the sicke person: or thus. ℞. the leaues of Sene made cleane, ʒ. iij. infuse them in the whey of Goates milke all one night, and in the strayning of the decoction dissolue *Catholicon*, ℥.j, or ʒ.x. or ℥.j ß, and make a potion. Note that *Epithymum* doth sustaine and maintaine a decoction: and therefore we may write thus, ℞, *Epithymum Cretensis*, ℥.j. let it boile with whey of Goates milke, afterward straine it, & wring it out strongly, and with ℥.i. of sirupes of Violets make a dose, which if it seeme not to be sufficient, adde to it some *Catholicon*. *Galen* doth counsell to take this potion,

Simples to purge melancholy humour.

The forme of a dose against melancholie.

13. *Therapeut.* in which place he considereth, that Cankers, and all melancholike diseases ought to be taken heed of before hand, and to be eschued: but he putteth in but ʒ.iiij. which drams do shew to be of no effect, because, (as I thinke) we haue not the good *Epithymum*, and therefore we take an ounce for the quantity, whereby the working of it may be the quicker and the better. All others do follow this sentence, which in their bookes of practises or abridgements haue remembred this against the *Elephantia*, which is cõmonly called the Leprie, and is now made for the cure of *Elephantiasis*. Many do thinke and iudge that the decoction of an old cocke is very good and wholesome for diseases growne and begun, as well of melancholy, as also of rheume and fleame. The chiefe vse of it is against the paines of the cholike, caused of rheume, & partly of winde, & also against diseases of the breast, as difficulty in breathing, and moreoner against diseases of the ioynts caused of cold matter. It is prepared and made against the cholicke, caused partly of rheume, and partly of ventosity and wind. It is thus as followeth. ℞. of Hysope, Calamint, ana. M.j. Raisins the stones picked out, ℥. j.ß. of Annise, Fennell, and *Carui*, ana. ʒ.vj. of the seed of *Carthamũ*, ℥.ij. of greene Polypodie of the Oke, ℥.j.ß. the three cordiall floures, ana. p.j. of the floures of Cammomill, p.ß. and make a decoction, putting all together into the belly of an old Cocke, prepared as it ought to be; infuse in the end of the decoction, the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥.ij.ß. of Agaricke newly trochiscate, ʒ. x. make a decoction of two pound, and reserue it to your vse. ℞. of the aforesaid decoction, ℥. iiij. sirupe of Violets, ℥. j.ß. make a dose. Note that if the sicke person be strong and stubburne, there may be put in the dissoluing some *Diaphœnicon*, as ʒ.j.ß. or ʒ. ij. or as much *Benedicta*. Take heed also, for Agaricke (as many do thinke and iudge) is suspected, and thought to be hurtfull to those that haue the cholicke: because that if the substance of it be throwne in with a clister, the lightnesse of his substance cleauing to the guttes, doth pricke them and grieue them, and doth prouoke a fluxe also, and oftentimes doth cause one to desire to sit long at the siege, because that it hath vertue and power to draw downe humours from the farre parts of the body; and therefore *Democritus* (as *Mesua* doth witnesse) called it *Medicinam familiæ*, the medicine of his familie or houshold. Therefore it may not well be giuen to those that haue paine in the bowels, because it maketh a fluxe that would not be vnlesse that caused, and therefore I counsell in such cases, to take away Agaricke. Furthermore note, that Cammomill may aptly and well be put into those decoctions, although the vse of it is rare, and seldone seeme among Physitions, yet it is manifest, that the onely decoction of it in the broth of a Chicken or Capon, is excellent profitable against all inward griefes, and specially for those which haue the Cholicke and the Frensie (as many hane proued it, to the great preseruation of their health.) The water of the distillation of Cammomill is ministred for the same purpose, but yet the decoction thereof is of more and better effect then the distillation of it. The bitternes of the decoction may be mitigated with Sugar, if it be for delicate persons. Also the decoction of a Cocke may conueniently be giuen for diseases in the breast and of *Dyspnœa*, if medicines pectorall be decoct with it: as, ℞. of Hysope, of *Enula Campana*, of

The decoction of an old Cocke

of each the third part of a handfull, of Sauory the fourth part of a handfull, of Horſehoofe, called *Vngula caballina*, which is an herbe called of ſome, little Clote, whereof you may take a good handfull; ſeed of *Carthamum*, and greene Polypodie of the Oke, ana ℥.ij. of Aniſe and liquorice ſcraped, ana ℥ß. roots of Ireos, and rootes of *Enula*, ana. ʒ.iij. or ℥.ß. of fat Figs not putrified, foure or ſixe in number; of fat Dates, the skins and filmes taken away, foure in number, of Iuiubes and Sebeſten, ana. twelue in number, of Raiſins the ſtones picked out, ℥.j. the three cordiall floures, ana. p.j. make a decoction in the belly of an old Cocke that is hunted, prepared and dreſſed as it ought to be, putting into it at the end, of Agaricke and of the leaues of Sene, as much as you thinke will be ſufficient for your purpoſe: but note, that here Agaricke may conueniently be vſed and miniſtred. There are other medicines alſo which be made againſt all ſuperfluities in other formes, that is to ſay, in the forme of liquide Electuaries, that is, *ad formam Opiatæ*: or in forme whole, that is, like an Electuarie made in lozenges or in tables.

CHAP. VIII.

Of making Bolus.

BOLVS in Engliſh is called a morſell. It is a medicine laxatiue, in forme and faſhion it is meanely whole, and it is ſwallowed by little gobbets. It is made of diuerſe things, by reaſon of auoiding and purging diuerſe humours: but the plaineſt and ſimpleſt way of making it, is of *Medulla*, *Caſſia fiſtula*, new drawne out of a cane or reede, ſixes drammes or an ounce, of Sugar ſo much as ſufficeth, and make a bole. But if it be feared that *Caſſia* will do hurt, as if great paine be in the bowels, whereby many times it prouoketh ſwounding, as ſome do that haue but weake and tender bowels: to ſuch *Caſſia* is not to be miniſtred, neither by bole nor by cliſters. And for that cauſe the ſicke perſon muſt be asked how he feeleth himſelfe before *Caſſia* be miniſtred vnto him. Truly many Authors do thinke, that this hurt which *Caſſia* may bring, may be taken away, if there be added to it ſome graines of Barberies, or Sugar roſet: for they are of this mind, that through their ſtipticity the bellie and the bowels are ſtrengthened, and the paine impedite and letted, which *Caſſia* doth cauſe by his clamminesſe and mollifying ſoftneſſe. There be others that do mixe ſome laxatiue with *Caſſia*, that it may quicken the flowneſſe of his operation, & that it deſcending may the ſooner ſlide away & be auoided. Boles chiefly are thus ordained & made, being very profitable remedies againſt the diſeaſes of the reynes. ℞. *Medulla Caſſiæ fiſtulæ* dewly drawne, ℥.j. or ʒ.x. the graines, that is, the kernels, of Barberies, ℈.ß. and with Sugar roſet, make a bole. Others do adde. ℈.ij. or ʒ.j or ʒ.ij. of *Diaprunis laxatiuæ*, or *Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum*: as in example following. ℞. *Medulla Caſſiæ fiſtulæ* newly drawn, ʒ.vj. of *Diaprunis laxatiuæ*, ʒ.ij of Sugar roſet tabulate as much as ſufficeth, make a bole. Note that many, becauſe of the ventoſity which *Caſſia* doth engender in the bowels, they adde to the bole powder of Aniſe, ℈.j. or ʒß. which auaileth much. ℞. *Caſſiæ fiſtulæ* newly drawne out of a cane or reede, ʒ.iij. or ℥.j. the ſoft matter of fat *Tamarindes*, ʒ.j.ß. of choſen Rewbarbe, ʒß. or ℈.ij. or ʒ.j. Sugar as much as ſufficeth, make a bole. If the ſicke perſon be

The forme of a bole purging choler.

poore, in ſtead of Rewbarbe, make a bole with ℥.ß. or ʒ.vj of *Caſſia*, and ʒ.ij. of *Diaprunis laxatiuæ*, and with Sugar. ℞.*Catholicon*, ℥.j. or ʒ. x. and with white Sugar make a bole: or thus. ℞.*Catholicon*, ℥.ß. or ʒ.vj. of *Confectio Hamech*, ʒ.j. or ʒ.j.ß. and with Sugar make a bole.

The forme of a doſe againſt melancholy.

CHAP. IX.

Of making Pils.

PILLES are miniſtred for the auoiding of euery humour: viz. againſt rheume or fleame reigning, and alſo againſt *cholera notha*, which is vile and filthy choler hauing dominion in man. *Pilulæ Aggregatiuæ* after the deſcription of *Meſuæ, de Agarico, de Rheubarbaro; Stomachicæ, de Hiera ſimplici, de Hiera compoſita*, which reſpecteth the head; *Cocciæ* or *Cocchiæ*, which are ſo called of *Granis Cocci* and not of the head, as ſome thinke; *Pilulæ aureæ Elephanginæ, Sine quibus, de Hermodactylis maior & minor, de Serapina, de Sarcolla:* Truly the foure kinds of pils laſt recited, are moſt appropriate and agreeing againſt corrupt and ſtinking humours: of the which vertue alſo be *Arthreticæ maiores & minores* when rheume reigneth, but theſe when choler reigneth in the diſeates of the ioynts; then alſo the pils of *Hermodactylis maior* and *minor* are dedicated and miniſtred. Pils that do onely void pure choler, and purge it, there are a thouſand to be found, but many of them haue more reſpect to the auoiding of filthy and baſtardly choler, or that which is greatly mixed with rheume, as *Pilulæ de Rheubarbaro, de Hiera ſimplici, Aggregatiuæ de Agarico, Ante cibum, Imperiales.* In a manner the chiefe doſe of Pils is one dramme and a halfe, of which make nine pils, and with ſome conuenient ſirupe, as ſirupe of Endiue, ſirupe of Maidenhaire, ſirupe of *Stæchados*, or alſo with *Oxymel* or *Hydromel*, or with ſome other licour.

CHAP. X.

Of making Apozema.

AN *Apozema* is a decoction of medicines gently made for the concoction and digeſtion of humours, or for preparation of them, and ſometime for euacuation and purging. It may be made diuerſe, and for diuerſe intents and purpoſes: as to make hote and to make cold, to make moiſt and to make drie, to looſen and open, to reſtraine and bind, too attenuate and make thinne, to make groſſe and thicke, to prouoke menſtruis and vrine. Of medicines particular and conuenient, and of their roots, fruites, and ſeeds (and other, as it ſhall ſeeme meete and expedient for your purpoſe.) In effect an *Apozema* doth not differ from a ſirupe, but in boiling; for ſirupes are wont to be boyled long, and to the perfection, but an *Apozema* is boiled eaſily and little. Therefore ſirupes may be long kept, and Apozemes may be kept but a few daies. ℞.of Succory, Endiue, *Cuſcuta* and *Adiantum*, ana.M.ß, of the rootes of Sorrell, and of Gramen, ana.ʒ.ß. the foure great cold ſeedes made cleane, ana.ʒ.j. of the three cordiall flowers, ana.p.j. make a decoction of ℔.ß. In the ſtraining diſſolue ſirupes of Violets, of *Syrupus acetoſus*, or ſirupes of Limons, or alſo white Sugar, ℥.iij. and make an *Apozema*, and clarifie it, and aromatizate it with ℈.ij. or ʒ.j. of Cinamon elect for two doſes, likewiſe *Apozema* may be made againſt other

The forme of an Apozeme againſt cholericke humours.

ther humours, the matter and effect whereof must be sought out of the head of the sirupes. Note that in the confection and making of *Apozema*, for ℥.ij. or at the most for ℥.iij. of the decoctiõ, it is sufficient to adde, ℥.j. of Sugar or sirupe. Also there be made Apozemes laxatiue, as there be sirupes laxatiue, adding to laxatiue things in that decoction, or infusing them in it after the decoction is made. Looke in the title of sirupes for the example, for they be like them (this onely excepted as we said before,) that an *Apozema* after the dissoluing of the Sugar or sirupe in it, ought not to be boiled any longer.

CHAP. XI.

Of making Mulsio.

MVLSIO is made of seedes cleansed, or of fruites, or of both sometime, to quench the thirst, and the inflammation of the breast and lungs, and against diseases of the reines and the bladder, or against *Ischuria*, that is, retention and witholding of vrine, and of the strangury, that is, the voyding of humours by causing of vrine to issue out by drops with burning in the yard. ℞. of the 4. great cold seeds new and cleane, ana. ℥. iij. or ℥. ß. of sweete Almonds blanched in cold water, ℥ j. beate altogether in a stone mortar with wel water first sodden, and make a decoction of ℔.j. and reserue it & keepe it in a glasen vessell. The aforesaid *Mulsio* is good against the burning of the vrine, or the strangury, if ℥.iiij. or vj. be giuen in the morning 3. or 4. houres before dinner, and 2. or 3. houres before supper, the same quantity of the premises, or a little lesse, with one Lozenge of *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, in which are put in the aforesaid seeds, and Gums, and many other things. But if in the aforesaid cases we thinke that there be greater need of infrigidation and cooling, mixe with your *Mulsio* the seedes of Purslaine, of Lettuce, and white Poppie. But in the diseases of the breast, adde to new Pine apples, sweete Almonds, & fresh Figges that be not putrified, with one Lozenge of *Electuarium Diairis simplicis*, or *Diairis Solomonis*; let it be ministred straight way without delay. Also with the aforesaid *Mulsio*, there may conueniently be mixed some quantity of Sugar, or some sirupe apt and meete for the purpose (as *Ruellius* was wont to make against the filthie matter, and corrupt bloud in the vrine of a man:) as thus. ℞. the seed of white Poppie and the foure great cold seedes, of sweete Almonds, ana. ℥. ß. stampe all these in a mortar with as much water of the decoction of Liquorice as sufficeth. In the straining dissolue the sirupe of Violets, of Maidenhaire, and of Myrtles, ana. ℥.j. make a *Mulsio* for two times, and let the grieued person take it in the morning foure houres before dinner.

The forme of Mulsio.

CHAP. XII.

Of making Powders.

A POVVDER is made of seedes, rootes, and minerals, powdred and beaten finely, and Sugar put to them that they may be the more pleasant. Powders be ministred for many causes, and intents, whereof their most common ministration is after meate to helpe digestion, or to stop and keepe downe vapours which ascend and are caried vp into the braine, or else for both causes,

A powder to help digestion.

as it often chanceth. ℞. the seedes of Annise, and Fennell, ana. ℥.j. the seede of Citron, Cinamon, Liquorice, and Roses, ana. one scruple, of chosen Pearles and the scraping of Yuorie, ana. ʒ. ß. of Sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a fine powder, whereof minister after meate one spoonefull: and looke what powder is so made to stop and keepe downe vapours, euen the same is good to helpe digestion, as is this that followeth. ℞. Coriander prepared, ℥. j. ß. the scraping of Yuorie, red Corall, the horne of a Hart burned, ana. ℈. j. of Cinamon ℈. ß. of Sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a powder, which may be giuen after meate. Also they are good for many other things, as for wormes in children, for binding in the belly, and for strength, and against the plague coming of the owne proper matter. These powders are to be ministred before meate, some alone, some with wine or vpon tostes of bread wet in wine. Sometime they are giuen for the corroboration and strengthening of all vertues, in malignant feauers, and in great imbecillity and weaknesse of strength. ℞. the scraping of an Vnicornes horne graines 4. 5. or 6. the scraping of Yuory, of chosen Pearles, and of Harts horne, ana. gr. 6. seed of Citron, and *Carduus benedictus*, ana. gran. 4. and make a fine powder, which may be giuen with conuenient liquor, as with white wine, distillation restoratiue, water of Scabious, of Buglosse, or of some other like. And such powders for the most part are ministred about midnight, or early in the morning. There may also be made powders laxatiue, as is Diasene, and Diaturbith, and the powder of *Electuarium Diacarthami*, to the which ought to be added three times, or foure times as much Sugar; and they may be ministred being dissolued in the decoction of a Chicken, or of Liquorice or of Ptisan. But yet these powders are seldome vsed among practitioners.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Electuaries, and Conserues: of Lozenges, and Manus Christi.

AN Electuary is ordained and made two waies, that is, either liquide, as in *Forma Opiatæ*, or whole, as in tables or lozengs; or in fashion foure square and long, which they call *Manus Christi*. Electuaries truly are ministred to corroborate and strengthen, & for that cause they be called *Ionica*, as affoording strength to the members, that is to say, they roborate and strengthen the vertues naturall, vitall, and animall. If they be confect and made to strengthen the naturall faculties and vertues, then they must be administred to a fasting stomack. If the vertue digestiue be weake through coldnesse, minister them after meate. But if any matter arise through moistnesse, then minister one houre or two before meate, that they may alter the temperature, and drie vp the vnwholesome substance. But if the vertue vitall requireth strengthening, you may minister them very well in a manner at all houres; but if you intend to strengthen the vertue animall, you may conueniently minister in the houre of sleepe or about midnight. The formes of Electuaries are in this order as followeth, and first, of a liquide Electuarie which is profitable to strengthen the naturall vertue when the substance of the belly is made feeble by coldnesse & moistnes. ℞. of the powder of *Electuarium Aromatici maioris* (which *Gabriel* describeth)

An Electuary strengthening the naturall vertue.

ſcribeth) ℥.ij.powder of *Electuariũ aromaticũ Diacalaminthi*, ℥.j.of Diatrion piperion, ℈.ij.of *Conſerua Anthos*, that is, of flowers of Roſemary, & of Roſes, ana.℥.ß.of Sugar taberzet, ℥.j.ß.of ſirupe of Mints as much as ſufficeth, make a liquid Electuary in *forma Opiatæ*, and miniſter it before dinner or breakfaſt an houre or an houre and halfe, or two houres: the doſe is, ℥.ß.or rather ℥.ij. *Electuarium aromaticum roſatum* being miniſtred faſting, taketh away all corrupt and rotten humidities, and being miniſtred after meate, it ſtrengtheneth the vertue digeſtiue. Now followeth the forme of a whole or hard Electuarie made in Lozenges, or faſhioned like *Manus Chriſti*, againſt hote diſtemper of the liuer, and againſt obſtructions of the ſame, as thus, ℞. of the powder of *Tria Sandolorum*, ℥.ij. the powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ℥.j.of conſerues of Succory and Roſes, ana. ℥.j.ß. of Sugar taberzet or white Sugar diſſolued in water of Succory, or Endiue, as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozēges of the weight of ℥.ij.or ℥.ij.ß.or ℥.iij.miniſter one before meate. Many times conſerues are not put in, but onely powders. The Apothecaries are wont for euery draghme of powder, to put to ℥.j. of Sugar. But if you will make the Electuarie more ſtrong, you may well take a draghme and a halfe of powder, for ℥.j.of Sugar. If the ſtomacke be troubled with the preſence of melancholy abounding and flowing to it, either through the vice of the liuer that multiplyeth it, or by diſeaſes of the ſpleene, as be ſtoppings which hinder the receipt thereof: then make an hard Electuarie, or in *forma Opiatæ*, with things following, as in example. ℞.of the powder of *Electuarium lætificans Galeni*, ℥.iij. the powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton calidum*, ℥ j.the powders of the Electuaries of *Aromatibus*, or of *Gemmis*, or *Diamoſchi dulcis*, or *Diambræ* may be put in, ſeeing that they haue the ſame vertue: of conſerues of Bugloſſe, and Borage, and Violets, ana.℥.j.ß.the barke of Citron ſeaſoned, ℥ j.of as much white Sugar diſſolued in water of Bugloſſe or Borage, as ſufficeth; make an Electuary in Lozenges, or in little gobbets, or like *Manus Chriſti*, in weight ℥ iij.or ℥ ß. And if you will make it in the forme of a liquide Electuary, put to it twiſe or thriſe as much more of the conſerues, and ſome powder of white Sugar, or Sugar roſate, that is to ſay, ℥ ij as is ſhewed in the example aforeſaid, with ſome ſirupe hauing reſpect to the melancholicke humour; as is ſirupe of Bugloſſe, or Borage, of Roſes, of Harts tongue, of *Epithymum*, of Fumitory, of which adde to as much as ſufficeth: my meaning is, that it may be in a liquido forme.

An Electuary againſt hote diſtemper of the liuer.

An Electuary againſt melancholy.

An Electuary for the ſtrong ſtopping of the liuer or the ſpleene, wherein there is danger of the Dropſie, or in the breeding of *Cachexia*, that is, a ſpice of conſumption: ſuch an Electuarie (I ſay) is made of the powders of the Electuaries, *Diagalangæ*, *Diacucumeris*, *Diacapparis*, *Dialaccæ*, and of conſerues; which if you will commixe together, conſerues of Succory may conueniently be mixed with them. Note alſo that Electuaries be made of Trochisks, or of powder of Trochikes, hauing reſpect to the diſeaſe, as in a hote cauſe take *Trochiſci Diarrhodon*, Trochiskes of *Carolus*, Trochiskes of Bolearmoniacke, of *Terra ſigillata* (ſpecially if we would reſtraine or bind) Trochiskes of *Carabe*, if we would ſtop the fluxe of bloud. But if we would open or looſen the obſtructions of the liuer or ſpleene, we muſt bring this to paſſe with Trochiskes of Rewbarbe, or of *Capparis* Electuaries reſpecting the vertue vitall, if it be aggrieued

with cold, may be made of *Electuarium Diambræ*, *Diamusci dulcis*, *Electuariũ de Gemmis*, and *Aromaticum nardinum*, *Aromaticum muscatum*, *Aromaticum Rosatum maioris Gabrielis*, *Lætificans Galeni* or *Rasis*, *Electuarium Conciliatoris*, of Alkermes confection and making. Conserues for the same intent be these: Conserues of Roses, Bugloſſe, Borage, Anthos, barkes of Citron, Ginger condite, Orenges condite, and other of that sort. If the vertue vitall be wearied, and laboureth of heat, take the Electuarie *Rosata nouella*, *Electuarium trium Sandalorum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, vse them often. These be the conserues that be good, conserues of Roses, of Violets, of Bugloſſe, and of Borage, and also of *Nimphæa* or *Nenuphar*, that is, water Lillies. If the cough be present, and if the humour contained in the breast be hote, flowing and thinne, if you will cause it to auoid and come forth, minister *Diatragacanthum frigidum*: if the humour be clammish and thicke, minister *Diatragacanthum calidum*, and *Diairis simplex*, or *Diairis Salomonis*. And if there be suspition of venimous substance, then with the powders of Electuaries cold or hote, which do resist poyson, we do commixe Maces, and Muske, *Zedoaria*, Saffron, Cinamon, and *Xyloaloes* in cold causes. But in hote causes there may conueniently be mixed Pearls, Coral, Christal, Roses and *Camphora*. In causes mingled one with another, either hote or cold, by a certaine property, these do corroborate and strengthen and defend, Pearles, seede of Citron, roote of Tormentill, *Tunici* and *Dictamus*, the bone of the Harts heart one in number, or if you will weigh it, ℈.j. or ʒ.ß. as in this example following against a pestilentiall feauer. ℞. the powder of the Electuarie of *Diamargariton frigidum*, ʒ.j.ß. or white shining Pearles elect and powdred in a marble mortar, ℈.j. of *Camphora*, gran.ij or else Trochiskes of *Camphora*, ℈.j. or ℈.ß. the rootes of *Dictamus*, of Tormentill, and of *Tunici*, and the barks of Citron, ana. ℈.j. of conserues of Bugloſſe, Borage, *Nimphæa*, and Roses, take of these either one, two, or three, or all, to the quãtity of two or three dragmes: of white Sugar dissolued in water of Roses, or of Bugloſſe, or Borage, as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or make a liquid Electuarie in the forme aforesaid. ℞. the three kinds of Saunders, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana. ℈.j. the bone of the Harts heart one in nũber, Sugar Rosate tabulate, of white Sugar dissolued in Rose water as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie, gild it with leaues of pure gold in weight, ℥.ß. Also there be made Electuaries laxatiue against all superfluities and diseases, that together with the purging we may also strengthen, as in example, against long diseases coming of rheume, or some clammy humor breeding the cough, ℞. *Cassia* that is new, ʒ.ij.ß. *Diacarthami*, ʒ.vj. new *Penidios*, and *Diairis simplex*, ana. ℥ ß. of conserues of Violets, ʒ.iij. of sweete Annise powdred, and powder of Liquorice, ana. ʒ. ß. sirupe of Violets as much as sufficeth: make a liquide Electuarie, in *forma Opiatæ*. The dose is, ℥.j. or ʒ.x. or at the most ℥.j.ß. the which may be ministred an houre, or an houre and a halfe (swallowing it) or he may take it foure houres before dinner, because it may not conueniently be giuen a little before meat, because of the *Diacarthamum* which hath *Diagridium* in it. Also you may dissolue it in the broth of a chicken, or in Ptisan, or in a common pectoral decoction, and make a potion, and minister it foure or fiue houres

An Electuary for the vertue vitall.

An Electuary against a pestilent feauer.

An Electuary for the vertue animall, in a hote cause.

An Electuary against diseases of the breast, and against the cough.

houres before meate, And this note, that you must appoint the wayes and meanes of the ministration of Physicke, according as you see the nature and condition of the sicke person. Such Electuaries which may be brought into a powder, are made in Lozenges or Boles of laxatiue medicines that be pleasant in taste, the forme and fashion whereof may be knowne in taking *Diacarthamum*, and *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, after which fashion you may make other very meete and seruing for your purpose.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of making Conditum, and Conserua.

CONDITA be made as Electuaries be made, to strengthen the might, and the primitiue aud worthiest members. They rather haue respect to the substance and matter or breathing, then to the beauty and soundnesse of the flesh. But forasmuch as the weaknesse of strength, causeth sores and diseases to grow in their instruments, therefore it is ministred to thē that begin to recouer and wax strong. ℞. *Conserua Anthos*, that is, of Rosemary, conserue of Borage, Buglosse, Maidenhaire, and Succory, ana. ℥.ij the Barke of Citron condite, ℥.j. ß. the powder of *Electuarium plirisarcoticō*, the powder of *Electuarium Ducis*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triasandali*, ana. ℥. ß. the leaues of gold in number vj. of white Sugar as much as sufficeth, & make a *Conditum*. Of the same powders of Electuaries is made a whole and a hard *Conditum*, as thus. ℞. the powder of *Electuarium Plirisarcoticon*, the powder of *Dianthos*, the powder of *Ducis*, *Diarrhodō Abbatis*, and *Triasandali*, ana. ℈.ij. conserues of Roses & Succory, ana. ℥.j. white Sugar dissolued in Rose water, as much as sufficeth, make an Electuary in Lozenges or morsels like vnto *Manus Christi*, of the weight of ℥.ij. In like proportion may condites or Electuaries be made to strengthen all kind of vertues, as in example. If onely the vertue vitall be weake, then take Electuaries & conserues either hote or cold, hauing respect to the vertue, according as the owne distemper or the cause of it desireth. Now there followeth these hote Electuaries hauing respect to the vertue vitall: *Electuarium Diambræ*, *Diamargariton calidum*, *Diamuscum amarum*, *Diamuscum dulce*, *de Gēmis*, *lætificans Galeni*. Cold Electuaries, *Electuariū Diamargariton frigidum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, which be temperate, *Triasandali*. Conserues respecting both the distempers, that is, hot & cold: as *Conseruæ rosarū*, *Boraginis*, *Buglossæ*, *Violarum*. Cold conserues, *Conseruæ Nimpheæ*, *Violarum*. Hot *Condita* respecting the vertue vitall, as, *Cortex Citri conditus*, which may be ministred in both cases, *Confectio de Cinamomo*, *confectio de Xyloaloe*, *cōfectio Alkermes*, which is cōmon to the Physitions: of *Montispessulari*, Ginger condite, peares condite, apples condite, & so for other. Hote Electuaries for the vertue annimal be these, *Plirisarcoticō*, *Dianthos*, *Diamuscum dulce & amarum*, *Mithridatū* and *Triacle*, which be *opiatæ*, that is liquid. Hote conserues respecting the vertue animall be these, *conseruæ Anthos*, *Acori*, *Rosarū*, which is temperate, almost all *Opiatæ*, that is, liquid things, as *Mithridatum*, *Triacle*, *& Aurea Alexandrina*. Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall be these, *Diacalaminthum*, *Diacuminum*, *Diatrion piperion*, *Aromaticum rosatum maioris*, (which *Gabriel* describeth) *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, which is very temperate, and necessary in both causes,

A conditum to strengthen all vertue and powers.

Hote Electuaries respecting the vertue vitall.

Cold Electuaries.

Condites respecting the vertue vitall.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue animall.

Hote conserues.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall.

Hote conserues respecting the vertue naturall.

Diairis Salomonis, or *simplex Dialacca*, and *Diacucurma*, the which are good against oppilations in the liuer, and against the Dropsie. Hote conserues respecting mightily the vertue naturall be these: *Conserua Eringiorum, Conserua Satirij, Zinziber conditum, cortex Citri conditus*, meate of Quinces condite, Peares condite, and such like.

Cold Electuaries.

Cold Electuaries be these: *Tria sandali, Diatragacanthum frigidum, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Diamargariton frigidum.*

Cold conserues.

Cold conserues be these: *Conserua Violarum, Cichoreæ, Nimpheæ, &c.*

A conditum against the hot distemper of al kindes of veines.

℞. the powder of *Electuarium trium sandalorum*, ℥.ij. the powder of *Diamargariton frigidum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana.℈.ij. conserues of Succory, and Violets, ana.℥.j.ß. white Sugar dissolued in water of Endiue, or Succory, or Roses, as much as sufficeth. Make a condite in Lozenges, in weight ℥.ij. or ℥.iij. or thus: ℞. conserues of Succory, of Violets, of *Nimphæa*, and of Buglosse, ana, ℥.ij.ß. conserue of Roses, ℥.j.ß. powder of *Tria sandali*, & of *Diamargariton frigidum*, ana.℈.iiij. the leaues of Gold viij. in number, white Sugar as much as sufficeth, make a condite: the dose is one siluer spooneful. Many in these condites; where there is suspition of some venimous matter, as in pestilent feauers, or in swounding, they do adde to the seede of Citrō, the seed *Carduus Benedictus*, the roote of *Dictamus*, and Tormentill: and for rich folke of the scraping of Vnicornes horne (although there is no author that maketh mention of it, (but onely the opinion of the common people:) as for example, in the aforesaid *Conditum* take away some portion of the aforesaid Electuaries, that is to say, the third or fourth part, and then let it be in this order as followeth. ℞. of the seed of *Carduus Benedictus*, of the seede of Citron, of the roote of *Dictamus* and Tormentill, ana.℈.j. or ℥.ß. two or three of these may be added. Furthermore Trochiskes are added to Electuaries and Condites, as in example: to stop the fluxe, take Trochiskes of *Diacoralltus, Diarrhodon*, of *Terra sigillata*, of Bolearmoniacke, and of *Carabe*. And to keepe the temperature of the heart, take Trochiskes of *Camphora*, of the which take as much in quantity as the powders of the Electuaries be, when there is no Sugar put into them.

Another for the same distemper.

CHAP. XV.

Of making Pasta Regia or Mazapane.

PASTA *Regia* is a confection, so called by the Physitions of late time, which is especially ordained for diseases of the breast, or to driue away the causes of leannesse: the forme and making whereof doth follow, being very effectuall against both the causes, that is, the diseases of the breast and the lungs, and against leannesse: as thus. ℞. sweete Almonds blanched, ℥.iij. of new Pines cleansed, and tempered ten houres in water of Scabious, or of *Enula campana*, or in some other meete for this purpose, ℥.ß. of *Pistacium*, that is, a kinde of nuttes; let them be new cleansed, and tempered one day in some of the aforesaid waters, ℥.j. *Amylum*, *Diatragacanthum*, and of Gumme Arabicke, ana.℥.ß. of the meate of Dates, Prunes Damascene, and Sebesten, & Raisins, one or else more of these, to the quantity of one ounce, white Sugar dissolued in Well water, or in Rose water, or in water of *Enula*, as much as sufficeth; make a *Pasta Regia*, and cut it in fashion like a water

or

or else make it in litle gobbets. Also sometime the great seeds (the barkes being picked off) are put into them.

CHAP. XVI.

Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.

A LOHOCH or *Ecligma* is a medicine that must not be eaten or chewed, but it must melt in the mouth, and distill downe to the stomacke by litle and litle. It is good against diseases of the breast and the lungs, (as is) *Dyspneas Apneas*, short and hard breathings, sighings and coughes, whether it cometh by heaping of matter together, or by falling downe of some moist substance (as be catarrhes, and rheume, which chance ostentimes. ℞. *Electuariũ Diairis Salomonis & Diairis simplex*, ana. ℥.vj. Lohoch *de Pino*, ℥.j conserue of *Enula campana*, ℥.ß. *Oxymel Scylliticum* as much as sufficeth. Make a Lohoch & let the sicke vse it with a Liquorice sticke: licking or swallowing a little at once. If there be greater need of detersion and scouring, then there is of incision and cutting, you must augment and increase the quantity of the scouring receipts, & in stead of *Oxymel Scylliticum* put too Syrupe of Liquorice, or of Horehound called *Prassium*, or of Iuiubes, or elle of Hysope: many do thinke syrupe of Hysope to be absterstue, only for the saying of *Auicen*, which (*as Mesua* declareth) is vnlike to be true. Lohoch *compositum*, Lohoch *de Pino*, Lohoch *de caulibus*, *sanum* and *expertum*, Lohoch *de Scylla*, these may conueniently be ministred by themselues. But when a feauer is present (as in the pleurisie) then to auoid and bring out from the breast the materiall cause that floweth, and partly for the matter that is already flowne, we may make a Lohoch after this sort and fashion. ℞. of *Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi*, ℥ 2. new Penidies, and white pils, ana. ℥. iiij. Syrupe of Violets, or of Iuiubes, or of both as much as sufficeth, make a Lohoch & vse it with a Liquorice sticke, swallowing it by little and litle. If the matter be partly flowed, and partly flowing, you shall make a Lohoch to correct both after this fashion. ℞. *Electuarium Diairis simplex*, ℥.j. *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, ℥.vj. new Penidies. ℥. iij. Syrupe of Iuiubes, or Hysope, euen as you thinke good, the more to enforce the matter now flowed or flowing, and make a Lohoch. A Lohoch also may be made against defluxion or flowing of humours that be hote and sharpe, or gnawing, causing the cough: that the heate and gnawing of the humour may be stopped, and also that the thinnesse and subtilty thereof may be made thicke and grosse, and the parts to the which the fluxe cometh being subiect and obedient, they may be made safe from any document or hurt (as in example.) ℞. *Electuarium Diatragacanthi frgidi*, ℥.j. Bolearmoniacke washed in Rose water, ℥.ij. Trochiskes of *Terra sigillata*, ℈. ij. Syrupe of Poppy as much as sufficeth, and make a Lohoch. In stead of *Diatragacanthum* may be taken *Diapapauer*, or of each a like quantity. Also Trochiskes of *Carabe* in which is put some *Opium* may be added to them, if there be no cause that *Opium* be suspected to do hurt. These Lohochs be giuen against the Ptisicke in the houre of sleepe; *Electuarium Diapapaueris*, *Lohoch* of Poppy. All the pils of *Mesua* for this vse against diseases of Catarrhe and rheume, may be mixed and giuen the same houres, and for the same intent.

A Lohoch against rheume cõgealed together, clammish, hard & thick.

A Lohoch in the beginning of the pleurisie where the matter floweth.

CHAP. XVII.

Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.

BALNEVM is a baine, the vse whereof was common and often among old practitioners, but now it is rare and seldome, and not at all vsed almost, except it be in certaine diseases, as in an vniuersall Goute, in the Palsey, and in consuming Feauers. But against the Goute and the Palsey naturall baines are conuenient, in the which, although there be penurie and lacke of things, yet we may make things artificially, and cunningly prepared, with boiling together in water, herbes, roots, seeds, floures, and also many mettals, as it shall seeme requisite for the disease. But *Semicupium*, which in Latine is called *Insessum*, is a particular bath, which is applied for paines of the Nefresie, for the Cholicke, and for the Iliacke, so that they come not by reason of an impostume. It is profitable against diseases of the belly and wombe, for it is a conuenient aide and defence to prouoke menstruis, and to amend the distemper of the wombe. Now followeth the forme of *Semicupium*, when we would in the Nefreticke disease, haue the pores and passages of the body enlarged, and made soft and plaine, and also to ceasse the paine as thus: ℞. the rootes of *Althæa*, ℥.iiij. the leaues of *Maluæ*, *Bismaluæ*, and Parietarie, the floures of Cammomill and Melilote, the tops of Dill, ana. M. ij. of Origan, Calamint, Betony, and Sothernwood, ana. M. j. seedes of Flaxe and Fennell ana. ℥.ij. of cleane Branne. p. iiij. boile all these in a bag in sufficient water for a *Semicupium*. Note also that one who hath the Nefresie may enter a bath before he hath receiued a clister. If the paine of the Cholicke or the Nefresie seeme to come of much ventositie, or of a cold humour, which seemeth to haue need of calefaction, and attenuation or thinnesse, with incision and cutting; make a *Semicupium* thus. ℞. Origan, Calamint, tops of Dill, and of Cammomill, ana. M. iiij. Fenugreeke, Carawayes, Annise and Fennell, ana. ℥.ij. Laurell berries, ℥. ß And if there be more sicknesses and causes wrapped in with the aforesaid griefes, you may adde too such medicines as be meete for your purpose, as if there be any need of mollifying & making soft, the leaues of *Maluæ*, *Bismaluæ*, Parietary, and Violets will worke that effect. If you iudge it necessary to make incision, or to open the pores and passages of the body, adde too of the roote of Spinach, *Bruscus*, and *Apium*; knit them in a little bagge, and seeth them for a *Semicupium*. Likewise to prouoke menstruis, make *Insessus* or *Semicupia*, putting in medicines meete and apt to prouoke menstruis, as Mugwort, Sauein, Horehound, *Nux Cupressi*, and Iuniper berries; of all these there may be put in two handfuls.

The forme of Semicupium.

Aliud Semicupium.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Epithema or Fotus.

EPITHEMA is a medicine ordained to lay to the heart or liuer to coole it, & *Fotus* is a medicine nourishing or keeping warme. They are made for many intents & purposes, but chiefly to correct the hote distemper of the liuer, the making whereof is this as ensueth. ℞. the waters of Endiue, Succory, Roses, & Peniroyal, & Nightshade, ana. ℥.iij. of vineger, ℥ j. the powder of *Electuariũ Triasandali*,

Triasandali, ℥.ij.or ℥.j.ß.mixe them for an Epitheme of the liuer with a felt, or a peece of linnen or woollen cloth, or a sponge infused in the aforesaid liquor, and laid against the liuer before meate an houre or an houre and a halfe. Also there is made for the same purpose the like decoction of the herbes, as is of the aforesaid waters. If there be stoppings of the liuer, together with his hote distemper, make an Epitheme after this sort. ℞.Succory both the roote and the herbe, yong set Endiue, Agrimony (which is) Eupatory, ana. M.j. floures of Succory.p.j.the foure great cold seedes, and litle cold seeds, ana. ℥.ß. of Cypresse, ℥.ij of Lupins, ℥.iij.all the Saunders, ana.℥.j.of Squinant.℥.ß.the toppes of Wormewood, M.ß.make a little bagge, and boile it in foure quarts of water, and one of wine, and a litle Vineger, with one onely great heate in an earthen vessell, and make a fomentation in the manner aforesaid: such an Epitheme is very good for diseases depending vpon oppilation or stopping, and misfortune coming by oppilation and stopping, as is a fluxe; and for him that is diseased in the liuer, and for those diseases for the most part which come and go by courses. Also it is good against consumptions, which cause distempers and stoppings of the liuer: moreouer against the beginnings of knobbes and kernelles, to which (if they be come forth) there must be applied mollificatiues, and things that do loosen and vnbinde. Also there be Epithemes that be made for many purposes of the stomacke: first to strengthen the stomacke that it receiue not the superfluities coming from other places, and then the Epitheme is made of stipticke things. Secondly to correct and amend the distemper of the stomacke. And thirdly they serue to cease the paines that are caused by the nature and condition of that griefe: ministring duely to the contrary of the matter, as the cause shall require. The making of the first intent, that the stomacke may be deliuered from flowings of humours to it, and may be preserued safely, that it shall not suffer inflammation, or course of euill humours. ℞. red Roses, p.ij of Arnoglossa and Plantaine, ana. M.ß the toppes of Wormewood, M. j. the third part, all the Saunders, ana ℥.ij. red Corall, ℥ iij. put all these in a little bagge, and make a decoction in sufficient quantity of water with a little Vineger, to which may be added a little Rhenish wine, and make a fomentation. Corall (although it be *Achymum*) yet it is not put into the decoction without great cause; for it profiteth naturally against all diseases of the stomacke, and therefore it ought rather to be beaten into powder. Epithemes for all other intents and purposes, may be described by particular and proper medicines, after the forme of the late described Epitheme. There be Epithemes good for the stomacke made of oile, as oile of Roses, Cammomill, Wormewood, Masticke, and Mirtles. Note that in all Epithemes, for what intent soeuer they be ministred, you must mixe something with them that may preserue and keepe the essence and strength of the member that the Epitheme is laied too, as *Galen* commandeth and teacheth in many places, to be obserued and done likewise in medicines taken inwardly. But *Epithema* and *Fotus* be all one, yet some do make a difference, saying that *Epithema* is onely that which is made of distilled waters and powders mixed together: and *Fotus* is a more generall thing, which is made of the decoction of any kind of herbes, and rootes.

Epitheme.

CHAP. XIX.

Of making Sacculus.

SACCVLVS *videlicet* a litle bagge. It is ministred for the same causes that *Fotus* be vsed for. It is made of herbes, flowers, seedes, and other such like things; they be layed to either drie, or else wet in some liquor. The drie be chiefly made of seedes and herbes: the wet must be first pressed before it be laid to the place. ℞. *Milij vstulati.* p. iiij. *Orobum* (which some thinke to be tares) and of leane Branne, ana. p. ij. floures of Cammomill, and the tops of Dil, ana. p. j. of Comin and Caraway, ana ℥ ij. of Laurell berries, ʒ. iij. make thereof two litle bags, and sew them into two linnen clothes, of a competent bigness, and baste them throughly. Let them be so bigge that they may couer the belly, and let one after another be laied hote to the belly againe and againe.

A dry bagge against the windie cholick or Tympanites

A moist bagge

Now followeth the forme of a moist bagge for the digesting, mollifiyng, and dissoluing of raw humours, as thus. ℞. the flowers of Cammomil, p. ij. the tops of Dill, Melilote and Origan, ana. p. j. Fenugreeke and flaxe seed, ana. ℥. j. the leaues of *Maluæ*, *Bismaluæ*, & Violets, ana. M. ß. make a litle bag, or make two bags, and boile them in water or in cowes milke, and of the decoction make a fomentation with a sponge, or a felt, or woollen clothes, or two bags; let them be laid to the grieued places one after another. According to this forme, you may make and apply bagges, partly of things that can mollifie, and partly of things that can remoue & discusse, and lay them to knobs, kernels and hardnesse of the flesh. But if the person be strong, take other remollitiues, or discussiues, euen as you shall finde the matter that causeth the hardnesse to require.

CHAP. XX.

Of making Scutum.

SCVTVM in English is a target or buckler. *Scuta* are ministred to the stomacke, and made for the same causes that ointments and Epithemes be. They are often made of the dry powder of medicines, to correct some distemper of the stomack, and to adde strength to it. Furthermore they serue in steed of ointments or Emplaisters, when the patients do refuse and abhorre them for their tediousnesse. ℞. Mints, Marioram, and Wormewood dried, ana p. j. or ʒ. j. ß. of Cloues, Galingale, and *Xyloales*, ana. ℈. ij. of Comin and redde Corall, ana. ʒ. j. make a powder, wherewith make a *Scutum* with a litle cotton, sewed in betweene two little clothes, with stitchings betweene, and bands as it ought to be, let it be bound to the stomacke. Powders to *Scutum* ought not to be past an ounce and halfe at the most, many times an ounce or sixe drammes is enough.

A Scutum against the cold distemper of the stomacke, with ventosity and other substance.

CHAP. XXI.

Of making a Cataplasme.

CATAPLASMA is a plaister, &c. *Cataplasmata* be made of herbes, roots, seedes, and meale sodden in water or milke, with some greace or oile added to them as the matter requireth. *Cataplasmata* be made for diuerse intents, sometime to ceasse paines, sometime to resolue and bind, sometime to make ripe, sometime to mollifie or make soft, sometime to consume, and sometime

to dry vp humors and vapours. In commixed affects and cause, diuers intents and purposes are mixed together in *Cataplasma*, as remollitiues with discussiues, and discussiues with such things as ceasse paine, as the examples following shall declare. And first of the forme of a Cataplasme for the cure of *Oedema* (which is a botch of flegmaticke matter, or an impostume without griefe) in the which euill it is necessary to haue remollition with discussion, or (as they say) resoluing, loosening and ceassing of paine, as thus. ℞. the leaues of *Maluæ, Bismaluæ*, and Violets, ana. M. j. or M. ß. the root of *Altheæ*, the roote of white Lillies, & the roote of Ireos, that is, Floure de luce, ana. ℥. ß. or ℥. j. flowers of Cammomill, Melilot and tops of Dill, ana p. j. seed of flaxe, and of Fenugreeke, or rather meale of Flaxe seede, meale of Fenugreeke, and meale of Barley, ana ℥. ß. or ℥. j. or you may measure it by litle handfuls; Comin, ʒ. j. Laurell berries, ʒ. ij. Saffron, ℈. j. or ʒ. ß of Duckes greace, Goose greace, the marrow of Calues shankes, fresh butter, oile of Lillies, and oile of Ireos, ana. as much as sufficeth; make a Cataplasma. In this plaister are contained three intents and purposes: that is, mollifying, dissoluing, and ceassing of paine, as may be knowne by the matter contained in it. The quantity of mollificatiues ought to be most, if there be greatest neede of mollifying, and the quantity of dissoluers ought to be most, if there need to be great dissoluing, and so likewise of ceassing of paine. Therefore in the beginning of *Oedema*, as also in the beginning of euery abscession or course of ill humours, you must commixe together with mollificatiues some repercussiue remedie, wherwith the member may be comforted. In the beginning of the augmenting, take most remollitiues, & fewest discussiues In the beginning of the augmenting & state of the disease, take of both alike much. In the declination, take and apply onely dissoluers and loosener. In the making of this present plaister, you must put into it no stipticke thing: but if you do put in any, put it in at the beginning of the flowing of the humor. But what medicines they be that haue stipticke vertue, and which do comfort the member, and also which do mollifie, and dissolue, you must seeke them in the tables of authors, as *Arnoldus* and *Sauanarola*, & such like. Also there be plaisters made without oile or greace, as is that common thing of crummes of bread steeped in cowes milke, and a little sodden together with whites of egges, oftentimes mixed with a litle Saffron, as ten or twelue chiues. And this Cataplasme we often vse for the cure of the Goute.

CHAP. XXII.

Of making Emplastrum.

EMplaisters are ordained and made for diuerse purposes, and the making of them is common as well to Physitions as Chyrurgians. They are made of gummes, oiles, greace, and dry medicines, commixed with some sufficient quantity of Waxe, or without Waxe, if that the materials can thicken, and gather together of themselues. Emplaisters are applied to all parts of the body, but chiefly to the stomacke, for the same cause that ointments, Cataplasmes and *Scuta* are ordained. Now followeth the forme of an Emplaister for the stomacke when it is afflicted with a cold distemper, by reason of the flowing of some cold substance, as thus, ℞. *Ceratū stomachi confortatiui Galeni*, ℥. ij. of

Galingale, Cloues, and red Coral, ana. ℥. ß. of waxe dissolued, braied altogether in a mortar with oile of Masticke, or of Wormewood as much as sufficeth. Cõmixe them & make a plaister spread vpon leather like a buckler, with a double linnen cloth, wel stitched and basted as it ought to be. Also an Emplaister may be made of simples for the aforesaid intents, in this manner. ℞. pure *Lapdanum*, ℥. vj. Masticke, ℥. ij. Frankinsence, ℥. j. Coriander prepared, red Corall, drie Mints, and Galingale, ana ℈. ij *Xylo* Aloes, and Maces, ana. ℥. j. Turpentine, ℥. ij waxe dissolued with oile of Spikenard, or Wormewood, or Masticke, or Roses, or of two or three of these, as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lumpe together, spread it vpon leather, and make it like a *Scutum* of double linnen with stitches and bands, and lay it to the stomacke as is requisite. Warne the Apothecarie to dissolue the Gummes with wine & oile, afterward let him commixe the rest without the vse of any fire. *Ceratum stomachi confortatiuũ Galeni*, is made of Roses, Wormewood, Masticke, Spikenard, waxe and oile of Roses. In hote causes and cholericke vomites, you may likewise make *Scuta* of cold simples, as of Mirtles, Coriander, Coral, Masticke which is temperate, *Psidiæ*, *Balaustia*: also oiles of Roses, Mirtles, Quinces, & of Masticke. There are made Emplaisters for the liuer, for the allaying of euery distemper of it, to loosen the obstructions thereof, and to strengthen it also, as in this example following. ℞. *Ceratum sandalinum*, ℥. ij. meate of Quinces, ℥. j. of Masticke, ℥ ß. of Corall, ℥. j. of wax dissolued with oile of Roses as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lũpe, and spread it vpon leather, like the Moone when she is beginning to increase, with a double linnen cloth, and with bands, as it ought to be, and apply it to the liuer. Emplaisters also are made to ceasse paines, and partly to ripen Apostemes, and partly to resolue them, as in example. ℞. *Muscilaginis* of the seede of *Althæa*, Fenugreeke, & seede of Flaxe, ana. ℥. iij. Barley meale, ℥ iiij. oile of white Lillies and the fatnesse of a henne, ana. ℥. ij. ß. Butter, ℥. j. Saffron, ℈. j. the white of egges in number ij. boyle the *Muscilagines* with a soft fire, and with the meale, and put in the whites of egges in the end. It doth soften and ripen all Apostemes congealed of a hote and cold matter, and it ceasseth their paine in what part soeuer of the body they be resident. If you will appropriate this Emplaister to all kinde of cold Apostemes, then adde to it *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, *Storax liquida*, ana. ℥. j. and it will worke a maruellous and profitable effect.

A plaister for the hot distemper of the liuer

CHAP. XXIII.

Of making Vnguenta.

VNGVENTA, in English oyntments: and those which appertaine vnto Physitions, are made to lenifie and asswage paine, to represent, shew, and assigne alteration and changing, to mollifie and dissolue knobbes and kernels, specially in the liuer, in the spleene, and in the stomacke. The vertue of oyntments for other purposes and for other members, belongeth to surgery, the forme and making whereof is to be sought out of the Antidotaries. The forme of an oyntment to mitigate the paine of the stomacke caused of cold, or by the presence of some such like substance, is in this manner. ℞. oiles of Masticke, Spike and Wormwood, ana. ℥. ß. Cloues, *Xylo* Aloes, Maces, & *Calamus*

An oyntment for the stomach.

aro-

aromaticus, ana. ℈.j. *gallia muschata*, ʒ. j. or ʒ. j. ß. if he be rich, because of the dearenesse thereof, or new Waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment for the stomacke, and a *Scutum* with cotton, and with bands, as it ought to be, and lay it vpon the stomack after the annointing. But to ceasse the paine in the stomacke coming of a hote cause; as of flowing of choler, which often chanceth in feuers, vse this ointment. ℞. oile of Roses, ℥.j. oile of Mirtles, or else of Quinces, ℥ ß. white Saunders & red, ana. ℈.ij or ʒ ß. new waxe washed in Endiue water, or in Rose water as much as sufficeth, & make an ointment for the stomacke. Also make a *Scutum* of cotton, and apply it to the stomake after the annointing. In ointments we do exceed or passe the quantity of ℥. j. It is also to be noted, that some do wash oiles with the iuyce or the water of distillation of cold herbs in a hote cause, or in hote iuyces in a cold cause of disease. Moreouer note, that many do thinke, that there should be no ointment nor cerate applyed to the stomacke without Galingale, neither to the heart without Mace or Saffron, neither to the braine without *Spica Arabica*, nor to the liuer without *Spodium*, or Saunders, or Wormewood, or other such like things, thinking verily the nature of the member to be preserued with restrainers, but yet not alwayes in the forenamed medicines. For that law & methode is to be kept in all causes of contrariety, which should be broken in medicines, if Galingale were added to the aforesaid medicine, because Galingale is hote. For truly the nature of the stomacke is strengthened sufficiently by the commixing together of stipticke things which are put into the aforesaid ointment, because truly they be temperate in heat, as it appeareth by their nature. Now followeth an ointment very profitable for hardnesse and knobs of the liuer or spleene, wherewith those two members are most in danger, in this forme. ℞. the roots of *Althæa*, and the rootes of white Lillies, ana. ℥.j. leaues of *Maluæ*, *Bismaluæ*, and Violets. ana. M.j. of the flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, and the tops of Dill, ana. M.ß. meale of Fenugreeke, of flaxe seed, ana ℥.j. gum *Ammoniaci*, called *Serapni*, ℥.j, *Bdellium* that is soft and whitish, ℥.ß. Turpentine, ʒ.iij. Gum of pines trees, ℥ ß *Storax liquida* ʒ.ij or ʒ.iij. the marrow of Calues or Harts shankes, if you can get it, Hennes greace, and Duckes greace, oiles of sweete Almonds, and of Ireos, ana. ℥. j. ß. or ana. as much as sufficeth. Dissolue the Gummes with wine and a little vineger, and to the aforesaid oiles, adde to new waxe as much as sufficeth; then afterward take the said greaces and powders, or meales, or herbes, first sodden and brayed, and mixe them all together, and make an ointment. In this said oyntment there be more things that do mollifie then there be that dissolue, because the matter of scirrhous knobs doth chiefly require the same. If you will minister the aforesaid ointment for the hardnesse of the liuer, you may adde to it of the branches of Wormewood, of Roses, of Squinance, or of Spikenard to preserue the strength & nature of the member. If you will minister it to the Spleene, you may mixe with it some *Tamariscus* barke, the roote of Capers, or such like: if you minister to the hardnesse of the stomacke, adde to Wormewood, red Roses, *Calamus aromaticus*, Mints & Galingale.

Aliud.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of making a Liniment.

LINIMENTVM is an ointment that is soft and liquide, which hath in it little waxe or none at all. It is also made for the same vse that ointments be made for. The forme of a liniment to ceasse paine (as in the pleurisie) is after this manner. ℞.oile of Cammomill, and Capons greace, ana.℥.ß. fresh new Butter without salt, ʒ.ij.a little waxe washed, and make a Liniment.

CHAP. XXV.

Of making Frontale.

FRONTALE, or *Splenium*, be plaisters made to apply to the forehead, either to ceasse paine in the forepart of the head, or to cause and prouoke sleepe, or to ceasse paine in the head caused of a hote distemper, as it oftentimes chanceth in feauers. Against cold causes make a *Frontale* (as *Galen* teacheth) of red Roses steeped and soked in vineger, laid betweene two linnen clothes, of three fingers breadth, and in length from one eare to another: or make it for the same intent, after this fashion. ℞.red Roses, p.j.ß. flowers of water Lillies and Violets, ana.p.j.Betony, and Melilote, ana. p.ß. put all betweene two fine linnen clothes, (if the patient be rich) or betweene two course linnen clothes if he be poore: and make a *Frontale* well sewed (as it ought to be) for the forehead and the tempels: if you wil prouoke sleepe, adde to the aforesaid *Frontale* the leaues of Lettuce, or new white Poppy, or of *Mandragoras* in the places & times that you may haue it, but there is but small store of these cold things. At all times you may put in the seeds of white Poppy, or the barkes of the heads of white Poppy, or Lettuce seeds, or Henbane seede, as in example. ℞. flowers of water Lillies, Violets, & Melilot, ana.p.j flowers of Lettuce, or white Poppy, ana.the 3.part of M.j.or of each of them. M.j. ß seed of white Poppy ʒ.ij.Lettuce seed, Dil seed, and white Henbane seede, ana.ʒ.ß.bray al together and make a *Frontale* betweene the course or fine linnen clothes well sewed & basted in right order. To the former *Frontale* Melilot and Dil seed is added to comfort the braine, that it be not hurt with cold things. In the disease called *Cephalalgia* coming of a cold cause make *Frontalia* of hote herbes & flowers, as Sage, Rosemary, Cammomil, Betony, Briony, Melilote & such like. *Frontalia*, before they be layed to the forehead, are wont to haue some licour powred vpon them, or to be aired with some vapour; as in exmple. ℞. the waters of Roses, Betony, and Balme, ana ℥.j.of vineger ℥.ß. commixe them, and of the aforesaid waters, powre a little portion vpon a burning tyle, or some such like thing, & hold the aforesaid *Frontale* ouer the steame & smoake of the said waters. The forehead is oftentimes annointed with many ointments seruing for the same vse and purpose that *Frontalia* do serue for, as in a hote cause, *Vnguentum Populeon*, *Rubea trochiscata* dissolued in water, is very meete for this purpose, & yet is seldome in vse with them at Paris. Many Physitions in the old time, in a cold cause did annoint with *Mithridatum* and *Aurea Alexandrina*, & such like. In all causes (saith *Galen* 12.*libro Therapeutices*) you may conueniently annoint with *Oxyrrhodinum*, which is made of oyle of Roses and sixe times so much vineger, as in example. ℞.oyle of Roses, ℥.j. vineger, ʒ.ij.commixe them,

them, ſtirring them in a plate: or elſe thus in hotter cauſes, when as without foreſight the Frenſie will breed, then we commixe cold things as thus. ℞. oyle of Roſes, ℥ j. oyle of Nenuphar, ℥. ß. oyle of Poppy, ʒ. iij. iuyce of *Solatrum*, or Lettuce, or white Poppy, water of Roſes and vineger, ana. halfe an ounce; commixe them together, ſtirring them very long in ſome peece of plate: and annoint the forepart of the head therewith, yea all the head if there be inflammation of the braine.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of making Cucufa, and Semicucufa.

CVCVFA is more for the cure of the euill called *Cephalalgia*, which is a paine of the head coming of cold; and many times alſo to ſtop rheume, as in example: ℞. *Sampſucus*, that is, Marioram, Roſemary, Stæchados both of Araby, and yellow, ana. p. j. of red Roſes, p. j. drie Citron barkes, graines of Alkermes, ana. ʒ. iij. Maces, long Pepper, Quibibes and Cloues, ana. ʒ. ß. Make a powder, & make a *Cucufa* betweene two fine linnen clothes, with a litle cotton baſted betweene, or with flaxe, or ſcarlet ſcraped, and giue it according to the meaſure. And if the paine lyeth moſt in the forepart of the head, put moſt of the powders or ſpices in that place: likewiſe if it be in the hinder part, do ſo alſo, and if the *Cephalalgia* be in all parts of the head, then commixe them equally. But it is called *Semicucufa*, when we prouide but for one part of the head. If we will ſtoppe rheumes, then we mixe with it ſtipticke things, or we make a *Cucufa* onely of ſtipticke things, either cold or hote as the cauſe requireth. Therefore we make a *Cucufa* with *milium* burned, or not burned, Mirtles, Cypreſſe nuts & *Sandaracha* (commonly called vernice) viz. yellow Oker, the barke of Frankinſence, and ſuch other like ſtipticke things.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of making Suffitus.

SVffitus (in Engliſh a perfuming) is made of drie things, to ſtop diſtillations which fall from the braine into the lower parts, and it is made of reſtraining medicines, as thus for example. ℞. red Roſes, p. j. Maſticke, ℥. ß. vernice, that is, yellow Oker. ℥ j. mixe them, and make a perfuming for the head; or thus: ℞ *milium*. p. j. red Roſes, p. ß. of vernice and *Olibanum*, ana. ℥. ß. commixe them and make a perfume for the head. Note that when the diſtillation falleth to the lungs, and thereof cometh ſpittle, then take no perfume by the mouth, becauſe it ſhorteneth the breath, and letteth the ſpitting, and maketh the humours groſſe and thicke: but you muſt perfume the couering of the head, or elſe perfume ſome wooll, and apply it to the head.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of making Collyrium.

COllyriũ is a medicine that is miniſtred in a liquide forme to heale the eyes. Wherefore becauſe there be diuerſe euils in the eyes, the Collyries are made of diuers faſhions; for you muſt vſe one kind in the beginning of *Ophthalmia*, and another in the ſtate of it, and another in the declination thereof, as it is alſo commonly vſed in the inflammations of other members. Therefore

in

in the beginning you must make it of cold and stipticke repercussiues, as the whites of egges, the sappe of Quince seed, and *Psyllium*, and other things of like vertue: minister them alone, or else let them be first dissolued with conuenient waters, and afterward applied, as in this example following. ℞. the white of one egge, and stirre it with Rosewater, or Plantaine water, or with water of Balme, or with all these waters, make a Collyrie, and put into the eye that is pained. Or thus ℞. the sappe of Quince seed drawne out with Plantaine water, or Rosewater, ℥.j. and mixe them with the white of an egge, and stirre it a long time with a spatter, and make a *Collyrium*. But if there be no paine nor rednesse in the eyes, but a certaine vncleannesse which ought to be dried vp, thē it is good to make Collyries of Tutty prepared, and of Aloes washed, and of *lapis Calaminaris*, and other such like things, which ought to be taken with some conuenīēt liquor, except it rather liketh you better to put into the eye the powders of them: for so they drie vp and wipe away the filthinesse the cleaner.

A Collyrium in the beginning of Ophthalmia.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of making Nasale or Errhinum.

NASALE & *Errhinum* be medicines which be cast into the nose for many causes and intents, as to stop bleeding at the nose, to prouoke sneesings, to cause child-birth, or to bring forth the Secundine which is retained within after the birth, and furthermore it purgeth the braine. It may be made many wayes, as in drie powders, which must be snuffed or blowne vp into the nose; or it may be made liquid, and then you must annoint the nostrils within; or you may make it whole, and hard, and then it must be put vp into the nose. ℞. the haires that be in a Hares belly. p.ß. the saw dust, or mosinesse of Willow, p.ß. Bolearmoniack, & *Sanguis Draconis* powdred, ana. ℥.j. cut the haires very small, and mixe them all together, and blow them vp into the nose, or dissolue them all with some stipticke water, or with the iuyce of some hearbe, or with the white of an egge, and adde to them also (if you please) *Balaustia*, or the rinds of Pomegranates, or *Acatia*, all powdred, and with a linnen cloath make a *Nasale*, and dip it in the aforesaid medicines, and put it into the nose. Sneesings are prouoked by drie powders, snuffed or blowne into the nose, which be sharpe and biting, as be these, Pepper, Pellitory, Stauesacre, and roote of floure deluce powdred. You may commixe the said things with some liquor: annoint the nostrils, or take cloth of silke wound vp together, and dippe it in the aforesaid liquor, annd put it into one nostrill, or into both.

A Nasale to stanch bleeding at the nose.

A Nasale to prouoke sneesing.

CHAP. XXX.

Of making Apophlegmatismus.

APOPHLEGMATISMVS is a medicine which causeth one to vomite vp fleame: it prouoketh rheume out of the braine into the mouth, and it is good to purge the braine. Masticke is commonly vsed in this case, which being long holden in the mouth and chewed, it bringeth forth rheume and fleame. Also Sage leaues holden in the mouth do likewise purge rheume by the mouth. Also make *Noduli* of Pellitorie, Pepper, Stauesacre roote, of Ireos,

and

and *Panax*, and hold them in the mouth. Furthermore make gargarismes of the same medicines. Also there are ointments made of the same things, wherewith the roofe of the mouth must be annointed, for they by reason of their heate and tartnesse, do draw fleame and rheumes into the mouth.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of making distillations restoratiue.

DISTILLATIONS be made to sustaine strength and might, when the sicke is so weake that he cannot digest any hard nourishment. Distillations are of a mixed kind, that is to say, they are partly foode and partly medicines. They are made for many intents and purposes: for some be made to restraine, as in the fluxe of the belly; some to alter or change, as when they are ministred for feauers to refrigerate, or in cold diseases to make hote: and some do resist poyson and malignant humours, as in pestilent feauers. And they are made after this manner. ℞. conserues of Succory, of Roses, of *Symphytii*, that is, Comfery, of *Cornelus*, of *Maua*, & of quinces, ana. ℥.ij. powder of Electuaries, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, & *Tria Sandali*, ana. ʒ.ij. Trochiskes of *Carabe*, of Barberies, and *Terra sigillata*, ana. ℥.ß. of red Coral, & *Lapis hæmatitis*, ana. ʒ.j. water of the decoction of one Capon or of two, altered with Plantaine, Knotgrasse Moleine, Lettuce, seed of Barberies, *Sumach*, & *Omphacium* ℔.viij. put all together in a Limbecke with the flesh of two Chickens, or two Partriches, or of two turtle Doues, or of one Capon, or of more of these, and with the crums of one white loafe, or of two wet in Rosewater, and make a distillation in *Balneo Mariæ* with a soft fire. ℞. of the aforesaid distillatiõ. ℔.ß. iuyce of Pomgranats ℥.j. or ℥.j.ß. Sugar roset, ℥.ij. Cinamon elect, ʒ.j. straine them (as *Hippocrates* teacheth) through a sleeue, and let the sicke vse it euery houre. But if you will make a distillation to haue a cooling vertue, alwaies obserue the same order and portion that is spoken of before, and for the restraining conserues, adde to such as doe coole, as conserues of water Lillies, of Violets, of Roses, Succory and balme, and likewise cold Electuaries, as *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*: also alter the decoction of the flesh with Lettuce, Sorrell, Purslaine, Scarioll, and such like. Moreouer you shall make a distillation restoratiue against malignant and pestilent feauers in this sort, ℞. conserues of Violets, water Lillies, Balme, Borage, & Bugloſſe, ana. ʒ.ij. barke of citron condite, ℥ j. roote of *Dictamus* & Tormentill, roote of *Angelica*, and roote of Gentian, ana. ℥ ß powder of *Electuarium Diamargaritõ frigidum*, all the Saunders, Bolearmoniacke, Trochisks of *Camphora*, wood of Aloes, ana ℥ ij. scrapings of yuory, and Harts horne, Maces, Cinamon, Cloues, and seed of *Cardus Benedictus*, ana. ʒ.j. of old triacle, ʒ.iij. the water of the decoction of two Chickens, or of Capons altered with Sorrell, Scabious, Lettuce, Borage, Bugloſſe, quar.iij. put altogether in a glasen Limbecke, with the flesh of some things, and with the crummes of two white loaues infused in white wine, and make a distillation with a lent & soft fire, in conuenient order as is requisite. Another, or thus. ℞. of the aforesaid distillation. ℔ ß. *Syrupus de acetositate Citri*, ℥ ij. commixe them together, and let the sicke vse it euery houre.

A distillation restoratiue restraining.

Another.

A distillation restoratiue cooling, against malignant & pestilent feauers.

The end of the seuenth Booke.

THE VIII. BOOKE OF COMPOVND MEDICINES.

The Preface.

WE haue found by experience, that noble men in times past which haue become famous in the practise and exercise of Phisicke and Chirurgerie, haue bestowed chiefe care and great diligence to store vp for their vse (as treasures) certaine peculiar remedies for euery hard malady both to increase and preserue the worthinesse and renownednesse of their good name, by the prosperous successe of their labours. The which remedies, although euery of them prouided to be made at home, and tooke them for secrets; yet notwithstanding in space of time and number of yeares, either by death, or intreaty, or for mony, or through change, or other manifold means, they haue bene made knowne and published. Whereupon others the rather minding the publike vtility of men, thought good to gather together the dispersed compositions of medicines then euery where knowne, and endeuoured thẽselues to transfer out of the most famous authors, the best & most receipts into their books of Physicke. And by these means truely did Scribonius Largus, Actuarius, Nicolaus Myrepsus, *and* Nicolaus Præpositus, *make their workes. By this industry it could not but come to passe, that out of diuerse authors many receipts not much vnlike, were taken tending to one end, as sirupes of like effect and many medicines of* Aloe, *nor fewer of* Scammony *or* Colocynthide, *or* Turpetho, *all which differ onely in way of compositiõ, or for the variety of certaine simples. And softning and scouring Electuaries also there be many, whose chiefest force is of* Ærugo, *& which differ by a sole change of other simples, as is granted to euery authors iudgement. So then many things haue bene heaped together, the most part whereof haue bene to no vse. It were much better in euery kind, to choose out the best, the other vnprofitable and vnnecessary omitted. But euen in this heaping together of remedies, many diseases remaine*

remaine void of all helpe, for the which no fit remedies were inuented: for that diligent care which many haue to gather together euery where medicines (after a sort an imitator and follower of practicke) without choise or method had, doth apply neither fit remedies, nor medicines to the diseases, nor to the sensible griefe ioyned to the sicknesse, or to their causes, neither doth set downe the kindes of remedies according to the diuersitie of diseases: neither at any time weyeth what euery composition hath, either profitable or to no vse, neither pleasant or vnsauory; but receiueth and alloweth for the most part such receipts, as haue bene vsed of vnlearned men, commonly without regard of iudgement. And many of those likewise diuerse haue peruerted and depraued, euery man according to his iudgemẽt, so that now there remaineth scantly any certaine kinde or trade of composition for Apothecaries, and that part of Physicke (as it is not ratified and established (which is most necessary for the cure of diseases: and whereas many haue iudged well of the reformation of that part, I haue done mine endeuour, that the composition of medicines might be set downe in writing according to Art, as the simples haue bene in the bookes before. And whatsoeuer of them were profitable and easie for practise, might keepe their old forme: and whatsoeuer were amisse, by vpright iudgement might be brought to better perfection, so that nothing were either redounding or wanting, necessary to take away the diseases affection, incident thereto, and cause thereof. Therefore I do not take out all the compositions vsuall in old writers, but the best onely: and oftentimes I put too new, to fill my work with all kind of medicines, and I cut off many, which contained vnder those, make a confused heape: I haue kept their common names, but yet not with the same simples and doses euery where: for as much as certaine in many things were to be changed, to make the receipts more fit and pleasant for the cure of the malady. And at length, to do the Apothecaries pleasure, I haue sorted and set in one place the sirupes, in another the Electuaries, in another the potions, and whatsoeuer else in their proper place, out of which they may be easily taken againe, and applied to the practise and vse of curing.

OF SYRVPES.

Syrupus acidus simplex.

Syrupus acidus simplex: that is, the sharpe simple sirupe, doth prepare all humours, as well hote as cold, and with a certaine force doth attenuate them, doth withhold or restraine the corruption, doth mitigate the heate of choler, and asswage the burning of agues and thirst, setteth at liberty, and scoureth the passages through the body obstructed, and doth piercingly enter into all parts, and also after a purgation it moueth sweate and vrine. ℞. *Aquæ purissimæ*, ℔.iiij. *Sacchari albi*, ℔.v. Boyle them so long as they cast vp a fome or skumme, and to the consumption of halfe the water: and then poure to them *Aceti vini albi*, ℔.iij. Boile thē then againe to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

In Syrupum acidum Scholia Guiliel. Plantij.

THe barbarous titles and names do apparently argue, that sirupes and Iuleps, and many other as well simple as compound medicines, were the inuentions of the Arabians. But many yeares before them, the old Græcians had of the same matter, and for the same vse, their *Apozemata* (that is, decoctions, of water and herbes) in stead of sirupes, which because they were fitly applied, as well to prepare the body as humours to purging, were of them termed *Propotismata*, as if you would say, potions before purging, because that according to the direct order of curing, they make a way for purging medicines. So *Galen* in *Mulso*, that is, wine and hony sodden together, and *Oxymelite*, that is, hony, vineger, and water boiled together, doth incoct *Origanum*, Hysope, Penitroyall, and Calamint, to the preparing of the body to be purged. And if he be an author of credite, *Archigenes*, *Antonius Musa*, and many other ancient Physitions did make such like sweete potions for sicke folke, of the iuyce of Cicory, Dill, Flowerdeluce, and Celidony, and such like herbes, tempered together with wine and hony by decoction for diuerse diseases of the liuer and other parts affected. And *Dioscorides* did boile the roots, leaues, & tops of plants, and did straine the Liquor boiled, and thē ministred it either alone or else sweetned with *Mulso* or hony, or that they might be kept, did decoct it to the thicknesse of hony. So that these three, *Apozema*, *Syrupus*, and *Iulepus*, differ onely in the manner of conditure, that is, making them pleasant to the taste. For in *Apozemate*, because that vpon occasion suddenly and out of hand, for the most part, it is ordained to be disseuered into three or foure parts, to bring it to a seasonable sweetnesse, it shall be sufficient if he take the third part of Sugar or hony, or somewhat more then the third part of Sugar, in respect of the strained decoction and purified iuyce But the sirups, to the intent they may be longer kept, require a perfect coction, and therefore it is meete to haue so much, or very little lesse Sugar or hony, as there is of the strained decoction or purified iuyce. But because the Iulep is more thinne, penetrating, and pleasant then the two before, it shall be sufficient enough if it haue the sixt part of Sugar, or in stead thereof the like quantity of a conuenient sirupe, so that there be somewhat more then the two parts of the

Suga,

Sugar, in respect of the decoction prepared, or distilled waters. To all these potions made of decoctions and the iuyce of plants, and fruites, Sugar and hony be mingled, not onely for their preseruation, or for their sweetnesse and pleasantnesse in taste and sauour, but also for the proper force of hony and Sugar, which they impart vnto these decoctions. For sith these two be almost daily vsed, and familiar vnto vs, not onely for sauce, but also as meates, both wayes the potions to which these shall be mingled, do quicken and stirre vp the naturall strength astonied, or dulled, and languishing in sicknesse, and do comfort the naturall heate, which alone doth concoct and mitigate diseases; and by extenuating grosse matter, scouring slimie, and making a riddance of obstruction, they cause easie purgations. And these faculties come to the decoctions or potions by reason of the Sugar and hony, which decoctions notwithstanding of themselues do much auaile to diuerse vses, the commodities whereof I will declare in describing each of them, by obseruing that order which both the trade of compounding doth require, and the method of curing doth prescribe. For seeing the simple is by nature before the compouud, and the right order of ministring medicines well, beareth by order one thing to be propounded and vsed before another, he beginneth first with those that are more simple medicines, & of such as by direct order of curing are vsed before others; minding to obserue the same order in all this booke, beginning with *Sirupus acidus simplex*, the sharpe simple sirupe. For in this place we speake not of *Apozemata* and Iuleps, but onely of such as are kept a long time of Apothecaries: and further, *Apozemata* agreeing to the diseases of euery part, haue bene handled before. And although *Condita*, commonly called Conserues, and of herbes and fruites certaine well seasoned iuyces, called of the Græcians ἀποχύματα, be more simple then sirupes, and therefore might seeme the rather to be spoken of before; yet because for the most part they be ordained after purgations, to the keeping or getting of the strength of the parts, therefore my minde was to deferre them to another place, the method of curing so requiring. Now sirupes were inuented to haue in a redinesse so oft as occasion chanceth, because that herbes, and other rootes, and fruites be not alwaies ready at hand, and sometime when they be at hand, necessity so vrgeth, that there is no leysure to make of them *Apozemata* and Iuleps. In the first place the composition of sirupes is set downe, which are fit to prepare humours for purging: then after, such as be meete to purge the remnants of the parts, and to keepe or preserue their strength. And this generally of sirupes. Particularly the sharp simple sirupe was not to be made onely of vineger and Sugar, as other sharp syrupes be, but also of water, to mitigate the strength and sharpenesse of vineger. Heed must be taken that in stead of white vineger, distilled be not put in, which being most sharpe doth pierce and pinch the other parts to no small annoyance of the receiuer. Heede likewise must be taken that no more quantity of vineger be put in: for this measure was thought meete and equall. But if any suspect the sharpenesse of the vineger, lest through his piercing cold, bodies of tender constitution, as of children, and specially of women, their wombe should be harmed, (for according to *Hippocrates*, vineger is noisome

to the wombe) they may when they vse it by mixture of some sweete or distilled water, or some meete decoction, make the sirupe more dilaied, or in stead of that vse *Oxysaccharum*, a sirupe of vineger and Sugar.

The sharpe compound sirupe is not here described, lest I should burthen the Apothecaries with vaine losse; for by putting too a portion of sirupes to rootes, it will be a compound seruing for the same vse. This was the purpose of the author, to propound the best compositions of all other to euery chiefe kind of disease, and cause that nothing should be wanting of remedie. But to take together a vaine and friuolous heape of medicines from all places, after the fashion of those which do fill papers vnconsiderately, with vnknowne and vnapproued remedies, I thought it too great a burthen for Apothecaries, and a worke not plaine, but full of confusion for students.

Syrupus è succo Limonum.

THe sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, doth lesse extenuate & pierce then the sharpe sirupe, and yet the vehemency of choler and heate of the bodie and thirst it more asswageth, and doth more restraine the corruption of hote feauers, and the maladie of pestilent Agues; it defendeth likewise the strength of the mouth of the stomacke, and heart, and principall parts, it expelleth loathsomnesse, vomiting, defection of the mind, and swounding for feeblenesse, peculiarly it purgeth the kidneis, and prouoketh vrine. ℞. *succi Limonum* purified, and going through a woollen streiner without compulsion freely. ℔ vij. *Sacchari albi* ℔.v. Boyle these with a soft fire into a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupe of Limons, *de Acetositate Citri* or of the sharpnesse of Citrons, of tart Pomgranats, *de Aurancijs*; or of Oranges, of vnripe grapes, of the iuyce of Sorrel, of the iuyce of Barberies, and of *Ribes*, and all other tart or sharpe sirupes, be made of iuyces, which either by setling or by streining be made more cleare and pure. And to the iuyces is added like quantity of Sugar or somewhat lesse without mixture of any water: because the sharpe tartnesse of the sirupe is nothing noisome, but pleasant and comfortable to the heart: and it should be dilaied likewise with lesse Sugar (as in Iuleps) if the iuyces could be long preserued. There be some which purifie the iuyces by setting, or by setling them in the heate of the Sun, and fining them with the foming whites of egges, or else onely by wringing them out lightly, as in wine coming of the grapes, before they be pressed, called in Latin *vinum protopum*: and then with fined Sugar, that is boiled with the like quantity of water, and after clarified, and at the last concocted to a Iulep, mixing by litle and litle the one with the other, they stirre them with a spatter vntill they come together, and become as one, or they boile it a litle with Sugar throughly and well sod, or else with the best Sugar, such as the *Maderanum* is, they boile it so long, vntill the Sugar be melted & dissolued altogether. And hereof the sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, of Citrons, the sharpe simple sirupe, and the rosat Iulep become very white. As for the simple sirupe of Pomgranats, Barberies, of *Ribes*, of red vineger, to keepe the finenes of their naturall colour, must not so long for mixture sake be beaten together with a pestle. And this order of composition in the iuyces, chiefly of tart fruits, taketh place: for other iuyces of herbes,

of

of roots,&c.require more preparatiõ to the making of a sirupe; for they must be boiled twise, once by themselues almost to the consumption of the 3.part: after, when they haue bene purified with streining and setling, they must be concocted with the best Sugar to a sirupe, otherwise they do soone corrupt, and become hoary and mouldy.

The sirupes that follow made of sharpe iuyces, are in force like to the former, as the sirupe of the tart iuyce of Citrons, the sirupe of sharpe Pomegranates,the sirupe *de Aurancijs*,the sirupe of *Omphacio*, that is, vnripe grapes,the sirupe of the iuyce of Sorrell. But peculiarly the sirupe of sharpe Citrons doth quench the heate of an Ague, and restraineth the corruption and malady thereof. The sirupe of Pomegranates doth corroborate the stomack,and the chiefe entrailes of a man, as the spleene, the liuer, the lungs &c. it restraineth vomiting,& mitigateth swounding. The sirupe *de Aurancijs* doth more comfort the heart,& is more pleasant. The sirupe *de Omphacio* doth more quench thirst.The sirupe of the iuyce of Sorrel doth allay choler, and open obstructiõ. The sirupe of *Ribes* is more sweet in taste,and more astringent.The way or order of making them all is alike,for in the iuyce of euery one of them purged, a litle lesse Sugar must be dissolued, and these two put in a tinne vessell, must be set on the fire, and boiled by litle and litle to a sirupe.

Oxysaccharum simplex.

Oxysaccharum simplex, hath a mixed nature or force, both to attenuate,to abate, to dull, to corroborate or comfort, and is good against a diuerse mixture of humours, and vnstable agues arising thereof ℞. *Succi Mali punici acidi*, that is, sowre Pomegranates, ℥. viij. *Aceti*, ℥. iiij. *Sacchari albi & puri* ℔.j. Boyle them to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

Plantivs.

Oxysaccharum hath the same vertue that the sowre sirupe hath, but not in like force, sauing it excelleth to comfort and roborate, and therefore the vse thereof is more safe in diseases chancing in Sommer, and tender bodies, then of the sharpe sirupe. Lest so great variety of sirupes should be retained in vaine, I omit *Oxysaccharum compositum*, *Oximeli compositum*, and *Oximeli scylliticum*, that is,made of *Scyllæ*; for when they are thought good to be vsed, the Physitions may make and prescribe them speedily and fitly, *Oxysacchari*, ℥.j. *Sirupi maioris è radicibus*, ℥.ij.*vel sirupi Adianti*, ℥ j.ß.

Oximel simplex.

Oximel simplex,doth extenuate grosse humours,and doth scoure out slimy matter, doth open old obstructions, doth expell from the chest thicke matter, and is good against *Asthma*, that is, obstructions of the lungs with fleame, whereof ariseth shortenesse of wind, and rebellious agues. ℞.*aquæ purissimæ,mellis optimi*, ana. ℔. iiij. Boyle them vntill with the exhaling halfe the water be consumed, and then poure in of *Aceti acerrimi*, that is,very sharp vineger,℔.ij. and let them be boyled againe by euaporation to a meete consistence. That which is made more liquid, hath *aquæ purissimæ*, ℔.j.*mellis optimi*,℥.iiij.*aceti*,℥ j.ß.Let these be boiled by fomẽting out easily their corruptiõ

Oxymel Scylliticum.

OXymel *Scylliticum*, doth more forcibly attenuate grosse matter, & is good for al things we haue spoken of; and it is made of Vineger of *Scylla*, which is put to hony boyled and clarified by foming, and sod as the other, both become cõpound by putting too double portiõ of the sirupe *è radicibus Maioris.*

PLANTIVS.

Acetũ mulsũ. We haue lesse vse of *Oxymel*, that is, sweete vineger then the ancient Physitions had, who then had not inuented the sharpe sirupe, which (the power of cleansiug onely excepted, wherein hony excelleth Sugar) hath other vertues not much inferiour to *Oxymel*, and besides other effects, is very good against agues. But sweete vineger which euery where is in vse in Apothecaries shops, is very vnsauory, whether it be full of the too much grossnesse coming of ouerseething thereof, or of the too much sharpenesse which is not so much qualified and dulled with the mixture of our hony as of Sugar. For although you delay and dissolue that thicke *Oxymel* with sweete water, or some set decoction, yet you shall neuer make it so pleasant to drinke as the soure sirupe. That which is made by many, more thinne for present occasion, and is called *Galẽs oxymel.* *Oxymel Galeni*, is more piercing into euery part, and more pleasant. For whereas for the little boyling it doth not thicken, but the thicknesse of the water is therein retained, which the thicknesse of the vineger doth further, and all the filthinesse of the hony partly by skumming, partly by claryfying is takẽ away: therefore it becometh most thinne, and most cleare, especially if it haue bene made with white vineger, and white hony; and with the little sharpnesse of vineger, it becometh nothing vnpleasant to the taster: but it is found by experiẽce, that by too much vse, and too great a draught thereof, the stomacke is annoied, chiefly in those, whose mouth of the stomacke is by nature feeling and sensible. Wherefore there is no safe vse thereof in agues, whether you make it sowrer or sweeter. Choose good hony which is betwixt thicke and thin, most sweete and sharpe in taste, and therewith making a sweete taste, and biting the tongue, as it were, with pulling; in colour pale, or somewhat red and cleare, most fragrant and new, and which taken out and handled, for his clammie humour, is not disseuered or pulled into parts: heauy in weight or ponderous. Wherefore that which is in the bottome of the vessell is better then that which swimmeth aboue, and it doth cast vp little skum in boiling. But in our dayes there hath bene brought the white and sweetest hony, & aromaticke, indeed, most liquide and fluent, and making a white and hard crust vpon it, out of *Lusitania* or *Portugall*, & *Gedano*, to *Antwerpe*, hony as good as either the *Atticke* or *Siculum*. But they counterfeit that hony (as many other things else) and forge another instead thereof, by often washing and whiting; which deceit of theirs you may easily find out by the vnsweetnesse of smelling; and vnsauorinesse of tasting. Then next this both in goodnesse, and in colour, is the *Narbonense* hony; and in those regions also our countrey hony, that which cometh out of the combes freely, and is commonly called Virgine hony, is best. The worst hony by boiling is made better, and the vse of the skummed is alwaies fitter, except by long abiding in the stomacke it swell it, and become vehement hote, and augment choler. Hony is good for children that haue no wormes,

Galẽs oxymel.

Note of the best hony.

wormes, and for old men, for it causeth order and state, & stirreth vp and preserueth naturall heate, prolongeth old age, and is euill for cholericke and young men, because it is easily turned to choler.

Syrupus è Cichorio.

Syrupus è Cichorio doth coole moderately, doth comfort all the *viscera*, that is, principall parts within, as the heart, liuer, and lungs, with an easie binding, and doth set at liberty the obstructions of the liuer, and other parts by scouring and opening; it doth quench choler, and maketh it meete for purgation: in the beginning of hote, pestilent, and vehement feuers, it is meete and wholesome. ℞. *totius Intubi agrestis*, that is, of the whole Cichory, ℥.iiij. *radicum Oxalidis, graminis, & Asparagi*, bruised ana. ℥.ij. *Lichenis, Eupatorij, Intubi satiui*, commonly called Endiue, *Seriolæ, Cicerbitæ, Lactucæ satiuæ, & agrestis, Adianti albi, Adianti nigri, Adianti simplicis, Saxifragi, Lupulorum Cassuthæ*, ana. M.j. Boile them in x. ℔. of water, vntill it come to vj. In the streined decoction dissolue *Sacchari albissimi*, ℔. vj. and boile all these together to a clarified sirupe.

Plantivs.

Whereas the sirupe of *Cichory*, of the description of *Nicolaus Florentinus*, or *Gulielmus Placentinus* is oft in vse, and both their sirupes do consist of a cõfused heap of simples as wel cold as hote without order, & of Reubarbe, that it is hard to tell to what vse they may be applied: not without good reason, the description is here changed & framed to those ends which be here expressed in the title, to the which neither of the other can be applied for the hot roots. If it be desired to be somwhat tart or sharp, there may be mixed to it the third part of *Acetosus sirupus*, or *Oxysaccharũ*; or if it must be somewhat hotter, or more piercing, as against many diseases heaped together, so much or halfe so much of the sirupe of roots: if reubarb must be at any time put to it, it rather seemeth meet to be put in thereto, at the time of vsing then making thereof, because the vertue of Reubarbe to purge, both by boiling & long keeping, vanisheth away; and this sirupe made rather for preparation then purgation, and there is more strength of roborating in Reubarbe, then that well doth agree to a preparatiue potion. But neither in the time of ministring can Reubarbe commodiously be intermixed, *viz.* the grosnes of the sirupe hindering the operatiõ of purging, either by making it very litle or else none at all: & for the same thicknesse the sirupe it selfe is not so effectuall for those purposes, for which it was described, as if it were dissolued aud made more sweete, with some conuenient decoction: therefore they worke not for any commodity of the sicke, but only of losse, which to euery pound of the sirupe do employ. ℥.j. of Reubarbe, and do not onely double and triple, but also mixe by measure foure or sixe times so much, contrary to the credite of all bookes, which for euery pound do bid & wil only ℥.iiij. to be mingled. And they also be farre wide which do affirme that this sirupe must be made of the only iuyce of Cichory, no otherwise thẽ the sirupe of the iuice of Citrin: for although therein they haue the truth, whẽ they accoũt a heap of cõpound simples contrary one to another, to be reiected in the cõposition of medicines, and therefore do refuse the compositiõs of *Gulielm. Placenti. & Nicola. Floren.* of Cichory, as cõtrary, & made rashly, &

without reason, yet notwithstanding the composition of the iuyce of Cichory must not take place in stead of them, when as it cannot truly be ordained for that vse, to the which the sirupe of Cichory by experience is found to auaile: for whether when choler must be prepared to purgation, or the stopping of the liuer and other parts must be opened, or you haue occasion to coole, and moderately roborate, as in the beginning of vehement & pestilent agues; which of these I pray you can this sirupe do or bring to passe, which first by much and long beating and hard streining is made thicker, and then after by it selfe boiled to the consumption of the 3. part, and after concocted with Sugar to the grossenesse of a sirupe, by euaporation hath almost lost all the vertue, as much almost as becomed meere Sugar? It is far otherwise in the decoction & iuyce of fruites, especially sharpe, as the iuyce of Orenges, Citrons, Limons, Pomegranates, and such like, for they shed their whole force vpon sirupes, whereas neither by pressing their tenuity, neither by concoction, they leese their faculty, as we haue noted in other places aboue. And decoctions because they haue the force of many simples, and for the water be more thin & fluxible, do not thicken, and leese their vertue in boiling: whereupon the sirupes consisting of these decoctions, be more meet and amiable to prepare the body to purging; but they which be made of their iuyces after purgation (the body being now open and pliant) be better adiudged to those vses, which he (I thinke) doth repeate in describing euery one of them.

Syrupus Intubi domestici.

Syrupus Intubi domestici, doth allay choler, doth coole the liuer, and purge and strengthen it, and cureth the laundies and diseases comming of the obstructions of the liuer, very commodious after purgations: & when the matter of an ague and other diseases is after a sort well and throughly digested. ℞. *Endiuiæ recentis, Seriolæ, Lichenis, Lactucæ, Agrimonij. Cicerbitæ, Hieracij*, ana. M. j. ℥. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum*, ana ℥. j. *Santali albi, & rubri, contuserum, Rosarum rubrarum*, ana. ℥ ij. Boile them in ℔. viij. of water to the halfe; to the strained liquor put of white Sugar, ℔. iiij. Seeth them together all againe, & skum & fine them as they boile, adde thereto of the iuyce of Endiue purged by setling ℔ j. Afterward of the pure iuyce of Pomegranates without dregs, ℥. iiij. Boile them all together to the height of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The Author thought this sirupe of Endiue meet to be made and retained, although it were the inuention of an vncertaine Authour, because it seemed to be described vpon good ground of reason, & therefore will be more effectuall then if it were made of the sole iuyce of Endiue as many would haue it. After the body is purged, it auaileth for the diseases of the liuer; and to purge the residents of cholericke maladies, and chiefly necessary for the scab & the itch.

Syrupus Byzantinus.

Syrupus Byzantinus hath a mixed vertue both to addresse & purge the liuer and spleene, and that after purgation; for the yellow and blacke laundies, and the remnants of agues, especially good. ℞. *Succi Intubi satiui, & Apij*, ana. ℔. j. *succi Lupi Salictarij & Buglossi*, ana ℔. j. In seething cleanse them till they waxe cleare, and make a sirupe with iij. pounds of Sugar.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

The interpreter of *Mesua* denieth the vse of sirupe *Bizantine* in Agues before the seuenth day, for commonly immediatly at the beginning of compoūd Agues, the Physitions vse *Sirupus acetosus simplex*, with the decoction of Fennell, and the third part of hony roset. But after purgation, because it mightily scoureth the relickes of the diseases *Hepaticke* and *Splenaticke*, this sirupe *Byzantinus* is good to cure all maladies of both the forenamed intrals, which be hard to be dissolued, and rebellious to be cured, as the blacke and yellow Iaundies especially by putting thereto sirupe *è radicibus*. The compoūd is omitted, because it doth depraue the force of the simple, and hath too much viueger.

Syrupus Scolopendrij.

Sirupus Scolopendrij doth extenuate, mollifie, and make fluent grosse and earthy melancholy, it openeth the stopping of the spleene, and doth abate the swelling thereof, and is specially good for melancholy Quartanes, and continuall agues. ℞. *Polypody è quercu, radicum vtriusque Buglossi, corticis radicum Capparis, corticum Thamarisci, singu.* ℥.ij. *Scolopendrij veri*, M. iij. *Lupi salictarij, Cassuthæ, Capilli Veneris, Melissophylli, singulo.* M. ij. *Coquantur in aquæ*, ℔.ix. vntill there remaine, v. Put to the strained decoction, of white Sugar, ℔.iiij. Boile them to a fined and cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Sirupus Scolopendrij, the Author here to this place hath referred well, & for great vse made, because there was no sirupe of the old Physitions description meet to prepare earthy & massie melancholy. The true *Scolopendrium* or Harts tongue is, *Asplenium Dioscoridis* and *officinarum Ceterach.*

Syrupus è radicibus.

Sirupus è radicibus doth scoure, and extenuate, and prepare slimy and grosse fleame, it openeth the obstructions of the liuer, & all the other entrals: it asswageth swellings, taketh away the euill colour of virgins, prouoketh vrine, and doth quite make an end of agues hardly dissolued, and old diseases. ℞. *radicum Apij, Fœniculi, Petroselini, Rusci & Asparagi*, ana. ℥. iij. *radicum Capparis & Rubiæ*, ana ℥.ij. *Coquantur in* ℔.x. *hydromelytis diluti* (that is, dissolued) vntill they come to ℔.vj. and *cum sacchari*, ℔.v. make a cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be confected of roots two sirupes, one of the two rootes of Parcely and Fennell be omitted of set purpose as nothing effectuall, and easie to be come by, if need require, and thought meete to retaine the other of fiue, as of greater vertue: to which he hath vpon good consideration added the roots of *Capparis & Rubiæ*, that it might be more effectuall for diuerse vses. He omitteth vineger, because for the most part it is desired without it, and if need require, a portion of ỳ sharp sirupe may easily by prescript be mingled thereto & somewhat likewise it may be tēperated with the mixture of other sirupes.

Syrupus Adiantinus.

Sirupus Adiantinus doth with a moderate heate easily and gently deuide & scoure all humours alike, in what part of the body soeuer they be, agreable

an excellent syrup for hoarse & rough throat

ble to euery diſeaſe beginning, euery nature, age, region, and women with child. ℞. *Adianti albi*, M.iij. *Adianti nigri*, *Adianti ſimplicis*, *Saxifragi*, *Betonicæ*, *Pimpinellæ*, *Aſplenij*, ana. M.ii. *Coquantur ex aquæ* ℔.viij. vntil they cõſume to v. And in the preſſed decoction, diſſolue or melt *Sacchari albi*. ℔.iij *mellis optimi expurgati*. ℔.ß.

PLANTIVS.

Sith there is no artificiall deſcription extant of maidenhaire, this is commodiouſly entermingled amongſt the other which is compound of choſen ſimples auailing altogether to diuerſe effects by their temperature. Wherfore this ſirupe of all other for his manifold and diuerſe vſe, is of moſt operation, *polychreſtus*. i. very good for the diſeaſes of all parts, eſpecially of the breaſt, the liuer the ſpleene, the kidneis, and all diſeaſes of the wombe in all ages and natures. And the prerogatiue alſo thereof is ſuch, that it doth make ſoluble whoſoeuer vſeth it any ſpace; and it doth not onely prepare humours, but alſo purge them when they be prepared, & eſpecially groſſe fleame & choler, as certaine new Phyſitions and we alſo haue obſerued in practiſe oftentimes: the which effect likewiſe the decoction *omnium Adiantorum*, but eſpecially the white hath, although contrariwiſe *Dioſcor.* teacheth that it bindeth. But they which do mingle either Raiſins or Liquorice with *Adiantis* into the ſirupe, do reſtraine the large & ample nature thereof for diuerſe vſes, to ſome peculiar effect, and by mixture dull the force thereof in extenuating & ſcouring. They ſhould therefore more fitly make this ſirupe of the ſole decoction of *Adiantorum*, which might be reſerued as a common matter for euery kind of griefe, & then they might apply it as need required to the diſeaſes of this or that part. As for example, to the breaſt affected, with Raiſins and Liquorice decocted; for the liuer, with the decoctiõ of *Agrimonij* or *Cichory*; for the ſplene, *Aſplenij aut Tamariſci*; for the kidneis, ſuch things as prouoke vrine, and breake the ſtone. For ſo by a fit and meet decoction, the common nature of the ſirupe may likewiſe be applyed to ſome one part, and his ſtrength augmented, which in the ſole ſirupe deſcribed is very much effectuall.

Theſe cõpoſitions of ſirupes haue bene meete to prepare bodies to purgatiõ: now we muſt teach what ſirupes be good to purge the relicks of euery part,

Syrupus è Stœchade.

syrups for palsey

Sirupus è Stœchade is wonderful good againſt cold diſeaſes of the braine, and nerues or ſinewes, as *Paralyſis*, i. the Palſey, *Epilepſia*, the falling euil, *Conuulſio*, the Crampe, *tremor*, i. quaking, & diſtilling out of the head when it lieth. ℞. *floriũ Stœcados*, ℥.iiij *Thymi*, *Calaminthes*, *Origani*. ana. ℥.j.ß. *Saluiæ*, *Betonicæ*, *florum Roriſmarini*, ana. ℥.ß. *ſeminis Rutæ*, *Pœoniæ*, *Feniculi*, ana. ʒ.iij. boile thẽ in x. ℔. of water till the halfe be conſumed: when the decoction is ſtrained, boile it againe to a ſirupe with hony and Sugar, of each ij. pound, and condite it with Cinamon, Ginger, *Calamus aromaticus*, of each, ʒ.ij which being bound vp in a courſe cloth with open threeds, muſt be hanged in the ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Sirupus è Stœchade, becauſe it was not good in working for the head, he hath not without cauſe put certaine other thinges, as Sage, Betony, Roſemary, the ſeeds of Rew, Piony, & Fennell, very profitable for the ſundry diſeaſes of the braine

braine and sinewes; otherwise I see not wherefore this sirupe ought much to be applied or ordained for the diseases of the braine, sith *Stœchas* which is the chief in this descriptiõ, & is as it were the *basis*, that is, the ground of the sirupe, is rather *hepatica*, that is, good for the liuer, or *spenica*, that is, good for ye splene, then *Cephalica*, that is, good for the head. For it is chiefly commended for the stopping of all the intrailes, the which with his thin and hote substance it doth easily open, and with the other somewhat astringing earthy quality, doth corroborate all the inward parts. If you want *Calamus aromaticus* for to make it sweet in tast, in stead thereof may be vsed *Nux muschata*, which hath singular force to comfort the braine.

Syrupus Rosarum siccarum.

THe sirupe of dry Roses doth mitigate the hot diseases of the braine, it asswageth the thirst, strengtheneth the stomacke, causeth sleepe and stayeth thin defluxiõs. ℞. *aquæ simplicis*, ℔.iiij. in the which being made bloud warme soke xxiiij. houres red Roses dried. ℔.j. & after this be strained, dissolue therein white Sugar, ℔.ij. this done, boile them to the substance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Certaine Physitions thinke good to renew the infusion of dry Roses twise or thrise, to the intent (as they suppose) the force of the sirupe might be augmented: whereas notwithstanding one onely infusion is for that purpose as effectuall: for in three infusions it is necessary that great store of water be vsed, as for a pound of Roses, viij. pounds of water; otherwise with manifold maceration the water wil either be drunke vp, or with forcible straining will become too thicke: and as for the vertue and strength of Roses, the sirupe will as much draw and drinke vp by one infusion as by many, as it chanceth by salt when it is dissolued in water. This sirupe is auaileable in euery fluxe of the belly, and it is of like operation in comforting and strengthening the parts of the body; in agglutinating vlcers, and in mundifying them mildly, both by it selfe, and also ministred with other things.

Syrupus Nymphæa.

THis sirupe of *Nymphæa* mitigateth the heate of the head, Frensies, and watchings, procureth sleepe, and lastly asswageth the sharpnesse of distillations. ℞. *Florum Nymphæa, recentium*, ℞. ß. *Florum Violarum*, ℥.ij. *foliorum Lactucæ*, M.ij. *semi. lactucæ*. ℥.ß Adde to these before the boiling, *Portulacæ*, ℥. ß. & *Cucurbitæ*, ℥ ß. Boile thẽ in foure pound of water till one be consumed, and when it is strained, put thereto of distilled Rose water ℔. ß. white Sugar ℔.iiij. and boile them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The simple sirupe of *Nimphæa* is omitted as nothing commodious; and as for the compound sirupes, according to the description of *Franciscus Pedomontanus*, by reason of sundry seeds, vineger, and the iuyce of Pomegranates, it is nothing conuenient nor commodious to worke these things, for which it is required. Wherefore vpon good occasion, here is described another very easie & profitable to those vses which are propounded in the description. The flowers of that *Nymphæa* which hath yellow flowers and white root, is to be preferred in the composition of this sirupe.

Sirupus de Papauere.

SYrupe of Poppy hath the same vertue that *Nimphæa* hath, but peculiarly it staieth a grieuous cough, and such distillations as do exasperate the iawes and throate. ℞. *capitum Papaueris albi* not throughly riped and new, ℥. viij. *capitum Papaueris nigri recentium.* ℥. vj. *Aquæcælestis,* ℔. iiij. boile them to the consumption of halfe, and put thereinto *Saccharis & Penidiorum,* ana. ℥. viij. Boile them to the consistence of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In the simple sirupe of Poppy, there be fewer heads of the blacke Poppy put in, because it cannot so safely be vsed as the white: as for the compound sirupe of Poppy, hauing many lenitiue things, it is therefore omitted and not put in practise, because when necessity requireth it may easily be prepared, by putting to this sirupe of Iuiubes, or of Violets.

Diacodion.

Diacodion as it procureth sleepe, so it abandoneth the distillation of the braine whithersoeuer it presseth, it staieth the *Dysenteria* and other fluxe of the belly. ℞. *capita Papaueris albi* meanly great and meanly ripe, *numero* xij. *Aquæ cælestis.* ℔. ij. Boile them to the third part, and when it is streined put thereto of the best *Sapa*, that is, new wine boiled to the third part, ℥. iiij. *Mellis optimi,* ℥. ij. Boile all these together: put in the end of the decoction, *Rosarum rubrarum, Balaustiorum, Acatiæ, Rhois culinarij tritorum,* ana. ʒ. ij. *seminis Portulacæ, Coralli albi & rubri* ana. ʒ. j.

PLANTIVS.

Diacodion is brought into a better forme, seruing to stay distillations, by reiecting certaine vnnecessary and vnpleasant things. *Dios.* to the same purpose boileth the heads of Poppy alone in water to the consumption of halfe, and then putting thereto hony and the iuyce of *Hypocistis*, he reduceth it to the cõsistence of an *Ecligma.* As for the heads of the Poppy, they must neither be too greene nor through drinesse too much voide of iuyce, but when they begin through a greene kind of ripenes to rattle, they must be gathered for this composition. Whereupon they be termed of the Græcians κωδωνες & κωδια, that is, the whiskling heads of the Poppy. For that this composition through too much thicknesse may be vnpleasant to some, when it is to be taken, it may be dilayed with the decoction of Barley, or some other thing of like conueniency: and also if sleepe must be procured, or danger be imminent of a sharpe and thin fluxion of exasperation, both to stay and asswage that, you may lawfully augment the force of *Diacodion* with a fresh decoction of the seeds of Poppy, or with the thicke iuyce strained out of the decoction of Barley. Neither is it to be dread lest harme should betide to the body by Poppy, notwithstanding it be recorded by Authors to be cold in the fourth degree, sith that sundry nations do vse with meats after the fashion of herbes, the tender springs of Poppy, and do feed of an oile pressed out of the seeds thereof: and in preparing dainties, they sprinkle the seeds thereof vpon tarts and cakes made to please the taste, without any annoyance or heauinesse through sleep. And in such like order the Ægyptians vse to make the taste pleasant, *Oleum*

Sesaminum

Sesaminum & Sesamum : and *Petronius*, grounding vpon that custome vsed in the Latin tongue for an eloquent and pleasant oration and composition of words, to say, all his sayings and doings are as it were sprinkled with Poppy and *Sesamum*. For both the liquor of Poppy, called in Greeke *Opium*, and the iuyce wroong out of the leaues and heads, termed in Greek *Meconium*, cõsist not of an vniforme, but of manifold substance, one watery and very cold, another airy temperate, the third hote, bitter, and sweet smelling. The first is more apparent in greene and tender Poppies, the two last in dry. As for the *Opium* or rather *Meconium* which is brought to vse, it is altogether counterfeit, and through a secret quality is noysome, & therefore in no case to be vsed, though it be neuer so artificially corrected. For whereas *Opium* is by great labour in litle quantity confected of themilke of the seeds of wild Poppy, and *Meconium* without any trouble is abundantly pressed out of the leaues, the factors which seeke after gaine and lucre, may easily counterfeit *Opium*, or in stead thereof bring out of *Naples* and *Spaine*, *Meconium*.

Syrupus Violarum compositus.

THe compound sirupe of Violets doth mitigate a sharpe distillation, doth asswage hoarsnesse, grieuous cough and roughnesse of the arteries, doth ease the Pleurisie, and doth quench thirst. ℞. *Florum Violarum recentium*, ℥.ij. *seminis Cydoniorum, & Maluæ*, ana. ℥.j. *Zizypha, Myxaria*, ana. in number 20. *decocti Cucurbitæ vel seminis eius*, ℔. v. Boile them to the halfe, and with ℔.ij. of Sugar, compound them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In this compound sirupe there is nothing changed, because he thought it compounded artificially seruing commodiously by smoothing, cooling, moistening, against all the heate and roughnesse of the arterie, as also it appeaseth vehement burning of the vrine, and the vehement torments of the reines: for the herbe and leaues of the Violet boiled, haue a ripening faculty in them, the seed is good to purge choler in such wise as Rewbarbe doth: in the midst of the floure there is a thing somewhat yellowish, which is recorded to be helpefull for the *Angina* and the *Epilepsia* in children, if it be drunke with water. The flower of Violet and a simple sirupe made of it, by infusion once or twise, doth mitigate, asswage, and scoure scorching and sharpe humours; and therfore is very necessary in a pleurisie, and bringeth vnder black burnt choler, and the noisome vapors arising thereof, & thereby doth set at quiet the *Symptomata* arising thereof, namely, the headach, watchings, and dreaming, and expelleth the heauines of the heart, it temperateth hotter and drier medicines, by mitigating them commodiously. Wheras then these qualities be singular, the sirupe confected of the infusion of fresh Violets, may be iustly registred amongst the sirupes seruing to many vses. This infusion wrung out of pleasant or well smelling Violets, dried somewhat in the shadow, as it behoueth, and soaked in luke warme water, if it be boyled with very good Sugar to the consistency of a sirupe, may be kept the continuance of a yeare and more without any filth or corruption, to the vses before repeated, and is to be taken both before and after purgation. As for those which reiterate the soaking of

the Violets and Roses nine times in the decoction of the sirupe of Violets and Roses, they labour in vaine; for they cannot become lesse effectuall in working, though they vse (at the most) infusion but foure times, as we will declare to Apothecaries in the forme of making medicins. As for the sirupe of Liquorice, it seemeth nothing commodious, because it is of little vertue, and for that it is contained in the sirupe of Hysope: and such great variety of sirupes bringeth rather confusion then commodity to students.

Syrupus Zizyphorum, vel Iuiubarum.

SYrupus *Zizyphorum* accomplisheth the same which the sirupe of Violets doth, but with more efficacy; both of them are conuenient in the beginning of the disease. ℞. *Zizyphorum num.* Lx. *Myxaria num.* xx. *florũ Violarum, Adianti albi, Hordei à cortice liberi, Glycyrrhizæ*, an. ℥ vj. *semi. Maluæ, Cydoniorũ semi. Papaueris albi, Melonum & Lactucæ, Tragacanthæ*, ana. ℥ iij. The seeds of *Cydoniorũ*, of Mallowes, & Tragacanth bound in a course cloth, must be boiled with the rest in ℔ v. of water, to the consumption of halfe, and then with ℔ ij. of white Sugar to the substance of a sirupe.

Syrupus de Hyssopo.

SYrupus *de Hyssopo* by a gentle and light mitigation, doth purge and ridde the breast and lungs of all hote and cold maladies, doth concoct the spittle or fleame, and make it more easie to be auoided, by attenuating and scouring it. And lastly it is good as well for the aggrieuances, as approching or inclination of *Peripneumonia & Pleuritis*. ℞. *Hyssopi arefacti*, ℥ j. ß. *radicum Polypodij quercini, Fœniculi, Glycyrrhizæ, semi. Carthami*, ana. ℥ j. *Hordei expurgati, Adianti albi*, ana. ℥ ß. *Passularum purgatarum*, ℥ j. ß. *Ficus siccas, Palmulas pingues*, ana x. *numer.* Boile them in ℔ vj. of water to the consumption of halfe, and boile the strained iuyce thereof into a sirupe, with a pound and a halfe of hony, and *Sacchari*, ℔ j. ß.

Plantivs.

The description of the sirupe of Hysope, remaineth vnuaried, saue in stead of the roote of Smallage, there is substituted the roote of *Polypodij*, and for the roote of Parcely, the seed of garden Saffron, which be much more fit and commodious. Certaine mitigatiues be abstracted which be sufficient enough in the sirupe of Violets and Iuiubes, the rather to make the force of the sirupe more scouring.

Syrupus de Prassio.

SYrupe of Horehound cutteth mightily, attenuateth, scoureth, and purgeth the diseases of the breast and the liuer; it is excellent good against inueterate diseases of grosse and slimy fleame, as for *Asthma, Tussis vetus, Empiema*, and also auaileble for *Peripneumonia* and *Pleuritis* already enclined. ℞. *Prassii albi recentis*, ℥ ij. *Glycyrrhizæ, Polypodij quercini, radicum Apij & Fœniculi*, ana. ℥ ß. *Adianthi albi, Hyssopi, Origani, Calaminthæ, Stœbes, Satureiæ, Tussilaginis*, ana. ℥ vj. *semi. Anisi, & Bombacis*, ana. ℥ iij. *Vuarum passarum expurgatarum*, ℥ ij. *Ficus passas pingues*, x. *numer.* Boile them in viij. pounds of *Hydromel* dilaied to the consumption of the halfe; boile the strained iuyce into a sirupe

with

with hony. ℔.ij. and white Sugar, ℔.ij. Season aud sweeten it with an ounce of the powder of the roote of the Florentine flower deluce.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe of Horehound seemed cõfused of so great a mixture of lenitiue, scouring, and cutting simples, that it was difficult to declare to what vse it serued; which may be also affirmed of many other sirupes, which be gathered out of diuerse Authors without any methode or reason. Wherefore sith before hath bene propounded the sirupe of Violets and Iuiubes, for moistening and sufficient lenitiue; and the sirupe of Hysope for scouring moderately, cutting and purging the diseases of the breast, the Authour thought it necessary vpon good ground, to annect this sirupe of Horehound, being of a very good deuiding and scouring faculty, thereby the rather to cure extreme and rooted diseases, which notwithstanding who will, may temper with the mixture of the other.

Sirupus Symphyti.

Sirupus Symphyti doth purge mildly and easily the quitture and filthinesse of consuming and vlcerated lungs, without feare of any issue out of bloud, and doth corroborare the lungs. ℞. *radicum & cymarum Symphyti maioris & minoris*, ana. M. iij. *Rosarum rubrarum, Betonicæ, Plantaginis, Pimpinellæ, Polygoni, Scabiosæ, Tussilaginis*, ana. M. ij. All being bruised fresh or greene, you must straine out the iuyce which must be boiled and skummed to ℔.iij. and make a sirupe thereof by putting thereto of white Sugar, ℔.ij. ℥.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there was no sirupe yet extant at any time, or set out in vse for the consumed & purulent lungs: in so great scarcity this profitable sirupe of Comfery was vpon good ground of art here to be placed.

Sirupus è succo Buglossi.

SYrupe of the iuyce of Buglosse, doth especially comfort & cheere the heart, and maketh a riddance of the quiuering and swounding thereof, and is very good for melancholy and mad persons. ℞ *succi Buglossi defæcati*, that is, purified, ℔ iij. *Sacchari albi*, ij. Boile them to the consistence of a sirupe.

The sirupe of the iuyce of garden Buglosse, of the iuyce of Violets, of the iuyce of Peaches, be all cordiall, and are made all one way.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing was to be changed either in the sirupe of wild or garden Buglosse, or in the sirupe of the iuyce of Violets, or in the iuyce of Peaches, or of the barke of Oranges: but there was great occasion to adde the sirupe of Mint, becaue there was none in vse which did make a riddance of the diseases of the heart, and take away the annoyance of pestilent and venimous diseases.

Sirupus è cortice Mali Citrij.

THe sirupe of the barke of the Orange, or Pome-citron doth renew and exhilarate the heart being heauy, and the trembling thereof of any cold cause, and driueth away sorrow. ℞. *corticum Citriorum Malorum recentium* infused or prepared in ℔. j. of water. Boile them in vj. ℔. of water till iiij. be

℞ Sirup of Comfry to cleanse & consume & strengthen. Symphyton Comfrey or Sanfe of Jerusalem

be consumed, and with iij. ℔. of white Sugar make a sirupe, and condite it with gran.vj.of muske.

Syrupus Melissophylli.

SYrupe of Balmemint is of all other the best for the trembling and ouercasting of the heart, and of a peculiar power it abateth the malignity of pestilent and venimous diseases, and maketh a riddance thereof. ℞. *radicum Dictamni, Pentaphylli, Betonicæ, Doronici Romani*, ana. ℥.ß. *foliorum Melissophylli, Stœbes, & Morsus, florum Buglossi vtriusque, & Rorismarini*, ana. M.j. *Semi. Oxalidis, Citrij mali, Fæniculi, Attractylidis*, that is, *Cardus benedicti, & Ocimi*, ana. ʒ.iij. Boile them in ℔.iiij.of water, to the consumption of halfe, and being strained, put thereto ℔.iij.of white Sugar, of the iuyce of Balme and Rose water, ana. ℔. ß. Boile all this into a sirupe, condited of Cinamon and yellow Saunders, ana. ℥.ß.

Sirupus è Menta.

SYrupe of Mint doth heate the stomacke moderately, and doth corroborate it with an easie adstriction, it helpeth concoction, abateth loathsomnesse, vomite, chincough, and lientery. ℞. *Succi Cydoniorum dulcium, succi Cydoniorum acidodulcium*, that is, tarty-sweet, *succi Granatorum dulcium acidorum, succi Granatorum acidodulcium*, ana. ℔.j.ß. Mixe these together, and infuse ℔.j. ß. of dry Mint in them xxiiij.houres, of red Roses, ℥.ij. Boile them to the halfe, and when they be strained, put to them ℔.iiij. of white Sugar; and to condite the sirupe, boile ʒ.iij. of *Gallia muschata* bound in a cloth.

PLANTIVS.

In the greater sirupe of Mint, nothing was to be varied; neither was the other lesse sirupe to be set downe, for that it is comprehended vnder the greater: and in the sirupe of Wormewood nothing is to be changed.

Syrupus Absynthij.

after Cydonius Nirtnus or dynus.

THe sirupe of Wormewood either purgeth or consumeth the relickes in the stomacke, and doth recouer a chearfull colour, and get a stomacke to those that be recouered of a disease; it riddeth the liuer of weakenesse, and expelleth the Iaundies. Lastly it corroborateth all the instruments of concoction. ℞. *Absynthij Roma.* ℔.ß. *Rosarum rubrarum* ℥ ij. *Spicæ nardi*, ʒ.iij. Bruise them and infuse them xxiiij.houres in old and well smelling white wine, & the iuyce of Quince peares, ℔.ij ß. Boile them with a lent fire to the consumptiõ of the halfe, then boile them againe with ℔.ij. of white Sugar to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

Cydoniorum Mina, that is, the iuyce decocted to thicknesse.

CYdoniorum *Mina*, doth corroborate the stomacke and the liuer, furthereth concoction, procureth appetite, stayeth vomite and lientery. ℞. *succi Cydoniorum defæcati*, ℔. vj |Boile it with a lent fire to the consumption of the halfe, by foming little and little: then poure in of old and good red wine, ℔.iiij, and white Sugar, ℔.iiij and boile them againe to the thicknesse of hony; condite it with one dramme and a halfe of Cinamon, of Cloues, and Ginger, ana. ℈.ij.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

This *Mina Cydoniorum* is a meane betwixt the simple and the compound, and hath the vertue of them both.

Syrupus Myrtinus, that is, of the Mirtle.

SYrupus *Myrtinus* corroborateth the stomacke and the intrails, staieth an old issue of the belly, all eruption of bloud, and euery distillation of the braine. ℞. *baccarum Myrti*, ℥.ij.ß. *Santali albi*, *Rhois culinarij*, *Balaustiorum*, *baccarum Oxyacanthæ*, *Rosarum rubrarum*, ana.℥.j.ß. *Mespilorum* ℥.ß. Bruise them all, and boile them in viiij.℔.of water to the third part, and to the strained decoction put of the iuyce of Quince peares, and Pomegranates, ana.℔.ij.Sugar, ℔.v.Boile them together according to Art.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus Myrtinus retaineth the old composition: and the sirupe *Byzantinus*, for that after purgation it scoureth all the relicks of the hepaticke diseases, may commodiously be referred to this place.

Syrupus Fumariæ.

SYrupe of Fumitory scoureth from bloud, salt and exust humors; it taketh away Itch, Scabbe, Tetters, Leprosie, and all the diseases of the skinne, asswageth maligne and fistulous vlcers, the Canker and *Elephantiasis*. ℞. *Endiuiæ*, *Absinthij Roma. Lupuli*, *Cassuthæ*, *Scolopendrij veri*, ana.M.j. *Epithymi*, ℥.j.ß. Boile them in ℔.iiij.of water to the consumption of halfe, and put to the strained decoction of the purified iuyce of Fumitory, ℔.j.ß.*succi vtriusq; Buglossi*, ana.℔.ß.*Sacchari albi*, ℔.iiij.Boile this sirupe to a good consistence.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be many descriptions of the sirupe of Fumitory, there seemeth none more fitte or more easie to be practised then this, to purge impure bloud.

The sirupe of the iuyce of both the Bugloſſes, of the iuyce of Violets, and the sirupe of Balmemint do also appertaine to the splene.

Syrupus è Malis odoriferis.

THe sirupe of mellow apples, abateth the noysome vapors of melancholy, pacifieth and asswageth feare, sorrow and madnesse, and exhilarateth the patient. ℞. *succi Malorum acidodulcium fragrantium*, ℔.iiij.*succorum Violarum*, *Bugloſſi domestici & sylvestris*, *aquæ Rosarum stillatiuæ*, ana.℔.j. Boile them together, skumme them and straine them, and adde thereto white Sugar ℔.vj.boile them vnto a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

It were ridiculous to haue the sirupe of apples onely made thereof, without addition of other iuyces seruing for melancholy or blacke choler.

Syrupus Althæa.

THe sirupe of the Water mallow, doth cleanse mildly & gently the grosse obstructing fleame of the kidneis, the slimie and purulent quitture, and their sandy grauell, without sensible heate: Furthermore it asswageth the heate of the vrine. ℞. *radicum Althæa*, ℥.ij. *Cicerum rubro*. ℥.j. *Passarum Vuarum*

expurgatarum, radicum Graminis & Asparagi, Glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, ana. ℥.ß. *Cymarum*, that is, the tender croppes, *Althæa, Maluæ, Helxines, Pimpinellæ, Plantaginis, Adianti vtriusque*, ana. M.j. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum & minorum*, ana. ʒ.iij. Boile them in vj. ℔. of water till ℔.ij. be consumed, and with ℔.iiij. of Sugar make it a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas the sirupe of water Mallowes or marsh Mallowes was tofore neuer described, and yet according to euery mans opinion there is great vse thereof, it could not more commodiously be made for the vses for which it is propounded.

Sirupus Raphani.

THe sirupe of Radish doth more forcibly scoure the kidneis and the bladder, breaketh the stone, forceth out grauell, and prouoketh vrine suppressed. ℞. *radicis Raphani domestici & sylueſtris*, ana. ℥.j. *radicum Saxifragi, Rusci, Leuistici, Eringij, Anonis, Petroselini, Fœniculi*, ana. ℥.ß *foliorum Betonicæ, Pimpinellæ, Pulegij, Cymarum vrticæ, Nasturtij, Crithmi, Callitrichi*, ana. M.j. *fructus Halicacabi, Zezypha*, ana. *numer.* xx. *sem. Ocimi, Bardanæ, Petroselini Macedonici, Seselios, Carui, Dauci, Lithospermi, corticum radicis Lauri*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Vuarum passarum expurgatarum, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ʒ.vj. Boile them in decent order in x. ℔. of water, to the consumption of foure, of the which with Sugar, ℔.iiij. purified hony, ℔.ij. a cleare sirupe must be made: condite it with Cinamon, ℥.j. and *Nux muschata*, ℥.ß.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas no sirupe is found described to breake the stone, and expell grauell, this sirupe of Radish is substituted to great vse, which is aptly and conueniently compounded of these simples, which haue great faculty to breake the stone, with an intermixture of other lenitiue and scouring things.

Sirupus Artemisiæ.

THe sirupe of Mugwort doth prouoke mightily the suppressed floures, or auoiding more sparingly, which also the sirupe of *Adiantum* and Hyssope doth but more mildly: this sirupe asswageth the strangling and ouercasting of the wombe. ℞. *Artemisiæ* M.ij. *radicum Iridis, Hellenij, Rubiæ, Pæoniæ, Leuistici, Fœniculi*, ana. ℥.ß. *Pulegij, Origani, Calaminthes, Nepitæ, Melissophylli, Sabinæ, Sampsuchi, Hyssopi, Prassii, Chamædryos, Chamæpityos, Hyperici, Parthenij, Betonicæ*, ana. M.j. *sem. Anisi, Petroselini, Fœniculi, Ocimi, Dauci, Rutæ, Nigellæ*, ana. ʒ.iij. Bruise them and infuse them foure and twenty houres in eight pound of *Hydromel*, till three be consumed, and then after boile it with Sugar. ℔.v. into a sirupe, cõdite it with ℥.j. of Cinamon, & ʒ.iij. of *Spicæ*.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas in the sirupe of Mugwort without consideration confounded, many things nothing apt for diseases of the wombe were contained, and sundry things which could not be got, or whose strength by boiling wasted, the Author cut off such simples as vnnecessary and vnprofitable, leauing onely the chiefest and best.

Purging

Purging receipts.

MEdicines prescribed for purgations of humours, although they be made in diuerse formes, yet it is much better then to reduce all into one place; orderly beginning at these which be most gentle.

Electuarium è Prunis.

THe Electuary of Proins is maruellous lenitiue, mollifying the costiue belly, purging midly and gently sundry humours, very commodious in extreme heate of weather, and to all ages in burning of agues and thirst. ℞. *radicum Althæa, Polypodij è quercu, Passarum expurgatarum*, ana. ℥.ij. *Glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, sem. Cnici*, ana. ℥.j. *Maluæ, Violæ, Helxines, Mercurialis*, ana. M.ij. Boile them in ten pound of water to the remnant of vj. In halfe of the strained decoction boile sweete Proines, Iuiubes, Sebesten, ana. *numer.* xx. *Ficus passæ pingues numer.* x. Then let the pulpe passe through a sieue. In the other halfe of the strained, decoction boile *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum* ℔.j. ß. and this being strained, mixe it with the pulpe with *Sacchari & mellis expumati*, ana. ℔. ß. then boile them to the consistence of an Electuarie, sprinkling in the end *Cinamomi tenuissimè triti*, ℥.j. *Zinziberis*, ℥.iij. The dose is ℥.j. the whole composition is ℔.iij. The doses be about xxviij. or xxx.

The solid Electuary of Proines hath the same vertue. ℞. *Pruna dulcia numer.* x. *Maluæ, Violæ, Mercurialis, Helxines*, ana. M.j. *Polypodij è quercu, sem. Carthami, radicis Althæa, Passarum purgatarum, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.ß. *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum*, ℥.x. Boile them in v. ℔ of water till ij. remaine, then presse it in a presse, put *Sacchari rubri*, ℔.j.ß. boile them againe with a lent fire to the consistence of a solid Electuarie, in the end sprinkling powder *Electuarij Aromatici Rosati maioris ad* ʒ.iij. make *tabellæ* in weight, ℥.ß. The whole composition is about, ℥.xx. the doses be about xxx. Compound both these Electuaries together, and it will more forcibly purge from the furthest parts of the body all humours, especially both the cholers, in this order. ℞. *Electuarij è Prunis simplicis, & recentis & adhuc calentis*, ℔.j. in the which dissolue *Diadacrydij*, ʒ.iij. The dose is from ʒ.iij. to ℥.ß. In one pound of the composition, the doses be about xxxij.

Solide Electuary è prunis.

Plantij Scholia in purgantes compositiones.

AS the sirupes, so the compositions of purging medicins be taken out euery where without all art, and put in bookes of Phisicke, so that you may find two, three, or more of like effect, nothing aptly applyed to the cure of diseases: whereof it is that the Author vpon good consideration, hath very much altered the compositions of purging medicines, the rather thereby to affoord a conuenient and commodious receipt for euery malady. How much those receipts which he hath set downe, retaining the ancient names of antiquitie, do differ from the ancient receipts, or how much they be more auaileable for the proposed diseases, euery man may vnderstand by estimation had of the faculty of the simples. For whereas *Diaprunis* both sirupe and cōpound described *à Nicolao*, should greatly haue refrigerated and bene appliable

vnto agues, it containeth many vehement hot Aromates, which also in the compound doth exasperate it into the sharpnesse of Scammony.

Catholicum simplex.

Catholicum simplex doth deduce and purge from euery part of the body mildly and gently all humours alike, nothing noysome either to children, old folke, or women with child, whether with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *radicum Helenij, Buglossi, Cichorij, Althæa, Polypodij quercini, sem. Cnici contusorum,* ana ℥. ij. *Stæchados, Hyssopi, Melissophylli, Eupatorij veri, Asplenij, Betonicæ, Artemisiæ,* ana. M. ij *Vuarum passarum expurgatarum,* ℥. iij *quatuor sem. frigidorum maiorum, sem. Anisi, Glycyrrhizæ,* ana. ʒ. iij. Boile all these according to art in x. ℔. of *hydromel* til vij. be remanent; in the strained decoction macerate xij houres, *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum* ℔ j ß. *Agarici albi,* ℔ ß. *Zinziberis,* ℥. j. Boile them a little, and in the pressed liquor, dissolue of the pulpe of *Sebestens,* ℔. ß *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum tenuissimè tritorum,* ℥. iiij. *Sirupi infusionis Rosarum pallidarum,* ℔. j. *mellis optimi expumati,* ℔. ij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of hony, insperſing in the end *Rheubarbari electi, Cinamomi electi,* ana. ℥. j. *Santali citrini,* ℥ j. *Nucis moschatæ,* ʒ. ij. The dose is ℥. j. the whole composition is ℔. iiij the doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

This may be truly termed *Catholicum,* that is, vniuersall, for that it containeth medicines purging all humours, and very agreeable, especially for all the inward parts, purging mildly and gently, it doth draw either nothing or very little from the extreme parts. But the greater *Catholicum* doth worke that effect forcibly and mightily, the composition whereof consisteth of all kinde of medicines which draw as well from the nigher as further ceſſes, aptly confused and represſed. In the ancient *Catholicum* the Reubarbe is not fitly boiled, neither the *Cassia,* which becometh sharpe with the Thamarinds, and almost corrupteth the whole composition.

Catholicum maius.

Catholicum maius doth also draw the humours vniuersally, and that more forcibly, not onely from the places nigh, but also farther off, without disturbance of the body or losse of strength. ℞. *quatuor sem. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, sem. Papaueris albi,* ana ℥. j. *Tragacanthæ,* ʒ. iij. *Rosarum rubrarum, Santali citrini, Cinamomi,* ana. ℥. ij. *Zinziberis,* ℥ j. *Rheubarbari selecti, Diadacrydij,* ana. ℥. ß. *Agarici, Turpethi,* ana. ʒ. ij. *Sacchari albi soluti in aqua Rosarum,* in the which ℥. ij. of the leaues of Sene haue bene incocted, ℔. j. Let tables be compounded of weight, ʒ. iij. The dose is one table, the whole composition is ℔. j ß the doses be about 50.

Syrupus infusionis Rosarum pallidarum.

Sirupe of infusion of white Roses, doth easily draw from the principallest intrals thin choler & waterish humors, cõuenient in easie diseases for children, for old folke, and such as be enfeebled. ℞. *aquæ infusionis Rosarum pallidarum,* ℔. v. *Sacchari expurgati,* ℔. iiij. boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of a sirupe: soke ℔. ij. *Rosarum pallidarum recentium in* ℔. vj. of tepide water twelue houres, and couer the vessell; & in stead of this likewise, substitute

other

other fresh Roses; and these cast away, put in the water other new Roses, the third, fourth, eight, or ninth time, vntill the liquor haue imbibed much strength of the Roses, in which the Sugar must be dissolued. Neither truly the sirupe of bruised Roses, or of their iuice, will be effectuall as this. There is also made a sirupe (which draweth & purgeth likewise choler & water, & killeth wormes) of the floures of the Peach macerated in water, as I haue told you before.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe *Rosarum pallidarum*, the Electuary of the iuice of Roses & *Diacydonion*, keepe their old order of composition without any manifest mutation, but in the Electuary of *Diacarthamus*: for that the adiection of *Mannæ granatæ, Mellis rosati, & Sacchari geminati* preuerted the perfect order of composition, the way of making it in this place is vpon good cõsideratiõ omitted.

Electuarium è succo Rosarum.

E*Lectuarium è succo Rosarum* doth draw forcibly from places far distant, choler, thinne and aquous humours, very commodious and easie to be vsed for those which be troubled with the goute, in case they haue not a vehement ague. ℞. *Succi Rosarum siccarum recentium, Sacchari albi*, ana. ℔.j.ß. Boile them into a solid Electuary with a lent fire, and in the end sprinkle *trium Santalorum, Mastiches, Cinamomi, exquisitè tritorum*, ana. ℥.ij. *Diadacrydij*, ℥.j. ß. *Caphuræ*, ℈.ß. make tables in weight, ʒ.iij.ß. The dose is one table, the whole composition is xxij.℥. the doses be about 70.

Diacydonion.

D*Iacydonion* worketh the same that the Electuary of the iuyce of Roses doth, but more moderately & easily. ℞. *pulpæ Cydoniorũ expurgatæ, coctæ & cribro transmissæ*, ℔.j.ß. *Succi Cydoniorum*, ℔.ß. *Sacchari albissimi*, ℔.ij. Boile them to the thicknesse of hony, sprinkling in the end *Cinamomi triti*, ℥.j. *Zinziberis, Maceris, Caryophyllorum*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Diadacrydij*, ℥.ij. The dose is from ʒ.iij. to ℥.ß. the whole composition is ℔.iiij. the doses be about 90.

Electuarium Diacnicu.

E*Lectuarium Diacnicu*, doth draw and purge from the furthest places fleame, and wheyish or waterish humors, and also choler, and is especially good for paine of the head, sinewes and ioynts. ℞. *pulueris Electuarij Diatragacanthæ frigidi, medullæ semi. Cnici, Hermodactylorum*, ana. ʒ.ß. *Rosarum rubrarum, succi Glycyrrhizæ, Cinamomi*, ana. ℥.ij. *Turpethi*, ℥.j. *Diadacrydij*, ℥.ß. *Sacchari albi, aqua Rosarum soluti*, ℔.j. make tables thereof the weight of ʒ.iij ß. the dose is one table.

for gogal

Diaphœnicon.

D*Iaphœnicon* doth mildly purge choler, crude and slimie fleame, agreable and conuenient in compound and continuall agues, and diseases arising of crudity, and also for the cholike and flatulent paine. ℞. *pulpæ Palmularum mundatarum*, boiled in *Hydromel*, and fined in a siue, *Penidiorũ recentium*, ana. ℔.ß. *Amygdalarum expurgatarum*, ℥.iij.ß. Whẽ they be bruised and mingled al together, put into thẽ *mellis expumati*, ℔.ij. Boile them a litle, and thẽ sprinkle *Zinziberis, Piperis, Maceris, Cinamomi, foliorum Rutæ siccorũ, semi. Fœniculi*

for Go rollick a stage.

& Dauci, ana. ℥. ij: *Turpethi tenuissimè triti*, ℥. iiij. *Diadacrydij*, ℥. j. ß. The dose is from ʒ. iij. to ℥. ß. the whole composition is about ℔.iiij. the doses about 130.

PLANTIVS.

In *Diaphœnicon*, *Palmulæ* be rightly soaked and boiled in *Hydromel*, for that the ancient infusion which was prescribed to be done three daies in vineger, procureth a horrible sauor; many things also be subtracted, as the seed of Louage, *pinei Nuclei*, *Galanga*, *Xyloaloe*, for that there were many of the same faculty and operation: and the quantity of Dates, Penidies, and other gentle medicines is augmented, that thereby the whole composition might become more pleasant and easie to be vsed.

Benedicta.

Benedicta draweth forth grosse and flegmaticke humours, and also serous from any part, it reuelleth the matter of the stone, & displaceth the stones themselues, abateth paine of the reines, is very good for cold natures, and in cold weather. ℞. *Turpethi*, ʒ. x. *Diadacrydij*, *Hermodactylorum*, *Rosarum rubra*. ana. ʒ. v. *Charyophyllorum*, *Zinziberis*; *Saxifragi*, *semi. Apij*, *salis Gemmi*, *Galangæ*, *Maceris*, *Carui*, *Fæniculi*, *Acimorum*, *Asparagi & Rusci*, *sem. Milij solis*, *quatuor semi. frigidorum maior. Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ʒ. j. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔. j. confect them according to art. The dose is from ʒ. iij. to ℥. ß. the whole composition is almost, ℔. ij. the doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

The author hath vpon good occasion subtracted out of *Benedicta*, because it was too hote, and could not be easily and safely vsed in an ague, *Spicam nardi*, *Macropiper*, *Cardamomum & Crocum*; and hath placed in stead of those the foure greater cold seedes and Liquorice.

Confectio Hamech.

Confectio hamech purgeth blacke choler, and burnt choler, and salt fleame; it is a peculiar remedy for the Leprosy, the Canker, the Tetter, the *Elephantiasis* and *Psora*. ℞. *corticis Mirobalanorum citrinarum*, ℥. ij. *Cepularum*, *& nigrarum Violarum*, *Colocynthidis*, *Polypodij quercini*, ana. ℥. j. ß. *Absynthij*, *Thymi*, ana. ℥. ß. *Anisi*, *Fæniculi*, *Rosarum rubr.* ana. ʒ. iij. Bruise them all and soake them in whey ℔. ij. then boile them to a pound, rub thē in your hand, & wring them. To the strained decoction ad the iuyce of Fumitory, the pulp of Proines & Raisins, ana ℔. ß. *Sacchari albi*, *mellis expumati*, ana. ℔. j. Boile thē to the thicknes of hony, sprinkling in the end *Agarici*, *Sennæ*, *tritorum*, ana. ℥. ij. *Rheubarbari triti*, ℥. j. ß. *Epithymi*, ℥. j. *Diadacrydij*, ʒ. vj. *Cinamomi*, ℥. ß. *Zinziberis*, ʒ. ij. *semi. Fumariæ & Anisi*, *Spicæ nardi*, ana ʒ. j. The dose is from ʒ. iij. to half an ounce, the whole cōpositiō is ℔. iij. & ℥. viij. The doses be about 80.

PLANTIVS.

In the confection of *Hamech*, the Myrobalans be twise put in, to none effect, first in the decoction, and after bruised; Rheubarbe leeseth his strength & vertue, being boiled; *Cassia*, *Manna*, and *Thamaryndi* being boiled, do turne to putrifaction. The force of *Scammony* being boiled wasteth, and is not with facility mixed with others. Wherefore the author hath set down a much more

conuenient

conuenient composition and easie to be vsed: this composition of all other is the best and most safest, for that in them the sharpnes and feruency of *Turbith* and *Scammony*, is notably well abated, either by the mixture of pulpe of Proines or Raisins, or by *Hermodactilis* and *Amygdalis*, or with Roses and their iuice, or *Myrobalanes*. There be other receipts extant not so safe to be vsed: as *Electuarium Indum vtriusque*, *Electuarium Eleschof*, *Electuarium de Psillio*, *Diaturbith*. In the which the sharpnes of *Scammony*, and other stronger medicins is little abated, yea rather by the mixture of the other hote things is quickned. Further, they containe nothing, or are of power to worke nothing, which other receipts here described do not bring to passe with successe. Wherefore to take away the causes of all effects, these receipts be auaileable enough.

Hiera simplex.

Hiera simplex by purging choler and fleame from the stomacke, intrails, *Hypochondrium*, and mesentery veins impacted, and arridding forcibly and mightily of redundance, doth mildly helpe all diseases proceeding of cruditie and obstruction of veines. ℞. *Cinamomi*, *Maceris*, *Asari*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Croci*, *Mastiches*, ana ℥.vj. *Aloes non lotæ*, ℥.ioo. or ℔.j.ß. *Mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.iiij. confect them according to Art: the powder alone is ministred from ℥.ij. to ℥.iij. but being receiued in hony from ℥.j. to ℥.j.ß.

Hiera Diacolocynthidos.

Hiera Diacolocynthidos which hath bene in stead of all other described of the ancient Physitions, by purging safely and gently all grosse and viscours humours, especially blacke choler and citrin waters, it is especiall good against the Palsey, quiuering Crampe, Goute, and inueterate diseases of the nerues, and also for the Dropsie. Secondly for melancholy, *Mania*, *Epilepsia*, Scabbe, Leprosie, maligne vlcer, Cancre, and *Elephantiasis*, which diseases do expugne gentle medicines. ℞. *Stœcados*, *Marrubij*. *Camædrios*, *Hyperici*, *Scyllæ assatæ*, *Polij*, *Calaminthes montanæ*, *Cinamomi*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Epithymi*, *Polypodij quercini aridi*, *quatuor seminum frigido. maio. mundatorum*, ana. ℥.j.ß. *pulpæ Colocynthidis*, *Scammonij*, *Hellebori nigri*, *præparatorum*, ana. ℥.ij *Euphorbij præparati*, *Aloes*, *Myrrhæ*, *Ammoniaci*, *Opoponacis*, *Sagapeni*, *Castorei*, ana ℥.j. *mellis cocti in succo Cydoniorum*, *& expumati*, ℔.j.℥.iij. thereof are ministred; *Colocynthis*, *Scammony*, blacke *Hellebore*, and *Euphorbe*, being bruised, must be rubbed with oile of sweete Almonds, and then are two daies to be soaked in a muscilage of *Tragacanthum* and *gumme Arabicke* drawne out of Rose water, till they haue drunke vp the muscilage.

PLANTIVS.

The ancient composition of *Hiera simplex* is retained, and nothing is altered thereof, sauing *Xylobalsamum*, which we cannot come vnto. Many compositions do consist of stronger simples, some of *Scammony*, as *Electuarium è Prunis*, *Diacydonion*, *& Electuarium è succo Rosarum*. Others beside be compounded of *Turbith*, as *Diaphœnicon*: others be confected of *Hermodactylos*, besides the two former, that is, *Turbith* and *Scammony*, as *Diacnicis* and *Benedicta*: others admit to their composition *Colocynthis*, as the confection of *Hamech*; others likewise do further take to their composition, *Helleborum nigrum*,

& Euphorbium as *Hiera Diacoloeynthidos*, which is a peculiar remedy of certaine diseases, but not vsuall. Hereby then it may be gathered, that there is no simple purging medicine practised or put in vse, of which there is not some receipt extant, so that for such purpose more are not requisite.

Hydragogum minus.

HYdragogum *minus*, drawing out the water of Dropsie-sicke persons mildly without aggrieuance, may be safely vsed both of children, old folke, infeebled persons, and women with child, whether they be aggrieued with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *succ. Rosarum pallidarum*, ℔.ß. *Sacchari albi, Mellis optimi*, ana ℥.xv. Boile them till they cast a fome and become thicke, and then put into them *succi radicis Ebuli*, ℔.j. *Prassii sicci, sem. Fœniculi tritorum*, ana.ʒ.ij. *Acinorum Ebuli & Sambuci*, ana.℥.ij.ß. *Cinamomi*, ʒ.vj. *Maceris, Galangæ*, ana.℥.iij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of honey, ℥ ß. thereof is ministred whey of milke, or decoction of Barley, or of Raisins. It will be more effectuall by putting thereunto of the iuyce of wilde Cucumber, ℥.ß. or of the roote of wild Cucumber, dried and bruised, ʒ.vj, or of the iuice of the roote of our Flower deluce. ℔. ß.

Hydragogum maius.

HYdragogũ *maius* of *Laur.* mightily expelling water, ℞ *Seri lactis*, ℔.ij. *Sacchari albi, carnis Cydoniorum ex aceto coctorum*, ana. ℥. x. *Mannæ Calabrinæ*, ℥. v. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of hony; when they be ready to be taken off the fire, put into them of the leaues of Laureoll prepared in vineger, and oile of sweete Almonds, ℥.ij It is ministred in the Dose of ℥ ß.

The maner of preparing it, is in this wise, ℞. *Foliorum Laureolæ*, ℥.ij. macerate thẽ foure and twenty houres in vineger of Pomegranates or Purslaine, boile them softly, straine them, drie them, and bruise them, and then put into them of Rose water, ℔.ß. of the oile of sweete Almonds, ℥.j.ß. Boile them againe vntill the water be consumed, and the powder mixed with the oile remaining, is to be added to the consumption.

PLANTIVS.

That there should be nothing wanting in these receipts, in the last place he hath adioyned to the precedent receipts, certaine compositions to expell the Dropsie water, notwithstanding more stronger simples, specially *Scammony* and *Euphorbium* do purge; yet the Author his meaning was to haue some peculiar receipts extant of such simples as haue a proper and accustomable vertue against such redundancy of water, the one whereof is more gentle in working, the other of the leaues of Laureoll is more forcible in operation, which leaues tofore haue not bene applied to the composition of any thing: any man may make coniecture by the mixtue of the simples, how fitly such kinde of compositions be applied to the expelling of such water.

Vnguentum è Lathyride.

an oyntment plaister & for gonorrhoy:

VNguentum è *Lathyride* softeneth & prouoketh the belly, draweth out vehemently the water of hydropicall persons, asswageth the swelling or distention of the outward parts of the body betwixt the nauell and the priuities called *Abdomen*, all which redundancy it doth scoure downeward from the

wombe

wombe, if the nauell and the lower parts of the belly, and the parts aboue the priuities and the thighes, be therewith annointed; and it ariddeth all such matter vpward by vomit, if the stomacke therewith be madefied. ℞. *Succi Lathyridis*, ℔.ß. *succi Esulæ*, ℥.iij. In the which dissolue *radicis Cyclamini*, ℥.ij. *Scammonij*, ℥.ß. *granorum Recini & Lathyridis expurgatorum*, ana. ℥.j.ß. *sem. Fœniculi, Rutæ, Anethi, baccarum Lauri*, ana. ℥.j Bruise thē all, and macerate them a day in the iuice: after that take *Axungiæ*, ℥.viij. & *Ceræ*, ℥.iiij. liquefie them, and dissolue all the rest in them by little and little, and boile thē with a lent fire vntill the consumption of the whole moisture, and vntill they all be come to the temperature of an ointment. If the same matter be boiled in ℥.xv. of oile, to the consumption of the liquor, the strained oile will retaine the same vertue. If either Gum Ammoniack, or Waxe, be concorporated with the same ointment to the consistency of an Emplaister, that will cause issue of the water, being laid vpon the belly, but not so forcibly.

Electuarium Diasaru.

E*Lectuarium Diasaru* doth by vomite expell all kind of humours about the stomacke and midriffe, not by a continuall insult, but hauing intermission, safely, and with facility to be vsed both of aged persons, and of women with child. ℞. *syrupi Menthæ & Violarum*, ana. ℥.viij. Boile them to the thicknesse of hony, after they haue boiled, (draw away the fire) insperse in *radicis Peponis arefactæ, semi. Raphani & Vrticæ*, macerated in Rose water, dried and pounded, ana. ℥.j. *radicis Asari conteritæ, & Cretæ*, ℥.ij. *Cinamomi, semi. Fœniculi*, ana. ʒ.iij. confect them to a liquide Electuarie, and let ʒ.iij. thereof be ministred either out of Barley, *Mulsa*, or whey of milke.

Plantivs.

The Author seemed much to haue furthered Physicke by these last receipts, especially by that which is allotted to procure vomite, for that in no Authour there was any extant wherewith we might safely purge the humours vpward: whereas notwithstanding that kinde of euacuation is most necessary to the curing of any diseases.

Pilulæ è Hiera simplici.

WHereas tofore we haue applied Electuaries both liquide & consistēt: so now let vs referre pils to all kind of causes and diseases. *Pilulæ è Hiera simplici* be confected with ʒ.j. of powder tempered *cum melle rosato*.

Pilulæ stomachicæ.

P*Ilulæ stomachicæ*, which taken before meate, purge the stomacke, helpe concoction, carry the meate downe, and do mildly purge. ℞. *Aloes*, ʒ.vj. *Mastiches, Rosarum rubrarum*, ana. ʒ.ij. make them coherent with *sirupo Rosato*, or *Absynthij*.

Plantivs.

Whereas there be vj. descriptions extant of the pils of the stomacke, all (this onely receipt exceptd) do hurt the stomacke, and cannot conueniently be vsed before meate, because they retaine in their confection Scammony and Turbith, wherwith the whole body (but especially the stomack) is much aggrieued.

Pilulæ Rufﬁ, ſeu communes.

Pilulæ Ruffi, which be termed alſo *Pilulæ communes*, being often vſed, helpe concoction, and do not ſuffer any putrifaction of the meate, do preſerue the humours and body from corruption, whereupon they do much auaile againſt the peſtiferous ague. ℞. *Aloes optimæ*, ℥.ij. *Myrrhæ electæ, Croci ſynceri*, ana. ℥.j. mixe them with aromaticke wine.

PLANTIVS.

Taking by little and little, and as it were coaugmenting compoſitions from pilles which conſiſt of ſole Aloe, after he addeth other vnto them which conſiſt of Aloe and Rewbarbe, & immediately ſuch as do conſiſt of Aloe & Agaricke, then ſuch as be confected of Agaricke, Aloe & Rewbarbe. And of thoſe he compoundeth other of Agaricke, Rewbarbe, Aloe, and *Senna*: to which in fine he hath annexed *Pilulæ ſine quibus*, in the which beſide the foure precedent, the vertue and infuſion of Scammony rather then the ſubſtance is contained. In confection whereof he hath withholden a portion of Myrobalanes, ſo that the portion thereof being retained, there would be ſome redundance eſpecially with other ſo many aſtringent ſimples.

Pilulæ Aſſaieret.

Pilulæ Aſſaieret for that they containe more Aloe then *Hiera*, be more effectuall in working. ℞. *Pulueris Hieræ ſimplicis*, ℥.j. Aloes ʒ.ij. (or according to *Valerius Cordus*, ℥.ij. to whom I rather encline) *Maſtiches*, or *Myrobalan. citrinarum*, ana. ʒ ß. reduce them them to a maſſe with ſirupe of *Stæchados*.

Pilulæ de Eupatorio.

Pilulæ de Eupatorio do purge choler mildly, and do aridde the liuer of ſtuffing, and corroborate it, and are to be had in more price then the pils which be deſcribed to be make of Rheubarbe. ℞. *ſucci Eupatorij*, *ſucci Abſinthij*, *Myrabolani citrinæ*, ana ʒ.iij. *Rheubarbari electi*, ʒ.iij. ß. *Maſtiches*, ʒ.j. *Croci*, ʒ.ß. Aloes, ʒ.v. *ſucci Endiuiæ*, in quantity ſufficient to incorporate them.

Pilulæ Maſtichinæ.

Pilulæ Maſtichinæ, for that they containe Agaricke, do more forcibly purge choler and groſſe fleame, then they which conſiſt of ſole Aloes. ℞. *Maſtiches*, ℥.ij. Aloes, ℥.iiij. *Agarici trochiſcati*, *pulueris Hieræ ſimplicis*, ana. ℥. j ß. and incorporate them with Malmeſey.

Pilulæ ex tribus, be confected of the ſame ſimples by addition of *Rheubarbi ſelecti*, ℥.ij. *Cinamomi* ℥.ß. and incorporate them with ſirupe of Cichory.

Pilulæ Imperiales.

Pilulæ Imperiales do mildly and moderatly purge out of the intrailes all humours, and therewithall comfort and ſtrengthen them, ridde them of obſtruction, and helpe the confection of all parts, ſeruiceable to nouriſhment. ℞. *Aloes optimæ*, ℥.ij. *Rheubarbari electi*, ℥.j. ß. *Agarici trochiſcati*, *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum*, ana. ℥.j. *Cinamomi* ʒ.iij. *Zinziberis* ʒ. ij. *Nucis muſchatæ*, *Caryophyllorum*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Maſtiches*, ana. ʒ. j. moiſten it with the ſirupe of Violets, and bring them into a maſſe.

Pi.

Pilulæ sine quibus esse nolo.

Pilulæ sine quibus esse nolo, do draw choler, fleame, and melancholy out of all parts of the body, but especially out of the head, eyes and senses; they asswage suffusion of the eyes, and preserue sight, they take away paine and noise of the eares. ℞. *Aloes optimæ*, ℥.xiiij. *Myrobalani. citri. Chepularum, Indarum, Rheubarbari, Masticbes, Absinthij, Rosarum, Violarum, Sennæ, Agarici, Cassuthæ*, ana. ℥.j. *Scammony*, ℥.vj. ß. dissolue the *Scammony* in the iuyce of Fennell as much as will suffice, and straine it through a cloth, and with the same iuyce incorporate the fine powders.

Pilulæ è Fumaria.

Pilulæ è Fumaria do extract bilious, salt and sharpe humours, and do correct what so is vicious or vnseemely in the skinne. ℞. *Myrobala. citri. Chebula. & Indar.* ana. ℥.v. *Diadacridij*, ℥.v. *Aloes*, ℥.ij. When all these be bruised, imbrue them in the iuyce of Fumitory, and permit them to dry three times, and in fine bring them to a masse.

Pilulæ Aureæ.

Pilulæ Aureæ be more effectuall in working then *Pilulæ è Fumaria*, for *Colocynthis* which they containe: they scoure the head, and senses, but especially the eyes, and recouer the quicknesse of sight, they expell bilious, and also flegmaticke humours. ℞. *Aloes, Diadacridij*, ana. ℥.v. *Rosarum rubra. sem. Apij*, ana ℥.ij. ß. *Sem. Anisi & Fæniculi, Masticbes*, ana. ℥.j. ß. *Croci, pulpæ Colocynthidos*, an. ℥.j. *Muscilaginis gummi Tragacanthæ, q ß.* and confect thereof a masse.

Pilulæ de Agarico.

Pilulæ de Agarico do mightily draw choler and slimy humours from all the parts of the body, but especially from the head and breast, peculiarly standing in stead against distillations and *Asthma*. ℞. *Agarici, Masticbes*, ana. ℥.iij. *radicis Iridis, Prassij*, ana. ℥.j. *Turpethi*, ℥.v. *puluer. Hieræ picræ*, ℥.ß. *pulpæ Colocynthidis, Sarcocollæ*, ana. ℥.ij. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.j. *sapæ quant. suff.* the rather to reduce them to a consistent substance.

PLANTIVS.

In the pils of Agaricke, there be orderly disposed all such excellent simples as auaile to draw out of the body grosse fleame, as well from the nigh parts as from the parts farre distant, in confecting whereof, the Author thought good to alter nothing.

Pilulæ Cocciæ.

Pilulæ Cocciæ do from all parts of the body purge choler, but grosse fleame more effectually, yet peculiarly out of the braine and nerues, whose diseases especially they do cure. ℞. *Puluer. Hieræ simp.* ℥.x. *pulpæ Colocynthidis*, ℥.iij. ℈.j. *Diadacridij* ℥.ij ß. *Turpethi, Stæcados*, ana. ℥.v. and confect a masse of those with sirupe of *Stæcados*.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ Cocciæ, notwithstanding they do forcibly purge choler and fleame, yet they do not purge all humours at once, as those pils which be termed

Polychrestæ, and commonly *Aggregatiuæ maiores*. The composition whereof differeth nothing from the ancient receipt, sauing for respect of the dose certaine simples be altered. The confection of those pils is much more conuenient then *Pilularum deocto rebus*, or then the pils of fiue kinds of *Myrobalanes* which notwithstanding containe the same simples. The description therefore of those pils in this place, seemeth vpon good occasion to be omitted, for that they seeme to be contained vnder these, as *Pilulæ de Euphorbio* be comprehended vnder *Pilulæ de Hermodactylis*.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis, do draw out serous or waterish humours mightily from the furthest parts, especially from the ioynts, most agreable in cold diseases of the braine, nerues and ioynts. ℞. *Hermodactylorum, Aloes, Myrobalano. citri. Turpethi, Colocynthidis, Bdellij mollis, Sagapeni*, ana. ʒ.vj *Castorei, Sarcocollæ, Opoponacis, semi. Rutæ agrestis, & Apij*, ana. ʒ.iij. *Croci*. ʒ. j. ß. *succi Brassicæ, quan. suffi.* to the confection of a masse.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis do retaine the ancient composition, and be of thē selues more effectuall against the inueterate diseases of the ioynts, then those which be termed, *Arthriticæ*, and more safely to be vsed then those which be called *Fœtidæ*, or which be confected *de Opoponace, de Sagapeno*, or *de Sarcocolla*, so that it were needlesse to set downe their receipts.

Pilulæ Polychrestæ.

Pilulæ Polycrestæ be very auaileable against all diseases of the head, the stomacke, the liuer, and other sundry compound diseases of the other intrails: for they draw out of these parts fleame and both the cholers. ℞. *Myrobalano. citri. Rheubarbari*, ana. ʒ.ß. *succi Eupatorij, succi Absinthij, Myrobalano. Chepularum, & Indarum, Agarici, Colocynthidis, Polypodij*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Diadacrydij, Turpethi, Aloes*, ana. ʒ.vj. *Masticbes, Rosarum rubrarum, salis Gemmei, Epithymi, Anisi, Zinziberis*, ana. ʒ.j. confect them with sirupe of Roses: they be ministred from ℥.ij. to ʒ.j.

Pilulæ è Lapide Cyaneo.

Pilulæ è lapide Cyaneo, do excellently purge blacke choler and fleame, especially good against *Melancholia*, sadnesse, and madnesse: against the Canker, *Elephantiasis* and blacke Morphew. ℞. *lapid. Cyanei abluti*, ʒ.vj. *Epithymi, Polypodij*, ana. ʒ.viij. *Diadacrydij, Hellebori nigri, salis Indi*, ana. ʒ.ij. ß. *Agarici*, ʒ. viij. *Caryophyllorum, Anisi*, ana. ʒ.iiij. *Pulueris Hieræ picræ simplicis*, ʒ.xv. and confect a masse of them with the iuyce of Endiue or Succory.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ de lapide Cyaneo for the blacke Hellebore vsed, be more practised then *Pilulæ Indæ* which containe also Hellebore: wherefore he hath described those, omitting others; and for that they be more effectuall against melancholike diseases thē *Pilulæ de lapide Armeno*, for that occasion he omitteth them.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ è Thymelæa.

Pilulæ è Thymelæa do mightily draw out of the body serous humors & water of hydropicall persons. ℞. *foliorum Thymelæ exiccatorum & aceto maceratorum*, ℥.v. *Myrobalana flauarum*, ℥. ß. *Myrobalanorum Cepularum*, ℥.iij. *Mannæ & Thamarindorum* dissolued in water of Succory, so much as sufficeth for the forme of pilles.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing is altered in *Pilulis è Thymelæa*, and to them is added certaine aptly confected of *Esula*, and which are very effectuall to draw out water. I suppose he omitted as well *Pilulas Lucis maiores* as *minores*, for that they be confusedly made of a great and vnnecessary heape of simples, and for that *Pilulæ sine quibus* be effectuall enough for the eyes hauing any affect.

Pilulæ ex Esula.

Pilulæ ex Esula do purge the wombe from the drop sicke water with great aggrieuance, and therefore agree onely to strong bodies, and then onely when they be fre from agues. ℞. *corticis radicis Esulæ minoris* macerated in vineger xxiiij. houres, and in the iuyce of Purslaine, ℥.ij. *grana Recini* purged and parched, xl. *Myrobalanorum cytrinarum*, ℥ j.ß *Chamedryos, Chamepityos Spicæ nardi, Cinamomi*, ana. ℈.ij bruise them all finely and incorporate them in ℥ j. of Tragacanth dissolued in Rosewater, & so reduce them to a masse. They be ministred in the dose of ℈.ij.

Pilulæ è Cynoglosso.

Pilulæ è Cynoglosso were not prouided so purge, but to stay distillations: whether they issue to the breast and lungs with a cough, or into the teeth or else where. ℞. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.vj. *Thuris masculi*, ℥ v. *Opij, Hyosciami, sem. radicis Cynoglossi aridi*, ana. ℥.ß. *Croci, Castorei*, ana. ℥.j.ß. and confect a masse thereof with distilled Rosewater. They be ministred from ℈.j. to ℥.ß.

PLANTIVS.

Very fitly is *Castoreum* added in *Pilulis è Cynoglosso*, which with Saffron hath singular vertue to correct the malignitie of *Opium*, which tofore in this receipt haue bene inconsiderately omitted.

Pilulæ Aristolochiæ.

Pilulæ Aristolochiæ hauing great power to deuide & scoure, are very auailable against *Epilepsia, Paralysis, Asthma*, & veterated cough, the beginning of *Scirrhus* in the liuer & reins, *Nephritis*, suppressing of the flowers: it expelleth the child & Seconds: they be more meete in winter, & for moist natures whē the bodies be purged. ℞. *radicis Aristolochiæ rotundæ*, ℥.j. *radicis Gentianæ, Myrrhæ electæ*, ana. ℥.iij. *Aloes, Cinamomi*, ana. ℥.ß. *Zinziberis*, ℥.j. when they be all exquisitely pownded, put in new oile of sweet Almonds. It is ministred in Dose, ℥ j.ß. and the broth in which they be dilaied is all at once to be supped.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ Aristolochiæ be last of all commodiously added to the rest, and be excellently described, because they haue a great opening vertue. They may be made in such forme that they may be drunke; but because they be very bitter, they be more easily deuoured in the forme of *Catapotium*.

for 6 forms
of pilles

Of Antidotaries: And first of such as be made in a solide forme, by taking where-of the principall parts of the body be comforted and strengthened.

Dianthon.

Dianthon doth comfort the infeebled braine, doth stay the distillations thereof, doth mitigate excessiue melancholy, and extreme sadnesse, it taketh away qualming and ouercasting of the heart. ℞. *florum Rorismarini*, ℥. ß. *Rosarum, Violarum, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥ iij. *Caryophyllorum, Spicæ nardi, Nucis muschatæ, Galangæ, Cinamomi, Zynziberis, Maceris, ligni Aloes, Cardamomi, Anisi, sem. Anethi*, ana, ℈. ij *Sacchari albi, aqua Saluiæ, vel Betonicæ soluti*, ℔. j. ß. make thereof an Electuarie in tables.

Electuarium pleres Archonticon.

Electuarium pleres Archonticon, doth maruellously comfort and strengthen the braine, quicken the senses, recouer the decayed memory, and is very commodious for such as haue the falling euill, & difficulty of breathing: it comforteth such as be sadde, or annoyed with *Melancholia*, or disturbed with idlenesse of the braine: it restoreth and recouereth such as be consumed through some long sicknesse. ℞. *Cinamomi, Caryophyllorum, ligni Aloes, Galangæ, Spicæ nardi, Nucis muschatæ, Zinziberis, Spodij, Scænanthi, Cyperi, Rosarum, Violarum*, ana. ℥. j. *folij aut Maceris, Glycyrrhizæ, Mastiches, Styracis, Calaminthæ, Sampsuchi, Balsamitæ, Ocimi, Cardamomi, Macropiperis, Myrtillorum, corticum mali Cytrij*, ana. ℥. ß. and gr. vj. *Margaritarum spendidarum, Ben albi & rubri, Corallij, Serici combusti*, ana gr. xviij. *Moschi* gra. vj. *Caphuræ*, gr. iiij. *Sacchari albi, aqua Melissæ soluti*, x. or xij. times so much.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotaries be ordained to comfort and strengthen the parts principall: therefore he doth very fitly institute their compositions according to the order of the parts of the body, beginning at those which be good for the braine, and after annexing such as be meete for the breast and other parts.

Diatragacanthum frigidum.

Diatragacanthum frigidum is very commodious in all distempers of the lungs, and breast, & it is good for the *Peripneumonia*, and Pleurisie, a consumption and hote cough with an ague. Lastly, for the roughnesse and sharpnesse of the iawes and arteries. ℞. *Gummi Tragacanthi albissimi*, ℥. j. *Gummi Arab.* ℥. v. *Amyli*, ℥ ij. *Glycyrrhizæ, sem. Papaueris albi, quatuor sem. frigido. maior. corticis Liberorum*, ana. ℥. j. *Caphuræ*. gr. v. *Penidiorum*, ℥. j. ß. *Sacchari albissimi aqua violarum soluti*. ℔. j. Make thereof an Electuarie in *Tesseras*.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

Diatragacanthum is good for cold diſeaſes, and hath the vertue of another compoſition called *Diapapauer*, which therefore was here vpon good occaſiſion omitted.

Diaireos ſimplex.

D*Iaireos ſimplex* doth by a mild attenuation arid the breaſt and lungs of all diſtempers, and it maketh more eaſie vttering of ſpittle, meete for hote diſeaſes increaſing, and ſuch cold diſeaſes as be not extreme. ℞. *radicis Iridis Florentini*, ℥. j. *pulueris Electuarij Diatragacanthi frigidi, Sacchari Candi*, ana. ℥. ß. *Sacchari albiſ. Hyſſopi aqua ſoluti*, ℥. viij. compound thereof a ſolide Electuarie.

Electuarium Diaireos compoſitum.

E*Lectuarium Diaireos compoſitum*, auaileth much in hote diſeaſes beginning to bracke, and inueterate cold diſeaſes, as the cough, *Aſthma*, and hoarſneſſe. ℞. *Radicis Iridis*, ℥. ß. *Pulegij, Hyſſopi, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ʒ. iij. *Tragacanthæ, Amygdalarum amararum, Pinearum, Cinamomi, Zinziberis, Piperis*, ana. ʒ. j. ß. *ſem. Lini, Althæa & Fenugræci*, ana. ʒ. ij. *Sacchari albiſſimi, aqua Tuſſilaginis ſoluti*, ℔. j. or ℥. xiiij.

PLANTIVS.

The compound Electuarie of *Diaireos* is here placed in ſtead of *Diatragacanthum calidum* and *Diapenidion*, and therefore they cannot here be put in but in vaine, and to the loſſe and hinderance of the Apothecaries. In this compoſition the Author did for *Caricis, Paſſulis, Palmulis & Styrace*, which were vnmeete for this compoſition, ordaine *ſeminis Lini, Althæa & Fenugræci*, which do preuaile exceedingly in inueterate diſtempers of the breaſt.

Diacalaminthes.

D*Iacalaminthes* doth attenuate rebellious and inueterate diſtempers of the breaſt and lungs, and the groſſe and viſcous humours in theſe parts. It doth ſcoure and caſt out the ſame, diſpatch winde, furthereth concoction and diſtribution of the aliment, and in fine prouoketh the floures, vrine and ſweate. ℞. *Calaminthes montanæ, Pulegij, Petroſelini, Seſelios, Origani*, ana. ʒ. ij. *ſeminis Apij, cymarum Thymi*, ana. ℥. ß. *Leuiſtici, Piperis, Smyrnij*, ana. ℥. j. *Sacchari albiſſimi, aqua Violarij aut Roſarum ſolut.* ℔. j. ß. make an Electuary.

PLANTIVS.

In this compoſitiō of *Diacalaminthes, Origanum* ſeemeth very aptly added. In the other ſimples the Author hath imitated *Galens* compoſition, and the weights and doſes, ſaue onely in Louage and in Pepper: for the Author taketh of Louage halfe ſo much, and of Pepper the ſixt part ſo much as *Galen* did, for that the whole compoſition is but the fourth part of that which is deſcribed of *Galen* in his fourth booke *De tuenda valetudine.* And whereas in other Electuaries before deſcribed, which were gentle and not vnpleaſant either in

taste or taking, he receiued and tempered the powders with sixe or eight times so much Sugar, in this composition truly which is very hote and vnpleasant to be taken, he hath allotted a dose of twelue times so much. Further this composition of *Diacalaminthes* may stand for those which be termed *Diahyssopus*, and *Diaprassus*, which may by good right grow out of vse as vnnecessary, lest the multitude should be troublesome.

Diamargariton frigidum.

Diamargariton frigidum asswageth the burning heate of agues, fortifieth and comforteth the heart, and preserueth it from an infectious contagion, deliuereth the affected from qualming and swounding, and lasty abandoneth sorrow. ℞. *quatuor semin. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, seminis Portulacæ, & Papaueris albi, seminis Endiuiæ, Oxalydis, & Cytrij, trium Santalorum, ligni Aloes, Zinziberis, Rosarum rubrarum, florum Nymphæa, Bugloss, Violarum, baccarum Myrti, ossis de corde Cerui, Eboris, Doronici Romani, Cinamomi,* ana. ʒ.j. *Corallij albi, & rubri,* an. ʒ.ß. *Margaritarũ splendidarũ,* ʒ.iij. *Ambaris, Capburæ,* ana gr.vj. *Moschi,* gr.ij. *Sacchari albi, aqua Bugloss vel Rosarum soluti,* ℔.ij.

PLANTIVS.

The rather that this Electuary *Diamargaritõ* might become more excellent and effectuall, the Author hereof ouer and aboue the vulgar description, hath added (being made of an vncertaine Author) the seeds of Endiue & Sorrell, *Cytrij Ebur, os è corde Cerui, Doronicum Rom.* and *Cinamomum:* all which be apparently good for the heart. There be diuerse Physitions which haue put into this Electuarie, certaine portions of precious stones, but yet to no vse, for that all what so is comprehended in the Electuary *de Gummis*, which at any time may commodiously be mixed in the description thereof, this Electuary containeth, except a few hote Aromates, and many cold simples, the rather to make a more safe vse thereof.

Electuarium de Gemmis.

Electuarium de Gemmis doth excellently comfort and strengthen the hart, and preserueth it in agues from maligne and pestilent putrifaction, doth release the affected of qualming, beating of the heart, and voluntary sadnesse, ℞. *Margaritarum splendidarum* ʒ.j.ß. *Saphiri, Hyacinthij, Sardæ,* that is, *Corneolæ, Granatorum, Smaragdi,* ana. ℈.ij. & gr.v. *Zedoariæ, Doronici, corticum Citrij mali, Maceris, sem. Ocymi Caryophyllati,* ana. ʒ.j. *Corallij rubri, Succini, Eboris,* an. ℈.ij ß. *Ben albi, Ben rubri, Caryophyllorum, Zinziberis, Piperis longi, Spicæ Indicæ, folij, Croci, Cardamomi maioris,* ana. ʒ.ß. *trochiscorum Diarrhodon, ligni Aloes,* ʒ.ij.ß. *Cinamomi, Galangæ,* ana. ℈.ij. gr.v. *foliorum Auri, foliorum Argenti,* ana. ℈.j. *Ambræ* ʒ.j. *Moschi,* gr.xv. *Sacchari albi aqua Rosarum soluti,* ℥.xx. which is eight times as much as the rest of the receipt.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium è Gemmis, comprehendeth almost all the kindes of the hote Aromates, and they be not much dulled or restrained with the fragments of the precious stone. Therefore it were much better to take from this Electuary some part of the Aromates, especially *Ben albũ & rubrum, Cardamomi maioris, Piper longum, & folium,* which seldome can be gotten.

Electuarium

Electuarium Diambræ.

Electuarium Diambræ comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine & the principall parts, and quickeneth the naturall heate in old folkes, chiefly in feebled persons and cold natures, it doth not onely further the concoction of aliments, but also of cold humours, and driueth away all the coldnesse of the body & of the wombe, and therefore it is good for conceptiõ. ℞. *Cinamomi, Doronici Ro. Caryophyllorum, Maceris, Nucis, muschatæ, folij Galangæ*, ana. ʒ.iij. *Spicæ nardi, Cardamomi maioris & minoris*, ana. ʒ.j. *Zinziberis*, ʒ.j. ß. *Santali citrini, ligni Aloes, Piperis longi*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Ambaris*, ʒ.j. *Moschi*, ʒ. ß. euery ounce of the powder is receiued and mixed with ℔. j. of Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

for the fyrst de receo y found

PLANTIVS.

Diambras seemeth to consist of all kind of Aromates generally heaped and confused without any choise, as *Diacuminum*, and *Dianison*, *Diacinamomum*, *Diazinziber*, *Diatrion piperion*, *Diaxiloaloes*, *Diamargaritoncalidum*, *Diamoscu seu dulce*, & *Diamoscu amarum*. All which be vehemently hote, consisting of hote simples no whit repressed, so that all these seeme to be of like power and effect. Wherefore the Author omitting the rest, hath here placed the onely composition of *Diambræ*, which may supply the want of the rest, lest the student in Physicke should be ouercharged with multitude, and the Apothecary sustaine great losse. But in this composition which is vehemently hote, as the rest be in my opinion, it were best to take out of the receipt both the *Cardamomum* and the long Pepper, and to substitute in stead thereof *Rosarum rubra*. ʒ.iij. for otherwise it can scarcely be vsed in hote natures, when the weather is hote, and in hote seasons, in agues and other hote diseases; and the excessiue heate also of these simples hath bene occasion that the vse thereof hath bene vnpleasant, and that it hath waxen out of vse as vnprofitable, euen as *Diatrion piperion Galeni* and *Diacalaminthæ*. The Author therefore perceiuing this, hath vpon good occasion commanded, that the powders should be tempered in twelue times somuch Sugar, thereby minding to make it more pleasant to the receiuer.

Puluis cordiacus.

Puluis cordiacus doth maruellously comfort and fortifie the heart, and preserue it from contagion in a pestilent constitution, and may be safely taken in a burning ague, and in hote weather, for that it is of a moderate heate. ℞. *radicum Tormentillæ, Dictamni, Tunicis & Scabiosæ, sem. Acetosæ, Endiuiæ, Coriandri præparati, sem. Citrij, Rutæ, Cardui benedicti*, ana. ʒ.j. *trium Santalorum, Ben albi, Ben rubri, Doronici Ro. ligni Aloes, Zedoariæ, Cinamomi, Cardamomi, Maceris, Croci, Rosarum rubra. florum Buglossi vtriusque, florum Nymphææ*, ana. ℈.iij. *rasuræ Eboris, Spodij*, that is, *Eboris vsti, ossis è corde Cerui, Corallij albi, Corallij rubri, Succini, Margaritarum spendidarum, Smaragdi, Hyacinthi, Granati*, ana. ℈.j *Serici crudi torrefacti, boli Armeni, terræ Lemniæ*, ana. ʒ.ß *Caphuræ, Moschi, Ambaris*, ana gra vj. reduce them to powder, and make thereof tables with eight times so much Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

Aromaticum Rosarum maius.

ARomaticum *Rosarum maius*, comforteth the stomacke, with a moderate heate, and furthereth the concoction of all the intrailes, correcteth crudity, consumeth vnnecessary humours, dispatcheth wind, and is most meete for such as stand in state of recouery of a sicknesse. ℞. *Rosarum rubra.* ℥.xv. *Glycyrrhizæ rasæ*, ℥.vij. *ligni Aloes, Santali citrini*, ana. ℥.iij. *Cinamomi electi, Maceris, Caryophyllorum*, ana. ℥. ij. ß. *Gummi Arabi. Tragacanthæ*, ana. ℥.ij ℈.ij. *Nucis muschatæ, Cardamomi, Galangæ*, ana. ℥.j. *Spicæ nardi, Ambræ*, ana. ℥ ij. *Moschi*, ℈.j and make tablets with eight times so much Sugar.

PLANTIVS.

The vsuall composition of *Aromaticum Rosarum* the Author liked of.

Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis.

E*Lectuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis*, mitigateth the heate of the stomacke and midriffe, and yet notwithstanding furthereth their concoction, asswageth paine, and dispatcheth wind. ℞. *Rosarum rubrarum*, ℥. j. ß. *Santali albi & rubri*, ana. ℥.ij. ß. *Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arabici, Eboris vsti*, ana. ℈.ij. *Mastiches, Spicæ nardi, Cardamomi, succi Glycyrrhizæ, Croci, Xyloales, Caryophyllorum, Galliæ muschatæ, Anisi, Fœniculi, sem. Ocymi, Acinorum Berberis, sem. Scariolæ, Portulacæ & Papaueris albi, quatuor sem. frigido. maiorum, Rheubarbari electi, Cinamomi*, ana. ℈.j. *Margaritarum, ossis è corde Cerui*, ana. ℈.ß. *Caphuræ*, gra. vij. *Moschi*, gra. iiij. make thereof tablets with eight times so much Sugar dissolued in Rosewater.

PLANTIVS.

From the Electuarie of *Diarrhodon*, the Author hath subtracted *Asarum*, for that it doth ouercome the stomacke, notwithstanding it be pownedlightly: and Sugar candie likewise, for that it hath no more efficacy or vertue then white Sugar. The Electuarie of *Diagalangæ*, notwithstanding it be commended of many against the cruditie of the stomacke, yet it is not in vse for the excessiue heate: in place whereof if need so require, may be substituted *Diambras* or *Diacalaminthes.*

Electuarium Diatrion Santalon.

E*Lectuarium Diatrion Santalon*, correcteth the hote intemper of the liuer, and ridddeth it of the remnants of obstructing matter, cureth the laundies, it comforteth the liuer and stomacke ℞. *trium Santalorum, albi, rubri, & citrini, Rosarum rubra* ana. ℥. iij. *Rheubarbari electi, Eboris vsti, succi Glycyrrhizæ, sem. Portulacæ*, ana. ℥.ij. *Gummi Arabici, Tragacanthæ, quatuor sem. frigido. maio. mundatorum, sem, Intubi*, ana. ℥.j ß. *Caphuræ*, ℈.j. and eight times so much white Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Amylum is subtracted and exempted from the Electuary *Diatrion Santalon*, as vnnecessary; neither is the Electuary *Diacucubi* here repeated amongst the Electuaries, notwithstanding it be commended of diuerse against cold af-

fects

fects and obstructions of the liuer, for that it hath no more effect then this Electuarie *Diatrion Santalorum.*

Diacrocu.

Diacrocu, which is also commonly termed *Diacurcuma*, dissolueth inueterate affects of the liuer and spleene, and maketh quite ariddance of rebellious obstructions, and a hard tumour lately begunne. And lastly, it cureth ill habite of the body proceeding thereof, and the originall matter of the Dropsie. ℞. *Croci, Asari, Petroselini Macedon. Dauci, Anisi, sem. Apij*, ana. ℥.ß. *Rheubarbari, Meu, Spicæ nardi*, ana. ʒ.vj. *Costi, Myrrhæ, Cassiæ ligneæ, Scœnanthi, Carpobalsami, radicis Rubiæ, succi Absinthij, succi Eupatorij arefacti, olei Balsami*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Calami aromatici, Cinamomi*, ana. ʒ.j.ß. *Scordij, Scolopendrij, succi Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ʒ.ij. and ten times so much white Sugar dissolued in Endiue water.

Plantivs.

Diacrocu containeth certaine rare simples and hard to be come by, as *Cassia lignea, Carpobalsamum*, and *Opobalsamum*; which notwithstanding if they be omitted, the receipt shall be as effectuall to the purpose wherefore it is instituted.

Dialacca maior.

Dialacca maior is more effectuall then *Diacrocu* against inueterate obstructions of the liuer and spleene, against an ill habite, and in the beginning of a Dropsie. ℞. *Laccæ præparatæ, Rheubarbari*, ana. ʒ.iij. *Spicæ Indicæ, Mastiches, stipitũ Scœnanthi, Absinthij Roma. succi Eupatorij Mesuæ, Sabinæ, Amygdala. amararum, Costi, Myrrhæ, Rubiæ, sem. Opij, Ammeos, Fœniculi & Anisi, Asari, Aristolochiæ longæ, Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Gentianæ, Croci, Cinamomi, Hyssopi, Cassiæ ligneæ, summitatum Scœnanthi, Bdellij*, ana. ʒ.j. ß. *Piperis, Zinziberis*, ana. ʒ.j. *Sacchari albi* twelue times so much.

Plantivs.

Electuarium Dialacca maior, Pleres Archonticon, and the exhilarating Electuarie, do retaine the old order of composition, for that they seeme to be most fit for such affects as they be ordained for.

Electuarium exhilarans.

Electuarium exhilarans, the exhilarating Electuarie, is falsely ascribed vnto *Galen*: it driueth away sadnesse, melancholy, and euill cogitations, it quickeneth all the spirits, it helpeth concoction, augmenteth naturall heate, and preseruethe receiuer from hoarinesse of haires. ℞. *florum Ocymi, caryophyllati, Croci, Zedoariæ Xylobalsami, aut ligni Aloes, Caryophyllorum, corticũ cytrij Mali, Galangæ, Maceris, Nucis muschatæ, Styracis, Calaminthæ*, ana. ʒ.ij.ß. *Anisi, scobis Eboris, Thymi, Epithymi*, ana. ʒ.j. *Capharæ, Moschi, Ambaru, Margaritarum spendidarum, ossis è corde Cerui*, ana. ʒ.ß. *foliorum Auri & Argenti*, ana. ℈.ß. of white Sugar eight times so much.

Electuarium Diaspermaton.

Electuarium Diaspermatõ refrigerating and comforting the kidneis, & the conduites of the vrine and seede, doth mildly purge them from all corrup-

tion of humours. ℞. *quatuor semi frigido. maio. & mino. sem, Asparagi, Pimpinellæ, Ocymi, & Petroselini, granorum Halicacabi*, ana. ℥ ij. *Milij solis, Succi Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥. iij. *Cinamomi, Maceris*, ana. ℥. ij. *Sacchari albi* eight times so much dissolued in the water of marrish Mallowe.

Electuarium λίθων θρυπτικὸν.

an electuary for the stone

Electuarium λίθων θρυπτικὸν, that is, *Lithon thrupticon*, asswageth the paines of the lungs, displaceth the grauel of the kidneis and bladder, easeth the paine of the kidneis, and redresseth the restraint of the vrine, and wasteth and breaketh the stone by litle and litle ℞. *Spicæ nardi, Zinziberis, Cinamomi, Melanopiperis, Cardamomi, Caryophillorum, Maceris*, ana. ℥. ß. *Costi, Glycyrrhizæ, Cyperi, Tragacanthæ, Chamedryos*, ana ℈. ij. *sem. Apij, Ammeos, Aspargi, Ocymi, Vtticæ, Cytrij mali, Saxifragi, Pimpinellæ, Cardui, Dauci, Fœniculi, Rusci, Petroselini Macedoni. Bardanæ, & Seselios, Asari*, ana ℥ j. *lapidis Spongiæ, lapidis Lincis, lapidis Cancri, & lapidis Iudaici*, ana. ℥ j. ß. *sanguinis Hircini præparati*, ℥ j. ß. make thereof a powder, and temper it with ten times so much white Sugar, dissolued in water of Betonie: but when extremity of paine forceth, and vrine is restrained, the sole powder is ministred, *ex passo Cretico*, ſtō ℈. ij. to ℥ j.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium Diaspermaton we haue read, described for many & sundry diseases, this notwithstanding which is very aptly compounded vnder the same name, seemeth to auaile much against the heate of the kidneis, the scalding of the vrine, and other affects to which it is assigned. These simples be withdrawne and expuncted out of that Electuarie, which they terme *Lithon tribon*, which in no place be found sincere and pure: and other astringing be added in their stead, which do hinder the breaking of the stone, & the displaying of the sand: sundry seeds and many stones, and the prepared bloud of the Goate is added, all which haue a singular powre and force against the stone, and against all the *Symptomota* which arise thereof, and if in any respect the heate be feared, it may be tempered with *Diaspermaton*.

Electuarium Diacalaminthes compositum.

for women

Electuarium Diacalaminthes compositū, doth mightily prouoke the floures and all purgations of the wombe. ℞. *pulueris Electuarij Diacalaminthes simplicis*, ℥. ß. *foliorum Prassij, Sampsuci, Melissophylli, Artemisiæ, Sabinæ, aridorum*, ana. ℥. j. *Cyperi, sem. Rutæ & Rubiæ, Maceris, Cinamomi*, ana. ℈ ij. and twelue times so much of white Sugar, dissolued in the water of Feuerfew or Pellitory of the wall.

PLANTIVS.

The compound Electuarie of *Diacalaminthes*, seemeth fitly added in the last place to the other Electuaries, for that there was no other meete receipt extant to purge the corruption of the wombe.

Of

Of moist Antidotaries.

Antidotus analeptica.

ANtidotus *analeptica* recouereth all the powers of the body enfeebled and wasted, it taketh away the griping of the heart, and the qualming and swouning, it restoreth the body extenuated either by profusion of bloud, or by an excessiue euacuation; it helpeth such as be consumed and wasted, for that it humecteth, nourisheth, strengtheneth, & comforteth. ℞. *Rosarum rubrarum, Glycyrrhizæ,* ana. ʒ.ij.gra.v. *Gummi Arabici, & Tragacanthæ,* ana. ʒ.ij. & ℈.ij. *Santali albi & rubri,* ana. ʒ.j. and ℈.j. *succi Glycyrrhizæ, Amyli, semin. Papaueris albi, Portulacæ, Lactucæ, & Seriolæ,* ana. ʒ.iij. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, seminum Cydoniorum, seminum Maluæ, seminum Bomberis, seminum Violarum, Strobulorum, Pistaciorum recentium, Amygdalarum dulcium, pulpæ Sebesten,* ana ʒ.ij. *Cariophyllorum, Spodij, Cinamomi,* ana. ʒ.j. *Croci,* gr.v. *Penidiorum,* ℥.ß. when they be all pownd, temper them with sirupe of Violets.

PLANTIVS.

In the Antidotary analepticke, which they terme *Resumptiuam*, the Author thought good to alter nothing besides the order of the simples, and that for the graines of Barberies, *Pistacia* be put in the receipt.

Antidotus Diasaterion.

ANtidotus *Diasaterion*, augmenteth the genitall seede, procureth a lust to venery, and doth as it were quicken and reuiue the dull desire thereto: and it is a singular helpe and comfort against the imbecillity of the kidneis & spermaticke vessels, whereby it auaileth much for procreation of children. ℞. *radicis Saterij recentis & solidæ, radicis Pastinacæ satiuæ, radicis Eringij, Nucis Indicæ, Strobulorum, Pistaciorum,* ana. ℥.j.ß. *Cariophyllorum, Zinziberis, Anisi, sem. Erucæ, linguæ auis quæ semen est Fraxini,* ana. ʒ.v. *Cinamomi, caudarũ Scincorum, semin. Bulbi,* ana. ʒ.ij ß. *Moschi,* gr.v. *mellis optimi despumati,* ℔.iij. The rootes being bruised are boiled in hony, and tempered, and after *Nux Indica. Strobuli* and *Pistacia* being bruised are also put to them, and the other simples in the end being exquisitely pownd.

PLANTIVS.

There be three compositions set downe of *Diasaterion*, but this is the most effectuall of all, and therefore may stand in stead of all the rest.

Antidotus è Cocco baphico seu grano infectorio.

ANtidotus *è Cocco baphico seu grano infectorio*, which the Arabians terme *kermes*, cheareth the heart, & driues away sorow coming without occasiõ: it restraineth and bridleth *Melancholia, & Mania*, and recouereth the decayed spirits & powers of the body. ℞. *succi Malorũ fragrantiũ, aquæ Rosarum,* ana. ℔.ij. *in quibus macera horis* xxiiij. *Serici staminis crudi,* ℔.j. Let it boile easily, and then straine it, and in the strained liquor, boile *granorum infectoriorũ,* ℥.ij.

the decoction then will become red, in the which being strained, dissolue *Sacchari albi*, ℔ j.ß. Boile them then againe to the thicknesse of hony: in the end put in *Ambræ crudæ contusæ*, ʒ.ß. and when it is liquefied ot melted, sprinkle in these powders, *Ligni Aloes crudi, Cinamomi*, ana ʒ.vj. *lapidis Cyanei loti & præparati*, ℥.j.ß. *Margaritarum non perforatarum*, ʒ.ij. *foliorum auri purissimi*, ʒ.j. *Moschi*, ℈.j.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotus è Cocco baphico, termed *confectio Alkermes*, cannot be safely prepared with silke already died, and as they terme it, *Karmesino*; for that kind of silke vsually is not died without Galle, Alume, and Arsenicke, which is altogether venimous, therefore this way of composition is much better.

Antidotus è baccis Lauri.

ANtidotus *è baccis Lauri*, doth mightily dissipate wind through heat and tenuity, and is speciall good as well for paine in the great guttes as in the small ℞. *foliorum Rutæ*, ʒ.x. *Ammeos, Cumini, Nigellæ, Leuistici seminis, Origani, Carui, Amygdalarum amararum, Piperis longi, Mentastri, Dauci, Acori, baccarum Lauri, Castorei*, ana ʒ.ij. *Sagapeni*, ℥.ß. *Opoponacis*. ʒ.iij. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.j.ß.

Philonium.

PHilonium ministred with *Opium* after sixe moneths, doth take away vehement & grieuous paine, either in the great guts or in the kidneis, or in the Spleene, prouoketh sleepe, staieth distillation, asswageth cough, and restraineth spitting of bloud. ℞ *Croci*, ʒ.v. *Pyrethri, Euphorbij, Spicæ nardi, Myrrhæ, Castorij*, ana ʒ.j. *Piperis albi, Hyosciami*, ana ʒ.xx. *Opij*, ʒ.x. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔ ij the dose hereof is from ℈ j. to ʒ.j.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath preferred aboue the rest this description of *Philonium* approued both by authority of *Galen*; and by experience, for that this Alume is sufficient to allay vehement torments, and yet notwithstanding the Authour following *Mesue* hath put in Myrrhe and Castorie (neither of which *Galen* improueth) that the mixture might the rather be the safer, for that they haue a peculiar vertue to correct *Opium*. If the maner of composition in this receipt be considered, the weight of *Opium* is almost twise so much as in *Philonio Romano*. The greater *Philonium* which they terme *Romanum* (for that it hath but halfe the weight of *Opium*) may be ministred in a double Dose; namely from ℈.ij. to ʒ.j.

Antidotus termed Requies.

ANtidotus termed *Requies*, without *Opium*, doth allay the extreme heate of burning feauers, asswageth thirst, represseth madnesse, procureth sleepe, and causeth ease. ℞. *Rosarum, Violarum*, ana ʒ.iij. *corticum radicum Mandragoræ, seminis Hyosciami albi, & Papaueris albi, seminis Seriolæ, Lactucæ, Portulacæ & Psyllij, Nucis muschatæ, Cinamomi electi*, ana ʒ.j.ß. *trium Santalorum, Spodij, Tragacanthæ*, ana ℈.ij. *mellis optimi expumati triplum*.

for scoope.

PLANTIVS.

ANtidotus termed *Requies*, hath lesse *Opium* then any kind of *Philonium* or of *Opiatum*: yet it cooleth mightily through the mixture of other simples which be almost all cold; notwithstanding the vse thereof is scarcely safe, for that the *Opium* is not sufficiently corrected by mixture of hote simples. But if the composition be proued without *Opium*, truly it doth not a litle auaile to asswage the burning heate of agues, and dotage, thirst, and whatsoeuer *Symptomata* do proceede of the feauerous heate. The other compositions of *Philonium* are to be abandoned as nothing necessary, as both the Antidotary *Diolibanum* and *Athanasia*, and *Musa ænea*, *Requies cum Opio*, *Trifera magna*, & *Esdiæ magna*, of what Authour soeuer it was inuented. For such compositions as haue *Opium*, if they be ordained to asswage paine, *Philonium* described by this Author may supply the want. But if it be ordained either to strengthen the principall parts, or to expell poyson and many other sundrie diseases, *Triphera magna*, *Esdiæ magna*, *Aurea Alexandrina*, and *Athanasia*, *Theriace* and *Mithridatum* may therefore stand in their stead. The confection *Anacardina* is also omitted, being flat contrarie to those which I haue repeated. For notwithstanding it be commended for many diseases, yet for the great exuperant heate thereof it is very dangerous, for that it doth speedily inflame the spirits and humours, and forthwith doth procure an ague.

Theriace diatessaron.

THeriace *diatessaron* is excellent good against Epilepsie, Conuulsiõ, Palsey, Cruditie of the stomack, ill Habite, Dropsie, and other cold diseases. Further it auaileth much against venime receiued, against the biting of virulent beasts, and a pestilent constitution. ℞. *radicis Gentianæ*, *baccarum Lauri*, *Myrrhæ*, *Aristolochiæ rotundæ*, ana. ℥ ij. and when they be very seriously pounded, receiue and mixe with *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.ij.

Theriace Andromachi senioris.

THeriace *Andromachi senioris* preuaileth against the stinging of poysonous beasts, it helpeth the falling euill, the Apoplexie, the resolution of the bodie, *Cephalalgia*, *Asthma*, *Hæmaptois*, aggrieuance in the stomacke, Iaundies, Dropsie, paines of the kidneis, colicke, goute, melancholicke and lunaticke men, and lastly the Leprosie: it expelleth the floures and a dead child: it marueilously comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine, the liuer, the stomacke, and the whole body, and preseruetb it from a pestilent contagion. ℞. *Trochiscorum scylliticorum*, ℥.vj. *Trochiscorum theriacorum*, *Magnatis hædycroi*, *Piperis longi*, *Opij*, ana. ℥. iij. *Rosarum rubrarum*, *seminis Napi sylvestris*, *Scordij*, *Opobalsami*, *Cinamomi*, *Agarici*, ana. ℥.j. ß. *Myrrhæ*, *Costi*, *Croci*, *Cassiæ lignea*, *Nardi Indicæ*, *Scænanthi*, *Thuris masculi*, *Piperis albi & nigri*, *Dictamni*, *Marrubij*, *Rheubarbari*, *Stachadis*, *semi. Petroselini*, *Macedo*, *Calamites*, *Terebinthinæ*, *Zinziberis*, *radicis Pentaphylli*, ana. ℥.vj. *Polij montani*, *Chamæpyteos*, *Styracis calamitæ*, *Mei*, *Amomi*, *Nardi Celticæ*, *Sigilli Lemnij*, *Phu Pontici*, *Chamædryos*, *foliorum Malabatri aut Macis*, *Chalcidis tostæ*, (which may be commodiously pretermitted) *radicis Gentianæ*, *Anisi*, *succi Hypocischidis*, *Car-*

pobalsami, Gummi Arabici splendidi, sem. Fœniculi, Cardamomi minoris, Seselios, Acaciæ, Thalaspios, sem. Hyperici, Ammeos, ana. ℥.ß. *Castoroi, Aristolochiæ longæ: Sentenuis, sem. Dauci, Bituminis Iudaici, Opoponacis, Centaurij minoris, Galbani*, ana. ʒ.ij. *mellis optimi expumati triplum, id est*, ℔.xiiij. ℥.iij *Vini optimi odorati*, so much as shall suffise to dissolue the liquors and iuyces. The greatest dose is ℈.iiij. or ʒ.ß for ℈.j. of the powder, for ℈. iiij. of the composition containe gra. j. of *Opium*.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath therefore imitated the composition of Triacle set forth by *Andromachus* senior, in an Elegiacall verse, for that neither the number nor the weight of simples can in verse easily be changed. Certaine Authors afterward framed this receipt in other order of simples, and peraduenture more conuenient: to the which also they added Sothernwood and Gladine, and altered the doses of certaine simples, and therefore their receipt is not to be accounted so certaine. Wherefore without all controuersie we are to insist on this description onely. Whereas the Author doth admonish vs of *Chalcitide id est*, vst vitriol not to be put into this composition, therein imitating *Valerius Cordus*, that seemeth very conuenient; for whereas that medicine, especially being burnt, is maruellous causticke, *escaroticum* and hurtfull to the intrailes, and hath bene experienced nothing to auaile for any externall disease, there is no cause why with so great inconuenience and vnpleasantnesse of taste, it should be admitted into this composition For if it be (as some men thinke) therefore added to make the composition blacke, it ought not for colour sacke, by taste and operation so much annoy the body. Finally by taking it away, the whole recept will be more commodious, lesse sharpe and hote, and will become more pleasant to the receiuer.

Mithridatum.

MIthridatum doth nighest resemble the power of triacle, and is vsed against the same diseases with a great deale more facility and lesse extremity of heate, according vnto the description of *Andremachus*, allowed of *Galen* and other ancient Physitions ℞. *Myrrhæ, Nardi*, ana. ℥.j. ℈ ß. *Croci, Cinamomi, Seordij, Zinziberis*, ana ʒ.vij. ß. *Opij*, ʒ.iiij. graines. xxv. *Styracis, Seselios, Abrotani, Libanotidis*, ana. ʒ.x. *Castorij*, ʒ vii. ℈. ß. *Scœnanthi, Polij, Costi, Piperis longi, sem. Dauci, Scœnanthi, Galbani, Terebinthinæ*, ana. ʒ.vj ß. *Piperis albi*, ʒ. v. ℈.vj *Petroselini, seminis Nardi Celticæ, seminis Fœniculi, folij Indi aut Macetis, Gentianæ, Rosarum siccarum, Mei Athamantici*, ana ʒ.iiij. *Cassiæ ligneæ*, ʒ. v. ß. *Thuris*, ʒ.vj. ℈.j. *succi Hypocistidis*, ʒ.vj. gra. xv. *Acori aut Calami aromatici, Phu Pontici, Sagapeni, fructus Balsami, Hyperici, Iridis, Acatiæ, Gumi, Cardamomi, Policini*, that is, ane. ʒ.ij. *terræ Lemniæ, lumborum Scinci, Cypheos, Opoponacis*, ana. ʒ.vj. *Thlaspij*, ʒ.vj. ℈.ij. *Anisi, Hyssopi, Camepyteos*, ana. ʒ iij. *Opobalsami, Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Marrubij*, ana. ʒ.j. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.yij. ß.

PLANTIVS.

There be foure sundry and very diuerse compositions of *Mithridatum* extant, one (& that the greatest) is the inuention of *Nicolaus Mirepsus*, described by *Nicolaus Præpositus*, and vsed of all Apothecaries euery where, which euery man doth daily experience to be very effectuall against maligne and pestilent

agues

agues, venime, vomites, crudities, lienteries, and many other diseases and whatsoeuer first Author or inuentor it had, it is now euery where much practised. The second is of *Democritus* an ancient Greeke Author, practised of *Auicenna*, and set out in the Apothecarie booke of *Nicolaus Præpositus*; which as it is found to be both in composition and in vse more facile then the other, so in vertue it is no whit inferiour to the same, but rather more excellent & effectual against al maligne and contagious diseases. The third was described by *Andromachus*, and the fourth which *Galen* and *Ætius* and other Greeke Authors tooke out of the workes of *Antipater* and *Cleophantus* ancient Physitions. The two later be not much vnlike, for they consist of the same simples, notwithstanding placed in diuerse order, whose Doses do differ in a certaine few halfe scruples onely, so that they two may seeme fitly to be applyed to the same vse: yet notwithstanding, because this last is somewhat more copious, compounded of 52. simples, and corrected and approued according to the diligent iudgement of *Galen* it is to be esteemed the best of the rest, and most effectuall against the disease tofore repeated. Wherefore the Author hath repeated this onely, because he would haue it vsed onely of all Physitions, and therefore he hath altered the order of the simples, reducing into one place all such as were of one Dose, that thereby the Apothecaries might haue lesse labour in compounding and confecting the receipt.

De Trochiscis, seu Pastillis.

Trochisci è vipera.

Rochisci è vipera, which are vsed in the cōpositiō of the great triacle; the flesh of chosen & prepared vipers is boiled in pure water with greene Dil and salt, from the bones: then being taken out it is grinded on a marble stone, and it is sprinkled by litle and litle, with like weight of crummes of wheaten bread dried, powring in, in the meane time (if need so require) the owne broth of the vipers, & a litle *Opobalsami aut Succidanei*, whereof Trochiskes be made the weight of ℥. j. and be diligently dried in the shadow.

Trochisci scyllitici.

T*Rochischi scyllitici* be referred to the same composition of Triacle. ℞. *medullæ Scyllæ assatæ*, ℔. j. *farinæ Erui*, ℥. viij. and being well bruised they be tempered into *Trochisces*, and be dried in the shadow.

Trochischi hedricoi.

T*Rochisci hedricoi* be likewise applied to the composition of Triacle. ℞. *Mari aut Balsamitæ, Amaraci, Asari, Aspalathi, Calami odorati aut Galangæ, Phu Pontici, Xylobalsami, Opobalsami, aut Succidaneorum, Cinamomi, Costi*, ana. ℥. iij. *Myrrhæ, folij Nardi Indicæ, Croci, Cassiæ*, ana. ℥. vj. *Mastiches*, ℥. j. so much wine of the best as sufficeth to the making of Trochiskes.

Trochisci Cypheos.

T*Rochisci Cypheos* be requisite to the composition of Mythridate. ℞. *pulpæ Vuarum passarum, Terebinthinæ coctæ, Myrrhæ, Scænanthi,* ana. ℥.j.ß. *Calami aromatici,* ʒ.ix. *Cinamomi,* ℥.ß. *Bdellij, Anicis,* that is, *Blattæ Byzantij, Spicæ nardi, Cassiæ ligneæ, Cyperi, Arcenthidum,* that is, *baccarum Iuniperi,* ana. ʒ. iij. *Aspalathi,* ʒ. ij. ß. *Croci,* ʒ.j. *mellis expumati & vini optimi,* ana. so much as is sufficient to the tempering of Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS, *in Trochiscos.*

There is no alteration made of the Trochiskes which be commended by the iudgement of all Authors, as auaileable to the great composition lest that in the alteration of them there should be somewhat changed in the greater compositions which be by vse approued.

Trochisci è Capparibus.

T*Rochisci è Capparibus* doth take away the hardnesse of the Spleene, grosse melancholy, and dispatcheth winde. ℞. *corticum radicum Capparis, semi. Agri,* ana. ʒ.vj. *Ammoniaci* ℥.ß. *sem, Nigellæ calamitæ, succi Eupatorij, Amygdalarum amararum, foliorum Rutæ, Aristolochiæ rotundæ, sem. Nasturtij,* ana. ʒ.ij. *Cyperi, Scolopendrij,* that is, *Ceterachi,* ana. ʒ. j. receiue and temper the powders in *Ammoniacum* dissolued in vineger, and make thereof Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochisci è Capparibus be very wisely described, and yet notwithstanding if you adde vnto them *Gummi Laccæ seu Caucami & Rubei tinctorum,* ana. ʒ.j. they shall become more effectuall; neither be other Trochisks of *Lacca* to be admitted for this purpose, but that these of Capers be sufficient enough against obstructions, and inueterate diseases of the Spleene.

Trochisci de Eupatorio.

T*Rochischi de Eupatorio* do dissolue the obstructions and tumours of the liuer especially, and doth cure daily agues arising thereof, the Iaundies, and beginning of Dropsie. ℞. *Mannæ electæ, succi Eupatorij,* ana. ℥.j. *Rosarum,* ℥.ß. and being all receiued and tempered with the iuyce of Agrimonie and *Manna* are to be made into Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochisci ex Eupatorio, be substituted also in the stead of Trochiskes of Rubarbe and Wormewood, for that they be of great affinitie and like vertue.

Trochisci Alkakengi seu Halycacabi.

T*Rochisci Alkakengi seu Halycacabi* do mitigate the exulcerations of the kidneis and bladder, difficulty of vrine arising of those parts, and pissing of bloud. ℞. *baccarum Halycacabi,* ʒ.iij. *sem. Cytrulli, Melonum, & Cucurbitæ mundatorũ,* ana. ʒ.iij.ß. *boli Armeni, Gummi Arabi. thuris, sanguinis Draconis, Papaueris albi, Amygdalarum amararum, succi Glycyrrhizæ, Tragacanthæ, Amyli, Strobulorum,* ana. ʒ.vj. *sem. Apij, Succini, terræ Lemniæ. sem. Hyosciami, Opij,* ana. ʒ.ij. and with the iuice of winter Cherries, make Trochiskes of these simples. There be other Trochiskes without *Opium* compounded like vnto these.

Trochisci

Trochisci è Myrrha.

T*Rochisci è Myrrha*, do mightily bring downe the floures, and do cure the disease arising of their suppression, and lastly do expell the seconds, or a dead child. ℞. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.iij. *Lupulorum*, ℥.v. *foliorum Rutæ, Mentastri, Pulegij, Cumini, Rubeæ, Assæ fœtidæ, Sagapeni, Opoponacii*, ana. ℥.ij. and of these be made Trochiskes with the iuyce of Mugwort.

Trochisci è terra Lemnia.

T*Rochisci è terra Lemnia*, do stay coursing and outragious humours, especially being thin, do restraine the excessiue fluxe of the belly inwardly taken, and being outwardly applyed, they do suppresse profusion of bloud, issuing either out of the nose, or wombe, or Hemorrhoides, or any other part. ℞ *sanguinis Draconis, Gummi Arab. Assali, Spodij, Acatiæ, Hypochischides, lapidis Hæmatitæ, Balaustiorum, boli Armeni, terræ Lemniæ, Corallij rubri, Succini*, ana ℥.ij. *Margaritarum, Tragacanthæ, Papaueris nigri*, ana. ℥.j. ß *seminis Portulacæ tosti, cornu Cerui vsti, Thuris Nucum, Cupressi, Croci*, ana. ℥.ij. and confect Trochiskes thereof with the iuyce of distilled water of Plantaine.

PLANTIVS.

Trochischi è Ramich be subtracted of the Trochisks of *terra Lemnia*, for that they comprehend the greatest part of them. These Trochiskes *è terra Lemniæ* comprehend great store of astringing and cooling simples, and therefore other astringing compositions be not requisite. And sith this receipt is of all other most effectuall and lesse dangerous, all the other be suppressed, as *Trochisci Ramich, Trochisci Diarrhodõ, Trochisci Oxyacanthæ, Trochisci è Succino seu Carabæ, & Trochisci è Spodio*, for that the composition of all those is nothing apt nor necessary. The Trochiskes of *Diarrhodon* which do consist of Roses, *Spodion*, red and white Saunders, of Saffrõ and Camphire, may supply the place of these, especially if they seeme to be vnpleasant in taste.

Trochisci è Caphura.

T*Rochisci è Caphura* do asswage the heat of burning agues, the feruency of bloud and choler, the inflammation and hote intemper of the intrails, and whatsoeuer thirst ariseth thereof. ℞. *Rosarum rubrarum*, ℥.ß. *Spodij, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana ℥.ij. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arabi. Croci, Spicæ nardi Indicæ*, ana ℥.j. *Sãtali citrini*, ℥.ij ß. *ligni Aloes, Cardamomi, Amyli, Caphuræ*, ana. ℈.ij. *Saccari albiss. Mannæ electæ*, ana. ℥ iij. *Muscilaginis, Psillij* depromed out of Rosewater, as much as sufficeth to make Trochiskes.

Trochisci Galliæ Moschatæ.

T*Rochisci Galliæ Moschatæ* do maruelously corroborate the heart, the brain, and the other intrailes, and do giue a good smell to the mouth and the rest of the body. ℞ *ligni Aloes crudi*, ℥.v. *Ambræ*, ℥.iij *Moschi*, ℥.j. *Muscilaginis, Tragacanthæ*, made in Rosewater, so much as sufficeth for Trochiskes.

Trochisci alyptæ Muschatæ.

T*Rochisci alyptæ Muschatæ* haue the same effect, either inwardly receiued, or by suffumigation, and further, aridde the body of difficulty of breathing ℞ *Ladani purissimi*. ℥.iij. *Styracis Calaminthæ*, ℥.j ß *Styracis rubræ*, ℥.j.

ligni Aloes, ℥.ij. *Ambræ*, ℥.j *Caphuræ*, ℥.ß. *Moschi*, ℈.ß and distilled Rose water as much as need requireth.

Trochisci Bechici albi.

T*Rochisci Bechici albi*, which also be termed *Pilulæ albæ*, do mitigate a sharpe distillation, and do asswage hoarsnes & continuall cough. ℞. *Sacchari albissimi*, ℔.j *Sacchari candi*, *Penidiorum*, ℥.iiij. *radicis Iridis Florentini*, ℥.ij. *Amyli*, ℥.j.ß. the muscilage of Tragacanth made in Rosewater, so much as sufficeth to the conformation of Trochiskes.

Trochisci Narcotici.

T*Rochischi Narcotici* being safely applied, do asswage the paine of the head and teeth, do procure sleepe in the burning of feauers, do extinguish *Erysipelas* and inflammations, and being dissolued in other medicines do mitigate the paine of the externall parts. ℞. *Gummi Arabici & Tragacanthæ, Amyli*, ana. ℥.ß. *Cerusæ lotæ aquæ Rosarum*, ℥.vj. *Styracis, Calaminthæ, Myrrhæ, Castorij, Opij sapa soluti*, ana. ℈.iiij. *Croci*, ℥ ß. and when they be all bruised they are to be receiued and mingled with the muscilage of Fleewort taken out of Rose water, and thereof confect Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath brought into the order of Trochiskes in this last place, *Narcoticos Trochiscos* against extreme torments, the composition whereof is very apt, and the vse very necessary, and the rather, because there be none extant which can serue for that purpose.

De Ecligmatis & conditis.

Ecligma è pineis Nucleis.

E*Cligma è pineis Nucleis*, do extenuate and deterge grosse humors of the breast and lungs, very conuenient and commodious against *Asthma*, difficulty of breathing, and inueterate coughes. ℞. *Nucleorum pineorum recentium*, ℥.xxx. *pulpæ Palmularum*, ℥.xxxv. *Amygdalarum dulcium & amararum*, *Auellanarum assatarum, Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arabici, Glycyrrhizæ, Amyli, Capilli Veneris, Iridis Florentini*, ana. ℥.iiij. *pulpæ Passularum, butyri recentis, Saccari albissimi*, ana. ℥.iij. *mellis albi expumati*, ℔. iij. *fiat Ecligma.* A wholesome and approued Ecligme more effectuall then the former against the same diseases. ℞. *Cinamomi, Hyssopi, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.ß. *Reripha, & Mixaria*, ana. ℥.xxx. *numero: Vuarum passarum purgatarum, Ficuum aridarum, Palmularum pinguium*, ana. ℥.ij. *Fenugraeci*, ℥.v. *Capilli Veneris*, M.j. *sem. Anisi, Fœniculi & Lini, radicis Iridis, foliorum Calaminthæ*, ana. ℥.ß. boile them all in ℔.iii. of water to the consumption of two, and boile againe the strained iuyce with ℔.ij. *Penidiorum* to the thicknes of honey, & then put in *Pinearum expurgatarum*, ℥.v. *Amygdalarum dulcium mundatarum, Glycyrrhizæ, Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arab. Amyli*, ana. ℥.iij. *Iridis*. ℥.ij.

Ecligma

Ecligma è Scylla.

E*Cligma è Scylla* auaileth against the same diseases. ℞. *succi seu mucoris Scillæ, & mellis optimi expumati*, ana. ℔.j. boibe them to the consistence of an Ecligme.

Ecligma ad Asthma.

E*Cligma ad Asthma* is an Ecligma which of all other before propounded is most effectuall against *Asthma*. ℞. *Scyllæ assatæ*, ℥.ß. *radicis Iridis, Hyssopi, Prassij, Marruby*, ana. ʒ.j. *Myrrhæ, Croci*, ana. ʒ.ß. with sufficient quantity of hony, let the compound Ecligma of *Scylla* be confected.

Many simples be condited with Sugar, that they may the longer continue with their full vertue, whereof some be whole, some be bruised: such as be whole be boyled in thrice so much Sugar vntill the whole moisture consumed, there remaineth the perfect consistency of a sirupe, as for example: *Acorus* is condited against the cold diseases of the braines and nerues, and to recouer their strength.

Zinziber is condited against the crudity of the stomacke and slimy fleame in the lungs.

The roote of Buglosse is condited against the palpitation of the heart and qualming.

Peaches, fragrant Apples, the rind of the Citrine, be condited against *Cardialgia*, and *Melancholia*.

Quince peares, and *Diacydonion*, and Peares, be condited to strengthen and corroborate the stomacke.

Walnuts, *Myrobalani, Emblici & Cepuli*, and Nutmegs, being condited, do further the concoction of the stomacke, do get an appetite, and increase strength.

Cherries and the slips of Endiue, Purslaine and Lettuce condited, do refrigerate, asswage thirst, and procure appetite.

Barberies and Ceruises being condited, do allay thirst and the feruency of choler, and restraine fluxe of the wombe.

Satyrion and *Eringium* condited, do increase the seed, and stirre vp a desire to carnality, and further conception.

Conseruæ.

BVt such as cannot well be boiled, let them be bruised and mixed with twise so much Sugar, and so be set in the Sun, and conserued, and retaine the name of compound Sugar, as Iosacchar, Rhodosacchar. But of all other kinds of compound Sugar, these ought especially to be in a readines: Sugar of Rosemary, of the floures of Sage, of the floures of Betony, and of *Stæchados*, of the flowres of Piony: for that they be especiall good against the cold diseases of the braine and nerues, to comfort and strengthen them against the Epilepsie and Apoplexie.

The Sugar of the flowers of Flowredeluce, of Maidenhaire, and of the roote of Enula, doth mildly purge the breast, and ease the lungs.

The Sugar of Comfery doth ſtay ſpitting of bloud.

The Sugar of Violets, and the flowers of Bugloſſe doth refrigerate and cheare the heart.

Sugar of Roſes ſtrengtheneth the ſtomack, ſtayeth diſtillations, and reſtraineth eruption of bloud.

Sugar of the flowers of Cichory cooleth the liuer, and openeth the obſtructions thereof.

Further, there be ſundry medicinable iuyces reſerued to vſe, wherof ſome be ſimple & pure, others mixed with Sugar, which for that by boyling they come to the thicknes of *Sapa*, be therefore termed of the Arabians *Robuo*, that is, *ſapales*. Theſe iuyces being ſtrained, be permitted to ſettle vntil they wax cleare, and then the purer portion thereof is boiled to the thickneſſe of hony, and then is ſet in the Sunne, and ſo is kept. If Sugar be therewith to be mingled, it muſt be in weight halfe ſo much as the iuyce is.

Succus è Nucibus, termed *Diacaryôn*, auaileth againſt ſharpe diſtillations and *Angina*, and hath of the iuyce of young Walnuts, ℔. iiij. *mellis optimi*, ℔ ij. and be boiled to the thickneſſe of hony.

Succus è Moris, termed *Diamoron*, is good againſt the fretting vlcers of the mouth and iawes, and ſharpe diſtillations. ℞ *ſucci Mororum domeſticorum*, ℔. ß. *ſucci Mororum rubri, mellis optimi expumati*, ana. ℔ j. *Sapæ*, ℥ iij. boile them to the conſiſtency of hony.

The iuyce of wild Plumbes be boiled vntill they become thicke, and then they be vſed in ſtead of *Acatia*.

Of Medicines applied outwardly, and firſt of Oyles.

Oleum Roſarum.

Leum Roſarum doth quench inflammations and burning in the ſtomacke, it doth ſtrengthen, thicken and ſtay fluxes. ℞ *Gemmarum Roſarum rubrarum recentium*, bereft of the prickes and bruiſed, *ſucci Roſarum*, ana. ℔. j. macerate them in ℔. v. of *oleum Omphacinum* which is without Salt, in a veſſell of glaſſe cloſe ſhut; then ſet them ſeuen daies in the Sunne, after boile them three houres in a double veſſell, and the leaues being ſtrained and caſt away, put in new, and change them twiſe or thriſe: in fine, the leaues being againe ſtrained and caſt away, ſet it in the Sunne and boile it in a double veſſell vntill the iuyce be conſumed. If you want *oleum Omphacinum* without ſalt, the common oile muſt be oftentimes ſtirred and waſhed in the iuyce of ſoure grapes.

Oleum Violarum.

O*Leum Violarum* quencheth heate, abateth hote inflammations, eaſeth the pleuriticke, and aſſwageth the diſeaſes of the lungs and breaſt; it is made

of

of common oile being old, or of oile of Almonds being new and vnsauory, or which at the least is washed with cold water; then fresh purple Violets be put into the oile in a vessell well couered, and be set to Sunne vntill tenne dayes, and euery third day the Violets be changed, and in the end dry Violets be put in.

Oleum Nymphæa.

Oleum Nymphæa doth more refrigerate, and doth especially asswage the heate of the kidneis, bladder and head; mitigateth madnesse, procureth sleepe: it is made as oile of Violets, of the white flowers of water Lillies macerated in laued oile, but it is set in the Sunne twenty daies, in the which space the flowers be changed thrice.

Oleum Papaueris.

Oleum Papaueris worketh the same effect that *Oleum Nymphæa* doth, but more effectually and properly, it appeaseth paine of the head, madnesse, and procureth sleepe. The flowers, leaues, and heads of white Poppie being bruised, be macerated in laued oile; and it is made as *oleum Nymphæa*, yet it may be mingled in a double vessell: there be which do presse out the oile of the seeds of Poppy, as out of Almonds.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi is prepared in like order as oile of Poppy, both by maceration and expression, and is as effectuall as oile of Poppie for all the repeated purposes.

Oleum Mandragoræ simplex.

Oleum Mandragoræ simplex doth more apparently refrigerate, asswageth paine proceeding of inflammation, and procureth sleepe; it is confected of the apples of Mandrake bruised and macerated in oile, and easily boiled as *oleum Nymphæa*.

Oleum Mandragoræ compositum.

Oleum Mandragoræ compositum, doth of all other most effectually refrigerate, & doth asswage the paines coming of inflammatiõ, and other agrieuances whatsoeuer: being annoynted it doth mitigate the ach of the head, and frensie, and put to the nostrils, forthwith it procureth sleepe. ℞. *Olei* ℔.ij.ß. *succi pomorum Mandragoræ*, ℥.iiij. *succi Hyoscyami albi*, ℥ ij. *succi capitis Papaueris albi*, ℥ iij. *succi Violarum, succi Cicutæ tenerrimæ*, ana. ℥ j. *Opij, Styracis, Calaminthæ*, ana. ℥ ß. all which must be mixed together, and stand in the Sun ten dayes, and after be boiled in a double vessel vntill the iuice be consumed: in the end the oile must be strained and set vp vntill need require.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum.

Oleum Melinũ, quod & Cydoniorum, refrigerateth, astringeth, is very good for the stomack, intrailes and liuer being feebled, for that by annointing it restraineth vomite, laske, and sweate. ℞. *Cydoniorum cum cortice & semine tusorum, succi Cydoniorum*, ana. ℔.ß. mingle thẽ in a vessell of glasse, & poure in of *Oleum omphacinum*, ℔.j.ß. set them in the Sun fifteene daies, then boile

them foure houres in a double vessell, and the Quince peare being strained, other fresh are likewise to be incocted the second time, and also the third time, vntill the humour be wholly consumed. In fine, presse out the oile, and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum Myrtinum.

Oleum Myrtinum refrigerateth, astringeth, & comforteth, but properly the heart, stomack, braine and nerues: it is made as *Milium* of the berries and leaues of Myrtle, by adding the iuyce also when they cannot be come by.

Oleum Mastichinum.

Oleum Mastichinum, doth by astriction corroborate the braine, sinewes, stomacke and liuer, very commodious against lientery, vomit, and crudity. ℞. *Masticbes*, ℥.iij. *aquæ Rosarum* ℥.iiij. *Olei omphacini vel rosacei*. ℔.j. Boile them in a double vessell to the consumption of the water. Wine in stead of Rose water is put in, when as the wearinesse or the vnlustinesse of the sinewes is to be asswaged.

Oleum Menthæ.

Oleum Menthæ doth by annointing corroborate the stomacke and other parts, furthereth concoction with a moderate heate, and it is confected in this wise. The leaues of sowne Mints bruised with the iuyce be macerated in oile of *Omphacinum*, set in the Sunne, boiled and oftentimes changed, as hath bene shewed in the oile of Roses.

Oleum Absinthij.

Oleum Absinthij doth moderately calefie and corroborate, doth further concoction, procure appetite, open obstructions, kill wormes. The tops and leaues of Wormewood be bruised and macerated in *oleo Omphacino*, and it is absolued as oile of Mint.

Oleum Chamemelinum.

Oleum Chamemelinum, doth with an easie obstruction corroborate the sinewes, and membranes, and doth excellently asswage paine, ℞. *foliorum Chamemeli recentium & tusorum*, ℔.j. infuse and macerate them in sweete mature oile, and let them stand in the Sunne twenty of the Canicular daies, and straining and casting away the leaues, reserue the oile,

Oleum Liliorum.

Oleum Liliorum asswageth the paine of the breast, stomacke, wombe, kidneis, bladder, and sinewes, & doth ease and concoct them. ℞. *florum Liliorum alborum, integrorum*, casting onely away the yellow filaments, ℔.j. macerate them in sweete and mature oile, and set them in the Sun twenty daies. There is also another compound oile made thereof, more effectuall to all the purposes which I haue tofore repeated, which receiueth *Mastiches*, *Calami aromatici*, *Casti*, *olei Pyrethri*, *Carpobalsami*, ana ℥.j. *Caryophyllorum & Cinamomi*, ana ℥.ß. *Croci* ʒ.iij. Bruise them all and macerate them in water foure and twenty houres. After let thē boile a litle, and being taken from the fire, poure in of sweete oyle, ℔.ij. of the leaues of Lillies, ℥.viij. set them forty dayes in the Sunne, then straine out the oile, and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum

Oleum Leucoÿ lentei.

O*Leum Leucoÿ lentei*, asswageth the paines of the breast, kidneis, sinewes, and ioynts. ℞. *florum Leucoy.* ℔.i. macerated in ℔.j. ß. of sweete oile, set in the Sun ten dayes changing the flowers thrise: and the oile expressed is kept, by putting thereto, if you thinke good, ℥.ij. of the drie flowers.

Oleum Iasminum.

O*Leum Iasminum* worketh the same effect which *Leucoÿ* did, but more forcibly. Further it is an especiall mollifying and lenitiue oile, it is made as the oyle of Lillies was of the flowers of Iasmine.

Oleum Anethinum.

O*Leum Anethinum* doth moderately calefie and digest, asswageth paine of the head, and ach of the sinewes, procureth sleepe: it is made of the leaues of Dill, which be macerated in sufficient quantity of sweete oile, and set in the Sun one day, or concocted in a double vessell, and the oile being strained frõ the leaues is reserued.

Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium.

O*Leum Amygdalarum dulcium*, doth mitigate paine, comfort the exasperated parts, especially the lungs and kidneis: it mollifieth dry and hard matter, and is very meete for such as haue the Hecticke feauer, and be consumed. It is made in this wise: Sweete Almonds being diligently purged, be much bruised, and then there is poured vpon them a little Rosewater: after put into a vessell, they are kept and fostered as it were in hote water, that they may become somewhat hote. Lastly put in a litle bag, they are pressed in a presse, vntill the oile issue out.

Oleum Lumbricorum.

O*Leum Lumbricorum* doth mollifie with a moderate heate, and asswage paine, very conueniẽt for such as be bruised, & haue paine in the ioynts. ℞. *Lumbricorum terrestrium lotorum & præparatorum*, ℔.ß. *vini albi*, ℥.ij *olei dulcis*, ℔.ij. Boile them to the consumption of the wine and the washing of the Wormes, then straine the oile, and reserue it to your vse.

Oleum Irinum.

O*Leum Irinum* doth concoct, extenuate, and dissolue, it asswageth paine of the liuer, wombe, and ioynts: it concocteth likewise the offending matter of the lungs and breast. ℞. *Radicum Iridis tunsarum*, ℔.ß. *florum integrorum*, ℔.j. *decocti*; or if you wish to haue it worke more effectually, take of the iuyce of another Floure deluce, ℔.j. *olei dulcis*, ℔.ij. ß. boile them in a double vessel till the water euaporate: and straining the rootes and leaues, preserue the oile.

Oleum Rutaceum.

O*Leum Rutaceum* calefieth and attenuateth grosse humours, dissipateth wind more forcibly then Dill, it auaileth against the Cholicke, Palsey, Crampe and coldnesse of the wombe and bladder. ℞. *foliorum Rutæ modici succorum, succi eiusdem*, ana. ℔ ß macerate them three daies in, ℔.iij of sweete

oile: boile them in a double vessell vntill the iuyce be consumed, and then straining the Rew, change it three or foure times: in fine, reserue the oile expressed.

Oleum Amygdalarum amararum.

Oleum Amigdalarum amararum doth mightily attenuate and deuide, doth dissipate wind, especially the noise of the eares, and openeth the obstructions of the liuer and other intrailes by attenuating and deterging, it mollifieth hardnesse, but especially of the sinewes; it is consected of bitter Almonds dried and purged, bruised and calefied in hote boyling water, and pressed in a presse vntill the oile come out.

Oleum è Capparibus.

Oleum è Capparibus by extenuation and deterhō doth dissolue euery hardnesse and obstruction, but especially of the spleene; it assuageth the aggrieuances, and easeth euery disease of the lancs. ℞. *cortices radicum Tamarisci, foliorum Tamarisci, sem. Agni, Scolopendrij seu Asplenij, Cyperi*, ana. ℥.ij. *Aceti, vini optimi*, ana. ℥ ij. *olei maturi*, ℔ j. boile them in a double vessell to the consumption of the wine and vineger, then straine the oile, and store it.

for gi pelaeuc.

Oleum Nardinum.

Oleum Nardinum doth calefie, attenuate, digest & strengthen, and as well the simple as the compound doth redresse the cold and flatulent diseases of the braine, stomacke, liuer, spleene, kidneis, bladder and wombe. ℞. *Spicæ nardi*, ℥ iiij *vini optimi, aquæ rosaceæ*. ana. ℥ ij. ß. *olei dulcis*, ℔. j. ß boile them three houres in a double vessell with no very quicke fire, vntill the wine and the water do euaporate.

Oleum Nardinum compositum.

Oleum Nardinum compositū. ℞. *Spicæ nardi*, ℥.iij *Sampsuchi*, ℥ ij. *Xiloalces, Enulæ, folij Maceris aut Calami aromatici aut Galangæ, foliorum Lauri, Cyperi, Scœnanthi, Cardamomi*, ana ℥.j ß these being bruised poure into them *vini, aquæ rosaceæ*, ana. ℔.j. *olei dulcis*, ℔ v. macerate them foure and twenty houres, and then boile them in a double vessell sixe houres, stirring it now and then vntill the wine and water be consumed.

Oleum Laurinum.

Oleum Laurinum is hote and extenuating, doth dissipate the wind of the stomack, the Cholicke, and dissolueth cold diseases of the head, intrailes, wombe, kidneis and ioynts. The ripe berries of Laurell be bruised and boiled a good space in water, and the salt that swimmeth aboue the strained decoction when it is cooled, must be gathered together & stored vp for oile.

Oleum Vulpinum.

Oleum Vulpinum attenuateth and somewhat digesteth, it auaileth against the gout and all paines of the ioynts, at all times of the sicknesse. Boile a foxe vncased and vnboiled cut into little gobbets, and in like portion of fountaine and sea or salt water; and when it is boiled to the halfe, put in *Salis* ℥.iij. *olei veteris puri*, ℔.iiij. *Thymi, Anethi, Origani*, ana. ℔.ß. Boile them till one ioynt

ioynt fall from another, and till the comsumption of the water, and then presse out the oile.

Oelum è Scorpionibus.

O*Leum è Scorpionibus* doth so forcibly extenuate, that being annointed vpon the loines, it is thought to breake & disturbe the stone in the kidneis, and being annointed vpon the share, or on the *peritoneum*, or iniected into the bladder. ℞. *radicis Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Gentianæ, Cyperi, corticum radicum Capparis*, ana. ℥ j. Bruise them all and macerate them in ℔. j ℥. of oile of bitter Almonds, and set them to Sun twentie daies: then boile them in a double vessell with a lent fire. In the end put in xv. Scorpions, and set them in the Sun againe xxx. dayes, then straine the oile, and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum Terebinthinæ.

O*Leum Terebinthinæ* is hote and extenuating, and more penetrating then Turpentine it selfe. Wherefore it doth mollifie and extenuate hard tumors, and doth take away cold diseases of the nerues and ioynts, and notwithstanding comfort and strengthen them. ℞. *Terebinthinæ lucidæ*, ℔. iiij. put it in a cucurbite of glasse and set it in sand, and by making a fire vnder it, by alchymie, first you shall distill out the water, secondly a moist cleare oile, and lastly a yellow oile.

Oleum Recinium.

O*Leum Recinium*, which they call *oleum de Kerra*, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and therefore doth dissipate the paine and noise of the eares, doth scoure the issuing vlcers of the head, and riddeth the body of *Psora, Lepra*, and grisly scarres, and ministred in a clister, it bringeth out wormes and water: it is made thus. ℞. the seedes of the greater Spurge; being bruised, oile is pressed out of them in such force and manner as out of Almonds.

Oleum Balaninum.

O*Leum Balaninum* doth dissolue paine and noise of the eares, doth wash away the speckles, pimples, spots, and blacke scarres, prouoketh the belly, and procureth vomite; it is made of *Balanum Mirepsica*, which the Arabians cal *Been*, and it is burned, calefied, and oile is pressed out of the same in such wise as out of Almonds.

Oleum è Castoreo.

O*Leum è Castoreo* auaileth much against the cold diseases of the nerues and braine, against deafenesse and noise of the eares, and the extreme coldnesse of agues. ℞. *Castorei in aqua vitæ soluti*, ℥. j. *olei* ℔. j. boile them in a double vessell till the consumption of the third part.

Oleum Euphorbij simplex.

O*Leum Euphorbij simplex* worketh the same effect, but more forcibly, and put into the nostrils, it bringeth downe fleame. ℞. *Euphorbij*, ℥. ß. *Leucoij lentei, vini odoriferi*, ana ℥. v. boyle them to the consumption of the wine.

Oleum de Lateribus.

OLeum de Lateribus which is also termed the Philosophers oile, doth calefie, penetrate, and mollifie hard matter, resolue and dissipate cold humors, and easeth the Crampe, Epilepsie, Palsey, the Gout, and all cold affects of the ioynts and nerues; the making therof is in this wise. Breake an old red tile-stone in litle peeces, burne those in hote coales, vntill they become altogether as hote as fire, then take them out and extinguish them in cleare old oile, and let them so continue vntil they be replenished with oile; after take them out of the oile, and bruise them into powder, and put the powder in a cucurbite of glasse: distill an oile thereof according to art, and store it to your vse.

Petroleum.

PEtroleum, that is, naturall oile of stones, is extreme hote and extenuating, penetrating, drying and digesting; it consumeth cold water whatsoeuer in any part of the body, it dissolueth the Epilepsie, Palsey, Crampe, paine of the sinewes and ioynts, of the spleene, kidneis, bladder, and all cold affects of the wombe. This oile cometh not by art but by nature, and in many places it issueth out of stones and rockes.

PLANTIVS IN OLEA.

The Author imitating the vsuall and ancient composition of oiles, thought good to alter nothing in them, neither was there any such necessity to alter them for pleasure of the affected, for that they be outwardly applied: he made choice and hath set downe the most effectuall oiles against all kinde of causes and diseases, with omitting the other which were of little vertue or seemed vnnecessary: for he accounteth *oleum Nymphæ Citrinæ* superuacuous, for that it is contained vnder the other: & *oleum Populeon*, for that *vnguentũ Populeum* is of greater vertue: & he omitteth likewise the oile of the other mandrake, *oleũ Costiuum*, *oleum de Piperibus*, and *oleum Maiorani*, and *Irinum compositum*, for that there be many other sufficient extant, which may be vsed with more facility, and yet haue a greater power to calefie, attenuate and digest.

Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans.

against hotnes

℞.

VNguentum Galeni refrigerans is effectuall against *Phlegmonaes*, *Erysipelata* and Tetters, & against euery hote intemper. ℞. *Ceræ albæ.* ℥.iiij. *Olei rosati* ℔.j. and when they be molten in a double vessell, poure them into another, and by pouring cold water by little and little, and now and then changing, are to be tempered a good space: in the end, the strained iuyce of Housleek or of Sorrell is powred and tempered therewith, especially if it be applied to affects not vlcerated; or else vineger affused, if the skinne continue hote and not exulcerated.

PLANTIVS *in Vnguenta.*

Notwithstanding *Galen* his refrigerating ointment according to the vsuall description hath neither the iuyce of Nightshade, nor Housleeke, yet by adiection of them it becometh effectuall against the affects which require refrigeration.

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Rosarum.

VNguentum *Rosarum* is applyed vnto the same affects, but truly it is not of such efficacie. The making thereof is in this wise. Swines grease purified from the membranes must be washed nine times in hote water, and as oft in cold water; then like weight of red Roses bruised must be mingled therwith, and so must stand seuen dayes to putrifie; then melt the grease with a lent fire, and straine it: and againe macerating so much of bruised Roses seuen daies, infusing together halfe of the iuyce of Roses, and oile of Almonds sixe parts, then againe boile them with a lent fire vntill the whole iuyce be sucked vp.

Vnguentum Populeum.

VNguentum *Populeum* asswageth Phlegmones, burning of agues, feruent heate of the head and kidneis, and annointed vpon the temples procureth sleepe. ℞. *gemmarum Populi recentium.* ℔. j. macerated in ℔. iij. of fresh swines grease prepared, vntill all the simples which in order do follow may in Sommer be come by. ℞. *foliorum Papaueris rubri, foliorum Mandragoræ, foliorum Hyosciami, cymarum Rubi tenerrimarum, Solani, Lactucæ, Semperuiui maioris & minoris, Bardanæ, Violæ, Vmbilici Veneris*, ana ℥.iij. bruise them and mixe them with the grease and the buds of the Poplar, and after ten daies infuse ℔ j. of Rose water. Boile them with a lent fire, vntill the water and whole liquor be consumed, then straine it, and presse it, and if neede so require, boile it againe vntill it come to the temperament of an ointment.

Vnguentum album.

VNguentum *album* refrigerating and mildly astringing, doth asswage inflammations and exustions, and doth allay the heate of scabbes and itch, and all out-breakings of choler. ℞. *Cerusæ*, ℥. iiij. *Lythargiri*, ℥.ij. lay them in Rose water a good space, then cast away the Rose water, and put them in a mortar, and then by litle and litle poure into them so much Rose oile as they can drinke vp, continually stirring and tempering them vntill they appeare in forme of an ointment: in conclusion adde thereunto a litle white vineger, and ʒ.j. ß. of Camphire.

PLANTIVS

This kinde of white ointment which is here described, is alone sufficient in steed of those which be termed *vnguentum de Lythargiro, Vnguentum nutritum, vnguentum de Cerusa crudum, & vnguentum de Cerusa coctum*, which is termed also *Emplastrum de Cerusa*: for this one ointment containeth the vertue of them all.

Vnguentum astringens.

VNguentum *astringens*, the astringing ointment, bringeth together the open parts of the body, doth compact the conduites and pores, doth intercept and driue backe fluxes, restraineth the going out of the mother, of the wombe, of the *anus*, and of the gut, and being applied doth stay issue of bloud. ℞. *Gallæ immaturæ, nucum Cupressi, baccarũ Myrti, Balaustiorum, Malicorij, corticum Glandium, Acatiæ, Rhois, Mastiches*, ana ℥ j. Bruise them all exquisitly, and macerate them about foure daies in the iuyce of vnripe Medlars & *Sorborum*

Vnguentum ℞ ℞ ℞

immaturorum. Then dry them with a lent fire, and confect thereof an ointment with ℔.i. of oile of Roses often laued in Alume water, & ℥.iiij. of white Waxe.

PLANTIVS.

This astringent ointment for that it is very forcible, and easie to be come by, it is to be vsed *pro vnguento Comitissæ* or any other astringing ointment.

Vnguentum Diachalciteos.

VNguentum *Diachalciteos* which they terme *Palmeum*, doth stay all fluxes lately begun, and doth resolue such as be inueterate, doth agglutinate maligne vlcers *& dysepulotica.* ℞. *adipis Suillæ recentis sine sale & fibris,* ℔. ii. *olei veteris, Lythargiri triti & creti,* ana. ℔. iii. *Chalcitidos lauigatæ.* ℥. iiii. The greace and the oile be molten with a lent fire, and the Litharge and Vitrioll must be then cast vpon them, stirring it continually with three greene boughs *Palmæ aut saltem Myrti, Sorbi* or *Mespili:* & when it is come to the thicknesse of a cerate, the tender boughes (cut in peeces) must be put in by litle and little, as it is in boyling. Then boile it againe vntill it staine not the fingers, and be come to the consistency of an Emplaister.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum Diachalciteos (according to this description of *Galen*) is to be vsed in stead of those foure which *Mesues* hath described, two vnder the title of *Vnguentum Diaphœnicon*, and the other two vnder the title of *Vnguentum palmeum.*

Vnguentum Diapompholygos.

VNguentum *Diapompholygos* refrigerateth, astringeth, and restraineth fluxe, filleth hollow vlcers, and bringeth maligne vlcers to a scarre. ℞. *olei rosacei,* ℥. x. *succi Solatri,* ℥. iiii. *bulliant ad succi consumptionem: adde Ceræ albæ,* ℥. v. *Cerusæ lotæ,* ℥. ii. *Plumbi vsti & loti, Pompholygis, Thuris,* ana. ℥. i. *coquantur in Vnguenti forman.*

Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans.

VNguentum *rubrum exsiccans,* the red drying ointmẽt worketh the same effect. ℞. *olei Rosarum,* ℔. i. *Ceræ albæ,* ℥. v. *liquatis insperge Lapidis Calaminaris, terræ Lemniæ, exquisite tritorum,* ana ℥ iii. *Lythargiri, Cerusæ,* ana. ℥. iii. *Camphoræ,* ʒ. i. boile them into an ointment.

Vnguentum Dialthæos.

VNguentum *Dialthæos* is of a moderate calefying, mollifying, humectiue and lenitiue vertue. ℞. *Althæa radicum recentium & contusarum,* ℔. ij. *seminis Lini & Fenugræci contusorum,* ana. ℔. j. *macerentur in aquæ* ℔. viij. *deinde leuiter coquantur, & exprimatur mucilago de hac,* ℔. ij. *& olei,* ℔. iiij. *bulliant dum mucilago sit absumpta: tum adde Ceræ,* ℔. ß. *Resinæ,* ℔. ß. *Terebinthinæ.* ℥ ij *percoquantur in vnguenti crassitiem.*

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum Dialthæos simplex is here described, for that the compound through *Colophoniam, Galbanum,* and *Gummi Hederæ,* was too filthy, and there were other receipts extant of a more dissoluing vertue.

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Resumptiuum.

VNguentum *Resumptiuum dictũ*, hath great power mildly to mollifie without any manifest heate and therfore may be safely applied to such as haue *Asthma* or *Hecticam febrem*, or Consumption, Pleurisie, or an Ague. ℞. *seminis Lini, Althææ & Fenugræci, Gummi Arabici, Tragacanthæ*, ana. ℥.ij *macerentur & bulliant in* ℔.ß. *aquæ Rosarum.* Straine out the muscilage, and therein dissolue *adipis Suillæ, Gallinæ, Anseris & Anatis*, ana.℥.ij. *Aesipi*, ℥.ß *olei Violarum, Chamæmeli & Amygdalarum dulcium*, ana.℥.ij. *medullæ vituli, Butyri recentis, Ceræ albæ*, ana.℔.ß. *coquantur in Vnguentum.*

PLANTIVS.

This ointment which is entituled *Resumptiuum*, is described so excellently well, that it is preferred before all the other which be compounded either to mollifie, asswage, or to relaxe. For neither the ointment *Diadipibus*, neither the double pectorall vnguent, and *vnguentum Philagrij*, neither any other hath bene at any time inuented more excellent to mollifie, and to the fore repeated purposes.

Vnguentum Agrippæ.

VNguentum *Agrippæ* doth not onely mollifie, but also mightily attenuate, diuide, and dissipate *Oedemata corporis*, cureth inueterate affects of the sinewes, easeth paine of the kidneis, and by annointing prouoketh the belly, and thereby helpeth the Dropsie sicke. ℞. *radicis Brioniæ*, ℔.ij. *radicum Cucumeris agrestis*, ℔.j. *Scyllæ*, ℔ ß. *radicis Ireos recentis*, ℥.iij. *radicũ Filicis & Ebuli, Tribuli marini*, ana.℥.ij. *tunsa omnia recentis macerentur diebus sex vel octo in olei veteris non randici*, ℔.iiij. *parum deinde ferueſiant, & in expresso olei Ceræ citrinæ*, ℥.xv. *liquefiant in vnguenti consistentiam.*

PLANTIVS.

The Author doth vpon good occasion admonish, that in the ointment of *Agrippa* all the simples should be fresh, and that they must not be boiled much. For notwithstanding being crude, they haue a mollifyng and attenuating vertue, yet by boiling that vertue perisheth and is lost: wherefore the Author did in another place very wisely command that no especiall effectuall cataplasme should be confected to mollifie scirrhous & hard matters, of these rootes bruised, and crude, with grease and Waxe.

Vnguentum Aregon.

VNguentum *Aregon*, that is, the helping ointment, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and is very commodious against cold affects of the body, but specially of the sinewes, and is very conuenient against conuulsion, resolution, paine of the lungs, ioynts and great guts. ℞ *Rorismarini, Maioranæ, radicis Iari, Serpilli, Rutæ, radicis Cucumeris agrestis*, ana.℥ iiij. ß. *foliorum Lauri, Saluiæ, Sabinæ, Pulicariæ maioris & minoris, radicis Brioniæ*, ana ℥ iij. *Laureoli*, ℥.ix. *foliorum Cucumeris agrestis, & Nepitæ*, ana.℔ ß. *omnia Maio mense collecta & expurgata tundantur recentia, & macerentur diebus septem in olei optimi*, ℔. vj. *affusa aqua vitæ*, ℔.j. *Deinde coquantur dum contabescant & absumpta sit aqua, oleum percolatur, in quo Ceræ*, ℥.xvj. *liquantur, & adipis vrsini,*

olei Laurini, ana. ℥.iij. *olei Moschelini*, ℥.ß. *Petrolei*, ℥.j. *Butyri*, ℥.iiii. *Agitando hi pulueres inspergantur, Mastiches, Olibani*, ana. ʒ.vii. *Pyrethri, Euphorbij, Zinziberis, Piperis*, ana. ℥.i. *omnia vnguenti forma coeant.*

Vnguentum Martiatum magnum.

VNguentum *Martiatum magnum* is especially good against cold affects of the braine, sinewes and ioynts, against quiuering conuulsion, Palsey, and the goute, and is effectuall to mollifie hard tumours especially of the spleene. ℞. *Ceræ albæ* ℔.i. *olei* ℔.iii. *Rorismarini, foliorum Lauri*, ana. ℥.iiii. *Tamarisci*, ℥.ii. *Rutæ*, ℥.iii. ß. *Ebuli, Sauinæ, Balsamitæ*, (that is, *Menthæ aquaticæ*) *Ocimi, Saluiæ, Polij, Calaminthes, Artemisiæ, Hellenij, Betonicæ, Acanthi* (*quæ est vrsa Branchina*) *Aspargulæ*, (*quæ est Aparine*) *Anemones*, (*quæ herba venti dicitur*) *Pimpinellæ, Agrimonij, Absinthij, Flomi minoris*, (*qui & herba Paralysis*) *Costi herbæ hortensis*, (*quæ herba dicitur sanctæ Mariæ*) *cimarum Sampsuchi, Semperuiui minoris* (*quod Crassula appellatur*) *Millefolij, Semperuiui maioris, Chamedryos, Plantaginis seu quinque nerui, Centauri minoris, Fragariæ, Quinquefolij, Tetrahit*, (*id est, herbæ Iudaicæ*) ana, ℥.ii. ʒ.ii. *radicis Althææ, Cumini, Myrrhæ*, ana. ℥.j. ß. *Fenugræci*, ʒ.vi. *Butyri*, ʒ.v. *sem. Vrticæ, Violarum & papaueris rubri, Mentastri*, (*seu Mentæ agrestis*,) *Mentæ satiuæ, Oxylapati, Polytrichi, Cardiobotani*, (*id est, Cardui benedicti*) *Periclemeni* (*id est, Caprifolij, seu matris Syluæ*) *Maratri, herbæ Moschatæ* (*quæ est prima Geranij species*) *Trifolij acetosi* (*quod Aleluya dicitur*) *Scolopendrij* (*quod est Ceterach*) *Crispulæ* (*id est, Bupthalmi* (*caphoratæ herbæ* (*id est, Abrotani*) *Styracis, Medullæ ceruinæ*, ana ʒ.ii. *adipis vrsini, adipis gallinacei, Mastiches*, ana ℥.ß. *Thuris*, ʒ.ii. *olei Nardini*, ℥.i. The herbes must be gathered in the month of May, and being fresh and greene, must be bruised and macerated seuen daies in the best fragrant wine, and the eight day they must be boyled together, vntill the halfe be consumed, and then the oile must be powred in; then they must be againe boiled vntill the herbes be wasted and the wine wholly consumed: after straine and presse out the oile, in which (calefied againe) put, in the order prescribed, *Styrax, Butyrum, Adipes, Mastiches, Thus, oleum Nardinum & Cera*; and when they are dissolued with continuall stirring, take them off the fire, and keepe to your vse the ointment then concrete.

Plantivs.

Of *Vnguentum Martiatum* there be three descriptions described in other Authors, truly not very necessary against the cold affects of the sinewes and other parts, sith that *vnguentum Aragon* tofore prescribed is effectuall enough against them: but whosoeuer desireth to haue this *vnguentum Martiatum*, let him follow this description taken out of *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, and corrected.

Vnguentum Basilicum minus.

VNguentum *Basilicum minus*, which the ancient Physitions termed *Tetrapharmacum*, doth calefie, humect and mitigate paine, procureth atter, and is very commodious against increasing Phlegmons. ℞. *Resinæ, Picis, Ceræ*, ana. ℔.ß. and oile as much as sufficeth.

Vnguentum

Unguentum Basilicum magnum.

VNguentum *Basilicum magnum* worketh the same effect, and doth purifie and fill vlcers, ℞. *Ceræ albæ, Resinæ, Seui vaccini, Picis, Terebinthinæ, Olibani, Myrrhæ,* ana. ℥.j. *quod satis est.*

PLANTIVS.

The Authour thought good to alter nothing in these oyntments, namely *vnguento Basilico, Aureo, Apostolorum, Ægyptiaco & Aemulato,* but he corrected the vncertaine and depraued doses of the simples in *vnguento Citrino*; and he thought good to put in more *radicis Dracuntij* (which hath great vertue against the propounded affects of the skinne) then of Ceruse, or of any other simple. And in the order of composition he hath expressed a certaine manner of putting in the Orenges or Citrines, whose pulpe and iuyce is no lesse commodious against those malignities of the skinne, yea rather much better then the rinde.

Unguentum Aureum.

VNguentum *Aureum* doth mildly deterge wounds, agglutinate and safely cure them. ℞. *Ceræ citrinæ,* ℔.ß. *Thuris, Mastiches,* ana. ℥ j. *olei non rancidi,* ℔. ij ß. *Terebinthinæ,* ℥.ij. *Resinæ, Colophoniæ,* ana. ℥.j.ß. *Croci,* ʒ.j. the Waxe is melted in oile, and the other simples being exquisitely bruised be put in to thē.

Unguentum Apostolorum.

VNguentum *Apostolorum* doth by detersion purge wounds and rebellious vlcers, and also fistulaes, wasteth fungious and dead flesh, and in stead therof restore new. ℞. *Terebinthinæ, Ceræ albæ, Ammoniaci,* ana. ʒ.iiij. *Opoponacis, floris Aeris,* ana. ʒ ij. *Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Thuris masculi, Bdellij,* ana. ʒ.vj. *Myrrhæ, Galbani,* ana. ʒ.iiij. *Lithargyri,* ʒ.ix. *olei si æstas fuerit,* ℔ ij. *si hyems,* ℔.iij. *Bdellium, Ammoniacum, Opoponax,* and *Galbanum* macerated in vineger, and dissolued with the other bruised simples to liquefied oyle and Waxe, and boiled and stirred into the forme of an ointment.

Unguentum Ægyptiacum.

VNguentum *AEgyptiacum* doth more forcibly exterge then *vnguentum Apostolorum,* inueterate and fistulous vlcers; doth exiccate and eate out (not without feeling of paine) excrescent and dead flesh. ℞. *AEruginis,* ʒ.v. *mellis optimi,* ʒ.xiiij. *Aceti fortis,* ʒ. vij. all these be boiled together vntill the ointment become thicke and of purple colour.

Vnguentum ex Enula.

VNguentum *ex Enula,* which is called *Enulatum,* is maruellous effectuall against the itch or scabbes, either drie or moist; and also against other filthinesse of the skinne. ℞. *radicis Enulæ ex Aceto coctæ, tusæ & cretæ,* ℔.j. *Axungiæ porci, olei,* ana. ℥ iij. *Ceræ nouæ,* ℥.j. *Argenti viui extincti, Terebinthinæ lotæ,* ana. ℥.ij. *Salis vulgaris bene triti,* ℥.ß the Waxe and the grease be liquefied in oile, and to them is added *Enula,* and after Quicke siluer and Salt, and last Turpentine. It shall be with more safety vsed, if in stead of Quicke siluer, of the iuyce of Fumitory and Limons, ana. ℥.j. be put in, and both of them must be had seuerall.

Vnguentum Citrinum.

VNguentum Citrinum, or more truly *Citreum*, doth represse pimples shooting out of the skinne, especially in the face, either by meane of choler or of salt fleame, and doth exterge speckles, tetters, blewnesse, filthy scarres, and rednes of the eies. ℞. *Boracis*, ℥.ij. *Caphuræ*, ℥.j *Corallij albi*, ℥. ß. *Amianti, id est Aluminis plumosi, Vmbilici marini seu Bellirici, Tragacanthæ, Amyli, Cristalli, Enthali, Dentali, Thuris albi, Nitri*, ana. ℥.ij. *Cerusæ ex radice Dracuntij factæ*, ℥.j. *Cerusæ vulgaris*, ℥.vj. *adipis Suillæ recentis, salis expertis & puri.* ℔. ß. *seui Caprini*, ℥.j.ß. *adipis Gallinacei*, ℥.j. Liquefie the fattes in a double vessell, then macerate in them and with a lent fire boile two Orenges cut in small peeces; straine the fat, and then iniect thereto all the other simples finely bruised, and temper thē with a splatter. Last of all let the *Borax* and Camphire finely bruised be strewed in, & after it hath boiled & become thicke, store it to your vse.

Of Emplaisters.

Emplastrum Diachylon simplex.

EMplastrum *Diachylon simplex* doth mollifie the hard tumours of the liuer, spleene and externall parts, and likewise dissolueth, and by litle and litle dissipateth any scirrhous matter, if it be applied in the beginning. ℞. *mucilaginum seminis Fenugræci, seminis Lini, radicum Althææ*, ℔. j. *olei veteris puri*, ℔. iij. *Lythagiri purgati atque triti*, ℔.j.ß. The Litharge must be dissolued in a mortar with oile by litle and litle, vntil they be exquisitely mixed. Then boile them with a lent fire, and temper them still with a splatter vntill they become thicke. After put into them leasurely the muscilages depromed, and boile them to the substance of an Emplaister, and if need so require, that it should be more forcible in working, for euery pound of simples put in ℥.j. of the roote of Floure-deluce powned.

Emplastrum Diachylon magnum.

EMplastrum *Diachylon magnum* is more effectuall for all and euery the affects tofore repeated, for that it consisteth of more mollifying and digesting simples. ℞. *Lythargiri puri, triti, & creti*, ℔.j. *olei Irini, Chamæmelini & Anethini*, ana. ℥ viij. *mucilaginum seminis Lini, Fenugræci, Ficuum pinguium & Vuarum passarum, succi Iridis & Scillæ, Aesypi, Icthyocollæ*, ana. ℥ xij ß. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥.iij. *Resinæ Pini, Ceræ citrinæ*, ana. ℥ ij. reduce them all to an Emplaister in like order as hath bene described in the simples.

Emplastrum è mucilaginibus.

EMplastrum *è mucilaginibus* doth also mightily mollifie and digest hard tumours, it doth ripen an abscesse of humours, and when it is burst, it scoureth the quitture and atture. ℞. *mucilaginum seminis Lini, Althææ, Fenugræci, & mediani corticis Vlmi*, ana. ℥.iiij.ß. *oleorum Camæmeli, Liliorum, & Anethi*,

ana.

ana.℥.j. *Ammoniaci, Galbani, Opoponacii, Sagapeni*, ana.℥. ß. *Croci*, ʒ.ij. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥.ij *Ceræ nouæ*, ʒ.xx. make an Emplaister in order before prescribed.

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRA.

The ancient Physitions haue described many mollifying Emplaisters, and foure of these they intituled vnder the name of *Dyachylon*, whereof these two be the best. And as for this Emplaister of the mucilages, it worketh more forcibly against all the aforesaid affects then that which is ascribed vnto the sonne of *Zacharie*; wherefore the Author thought it not good to mention that.

Emplastrum è Mililoto.

E*Mplastrum è Meliloto* doth mightily mollifie also and digest, and mitigateth paine, and is very conuenient in hard tumors of the stomacke, breast, and spleene, and the outretching *hypochondria*. ℞. *Meliloti*, ℥.vj *foliorum Chamæmeli, seminis Fœnugræci, radicis Althææ, baccarũ Lauri, Absinthij, Sampsuchi*, ana.ʒ.iij. *Cardamomi, Cyperi, Ireos, Spicæ nardi, Ammeos, Cassiæ ligneæ, seminis Opij, Anisi*, ana.ʒ ij ß. *Ammoniaci*, ʒ.x. *Styracis, Bdelly*, ana.ʒ.v. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥.j. ß. *Ficus pingues*, xij. *seui hircini, Resinæ*, an.℥.ij ß. *Ceræ*, ℥.vj. *olei Maioranæ & nardini*, so much as sufficeth; make thereof an Emplaister: liquifie the Goates suet, the Rosin and the Waxe in oile, and put into them *Ficus pingues tritas & cretas*, then *Ammoniacum* and *Bdellium* dissolued in vineger, & lastly the powders of the other simples scraped.

PLANTIVS

Emplastrum è Meliloto, è baccis Lauri, Ceroneum, & Oxycroceum seeme to be sufficient against all affects and paines which require digestion and resolution, so that other be not necessary, namely, neither *Emplastrum è Sinapi*, nor *varia Emplastra è fermento*, nor *Emplastrum ex Allijs*, nor the Emplaister which is imputed to *Aristarchus*.

Emplastrum è baccis Lauri.

E*Mplastrum è baccis Lauri* doth maruellously asswage the torments of the stomacke, midriffe, intrailes, wombe, bladder, and other parts, especially taking their originall of any cold cause or wind. ℞. *Thuris, Mastiches, Myrrhæ*, ana ℥.j. *baccarum Lauri*, ℥ ij. *Cyperi, Costi*, ana.℥.ß. *mellis colati* so much as sufficeth to thicken them. And some there be that suppose it a maruellous Emplaister for the Dropsie, if the dose of *cyperus* be ℥.j ß & ℔ ß. of dried Goates dung be put thereto.

Emplastrum Ceroneum.

E*Mplastrum Ceroneum* doth mollifie the hardnesse of the spleene, doth release the cold affects of the wombe, and easeth the paines of the breast and shoulders proceeding of cold ℞. *Picis nauali colatæ, Ceræ*, ana.℥.ij. ʒ.iij. *Sagapeni*.℥.ij. *Ammoniaci, Terebinthinæ, Colophoniæ, Croci*, ana.℥.j. ʒ.iij. *Aloes, Thuris, Myrrhæ*, ana.℥ j. *Opoponacis, Styracis, Galbani, Mastiches, Aluminis, Fenugræci, Styracis rubri, Bdellij*, ana.ʒ.iij. *Lythargiri*, ʒ.j. ß. And the Emplaister must be made in this wise: *Sagapenum, Ammoniacum, Opoponax, Galbanum & Pix* must be liquified in wine and strained, then put too the *Colophoniam colatam, deinde Styracem, Mastichen, Thus, Myrrham, Bdellium, trita cretáque*. Forthwith iniect

Turpentine, Alume, Lytharge and Fenugreek. The Emplaister which is made of this, is put into cold water, and wrought with the hands by addition of the powder of Aloes and Saffron, alwaies annointing your hands with oile of Laurell, and thereof concinnate *Magdaleæ*.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum doth mollifie & dissipate also euery kind of hardnesse, doth asswage and driue away the paine of the ioynts, and the paine about the membranes of the bones. ℞. *Ceræ, Picis nauali, Croci, Colophoniæ*, ana. ℥.iiij. *Terebinthinæ, Ammoniaci, Galbani, Myrrhæ, Thuris, Mastiches*, ana ℥j. ʒ. iij. *Galbanum & Ammoniacum* must be liquefied and stirred in vineger: the the Pitch must be strained and put therto: after that the Waxe, forthwith *Colophonia* and the Turpentine, a little while after the Masticke and the Myrrhe. The Emplaister being decocted must be put in cold water, and being strained out, must be wrought with powder of Saffron, annointing your hand with oyle.

for orgoin
lb
lge bowels

Emplastrum de Ianna.

Emplastrum de Ianna is maruellous effectuall in wounds and greene vlcers, it pacifieth an inflammation, it detergeth, agglutinateth and incarnateth, and also cicatrizeth. ℞. *Succorum Apij, Plantaginis & Betonicæ*, ana. ℔.j. *Ceræ, Picis, Resinæ, Terebinthinæ*, ana. ℔.ß. Let three of the simples be concocted in the iuyces, stirring them easily to the consumption of the iuyces, then take them off the fire, and put thereto *Terebinthina*.

Emplastrum Gratia Dei.

Emplastrum Gratia Dei consisteth almost of the same simples, & serueth to the same vse. ℞. *Terebinthinæ*, ℔.ß. *Resinæ*, ℔.j. *Cere albæ*, ℥.iiij. *Mastiches*, ℥.j. *Betonicæ, Verbenæ, Pimpinellæ, recentium*, ana. M.j. Bruise the herbes, & boile them in white wine vntill they consume. Then straine out the liquor, in which concoct the Waxe, Rosin and Masticke, to an apt consistence of an Emplaister, and when they are taken off the fire, mingle with them the Turpentine.

Emplastrum Diuinum.

Emplastrum Diuinum is farre better against maligne vlcers, for it detergeth and consumeth quitture and corruption, and ingendreth new flesh, and bringeth them to a scarre. ℞. *Galbani, Myrrhæ*, ana. ℥.j. ʒ.ij *Ammoniaci* ℥.iij. ʒ.iij *Opoponacis, Mastiches, Aristolochiæ longæ, Æruginis*, ana. ℥j. *Lythargiri, olei communis*, ana. ℔.ß. *Ceræ nouæ*, ℥.viij. *Thuris*, ℥.j. ʒ.j. *Bdellij*, ℥.ij. *Magnetis*, ℥. iij. The Lytharge by stirring is mingled with the oile after it is boiled, vntill it become thicke. Then the Waxe cut in small peeces is added, which being liquified is taken off the fire, and forthwith be iniected *Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Opoponax* and *Bdellium* dissolued in vineger and wine, boiled and strained: after the powder, *Myrrhæ, Mastiches, Thuris, Aristolochiæ rotundæ, & Magnetis*, is sprinckled in: in fine, *puluis Æruginis*, lest that if it should be boyled any long space, the Emplaister become red.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRVM DIVINVM.

These Emplaisters *de Ianna, Gratia Dei, & diuinum*, which be described against wounds and vlcers, be also sufficient enough, so that it were vnnecessary in this place to repeate any other. For *Emplastrum Oribasij duplex, & Emplastrũ Apostolorum* be all comprehended vnder this diuine Emplaister, all which serue to the same purpose, but yet with lesse efficacy.

Emplastrum ad Herniam.

EMplastrum ad Herniam. ℞. *Gallarum, nucum Cupressi, Psilliæ, Balaustiorum, Acatiæ, seminu Plantaginis, seminis Psillij, seminis Nasturtij, Cepularum glãdium, Fabarum torrefactarum, Aristolochiæ longæ & rotundæ, Myrtillorum*, ana. ℥ ß. Bring all these to powder, and macerate them foure dayes in vineger of Roses, then torrefie and drie them. Then ℞. *Consolidæ maioris & minoris, Caudæ equinæ, Glasti, Scolopendrij, radicis Osmundæ regalis, & Filicis*, ana. ℥.j. *Thuris, Myrrhæ, Aloes, Mastiches; Mummiæ*, ana. ℥.ij. *Boli Armenæ lotæ in aceto, lapidis Calaminaris præparati, Lytharg̃iri Auri, sanguinis Draconis*, ana. ℥ iij. *Picis nauali*, ℔. ij. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥.vj. or as much as sufficeth to make an Emplaister.

PLANTIVS

There be omitted here also other Emplaisters astringing and corroborating the stomack, kidneis and wombe, which be not in vse, and in stead whereof certaine other receipts be vsually ordained for present necessity, so that this number of Emplaisters and compositions seemeth enough, both to store the Apothecaries shop, & to cure the chiefe kinds of diseases, causes and symptomates; neither was it necessary to stuffe this Medicamentary booke with vnusuall and vnnecessary compositions, which cannot but vainely be repeated to make vp a confused number. And as for such compositions as auaile to their peculiar effects (because they be seldome put in vse) are described as conuenient and peculiar to the diseases and parts in the proper curation of euery part and disease.

The end of the eight Booke.

A GENERALL TABLE OF ALL THE PRINCIPALL MATTERS CONTAINED IN THIS VOLVME.

The Table of the first Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	Of paine in the head.	1
2	Of headach caused of heate.	2
3	Of headach caused of cold.	5
4	Of headach caused of drinesse or moistnesse.	6
5	Of headach caused of bloud.	7
6	Of headach caused of choler.	8
7	Of headach caused of fleame.	10
8	Of headach caused of windinesse.	11
9	Of headach caused of the stomacke.	12
10	Of headach caused of drunkenes.	13
11	Of headach caused of feauers.	14
12	Of headach caused of old paine inueterate in the head.	15
13	Of headach called the Migrime.	17.
14	Of giddinesse in the head called Vertigo.	18
15	Of the Frensie.	21
16	Of the Lethargie.	24
17	Of the losse of memorie.	26
18	Of Carus or Subeth.	29
19	Of congelation or taking.	ead.
20	Of profound sleepe called Sopor or Coma.	30
21	Of the losse both of mouing and sense, called Apoplexie.	31
22	Of the Palsey in halfe the body.	33
23	Of the Palsey in one member only	38
24	Of the falling sicknesse.	40.
25	Of the Crampe.	42
26	Of the Mare.	43
27	Of Madnesse.	44
28	Of Melancholy.	45
29	Against trembling and shaking.	48
30	Of the eyes in generall.	49
31	Of the Cataract, what it is, and how to helpe it.	50
32	Of the chree kinds of Cataracts vncurable.	52
33	Of diseases which chance to the eies, by bloud, choler, fleame and melancholie, and their cures.	ead.
Idem.	The making of an excellent water called a Collyrium.	53
34	Of Pannicles.	54
35	Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.	56
36	Of the infirmities of the eyes caused of melancholy.	57
37	Of diseases hapning to the eyes by outward causes, as by blowes with sticks, staues or stones.	59
38	Of diseases which come by skipping in of stones or chips by chance into the eyes.	60
39	Of paine in the eares.	61
40	Of sound or noise in the eares.	63
41	Of deafnesse and slow hearing.	ead.
42	Of Impostumes breeding in the eares.	64.
43	Of vlcers in the nose.	65.
44	Of bleeding at the nose.	66
45	Of distillation, rheume and hoarcenesse.	67
46	Of paine in the teeth.	69
47	Of teeth that be blacke and loose.	70
48	Of vlcers in the mouth.	ead.
49	Of a stinking mouth.	71

The

The Table of the second Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	*Against inflammation of the Columella.*	73
2	*Of a loose Columella.*	74
3	*Of inflammation the tonsils.*	75
4	*Of malignant vlcers of the tonsils*	76
5	*Of the Squinancy.*	77
6	*Of the Cough.*	79
7	*Of the Asthma.*	81
8	*Of the Pleurisie.*	82
9	*Of the inflammation of the lungs.*	84
10	*Of spitting of bloud.*	85
11	*Of spitting of matter.*	88
12	*Of the Pisicke.*	90
13	*Of panting of the heart.*	92
14	*Of swouning.*	93
15	*Of lacke of milke.*	97
16	*Of abundance of milke.*	98
17	*Of milk that is curded in the breasts of women.*	ead.
18	*Of inflammation of the paps in women.*	99

The Table of the third Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	*Of weaknes of the stomacke.*	100
2	*Of yelking and vomiting.*	102
3	*Of immoderate thirst.*	104
4	*Of paine in the stomacke.*	105
5	*Of inflammation of the stomacke.*	ead.
6	*Of abhorring of meate.*	107
7	*Of a doglike appetite.*	108
8	*Of great famine.*	110
9	*Of euill digestion.*	111
10	*Of windinesse of the stomacke.*	114
11	*Of yelking or hicket.*	115
12	*Of choler.*	117
13	*Of the fluxe Diarrhæa.*	119
14	*Of the fluxe Lienteria.*	121
15	*Of the fluxe Dysenteria.*	123
16	*Of Tenasmus.*	126
17	*Of the Cholicke.*	127
18	*Of Iliaca passio.*	130
19	*Of Wormes.*	132
20	*Of the Hemorrhoids.*	135
21	*Of the falling out of the tuell.*	137
22	*Of clefts of the fundament.*	138
23	*Of the weaknesse of the liuer.*	ead
24	*Of the obstructions of the liuer.*	141
25	*Of inflammation of the liuer.*	142
26	*Of distemper of the spleene.*	145
27	*Of the inflamatiõ of the spleene.*	147
28	*Of hardnesse of the spleene.*	148
29	*Of obstruction of the spleene.*	149
30	*Of the Iaundies.*	ead.
31	*Of the euill state of the body.*	152
32	*Of the Dropsie.*	153
33	*Of the Dropsie Anasara.*	155
34	*Of the Dropsie Ascites.*	156
35	*Of the Dropsie Tympanites.*	157
36	*Of the reines that send forth bloudy vrine.*	158
37	*Of inflammation of the reines.*	159
38	*Of the stone in the reines.*	161
39	*Of vnmeasurable pissing.*	165
40	*Against vlcers of the reines.*	166
41	*Of the stone in the bladder.*	167
42	*Of bloud broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.*	168
43	*Of inflammation of the bladder.*	169
44	*Of vlcers of the bladder, and in the necke of the same.*	171
45	*Of the Strangury.*	173
46	*Of difficulty of pissing.*	174
47	*Of stopping of the vrine.*	175
48	*Of exulceration of the priuie members.*	177
49	*Of the continuall standing of the yard.*	ead.
50	*Of shedding of sperme or seed.*	178
51	*Of losse of carnall copulation.*	180

Chap.	Fol.
52 *Against burſting or ruptures.*	181
53 *Of ſtopping of Menſtruis.*	183
54 *Of flowing of Menſtruis.*	187
55 *Of Womans fluxe.*	188
56 *Of ſtrangling of the womb.*	189
57 *Of falling out of the womb.*	192
58 *Of the mole in the matrice.*	193
59 *Of inflammation of the womb.*	195
60 *Of windineſſe of the womb.*	196
61 *Of exulceration of the womb.*	197
62 *Of ſtraightneſſe of the matrice.*	198
63 *To take away barrenneſſe.*	199
64 *Of ſore trauell in child-birth.*	202
65 *Of the Sciatica.*	205
66 *Of the goute in the feete and ioynts.*	208.

The Table of the fourth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1 A *Nexpoſition of feauers.*	213
A table of feauers.	217
2 *Of one day feauer.*	218
3 *Of a Diarie laſting moe daies.*	220
4 *Of a rotten feuer called Synochus.*	224
5 *Against continuall feauers.*	226
6 *Of a burning feauer.*	228
7 *Of a pure intermitting Tertian.*	230
8 *Against a baſtardly Tertian.*	234
9 *Of a Quartane feauer.*	236
10 *Of a Quotidian feauer.*	239
11 *Of a feauer Hecticke.*	240
12 *Of an Hemetrice feauer.*	243
13 *Of the Peſtilence.*	245

The Table of the fift Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1 W*Hat ſwellings happen beſides nature, commonly called Apoſtemata.*	253
2 *Of the differēces of thoſe tumors which happē beſides nature.255. Frō whence the difference of tumours aboue nature doth come.256. Of hote humours. ead. of cold humors. ead. Tumores complicati, one euill ſeemeth to haue affinitie with the other. ead. of the chiefe tumours that are caused of flowing of humors. 257. What tumors do associate Phlegmon. ead. of Eryſipelatoſi tumores. ead. of Teſtudo & Talpa. ead. of Scirrhoſi tumores and Cancer.258. of Lepra. 259. Foure kindes of Impetigo. ead. of white Puſtules.*	263
3 *Of the cauſes of tumors aboue nature appearing vniuerſally on the outſide of the body.*	263.
4 *Of the ſignes of tumors beſides nature generally appearing, together with the indgement thereof, 267. Foure kindes or times of tumors beſides nature. 270. Signes of putrefaction.*	278
What abſceſſions may eaſily be digeſted.	270
5 *The common order of curing of tumors. 271. Foure things to be conſidered chiefly in the nature of affected members. 272. the finding out of the cauſes, the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature 273. The common ingendring of euery Phlegmone, ead. Caſes in which we may not vſe repelling or repreſſing remedies.*	274
6 *Of Abſceſſions generally. 276. The beſt order of curing is declared three wayes.*	277
7 *Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumours engendred of bloud.*	279
Foure differences of tumours caused of bloud.	280
8 *Of the cauſes, ſignes, & iudgements of Phlegmone.*	281

9 *The*

Chap. Fol.
9 The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humors affecting the outward parts of the body. 282
Foure intentions in the cure of Phlegmone. 283
10 Of a Carbuncle and a Cancre. 290
11 Of the cure of a Carbuncle. 291
12 Of Gangrena and Sphacelus. 295
13 Of the cure of Gangrena. 297
14 Of Erysipelas and other tumors caused of choler. 300
15 Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas. 302
16 Of the cure of Erysipelas. 303
17 Of tumors which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes, both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians, cholericke pushes. 307
18 Of the euils called Formicæ, and of other differences of Verrucæ. 312
19 The iudgement and cure of Verrucæ 313.

Chap. Fol.
20 Of Oedema and other cold, flegmaticke and flatuous tumours. 315
21 Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humor flowing into some member. 317
22 Of Tumours aboue nature, which the Latines call inflations, but they are cõmonly called windie Apostems 321
23 Of a tumor caused of a thin substãce, which they call Aquosum Apostema, that is, a waterish Apostème. 323.
23 Of the diseases called Glandulæ, Nodi, and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions which they call Phlegmaticæ excrescentiæ. 328
25 Of hard and scirrhous tumours engendred of Melancholy. 344
26 Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus. 352.

The Table of the sixth Booke.

Chap. Fol.
1 OF the diuerse names of Morbus Gallicus, & where it had beginning. 359
2 Of the signes thereof. 360
3 Of the causes of the breaking out of Pustules. 362
4 Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus. 364
5 Of Fumigations. ead.
6 Of purging of Morbus Gallicus. 365
7 Of the preparation of humours. ead.
8 Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease. 366
9 What sort of that wood is to be chosen best for this purpose. ead.
10 Of the decoction of Guaicum. 367
11 Of the making of the compound decoction of this wood. 368
12 Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction. 370
13 Of the place where this decoction is

Chap. Fol.
to be giuen ead.
14 What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once. ead.
15 How many daies this decoction is to be receiued. 371
16 Of the time of giuing this decoction, and things to be obserued therein. ead.
17 Of things to be eschued of him that receiueth this decoction. 372
18 Of things to be corrected, or symptomates to be oppugned in this cure. ead.
19 Of Excrements. 373
20 Of Diet to be obserued in this cure. 374.
21 Of the roote of China. eadem.
22 Of the way of making the decoction of the roote of China. 375
23 Of the election of China. ead.
24 Of another manner of making the decoction with Salsa and the wood and

Chap. Fol.
without the wood, and sometime with the barke. 376
25 Of other faculties or vertues which this Salsa hath. 377
26 Of suffumigations which some practitioners vse. ead.
27 Of the manner of perfuming the whole body. 378
28 Of the symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing. 379
29 Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmelesse. ead.
30 Of making Suffumigations. ead.
31 Of the cure by annointing with quicke siluer. 380
32 To correct the symptomata which happen in the mouth in this way of curing. 281
33 Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be vsed in this way of curing. 382
34 Of Præcipitatũ giuen by the mouth. ead.

The Table of the seuenth Booke.

Chap. Fol.
1 OF Suppositaries. 384
2 Of making Nodulus. 385
3 Of making Pessaries. ead.
4 Of Clisters or Enema. 386
5 Of making Syrupes. 388
6 Of making Iuleps. 392
7 Of Dosis siue Potio. ead.
8 Of making Bolus. 397
9 Of making Pils. 398
10 Of making Apozema. ead.
11 Of making Mulsio. 399
12 Of making Powders. ead.
13 Of Electuaries and Conserues, of Lozenges and Manus Christi. 400
14 of making Conditum & Conserua. 403.
15 Of making Pasta Regia or Mazapane. 404
16 Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma. 405
17 Of making Balneum, and Semicupium. 406
18 Of Epithema or Fotus. ead.
19 Of making Saccolus. 408
20 Of making Scutum. ead.
21 Of making a Cataplasme. ead.
22 Of making Emplastrum. 409
23 Of making Vnguenta. 410
24 Of making a Liniment. 412
25 Of making Frontale. ead.
26 Of making Cucufa & Semicucufa. 413.
27 Of making Suffitus. ead.
28 Of making Collyrium. ead.
29 Of making Nasale, or Erthinum. 414
30 Of making Apophlegmatismus. ead.
31 Of making Distillations restoratiue. 415.

The Table of the eight Booke.

Of Syrupes.

SYrupus Acidus simplex. 418
Syrupus è succo Limonum. 420
Oxisaccharum simplex. 421
Oximel simplex. ead.
Oximel scylliticum. 422
Syrupus è Cichorio. 423
Syrupus Intubi domestici. 424
Syrupus Byzantinus. ead.
Syrupus Scolopendrij. 425
Syrupus è radicibus. ead.
Syrupus Adiantinus. ead.
Syrupus è Stœchade. 426
Syrupus Rosarum siccarum. 427
Syrupus Nymphæa. ead.
Syrupus de Papauere. 428
Diacodion. ead.
Syrupus Violarum compositus. 429
Syrupus Zyziphorum. 430
Syrupus de Hyssopo. ead.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Prassio. ead.
Syrupus Symphyti. 431
Syrupus è succo Buglossi. ead.
Syrupus è Cortice Citrij ead.
Syrupus Melissophylli. 432
Syrupus è Menta. ead.
Syrupus Absinthij. ead.
Codoniorum Miba, that is, the iuyce decocted to thicknesse. ead.
Syrupus Myrtinus. 433
Syrupus Fumariæ. ead.
Syrupus è Malis odoriferis. ead.
Syrupus Althæa. ead.
Syrupus Raphani. 434
Syrupus Artemisiæ. ead.

Of purging receipts.

Electuarium è Prunis. 435
Catholicum simplex. 436
Catholicum maius. ead.
Syrupus infusionis rosarũ pallidarũ. ead.
Electuarium è succo Rosarum. 437
Diacydonion. ead.
Electuarium Diacnicu. ead.
Diaphœnicon. ead.
Benedicta. 438
Confectio Hamecu. ead.
Hiera simplex. 439
Hiera Diacolocynthidos. ead.
Hydragogum minus. 440
Hydragogum maius. ead.
Vnguentum è Lathyride. ead.
Electuarium Diasaru. 441
Pilulæ è Hiera simplici. ead.
Pilulæ Stomachicæ. ead.
Pilulæ Ruffi. 442
Pilulæ Assaieret. ead.
Pilulæ de Eupatorio. ead.
Pilulæ Mastichinæ. ead.
Pilulæ Imperiales. ead.
Pilulæ sine quibus esse nolo. 443
Pilulæ è Fumaria. ead.
Pilulæ Aureæ. ead.
Pilulæ de Agarico. ead.
Pilulæ Cocciæ. ead.
Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis. 444
Pilulæ Polychrestæ. ead.
Pilulæ de lapide Cyaneo. ead.
Pilulæ de Thymelea. 445
Pilulæ ex Esula. ead.
Pilulæ è Cynoglosso. ead.
Pilulæ Aristolochiæ. ead.

Of drie Antidotaries.

Dianthon. 446
Electuariũ Pleres archontiсõ. ead.
Diatragacanthum frigidum. ead.
Diaireos simplex. 447
Electuarium Diaireos compositum. ead.
Diacalaminthes. ead.
Diamargariton frigidum. 448
Electuarium de Gemmis. ead.
Electuarium Diambræ. 449
Pulvis Cordiacus, ead.
Aromaticum Rosatum maius. 450
Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis. ead.
Electuarium Diatrion Santalon. ead.
Driacrocu. 451
Dialacca maior. ead.
Electuarium exhilarans. ead.
Electuarium Diaspermaton. ead.
Electuarium λιθον θρυπτικον. 452
Electuarium Diacalaminthes, compositum ead.

Of moist Antidotaries.

Antidotus Analepticæ. 453
Antidotus Diasaterion. ead.
Antidotus è Cocco baphico, seu grano infectorio. ead.
Antodotus è baccis Lauri. 454
Philonium. ead.
Antidotus termed Requies. ead.
Theriace Diatessaron. 455
Theriace Andromachi senioris. ead.
Mithridatum. 456

De Trochiscis seu Pastillis.

Trochisci è Vipera. 457
Trochisci Scyllitici. ead.
Trochisci Hedricoi. ead.

Trochisci Cypheos. 458
Trochisci è Capparibus. ead.
Trochisci de Eupatorio. ead.
Trochisci Alkakẽgi seu Halycacabi. ead.
Trochisci è Myrrha. 459
Trochisci è terra Lemnia. ead.
Trochisci è Caphura. ead.
Trochisci Galliæ moschatæ. ead.
Trochisci Alyptæ muschatæ. ead.
Trochisci Bechici albi. 460
Trochisci Narcotici. ead.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

Ecligma è pineis Nucibus. 460
Ecligma è Scylla. 461
Ecligma ad Asthma. ead.
Certaine Condites. ead.
Of Conserues. ead.

Of Oyles.

Oleum Rosarum. 462
Oleum Violarum. ead.
Oleum Nymphæa. 463
Oleum Papaueris. ead.
Oleum Hyosciami albi. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ simplex. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ compositum. ead.
Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum. ead.
Oleum Myrtinum. 464
Oleum Mastichinum. ead.
Oleum Menthæ. ead.
Oleum Absinthij. ead.
Oleum Chamemelinum. ead.
Oleum Liliorum. ead.
Oleum Leucoij Lentei. 465
Oleum Iasminum. ead.
Oleum Anethinum. ead.
Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium. ead.
Oleum Lumbricorum. ead.
Oleum Irinum. ead.
Oleum Rutaceum. ead.
Oleum Amygdalarum amararum. 466
Oleum è Capparibus. ead.
Oleum Nardinum. ead.
Oleum Nardinum compositum. ead.
Oleum Laurinum. ead.
Oleum Vulpinum. ead.
Oleum è Scorpionibus. 467
Oleum Terebinthinæ. ead.
Oleum Recinium. ead.
Oleum Balaninum. ead.
Oleum è Cæstoreo. ead.
Oleum Euphorbij simplex. ead.
Oleum de lateribus. 468
Petroleum. ead.
Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans. ead.
Vnguentum Rosarum. 469
Vnguentum Populeum. ead.
Vnguentum album. ead.
Vnguentum astringens. ead.
Vnguentum Diacalciteos. 470
Vnguentum Diapompholygos. ead.
Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans. ead.
Vnguentum Dialtheos. ead.
Vnguentum Resumptiuum. 471
Vnguentum Agrippæ. ead.
Vnguentum Aregon. ead.
Vnguentum Martiatum magnum. 472
Vnguentum Basilicum minus. ead.
Vnguentum Basilicum magnum. 473
Vnguentum Aureum. ead.
Vnguentum Apostolorum. ead.
Vnguentum Ægyptiacum. ead.
Vnguentum ex Enula. ead.
Vnguentum Citrinum. 474

Of Emplaisters.

Emplastrum Diachylon simplex. 474
Emplastrum Diachylon magnum. ead.
Emplastrum Muscilaginis. ead.
Emplastrum è Meliloto. 475
Emplastrum è baccis Lauri. ead.
Emplastrum Ceroneum. ead.
Emplastrum Oxycroceum. 476
Emplastrum de Ianna. ead.
Emplastrum Gratia Dei. ead.
Emplastrum Diuinum. ead.
Emplastrum ad Herniam. 477
Aliud ad Herniam. ead.

FINIS.

tus motes. Surely by this Doctrine, either all authority of Princes must be abolished, or Christendome must bee holden in perpetuall combustion. And here I vse not the word in any ambiguous sense: but I vnderstand by Christendome, all Christian states & Kingdomes. And because the Author hath taught vs a very generall doctrine; that, to iudge whether any lawe containe in it sinne or not; It belongs to the *Pope*: as it belongs to the ecclesiasticall Iudge, to determine whether a ciuill contract containes in it the sinne of vsurie: I must bee bold to tell him, that from hence it will follow, that not onely the *Pope*, but euery ecclesiasticall Iudge, shall haue power to determine of all matters; for it can belong no more to him, to iudge whether a contract offend in vsury, then whether it cary with it, any other wrong or hurt to a mans neighbour: for all that doe so, are sinnes, aswell as the other. And by the same reason, it will belong to the ecclesiasticall Iudge, to determine of all manner of murther, or killing of a man, because it may be so done as it shall be a sinne, and it may be otherwise. And to them it shall likewise belong, to iudge of the price set vpon Corne, and other marchandise, whether there bee sinne in it or not, and to appoint that it shall either stand or be altered: and whether a morgage containe extortion or not, or a warrant for the apprehending and imprisoning of a man, containe violence or Iniustice; (for euen in these matters there may bee sinne) and whether the womens attire be scandalous, or the men bee too superfluous or too sparing in the expence of their table: for euen all these are sinnes. And as they may by this meanes intrude themselues into the gouernment of all kingdomes, so may they likewise, into the gouernment of particular families, and examine how the father gouernes his children, or the husband vseth his wife. And in conclusion, because there is no action or affaire, either publick or priuate, wherunto sin is not incident, if it shall be in the power of the ecclesiasticall Iudge to determine & iudge of it, & either to allow it, or forbid it, & to inforce obedience vnto his owne determination: All Courts of iustice, all places of contracts, and all priuate families, may well be transferred into the Bishops pallace. And as these consequences are necessarily deduced from this doctrine, so it were well, that they should be throughly & with good insight considered of by them, to whome indeede they belong. But the true Christian doctrine and the common practise which we daily see, auoids all these absurdities, subiecting all Crimes and offences vnto the tempo-

rall Iurisdiction *in foro mundano*, and to the ecclesiasticall *in foro animæ*: wherein how men ought to proceede, wee can not bee better taught, then by the example of Christ and his holy Apostles, who neuer pretended, to haue or exercise any temporall coertion or coactiue authority ouer (mens) sinnes. But the *Author* goeth on, and inueyeth against the translator, not only in the point concerning the lawes, but addeth further, that his holinesse is not offended with the common wealth of *Venice*, for punishing their subiects that offend, but for presuming to lay hands vpon ecclesiasticall persons, who are not subiect to any superior, but the ecclesiasticall: and he concludeth, that whosoeuer will consider of the matter without passion shall finde, that the *Pope* goeth not about to depriue that common wealth of any other liberty, but the liberty to doe euill, which is not giuen of God, but of the Diuell. Here first he layeth to the translators charge, that, wherein hee is not faulty at all: yet hath he truly cited the words of the translator: namely, that the Popes censure was denounced vpon Christmas day. But vpon that day, there was no breefe of the *Popes* presented, but that which concerned onely the two lawes; That neither Churches should be built, nor lands conueyed by laymen to ecclesiasticall persons, without leaue of the State. And that other censure, for iudging and punishing of certaine Churchmen delinquents, came not out till Februarie: And therfore could not be mentioned by the translator, writing as he doth cōcerning a report which was spread abroad of the censures denounced vpon Christmas day. Surely a person of grauity ought not to stirre enuy against an other man, but vpon true grounds. But to the matter it selfe. The ecclesiasticall persons offending against a lawe, are not subiect to punishment, he onely saith it, but prooues it not. If wee finde hereafter that he goeth about to prooue it, we will answere him, as shall be meete for the defence of the truth. But in the meane time, I may not deferre to say, what is fit to be said, concerning that proposition of his: Ecclesiasticall persons (saith he) are not subiect to any, but their spirituall superior. This very proposition is produced as a speciall obiection against Cardinall *Bellarmine*, by a certaine Frenchman who condems it, as tending onely to sedition. And *Lewes Richebomme* the prouinciall of the Iesuites, in an Apology of his directed vnto the King of Fraunce, answeres in the Cardinals behalfe, in the 33. Chapter, that hee doth not affirme this position, but onely in causes meerely sacred, as of faith, religion, Sacraments &c. and that it was not his meaning to taxe or

reprooue

superiour be vnderstood in the second sense, for a Spirituall superiour, it is not true that any Temporall Prince, though otherwise a Feodatary or Homager, doth or can acknowledge any other Temporal Prince for such a superior. For in this sense, to acknowledge one for a superiour, is as much as to account or accept him for a spirituall Father. And for such a one, the homager ought not to acknowledge his Lord. How ought wee therefore to beware of deliuering such diuinitie, whereby both the kingdome of God, and the kingdomes of the world are disordered and confounded, and the simple people abused, and made to beleeue, that in all things they are bound to obey the Pope?

Neither is the manner or Phrase of speech absolutely to be allowed, that that Pope is head of all Christendome, by reason of the Equiuocation of the word *Christendome*. Among the ancient writers we finde him thus stiled, The Bishop of Rome, the successour of Saint *Peter*; by some, Saint *Peters* Vicar; and in the latter times, Christs Vicar, Gods Vicar, head of the Church: fashions of speech, which begets no ill meaning: But it is otherwise, in the vse of the word *Christendome* in this place, by reason of the ambiguitie and double sense which it hath. For it signifieth not onely the Christian Church, but the Christian states and kingdomes: and this latter signification is the more vsuall; as when wee say, that Asia or Ægypt are not within Christendome, we doe not meane, that there is no Christian Church in them, but that they are not within the compasse of the Temporal states of the Christians. So it is apparent, that vnder this new forme of speech the fallacy is hidden. For his purpose is to conclude, that the Pope is head, that is, hath the gouernment & command in temporall matters, ouer all Christian States and Princes. Let vs therefore keepe our antient formes, and let vs call him head of the Christian Church. But seeing the Authors drift is, out of this whole discourse to draw this conclusion, that where Princes vse their power to the hurt of their owne soules, or their peoples, and to the preiudice of Christian religion, the Pope may take the matter in hand to redresse it: although wee haue spoken much of this point before in the exposition of the Chapter *Nouit*; it will not bee impertinent to our present purpose, to consider what notable inconueniences will follow in this Doctrine, thus generally deliuered. There is no action of a man *in indiuiduo*, but either it is a good worke, or a sinne. Now if it belong to the Pope, to exercise iurisdiction ouer all sinnes, and withall to take

vpon him to determine, what is sinne, and what not, I say, there is no longer any Prince but the *Pope*, nay further, that there is no place left for any priuate gouernment. For suppose the Prince make a lawe to exact some contribution, for the extraordinary reliefe of the state, by occasion of some warre that hee is forced to vndertake, this lawe is not iust, but a sinne, vnlesse the end and ground of it bee lawfull, and vnlesse the subiects doe submit and binde themselues to contributions, according to the rules of *iustitia distributiua*, hereupon the Pope may say, I will know the end why this taxe is imposed, and so he may diue into the secrets of that estate: hee may also examine the distribution, whether it bee equally and proportionably made, and thereby come to the knowledge of the secret of the forces, and wealth of that state: And beeing a temporall *Prince* himselfe, who in that right and quality, may haue occasion of warre with an other *Prince*, by this course, it will bee an easie matter for him to infeable his enimie, and to get the maistery of him at an easie rate. In summe, the *Pope* may (by this Doctrine) examine all lawes, all edicts, all conuentions, all successions, and all translations of *Princes*, what shall I say? hee may call in question, and examine all inheritances and contracts of priuate men; because it belongs to the sheepherd, (as the Author saith) to haue a care, of what his sheepe doe feede, of what waters they drynke, and where they haue their walke: and this inference doth not onely necessarily follow of this supposition, but is also allowed by all the *Canonists* that write vpon that chapter *Nouit*: and yet neuertheleſſe, haue the wisest men and of most vnderstanding, noted and taxed it to bee full of absurdities. Which to auoide, some men haue out of that Chapter *Nouit* framed a distinction: That it is one thing to iudge of the matter, or of the action, or of the cōtract, and an other to iudge of the sinne. But they make a deuision where there can bee none: for if it be the Popes right to iudge of all things as they are sinnes, and to forbid them, and inforce all men to obey his determinations therein; what is there more left then for the Prince to do? for example, if there should be any bargaine and sale made wherin there were Iniquitie and Iniustice, and the *Pope* should determine it to be sinne, and cause it to be reuoked; I would gladly knowe, what there remaines for the Prince to intermedle in, or to determine further touching that contract? And I will hold my selfe satisfied, if any man can shew me that there is left for the Prince as much as one of *Democri-*

e eccleſi
n afterwards
eneraleſq; prepo
omnium atq; immu
ſtati ſubiecti, vel eſſe
pontifici Romano. And
e him for their King, he
oſtituerent, niſi ſe pari iur
arent emne poteſt Dauide
ea compellatione dicere?
s firſt Booke *de Clericis*
eaſon he renders for it,
definitiuely, that eccle

here (ſo) formally expre
cōpany, that in expreſſ
at place before cited, b
o vouch S. *Gregorie* in h
mſelfe the ſubiect & ſlau
ſpeaking thus vnto him
er of ſpeech, I finde to b
in the Epiſtles of the Ar
reply vpon the Author
about to debarre the ſta
nay more truly be applie
Venice in puniſhing Chu
he eccleſiaſticall liberty
;but liberty to doe euil
l perſons breaking a lav
not agree, that the com

hor beeing ſo exceed
eaning, when hee ſa
iuen by GOD, but
ed are not Catholicke
ree-will, which is natu
one but *Manicheus*,
m

thorning
se to be all
igorous a *Cen*
Hierome saith,
or proceedes, and b
a sheepheard and a Pil
tendome, ought not to a
that be preiudiciall to th
whereby they procure da
are goodly words at the
ple man by and by, and t
ght and reason on his sid
, we shall finde them to c
lude with the like *Parai*
meaneth he by the Chur
ieth, and which the word
pany of the faithfull; it
, no Prince can make
hey must be hurtfull to
of it) and hee must need
rch he vnderstand the n
sters, I am of the same o
lawes of Venice, are no
rather, as may easily be p
and benefit of their call
d some temporall powe
right to hinder, or prohi
Church in that sense. T
It is true, that no man ou
urch: but this must be vn
d signification. But if
Ancona (a Towne of t
vnderstood in the third
a Law is against the Ch
ith, that the Pope ough
that may hurt or hinde
remembrance, that i